PROJECT MANUAL

For

AIRPORT BOULEVARD – PARKING IMPROVEMENTS PROGRAM
PHASE 2 – VOLUME 1

RS&H No. 2003-0070-006

WILMINGTON INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT
WILMINGTON, NORTH CAROLINA

RS&H ARCHITECTS – ENGINEERS – PLANNERS, INC.
Charlotte, North Carolina

March 14, 2025

100% CONSTRUCTION DOCUMENTS
NOT RELEASED FOR CONSTRUCTION

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Cover Page
Table of Contents (TOC)

Information To Bidders – Federal Requirements

Notice to Bidders – Federal Funding Requirements
Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Provisions

Division 01 – General Requirements

Section 10 Definition of Terms
Section 20 Proposal Requirements and Conditions
Section 30 Award and Execution of Contract
Section 40 Scope of Work
Section 50 Control of Work
Section 60 Control of Materials
Section 70 Legal Regulations and Responsibility to Public
Section 80 Execution and Progress
Section 90 Measurement and Payment
01 21 00 Allowances
01 23 00 Alterations
01 25 00 Substitution Procedures
01 26 00 Contract Modification Procedures
01 29 00 Payment Procedures
01 31 00 Project Management and Coordination
01 32 00 Construction Progress Documentation
01 32 33 Photographic Documentation
01 33 00 Submittal Procedures
01 35 16 Alteration Project Procedures
01 40 00 Quality Requirements
01 41 10 Special Inspection Plan
01 42 00 References
01 43 39 Mockups
01 50 00 Temporary Facilities and Controls
01 57 23 Temporary Storm Water Pollution Control
01 60 00 Product Requirements
01 73 00 Execution
01 74 19 Construction Waste Management and Disposal
01 77 00 Closeout Procedures
01 78 23 Operation and Maintenance Data
01 78 36 Warranties

01 78 39 Project Record Documents
01 79 00 Demonstration and Training
01 91 13 General Commissioning Requirements

Technical Specifications

Item C-100 Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)

Division 03 – Concrete

03 11 16 Architectural Concrete Formliners
03 30 00 Cast-In-Place Concrete
03 41 00 Precast Structural Concrete

Division 04 – Masonry

04 20 00 Unit Masonry
04 22 00 Concrete Unit Masonry

Division 05 – Metals

05 12 00 Structural Steel Framing
05 31 00 Steel Decking
05 40 00 Cold-Formed Metal Framing
05 50 00 Metal Fabrications
05 51 13 Metal Pan Stairs
05 52 13 Pipe and Tube Railings

Division 06 – Wood, Plastics, and Composites

06 10 00 Rough Carpentry
06 16 00 Sheathing
06 20 23 Finish Carpentry

Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection

07 14 00 Fluid-Applied Membrane Waterproofing
07 14 16 Cold Fluid-Applied Waterproofing

07 17 00 Bentonite Waterproofing
07 18 00 Traffic Coatings
07 21 00 Thermal Insulation
07 26 00 Vapor Retarders
07 27 26 Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers
07 41 13.16 Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels
07 42 00 Perforated Metal Wall Panels
07 42 13.19 Insulated Metal Wall Panels
07 54 23 Thermoplastic-Polyolefin (TPO) Roofing
07 62 00 Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
07 81 23 Intumescent Fire Protection
07 84 13 Penetration Firestopping
07 92 00 Joint Sealants
07 95 13.16 Exterior Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies
07 95 13.19 Parking Deck Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies

Division 08 – Openings

08 11 13 Hollow Metal Doors and Frames
08 31 13 Access Doors and Frames
08 34 83 Fire and Smoke Door Containment Systems
08 41 13 Interior Aluminum-Framed Entrances and Storefronts
08 44 13 Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls
08 45 00 Translucent Wall and Roof Assemblies
08 46 00 Automatic Entrance Doors
08 71 00 Door Hardware
08 80 00 Glazing
08 84 00 Plastic Glazing
08 91 19 Fixed Louvers

Division 09 – Finishes

09 22 16 Non-Structural Metal Framing
09 29 00 Gypsum Board
09 30 13 Ceramic Tiling
09 51 23 Acoustical Tile Ceiling
09 65 13 Resilient Base and Accessories
09 65 19 Resilient Tile Flooring
09 67 23 Resinous Flooring
09 91 13 Exterior Painting
09 91 23 Interior Painting

Division 10 – Specialties

10 14 00 Signage
10 26 00 Wall and Door Protection
10 28 00 Toilet Accessories
10 44 13 Fire Protection Cabinets
10 44 16 Fire Extinguishers
10 73 00 Protective Covers

Division 11 – Equipment

Not used.

Division 12 – Furnishings

Not used.

Division 13 – Special Construction

Not used.

Division 14 – Conveying Equipment

14 21 23 Electric Traction Passenger Elevator
14 31 00 Escalators

Division 21 – Fire Suppression

21 10 00 Sprinkler and Standpipe Systems

Division 22 – Plumbing

22 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping
22 05 18 Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping
22 05 19 Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping
22 05 23.12 Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 05 23.14 Check Valves for Plumbing Piping
22 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 05 53 Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment
22 07 19 Plumbing Insulation
22 11 16 Domestic Water Piping
22 11 19 Domestic Water Piping Specialties
22 13 16 Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping
22 13 19 Sanitary Waste Piping Specialties

22 14 13 Facility Storm Drainage Piping
22 14 23 Storm Drainage Piping Specialties
22 33 00 Electrical Domestic Water Heaters
22 47 13 Drinking Fountains

Division 23 – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning

23 05 13 Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment
23 05 17 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping
23 05 18 Escutcheons for HVAC Piping
23 05 29 Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 05 48.13 Vibration Controls for HVAC
23 05 53 Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment
23 05 93 Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC
23 07 13 Duct Insulation
23 07 19 HVAC Piping Insulation
23 09 00 HVAC Instrumentation and Controls
23 23 00 Refrigerant Piping
23 31 13 Metal Ducts
23 33 00 Air Duct Accessories
23 33 46 Flexible Ducts
23 34 23 HVAC Power Ventilators
23 37 13 Diffusers, Registers, and Grilles
23 37 23 HVAC Gravity Ventilators
23 41 00 Particulate Air Filtration
23 81 26 Split-System Air-Conditioners

Division 26 – Electrical

26 05 00 Common Work Results for Electrical
26 05 19 Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables
26 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems
26 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems
26 05 33 Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems
26 05 43 Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems
26 05 44 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling
26 05 48 Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems
26 05 53 Identification for Electrical Systems
26 09 13 Electrical Power Monitoring and Control
26 09 23 Lighting Control Devices
26 24 13 Switchboards
26 24 16 Panelboards
26 27 26 Wiring Devices
26 28 13 Fuses

26 28 16 Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers
26 32 13 Diesel Emergency Engine Generators
26 36 00 Transfer Switches
26 43 13 Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits
26 51 19 LED Interior Lighting
26 52 13 Emergency and Exit Lighting
26 56 13 Lighting Poles and Standards
26 56 19 LED Exterior Lighting

Division 27 – Communications

27 05 00 Common Work Results for Communications
27 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems
27 05 28 Pathways for Communications Systems
27 05 29 Hangers and Supports for Communication Systems
27 05 36 Cable Trays for Communications Systems
27 05 43 Underground Pathways and Structures for Communications Systems
27 05 44 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling
27 05 53 Identification for Communications Systems
27 11 00 Communications Equipment Room Fittings
27 13 00 Communications Backbone Cabling
27 15 00 Communications Horizontal Cabling
27 51 16 Public Address Systems

Division 28 – Electronic Safety and Security

28 05 00 Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 13 Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 26 Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 28 Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security
28 05 44 Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security
28 13 00 Access Control System - SSI
28 23 00 Video Surveillance - SSI

Division 31 – Earthwork

31 20 00 Earth Moving
31 23 19 Dewatering
31 31 16 Termite Control
31 63 16 Auger Cast Piles

Division 32 – Exterior Improvements

32 17 23 Pavement Markings

32 31 13 FAA Item F-162 Chain-Link Fence
32 32 23 Segmental Retaining Walls

Division 33 – Utilities

Not used.

Appendices: See Volume 1

Appendix A – Geotechnical Report (2023)
Appendix B – Contract Provision Guidelines for Obligate Sponsors and Airport Improvement Program Projects
Appendix E – Construction Safety and Phase Plan

END OF TABLE OF CONTENTS

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

NOTICE TO BIDDERS - FEDERAL FUNDING REQUIREMENTS

Minority Business Enterprises (MBE). Toward that end, the Unified Government encourages these firms to compete and encourages non-minority firms to provide for the participation of MBE firms through partnerships, joint ventures, subcontracts, and other contractual opportunities.

This project is eligible for Federal funding under provision of the Airport and Airway Safety and Capacity Act of 1987. Certain mandatory Federal requirements apply to this solicitation and will be made a part of any contract awarded, refer to Appendix B.

(a) Davis Bacon Act (DOL Regulation 29 CFR Part 5)

(b) Affirmative Action to Ensure Equal Employment Opportunity (Executive order 11246 and DOL Regulation 41 CFR Part 60)

(c) Copeland Act, 29 CFR Part 3.

(d) Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act.

(e) Title VI of Civil Rights Act of 1964.

(f) Disadvantaged Business Enterprises participation 49 CFR Part 26. The DBE participation goal is 10.0%.

(g) Government wide Debarment and Suspension and Government-Wide Requirements for Drug-Free Workplace (DOT Regulation 49 CFR Part 29)

(h) Buy American Preferences (Title 49 United States Code, Chapter 501)

(i) Foreign Trade Restriction: Denial of Public Works Contracts to Suppliers for Goods and Services of Countries that Deny Contracts to Suppliers of Goods and Services of Countries that Deny Procurement Market Access to U.S. Contractors (DOT Regulation 49 CFR Part 30)

(j) Goals for Minority and Female Participation (41 CFR Part 60-4.2)

(k) Certification of Non-Segregated Facilities (41 CFR Part 60-1.8)

(l) Debarment, Suspension, Ineligibility and Voluntary Exclusion (49 CFR Part 29)

(m) Bid guarantee of 5% (49 CFR Part 18.36(h)(1))

(n) Performance Bond of 100% (49 CFR Part 18.36(h)(2))

(o) Payment Bond of 100% (49 CFR Part 18.36(h)(3))

By submitting a bid/proposal under this solicitation, except for those items listed by the offeror on a separate and clearly identified attachment to this bid/proposal, the offeror certifies that steel and each manufactured product, is produced in the United States (as defined in the clause Buy American - Steel and Manufactured Products For Construction Contracts) and that components of unknown origin are considered to have been produced or manufactured outside the United States.

END OF SECTION

DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE PROVISIONS (LOCAL GOVERNMENT AGENCIES (LGA))

Description

The purpose of this Special Provision is to carry out the U.S. Department of Transportation's policy of ensuring nondiscrimination in the award and administration of contracts financed in whole or in part with Federal funds. This provision is guided by 49 CFR Part 26.

General

This appendix has been developed from NCDOT Special Provision SP1 G63, revised August 17, 2021. Certain additional provisions have been added, to facilitate the management of project data.

Definitions

Additional DBE Subcontractors - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that will not be used to meet the DBE goal. No submittal of a Letter of Intent is required.

Committed DBE Subcontractor - Any DBE submitted at the time of bid that is being used to meet the DBE goal by submission of a Letter of Intent. Or any DBE used as a replacement for a previously committed DBE firm.

Contract Goal Requirement - The approved DBE participation at time of award, but not greater than the advertised contract goal.

DBE Goal - A portion of the total contract, expressed as a percentage, that is to be performed by committed DBE subcontractor(s).

Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) - A firm certified as a Disadvantaged Business Enterprise through the North Carolina Unified Certification Program.

Goal Confirmation Letter - Written documentation from the ***New Hanover County Airport Authority*** to the bidder confirming the Contractor's approved, committed DBE participation along with a listing of the committed DBE firms.

Local Government Agency – The New Hanover County Airport Authority, the entity letting the contract. When this provision refers to the Department or NCDOT, it shall also mean the New Hanover County Airport Authority, acting alone as Owner, or jointly with the Department/ NCDOT.

Manufacturer - A firm that operates or maintains a factory or establishment that produces on the premises, the materials or supplies obtained by the Contractor.

Regular Dealer - A firm that owns, operates, or maintains a store, warehouse, or other establishment in which the materials or supplies required for the performance of the contract are bought, kept in stock, and regularly sold to the public in the usual course of business. A regular

dealer engages in, as its principal business and in its own name, the purchase and sale or lease of the products in question. A regular dealer in such bulk items as steel, cement, gravel, stone, and petroleum products need not keep such products in stock, if it owns and operates distribution equipment for the products. Brokers and packagers are not regarded as manufacturers or regular dealers within the meaning of this section.

Replacement / Substitution – A full or partial reduction in the amount of work subcontracted to a committed (or an approved substitute) DBE firm.

North Carolina Unified Certification Program (NCUCP) - A program that provides comprehensive services and information to applicants for DBE certification, such that an applicant is required to apply only once for a DBE certification that will be honored by all recipients of USDOT funds in the state and not limited to the Department of Transportation only. The Certification Program is in accordance with 49 CFR Part 26.

Standard Specifications - The general term comprising all directions, provisions, and requirements contained or referred to in the *North Carolina Department of Transportation Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures* and any subsequent revisions or additions to such book.

United States Department of Transportation (USDOT) - Federal agency responsible for issuing regulations (49 CFR Part 26) and official guidance for the DBE program.

Forms and Websites Referenced in this Provision
* websites may vary from information below

DBE Payment Tracking System - On-line system in which the Contractor enters the payments made to DBE subcontractors who have performed work on the project. https://apps.dot.state.nc.us/Vendor/PaymentTracking/

DBE-IS *Subcontractor Payment Information* - Form for reporting the payments made to all DBE firms working on the project. This form is for paper bid projects only. https://connect.ncdot.gov/business/Turnpike/Documents/Form%20DBE-IS%20Subcontractor%20Payment%20Information.pdf

RF-1 *DBE Replacement Request Form* - Form for replacing a committed DBE. http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/DBE%20MBE%20WBE%20Replacement%20Request%20Form.pdf

SAF *Subcontract Approval Form* - Form required for approval to sublet the contract. http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Subcontract%20Approval%20Form%20Rev.%202012.zip

JC-1 *Joint Check Notification Form* - Form and procedures for joint check notification. The form acts as a written joint check agreement among the parties providing full and prompt disclosure of the expected use of joint checks.

http://connect.ncdot.gov/projects/construction/Construction%20Forms/Joint%20Check%20Notification%20Form.pdf

Letter of Intent - Form signed by the Contractor and the DBE subcontractor, manufacturer or regular dealer that affirms that a portion of said contract is going to be performed by the signed DBE for the estimated amount (based on quantities and unit prices) listed at the time of bid.
http://connect.ncdot.gov/letting/LetCentral/Letter%20of%20Intent%20to%20Perform%20as%20a%20Subcontractor.pdf

Listing of DBE Subcontractors Form - Form for entering DBE subcontractors on a project that will meet this DBE goal. This form is for paper bids only.
http://connect.ncdot.gov/municipalities/Bid%20Proposals%20for%20LGA%20Content/08%20DBE%20Subcontractors%20(Federal).docx

Subcontractor Quote Comparison Sheet - Spreadsheet for showing all subcontractor quotes in the work areas where DBEs quoted on the project. This sheet is submitted with good faith effort packages.
http://connect.ncdot.gov/business/SmallBusiness/Documents/DBE%20Subcontractor%20Quote%20Comparison%20Example.xls

DBE Goal

The following DBE goal for participation by Disadvantaged Business Enterprises is established for this contract:

Disadvantaged Business Enterprises **10.0 %**

(A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero*, the Contractor shall exercise all necessary and reasonable steps to ensure that DBEs participate in at least the percent of the contract as set forth above as the DBE goal.

(B) *If the DBE goal is zero*, the Contractor shall make an effort to recruit and use DBEs during the performance of the contract. Any DBE participation obtained shall be reported to **LGA**.

Directory of Transportation Firms (Directory)

Real-time information is available about firms doing business with the NCDOT and firms that are certified through NCUCP in the Directory of Transportation Firms. Only firms identified in the Directory as DBE certified shall be used to meet the DBE goal. The Directory can be found at the following link. https:// www.ebs.nc.gov/VendorDirectory/default.html

The listing of an individual firm in the directory shall not be construed as an endorsement of the firm's capability to perform certain work.

Listing of DBE Subcontractors

At the time of bid, bidders shall submit all DBE participation that they anticipate to use during the life of the contract. Only those identified to meet the DBE goal will be considered committed, even though the listing shall include both committed DBE subcontractors and additional DBE subcontractors. Additional DBE subcontractor participation submitted at the time of bid will be used toward the overall race-neutral goal. Only those firms with current DBE certification at the time of bid opening will be acceptable for listing in the bidder's submittal of DBE participation. The Contractor shall indicate the following required information:

(A) *If the DBE goal is more than zero,*

(1) Bidders, at the time the bid proposal is submitted, shall submit a listing of DBE participation, including the names and addresses on *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* contained elsewhere in the contract documents in order for the bid to be considered responsive. Bidders shall indicate the total dollar value of the DBE participation for the contract.

(2) If bidders have no DBE participation, they shall indicate this on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* by entering the word "None" or the number "0." This form shall be completed in its entirety. **Blank forms will not be deemed to represent zero participation**. Bids submitted that do not have DBE participation indicated on the appropriate form will not be read publicly during the opening of bids. **LGA** will not consider these bids for award and the proposal will be rejected.

(3) The bidder shall be responsible for ensuring that the DBE is certified at the time of bid by checking the Directory of Transportation Firms. If the firm is not certified at the time of the bid-letting, that DBE's participation will not count towards achieving the DBE goal.

(B) *If the DBE goal is zero,* entries on the *Listing of DBE Subcontractors* are not required, however any DBE participation that is achieved during the project shall be reported in accordance with requirements contained elsewhere in the special provision.

DBE Prime Contractor

When a certified DBE firm bids on a contract that contains a DBE goal, the DBE firm is responsible for meeting the goal or making good faith efforts to meet the goal, just like any other bidder. In most cases, a DBE bidder on a contract will meet the DBE goal by virtue of the work it performs on the contract with its own forces. However, all the work that is performed by the DBE bidder and any other DBE subcontractors will count toward the DBE goal. The DBE bidder shall list itself along with any DBE subcontractors, if any, in order to receive credit toward the DBE goal.

For example, if the DBE goal is 45% and the DBE bidder will only perform 40% of the contract work, the prime will list itself at 40%, and the additional 5% shall be obtained through additional DBE participation with DBE subcontractors or documented through a good faith effort.

DBE prime contractors shall also follow Sections A or B listed under *Listing of DBE Subcontractor* just as a non-DBE bidder would.

Written Documentation – Letter of Intent

The bidder shall submit written documentation for each DBE that will be used to meet the DBE goal of the contract, indicating the bidder's commitment to use the DBE in the contract. This documentation shall be submitted on the NCDOT's form titled *Letter of Intent*.

The documentation shall be received in the office of the **LGA** no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the **Engineer/LGA** no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

If the bidder fails to submit the Letter of Intent from each committed DBE to be used toward the DBE goal, or if the form is incomplete (i.e. both signatures are not present), the DBE participation will not count toward meeting the DBE goal. If the lack of this participation drops the commitment below the DBE goal, the Contractor shall submit evidence of good faith efforts, completed in its entirety, to the **Engineer/LGA** no later than 2:00 p.m. on the eighth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the eighth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the **Engineer/LGA** no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Submission of Good Faith Effort

If the bidder fails to meet or exceed the DBE goal, the apparent lowest responsive bidder shall submit to **LGA** documentation of adequate good faith efforts made to reach the DBE goal.

One complete set and **3** copies of this information shall be received in the office of the **Engineer/LGA** no later than 2:00 p.m. of the fifth calendar day following opening of bids, unless the fifth day falls on Saturday, Sunday or an official state holiday. In that situation, it is due in the office of the **Engineer/LGA** no later than 10:00 a.m. on the next official state business day.

Note: Where the information submitted includes repetitious solicitation letters, it will be acceptable to submit a representative letter along with a distribution list of the firms that were solicited. Documentation of DBE quotations shall be a part of the good faith effort submittal. This documentation may include written subcontractor quotations, telephone log notations of verbal quotations, or other types of quotation documentation.

Consideration of Good Faith Effort for Projects with DBE Goals More Than Zero

Adequate good faith efforts mean that the bidder took all necessary and reasonable steps to achieve the goal which, by their scope, intensity, and appropriateness, could reasonably be expected to obtain sufficient DBE participation. Adequate good faith efforts also mean that the bidder actively and aggressively sought DBE participation. Mere *pro forma* efforts are not considered good faith efforts.

LGA will consider the quality, quantity, and intensity of the different kinds of efforts a bidder has made. Listed below are examples of the types of actions a bidder will take in making a good faith effort to meet the goal and are not intended to be exclusive or exhaustive, nor is it intended to be a mandatory checklist.

(A) Soliciting through all reasonable and available means (e.g. attendance at pre-bid meetings, advertising, written notices, use of verifiable electronic means through the use of the NCDOT Directory of Transportation Firms) the interest of all certified DBEs who have the capability to perform the work of the contract. The bidder must solicit this interest within at least 10 days prior to bid opening to allow the DBEs to respond to the solicitation. Solicitation shall provide the opportunity to DBEs within the Division and surrounding Divisions where the project is located. The bidder must determine with certainty if the DBEs are interested by taking appropriate steps to follow up initial solicitations.

(B) Selecting portions of the work to be performed by DBEs in order to increase the likelihood that the DBE goals will be achieved.

(1) Where appropriate, break out contract work items into economically feasible units to facilitate DBE participation, even when the prime contractor might otherwise prefer to perform these work items with its own forces.

(2) Negotiate with subcontractors to assume part of the responsibility to meet the contract DBE goal when the work to be sublet includes potential for DBE participation (2nd and 3rd tier subcontractors).

(C) Providing interested DBEs with adequate information about the plans, specifications, and requirements of the contract in a timely manner to assist them in responding to a solicitation.

(D) (1) Negotiating in good faith with interested DBEs. It is the bidder's responsibility to make a portion of the work available to DBE subcontractors and suppliers and to select those portions of the work or material needs consistent with the available DBE subcontractors and suppliers, so as to facilitate DBE participation. Evidence of such negotiation includes the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs that were considered; a description of the information provided regarding the plans and specifications for the work selected for subcontracting; and evidence as to why additional agreements could not be reached for DBEs to perform the work.

(2) A bidder using good business judgment would consider a number of factors in negotiating with subcontractors, including DBE subcontractors, and would take a firm's price and capabilities as well as contract goals into consideration. However, the fact that there may be some additional costs involved in finding and using DBEs is not in itself sufficient reason for a bidder's failure to meet the contract DBE goal, as long as such costs are reasonable. Also, the ability or desire of a prime contractor to perform the work of a contract with its own organization does not relieve the bidder of the responsibility to make good faith efforts. Bidding contractors are not, however, required to accept higher quotes from DBEs if the price difference is excessive or unreasonable.

(E) Not rejecting DBEs as being unqualified without sound reasons based on a thorough investigation of their capabilities. The bidder's standing within its industry, membership in specific groups, organizations, or associates and political or social affiliations (for example, union vs. non-union employee status) are not legitimate causes for the rejection or non-solicitation of bids in the bidder's efforts to meet the project goal.

(F) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining bonding, lines of credit, or insurance as required by the recipient or bidder.

(G) Making efforts to assist interested DBEs in obtaining necessary equipment, supplies, materials, or related assistance or services.

(H) Effectively using the services of available minority/women community organizations; minority/women contractors' groups; Federal, State, and local minority/women business assistance offices; and other organizations as allowed on a case-by-case basis to provide assistance in the recruitment and placement of DBEs. Contact within 7 days from the bid opening NCDOT's Business Opportunity and Work Force Development Unit at BOWD@ncdot.gov to give notification of the bidder's inability to get DBE quotes.

(I) Any other evidence that the bidder submits which shows that the bidder has made reasonable good faith efforts to meet the DBE goal.

In addition, **LGA** may take into account the following:

(1) Whether the bidder's documentation reflects a clear and realistic plan for achieving the DBE goal.

(2) The bidders' past performance in meeting the DBE goals.

(3) The performance of other bidders in meeting the DBE goal. For example, when the apparent successful bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but others meet it, you may reasonably raise the question of whether, with additional reasonable efforts the apparent successful bidder could have met the goal. If the apparent successful

bidder fails to meet the DBE goal, but meets or exceeds the average DBE participation obtained by other bidders, **LGA** may view this, in conjunction with other factors, as evidence of the apparent successful bidder having made a good faith effort.

If **LGA** does not award the contract to the apparent lowest responsive bidder, **LGA** reserves the right to award the contract to the next lowest responsive bidder that can satisfy to **LGA** that the DBE goal can be met or that an adequate good faith effort has been made to meet the DBE goal.

Non-Good Faith Appeal

The **Engineer/LGA** will notify the contractor verbally and in writing of non-good faith. A contractor may appeal a determination of non-good faith made by the Goal Compliance Committee. If a contractor wishes to appeal the determination made by the Committee, they shall provide written notification to the **Engineer/LGA**. The appeal shall be made within 2 business days of notification of the determination of non-good faith.

Counting DBE Participation Toward Meeting DBE Goal

(A) Participation

The total dollar value of the participation by a committed DBE will be counted toward the contract goal requirement. The total dollar value of participation by a committed DBE will be based upon the value of work actually performed by the DBE and the actual payments to DBE firms by the Contractor.

(B) Joint Checks

Prior notification of joint check use shall be required when counting DBE participation for services or purchases that involves the use of a joint check. Notification shall be through submission of Form JC-1 *(Joint Check Notification Form)* and the use of joint checks shall be in accordance with the NCDOT's Joint Check Procedures.

(C) Subcontracts (Non-Trucking)

A DBE may enter into subcontracts. Work that a DBE subcontracts to another DBE firm may be counted toward the contract goal requirement. Work that a DBE subcontracts to a non-DBE firm does not count toward the contract goal requirement. If a DBE contractor or subcontractor subcontracts a significantly greater portion of the work of the contract than would be expected on the basis of standard industry practices, it shall be presumed that the DBE is not performing a commercially useful function. The DBE may present evidence to rebut this presumption to **LGA**. **LGA**'s decision on the rebuttal of this presumption is subject to review by the Federal *Aviation* Administration but is not administratively appealable to USDOT.

(D) Joint Venture

When a DBE performs as a participant in a joint venture, the Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement a portion of the total value of participation with the DBE in the joint venture, that portion of the total dollar value being a distinct clearly defined portion of work that the DBE performs with its forces.

(E) Suppliers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement 60 percent of its expenditures for materials and supplies required to complete the contract and obtained from a DBE regular dealer and 100 percent of such expenditures from a DBE manufacturer.

(F) Manufacturers and Regular Dealers

A contractor may count toward its DBE requirement the following expenditures to DBE firms that are not manufacturers or regular dealers:

(1) The fees or commissions charged by a DBE firm for providing a *bona fide* service, such as professional, technical, consultant, or managerial services, or for providing bonds or insurance specifically required for the performance of a DOT-assisted contract, provided the fees or commissions are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees and commissions customarily allowed for similar services.

(2) With respect to materials or supplies purchased from a DBE, which is neither a manufacturer nor a regular dealer, count the entire amount of fees or commissions charged for assistance in the procurement of the materials and supplies, or fees or transportation charges for the delivery of materials or supplies required on a job site (but not the cost of the materials and supplies themselves), provided the fees are determined to be reasonable and not excessive as compared with fees customarily allowed for similar services.

Commercially Useful Function

(A) DBE Utilization

The Contractor may count toward its contract goal requirement only expenditures to DBEs that perform a commercially useful function in the work of a contract. A DBE performs a commercially useful function when it is responsible for execution of the work of the contract and is carrying out its responsibilities by actually performing, managing, and supervising the work involved. To perform a commercially useful function, the DBE shall also be responsible with respect to materials and supplies used on the contract, for negotiating price, determining quality and quantity, ordering the material and installing (where applicable) and paying for the material itself. To determine whether a DBE is

performing a commercially useful function, **LGA** will evaluate the amount of work subcontracted, industry practices, whether the amount the firm is to be paid under the contract is commensurate with the work it is actually performing and the DBE credit claimed for its performance of the work, and any other relevant factors.

(B) DBE Utilization in Trucking

The following factors will be used to determine if a DBE trucking firm is performing a commercially useful function:

(1) The DBE shall be responsible for the management and supervision of the entire trucking operation for which it is responsible on a particular contract, and there shall not be a contrived arrangement for the purpose of meeting DBE goals.

(2) The DBE shall itself own and operate at least one fully licensed, insured, and operational truck used on the contract.

(3) The DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services it provides on the contract using trucks it owns, insures, and operates using drivers it employs.

(4) The DBE may subcontract the work to another DBE firm, including an owner-operator who is certified as a DBE. The DBE who subcontracts work to another DBE receives credit for the total value of the transportation services the subcontracted DBE provides on the contract.

(5) The DBE may also subcontract the work to a non-DBE firm, including from an owner-operator. The DBE who subcontracts the work to a non-DBE is entitled to credit for the total value of transportation services provided by the non-DBE subcontractor not to exceed the value of transportation services provided by DBE-owned trucks on the contract. Additional participation by non-DBE subcontractors receives credit only for the fee or commission it receives as a result of the subcontract arrangement. The value of services performed under subcontract agreements between the DBE and the Contractor will not count towards the DBE contract requirement.

(6) A DBE may lease truck(s) from an established equipment leasing business open to the general public. The lease must indicate that the DBE has exclusive use of and control over the truck. This requirement does not preclude the leased truck from working for others during the term of the lease with the consent of the DBE, so long as the lease gives the DBE absolute priority for use of the leased truck. This type of lease may count toward the DBE's credit as long as the driver is under the DBE's payroll.

(7) Subcontracted/leased trucks shall display clearly on the dashboard the name of the DBE that they are subcontracted/leased to and their own company name if it is not identified on the truck itself. Magnetic door signs are not permitted.

DBE Replacement

When a Contractor has relied on a commitment to a DBE subcontractor (or an approved substitute DBE subcontractor) to meet all or part of a contract goal requirement, the contractor shall not terminate the DBE subcontractor for convenience. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the Contractor seeks to perform the work of the terminated subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor, a non-DBE subcontractor, or with the Contractor's own forces or those of an affiliate.

The Contractor must give notice in writing both by certified mail and email to the DBE subcontractor, with a copy to the **Engineer/LGA** of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request. The Contractor must give the DBE subcontractor five (5) business days to respond to the Contractor's Notice of Intent to Request Termination and/or Substitution. If the DBE subcontractor objects to the intended termination/substitution, the DBE, within five (5) business days must advise the Contractor and the **LGA** of the reasons why the action should not be approved. The five-day notice period shall begin on the next business day after written notice is provided to the DBE subcontractor.

A committed DBE subcontractor may only be terminated after receiving the **LGA**'s written approval based upon a finding of good cause for the proposed termination and/or substitution. For purposes of this section, good cause shall include the following circumstances:

(a) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to execute a written contract;
(b) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to perform the work of its subcontract in a way consistent with normal industry standards. Provided, however, that good cause does not exist if the failure or refusal of the DBE subcontractor to perform its work on the subcontract results from the bad faith or discriminatory action of the prime contractor;
(c) The listed DBE subcontractor fails or refuses to meet the prime contractor's reasonable, nondiscriminatory bond requirements;
(d) The listed DBE subcontractor becomes bankrupt, insolvent, or exhibits credit unworthiness;
(e) The listed DBE subcontractor is ineligible to work on public works projects because of suspension and debarment proceedings pursuant to 2 CFR Parts 180, 215 and 1,200 or applicable state law;
(f) The listed DBE subcontractor is not a responsible contractor;
(g) The listed DBE voluntarily withdraws from the project and provides written notice of withdrawal;
(h) The listed DBE is ineligible to receive DBE credit for the type of work required;
(i) A DBE owner dies or becomes disabled with the result that the listed DBE contractor is unable to complete its work on the contract;

(j) Other documented good cause that compels the termination of the DBE subcontractor. Provided, that good cause does not exist if the prime contractor seeks to terminate a DBE it relied upon to obtain the contract so that the prime contractor can self-perform the work for which the DBE contractor was engaged or so that the prime contractor can substitute another DBE or non-DBE contractor after contract award.

The Contractor shall comply with the following for replacement of a committed DBE:

(A) Performance Related Replacement

When a committed DBE is terminated for good cause as stated above, an additional DBE that was submitted at the time of bid may be used to fulfill the DBE commitment. A good faith effort will only be required for removing a committed DBE if there were no additional DBEs submitted at the time of bid to cover the same amount of work as the DBE that was terminated.

If a replacement DBE is not found that can perform at least the same amount of work as the terminated DBE, the Contractor shall submit a good faith effort documenting the steps taken. Such documentation shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) Copies of written notification to DBEs that their interest is solicited in contracting the work defaulted by the previous DBE or in subcontracting other items of work in the contract.

(2) Efforts to negotiate with DBEs for specific subbids including, at a minimum:

(a) The names, addresses, and telephone numbers of DBEs who were contacted.
(b) A description of the information provided to DBEs regarding the plans and specifications for portions of the work to be performed.

(3) A list of reasons why DBE quotes were not accepted.

(4) Efforts made to assist the DBEs contacted, if needed, in obtaining bonding or insurance required by the Contractor.

(B) Decertification Replacement

(1) When a committed DBE is decertified by the NCDOT after the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) has been received by the **LGA**, the **LGA** will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement.

(2) When a committed DBE is decertified prior to the **LGA** receiving the SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) for the named DBE firm, the Contractor shall take all necessary and reasonable steps to replace the DBE subcontractor with another DBE subcontractor to perform at least the same amount of work to meet the DBE goal requirement. If a DBE firm is not found to do the same amount of work, a good faith effort must be submitted to **Engineer/LGA** (see A herein for required documentation).

(3) Exception: If the DBE's ineligibility is caused solely by its having exceeded the size standard during the performance of the contract, the **LGA** will not require the Contractor to solicit replacement DBE participation equal to the remaining work to be performed by the decertified firm. The participation equal to the remaining work performed by the decertified firm will count toward the contract goal requirement and overall goal.

All requests for replacement of a committed DBE firm shall be submitted to the **Engineer/LGA** for approval on Form RF-1 *(DBE Replacement Request)*. If the Contractor fails to follow this procedure, the Contractor may be disqualified from further bidding for a period of up to 6 months

Changes in the Work

When the **Engineer/LGA** makes changes that result in the reduction or elimination of work to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor will not be required to seek additional participation. When the **Engineer/LGA** makes changes that result in additional work to be performed by a DBE based upon the Contractor's commitment, the DBE shall participate in additional work to the same extent as the DBE participated in the original contract work.

When the **Engineer/LGA** makes changes that result in extra work, which has more than a minimal impact on the contract amount, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the **Engineer/LGA**.

When the **Engineer/LGA** makes changes that result in an alteration of plans or details of construction, and a portion or all of the work had been expected to be performed by a committed DBE, the Contractor shall seek participation by DBEs unless otherwise approved by the **Engineer/LGA**.

When the Contractor requests changes in the work that result in the reduction or elimination of work that the Contractor committed to be performed by a DBE, the Contractor shall seek additional participation by DBEs equal to the reduced DBE participation caused by the changes.

Reports and Documentation

A SAF (*Subcontract Approval Form*) shall be submitted for all work which is to be performed by a DBE subcontractor. **LGA** reserves the right to require copies of actual subcontract agreements involving DBE subcontractors.

When using transportation services to meet the contract commitment, the Contractor shall submit a proposed trucking plan in addition to the SAF. The plan shall be submitted prior to beginning construction on the project. The plan shall include the names of all trucking firms proposed for use, their certification type(s), the number of trucks owned by the firm, as well as the individual truck identification numbers, and the line item(s) being performed.

Within 30 calendar days of entering into an agreement with a DBE for materials, supplies or services, not otherwise documented by the SAF as specified above, the Contractor shall furnish the **Engineer/LGA** a copy of the agreement. The documentation shall also indicate the percentage (60% or 100%) of expenditures claimed for DBE credit.

Reporting Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Participation

The Contractor shall provide the **Engineer/LGA** with an accounting of payments made to all DBE firms, including material suppliers and contractors at all levels (prime, subcontractor, or second tier subcontractor). This accounting shall be furnished to the **Engineer/LGA** for any given month by the end of the following month. Failure to submit this information accordingly may result in the following action:

(A) Withholding of money due in the next partial pay estimate; or

(B) Removal of an approved contractor from the prequalified bidders' list or the removal of other entities from the approved subcontractors list.

While each contractor (prime, subcontractor, 2nd tier subcontractor) is responsible for accurate accounting of payments to DBEs, it shall be the prime contractor's responsibility to report all monthly and final payment information in the correct reporting manner.

Failure on the part of the Contractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from further bidding until the required information is submitted.

Failure on the part of any subcontractor to submit the required information in the time frame specified may result in the disqualification of that contractor and any affiliate companies from being approved for work on future projects until the required information is submitted.

Contractors reporting transportation services provided by non-DBE lessees shall evaluate the value of services provided during the month of the reporting period only.

At any time, the **Engineer/LGA** can request written verification of subcontractor payments.

The Contractor shall report the accounting of payments on the NCDOT's DBE-IS *(Subcontractor Payment Information)* with each invoice. Invoices will not be processed for payment until the DBE-IS is received.

Failure to Meet Contract Requirements

Failure to meet contract requirements in accordance with Subarticle 102-15(J) of the *2018 Standard Specifications* may be cause to disqualify the Contractor.

Additional Project Requirements

For this project, the Contractor shall provide additional management and documentation of project DBE participation data to assist the Owner with implementation of the airport's DBE Program, as follows.

The Contractor shall provide, prior to Notice-to-proceed, a detailed written description of the work to be performed by each committed DBE firm, to include specific work element(s), location(s) on the project and time frame(s) within the overall project schedule. For trucking/hauling DBE participation, describe in detail the material to be hauled and the start and end points (locations) of each hauling operation.

DBE payments shall be reported on the designated forms. Copies of dated DBE invoices, cancelled checks and/or other financial records shall be submitted as back-up documentation.

Prior to final acceptance of the work, the Contractor shall submit a signed and notarized statement from each committed DBE as to the total of all payments received for this contract.

In addition to DBE payment reporting, the Contractor shall prepare and submit a monthly written DBE participation progress report, listing the DBE firms which performed work on the project in the prior month, along with the dates, nature and status of that work; listing the project DBE participation for the following month (including firm name(s) and nature of work); provide dated photos and/or other records documenting when DBE equipment and workers are on site and delivery of goods by DBE suppliers or haulers; provide documentation of commercially useful function, including trucking documents; provide any information regarding DBE participation challenges, including non-performance, pending termination and replacement issues; describe any participation impacts of pending contract changes; describe any scheduling changes which may affect the relative timing of participation; and any other project considerations which could affect DBE participation. Failure to provide thorough and timely documentation and reporting may
be cause for the Owner to delay processing of payments to the Contractor.

Refer to the following website for additional information and Appendix B:

Required Contract Provisions for AIP and Obligated Sponsors (May 2023) | Federal Aviation Administration (faa.gov)

END OF SECTION

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10
DEFINITION OF TERMS

When the following terms are used in these specifications, in the contract, or in any documents or other instruments pertaining to construction where these specifications govern, the intent and meaning shall be defined as follows:

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-01	**AASHTO**	The American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials.
10-02	**Access Road**	The right-of-way, the roadway and all improvements constructed thereon connecting the airport to a public roadway.
10-03	**Advertisement**	A public announcement, as required by local law, inviting bids for work to be performed and materials to be furnished.
10-04	**Airport**	Airport means an area of land or water which is used or intended to be used for the landing and takeoff of aircraft; an appurtenant area used or intended to be used for airport buildings or other airport facilities or rights of way; airport buildings and facilities located in any of these areas, and a heliport.
10-05	**Airport Improvement Program (AIP)**	A grant-in-aid program, administered by the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA).
10-06	**Air Operations Area (AOA)**	The term air operations area (AOA) shall mean any area of the airport used or intended to be used for the landing, takeoff, or surface maneuvering of aircraft. An air operation area shall include such paved or unpaved areas that are used or intended to be used for the unobstructed movement of aircraft in addition to its associated runway, taxiway, or apron.
10-07	**Apron**	Area where aircraft are parked, unloaded or loaded, fueled and/or serviced.
10-08	**ASTM International (ASTM)**	Formerly known as the American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM).
10-09	**Award**	The Owner's notice to the successful bidder of the acceptance of the submitted bid.
10-10	**Bidder**	Any individual, partnership, firm, or corporation, acting directly or through a duly authorized representative, who submits a proposal for the work contemplated.
10-11	**Building Area**	An area on the airport to be used, considered, or intended to be used for airport buildings or other

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		airport facilities or rights-of-way together with all airport buildings and facilities located thereon.
10-12	**Calendar Day**	Every day shown on the calendar.
10-13	**Certificate of Analysis (COA)**	The COA is the manufacturer's Certificate of Compliance (COC) including all applicable test results required by the specifications.
10-14	**Certificate of Compliance (COC)**	The manufacturer's certification stating that materials or assemblies furnished fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer's authorized representative.
10-15	**Change Order**	A written order to the Contractor covering changes in the plans, specifications, or proposal quantities and establishing the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for work within the scope of the contract and necessary to complete the project.
10-16	**Contract**	A written agreement between the Owner and the Contractor that establishes the obligations of the parties including but not limited to performance of work, furnishing of labor, equipment and materials and the basis of payment. The awarded contract includes but may not be limited to: Advertisement, Contract form, Proposal, Performance bond, payment bond, General provisions, certifications and representations, Technical Specifications, Plans, Supplemental Provisions, standards incorporated by reference and issued addenda.
10-17	**Contract Item (Pay Item)**	A specific unit of work for which a price is provided in the contract.
10-18	**Contract Time**	The number of calendar days or working days, stated in the proposal, allowed for completion of the contract, including authorized time extensions. If a calendar date of completion is stated in the proposal, in lieu of a number of calendar or working days, the contract shall be completed by that date.
10-19	**Contractor**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation primarily liable for the acceptable performance of the work contracted and for the payment of all legal debts pertaining to the work who acts directly or through lawful agents or employees to complete the contract work.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-20	**Contractors Quality Control (QC) Facilities**	The Contractor's QC facilities in accordance with the Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP).
10-21	**Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP)**	Details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by the contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors.
10-22	**Control Strip**	A demonstration by the Contractor that the materials, equipment, and construction processes results in a product meeting the requirements of the specification.
10-23	**Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP)**	The overall plan for safety and phasing of a construction project developed by the airport operator, or developed by the airport operator's consultant and approved by the airport operator. It is included in the invitation for bids and becomes part of the project specifications.
10-24	**Drainage System**	The system of pipes, ditches, and structures by which surface or subsurface waters are collected and conducted from the airport area.
10-25	**Engineer**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for engineering, inspection, and/or observation of the contract work and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-26	**Equipment**	All machinery, together with the necessary supplies for upkeep and maintenance; and all tools and apparatus necessary for the proper construction and acceptable completion of the work.
10-27	**Extra Work**	An item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by change order or supplemental agreement, but which is found by the Owner's Engineer or Resident Project Representative (RPR) to be necessary to complete the work within the intended scope of the contract as previously modified.
10-28	**FAA**	The Federal Aviation Administration. When used to designate a person, FAA shall mean the Administrator or their duly authorized representative.
10-29	**Federal Specifications**	The federal specifications and standards, commercial item descriptions, and supplements, amendments,

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		and indices prepared and issued by the General Services Administration.
10-30	**Force Account**	**a.** Contract Force Account - A method of payment that addresses extra work performed by the Contractor on a time and material basis. **b.** Owner Force Account - Work performed for the project by the Owner's employees.
10-31	**Intention of Terms**	Whenever, in these specifications or on the plans, the words "directed," "required," "permitted," "ordered," "designated," "prescribed," or words of like import are used, it shall be understood that the direction, requirement, permission, order, designation, or prescription of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) is intended; and similarly, the words "approved," "acceptable," "satisfactory," or words of like import, shall mean approved by, or acceptable to, or satisfactory to the Engineer and/or RPR, subject in each case to the final determination of the Owner. Any reference to a specific requirement of a numbered paragraph of the contract specifications or a cited standard shall be interpreted to include all general requirements of the entire section, specification item, or cited standard that may be pertinent to such specific reference.
10-32	**Lighting**	A system of fixtures providing or controlling the light sources used on or near the airport or within the airport buildings. The field lighting includes all luminous signals, markers, floodlights, and illuminating devices used on or near the airport or to aid in the operation of aircraft landing at, taking off from, or taxiing on the airport surface.
10-33	**Major and Minor Contract Items**	A major contract item shall be any item that is listed in the proposal, the total cost of which is equal to or greater than 20% of the total amount of the award contract. All other items shall be considered minor contract items.
10-34	**Materials**	Any substance specified for use in the construction of the contract work.
10-35	**Modification of Standards (MOS)**	Any deviation from standard specifications applicable to material and construction methods in accordance with FAA Order 5300.1.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-36	**Notice to Proceed (NTP)**	A written notice to the Contractor to begin the actual contract work on a previously agreed to date. If applicable, the Notice to Proceed shall state the date on which the contract time begins.
10-37	**Owner**	The term "Owner" shall mean the party of the first part or the contracting agency signatory to the contract. Where the term "Owner" is capitalized in this document, it shall mean airport Sponsor only. The Owner for this project is **New Hanover County Airport Authority**.
10-38	**Passenger Facility Charge (PFC)**	Per 14 Code of Federal Regulations (CFR) Part 158 and 49 United States Code (USC) § 40117, a PFC is a charge imposed by a public agency on passengers enplaned at a commercial service airport it controls.
10-39	**Pavement Structure**	The combined surface course, base course(s), and subbase course(s), if any, considered as a single unit.
10-40	**Payment bond**	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will pay in full all bills and accounts for materials and labor used in the construction of the work.
10-41	**Performance bond**	The approved form of security furnished by the Contractor and their own surety as a guaranty that the Contractor will complete the work in accordance with the terms of the contract.
10-42	**Plans**	The official drawings or exact reproductions which show the location, character, dimensions and details of the airport and the work to be done and which are to be considered as a part of the contract, supplementary to the specifications. Plans may also be referred to as 'contract drawings.'
10-43	**Project**	The agreed scope of work for accomplishing specific airport development with respect to a particular airport.
10-44	**Proposal**	The written offer of the bidder (when submitted on the approved proposal form) to perform the contemplated work and furnish the necessary materials in accordance with the provisions of the plans and specifications.
10-45	**Proposal guaranty**	The security furnished with a proposal to guarantee that the bidder will enter into a contract if their own proposal is accepted by the Owner.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-46	**Quality Assurance (QA)**	Owner's responsibility to assure that construction work completed complies with specifications for payment.
10-47	**Quality Control (QC)**	Contractor's responsibility to control material(s) and construction processes to complete construction in accordance with project specifications.
10-48	**Quality Assurance (QA) Inspector**	An authorized representative of the Engineer and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) assigned to make all necessary inspections, observations, tests, and/or observation of tests of the work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor.
10-49	**Quality Assurance (QA) Laboratory**	The official quality assurance testing laboratories of the Owner or such other laboratories as may be designated by the Engineer or RPR. May also be referred to as Engineer's, Owner's, or QA Laboratory.
10-50	**Resident Project Representative (RPR)**	The individual, partnership, firm, or corporation duly authorized by the Owner to be responsible for all necessary inspections, observations, tests, and/or observations of tests of the contract work performed or being performed, or of the materials furnished or being furnished by the Contractor, and acting directly or through an authorized representative.
10-51	**Runway**	The area on the airport prepared for the landing and takeoff of aircraft.
10-52	**Runway Safety Area (RSA)**	A defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the RSA.
10-53	**Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD)**	Details how the Contractor will comply with the CSPP.
10-54	**Specifications**	A part of the contract containing the written directions and requirements for completing the contract work. Standards for specifying materials or testing which are cited in the contract specifications by reference shall have the same force and effect as if included in the contract physically.
10-55	**Sponsor**	A Sponsor is defined in 49 USC § 47102(24) as a public agency that submits to the FAA for an AIP grant; or a private Owner of a public-use airport that submits to the FAA an application for an AIP grant for the airport.

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
10-56	**Structures**	Airport facilities such as bridges; culverts; catch basins, inlets, retaining walls, cribbing; storm and sanitary sewer lines; water lines; underdrains; electrical ducts, manholes, handholes, lighting fixtures and bases; transformers; navigational aids; buildings; vaults; and, other manmade features of the airport that may be encountered in the work and not otherwise classified herein.
10-57	**Subgrade**	The soil that forms the pavement foundation.
10-58	**Superintendent**	The Contractor's executive representative who is present on the work during progress, authorized to receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR, and who shall supervise and direct the construction.
10-59	**Supplemental Agreement**	A written agreement between the Contractor and the Owner that establishes the basis of payment and contract time adjustment, if any, for the work affected by the supplemental agreement. A supplemental agreement is required if: (1) in scope work would increase or decrease the total amount of the awarded contract by more than 25%: (2) in scope work would increase or decrease the total of any major contract item by more than 25%; (3) work that is not within the scope of the originally awarded contract; or (4) adding or deleting of a major contract item.
10-60	**Surety**	The corporation, partnership, or individual, other than the Contractor, executing payment or performance bonds that are furnished to the Owner by the Contractor.
10-61	**Taxilane**	A taxiway designed for low speed movement of aircraft between aircraft parking areas and terminal areas.
10-62	**Taxiway**	The portion of the air operations area of an airport that has been designated by competent airport authority for movement of aircraft to and from the airport's runways, aircraft parking areas, and terminal areas.
10-63	**Taxiway/Taxilane Safety Area (TSA)**	A defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an aircraft. See the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) for limits of the TSA.
10-64	**Work**	The furnishing of all labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals necessary or convenient to the Contractor's performance of all duties and

Paragraph Number	Term	Definition
		obligations imposed by the contract, plans, and specifications.
10-65	**Working day**	A working day shall be any day other than a legal holiday, Saturday, or Sunday on which the normal working forces of the Contractor may proceed with regular work for at least six (6) hours toward completion of the contract. When work is suspended for causes beyond the Contractor's control, it will not be counted as a working day. Saturdays, Sundays and holidays on which the Contractor's forces engage in regular work will be considered as working days.
10-66	**Owner Defined terms**	CMAR – Construction Manager at Risk. The CMR acts as an Owner's consultant during the pre-development phase of the project.

END OF SECTION 10

SECTION 20
PROPOSAL REQUIREMENTS AND CONDITIONS

See sample bid form and instructions to bidders from CMR.

20-01 Advertisement (Notice to Bidders). Refer to CMR notice to bidders.

20-02 Qualification of bidders. All first tier bidders will be required to prequalify with the CMR prior to bidding.

Evidence of competency, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of statements covering the bidder's past experience on similar work, and a list of equipment and a list of key personnel that would be available for the work.

Each bidder shall furnish the Owner satisfactory evidence of their financial responsibility. Evidence of financial responsibility, unless otherwise specified, shall consist of a confidential statement or report of the bidder's financial resources and liabilities as of the last calendar year or the bidder's last fiscal year. Such statements or reports shall be certified by a public accountant. At the time of submitting such financial statements or reports, the bidder shall further certify whether their financial responsibility is approximately the same as stated or reported by the public accountant. If the bidder's financial responsibility has changed, the bidder shall qualify the public accountant's statement or report to reflect the bidder's true financial condition at the time such qualified statement or report is submitted to the Owner.

Unless otherwise specified, a bidder may submit evidence that they are prequalified with the State Highway Division and are on the current "bidder's list" of the state in which the proposed work is located. Evidence of State Highway Division prequalification may be submitted as evidence of financial responsibility in lieu of the certified statements or reports specified above.

20-03 Contents of proposal forms. **Refer to CMR proposal forms**. Bidder actions that may cause the **CMR**/Owner to deem a proposal irregular are given in paragraph 20-09 *Irregular proposals*.

Mobilization is limited to **7 percent** of the total project cost.

Refer to CMR for prebid conference requirements on this project.

20-04 Issuance of proposal forms. The **CMR**/Owner reserves the right to refuse to issue a proposal form to a prospective bidder if the bidder is in default for any of the following reasons:

a. Failure to comply with any prequalification regulations of the Owner, if such regulations are cited, or otherwise included, in the proposal as a requirement for bidding.
b. Failure to pay, or satisfactorily settle, all bills due for labor and materials on former contracts in force with the Owner at the time the Owner issues the proposal to a prospective bidder.

c. Documented record of Contractor default under previous contracts with the Owner.

d. Documented record of unsatisfactory work on previous contracts with the Owner.

20-05 Interpretation of estimated proposal quantities. An estimate of quantities of work to be done and materials to be furnished under these specifications is given in the proposal **and is for information only**. The Owner does not expressly, or by implication, agree that the actual quantities involved will correspond exactly therewith; nor shall the bidder plead misunderstanding or deception because of such estimates of quantities, or of the character, location, or other conditions pertaining to the work. Payment to the Contractor will be made only for the actual quantities of work performed or materials furnished in accordance with the plans and specifications. It is understood that the quantities may be increased or decreased as provided in the Section 40, paragraph 40-02, Alteration of Work and Quantities, without in any way invalidating the unit bid prices.

Refer to CMR proposal forms for estimated proposal quantity requirements for bidders.

20-06 Examination of plans, specifications, and site. The bidder is expected to carefully examine the site of the proposed work, the proposal, plans, specifications, and contract forms. Bidders shall satisfy themselves to the character, quality, and quantities of work to be performed, materials to be furnished, and to the requirements of the proposed contract. The submission of a proposal shall be prima facie evidence that the bidder has made such examination and is satisfied to the conditions to be encountered in performing the work and the requirements of the proposed contract, plans, and specifications.

Boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests are available for inspection of bidders. It is understood and agreed that such subsurface information, whether included in the plans, specifications, or otherwise made available to the bidder, was obtained and is intended for the Owner's design and estimating purposes only. Such information has been made available for the convenience of all bidders. It is further understood and agreed that each bidder is solely responsible for all assumptions, deductions, or conclusions which the bidder may make or obtain from their own examination of the boring logs and other records of subsurface investigations and tests that are furnished by the Owner.

20-07 Preparation of proposal. The bidder shall submit their proposal on the forms furnished by the **CMR**. All blank spaces in the proposal forms, unless explicitly stated otherwise, must be correctly filled in where indicated for each and every item for which a quantity is given. The bidder shall state the price (written in ink or typed) both in words and numerals which they propose for each pay item furnished in the proposal. In case of conflict between words and numerals, the words, unless obviously incorrect, shall govern.

The bidder shall correctly sign the proposal in ink. If the proposal is made by an individual, their name and post office address must be shown. If made by a partnership, the name and post office address of each member of the partnership must be shown. If made by a corporation, the person signing the proposal shall give the name of the state where the corporation was chartered and the name, titles, and business address of the president, secretary, and the treasurer. Anyone

signing a proposal as an agent shall file evidence of their authority to do so and that the signature is binding upon the firm or corporation.

20-08 Responsive and responsible bidder. A responsive bid conforms to all significant terms and conditions contained in the Owner's invitation for bid. It is the Owner's responsibility to decide if the exceptions taken by a bidder to the solicitation are material or not and the extent of deviation it is willing to accept.

A responsible bidder has the ability to perform successfully under the terms and conditions of a proposed procurement, as defined in 2 CFR § 200.318(h). This includes such matters as Contractor integrity, compliance with public policy, record of past performance, and financial and technical resources.

20-09 Irregular proposals. Proposals shall be considered irregular for the following reasons:

a. If the proposal is on a form other than that furnished by the Owner, or if the Owner's form is altered, or if any part of the proposal form is detached.
b. If there are unauthorized additions, conditional or alternate pay items, or irregularities of any kind that make the proposal incomplete, indefinite, or otherwise ambiguous.
c. If the proposal does not contain a ~~unit~~ price for each pay item listed in the proposal~~, except in the case of authorized alternate pay items, for which the bidder is not required to furnish a unit price~~.
d. If the proposal contains ~~unit~~ prices that are obviously unbalanced.
e. If the proposal is not accompanied by the proposal guaranty specified by the Owner.
f. If the applicable Disadvantaged Business Enterprise information is incomplete.

The Owner reserves the right to reject any irregular proposal and the right to waive technicalities if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and conforms to local laws and ordinances pertaining to the letting of construction contracts.

20-10 Bid guarantee. Each separate proposal shall be accompanied by a bid bond, certified check, or other specified acceptable collateral, in the amount specified in the proposal form. Such bond, check, or collateral, shall be made payable to the Owner. **The bid guarantee shall be 5% of the bid price.**

20-11 Delivery of proposal. Each proposal submitted shall be placed in a sealed envelope plainly marked with the project number, location of airport, and name and business address of the bidder on the outside. When sent by mail, preferably registered, the sealed proposal, marked as indicated above, should be enclosed in an additional envelope. No proposal will be considered unless received at the place specified in the advertisement or as modified by Addendum before the time specified for opening all bids. Proposals received after the bid opening time shall be returned to the bidder unopened.

Refer to CMR for additional proposal delivery requirements of the bidders.

20-12 Withdrawal or revision of proposals. A bidder may withdraw or revise (by withdrawal of one proposal and submission of another) a proposal provided that the bidder's request for withdrawal is received by the CMR in writing before the time specified for opening bids. Revised proposals must be received at the place specified in the advertisement before the time specified for opening all bids.

Refer to CMR for additional proposal withdrawal or revision requirements of the bidders.

20-13 Public opening of proposals. Proposals shall be opened, and read, publicly at the time and place specified in the advertisement. Bidders, their authorized agents, and other interested persons are invited to attend. Proposals that have been withdrawn (by written or telegraphic request) or received after the time specified for opening bids shall be returned to the bidder unopened.

Refer to CMR for additional proposal of public opening requirements of the bidders.

20-14 Disqualification of bidders. A bidder shall be considered disqualified for any of the following reasons:

a. Submitting more than one proposal from the same partnership, firm, or corporation under the same or different name.

b. Evidence of collusion among bidders. Bidders participating in such collusion shall be disqualified as bidders for any future work of the Owner until any such participating bidder has been reinstated by the Owner as a qualified bidder.

c. If the bidder is considered to be in "default" for any reason specified in paragraph 20-04, *Issuance of Proposal Forms,* of this section.

20-15 Discrepancies and Omissions. A Bidder who discovers discrepancies or omissions with the project bid documents shall immediately notify the **CMR** of the matter. A bidder that has doubt as to the true meaning of a project requirement may submit to the **CMR** a written request for interpretation no later than **3** days prior to bid opening.

Any interpretation of the project bid documents by the Owner's Engineer will be by written addendum issued by the Owner. The Owner will not consider any instructions, clarifications or interpretations of the bidding documents in any manner other than written addendum.

Refer to CMR for additional discrepancies and omissions requirements of the bidders.

END OF SECTION 20

SECTION 30
AWARD AND EXECUTION OF CONTRACT

****The CMR serves as the owner's fiduciary in bidding. Owner means CMR for Section 30****

See sample bid forms and instructions to bidders from CMR.

30-01 Consideration of proposals. After the proposals are publicly opened and read, they will be compared on the basis of the summation of the products obtained by multiplying the estimated quantities shown in the proposal by the unit bid prices. If a bidder's proposal contains a discrepancy between unit bid prices written in words and unit bid prices written in numbers, the unit bid price written in words shall govern.

Until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject a bidder's proposal for any of the following reasons:

a. If the proposal is irregular as specified in Section 20, paragraph 20-09, *Irregular Proposals*.
b. If the bidder is disqualified for any of the reasons specified Section 20, paragraph 20-14, *Disqualification of Bidders*.

In addition, until the award of a contract is made, the Owner reserves the right to reject any or all proposals, waive technicalities, if such waiver is in the best interest of the Owner and is in conformance with applicable state and local laws or regulations pertaining to the letting of construction contracts; advertise for new proposals; or proceed with the work otherwise. All such actions shall promote the Owner's best interests.

30-02 Award of contract. The award of a contract, if it is to be awarded, shall be made within **120** calendar days of the date specified for publicly opening proposals, unless otherwise specified herein.

If the Owner elects to proceed with an award of contract, the Owner will make award to the responsible bidder whose bid, conforming with all the material terms and conditions of the bid documents, is the lowest in price.

30-03 Cancellation of award. The Owner reserves the right to cancel the award without liability to the bidder, except return of proposal guaranty, at any time before a contract has been fully executed by all parties and is approved by the Owner in accordance with paragraph 30-07 *Approval of Contract*.

30-04 Return of proposal guaranty. All proposal guaranties, except those of the two lowest bidders, will be returned immediately after the Owner has made a comparison of bids as specified in the paragraph 30-01, *Consideration of Proposals*. Proposal guaranties of the two lowest bidders will be retained by the Owner until such time as an award is made, at which time, the unsuccessful bidder's proposal guaranty will be returned. The successful bidder's proposal guaranty will be

returned as soon as the Owner receives the contract bonds as specified in paragraph 30-05, *Requirements of Contract Bonds*.

30-05 Requirements of contract bonds. At the time of the execution of the contract, the successful bidder shall furnish the Owner a surety bond or bonds that have been fully executed by the bidder and the surety guaranteeing the performance of the work and the payment of all legal debts that may be incurred by reason of the Contractor's performance of the work. The surety and the form of the bond or bonds shall be acceptable to the Owner. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the surety bond or bonds shall be in a sum equal to the full amount of the contract.

30-06 Execution of contract. The successful bidder shall sign (execute) the necessary agreements for entering into the contract and return the signed contract to the Owner, along with the fully executed surety bond or bonds specified in paragraph 30-05, *Requirements of Contract Bonds,* of this section, within 15 calendar days from the date mailed or otherwise delivered to the successful bidder.

30-07 Approval of contract. Upon receipt of the contract and contract bond or bonds that have been executed by the successful bidder, the Owner shall complete the execution of the contract in accordance with local laws or ordinances, and return the fully executed contract to the Contractor. Delivery of the fully executed contract to the Contractor shall constitute the Owner's approval to be bound by the successful bidder's proposal and the terms of the contract.

30-08 Failure to execute contract. Failure of the successful bidder to execute the contract and furnish an acceptable surety bond or bonds within the period specified in paragraph 30-06, *Execution of Contract,* of this section shall be just cause for cancellation of the award and forfeiture of the proposal guaranty, not as a penalty, but as liquidated damages to the Owner.

END OF SECTION 30

SECTION 40
SCOPE OF WORK

40-01 Intent of contract. The intent of the contract is to provide for construction and completion, in every detail, of the work described. It is further intended that the Contractor shall furnish all labor, materials, equipment, tools, transportation, and supplies required to complete the work in accordance with the plans, specifications, and terms of the contract.

40-02 Alteration of work and quantities. The Owner reserves the right to make such changes in quantities and work as may be necessary or desirable to complete, in a satisfactory manner, the original intended work. Unless otherwise specified in the Contract, the Owner's Engineer or RPR shall be and is hereby authorized to make, in writing, such in-scope alterations in the work and variation of quantities as may be necessary to complete the work, provided such action does not represent a significant change in the character of the work.

For purpose of this section, a significant change in character of work means: any change that is outside the current contract scope of work; any change (increase or decrease) in the total contract cost by more than 25%; or any change in the total cost of a major contract item by more than 25%.

Work alterations and quantity variances that do not meet the definition of significant change in character of work shall not invalidate the contract nor release the surety. Contractor agrees to accept payment for such work alterations and quantity variances in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-03, *Compensation for Altered Quantities*.

Should the value of altered work or quantity variance meet the criteria for significant change in character of work, such altered work and quantity variance shall be covered by a supplemental agreement. Supplemental agreements shall also require consent of the Contractor's surety and separate performance and payment bonds. If the Owner and the Contractor are unable to agree on a unit adjustment for any contract item that requires a supplemental agreement, the Owner reserves the right to terminate the contract with respect to the item and make other arrangements for its completion.

40-03 Omitted items. The Owner, the Owner's Engineer or the RPR may provide written notice to the Contractor to omit from the work any contract item that does not meet the definition of major contract item. Major contract items may be omitted by a supplemental agreement. Such omission of contract items shall not invalidate any other contract provision or requirement.

Should a contract item be omitted or otherwise ordered to be non-performed, the Contractor shall be paid for all work performed toward completion of such item prior to the date of the order to omit such item. Payment for work performed shall be in accordance with Section 90, paragraph 90-04, *Payment for Omitted Items*.

40-04 Extra work. Should acceptable completion of the contract require the Contractor to perform an item of work not provided for in the awarded contract as previously modified by

change order or supplemental agreement, Owner may issue a Change Order to cover the necessary extra work. Change orders for extra work shall contain agreed unit prices for performing the change order work in accordance with the requirements specified in the order, and shall contain any adjustment to the contract time that, in the RPR's opinion, is necessary for completion of the extra work.

When determined by the RPR to be in the Owner's best interest, the RPR may order the Contractor to proceed with extra work as provided in Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *Payment for Extra Work*. Extra work that is necessary for acceptable completion of the project, but is not within the general scope of the work covered by the original contract shall be covered by a supplemental agreement as defined in Section 10, paragraph 10-59, *Supplemental Agreement*.

If extra work is essential to maintaining the project critical path, RPR may order the Contractor to commence the extra work under a Time and Material contract method. Once sufficient detail is available to establish the level of effort necessary for the extra work, the Owner shall initiate a change order or supplemental agreement to cover the extra work.

Any claim for payment of extra work that is not covered by written agreement (change order or supplemental agreement) shall be rejected by the Owner.

40-05 Maintenance of traffic. It is the explicit intention of the contract that the safety of aircraft, as well as the Contractor's equipment and personnel, is the most important consideration. The Contractor shall maintain traffic in the manner detailed in the Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP).

a. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOAs) of the airport with respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors as specified in Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *Limitation of Operations*. It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall provide for the uninterrupted operation of visual and electronic signals (including power supplies thereto) used in the guidance of aircraft while operating to, from, and upon the airport as specified in Section 70, paragraph 70-15, *Contractor's Responsibility for Utility Service and Facilities of Others*.

b. With respect to their own operations and the operations of all subcontractors, the Contractor shall provide marking, lighting, and other acceptable means of identifying personnel, equipment, vehicles, storage areas, and any work area or condition that may be hazardous to the operation of aircraft, fire-rescue equipment, or maintenance vehicles at the airport in accordance with the construction safety and phasing plan (CSPP) and the safety plan compliance document (SPCD).

c. When the contract requires the maintenance of an existing road, street, or highway during the Contractor's performance of work that is otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, and specifications, the Contractor shall keep the road, street, or highway open to all traffic and shall provide maintenance as may be required to accommodate traffic. The Contractor, at their expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel. The

Contractor shall furnish, erect, and maintain barricades, warning signs, flag person, and other traffic control devices in reasonable conformity with the Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) (http://mutcd.fhwa.dot.gov/), unless otherwise specified. The Contractor shall also construct and maintain in a safe condition any temporary connections necessary for ingress to and egress from abutting property or intersecting roads, streets or highways.

40-06 Removal of existing structures. All existing structures encountered within the established lines, grades, or grading sections shall be removed by the Contractor, unless such existing structures are otherwise specified to be relocated, adjusted up or down, salvaged, abandoned in place, reused in the work or to remain in place. The cost of removing such existing structures shall not be measured or paid for directly, but shall be included in the various contract items.

Should the Contractor encounter an existing structure (above or below ground) in the work for which the disposition is not indicated on the plans, the Resident Project Representative (RPR) shall be notified prior to disturbing such structure. The disposition of existing structures so encountered shall be immediately determined by the RPR in accordance with the provisions of the contract.

Except as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-07, *Rights in and Use of Materials Found in the Work*, it is intended that all existing materials or structures that may be encountered (within the lines, grades, or grading sections established for completion of the work) shall be used in the work as otherwise provided for in the contract and shall remain the property of the Owner when so used in the work.

40-07 Rights in and use of materials found in the work. Should the Contractor encounter any material such as (but not restricted to) sand, stone, gravel, slag, or concrete slabs within the established lines, grades, or grading sections, the use of which is intended by the terms of the contract to be embankment, the Contractor may at their own option either:

a. Use such material in another contract item, providing such use is approved by the RPR and is in conformance with the contract specifications applicable to such use; or,

b. Remove such material from the site, upon written approval of the RPR; or

c. Use such material for the Contractor's own temporary construction on site; or,

d. Use such material as intended by the terms of the contract.

Should the Contractor wish to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall request the RPR's approval in advance of such use.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's request to exercise option a., b., or c., the Contractor shall be paid for the excavation or removal of such material at the applicable contract price. The Contractor shall replace, at their expense, such removed or excavated material with an agreed equal volume of material that is acceptable for use in constructing embankment, backfills, or otherwise to the extent that such replacement material is needed to complete the contract work.

The Contractor shall not be charged for use of such material used in the work or removed from the site.

Should the RPR approve the Contractor's exercise of option a., the Contractor shall be paid, at the applicable contract price, for furnishing and installing such material in accordance with requirements of the contract item in which the material is used.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall make no claim for delays by reason of their own exercise of option a., b., or c.

The Contractor shall not excavate, remove, or otherwise disturb any material, structure, or part of a structure which is located outside the lines, grades, or grading sections established for the work, except where such excavation or removal is provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

40-08 Final cleanup. Upon completion of the work and before acceptance and final payment will be made, the Contractor shall remove from the site all machinery, equipment, surplus and discarded materials, rubbish, temporary structures, and stumps or portions of trees. The Contractor shall cut all brush and woods within the limits indicated and shall leave the site in a neat and presentable condition. Material cleared from the site and deposited on adjacent property will not be considered as having been disposed of satisfactorily, unless the Contractor has obtained the written permission of the property Owner.

END OF SECTION 40

SECTION 50
CONTROL OF WORK

50-01 Authority of the Resident Project Representative (RPR). The RPR has final authority regarding the interpretation of project specification requirements. The RPR shall determine acceptability of the quality of materials furnished, method of performance of work performed, and the manner and rate of performance of the work. The RPR does not have the authority to accept work that does not conform to specification requirements. **The RPR shall also mean Engineer in the Contract documents.**

50-02 Conformity with plans and specifications. All work and all materials furnished shall be in reasonably close conformity with the lines, grades, grading sections, cross-sections, dimensions, material requirements, and testing requirements that are specified (including specified tolerances) in the contract, plans, or specifications.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product not within reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications, but that the portion of the work affected will, in their opinion, result in a finished product having a level of safety, economy, durability, and workmanship acceptable to the Owner, the RPR will advise the Owner of their determination that the affected work be accepted and remain in place. The RPR will document the determination and recommend to the Owner a basis of acceptance that will provide for an adjustment in the contract price for the affected portion of the work. Changes in the contract price must be covered by contract change order or supplemental agreement as applicable.

If the RPR finds the materials furnished, work performed, or the finished product are not in reasonably close conformity with the plans and specifications and have resulted in an unacceptable finished product, the affected work or materials shall be removed and replaced or otherwise corrected by and at the expense of the Contractor in accordance with the RPR's written orders.

The term "reasonably close conformity" shall not be construed as waiving the Contractor's responsibility to complete the work in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. The term shall not be construed as waiving the RPR's responsibility to insist on strict compliance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications during the Contractor's execution of the work, when, in the RPR's opinion, such compliance is essential to provide an acceptable finished portion of the work.

The term "reasonably close conformity" is also intended to provide the RPR with the authority, after consultation with the Sponsor and FAA, to use sound engineering judgment in their determinations to accept work that is not in strict conformity, but will provide a finished product equal to or better than that required by the requirements of the contract, plans and specifications.

The RPR will not be responsible for the Contractor's means, methods, techniques, sequences, or procedures of construction or the safety precautions incident thereto.

50-03 Coordination of contract, plans, and specifications. The contract, plans, specifications, and all referenced standards cited are essential parts of the contract requirements. If electronic files are provided and used on the project and there is a conflict between the electronic files and hard copy plans, the hard copy plans shall govern. A requirement occurring in one is as binding as though occurring in all. They are intended to be complementary and to describe and provide for a complete work. In case of discrepancy, calculated dimensions will govern over scaled dimensions; contract technical specifications shall govern over contract general provisions, plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited advisory circulars (ACs); contract general provisions shall govern over plans, cited standards for materials or testing, and cited ACs; plans shall govern over cited standards for materials or testing and cited ACs. If any paragraphs contained in the Special Provisions conflict with General Provisions or Technical Specifications, the Special Provisions shall govern.

From time to time, discrepancies within cited testing standards occur due to the timing of the change, edits, and/or replacement of the standards. If the Contractor discovers any apparent discrepancy within standard test methods, the Contractor shall immediately ask the RPR for an interpretation and decision, and such decision shall be final.

The Contractor shall not take advantage of any apparent error or omission on the plans or specifications. In the event the Contractor discovers any apparent error or discrepancy, Contractor shall immediately notify the Owner or the designated representative in writing requesting their written interpretation and decision.

50-04 List of Special Provisions. Refer to Special Provisions section.

50-05 Cooperation of Contractor. The Contractor shall be supplied with an electronic PDF of the plans and specifications. The Contractor shall have available on the construction site at all times one hardcopy each of the plans and specifications. Additional hard copies of plans and specifications may be obtained by the Contractor for the cost of reproduction.

The Contractor shall give constant attention to the work to facilitate the progress thereof, and shall cooperate with the RPR and their inspectors and with other Contractors in every way possible. The Contractor shall have a competent superintendent on the work at all times who is fully authorized as their agent on the work. The superintendent shall be capable of reading and thoroughly understanding the plans and specifications and shall receive and fulfill instructions from the RPR or their authorized representative.

50-06 Cooperation between Contractors. The Owner reserves the right to contract for and perform other or additional work on or near the work covered by this contract.

When separate contracts are let within the limits of any one project, each Contractor shall conduct the work not to interfere with or hinder the progress of completion of the work being performed by other Contractors. Contractors working on the same project shall cooperate with each other as directed.

Each Contractor involved shall assume all liability, financial or otherwise, in connection with their own contract and shall protect and hold harmless the Owner from any and all damages or claims that may arise because of inconvenience, delays, or loss experienced because of the presence and operations of other Contractors working within the limits of the same project.

The Contractor shall arrange their work and shall place and dispose of the materials being used to not interfere with the operations of the other Contractors within the limits of the same project. The Contractor shall join their work with that of the others in an acceptable manner and shall perform it in proper sequence to that of the others.

50-07 Construction layout and stakes. The Engineer/RPR shall *provide* necessary horizontal and vertical control in the plans.

Prior to the start of construction, the Contractor will check all control points for horizontal and vertical accuracy and certify in writing to the RPR that the Contractor concurs with survey control *provided* for the project. All lines, grades and measurements from control points necessary for the proper execution and control of the work on this project will be provided to the RPR. The Contractor is responsible to establish all layout required for the construction of the project.

Copies of survey notes will be provided to the RPR for each area of construction and for each placement of material as specified to allow the RPR to make periodic checks for conformance with plan grades, alignments and grade tolerances required by the applicable material specifications. Surveys will be provided to the RPR prior to commencing work items that cover or disturb the survey staking. Survey(s) and notes shall be provided in the following format(s): Digitally as .dwg (Civil 3D 2022 or newer), .xml, or .text AND as a PDF.

Laser, GPS, String line, or other automatic control shall be checked with temporary control as necessary. In the case of error, on the part of the Contractor, their surveyor, employees or subcontractors, resulting in established grades, alignment or grade tolerances that do not concur with those specified or shown on the plans, the Contractor is solely responsible for correction, removal, replacement and all associated costs at no additional cost to the Owner.

All survey should be conducted to an accuracy of one hundredth of a foot.

No direct payment will be made, unless otherwise specified in contract documents, for this labor, materials, or other expenses. The cost shall be included in the price of the bid for the various items of the Contract.

50-08 Authority and duties of Quality Assurance (QA) inspectors. QA inspectors shall be authorized to inspect all work done and all material furnished. Such QA inspection may extend to all or any part of the work and to the preparation, fabrication, or manufacture of the materials to be used. QA inspectors are not authorized to revoke, alter, or waive any provision of the contract. QA inspectors are not authorized to issue instructions contrary to the plans and specifications or to act as foreman for the Contractor.

QA Inspectors are authorized to notify the Contractor or their representatives of any failure of the work or materials to conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications and to reject such nonconforming materials in question until such issues can be referred to the RPR for a decision.

50-09 Inspection of the work. All materials and each part or detail of the work shall be subject to inspection. The RPR shall be allowed access to all parts of the work and shall be furnished with such information and assistance by the Contractor as is required to make a complete and detailed inspection.

If the RPR requests it, the Contractor, at any time before acceptance of the work, shall remove or uncover such portions of the finished work as may be directed. After examination, the Contractor shall restore said portions of the work to the standard required by the specifications. Should the work thus exposed or examined prove acceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be paid for as extra work; but should the work so exposed or examined prove unacceptable, the uncovering, or removing, and the replacing of the covering or making good of the parts removed will be at the Contractor's expense.

Provide advance written notice to the RPR of work the Contractor plans to perform each week and each day. Any work done or materials used without written notice and allowing opportunity for inspection by the RPR may be ordered removed and replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Should the contract work include relocation, adjustment, or any other modification to existing facilities, not the property of the (contract) Owner, authorized representatives of the Owners of such facilities shall have the right to inspect such work. Such inspection shall in no sense make any facility owner a party to the contract, and shall in no way interfere with the rights of the parties to this contract.

50-10 Removal of unacceptable and unauthorized work. All work that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications will be considered unacceptable, unless otherwise determined acceptable by the RPR as provided in paragraph 50-02, *Conformity with Plans and Specifications*.

Unacceptable work, whether the result of poor workmanship, use of defective materials, damage through carelessness, or any other cause found to exist prior to the final acceptance of the work, shall be removed immediately and replaced in an acceptable manner in accordance with the provisions of Section 70, paragraph 70-14, *Contractor's Responsibility for Work*.

No removal work made under provision of this paragraph shall be done without lines and grades having been established by the RPR. Work done contrary to the instructions of the RPR, work done beyond the lines shown on the plans or as established by the RPR, except as herein specified, or any extra work done without authority, will be considered as unauthorized and will not be paid for under the provisions of the contract. Work so done may be ordered removed or replaced at the Contractor's expense.

Upon failure on the part of the Contractor to comply with any order of the RPR made under the provisions of this subsection, the RPR will have authority to cause unacceptable work to be remedied or removed and replaced; and unauthorized work to be removed and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-11 Load restrictions. The Contractor shall comply with all legal load restrictions in the hauling of materials on public roads beyond the limits of the work. A special permit will not relieve the Contractor of liability for damage that may result from the moving of material or equipment.

The operation of equipment of such weight or so loaded as to cause damage to structures or to any other type of construction will not be permitted. Hauling of materials over the base course or surface course under construction shall be limited as directed. No loads will be permitted on a concrete pavement, base, or structure before the expiration of the curing period. The Contractor, at their own expense, shall be responsible for the repair to equal or better than preconstruction conditions of any damage caused by the Contractor's equipment and personnel.

50-12 Maintenance during construction. The Contractor shall maintain the work during construction and until the work is accepted. Maintenance shall constitute continuous and effective work prosecuted day by day, with adequate equipment and forces so that the work is maintained in satisfactory condition at all times.

In the case of a contract for the placing of a course upon a course or subgrade previously constructed, the Contractor shall maintain the previous course or subgrade during all construction operations.

All costs of maintenance work during construction and before the project is accepted shall be included in the unit prices bid on the various contract items **and/or the lump sum price**, and the Contractor will not be paid an additional amount for such work.

50-13 Failure to maintain the work. Should the Contractor at any time fail to maintain the work as provided in paragraph 50-12, *Maintenance during Construction*, the RPR shall immediately notify the Contractor of such noncompliance. Such notification shall specify a reasonable time within which the Contractor shall be required to remedy such unsatisfactory maintenance condition. The time specified will give due consideration to the exigency that exists.

Should the Contractor fail to respond to the RPR's notification, the Owner may suspend any work necessary for the Owner to correct such unsatisfactory maintenance condition, depending on the exigency that exists. Any maintenance cost incurred by the Owner, shall be recovered as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

50-14 Partial acceptance. If at any time during the execution of the project the Contractor substantially completes a usable unit or portion of the work, the occupancy of which will benefit the Owner, the Contractor may request the RPR to make final inspection of that unit. If the RPR finds upon inspection that the unit has been satisfactorily completed in compliance with the contract, the RPR may accept it as being complete, and the Contractor may be relieved of further

responsibility for that unit. Such partial acceptance and beneficial occupancy by the Owner shall not void or alter any provision of the contract.

50-15 Final acceptance. Upon due notice from the Contractor of presumptive completion of the entire project, the RPR and Owner will make an inspection. If all construction provided for and contemplated by the contract is found to be complete in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications, such inspection shall constitute the final inspection. The RPR shall notify the Contractor in writing of final acceptance as of the date of the final inspection.

If, however, the inspection discloses any work, in whole or in part, as being unsatisfactory, the RPR will notify the Contractor and the Contractor shall correct the unsatisfactory work. Upon correction of the work, another inspection will be made which shall constitute the final inspection, provided the work has been satisfactorily completed. In such event, the RPR will make the final acceptance and notify the Contractor in writing of this acceptance as of the date of final inspection.

50-16 Claims for adjustment and disputes. If for any reason the Contractor deems that additional compensation is due for work or materials not clearly provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications or previously authorized as extra work, the Contractor shall notify the RPR in writing of their intention to claim such additional compensation before the Contractor begins the work on which the Contractor bases the claim. If such notification is not given or the RPR is not afforded proper opportunity by the Contractor for keeping strict account of actual cost as required, then the Contractor hereby agrees to waive any claim for such additional compensation. Such notice by the Contractor and the fact that the RPR has kept account of the cost of the work shall not in any way be construed as proving or substantiating the validity of the claim. When the work on which the claim for additional compensation is based has been completed, the Contractor shall, within 10 calendar days, submit a written claim to the RPR who will present it to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances.

Nothing in this subsection shall be construed as a waiver of the Contractor's right to dispute final payment based on differences in measurements or computations.

END OF SECTION 50

SECTION 60
CONTROL OF MATERIALS

60-01 Source of supply and quality requirements. The materials used in the work shall conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications. Unless otherwise specified, such materials that are manufactured or processed shall be new (as compared to used or reprocessed).

In order to expedite the inspection and testing of materials, the Contractor shall furnish documentation to the RPR as to the origin, composition, and manufacture of all materials to be used in the work. Documentation shall be furnished promptly after execution of the contract but, in all cases, prior to delivery of such materials.

At the Engineer and RPR's option, materials may be approved at the source of supply before delivery. If it is found after trial that sources of supply for previously approved materials do not produce specified products, the Contractor shall furnish materials from other sources.

~~The Contractor shall furnish airport lighting equipment that meets the requirements of the specifications; and is listed in AC 150/5345-53, *Airport Lighting Equipment Certification Program* and *Addendum*, that is in effect on the date of advertisement.~~

60-02 Samples, tests, and cited specifications. All materials used in the work shall be inspected, tested, and approved by the RPR before incorporation in the work unless otherwise designated. Any work in which untested materials are used without approval or written permission of the RPR shall be performed at the Contractor's risk. Materials found to be unacceptable and unauthorized will not be paid for and, if directed by the RPR, shall be removed at the Contractor's expense.

Unless otherwise designated, quality assurance tests will be made by and at the expense of the Owner in accordance with the cited standard methods of ASTM, American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO), federal specifications, Commercial Item Descriptions, and all other cited methods, which are current on the date of advertisement for bids.

The testing organizations performing on-site quality assurance field tests shall have copies of all referenced standards on the construction site for use by all technicians and other personnel. Unless otherwise designated, samples for quality assurance will be taken by a qualified representative of the RPR. All materials being used are subject to inspection, test, or rejection at any time prior to or during incorporation into the work. Copies of all tests will be furnished to the Contractor's representative at their request after review and approval of the RPR.

A copy of all Contractor QC test data shall be provided to the RPR daily, along with printed reports, in an approved format, on a weekly basis. After completion of the project, and prior to final payment, the Contractor shall submit a final report to the RPR showing all test data reports, plus an analysis of all results showing ranges, averages, and corrective action taken on all failing tests.

The Contractor shall employ a Quality Control (QC) testing organization to perform all Contractor required QC tests in accordance with C-100, project specifications and NCDOT 2024 Standard

Specifications for Roads and Structures. The Contractor shall submit to the Engineer resumes of all testing organizations and individual persons who will be performing the tests and the Engineer will determine if such persons are qualified.

60-03 Certification of compliance/analysis (COC/COA). The RPR may permit the use, prior to sampling and testing, of certain materials or assemblies when accompanied by manufacturer's COC stating that such materials or assemblies fully comply with the requirements of the contract. The certificate shall be signed by the manufacturer. Each lot of such materials or assemblies delivered to the work must be accompanied by a certificate of compliance in which the lot is clearly identified. The COA is the manufacturer's COC and includes all applicable test results.

Materials or assemblies used on the basis of certificates of compliance may be sampled and tested at any time and if found not to be in conformity with contract requirements will be subject to rejection whether in place or not.

The form and distribution of certificates of compliance shall be as approved by the RPR.

When a material or assembly is specified by "brand name or equal" and the Contractor elects to furnish the specified "or equal," the Contractor shall be required to furnish the manufacturer's certificate of compliance for each lot of such material or assembly delivered to the work. Such certificate of compliance shall clearly identify each lot delivered and shall certify as to:

a. Conformance to the specified performance, testing, quality or dimensional requirements; and,
b. Suitability of the material or assembly for the use intended in the contract work.

The RPR shall be the sole judge as to whether the proposed "or equal" is suitable for use in the work.

The RPR reserves the right to refuse permission for use of materials or assemblies on the basis of certificates of compliance.

60-04 Plant inspection. The RPR or their authorized representative may inspect, at its source, any specified material or assembly to be used in the work. Manufacturing plants may be inspected from time to time for the purpose of determining compliance with specified manufacturing methods or materials to be used in the work and to obtain samples required for acceptance of the material or assembly.

Should the RPR conduct plant inspections, the following conditions shall exist:

a. The RPR shall have the cooperation and assistance of the Contractor and the producer with whom the Contractor has contracted for materials.
b. The RPR shall have full entry at all reasonable times to such parts of the plant that concern the manufacture or production of the materials being furnished.

c. If required by the RPR, the Contractor shall arrange for adequate office or working space that may be reasonably needed for conducting plant inspections. Place office or working space in a convenient location with respect to the plant.

It is understood and agreed that the Owner shall have the right to retest any material that has been tested and approved at the source of supply after it has been delivered to the site. The RPR shall have the right to reject only material which, when retested, does not meet the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications.

60-05 Engineer/ Resident Project Representative (RPR) field office. Not used.

60-06 Storage of materials. Materials shall be stored to assure the preservation of their quality and fitness for the work. Stored materials, even though approved before storage, may again be inspected prior to their use in the work. Stored materials shall be located to facilitate their prompt inspection. The Contractor shall coordinate the storage of all materials with the RPR. Materials to be stored on airport property shall not create an obstruction to air navigation nor shall they interfere with the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft. Unless otherwise shown on the plans and/or CSPP, the storage of materials and the location of the Contractor's plant and parked equipment or vehicles shall be as directed by the RPR. Private property shall not be used for storage purposes without written permission of the Owner or lessee of such property. The Contractor shall make all arrangements and bear all expenses for the storage of materials on private property. Upon request, the Contractor shall furnish the RPR a copy of the property Owner's permission.

All storage sites on private or airport property shall be restored to their original condition by the Contractor at their expense, except as otherwise agreed to (in writing) by the Owner or lessee of the property.

60-07 Unacceptable materials. Any material or assembly that does not conform to the requirements of the contract, plans, or specifications shall be considered unacceptable and shall be rejected. The Contractor shall remove any rejected material or assembly from the site of the work, unless otherwise instructed by the RPR.

Rejected material or assembly, the defects of which have been corrected by the Contractor, shall not be returned to the site of the work until such time as the RPR has approved its use in the work.

60-08 Owner furnished materials. The Contractor shall furnish all materials required to complete the work, except those specified, if any, to be furnished by the Owner. Owner-furnished materials shall be made available to the Contractor at the location specified.

All costs of handling, transportation from the specified location to the site of work, storage, and installing Owner-furnished materials shall be included in the unit price bid for the contract item in which such Owner-furnished material is used **and/or the lump sum price**.

After any Owner-furnished material has been delivered to the location specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for any demurrage, damage, loss, or other deficiencies that may occur during the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of such Owner-furnished material. The Owner will deduct from any monies due or to become due the Contractor any cost incurred by the Owner in making good such loss due to the Contractor's handling, storage, or use of Owner-furnished materials.

END OF SECTION 60

SECTION 70
LEGAL REGULATIONS AND RESPONSIBILITY TO PUBLIC

70-01 Laws to be observed. The Contractor shall keep fully informed of all federal and state laws, all local laws, ordinances, and regulations and all orders and decrees of bodies or tribunals having any jurisdiction or authority, which in any manner affect those engaged or employed on the work, or which in any way affect the conduct of the work. The Contractor shall at all times observe and comply with all such laws, ordinances, regulations, orders, and decrees; and shall protect and indemnify the Owner and all their officers, agents, or servants against any claim or liability arising from or based on the violation of any such law, ordinance, regulation, order, or decree, whether by the Contractor or the Contractor's employees.

70-02 Permits, licenses, and taxes. The Contractor shall procure all permits and licenses, pay all charges, fees, and taxes, and give all notices necessary and incidental to the due and lawful execution of the work.

70-03 Patented devices, materials, and processes. If the Contractor is required or desires to use any design, device, material, or process covered by letters of patent or copyright, the Contractor shall provide for such use by suitable legal agreement with the Patentee or Owner. The Contractor and the surety shall indemnify and hold harmless the Owner, any third party, or political subdivision from any and all claims for infringement by reason of the use of any such patented design, device, material or process, or any trademark or copyright, and shall indemnify the Owner for any costs, expenses, and damages which it may be obliged to pay by reason of an infringement, at any time during the execution or after the completion of the work.

70-04 Restoration of surfaces disturbed by others. The Owner reserves the right to authorize the construction, reconstruction, or maintenance of any public or private utility service, FAA or National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) facility, or a utility service of another government agency at any time during the progress of the work. To the extent that such construction, reconstruction, or maintenance has been coordinated with the Owner, such authorized work (by others) must be shown on the plans and is indicated as follows:

Duke Energy:	**Electrical**
Time Warner Cable:	**Service Lines**
CenturyLink:	**Copper and Fiber Optic Service Lines**
Airport:	**Fiber Optic and Copper Cables**
Cape Fear Public Utilities Authority (CFPUA):	**Water and Sewer**
Piedmont Natural Gas:	**Gas**

Except as listed above, the Contractor shall not permit any individual, firm, or corporation to excavate or otherwise disturb such utility services or facilities located within the limits of the work without the written permission of the RPR.

Should the Owner of public or private utility service, FAA, or NOAA facility, or a utility service of another government agency be authorized to construct, reconstruct, or maintain such utility service or facility during the progress of the work, the Contractor shall cooperate with such Owners by arranging and performing the work in this contract to facilitate such construction, reconstruction or maintenance by others whether or not such work by others is listed above. When ordered as extra work by the RPR, the Contractor shall make all necessary repairs to the work which are due to such authorized work by others, unless otherwise provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications. It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to make any claim for damages due to such authorized work by others or for any delay to the work resulting from such authorized work.

70-05 Federal Participation. The United States Government has agreed to reimburse the Owner for some portion of the contract costs. The contract work is subject to the inspection and approval of duly authorized representatives of the FAA Administrator. No requirement of this contract shall be construed as making the United States a party to the contract nor will any such requirement interfere, in any way, with the rights of either party to the contract.

70-06 Sanitary, health, and safety provisions. The Contractor's worksite and facilities shall comply with applicable federal, state, and local requirements for health, safety and sanitary provisions.

70-07 Public convenience and safety. The Contractor shall control their operations and those of their subcontractors and all suppliers, to assure the least inconvenience to the traveling public. Under all circumstances, safety shall be the most important consideration.

The Contractor shall maintain the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft and vehicular traffic with respect to their own operations and those of their own subcontractors and all suppliers in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-05, *Maintenance of Traffic,* and shall limit such operations for the convenience and safety of the traveling public as specified in Section 80, paragraph 80-04, *Limitation of Operations*.

The Contractor shall remove or control debris and rubbish resulting from its work operations at frequent intervals, and upon the order of the RPR. If the RPR determines the existence of Contractor debris in the work site represents a hazard to airport operations and the Contractor is unable to respond in a prompt and reasonable manner, the RPR reserves the right to assign the task of debris removal to a third party and recover the resulting costs as a liquidated damage against the Contractor.

70-08 Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP). The Contractor shall complete the work in accordance with the approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) developed in accordance with AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP is included in the 100% project documents, see Appendix E. Should the FAA require revisions to the CSPP at any time, the Contractor shall fully comply with the revisions in completing the project related work.

70-09 Use of explosives. The use of explosives is not permitted on this project is NOT permitted.

70-10 Protection and restoration of property and landscape. The Contractor shall be responsible for the preservation of all public and private property and shall protect carefully from disturbance or damage all land monuments and property markers until the Engineer/RPR has witnessed or otherwise referenced their location and shall not move them until directed.

The Contractor shall be responsible for all damage or injury to property of any character, during the execution of the work, resulting from any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in manner or method of executing the work, or at any time due to defective work or materials, and said responsibility shall not be released until the project has been completed and accepted.

When or where any direct or indirect damage or injury is done to public or private property by or on account of any act, omission, neglect, or misconduct in the execution of the work, or in consequence of the non-execution thereof by the Contractor, the Contractor shall restore, at their expense, such property to a condition similar or equal to that existing before such damage or injury was done, by repairing, or otherwise restoring as may be directed, or the Contractor shall make good such damage or injury in an acceptable manner.

70-11 Responsibility for damage claims. The Contractor shall indemnify and hold harmless the Engineer/RPR and the Owner and their officers, agents, and employees from all suits, actions, or claims, of any character, brought because of any injuries or damage received or sustained by any person, persons, or property on account of the operations of the Contractor; or on account of or in consequence of any neglect in safeguarding the work; or through use of unacceptable materials in constructing the work; or because of any act or omission, neglect, or misconduct of said Contractor; or because of any claims or amounts recovered from any infringements of patent, trademark, or copyright; or from any claims or amounts arising or recovered under the "Workmen's Compensation Act," or any other law, ordinance, order, or decree. Money due the Contractor under and by virtue of their own contract considered necessary by the Owner for such purpose may be retained for the use of the Owner or, in case no money is due, their own surety may be held until such suits, actions, or claims for injuries or damages shall have been settled and suitable evidence to that effect furnished to the Owner, except that money due the Contractor will not be withheld when the Contractor produces satisfactory evidence that he or she is adequately protected by public liability and property damage insurance.

70-12 Third party beneficiary clause. It is specifically agreed between the parties executing the contract that it is not intended by any of the provisions of any part of the contract to create for the public or any member thereof, a third-party beneficiary or to authorize anyone not a party to the contract to maintain a suit for personal injuries or property damage pursuant to the terms or provisions of the contract.

70-13 Opening sections of the work to traffic. If it is necessary for the Contractor to complete portions of the contract work for the beneficial occupancy of the Owner prior to completion of the entire contract, such "phasing" of the work must be specified below and indicated on the

approved Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the project plans. When so specified, the Contractor shall complete such portions of the work on or before the date specified or as otherwise specified.

Upon completion of any portion of work listed above, such portion shall be accepted by the Owner in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Partial Acceptance*.

No portion of the work may be opened by the Contractor until directed by the Owner in writing. Should it become necessary to open a portion of the work to traffic on a temporary or intermittent basis, such openings shall be made when, in the opinion of the RPR, such portion of the work is in an acceptable condition to support the intended traffic. Temporary or intermittent openings are considered to be inherent in the work and shall not constitute either acceptance of the portion of the work so opened or a waiver of any provision of the contract. Any damage to the portion of the work so opened that is not attributable to traffic which is permitted by the Owner shall be repaired by the Contractor at their expense.

The Contractor shall make their own estimate of the inherent difficulties involved in completing the work under the conditions herein described and shall not claim any added compensation by reason of delay or increased cost due to opening a portion of the contract work.

The Contractor must conform to safety standards contained AC 150/5370-2 and the approved CSPP.

Contractor shall refer to the plans, specifications, and the approved CSPP to identify barricade requirements, temporary and/or permanent markings, airfield lighting, guidance signs and other safety requirements prior to opening up sections of work to traffic.

70-14 Contractor's responsibility for work. Until the RPR's final written acceptance of the entire completed work, excepting only those portions of the work accepted in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-14, *Partial Acceptance*, the Contractor shall have the charge and care thereof and shall take every precaution against injury or damage to any part due to the action of the elements or from any other cause, whether arising from the execution or from the non-execution of the work. The Contractor shall rebuild, repair, restore, and make good all injuries or damages to any portion of the work occasioned by any of the above causes before final acceptance and shall bear the expense thereof except damage to the work due to unforeseeable causes beyond the control of and without the fault or negligence of the Contractor, including but not restricted to acts of God such as earthquake, tidal wave, tornado, hurricane or other cataclysmic phenomenon of nature, or acts of the public enemy or of government authorities.

If the work is suspended for any cause whatever, the Contractor shall be responsible for the work and shall take such precautions necessary to prevent damage to the work. The Contractor shall provide for normal drainage and shall erect necessary temporary structures, signs, or other facilities at their own expense. During such period of suspension of work, the Contractor shall properly and continuously maintain in an acceptable growing condition all living material in newly

established planting, seeding, and sodding furnished under the contract, and shall take adequate precautions to protect new tree growth and other important vegetative growth against injury.

70-15 Contractor's responsibility for utility service and facilities of others. As provided in paragraph 70-04, *Restoration of Surfaces Disturbed by Others*, the Contractor shall cooperate with the owner of any public or private utility service, FAA or NOAA, or a utility service of another government agency that may be authorized by the Owner to construct, reconstruct or maintain such utility services or facilities during the progress of the work. In addition, the Contractor shall control their operations to prevent the unscheduled interruption of such utility services and facilities.

To the extent that such public or private utility services, FAA, or NOAA facilities, or utility services of another governmental agency are known to exist within the limits of the contract work, the approximate locations have been indicated on the plans and/or in the contract documents.

Duke Energy:	**Electrical**
Time Warner Cable:	**Service Lines**
CenturyLink:	**Copper and Fiber Optic Service Lines**
Airport:	**Fiber Optic and Copper Cables**
Cape Fear Public Utilities Authority (CFPUA):	**Water and Sewer**
Piedmont Natural Gas:	**Gas**

It is understood and agreed that the Owner does not guarantee the accuracy or the completeness of the location information relating to existing utility services, facilities, or structures that may be shown on the plans or encountered in the work. Any inaccuracy or omission in such information shall not relieve the Contractor of the responsibility to protect such existing features from damage or unscheduled interruption of service.

It is further understood and agreed that the Contractor shall, upon execution of the contract, notify the Owners of all utility services or other facilities of their plan of operations. Such notification shall be in writing addressed to "The Person to Contact" as provided in this paragraph and paragraph 70-04, *Restoration of Surfaces Disturbed By Others*. A copy of each notification shall be given to the RPR.

In addition to the general written notification provided, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to keep such individual Owners advised of changes in their plan of operations that would affect such Owners.

Prior to beginning the work in the general vicinity of an existing utility service or facility, the Contractor shall again notify each such Owner of their plan of operation. If, in the Contractor's opinion, the Owner's assistance is needed to locate the utility service or facility or the presence of a representative of the Owner is desirable to observe the work, such advice should be included in

the notification. Such notification shall be given by the most expeditious means to reach the utility owner's "Person to Contact" no later than two normal business days prior to the Contractor's commencement of operations in such general vicinity. The Contractor shall furnish a written summary of the notification to the RPR.

The Contractor's failure to give the two days' notice shall be cause for the Owner to suspend the Contractor's operations in the general vicinity of a utility service or facility.

Where the outside limits of an underground utility service have been located and staked on the ground, the Contractor shall be required to use hand excavation methods within 3 feet (1 m) of such outside limits at such points as may be required to ensure protection from damage due to the Contractor's operations.

Should the Contractor damage or interrupt the operation of a utility service or facility by accident or otherwise, the Contractor shall immediately notify the proper authority and the RPR and shall take all reasonable measures to prevent further damage or interruption of service. The Contractor, in such events, shall cooperate with the utility service or facility owner and the RPR continuously until such damage has been repaired and service restored to the satisfaction of the utility or facility owner.

The Contractor shall bear all costs of damage and restoration of service to any utility service or facility due to their operations whether due to negligence or accident. The Owner reserves the right to deduct such costs from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor, or their own surety.

70-15.1 FAA facilities and cable runs. The Contractor is hereby advised that the construction limits of the project include existing facilities and buried cable runs that are owned, operated and maintained by the FAA. The Contractor, during the execution of the project work, shall comply with the following:

a. The Contractor shall permit FAA maintenance personnel the right of access to the project work site for purposes of inspecting and maintaining all existing FAA owned facilities.

b. The Contractor shall provide notice to the FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO)/Technical Operations/System Support Center (SSC) Point-of-Contact through the airport manager/Owner a minimum of seven (7) calendar days prior to commencement of construction activities in order to permit sufficient time to locate and mark existing buried cables and to schedule any required facility outages.

c. If execution of the project work requires a facility outage, the Contractor shall contact the FAA Point-of-Contact a minimum of 72 hours prior to the time of the required outage.

d. Any damage to FAA cables, access roads, or FAA facilities during construction caused by the Contractor's equipment or personnel whether by negligence or accident will require the Contractor to repair or replace the damaged cables, access road, or FAA facilities to FAA requirements. The Contractor shall not bear the cost to repair damage to underground facilities or utilities improperly located by the FAA.

e. If the project work requires the cutting or splicing of FAA owned cables, the FAA Point-of-Contact shall be contacted a minimum of 72 hours prior to the time the cable work commences. The FAA reserves the right to have a FAA representative on site to observe the splicing of the cables as a condition of acceptance. All cable splices are to be accomplished in accordance with FAA specifications and require approval by the FAA Point-of-Contact as a condition of acceptance by the Owner. The Contractor is hereby advised that FAA restricts the location of where splices may be installed. If a cable splice is required in a location that is not permitted by FAA, the Contractor shall furnish and install a sufficient length of new cable that eliminates the need for any splice.

70-16 Furnishing rights-of-way. The Owner will be responsible for furnishing all rights-of-way upon which the work is to be constructed in advance of the Contractor's operations.

70-17 Personal liability of public officials. In carrying out any of the contract provisions or in exercising any power or authority granted by this contract, there shall be no liability upon the Engineer, RPR, their authorized representatives, or any officials of the Owner either personally or as an official of the Owner. It is understood that in such matters they act solely as agents and representatives of the Owner.

70-18 No waiver of legal rights. Upon completion of the work, the Owner will expeditiously make final inspection and notify the Contractor of final acceptance. Such final acceptance, however, shall not preclude or stop the Owner from correcting any measurement, estimate, or certificate made before or after completion of the work, nor shall the Owner be precluded or stopped from recovering from the Contractor or their surety, or both, such overpayment as may be sustained, or by failure on the part of the Contractor to fulfill their obligations under the contract. A waiver on the part of the Owner of any breach of any part of the contract shall not be held to be a waiver of any other or subsequent breach.

The Contractor, without prejudice to the terms of the contract, shall be liable to the Owner for latent defects, fraud, or such gross mistakes as may amount to fraud, or as regards the Owner's rights under any warranty or guaranty.

70-19 Environmental protection. The Contractor shall comply with all federal, state, and local laws and regulations controlling pollution of the environment. The Contractor shall take necessary precautions to prevent pollution of streams, lakes, ponds, and reservoirs with fuels, oils, asphalts, chemicals, or other harmful materials and to prevent pollution of the atmosphere from particulate and gaseous matter.

70-20 Archaeological and historical findings. Unless otherwise specified in this subsection, the Contractor is advised that the site of the work is not within any property, district, or site, and does not contain any building, structure, or object listed in the current National Register of Historic Places published by the United States Department of Interior.

Should the Contractor encounter, during their operations, any building, part of a building, structure, or object that is incongruous with its surroundings, the Contractor shall immediately

cease operations in that location and notify the RPR. The RPR will immediately investigate the Contractor's finding and the Owner will direct the Contractor to either resume operations or to suspend operations as directed.

Should the Owner order suspension of the Contractor's operations in order to protect an archaeological or historical finding, or order the Contractor to perform extra work, such shall be covered by an appropriate contract change order or supplemental agreement as provided in Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *Extra Work,* and Section 90, paragraph 90-05, *Payment for Extra Work*. If appropriate, the contract change order or supplemental agreement shall include an extension of contract time in accordance with Section 80, paragraph 80-07, *Determination and Extension of Contract Time*.

70-21 Insurance Requirements. Refer to CMR for contract requirements per New Hanover County Airport Authority agreement with CMR.

END OF SECTION 70

SECTION 80
EXECUTION AND PROGRESS

80-01 Subletting of contract. The Owner will not recognize any subcontractor on the work. The Contractor shall at all times when work is in progress be represented either in person, by a qualified superintendent, or by other designated, qualified representative who is duly authorized to receive and execute orders of the Resident Project Representative (RPR).

The Contractor shall provide copies of all subcontracts to the RPR 14 **days prior to being utilized on the project. As a minimum, the information shall include the following:**

- Subcontractor's legal company name.
- Subcontractor's legal company address, including County name.
- Principal contact person's name, telephone and fax number.
- Complete narrative description, and dollar value of the work to be performed by the subcontractor.
- Copies of required insurance certificates in accordance with the specifications.
- Minority/ non-minority status.

80-02 Notice to proceed (NTP). The Owners notice to proceed will state the date on which contract time commences. The Contractor is expected to commence project operations within **10** days of the NTP date. The Contractor shall notify the RPR at least 24 hours in advance of the time contract operations begins. The Contractor shall not commence any actual operations prior to the date on which the notice to proceed is issued by the Owner.

80-03 Execution and progress. Unless otherwise specified, the Contractor shall submit their coordinated construction schedule showing all work activities for the RPR's review and acceptance at least 10 days prior to the start of work. The Contractor's progress schedule, once accepted by the RPR, will represent the Contractor's baseline plan to accomplish the project in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Contract. The RPR will compare actual Contractor progress against the baseline schedule to determine that status of the Contractor's performance. The Contractor shall provide sufficient materials, equipment, and labor to guarantee the completion of the project in accordance with the plans and specifications within the time set forth in the proposal.

If the Contractor falls significantly behind the submitted schedule, the Contractor shall, upon the RPR's request, submit a revised schedule for completion of the work within the contract time and modify their operations to provide such additional materials, equipment, and labor necessary to meet the revised schedule. Should the execution of the work be discontinued for any reason, the Contractor shall notify the RPR at least 24 hours in advance of resuming operations.

The Contractor shall not commence any actual construction prior to the date on which the NTP is issued by the Owner.

The project schedule shall be prepared as a network diagram in Critical Path Method (CPM), Program Evaluation and Review Technique (PERT), or other format, or as otherwise specified. It shall include information on the sequence of work activities, milestone dates, and activity duration. The schedule shall show all work items identified in the project proposal for each work area and shall include the project start date and end date.

The Contractor shall maintain the work schedule and provide an update and analysis of the progress schedule on a twice monthly basis, or as otherwise specified in the contract. Submission of the work schedule shall not relieve the Contractor of overall responsibility for scheduling, sequencing, and coordinating all work to comply with the requirements of the contract.

80-04 Limitation of operations. The Contractor shall control their operations and the operations of their subcontractors and all suppliers to provide for the free and unobstructed movement of aircraft in the air operations areas (AOA) of the airport.

When the work requires the Contractor to conduct their operations within an AOA of the airport, the work shall be coordinated with airport operations (through the RPR) **at least** 48 hours prior to commencement of such work. The Contractor shall not close an AOA until so authorized by the RPR and until the necessary temporary marking, signage and associated lighting is in place as provided in Section 70, paragraph 70-08, *Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP)*.

When the contract work requires the Contractor to work within an AOA of the airport on an intermittent basis (intermittent opening and closing of the AOA), the Contractor shall maintain constant communications as specified; immediately obey all instructions to vacate the AOA; and immediately obey all instructions to resume work in such AOA. Failure to maintain the specified communications or to obey instructions shall be cause for suspension of the Contractor's operations in the AOA until satisfactory conditions are provided. The areas of the AOA identified in the Construction Safety Phasing Plan (CSPP) and as listed below, cannot be closed to operating aircraft to permit the Contractor's operations on a continuous basis and will therefore be closed to aircraft operations intermittently as follows:

- Taxiway F Perimeter Road Construction – coordination with Owner and tenant to determine phasing and/or schedule.

The Contractor shall be required to conform to safety standards contained in AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction and the approved CSPP.

80-04.1 Operational safety on airport during construction. All Contractors' operations shall be conducted in accordance with the approved project Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) and the provisions set forth within the current version of AC 150/5370-2, Operational Safety on Airports During Construction. The CSPP included within the contract documents conveys minimum requirements for operational safety on the airport during construction activities. The Contractor shall prepare and submit a SPCD that details how it proposes to comply with the requirements presented within the CSPP.

The Contractor shall implement all necessary safety plan measures prior to commencement of any work activity. The Contractor shall conduct routine checks to assure compliance with the safety plan measures.

The Contractor is responsible to the Owner for the conduct of all subcontractors it employs on the project. The Contractor shall assure that all subcontractors are made aware of the requirements of the CSPP and SPCD and that they implement and maintain all necessary measures.

No deviation or modifications may be made to the approved CSPP and SPCD unless approved in writing by the Owner. The necessary coordination actions to review Contractor proposed modifications to an approved CSPP or approved SPCD can require a significant amount of time.

80-05 Character of workers, methods, and equipment. The Contractor shall, at all times, employ sufficient labor and equipment for prosecuting the work to full completion in the manner and time required by the contract, plans, and specifications.

All workers shall have sufficient skill and experience to perform properly the work assigned to them. Workers engaged in special work or skilled work shall have sufficient experience in such work and in the operation of the equipment required to perform the work satisfactorily.

Any person employed by the Contractor or by any subcontractor who violates any operational regulations or operational safety requirements and, in the opinion of the RPR, does not perform his work in a proper and skillful manner or is intemperate or disorderly shall, at the written request of the RPR, be removed immediately by the Contractor or subcontractor employing such person, and shall not be employed again in any portion of the work without approval of the RPR.

Should the Contractor fail to remove such person or persons, or fail to furnish suitable and sufficient personnel for the proper execution of the work, the RPR may suspend the work by written notice until compliance with such orders.

All equipment that is proposed to be used on the work shall be of sufficient size and in such mechanical condition as to meet requirements of the work and to produce a satisfactory quality of work. Equipment used on any portion of the work shall not cause injury to previously completed work, adjacent property, or existing airport facilities due to its use.

When the methods and equipment to be used by the Contractor in accomplishing the work are not prescribed in the contract, the Contractor is free to use any methods or equipment that will accomplish the work in conformity with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

When the contract specifies the use of certain methods and equipment, such methods and equipment shall be used unless otherwise authorized by the RPR. If the Contractor desires to use a method or type of equipment other than specified in the contract, the Contractor may request authority from the RPR to do so. The request shall be in writing and shall include a full description of the methods and equipment proposed and of the reasons for desiring to make the change. If

approval is given, it will be on the condition that the Contractor will be fully responsible for producing work in conformity with contract requirements. If, after trial use of the substituted methods or equipment, the RPR determines that the work produced does not meet contract requirements, the Contractor shall discontinue the use of the substitute method or equipment and shall complete the remaining work with the specified methods and equipment. The Contractor shall remove any deficient work and replace it with work of specified quality, or take such other corrective action as the RPR may direct. No change will be made in basis of payment for the contract items involved nor in contract time as a result of authorizing a change in methods or equipment under this paragraph.

80-06 Temporary suspension of the work. The Owner shall have the authority to suspend the work wholly, or in part, for such period or periods the Owner may deem necessary, due to unsuitable weather, or other conditions considered unfavorable for the execution of the work, or for such time necessary due to the failure on the part of the Contractor to carry out orders given or perform any or all provisions of the contract.

In the event that the Contractor is ordered by the Owner, in writing, to suspend work for some unforeseen cause not otherwise provided for in the contract and over which the Contractor has no control, the Contractor may be reimbursed for actual money expended on the work during the period of shutdown. No allowance will be made for anticipated profits. The period of shutdown shall be computed from the effective date of the written order to suspend work to the effective date of the written order to resume the work. Claims for such compensation shall be filed with the RPR within the time period stated in the RPR's order to resume work. The Contractor shall submit with their own claim information substantiating the amount shown on the claim. The RPR will forward the Contractor's claim to the Owner for consideration in accordance with local laws or ordinances. No provision of this article shall be construed as entitling the Contractor to compensation for delays due to inclement weather or for any other delay provided for in the contract, plans, or specifications.

If it becomes necessary to suspend work for an indefinite period, the Contractor shall store all materials in such manner that they will not become an obstruction nor become damaged in any way. The Contractor shall take every precaution to prevent damage or deterioration of the work performed and provide for normal drainage of the work. The Contractor shall erect temporary structures where necessary to provide for traffic on, to, or from the airport.

80-07 Determination and extension of contract time. The completion date shall be stated in the proposal, **refer to CMR and Owner agreed to Preconstruction schedule**, and contract and shall be known as the Contract Time.

If the contract time requires extension for reasons beyond the Contractor's control, it shall be adjusted as follows:

- **Contract time based on specific completion date.** When the contract time is a specified completion date, it shall be the date on which all contract work shall be substantially complete.

If the Contractor finds it impossible for reasons beyond their own control to complete the work within the contract time as specified, or as extended in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph, the Contractor may, at any time prior to the expiration of the contract time as extended, make a written request to the Owner for an extension of time setting forth the reasons which the Contractor believes will justify the granting of their own request. Requests for extension of time, caused by inclement weather, shall be supported with National Weather Bureau data showing the actual amount of inclement weather exceeded what could normally be expected during the contract period. The Contractor's plea that insufficient time was specified is not a valid reason for extension of time. If the supporting documentation justify the work was delayed because of conditions beyond the control and without the fault of the Contractor, the Owner may extend the time for completion by a change order that adjusts the contract time or completion date. The extended time for completion shall then be in full force and effect, the same as though it were the original time for completion.

80-08 Failure to complete on time. For each calendar day or working day, as specified in the contract, that any work remains uncompleted after the contract time (including all extensions and adjustments as provided in paragraph 80-07, *Determination and Extension of Contract Time*) the sum specified in the contract and proposal as liquidated damages (LD) will be deducted from any money due or to become due the Contractor or their own surety. Such deducted sums shall not be deducted as a penalty but shall be considered as liquidation of a reasonable portion of damages including but not limited to additional engineering services that will be incurred by the Owner should the Contractor fail to complete the work in the time provided in their contract.

Liquidated damages for failure to complete on time shall be $1,000.00 (One Thousand Dollars) per Calendar Day.

~~The maximum construction time allowed for Schedules **[___]** will be the sum of the time allowed for individual schedules but not more than **[___]** days. Permitting the Contractor to continue and finish the work or any part of it after the time fixed for its completion, or after the date to which the time for completion may have been extended, will in no way operate as a wavier on the part of the Owner of any of its rights under the contract.~~

80-09 Default and termination of contract. The Contractor shall be considered in default of their contract and such default will be considered as cause for the Owner to terminate the contract for any of the following reasons, if the Contractor:

a. Fails to begin the work under the contract within the time specified in the Notice to Proceed, or

b. Fails to perform the work or fails to provide sufficient workers, equipment and/or materials to assure completion of work in accordance with the terms of the contract, or

c. Performs the work unsuitably or neglects or refuses to remove materials or to perform anew such work as may be rejected as unacceptable and unsuitable, or

d. Discontinues the execution of the work, or

e. Fails to resume work which has been discontinued within a reasonable time after notice to do so, or

f. Becomes insolvent or is declared bankrupt, or commits any act of bankruptcy or insolvency, or

g. Allows any final judgment to stand against the Contractor unsatisfied for a period of 10 days, or

h. Makes an assignment for the benefit of creditors, or

i. For any other cause whatsoever, fails to carry on the work in an acceptable manner.

Should the Owner consider the Contractor in default of the contract for any reason above, the Owner shall immediately give written notice to the Contractor and the Contractor's surety as to the reasons for considering the Contractor in default and the Owner's intentions to terminate the contract.

If the Contractor or surety, within a period of 10 days after such notice, does not proceed in accordance therewith, then the Owner will, upon written notification from the RPR of the facts of such delay, neglect, or default and the Contractor's failure to comply with such notice, have full power and authority without violating the contract, to take the execution of the work out of the hands of the Contractor. The Owner may appropriate or use any or all materials and equipment that have been mobilized for use in the work and are acceptable and may enter into an agreement for the completion of said contract according to the terms and provisions thereof, or use such other methods as in the opinion of the RPR will be required for the completion of said contract in an acceptable manner.

All costs and charges incurred by the Owner, together with the cost of completing the work under contract, will be deducted from any monies due or which may become due the Contractor. If such expense exceeds the sum which would have been payable under the contract, then the Contractor and the surety shall be liable and shall pay to the Owner the amount of such excess.

80-10 Termination for national emergencies. The Owner shall terminate the contract or portion thereof by written notice when the Contractor is prevented from proceeding with the construction contract as a direct result of an Executive Order of the President with respect to the execution of war or in the interest of national defense.

When the contract, or any portion thereof, is terminated before completion of all items of work in the contract, payment will be made for the actual number of units or items of work completed at the contract price or as mutually agreed for items of work partially completed or not started. No claims or loss of anticipated profits shall be considered.

Reimbursement for organization of the work, and other overhead expenses, (when not otherwise included in the contract) and moving equipment and materials to and from the job will be considered, the intent being that an equitable settlement will be made with the Contractor.

Acceptable materials, obtained or ordered by the Contractor for the work and that are not incorporated in the work shall, at the option of the Contractor, be purchased from the Contractor at actual cost as shown by receipted bills and actual cost records at such points of delivery as may be designated by the RPR.

Termination of the contract or a portion thereof shall neither relieve the Contractor of their responsibilities for the completed work nor shall it relieve their surety of its obligation for and concerning any just claim arising out of the work performed.

80-11 Work area, storage area and sequence of operations. The Contractor shall obtain approval from the RPR prior to beginning any work in all areas of the airport. No operating runway, taxiway, or air operations area (AOA) shall be crossed, entered, or obstructed while it is operational. The Contractor shall plan and coordinate work in accordance with the approved CSPP and SPCD.

END OF SECTION 80

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 90
MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

90-01 Measurement of quantities. All work completed under the contract will be measured by the RPR, or their authorized representatives, using United States Customary Units of Measurement.

The method of measurement and computations to be used in determination of quantities of material furnished and of work performed under the contract will be those methods generally recognized as conforming to good engineering practice.

Unless otherwise specified, longitudinal measurements for area computations will be made horizontally, and no deductions will be made for individual fixtures (or leave-outs) having an area of 9 square feet (0.8 square meters) or less. Unless otherwise specified, transverse measurements for area computations will be the neat dimensions shown on the plans or ordered in writing by the RPR.

Unless otherwise specified, all contract items which are measured by the linear foot such as electrical ducts, conduits, pipe culverts, underdrains, and similar items shall be measured parallel to the base or foundation upon which such items are placed.

The term "lump sum" when used as an item of payment will mean complete payment for the work described in the contract. When a complete structure or structural unit (in effect, "lump sum" work) is specified as the unit of measurement, the unit will be construed to include all necessary fittings and accessories.

When requested by the Contractor and approved by the RPR in writing, material specified to be measured by the cubic yard (cubic meter) may be weighed, and such weights will be converted to cubic yards (cubic meters) for payment purposes. Factors for conversion from weight measurement to volume measurement will be determined by the RPR and shall be agreed to by the Contractor before such method of measurement of pay quantities is used.

Measurement and Payment Terms

Term	Description
Excavation and Embankment Volume	In computing volumes of excavation, the average end area method will be used unless otherwise specified.
Measurement and Proportion by Weight	The term "ton" will mean the short ton consisting of 2,000 pounds avoirdupois. All materials that are measured or proportioned by weights shall be weighed on accurate, independently certified scales by competent, qualified personnel at locations designated by the RPR. If material is shipped by rail, the car weight may be accepted provided that only the actual weight of material is paid for. However, car weights will not be acceptable for material to be passed through mixing plants. Trucks used to haul material being paid for by weight shall be weighed empty

Term	Description
	daily at such times as the RPR directs, and each truck shall bear a plainly legible identification mark.
Measurement by Volume	Materials to be measured by volume in the hauling vehicle shall be hauled in approved vehicles and measured therein at the point of delivery. Vehicles for this purpose may be of any size or type acceptable for the materials hauled, provided that the body is of such shape that the actual contents may be readily and accurately determined. All vehicles shall be loaded to at least their water level capacity, and all loads shall be leveled when the vehicles arrive at the point of delivery.
Asphalt Material	Asphalt materials will be measured by the gallon or ton. When measured by volume, such volumes will be measured at 60°F or will be corrected to the volume at 60°F using ASTM D1250 for asphalts. Net certified scale weights or weights based on certified volumes in the case of rail shipments will be used as a basis of measurement, subject to correction when asphalt material has been lost from the car or the distributor, wasted, or otherwise not incorporated in the work. When asphalt materials are shipped by truck or transport, net certified weights by volume, subject to correction for loss or foaming, will be used for computing quantities.
Cement	Cement will be measured by the ton or hundredweight.
Structure	Structures will be measured according to neat lines shown on the plans or as altered to fit field conditions.
Timber	Timber will be measured by the thousand feet board measure (MFBM) actually incorporated in the structure. Measurement will be based on nominal widths and thicknesses and the extreme length of each piece.
Plates and Sheets	The thickness of plates and galvanized sheet used in the manufacture of corrugated metal pipe, metal plate pipe culverts and arches, and metal cribbing will be specified and measured in decimal fraction of inch.
Miscellaneous Items	When standard manufactured items are specified such as fence, wire, plates, rolled shapes, pipe conduit, etc., and these items are identified by gauge, unit weight, section dimensions, etc., such identification will be considered to be nominal weights or dimensions. Unless more stringently controlled by tolerances in cited specifications, manufacturing tolerances established by the industries involved will be accepted.
Scales	Scales must be tested for accuracy and serviced before use. Scales for weighing materials which are required to be proportioned or measured and paid for by weight shall be furnished, erected, and maintained by the Contractor, or be certified permanently installed commercial scales. Platform scales shall be installed and maintained with the platform level and rigid bulkheads at each end.

Term	Description
	Scales shall be accurate within 0.5% of the correct weight throughout the range of use. The Contractor shall have the scales checked under the observation of the RPR before beginning work and at such other times as requested. The intervals shall be uniform in spacing throughout the graduated or marked length of the beam or dial and shall not exceed 0.1% of the nominal rated capacity of the scale, but not less than one pound (454 grams). The use of spring balances will not be permitted. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been "overweighing" (indicating more than correct weight) they will be immediately adjusted. All materials received subsequent to the last previous correct weighting-accuracy test will be reduced by the percentage of error in excess of 0.5%. In the event inspection reveals the scales have been under-weighing (indicating less than correct weight), they shall be immediately adjusted. No additional payment to the Contractor will be allowed for materials previously weighed and recorded. Beams, dials, platforms, and other scale equipment shall be so arranged that the operator and the RPR can safely and conveniently view them. Scale installations shall have available ten standard 50-pound weights for testing the weighing equipment or suitable weights and devices for other approved equipment. All costs in connection with furnishing, installing, certifying, testing, and maintaining scales; for furnishing check weights and scale house; and for all other items specified in this subsection, for the weighing of materials for proportioning or payment, shall be included in the unit contract prices for the various items of the project.
Rental Equipment	Rental of equipment will be measured by time in hours of actual working time and necessary traveling time of the equipment within the limits of the work. Special equipment ordered in connection with extra work will be measured as agreed in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing such work as provided in paragraph 90-05 *Payment for Extra Work*.
Pay Quantities	When the estimated quantities for a specific portion of the work are designated as the pay quantities in the contract, they shall be the final quantities for which payment for such specific portion of the work will be made, unless the dimensions of said portions of the work shown on the plans are revised by the RPR. If revised dimensions result in an increase or decrease in the quantities of such work, the final quantities for payment will be revised in the amount represented by the authorized changes in the dimensions.

90-02 Scope of payment. The Contractor shall receive and accept compensation provided for in the contract as full payment for furnishing all materials, for performing all work under the contract in a complete and acceptable manner, and for all risk, loss, damage, or expense of whatever character arising out of the nature of the work or the execution thereof, subject to the provisions of Section 70, paragraph 70-18, *No Waiver of Legal Rights*.

When the "basis of payment" subsection of a technical specification requires that the contract price (price bid) include compensation for certain work or material essential to the item, this same work or material will not also be measured for payment under any other contract item which may appear elsewhere in the contract, plans, or specifications.

90-03 Compensation for altered quantities. When the accepted quantities of work vary from the quantities in the proposal, the Contractor shall accept as payment in full, so far as contract items are concerned, payment at the original contract price for the accepted quantities of work actually completed and accepted. No allowance, except as provided for in Section 40, paragraph 40-02, *Alteration of Work and Quantities,* will be made for any increased expense, loss of expected reimbursement, or loss of anticipated profits suffered or claimed by the Contractor which results directly from such alterations or indirectly from their own unbalanced allocation of overhead and profit among the contract items, or from any other cause.

90-04 Payment for omitted items. As specified in Section 40, paragraph 40-03, *Omitted Items,* the RPR shall have the right to omit from the work (order nonperformance) any contract item, except major contract items, in the best interest of the Owner.

Should the RPR omit or order nonperformance of a contract item or portion of such item from the work, the Contractor shall accept payment in full at the contract prices for any work actually completed and acceptable prior to the RPR's order to omit or non-perform such contract item.

Acceptable materials ordered by the Contractor or delivered on the work prior to the date of the RPR's order will be paid for at the actual cost to the Contractor and shall thereupon become the property of the Owner.

In addition to the reimbursement hereinbefore provided, the Contractor shall be reimbursed for all actual costs incurred for the purpose of performing the omitted contract item prior to the date of the RPR's order. Such additional costs incurred by the Contractor must be directly related to the deleted contract item and shall be supported by certified statements by the Contractor as to the nature the amount of such costs.

90-05 Payment for extra work. Extra work, performed in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-04, *Extra Work*, will be paid for at the contract prices or agreed prices specified in the change order or supplemental agreement authorizing the extra work.

90-06 Partial payments. Partial payments will be made to the Contractor at least once each month as the work progresses. Said payments will be based upon estimates, prepared by the

Contractor ~~RPR~~, of the value of the work performed and materials complete and in place, in accordance with the contract, plans, and specifications. Such partial payments may also include the delivered actual cost of those materials stockpiled and stored in accordance with paragraph 90-07, *Payment for Materials on Hand*. No partial payment will be made when the amount due to the Contractor since the last estimate amounts to less than five hundred dollars.

The Contractor is required to pay all subcontractors for satisfactory performance of their contracts no later than 30 days after the Contractor has received a partial payment. The OWNER must ensure prompt and full payment of retainage from the prime Contractor to the subcontractor within 30 days after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. A subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed when all the tasks called for in the subcontract have been accomplished and documented as required by the OWNER. When the OWNER has made an incremental acceptance of a portion of a prime contract, the work of a subcontractor covered by that acceptance is deemed to be satisfactorily completed.

From the total of the amount determined to be payable on a partial payment, five (5) percent of such total amount will be deducted and retained by the OWNER until the final payment is made, except as may be provided (at the Contractor's option) in the subsection 90-08 titled PAYMENT OF WITHHELD FUNDS of this section. The balance (ninety-five (95) percent) of the amount payable, less all previous payments, shall be certified for payment. Should the Contractor exercise his or her option, as provided in the subsection 90-08 titled PAYMENT OF WITHHELD FUNDS of this section, no such percent retainage shall be deducted.

When at least 95% of the work has been completed, the ENGINEER shall, at the OWNER's discretion and with the consent of the surety, prepare estimates of both the contract value and the cost of the remaining work to be done.

The OWNER may retain an amount not less than twice the contract value or estimated cost, whichever is greater, of the work remaining to be done. The remainder, less all previous payments and deductions, will then be certified for payment to the Contractor.

It is understood and agreed that the Contractor shall not be entitled to demand or receive partial payment based on quantities of work in excess of those provided in the proposal or covered by approved change orders or supplemental agreements, except when such excess quantities have been determined by the RPR to be a part of the final quantity for the item of work in question.

No partial payment shall bind the Owner to the acceptance of any materials or work in place as to quality or quantity. All partial payments are subject to correction at the time of final payment as provided in paragraph 90-09, *Acceptance and Final Payment*.

The Contractor shall deliver to the Owner a complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of this contract before the final payment is made. If any subcontractor or supplier fails to furnish such a release in full, the Contractor may furnish a bond or other collateral satisfactory to the Owner to indemnify the Owner against any potential lien or other such claim. The bond or

collateral shall include all costs, expenses, and attorney fees the Owner may be compelled to pay in discharging any such lien or claim.

90-07 Payment for materials on hand. Partial payments may be made to the extent of the delivered cost of materials to be incorporated in the work, provided that such materials meet the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications and are delivered to acceptable sites on the airport property or at other sites in the vicinity that are acceptable to the Owner. Such delivered costs of stored or stockpiled materials may be included in the next partial payment after the following conditions are met:

a. The material has been stored or stockpiled in a manner acceptable to the RPR at or on an approved site.
b. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with acceptable evidence of the quantity and quality of such stored or stockpiled materials.
c. The Contractor has furnished the RPR with satisfactory evidence that the material and transportation costs have been paid.
d. The Contractor has furnished the Owner legal title (free of liens or encumbrances of any kind) to the material stored or stockpiled.
e. The Contractor has furnished the Owner evidence that the material stored or stockpiled is insured against loss by damage to or disappearance of such materials at any time prior to use in the work.

It is understood and agreed that the transfer of title and the Owner's payment for such stored or stockpiled materials shall in no way relieve the Contractor of their responsibility for furnishing and placing such materials in accordance with the requirements of the contract, plans, and specifications.

In no case will the amount of partial payments for materials on hand exceed the contract price for such materials or the contract price for the contract item in which the material is intended to be used.

No partial payment will be made for stored or stockpiled living or perishable plant materials.
The Contractor shall bear all costs associated with the partial payment of stored or stockpiled materials in accordance with the provisions of this paragraph.

90-08 Payment of withheld funds. At the Contractor's option, if an Owner withholds retainage in accordance with the methods described in paragraph 90-06 *Partial Payments*, the Contractor may request that the Owner deposit the retainage into an escrow account. The Owner's deposit of retainage into an escrow account is subject to the following conditions:

a. The Contractor shall bear all expenses of establishing and maintaining an escrow account and escrow agreement acceptable to the Owner.

b. The Contractor shall deposit to and maintain in such escrow only those securities or bank certificates of deposit as are acceptable to the Owner and having a value not less than the retainage that would otherwise be withheld from partial payment.

c. The Contractor shall enter into an escrow agreement satisfactory to the Owner.

d. The Contractor shall obtain the written consent of the surety to such agreement.

90-09 Acceptance and final payment. When the contract work has been accepted in accordance with the requirements of Section 50, paragraph 50-15, *Final Acceptance*, the RPR will prepare *a statement of the final contract price including all prior change orders and supplemental agreements, and any final change order items* ~~the final estimate of the items of work actually performed~~. The Contractor shall approve the RPR's final ~~estimate~~ *statement* or advise the RPR of the Contractor's objections ~~to the final estimate which are based on disputes in measurements or computations of the final quantities to be paid under the contract as amended by change order or supplemental agreement~~. The Contractor and the RPR shall resolve all disputes (if any) ~~in the measurement and computation of final quantities to be paid~~ within 30 calendar days of the Contractor's receipt of the RPR's final *statement* ~~estimate~~. If, after such 30-day period, a dispute still exists, the Contractor may approve the RPR's *final contract price* ~~estimate~~ under protest of the *amount* ~~quantities~~ in dispute, and such disputed *amount* ~~quantities~~ shall be considered by the Owner as a claim in accordance with Section 50, paragraph 50-16, *Claims for Adjustment and Disputes*.

After the Contractor has approved, or approved under protest, the RPR's final estimate, and after the RPR's receipt of the project closeout documentation required in paragraph 90-11, *Contractor Final Project Documentation*, final payment will be processed based on the entire sum, or the undisputed sum in case of approval under protest, determined to be due the Contractor less all previous payments and all amounts to be deducted under the provisions of the contract. All prior partial estimates and payments shall be subject to correction in the final estimate and payment.

If the Contractor has filed a claim for additional compensation under the provisions of Section 50, paragraph 50-16, *Claims for Adjustments and Disputes,* or under the provisions of this paragraph, such claims will be considered by the Owner in accordance with local laws or ordinances. Upon final adjudication of such claims, any additional payment determined to be due the Contractor will be paid pursuant to a supplemental final estimate.

90-10 Construction warranty.

a. In addition to any other warranties in this contract, the Contractor warrants that work performed under this contract conforms to the contract requirements and is free of any defect in equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished, or performed by the Contractor or any subcontractor or supplier at any tier.

b. This warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date of final acceptance of the work, except as noted. If the Owner takes possession of any part of the work before final acceptance, this warranty shall continue for a period of one year from the date the Owner takes possession. However, this will not relieve the Contractor from corrective items required by the final acceptance of the project work. Light Emitting Diode emitting diode (LED) light fixtures with the exception of obstruction lighting, must be warranted by the

manufacturer for a minimum of four (4) years after date of installation inclusive of all electronics.

c. The Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any failure to conform, or any defect. In addition, the Contractor shall remedy at the Contractor's expense any damage to Owner real or personal property, when that damage is the result of the Contractor's failure to conform to contract requirements; or any defect of equipment, material, workmanship, or design furnished by the Contractor.

d. The Contractor shall restore any work damaged in fulfilling the terms and conditions of this clause. The Contractor's warranty with respect to work repaired or replaced will run for one year from the date of repair or replacement.

e. The Owner will notify the Contractor, in writing, within seven (7) days after the discovery of any failure, defect, or damage.

f. If the Contractor fails to remedy any failure, defect, or damage within 14 days after receipt of notice, the Owner shall have the right to replace, repair, or otherwise remedy the failure, defect, or damage at the Contractor's expense.

g. With respect to all warranties, express or implied, from subcontractors, manufacturers, or suppliers for work performed and materials furnished under this contract, the Contractor shall: (1) Obtain all warranties that would be given in normal commercial practice; (2) Require all warranties to be executed, in writing, for the benefit of the Owner, as directed by the Owner, and (3) Enforce all warranties for the benefit of the Owner.

h. This warranty shall not limit the Owner's rights with respect to latent defects, gross mistakes, or fraud.

90-11 Contractor Final Project Documentation. Approval of final payment to the Contractor is contingent upon completion and submittal of the items listed below. The final payment will not be approved until the RPR approves the Contractor's final submittal. The Contractor shall:

a. Provide two (2) copies of all manufacturers warranties specified for materials, equipment, and installations.

b. Provide weekly payroll records (not previously received) from the general Contractor and all subcontractors.

c. Complete final cleanup in accordance with Section 40, paragraph 40-08, *Final Cleanup*.

d. Complete all punch list items identified during the Final Inspection.

e. Provide complete release of all claims for labor and material arising out of the Contract.

f. Provide a certified statement signed by the subcontractors, indicating actual amounts paid to the Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) subcontractors and/or suppliers associated with the project.

g. When applicable per state requirements, return copies of sales tax completion forms.

h. Manufacturer's certifications for all items incorporated in the work.

i. All required record drawings, as-built drawings or as-constructed drawings.

j. Project Operation and Maintenance (O&M) Manual(s).

k. Security for Construction Warranty.

l. Equipment commissioning documentation submitted, if required.

END OF SECTION 90

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 21 00 - ALLOWANCES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes administrative and procedural requirements governing allowances.

1. Certain items are specified in the Contract Documents by allowances. Allowances have been established in lieu of additional requirements and to defer selection of actual materials and equipment to a later date when additional information is available for evaluation. If necessary, additional requirements will be issued by Change Order.
2. Include defined costs associated with allowances in base bid.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Submit invoices or delivery slips to show actual quantities of materials delivered to the site for use in fulfillment of each allowance.

B. Submit time sheets and other documentation to show labor time and cost for installation of allowance items that include installation as part of the allowance.

C. Coordinate and process submittals for allowance items in same manner as for other portions of the Work.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate allowance items with other portions of the Work.

1.4 QUANTITY ALLOWANCES

A. Quantity Allowance: An estimated quantity or extent of a product, assembly, or portion of the Work that cannot be measured prior to construction, but is reasonably anticipated.

B. All costs for performing the work described under the quantity allowance are included in the allowance. These costs include materials, delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs, and Contractor's overhead and profit.

C. When work is performed and actual quantity or extent is measured, the Contract Sum

will be adjusted by Change Order based on Unit Cost indicated in the Agreement.

1.5 LUMP-SUM ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance shall include cost to Contractor of specific products and materials selected by Owner and Architect under allowance and shall include taxes, freight, and delivery to Project site.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, Contractor's costs for receiving and handling at Project site, labor, installation, overhead and profit, and similar costs related to products and materials selected by Owner and Architect under allowance shall be included as part of the Contract Sum and not part of the allowance.

1.6 CONTINGENCY ALLOWANCES

A. Use the contingency allowance only as directed by Architect for Owner's purposes and only by Change Orders that indicate amounts to be charged to the allowance.

B. Contractor's overhead, profit, and related costs for products and equipment ordered by Owner under the contingency allowance are included in the allowance and are not part of the Contract Sum. These costs include delivery, installation, taxes, insurance, equipment rental, and similar costs.

C. Change Orders authorizing use of funds from the contingency allowance will include Contractor's related costs and reasonable overhead and profit.

D. At Project closeout, credit unused amounts remaining in the contingency allowance to Owner by Change Order.

1.7 ADJUSTMENT OF ALLOWANCES

A. Allowance Adjustment: To adjust allowance amounts, prepare a Change Order proposal based on the difference between purchase amount and the allowance, multiplied by final measurement of work-in- place where applicable.

1. Include installation costs in purchase amount only where indicated as part of the allowance.
2. If requested, prepare explanation and documentation to substantiate distribution of overhead costs and other margins claimed.
3. Submit substantiation of a change in scope of work, if any, claimed in Change Orders related to unit-cost allowances.
4. Owner reserves the right to establish the quantity of work-in-place by independent quantity survey, measure, or count.

B. Submit claims for increased costs because of a change in scope or nature of the

allowance described in the Contract Documents, whether for the purchase order amount or Contractor's handling, labor, installation, overhead, and profit.

1. Do not include Contractor's or subcontractor's indirect expense in the Change Order cost amount unless it is clearly shown that the nature or extent of work has changed from what could have been foreseen from information in the Contract Documents.
2. No change to Contractor's indirect expense is permitted for selection of higher- or lower-priced materials or systems of the same scope and nature as originally indicated.

C. Unused amounts of moneys that define the value of the allowances, included integrally in the work and materials allowances, shall be credited to the Owner by deduct change order prior to approval of Final Application for Payment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION AND PREPARATION

A. Examine products covered by an allowance promptly on delivery for damage or defects. Return damaged or defective products to manufacturer for replacement.

B. Coordinate materials and their installation for each allowance with related materials and installations to ensure that each allowance item is completely integrated and interfaced with related work.

END OF SECTION 01 21 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 23 00 - ALTERNATES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for alternates.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Alternate: An amount proposed by bidders and stated on the Bid Form for certain work defined in the bidding requirements that may be added to or deducted from the base bid amount if Owner decides to accept a corresponding change either in the amount of construction to be completed or in the products, materials, equipment, systems, or installation methods described in the Contract Documents.
   1. Alternates described in this Section are part of the Work only if enumerated in the Agreement.
   2. The cost or credit for each alternate is the net addition to or deduction from the Contract Sum to incorporate alternate into the Work. No other adjustments are made to the Contract Sum.

1.3 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected adjacent work as necessary to completely integrate work of the alternate into Project.

   1. Include as part of each alternate, miscellaneous devices, accessory objects, and similar items incidental to or required for a complete installation whether or not indicated as part of alternate.

B. Notification: Immediately following award of the Contract, notify each party involved, in writing, of the status of each alternate. Indicate if alternates have been accepted, rejected, or deferred for later consideration. Include a complete description of negotiated revisions to alternates.

C. Execute accepted alternates under the same conditions as other work of the Contract.

D. Schedule: A schedule of alternates is included at the end of this Section. Specification Sections referenced in schedule contain requirements for materials necessary to achieve the work described under each alternate.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION(Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 23 00

Add Alternate No. 1 (Locker Room) – See Drawings Volume 2 Alternate No. 1
All work to rooms 115,116, 117,118

Add Alternate No. 2 (History Corridor)– See Drawings Volume 2 Alternate No. 2
All work to rooms 109, 110,119,120,121,122, Corridor Outside of Locker Rooms

Deduct Alternate No. 3 (Drop Off Canopy Reduction) – See Drawings Volume 2 Alternate No. 3
Revise layout of entry canopy.

Deduct Alternate No. 4 (Delete Tunnel) – See Drawings Volume 2 Alternate No. 4
Delete all work to Connector 112, Atrium 111, Elevator 1 and 2, Mechanical Room 124, Storage 123

SECTION 01 25 00 - SUBSTITUTION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for substitutions.

B. Related Section:

1. Document "Instructions to Bidders" for timing of substitution requests and outline of substitution procedures during bidding.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Substitutions: Changes in products, materials, equipment, and methods of construction from those required by the Contract Documents and proposed by Contractor.

1. Substitutions for Cause: Changes proposed by Contractor that are required due to changed Project conditions, such as unavailability of product, regulatory changes, or unavailability of required warranty terms.
2. Substitutions for Convenience: Changes proposed by Contractor that are not required in order to meet other Project requirements but may offer advantage to Owner.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Substitution Requests: Submit one copy of each request for consideration. Identify product or fabrication or installation method to be replaced. Include Specification Section number and title and Drawing numbers and titles.

1. Substitution Request Form: Use form included at the end of this Section.
2. Documentation: Show compliance with requirements for substitutions and the following, as applicable:

a. Statement indicating why specified product or fabrication or installation cannot be provided, if applicable.
b. Coordination information, including a list of changes or revisions needed to other parts of the Work and to construction performed by Owner and separate contractors, that will be necessary to accommodate proposed substitution.
c. Evidence that the proposed product does not require revisions to the Contract Documents, that it is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce the indicated results, and that it is compatible with other portions of the Work.
d. Detailed comparison of significant qualities of proposed substitution with those of the Work specified. Include annotated copy of applicable Specification Section. Significant qualities may include attributes such as

performance, weight, size, durability, visual effect, sustainable design characteristics, warranties, and specific features and requirements indicated. Indicate deviations, if any, from the Work specified.

1) Contractor shall provide a marked-up specification section to provide a point-bypoint comparison between the specified product and the proposed substitution. The point-by-point comparison shall indicate each point of compliance, non-compliance, and variance between the specified and proposed product.

e. Product Data, including drawings and descriptions of products and fabrication and installation procedures.
f. Evidence that proposed product provides specified warranty.
g. Samples, where applicable or requested.
h. Certificates and qualification data, where applicable or requested.
i. List of similar installations for completed projects with project names and addresses and names and addresses of architects and owners.
j. Material test reports from a qualified testing agency indicating and interpreting test results for compliance with requirements indicated.
k. Research reports evidencing compliance with building code in effect for Project.
l. Detailed comparison of Contractor's construction schedule using proposed substitution with products specified for the Work, including effect on the overall Contract Time. If specified product or method of construction cannot be provided within the Contract Time, include letter from manufacturer, on manufacturer's letterhead, stating date of receipt of purchase order, lack of availability, or delays in delivery.
m. Cost information, including a proposal of change, if any, in the Contract Sum.
n. Contractor's certification that proposed substitution complies with requirements in the Contract Documents except as indicated in substitution request, is compatible with related materials, and is appropriate for applications indicated.
o. Contractor's waiver of rights to additional payment or time that may subsequently become necessary because of failure of proposed substitution to produce indicated results.

3. Architect's Action: If necessary, Architect will request additional information or documentation for evaluation within seven days of receipt of a request for substitution. Architect will notify Contractor of acceptance or rejection of proposed substitution within 14 days of receipt of request, or seven days of receipt of additional information or documentation, whichever is later.
    a. Forms of Acceptance:
        1) During Bidding: Addendum.

2) During Construction: Change Order, Construction Change Directive, or Architect's Supplemental Instructions for minor changes in the Work.

b. Use product specified if Architect does not issue a decision on use of a proposed substitution within time allocated.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility of Substitutions: Investigate and document compatibility of proposed substitution with related products and materials. Engage a qualified testing agency to perform compatibility tests recommended by manufacturers.

1.5 COORDINATION

B. Coordination: Revise or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved substitutions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBSTITUTIONS

C. Substitutions During Bidding: Refer to Instructions to Bidders for timing of substitution requests and outline of substitution procedures during bidding.

D. Substitutions for Cause During Construction:

1. Requests for substitution following award of contract must comply with requirements of this article and are restricted to those necessitated by the following circumstances:

   a. Specified product is no longer available for purchase.
   b. Specified product is not available within schedule requirements of project.
   c. Specified product is not compatible with other product approved for project.
   d. Specified warranty is not available from any manufacturer.

E. Substitutions, General:

1. Requests that do not include the completed form, including point-by-point comparison, and authorized signature will not be reviewed.
2. Include sufficient data with request so that direct comparison of proposed item to specified item can be made. Knowledge and experience of applicator and warranty may be an integral part of specification. Provide data applicator/installer qualifications, such as experience, organizations, references, projects, and dates.
3. Verify that submitted product meets requirements indicated before submitting request, and note any deviations. Inadequate warranty, vagueness of submittal, failure to meet project requirements, or insufficient data may be cause for

disapproval of request. Architect's rejection of requested substitution is final, and does not require documentation or further justification. Architect's approval is subject to reconsideration at any time in life of Contract, if evidence is later discovered that proposed substitution is incompatible or fails to comply with indicated performance or other requirements.

4. Approvals are based upon the opinion, knowledge, information, and belief of the Architect at time of issuance of approval and reliance upon data submitted. Approvals are subject to reconsideration as additional data, materials, workmanship, and coordination with other work are observed and reviewed. In proposing items for approval, Bidder/Contractor assumes all risks, costs, and responsibilities for product's acceptance by authorities having jurisdiction, integration into Work, and performance.

F. Substitutions for Cause: Submit requests for substitution immediately on discovery of need for change, but not later than 15 days prior to time required for preparation and review of related submittals.

1. Conditions: Architect will consider Contractor's request for substitution when the following conditions are satisfied:

a. Requested substitution is consistent with the Contract Documents and will produce indicated results.
b. Requested substitution will not adversely affect Contractor's construction schedule.
c. Requested substitution has received necessary approvals of authorities having jurisdiction.
d. Requested substitution is compatible with other portions of the Work.
e. Requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work.
f. Requested substitution provides specified warranty.
g. If requested substitution involves more than one contractor, requested substitution has been coordinated with other portions of the Work, is uniform and consistent, is compatible with other products, and is acceptable to all contractors involved.

G. Substitutions for Convenience: Not allowed.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 25 00

SECTION 01 26 00 - CONTRACT MODIFICATION PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for handling and processing Contract modifications.

1.2 MINOR CHANGES IN THE WORK

A. Architect will issue supplemental instructions authorizing minor changes in the Work, not involving adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time, on AIA Document G710, "Architect's Supplemental Instructions."

1.3 PROPOSAL REQUESTS

A. Owner-Initiated Proposal Requests: Architect will issue a detailed description of proposed changes in the Work that may require adjustment to the Contract Sum or the Contract Time. If necessary, the description will include supplemental or revised Drawings and Specifications.

1. Work Change Proposal Requests issued by Architect are not instructions either to stop work in progress or to execute the proposed change.
2. Within time specified in Proposal Request or 20 days, when not otherwise specified, after receipt of Proposal Request, submit a quotation estimating cost adjustments to the Contract Sum and the Contract Time necessary to execute the change.
    a. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
        1) Excavation Related Changes: Contractor shall coordinate with Owner's testing agency to determine in-place quantities of undisturbed material for changes in the Work relating to soil removal, hauling, disposal and/or placement. Loose, truck, or disturbed material measurements are not acceptable. Claims for quantities not verified by the testing agency are subject to rejection by the Owner.
    b. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
    c. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
    d. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the

effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.

B. Contractor-Initiated Work Change Proposals: If latent or changed conditions require modifications to the Contract, Contractor may initiate a claim by submitting a request for a change to Architect.

1. Include a statement outlining reasons for the change and the effect of the change on the Work. Provide a complete description of the proposed change. Indicate the effect of the proposed change on the Contract Sum and the Contract Time.
2. Include a list of quantities of products required or eliminated and unit costs, with total amount of purchases and credits to be made. If requested, furnish survey data to substantiate quantities.
    a. Excavation Related Changes: Contractor shall coordinate with Owner's testing agency to determine in-place quantities of undisturbed material for changes in the Work relating to soil removal, hauling, disposal and/or placement. Loose, truck, or disturbed material measurements are not acceptable. Claims for quantities not verified by the testing agency are subject to rejection by the Owner.
3. Indicate applicable taxes, delivery charges, equipment rental, and amounts of trade discounts.
4. Include costs of labor and supervision directly attributable to the change.
5. Include an updated Contractor's construction schedule that indicates the effect of the change, including, but not limited to, changes in activity duration, start and finish times, and activity relationship. Use available total float before requesting an extension of the Contract Time.
6. Comply with requirements in Section 012500 "Substitution Procedures" if the proposed change requires substitution of one product or system for product or system specified.

C. Change Proposal Form: Use form included in Project Manual.

1.4 CHANGE ORDER PROCEDURES

A. On Owner's approval of a Proposal Request, Architect will issue a Change Order for signatures of Owner and Contractor on AIA Document G701.

B. The cost of the Contractors overhead and profit on any change order shall be:

1. For extra Work completed by the Contractor with his own labor, not more than 15 percent shall be added as the allowance for overhead and profit.
2. For extra Work completed by Subcontractors of the Contractor, not more than 10

percent shall be added as the allowance for overhead and profit.

3. For Work deleted which would have been completed by the Contractor, with his own labor, not less than 10 percent shall be credited to the Owner as the allowance for overhead and profit.
4. For Work deleted which would have been completed by Subcontractors of the Contractor, not less than 5 percent shall be credited to the Owner by the Contractor as the allowance for overhead and profit.

C. In order to facilitate checking of quotations for extras or credits, proposals, except those so minor that their propriety can be seen by inspection, shall be accompanied by a complete itemization of costs including labor, materials, and Subcontracts. Labor and materials shall be itemized in the manner prescribed above. Where major cost items are Subcontracts, they shall be itemized also. In no case will a change be approved without such itemization.

1.5 CONSTRUCTION CHANGE DIRECTIVE

A. Construction Change Directive: Architect may issue a Construction Change Directive on AIA Document G714. Construction Change Directive instructs Contractor to proceed with a change in the Work, for subsequent inclusion in a Change Order.

1. Construction Change Directive contains a complete description of change in the Work. It also designates method to be followed to determine change in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time.

B. Documentation: Maintain detailed records on a time and material basis of work required by the Construction Change Directive.

1. After completion of change, submit an itemized account and supporting data necessary to substantiate cost and time adjustments to the Contract.

1.6 EXTENSION OF TIME DUE TO WEATHER

A. General: The intention of this article is to establish the procedure for amending the Contract Time when excess adverse weather conditions have repeatedly caused cancellation of scheduled critical activities, resulting in delay to the Project.

B. Definitions:

1. Adverse Weather: Job site environmental conditions in which precipitation, or soil conditions resulting from precipitation, or ambient temperature conditions during working hours preclude carrying out a Scheduled Critical Activity. The following conditions may be considered by the Architect in determining the extent of excess adverse weather conditions, depending upon the nature of the delayed project tasks:

a. Precipitation greater than 0.1 inch of water equivalent per day.
b. Days on which the average air temperature does not exceed 32 degrees F.
c. Other weather conditions deemed hazardous by the Contractor.

2. Scheduled Critical Activity: Project tasks, the delay of which will directly result in a delay in the completion of the project.
3. Excess Adverse Weather: Adverse weather occurring in excess of the normal, cumulative number of calendar days of adverse weather as listed below:

Month	Normal	Month	Normal
January	5	July	8
February	6	August	10
March	6	September	7
April	5	October	5
May	7	November	5
June	7	December	6

C. Claim for Extension of Time Due to Weather:

1. Contractor shall file claim utilizing the form provided at the end of this Section for each month during which adverse weather occurs.
   a. Attach copies of Contractor's Daily Reports for each day of adverse weather, describing
      fully the weather conditions, scheduled activities delayed, and reasons for the delay.
   b. Include photographs where applicable for documenting soil conditions.
   c. Attach copy of NCDC/NOAA Local Climatological Data report for given month, or other published U.S. or state monthly weather data acceptable to Architect.
2. Claim shall be filed for a calendar month by attaching the completed form to the Application for Payment submitted the following month.
3. Architect shall review and approve or take other action upon Contractor's Claim for Extension of Time. Adjustment of Contract Time shall be made by a single Change Order prepared at project closeout.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 26 00

SECTION 01 29 00 - PAYMENT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements necessary to prepare and process Applications for Payment.

1.2 SCHEDULE OF VALUES

A. Coordination: Coordinate preparation of the schedule of values with preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.

1. Coordinate line items in the schedule of values with other required administrative forms and schedules, including the following:

a. Application for Payment forms with continuation sheets.

b. Submittal schedule.

c. Items required to be indicated as separate activities in Contractor's construction schedule.

d. Submit the schedule of values to Architect at earliest possible date but no later than seven days before the date scheduled for submittal of initial Applications for Payment.

A. Format and Content: Use Project Manual Table of Contents as a guide to establish line items for the schedule of values. Provide at least one line item for each Specification Section.

1. Identification: Include the following Project identification on the schedule of values:

a. Project name and location.
b. Name of Architect.
c. Architect's project number.
d. Contractor's name and address.
e. Date of submittal.

2. Arrange schedule of values consistent with format of AIA Document G703 with each item listing value of labor and material.
3. Arrange the schedule of values in tabular form with separate columns to indicate the following for each item listed:

a. Description of the Work.
b. Dollar value of the following, as a percentage of the Contract Sum to

nearest one-hundredth percent, adjusted to total 100 percent.

1) Labor.
2) Materials.
3) Equipment.

2. Provide a breakdown of the Contract Sum in enough detail to facilitate continued evaluation of Applications for Payment and progress reports. Coordinate with Project Manual table of contents. Provide multiple line items for principal subcontract amounts in excess of five percent of the Contract Sum.

   a. Include separate line items under Contractor and principal subcontracts for Project closeout requirements.

3. Round amounts to nearest whole dollar; total shall equal the Contract Sum.
4. Provide a separate line item in the schedule of values for each part of the Work where Applications for Payment may include materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed.
5. Provide separate line items in the schedule of values for initial cost of materials, for each subsequent stage of completion, and for total installed value of that part of the Work.
6. Each item in the schedule of values and Applications for Payment shall be complete. Include total cost and proportionate share of general overhead and profit for each item.

   a. Temporary facilities and other major cost items that are not direct cost of actual work-in- place may be shown either as separate line items in the schedule of values or distributed as general overhead expense, at Contractor's option.

1.2 APPLICATIONS FOR PAYMENT

A. Each Application for Payment shall be consistent with previous applications and payments as certified by Architect and paid for by Owner.

   1. Initial Application for Payment, Application for Payment at time of Substantial Completion, and final Application for Payment involve additional requirements.

B. Payment Application Times: The date for each progress payment is indicated in the Agreement between Owner and Contractor. The period of construction work covered by each Application for Payment is the period indicated in the Agreement.

   1. Submit draft copy of Application for Payment prior to due date for review by Architect.
   2. Pay applications not submitted on time will not be paid until the following month.

C. Application for Payment Forms: Use AIA Document G702 and AIA Document G703 as

form for Applications for Payment.

D. Application Preparation: Complete every entry on form. Notarize and execute by a person authorized to sign legal documents on behalf of Contractor. Architect will return incomplete applications without action.

1. Entries shall match data on the schedule of values and Contractor's construction schedule. Use updated schedules if revisions were made.
2. Include amounts for work completed following previous Application for Payment, whether or not payment has been received. Include only amounts for work completed at time of Application for Payment.
3. Include amounts of Change Orders after all signatures are executed.
4. Provide Sales and Use Tax Report with each Application for Payment.

E. Stored Materials: Include in Application for Payment amounts applied for materials or equipment purchased or fabricated and stored, but not yet installed. Differentiate between items stored on-site and items stored off-site.

1. Provide certificate of insurance, evidence of transfer of title to Owner, and consent of surety to payment, for stored materials.
2. Provide supporting documentation that verifies amount requested, such as paid invoices. Match amount requested with amounts indicated on documentation; do not include overhead and profit on stored materials.
3. Provide summary documentation for stored materials indicating the following:
    a. Value of materials previously stored and remaining stored as of date of previous Applica- tions for Payment.
    b. Value of previously stored materials put in place after date of previous Application for Payment and on or before date of current Application for Payment.
    c. Value of materials stored since date of previous Application for Payment and remaining stored as of date of current Application for Payment.

F. Transmittal: Submit five signed and notarized original copies of each Application for Payment to Architect by a method ensuring receipt within 24 hours. One copy shall include waivers of lien and similar attachments if required.

1. Transmit each copy with a transmittal form listing attachments and recording appropriate information about application.

G. Waivers of Mechanic's Lien: Owner reserves the right to require waivers of mechanic's lien from entities lawfully entitled to file a mechanic's lien arising out of the Contract and related to the Work covered by the payment.

1. Submit partial waivers on each item for amount requested in previous application, after deduction for retainage, on each item.
2. When an application shows completion of an item, submit conditional final or full

waivers.

3. Owner reserves the right to designate which entities involved in the Work must submit waivers.
4. Submit final Application for Payment with or preceded by conditional final waivers from every entity involved with performance of the Work covered by the application who is lawfully entitled to a lien.
5. Waiver Forms: Submit executed waivers of lien on forms acceptable to Owner.

H. Initial Application for Payment: Administrative actions and submittals that must precede or coincide with submittal of first Application for Payment include the following:

1. List of subcontractors.
2. Schedule of values.
3. Contractor's construction schedule (preliminary if not final).
4. Products list (preliminary if not final).
5. Submittal schedule (preliminary if not final).
6. List of Contractor's staff assignments.
7. List of Contractor's principal consultants.
8. Copies of building permits.
9. Copies of authorizations and licenses from authorities having jurisdiction for performance of the Work.
10. Initial progress report.
11. Report of preconstruction conference.
12. Certificates of insurance and insurance policies.
13. Performance and payment bonds.
14. Data needed to acquire Owner's insurance.

I. Retainage Reduction: Until the Work is 50 percent complete, the Owner shall pay 95 percent of the amount due to the Contractor on account of progress payments. At the time the Work is 50 percent complete and thereafter, the Contractor shall submit, for Owner's and Architect's review and approval a written request for retainage reduction. Upon Owner's approval, with written consent of the surety, the Architect may certify remaining partial payments to be paid in full.

1. The Contractor, as a condition precedent to retainage reduction, shall submit for review and approval by the Architect the required Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

J. Application for Payment at Substantial Completion: After Architect issues the Certificate of Substantial Completion, submit an Application for Payment showing 100 percent completion for portion of the Work claimed as substantially complete.

1. Include documentation supporting claim that the Work is substantially complete and a statement showing an accounting of changes to the Contract Sum.
2. Prior to Substantial Completion of the work, the Contractor shall transmit the record set of Contract Documents to the Architect along with a typed list of each change or revision made

during construction of the project. This list shall include change order numbers, authorization dates, and other information relevant to each change. Record Drawings must be received and approved prior to issuance of Final Payment.

K. Final Payment Application: After completing Project closeout requirements, submit final Application for Payment with releases and supporting documentation not previously submitted and accepted, including, but not limited, to the following:

1. Evidence of completion of Project closeout requirements.
2. Insurance certificates for products and completed operations where required and proof that taxes, fees, and similar obligations were paid.
3. Updated final statement, accounting for final changes to the Contract Sum.
4. AIA Document G706, "Contractor's Affidavit of Payment of Debts and Claims."
5. AIA Document G706A, "Contractor's Affidavit of Release of Liens."
6. AIA Document G707, "Consent of Surety to Final Payment."
7. Evidence that claims have been settled.
8. Final meter readings for utilities, a measured record of stored fuel, and similar data as of date of Substantial Completion or when Owner took possession of and assumed responsibility for corresponding elements of the Work.
9. Final liquidated damages settlement statement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 29 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 31 00 - PROJECT MANAGEMENT AND COORDINATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative provisions for coordinating construction operations on Project including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Coordination drawings.
2. Administrative and supervisory personnel.
3. Requests for Information (RFIs).
4. Project information management system.
5. Project meetings.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Subcontract List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including those who are to furnish products or equipment fabricated to a special design. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of entity performing subcontract or supplying products.
2. Number and title of related Specification Section(s) covered by subcontract.
3. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate, covered by subcontract.

B. Key Personnel Names: Prior to starting construction operations, submit a list of key personnel assignments, including superintendent and other personnel in attendance at Project site. Identify individuals and their duties and responsibilities; list addresses and telephone numbers, including home, office, and cellular telephone numbers and e-mail addresses. Provide names, addresses, and telephone numbers of individuals assigned as alternates in the absence of individuals assigned to Project. Keep list current at all times.

1.3 GENERAL COORDINATION PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Coordinate construction operations included in different Sections of the Specifications to ensure efficient and orderly installation of each part of the Work. Coordinate construction operations, included in different Sections, that depend on each other for proper installation, connection, and operation.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to assure proper

performance of components where installation of one part of the Work depends on installation of other components, before or after its own installation.

2. Coordinate installation of different components to ensure maximum performance and accessibility for required maintenance, service, and repair.
3. Make adequate provisions to accommodate items scheduled for later installation.

B. Prepare memoranda for distribution to each party involved, outlining special procedures required for coordination. Include such items as required notices, reports, and list of attendees at meetings.

1. Prepare similar memoranda for Owner and separate contractors if coordination of their Work is required.

C. Administrative Procedures: Coordinate scheduling and timing of required administrative procedures with other construction activities to avoid conflicts and to ensure orderly progress of the Work. Such administrative activities include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Preparation of Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Preparation of the schedule of values.
3. Installation and removal of temporary facilities and controls.
4. Delivery and processing of submittals.
5. Progress meetings.
6. Preinstallation conferences.
7. Project closeout activities.
8. Startup and adjustment of systems.

1.4 COORDINATION DRAWINGS

A. Coordination Drawings, General: Prepare coordination drawings according to the following requirements:

1. Content: Project-specific information, drawn accurately to a scale large enough to indicate and resolve conflicts. Do not base coordination drawings on standard printed data. Include the following information, as applicable:

a. Use applicable Drawings as a basis for preparation of coordination drawings. Prepare sec- tions, elevations, and details as needed to describe relationship of various systems and components.
b. Indicate functional and spatial relationships of components of architectural, structural, civil, mechanical, and electrical systems.
c. Indicate space requirements for routine maintenance and for anticipated replacement of components during the life of the installation.
d. Show location and size of access doors required for access to concealed dampers, valves, and other controls.
e. Indicate required installation sequences.
f. Indicate dimensions shown on the Drawings. Specifically note dimensions

that appear to be in conflict with submitted equipment and minimum clearance requirements. Provide alternate sketches to Architect indicating proposed resolution of such conflicts. Minor dimension changes and difficult installations will not be considered changes to the Contract.

2. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to verify that components requiring coordination have been included, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility. If Architect determines that coordination drawings are not being prepared in sufficient scope or detail, or are otherwise deficient, Architect will so inform Contractor, who shall make changes as directed and resubmit.
3. Coordination Drawing Format: Prepare coordination drawings according to requirements in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" for Shop Drawings and post to Project Information Management System.

B. Coordination Drawing Organization: Organize coordination drawings as follows:

1. Floor Plans and Reflected Ceiling Plans: Show architectural and structural elements, and mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, fire alarm, and electrical Work. Show locations of visible ceiling-mounted devices relative to acoustical ceiling grid. Supplement plan drawings with section drawings where required to adequately represent the Work.
2. Plenum Space: Indicate subframing for support of ceiling and wall systems, mechanical and electrical equipment, and related Work. Locate components within ceiling plenum to accommodate layout of light fixtures indicated on Drawings. Indicate areas of conflict between light fixtures and other components.
3. Mechanical Rooms: Provide coordination drawings for mechanical rooms showing plans and elevations of mechanical, plumbing, fire protection, fire alarm, and electrical equipment.
4. Structural Penetrations: Indicate penetrations and openings required for all disciplines.
5. Slab Edge and Embedded Items: Indicate slab edge locations and sizes and locations of embedded items for metal fabrications, sleeves, anchor bolts, bearing plates, angles, door floor closers, slab depressions for floor finishes, curbs and housekeeping pads, and similar items.
6. Mechanical and Plumbing Work: Show the following:
    a. Sizes and bottom elevations of ductwork, piping, and conduit runs, including insulation, bracing, flanges, and support systems.
    b. Dimensions of major components, such as dampers, valves, diffusers, access doors, cleanouts and electrical distribution equipment.
    c. Fire-rated enclosures around ductwork.
7. Electrical Work: Show the following:
    a. Runs of vertical and horizontal conduit 1-1/4-inch diameter and larger.
    b. Light fixture, exit light, emergency battery pack, smoke detector, and other

fire alarm locations.

c. Panel board, switch board, switchgear, transformer, busway, generator, and motor control center locations.

d. Location of pull boxes and junction boxes, dimensioned from column center lines.

8. Fire-Protection System: Show the following:

a. Locations of standpipes, mains piping, branch lines, pipe drops, and sprinkler heads.

9. Review: Architect will review coordination drawings to confirm that the Work is being coordinated, but not for the details of the coordination, which are Contractor's responsibility.

1.5 REQUESTS FOR INFORMATION (RFIs)

A. General: Immediately on discovery of the need for additional information or interpretation of the Contract Documents, Contractor shall prepare and submit an RFI via the Project Information Management System.

1. Architect will not respond to RFIs submitted to Architect by other entities controlled by Contractor.
2. Coordinate and submit RFIs in a prompt manner so as to avoid delays in Contractor's work or work of subcontractors.

B. Content of the RFI: Include a detailed, legible description of item needing information or interpretation and the following:

1. Project name.
2. Project number.
3. Date.
4. Name of Contractor.
5. Name of Architect.
6. RFI number, numbered sequentially.
7. RFI subject.
8. Specification Section number and title and related paragraphs, as appropriate.
9. Drawing number and detail references, as appropriate.
10. Field dimensions and conditions, as appropriate.
11. Contractor's suggested resolution. If Contractor's suggested resolution impacts the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, Contractor shall state impact in the RFI.
12. Contractor's signature.
13. Attachments: Include sketches, descriptions, measurements, photos, Product Data, Shop Drawings, coordination drawings, and other information necessary to fully describe items needing interpretation.

a. Include dimensions, thicknesses, structural grid references, and details of affected materials, assemblies, and attachments on attached sketches.

C. RFI Forms: Software-generated form via the Project Information Management System.

1. Attachments shall be electronic files in Acrobat PDF format.

D. Architect's Action: Architect will review each RFI, determine action required, and respond. Allow five working days for Architect's response for each RFI. RFIs received by Architect after 1:00 p.m. will be considered as received the following working day.

1. The following RFIs will not be reviewed:

a. Requests for approval of submittals.
b. Requests for approval of substitutions.
c. Requests for approval of Contractor's means and methods.
d. Requests for coordination information already indicated in the Contract Documents.
e. Requests for adjustments in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum.
f. Requests for interpretation of Architect's actions on submittals.
g. Incomplete RFIs or inaccurately prepared RFIs.

2. Architect's action may include a request for additional information, in which case Architect's time for response will date from time of receipt of additional information.
3. Architect's action on RFIs that may result in a change to the Contract Time or the Contract Sum may be eligible for Contractor to submit Change Proposal according to Section 012600 "Contract Modification Procedures."

a. If Contractor believes the RFI response warrants change in the Contract Time or the Contract Sum, notify Architect in writing within 10 days of receipt of the RFI response.

E. RFI Log: The Project Information Management System will create and maintain the RFI log.

F. On receipt of Architect's action, immediately distribute the RFI response to affected parties. Review response and notify Architect within seven days if Contractor disagrees with response.

1.6 WEB-BASED PROJECT INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SYSTEM

A. The Architect has established a web-based Project Information Management System to facilitate communication and record-keeping during the project. Architect will provide access to Contractor's key personnel. Refer to www.NewForma.com.

1. Use Architect's web-based Project Information Management System for purposes of managing project communication and documentation until Final Completion.
2. Due to the size restrictions on email communication, all electronic files must be submitted through NewForma. Architect assumes no responsibility for

information not received by Contractor's failure to use NewForma and such loss or delay of information will not be considered as a delay claim.

B. Project Information Management System shall include the following functions:

1. Project directory.
2. Project correspondence.
3. Meeting minutes.
4. Contract modifications forms and logs.
5. RFI forms and logs.
6. Submittals forms and logs.
7. Reminder and tracking functions.
8. Task and issue management.
9. Photo documentation.
10. Schedule and calendar management.
11. Payment application forms.
12. Drawing and specification document hosting, viewing, and updating.
13. Online document collaboration.
14. Archiving functions.

C. Contractor, subcontractors, and other parties granted access by Contractor to Project Information Management System shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Agreement included in this Project Manual.

1.7 PROJECT MEETINGS

A. General: Schedule and conduct meetings and conferences at Project site unless otherwise indicated.

1. Attendees: Inform participants and others involved, and individuals whose presence is required, of date and time of each meeting. Notify Owner and Architect of scheduled meeting dates and times.
2. Agenda: Prepare the meeting agenda. Distribute the agenda to all invited attendees.
3. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting meeting will record discussions and agreements achieved. Distribute the meeting minutes to attendees, including Owner and Architect, within three days of the meeting.

B. Preconstruction Conference: Architect will schedule and conduct a preconstruction conference before starting construction, at a time convenient to Owner, Architect, and Contractor.

1. Attendees: Authorized representatives of Owner, Architect, and their consultants; Contractor and its superintendent; major subcontractors; suppliers; and other concerned parties shall attend the conference. Participants at the conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.

2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress, including the following:

    a. Tentative construction schedule.
    b. Critical work sequencing and long-lead items.
    c. Designation of key personnel and their duties.
    d. Procedures for processing field decisions and Change Orders.
    e. Procedures for RFIs.
    f. Procedures for testing and inspecting.
    g. Procedures for processing Applications for Payment.
    h. Distribution of the Contract Documents.
    i. Submittal procedures.
    j. Preparation of record documents.
    k. Use of the premises.
    l. Work restrictions and work hours.
    m. Owner's occupancy requirements.
    n. Responsibility for temporary facilities and controls.
    o. Procedures for moisture and mold control.
    p. Procedures for disruptions and shutdowns.
    q. Construction waste management and recycling.
    r. Parking availability.
    s. Office, work, and storage areas.
    t. Equipment deliveries and priorities.
    u. First aid.
    v. Security.
    w. Progress cleaning.
    x. Bonds and insurance.

3. Minutes: Architect will record and distribute meeting minutes.

C. Preinstallation Conferences: Conduct a preinstallation conference at Project site before each construction activity that requires coordination with other construction.

1. Attendees: Installer and representatives of manufacturers and fabricators involved in or affected by the installation and its coordination or integration with other materials and installations that have preceded or will follow, shall attend the meeting. Advise Architect of scheduled meeting dates.
2. Agenda: Review progress of other construction activities and preparations for the particular activity under consideration, including requirements for the following:

    a. Contract Documents.
    b. Options.
    c. Related RFIs and change orders.
    d. Purchases, deliveries and submittals.
    e. Review of mockups.
    f. Possible conflicts and material compatibility problems.
    g. Time schedules and weather limitations.
    h. Manufacturer's written instructions.
    i. Warranty requirements.

j. Acceptability of substrates.
k. Temporary facilities and controls.
l. Space and access limitations.
m. Regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.
n. Testing and inspecting requirements.
o. Installation procedures.
p. Coordination with other work.
q. Required performance results.
r. Protection of construction, personnel, and adjacent work.

3. Record conference discussions, agreements, and disagreements, including required corrective measures and actions.
4. Reporting: Distribute minutes of the meeting to each party present and to other parties requiring information.
5. Do not proceed with installation if the conference cannot be successfully concluded. Initiate whatever actions are necessary to resolve impediments to performance of the Work and reconvene the conference at earliest feasible date.

D. Progress Meetings: Architect will conduct progress meetings at monthly intervals.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meeting shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Coordinate dates of meetings with preparation of payment requests.
3. Status Report: Contractor shall provide written report outlining the following:

a. Work done in last 30 days.
b. Work scheduled for next 30 days.
c. RFI status.
d. Submittal status.
e. Allowance recap.
f. Pre-Installation meetings scheduled.
g. Narrative of progress schedule status.

4. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous progress meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

a. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last meeting. Determine whether each activity is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.

1) Review schedule for next period.

b. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including the following:

1) Interface requirements.
2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals, material deliveries, and off-site fabrication.
4) Site access and utilization.
5) Temporary facilities and controls.
6) Progress cleaning.
7) Quality and work standards.
8) Status of correction of deficient items.
9) Field observations.
10) Status of RFIs.
11) Status of proposal requests and pending changes.
12) Status of Change Orders.
13) Pending claims and disputes.
14) Documentation of information for payment requests.

5. Minutes: Entity responsible for conducting the meeting will record and distribute the meeting minutes to each party present and to parties requiring information.

a. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's construction schedule after each progress meeting where revisions to the schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with the report of each meeting.

E. Coordination Meetings: Conduct Project coordination meetings at weekly intervals. Project coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner and Architect, each contractor, subcontractor, supplier, and other entity concerned with current progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of future activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at the meetings shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to the Work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of the previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.

a. Combined Contractor's Construction Schedule: Review progress since the last coordination meeting. Determine whether each contract is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule, in relation to combined Contractor's construction schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities will be completed within the Contract Time.
b. Schedule Updating: Revise combined Contractor's construction schedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to the schedule have been

made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.

c. Review present and future needs of each contractor present, including the following:

1) Interface requirements.
2) Sequence of operations.
3) Status of submittals.
4) Deliveries.
5) Off-site fabrication.
6) Access.
7) Site utilization.
8) Temporary facilities and controls.
9) Work hours.
10) Hazards and risks.
11) Progress cleaning.
12) Quality and work standards.
13) Change Orders.

3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 31 00

SECTION 01 32 00 - CONSTRUCTION PROGRESS DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for documenting the progress of construction during performance of the Work, including the following:
   1. Startup construction schedule.
   2. Contractor's construction schedule.
   3. Construction schedule updating reports.
   4. Daily construction reports.
   5. Material location reports.
   6. Site condition reports.
   7. Special reports.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Activity: A discrete part of a project that can be identified for planning, scheduling, monitoring, and controlling the construction project. Activities included in a construction schedule consume time and resources.
   1. Critical Activity: An activity on the critical path that must start and finish on the planned early start and finish times.
   2. Predecessor Activity: An activity that precedes another activity in the network.
   3. Successor Activity: An activity that follows another activity in the network.

B. CPM: Critical path method, which is a method of planning and scheduling a construction project where activities are arranged based on activity relationships. Network calculations determine when activities can be performed and the critical path of Project.

C. Critical Path: The longest connected chain of interdependent activities through the network schedule that establishes the minimum overall Project duration and contains no float.

D. Event: The starting or ending point of an activity.

E. Float: The measure of leeway in starting and completing an activity.
   1. Float time is not for the exclusive use or benefit of either Owner or Contractor, but is a jointly owned, expiring Project resource available to both parties as needed to meet schedule milestones and Contract completion date.
   2. Free float is the amount of time an activity can be delayed without adversely affecting the early start of the successor activity.
   3. Total float is the measure of leeway in starting or completing an activity without adversely affecting the planned Project completion date.

F. Resource Loading: The allocation of manpower and equipment necessary for the completion of an activity as scheduled.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Format for Submittals: Submit required submittals in the following format:
   1. Working electronic copy of schedule file.
   2. PDF electronic file.
B. Startup construction schedule.
C. Contractor's Construction Schedule: Initial schedule, of size required to display entire schedule for entire construction period.
   1. Initial schedule shall be submitted with signatures of prime subcontractors, indicating their acceptance of schedule.
   2. Submit a working electronic copy of schedule, labeled to comply with requirements for submittals. Include type of schedule (initial or updated) and date on label.
D. CPM Reports: Concurrent with CPM schedule, submit each of the following reports. Format for each activity in reports shall contain activity number, activity description, cost and resource loading, original duration, remaining duration, early start date, early finish date, late start date, late finish date, and total float in calendar days.
   1. Activity Report: List of all activities sorted by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
   2. Logic Report: List of preceding and succeeding activities for all activities, sorted in ascending order by activity number and then early start date, or actual start date if known.
   3. Total Float Report: List of all activities sorted in ascending order of total float.
E. Construction Schedule Updating Reports: Submit with Applications for Payment.
F. Daily Construction Reports: Submit at monthly intervals.
G. Site Condition Reports: Submit at time of discovery of differing conditions.
H. Special Reports: Submit at time of unusual event.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate Contractor's construction schedule with the schedule of values, list of subcontracts, submittal schedule, progress reports, payment requests, and other required schedules and reports.
   1. Secure time commitments for performing critical elements of the Work from entities involved.
   2. Coordinate each construction activity in the network with other activities and schedule them in proper sequence.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Time Frame: Extend schedule from date established for the Notice to Proceed to date of Final Completion.

1. Contract completion date shall not be changed by submission of a schedule that shows an early completion date, unless specifically authorized by Change Order.
2. The Contractor shall conduct his operations so the completion date in the Agreement is met.

B. Activities: Treat each story or separate area as a separate numbered activity for each main element of the Work. Comply with the following:
   1. Activity Duration: Define activities so no activity is longer than 20 days, unless specifically allowed by Architect.
   2. Procurement Activities: Include procurement process activities for long lead items and major items, requiring a cycle of more than 60 days, as separate activities in schedule. Procurement cycle activities include, but are not limited to, submittals, approvals, purchasing, fabrication, and delivery.
   3. Submittal Review Time: Include review and resubmittal times indicated in Section 013300 "Submittal Procedures" in schedule. Coordinate submittal review times in Contractor's construction schedule with submittal schedule.
   4. Concrete Slabs: Schedule, coordinate, and install concrete slabs in a timely manner to allow concrete to cure sufficiently for moisture-sensitive floor finishes. Failure to do so, resulting in the requirement for moisture mitigation, will be Contractor's responsibility.
   5. Startup and Testing Time: Include no fewer than 15 days for startup and testing.
   6. Substantial Completion: Indicate completion in advance of date established for Substantial Completion, and allow time for Architect's administrative procedures necessary for certification of Substantial Completion.
   7. Punch List and Final Completion: Include not more than 30 days or the number of days indicated in the Agreement for punch list and Final Completion.

C. Constraints: Include constraints and work restrictions indicated in the Contract Documents and as follows in schedule, and show how the sequence of the Work is affected.
   1. Work Stages: Indicate important stages of construction for each major portion of the Work, including, but not limited to, the following:
      a. Subcontract awards.
      b. Submittals.
      c. Purchases.
      d. Mockups.
      e. Fabrication.
      f. Sample testing.
      g. Deliveries.
      h. Installation.
      i. Tests and inspections.
      j. Adjusting.
      k. Curing.

l. Startup and placement into final use and operation.

2. Construction Areas: Identify each major area of construction for each major portion of the Work. Indicate where each construction activity within a major area must be sequenced or integrated with other construction activities to provide for the following:
    a. Structural completion.
    b. Temporary enclosure and space conditioning.
    c. Permanent space enclosure.
    d. Completion of mechanical installation.
    e. Completion of electrical installation.
    f. Substantial Completion.

D. Milestones: Include milestones indicated in the Contract Documents in schedule, including, but not limited to, the Notice to Proceed, Substantial Completion, and Final Completion.

E. Upcoming Work Summary: Prepare summary report indicating activities scheduled to occur or commence prior to submittal of next schedule update. Summarize the following issues:
    1. Unresolved issues.
    2. Unanswered Requests for Information.
    3. Rejected or unreturned submittals.
    4. Notations on returned submittals.
    5. Pending modifications affecting the Work and Contract Time.

F. Recovery Schedule: When periodic update indicates the Work is 14 or more calendar days behind the current approved schedule, submit a separate recovery schedule indicating means by which Contractor intends to regain compliance with the schedule. Indicate changes to working hours, working days, crew sizes, and equipment required to achieve compliance, and date by which recovery will be accomplished.

G. Computer Scheduling Software: Prepare schedules using current version of a program that has been developed specifically to manage construction schedules.

2.2 STARTUP CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Bar-Chart Schedule: Submit startup, horizontal, bar-chart-type construction schedule within seven days of date established for the Notice to Proceed.

B. Preparation: Indicate each significant construction activity separately. Identify first workday of each week with a continuous vertical line. Outline significant construction activities for first 90 days of construction. Include skeleton diagram for the remainder of the Work and a cash requirement prediction based on indicated activities.

2.3 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE (CPM SCHEDULE)

A. General: Prepare network diagrams using AON (activity-on-node) format.

B. CPM Schedule: Prepare Contractor's construction schedule using a time-scaled CPM network analysis diagram for the Work.

1. Develop network diagram in sufficient time to submit CPM schedule so it can be accepted for use no later than 45 days after date established for the Notice to Proceed.
    a. Failure to include any work item required for performance of this Contract shall not excuse Contractor from completing all work within applicable completion dates, regardless of Architect's approval of the schedule.
2. Establish procedures for monitoring and updating CPM schedule and for reporting progress. Coordinate procedures with progress meeting and payment request dates.
3. Use "one workday" as the unit of time for individual activities. Indicate nonworking days and holidays incorporated into the schedule in order to coordinate with the Contract Time.

C. CPM Schedule Preparation: Prepare a list of all activities required to complete the Work. Using the startup network diagram, prepare a skeleton network to identify probable critical paths.
1. Activities: Indicate the estimated time duration, sequence requirements, and relationship of each activity in relation to other activities. Include estimated time frames for the following activities:
    a. Preparation and processing of submittals.
    b. Mobilization and demobilization.
    c. Purchase of materials.
    d. Delivery.
    e. Fabrication.
    f. Installation.
    g. Testing.
    h. Punch list and Final Completion.
2. Critical Path Activities: Identify critical path activities, including those for interim completion dates. Scheduled start and completion dates shall be consistent with Contract milestone dates.
3. Processing: Process data to produce output data on a computer-drawn, time-scaled network. Revise data, reorganize activity sequences, and reproduce as often as necessary to produce the CPM schedule within the limitations of the Contract Time.
4. Format: Mark the critical path. Locate the critical path near center of network; locate paths with most float near the edges.
    a. Subnetworks on separate sheets are permissible for activities clearly off the critical path.
5. Float: Indicate float time for each activity.

D. Contract Modifications: For each proposed contract modification and concurrent with its submission, prepare a time-impact analysis using a network fragment to demonstrate the effect of the proposed change on the overall project schedule.

E. Initial Issue of Schedule: Prepare initial network diagram from a sorted activity list indicating straight "early start-total float." Identify critical activities. Prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
    1. Contractor or subcontractor and the Work or activity.
    2. Description of activity.
    3. Main events of activity.
    4. Immediate preceding and succeeding activities.
    5. Early and late start dates.
    6. Early and late finish dates.
    7. Activity duration in workdays.
    8. Total float or slack time.
    9. Average size of workforce.

F. Schedule Updating: Concurrent with making revisions to schedule, prepare tabulated reports showing the following:
    1. Identification of activities that have changed.
    2. Changes in early and late start dates.
    3. Changes in early and late finish dates.
    4. Changes in activity durations in workdays.
    5. Changes in the critical path.
    6. Changes in total float or slack time.
    7. Changes in the Contract Time.

G. Causes for Extensions of Time:
    1. The Contract completion date will be adjusted only for causes specified in the Contract. In the event the Contractor requests an extension of the Contract completion date, the Contractor shall furnish justification and supporting evidence as required by this Section and the General Conditions. The Owner will, after receipt of such justification and supporting evidence, make findings of fact and advise the Contractor in writing thereof. If the Owner determines that the Contractor is entitled to an extension of the Contract completion date, the Owner's determination of the time extension owed shall be based upon the approved CPM schedule or update. Actual delays in activities, which do not affect the scheduled Contract completion date, shall not serve as the basis for a change in Contract completion time.
    2. The procedure for preparing and presenting delay justification is as follows:
        a. Create a schedule activity (or activities) that represent the scope of the change or delay.
        b. Assign durations and cost/manpower resources to these new activities.
        c. Determine appropriate logic ties for these new activities. Assign predecessors and successors so that these activities can tie into the existing schedule activities.
        d. These impact activities should be loaded into a separate copy of the updated schedule that immediately precedes the impact issue's time

frame. For instance, if an impact issue occurs during mid-April, the new activities should be input into the March 31 (status date) update.

e. Recalculate the Schedule with these impact activities in place.

3. The Impacted Schedule, along with the backup data describing the new schedule activities and logic ties which comprise the impact/delay issues, will be submitted to the Owner for review and approval. If approved, these impact/delay issues will become a permanent part of the Project Schedule. The Contractor shall not unilaterally make changes to the Project Schedule to justify schedule impacts without the approval of the Owner.
4. Activity delays shall not automatically mean that an extension of the Contract Time is warranted or due the Contractor. Only those delays which impact the imposed Contract Completion Date or other CPM and contract milestone dates will be considered for time extensions.
5. Failure of the Contractor to furnish justification and supporting evidence for an extension of time, as detailed in this Section, within thirty (30) calendar days of the changed condition shall constitute a waiver of any claims for time extension associated with the issue.

2.4 REPORTS

A. Daily Construction Reports: Prepare a daily construction report recording the following information concerning events at Project site:
   1. List of subcontractors at Project site.
   2. List of separate contractors at Project site.
   3. Approximate count of personnel at Project site.
   4. Equipment at Project site.
   5. Material deliveries.
   6. High and low temperatures and general weather conditions, including presence of rain or snow.
   7. Accidents.
   8. Meetings and significant decisions.
   9. Unusual events (see special reports).
   10. Stoppages, delays, shortages, and losses.
   11. Meter readings and similar recordings.
   12. Emergency procedures.
   13. Orders and requests of authorities having jurisdiction.
   14. Change Orders received and implemented.
   15. Construction Change Directives received and implemented.
   16. Services connected and disconnected.
   17. Equipment or system tests and startups.
   18. Partial completions and occupancies.
   19. Substantial Completion authorized.

B. Material Location Reports: At monthly intervals, prepare and submit a comprehensive list of materials delivered to and stored at Project site. List shall be cumulative, showing materials previously reported plus items recently delivered. Include with list a statement of progress on and delivery dates for materials or items of equipment fabricated or stored away from Project site. Indicate the following categories for stored materials:
    1. Material stored prior to previous report and remaining in storage.
    2. Material stored prior to previous report and since removed from storage and installed.
    3. Material stored following previous report and remaining in storage.
C. Site Condition Reports: Immediately on discovery of a difference between site conditions and the Contract Documents, prepare and submit a detailed report. Submit with a Request for Information. Include a detailed description of the differing conditions, together with recommendations for changing the Contract Documents.

2.5 SPECIAL REPORTS

A. General: Submit special reports directly to Owner within one day(s) of an occurrence. Distribute copies of report to parties affected by the occurrence.
B. Reporting Unusual Events: When an event of an unusual and significant nature occurs at Project site, whether or not related directly to the Work, prepare and submit a special report. List chain of events, persons participating, response by Contractor's personnel, evaluation of results or effects, and similar pertinent information. Advise Owner in advance when these events are known or predictable.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S CONSTRUCTION SCHEDULE

A. Contractor's Construction Schedule Updating: At monthly intervals, update schedule to reflect actual construction progress and activities. Issue schedule one week before each regularly scheduled progress meeting.
    1. Original target dates shall be retained in scheduling software for the duration of the Project.
    2. Revise schedule immediately after each meeting or other activity where revisions have been recognized or made. Issue updated schedule concurrently with the report of each such meeting.
    3. Include a report with updated schedule that indicates every change, including, but not limited to, changes in logic, durations, actual starts and finishes, and activity durations.
    4. As the Work progresses, indicate final completion percentage for each activity.
B. Distribution: Distribute copies of approved schedule to Architect, Owner, separate contractors, testing and inspecting agencies, and other parties identified by Contractor with a need-to-know schedule responsibility.
    1. Post copies in Project meeting rooms and temporary field offices.

2. When revisions are made, distribute updated schedules to the same parties and post in the same locations. Delete parties from distribution when they have completed their assigned portion of the Work and are no longer involved in performance of construction activities.

END OF SECTION 01 32 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 32 33 - PHOTOGRAPHIC DOCUMENTATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:

1. Preconstruction photographs.
2. Concealed Work photographs.
3. Periodic construction photographs.
4. Final Completion construction photographs.
5. Preconstruction video recordings.
6. Periodic construction video recordings.
7. Construction webcam.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting photographic documentation as Project Record Documents at Project closeout.
2. Section 01 79 00 "Demonstration and Training" for submitting video recordings of demonstration of equipment and training of Owner's personnel.
3. Section 02 41 16 "Structure Demolition" for photographic documentation before building demolition operations commence.
4. Section 02 41 19 "Selective Demolition" for photographic documentation before selective demolition operations commence.
5. 2024 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures Division 200, or latest version for photographic documentation before site clearing operations commence.

C. If JAA General Conditions and Special Provisions are in conflict with the requirements of this section, the more stringent requirement shall take precedence.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Key Plan: Submit key plan of Project site and building with notation of vantage points marked for location and direction of each photograph and video recording. Indicate

elevation or story of construction. Include same information as corresponding photographic documentation.

B. Digital Photographs: Submit image files within three days of taking photographs.

1. Submit photos on CD-ROM or thumb-drive or by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction.
2. Identification: Provide the following information with each image description in file metadata tag or in web-based Project management software site:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and contact information for photographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date photograph was taken.
f. Description of location, vantage point, and direction.
g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

C. Printed Photographs: Submit two sets of prints of each photographic view within seven days of taking photographs.

1. Format: 8-by-10-inch smooth-surface matte prints on single-weight, paper; enclosed back to back in clear plastic sleeves punched for three-ring binder. Include copy of key plan indicating each photograph's location and direction. Provide one binder for each set of prints.
2. Identification: On back of each print, label with the following information:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and contact information for photographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date photograph was taken if not date stamped by camera.
f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.
g. Unique sequential identifier keyed to accompanying key plan.

D. Video Recordings: Submit video recordings within seven days of recording.

1. Submit video recordings on CD-ROM or thumb drive or by uploading to web-based Project management software site. Include copy of key plan indicating each video's location and direction.
2. Identification: With each submittal, provide the following information in file metadata tagor on web-based Project management software site:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and address of photographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date video recording was recorded.
f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

3. Transcript: Prepared on 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper, punched and bound in three-ring binders. Provide label on front and spine. Include a cover sheet with label information. Include name of Project and date of video recording on each page.

E. Time-Lapse Video: Submit time-lapse sequence video recordings within five days of recording.

1. Submit time-lapse sequence video recordings monthly on CD-ROM or thumb drive or by uploading to web-based Project management software site.
2. Identification: For each recording, provide the following information in file metadata tag or on web-based Project management software site:

a. Name of Project.
b. Name and contact information for photographer.
c. Name of Architect.
d. Name of Contractor.
e. Date(s) and time(s) video recording was recorded.
f. Description of vantage point, indicating location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Photographer Qualifications: An individual who has been regularly engaged as a professional photographer of construction projects for not less than three years.

B. Construction Webcam Service Provider: A firm specializing in providing photographic equipment, web-based software, and related services for construction projects, with a record of providing satisfactory services similar to those required for Project.

1.5 FORMATS AND MEDIA

A. Digital Photographs: Provide color images in JPG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor size of 12 megapixels, and at an image resolution of not less than 3200 by 2400 pixels. Use flash in low light levels or backlit conditions.

B. Digital Video Recordings: Provide high-resolution, digital video in MPEG format, produced by a digital camera with minimum sensor resolution of 12 megapixels and capable of recording in full high-definition mode with vibration-reduction technology. Provide supplemental lighting in low light levels or backlit conditions.

C. Digital Images: Submit digital media as originally recorded in the digital camera, without alteration, manipulation, editing, or modifications using image-editing software.

D. Metadata: Record accurate date and time and GPS location data from camera.

E. File Names: Name media files with date Project area and sequential numbering suffix.

1.6 CONSTRUCTION PHOTOGRAPHS

A. Photographer: Engage a qualified photographer to take construction photographs.

B. General: Take photographs with maximum depth of field and in focus.

1. Maintain key plan with each set of construction photographs that identifies each photographic location.

C. Preconstruction Photographs: Before commencement of the Work, take photographs of Project site and surrounding properties, including existing items to remain during construction, from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.

1. Flag excavation areas and construction limits before taking construction photographs.
2. Take 20 photographs to show existing conditions adjacent to property before starting the Work.
3. Take 20 photographs of existing buildings either on or adjoining property, to accurately record physical conditions at start of construction.
4. Take additional photographs as required to record settlement or cracking of adjacent structures, pavements, and improvements.

D. Concealed Work Photographs: Before proceeding with installing work that will conceal other work, take photographs sufficient in number, with annotated descriptions, to record nature and location of concealed Work, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Underground utilities.
2. Underslab services.
3. Piping.
4. Electrical conduit.
5. Waterproofing and weather-resistant barriers.

E. Periodic Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs weekly coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

F. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs as indicated, to show status of construction and progress since last photographs were taken.

1. Frequency: Take photographs monthly, on the same date each month.
2. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by Architect and Contractor, photographer shall select vantage points. During each of the following construction phases, take not less than two of the required shots from same vantage point each time, to create a time-lapse sequence as follows:

a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
b. Above-grade structural framing.
c. Exterior building enclosure.
d. Interior Work, through date of Substantial Completion.

G. Final Completion Construction Photographs: Take 20 photographs after date of Substantial Completion for submission as Project Record Documents. Architect will inform photographer of desired vantage points.

H. Additional Photographs: Architect may request photographs in addition to periodic photographs specified. Additional photographs will be paid for by Change Order and are not included in the Contract Sum.

1. Three days' notice will be given, where feasible.
2. In emergency situations, take additional photographs within 24 hours of request.
3. Circumstances that could require additional photographs include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Special events planned at Project site.
b. Immediate follow-up when on-site events result in construction damage or losses.
c. Photographs shall be taken at fabrication locations away from Project site. These photographs are not subject to unit prices or unit-cost allowances.
d. Substantial Completion of a major phase or component of the Work.
e. Extra record photographs at time of final acceptance.
f. Owner's request for special publicity photographs.

1.7 CONSTRUCTION VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. Video Recording Photographer: Engage a qualified videographer to record construction video recordings.

B. Narration: Describe scenes on video recording by audio narration by microphone while video recording is recorded. Include description of items being viewed, recent events, and planned activities. At each change in location, describe vantage point, location, direction (by compass point), and elevation or story of construction.

1. Confirm date and time at beginning and end of recording.
2. Begin each video recording with name of Project, Contractor's name, videographer's name, and Project location.

C. Transcript: Provide a typewritten transcript of the narration. Display images and running time captured from video recording opposite the corresponding narration segment.

D. Preconstruction Video Recording: Before starting excavation demolition construction, record video recording of Project site and surrounding properties from different vantage points, as directed by Architect.

1. Flag excavation areas and construction limits before recording construction video recordings.
2. Show existing conditions adjacent to Project site before starting the Work.
3. Show existing buildings either on or adjoining Project site to accurately record physical conditions at the start of excavation, demolition, and construction.
4. Show protection efforts by Contractor.

E. Periodic Construction Video Recordings: Record video recording monthly coinciding with the cutoff date associated with each Application for Payment. Select vantage points to show status of construction and progress since last video recordings were recorded. Minimum recording time shall be 30 minutes(s).

F. Time-Lapse Sequence Construction Video Recordings: Record video recording to show status of construction and progress.

1. Frequency: During each of the following construction phases, set up video recorder to automatically record one frame of video recording every five minutes, from same vantage point each time, to create a time-lapse sequence of 30 minutes in length as follows:

    a. Commencement of the Work, through completion of subgrade construction.
    b. Above-grade structural framing.
    c. Exterior building enclosure.

2. Timer: Provide timer to automatically start and stop video recorder, so recording occurs only during construction work hours.
3. Vantage Points: Following suggestions by Architect and Contractor, photographer shall select vantage points.

1.8 CONSTRUCTION WEBCAM

A. Webcam: Provide two fixed-location camera(s) with weatherproof housing, mounted to provide unobstructed view of construction site from location approved by Architect, with the following characteristics:

1. Remotely controllable view with mouse-click user navigation for horizontal pan, vertical tile, and optical zoom of 500 percent minimum.
2. Capable of producing minimum 8 megapixel images.
3. Provide pole mount, parapet mount, power supply, solar power station, active high-speed data connection to service provider's network, and static public IP address for each camera.

B. Live Streaming Images: Provide web-accessible image of current site image, updated at five-minute intervals when construction is underway.

C. Web-Based Interface: Provide online interface to allow viewing of each high-definition digital still image captured and stored during construction, from the Internet.

1. Access Control: Provide password-protected access for Project team administered by Contractor, providing current image access and archival image access by date and time, with images downloadable to viewer's device.
2. Software: Provide responsive software interface for use on computer, tablet, and mobile screens with accompanying iPhone/iPad app and Android apps.
3. Storage: Maintain images on the website for reference during entire construction period, and for not less than 30 days after Final Completion. Provide sufficient memory on remote server to store all Project images.
4. Online Interface: Provide website interface with Project and client information and logos, calendar-based navigation interface for selecting images, and pan and zoom capability within high-definition images.
5. Forward and Reverse: Provide capability to browse through images, moving forward and backward in time by individual image and by day.
6. Slideshow: Provide capability to automatically display current images from sites when there are three or more cameras used.
7. Time-Lapse: Provide capability for online display of project time-lapse.
8. Dashboard: Provide capability to view thumbnails of all cameras on one screen.
9. Weather: Provide corresponding weather data for each image captured.
10. Provide public viewer open access to most recent Project camera image.

D. Maintain cameras and web-based access in good working order, according to web-based construction photographic documentation service provider's written instructions until Final Completion. Provide for service of cameras and related networking devices and software.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 32 33

SECTION 01 33 00 - SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for the submittal schedule and administrative and procedural requirements for submitting Shop Drawings, Product Data, Samples, and other submittals.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

B. Action Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that require Architect's responsive action.

C. Informational Submittals: Written and graphic information and physical samples that do not require Architect's responsive action. Submittals may be rejected for not complying with requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Submittal Schedule: Submit a schedule of submittals, arranged in chronological order by dates required by construction schedule. Include time required for review, ordering, manufacturing, fabrication, and delivery when establishing dates. Include additional time required for making corrections or revisions to submittals noted by Architect and additional time for handling and reviewing submittals required by those corrections.

1. Coordinate submittal schedule with list of subcontracts, the schedule of values, and Contractor's construction schedule.
2. Initial Submittal: Submit concurrently with startup construction schedule. Include submittals required during the first 60 days of construction. List those submittals required to maintain orderly progress of the Work and those required early because of long lead time for manufacture or fabrication.
3. Final Submittal: Submit concurrently with the first complete submittal of Contractor's construction schedule.
    a. Submit revised submittal schedule to reflect changes in current status and timing for submittals.
4. Format: Arrange the following information in a tabular format:
    a. Scheduled date for first submittal.
    b. Specification Section number and title.
    c. Submittal category: Action; informational.
    d. Name of subcontractor.

e. Description of the Work covered.
f. Scheduled date for Architect's final release or approval.
g. Scheduled date of fabrication.
h. Scheduled dates for purchasing.
i. Scheduled dates for installation.
j. Activity or event number.

B. Closeout Submittal List: Submit a list of warranties, operation and maintenance manuals, and other closeout documents, arranged in Division/Section order as listed in the Project Manual.

1. Provide Table of Contents for Project Close Out document to the Architect for review, within 90 days of Notice to Proceed.

1.4 SUBMITTAL ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Architect's Digital Data Files: Electronic copies of digital data files of the Contract Drawings may be available from Architect for Contractor's use in preparing submittals.

1. Upon request, Architect will furnish Contractor digital data drawing files of the Contract Drawings for use in preparing Shop Drawings, Coordination Drawings, and Project record drawings.
   a. Architect makes no representations as to the accuracy or completeness of digital data drawing files as they relate to the Contract Drawings.
   b. Digital Drawing Software Program: The Contract Drawings are available in AutoCAD translated from Revit file.
2. The digital data files are available under the following conditions:
   a. Contractor shall execute a data licensing agreement in the form of Digital Data Letter of Agreement.
   b. Digital data drawings are not to be considered Contract Documents as defined by the General Conditions for the Contract for Construction.
   c. The Contract Documents executed or identified in the Owner/Contractor Agreement, shall prevail in case of an inconsistency with subsequent versions made through manipulatable electronic operations involving computers.
   d. The Contractor shall not transfer or reuse Instruments of Service in electronic or machine-readable form without the prior written consent of the Architect.

B. Coordination: Coordinate preparation and processing of submittals with performance of construction activities.

1. Coordinate each submittal with fabrication, purchasing, testing, delivery, other submittals, and related activities that require sequential activity.

2. Submit all submittal items required for each Specification Section concurrently unless partial submittals for portions of the Work are indicated on approved submittal schedule.
3. Submit action submittals and informational submittals required by the same Specification Section as separate packages under separate transmittals.
4. Coordinate transmittal of different types of submittals for related parts of the Work so processing will not be delayed because of need to review submittals concurrently for coordination.

    a. Architect reserves the right to withhold action on a submittal requiring coordination with other submittals until related submittals are received.

C. Submittal Period: Provide all submittals to Architect and Architect's Consultants within 60 calendar days of the Notice to Proceed.

1. If submittals are not provided within the submittal period stated above, the Contractor shall provide one of the brands specified. No alternate manufacturers will be considered for review beyond the allowable submittal period. This does not relieve the Contractor from responsibility to provide all required shop drawings, product data, and samples.

2. If the number of submittals not received within the submittal period is significant or their nature deemed of specific importance, the Architect may recommend that the Owner suspend or delay payment to the Contractor until such time as the required submittals have been received.

D. Processing Time: Allow time for submittal review, including time for resubmittals, as follows. Time for review shall commence on Architect's receipt of submittal. No extension of the Contract Time will be authorized because of failure to transmit submittals enough in advance of the Work to permit processing, including resubmittals.
1. Initial Review: Architect will endeavor to perform initial review of submittal within 10 days. Allow additional time if coordination with subsequent submittals is required. Architect will advise Contractor when a submittal being processed must be delayed for coordination.
2. Resubmittal Review: Architect will endeavor to review resubmittals within 10 days.
3. Concurrent Consultant Review: Where the Contract Documents indicate that submittals may be transmitted simultaneously to Architect and to Architect's consultants, reviewing parties will endeavor to review submittals within 10 days. Submittal will be returned to Architect before being returned to Contractor.

E. Electronic Submittals: Identify and incorporate information in each electronic submittal file as follows:

1. Assemble complete submittal package into a single indexed file incorporating submittal requirements of a single Specification Section and transmittal form with links enabling navigation to each item.

2. Name file with submittal number or other unique identifier, including revision identifier.
    a. File name shall be Specification Section number followed by a hyphen and then a sequential number (e.g. 081113 - 01 HM Doors and Frames). Resubmittals shall include a digital suffix after another hyphen (e.g. 081113 - 01 - 01 HM Doors and Frames).
3. Provide means for insertion to permanently record Contractor's review and approval markings and action taken by Architect.
4. Transmittal Form for Electronic Submittals: Use software-generated form from electronic project information management system.
5. Metadata: Include the following information as keywords in the electronic file metadata:
    a. Project name.
    b. Number and title of appropriate Specification Section.
    c. Manufacturer name.
    d. Product name.

F. Options: Identify options requiring selection by Architect.

G. Deviations and Additional Information: On an attached separate sheet, prepared on Contractor's letterhead, record relevant information, requests for data, revisions other than those requested by Architect on previous submittals, and deviations from requirements in the Contract Documents, including minor variations and limitations. Include same identification information as related submittal.

H. Resubmittals: Make resubmittals in same form and number of copies as initial submittal.
1. Note date and content of previous submittal.
2. Note date and content of revision in label or title block and clearly indicate extent of revision.
3. Resubmit submittals until they are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

I. Distribution: Furnish copies of final submittals to manufacturers, subcontractors, suppliers, fabricators, installers, authorities having jurisdiction, and others as necessary for performance of construction activities. Show distribution on transmittal forms.

J. Use for Construction: Retain complete copies of submittals on Project site. Use only final action submittals that are marked with approval notation from Architect's action stamp.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUBMITTAL PROCEDURES

A. General Submittal Procedure Requirements: Prepare and submit submittals required by individual Specification Sections. Types of submittals are indicated in individual Specification Sections.

1. Post electronic submittals as PDF electronic files directly to Project Information Management System specifically established for Project.
    a. Architect will return annotated file. Annotate and retain one copy of file as an electronic Project record document file.
2. Certificates and Certifications Submittals: Provide a statement that includes signature of entity responsible for preparing certification. Certificates and certifications shall be signed by an officer or other individual authorized to sign documents on behalf of that entity.
3. Action Submittals: Submit electronic copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated.
4. Informational Submittals: Submit electronic copies of each submittal unless otherwise indicated.

    b. Provide a digital signature with digital certificate on electronically submitted certificates and certifications where indicated.
    c. Provide a notarized statement on original paper copy certificates and certifications where indicated.

B. Product Data: Collect information into a single submittal for each element of construction and type of product or equipment.

1. If information must be specially prepared for submittal because standard published data are not suitable for use, submit as Shop Drawings, not as Product Data.
2. Mark each copy of each submittal to show which products and options are applicable.
3. Include the following information, as applicable:

    a. Manufacturer's catalog cuts, installation instructions, and product specifications.
    b. Color charts.
    c. Statement of compliance with specified referenced standards.
    d. Testing by recognized testing agency.
    e. Application of testing agency labels and seals.
    f. Notation of coordination requirements.
    g. Availability and delivery time information.

4. For equipment, include the following in addition to the above, as applicable:

a. Wiring diagrams showing factory-installed wiring.
b. Printed performance curves.
c. Operational range diagrams.
d. Clearances required to other construction, if not indicated on accompanying Shop Drawings.

5. Submit Product Data before or concurrent with Samples.
6. Submit Product Data in PDF electronic file format.

C. Shop Drawings: Prepare Project-specific information, drawn accurately to scale. Do not base Shop Drawings on reproductions of the Contract Documents or manufacturer's standard printed data or details. Submittals based on Architect's digital data drawing files are permitted.

1. Preparation: Fully illustrate requirements in the Contract Documents. Include the following information, as applicable:
   a. Identification of products.
   b. Schedules.
   c. Compliance with specified standards.
   d. Notation of coordination requirements.
   e. Notation of dimensions established by field measurement.
   f. Relationship and attachment to adjoining construction clearly indicated.
   g. Seal and signature of professional engineer if specified.
2. Sheet Size: Except for templates, patterns, and similar full-size drawings, submit Shop Drawings on sheets at least 8-1/2 by 11 inches, but no larger than 30 by 42 inches.
3. Submit Shop Drawings in PDF electronic file format.

D. Samples: Submit Samples for review of kind, color, pattern, and texture for a check of these characteristics with other elements and for a comparison of these characteristics between submittal and actual component as delivered and installed.

1. Transmit Samples that contain multiple, related components such as accessories together in one submittal package.
2. Identification: Attach label on unexposed side of Samples that includes the following:
   a. Generic description of Sample.
   b. Product name and name of manufacturer.
   c. Sample source.
   d. Number and title of applicable Specification Section.
   e. Specification paragraph number and generic name of each item.
3. Provide corresponding electronic submittal of Sample transmittal, digital image file illustrating Sample characteristics, and identification information for record.

4. Disposition: Maintain sets of approved Samples at Project site, available for quality-control comparisons throughout the course of construction activity. Sample sets may be used to determine final acceptance of construction associated with each set.
5. Samples for Initial Selection: Submit manufacturer's color charts consisting of units or sections of units showing the full range of colors, textures, and patterns available.

    a. Number of Samples: Submit one full set(s) of available choices where color, pattern, texture, or similar characteristics are required to be selected from manufacturer's product line. Architect will return submittal with options selected.

6. Samples for Verification: Submit full-size units or Samples of size indicated, prepared from same material to be used for the Work, cured and finished in manner specified, and physically identical with material or product proposed for use, and that show full range of color and texture variations expected. Samples include, but are not limited to, the following: partial sections of manufactured or fabricated components; small cuts or containers of materials; complete units of repetitively used materials; swatches showing color, texture, and pattern; color range sets; and components used for independent testing and inspection.
    a. Number of Samples: Submit three sets of Samples.
        1) Submit a single Sample where assembly details, workmanship, fabrication techniques, connections, operation, and other similar characteristics are to be demonstrated.
        2) If variation in color, pattern, texture, or other characteristic is inherent in material or product represented by a Sample, submit at least three sets of paired units that show approximate limits of variations.

E. Product Schedule: As required in individual Specification Sections, prepare a written summary indicating types of products required for the Work and their intended location. Include the following information in tabular form:

1. Type of product. Include unique identifier for each product indicated in the Contract Documents or assigned by Contractor if none is indicated.
2. Manufacturer and product name, and model number if applicable.
3. Number and name of room or space.
4. Location within room or space.
5. Submit product schedule in PDF electronic file format.

F. Subcontractor, Supplier and Manufacturer List: Prepare a written summary identifying individuals or firms proposed for each portion of the Work, including major subcontractors, suppliers, and manufacturers.

G. Qualification Data: Prepare written information that demonstrates capabilities and experience of firm or person. Include lists of completed projects with project names and addresses, contact information of architects and owners, and other information specified.

H. Welding Certificates: Prepare written certification that welding procedures and personnel comply with requirements in the Contract Documents. Submit record of Welding Procedure Specification and Procedure Qualification Record on AWS forms. Include names of firms and personnel certified.

I. Installer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that Installer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents and, where required, is authorized by manufacturer for this specific Project.

J. Manufacturer Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Include evidence of manufacturing experience where required.

K. Product Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that product complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

L. Material Certificates: Submit written statements on manufacturer's letterhead certifying that material complies with requirements in the Contract Documents.

M. Material Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting test results of material for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

N. Product Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating that current product produced by manufacturer complies with requirements in the Contract Documents. Base reports on evaluation of tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency, or on comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

O. Research Reports: Submit written evidence, from a model code organization acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, that product complies with building code in effect for Project.

P. Preconstruction Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of tests performed before installation of product, for compliance with performance requirements in the Contract Documents.

Q. Compatibility Test Reports: Submit reports written by a qualified testing agency, on testing agency's standard form, indicating and interpreting results of compatibility tests

performed before installation of product. Include written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation needed for adhesion.

R. Field Test Reports: Submit written reports indicating and interpreting results of field tests performed either during installation of product or after product is installed in its final location, for compliance with requirements in the Contract Documents.

S. Design Data: Prepare and submit written and graphic information, including, but not limited to, performance and design criteria, list of applicable codes and regulations, and calculations. Include list of assumptions and other performance and design criteria and a summary of loads. Include load diagrams if applicable. Provide name and version of software, if any, used for calculations. Include page numbers.

2.2 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.
   1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

B. Delegated-Design Services Certification: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit digitally signed PDF electronic file paper copies of certificate, signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional.
   1. Indicate that products and systems comply with performance and design criteria in the Contract Documents. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

C. Professional Engineer Qualifications: Professional engineer performing delegated-design services shall be legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and shall be experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTRACTOR'S REVIEW

A. Action and Informational Submittals: Review each submittal and check for coordination with other Work of the Contract and for compliance with the Contract Documents. Note

corrections and field dimensions. Mark with approval stamp before submitting to Architect.

B. Approval Stamp: Stamp each submittal with a uniform, approval stamp. Include Project name and location, submittal number, Specification Section title and number, name of reviewer, date of Contractor's approval, and statement certifying that submittal has been reviewed, checked, and approved for compliance with the Contract Documents.

3.2 ARCHITECT'S ACTION

A. General: Architect will not review submittals that do not bear Contractor's approval stamp and will return them without action.

B. Action Submittals: Architect will review each submittal, annotate to indicate corrections or revisions required, and return it. Architect will stamp each submittal with an action stamp and will mark stamp appropriately to indicate action.

1. No Exceptions Taken: The work covered by the submittal may proceed.
2. Note Markings: The work covered by the submittal may proceed provided it complies with both the Architect’s notations and corrections on the submittal and the Contract Documents.
3. Rejected: Do not proceed with the Work covered by the submittal. Prepare a new submittal for a product that complies with the contract document.

C. Informational Submittals: Architect will review each submittal and will return it, noting "No Action Taken." If it does not comply with requirements, Architect will return it noting "Revise and Resubmit." Architect will forward each submittal to appropriate party.

D. Partial submittals prepared for a portion of the Work will be reviewed when use of partial submittals has received prior approval from Architect.

E. Incomplete submittals are unacceptable, will be considered nonresponsive, and will be returned for resubmittal without review, with notation "Revise and Resubmit."

F. Submittals not required by the Contract Documents may be returned by the Architect without action, with notation "No Action Taken."

END OF SECTION 01 33 00

SECTION 01 35 16 - ALTERATION PROJECT PROCEDURES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes special procedures for alteration work.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Alteration Work: This term includes remodeling, renovation, repair, and maintenance work performed within existing spaces or on existing surfaces as part of the Project. B.
B. Consolidate: To strengthen loose or deteriorated materials in place.
C. Design Reference Sample: A sample that represents the Architect's prebid selection of work to be matched; it may be existing work or work specially produced for the Project.
D. Dismantle: To remove by disassembling or detaching an item from a surface, using gentle methods and equipment to prevent damage to the item and surfaces; disposing of items unless indicated to be salvaged or reinstalled.
E. Match: To blend with adjacent construction and manifest no apparent difference in material type, species, cut, form, detail, color, grain, texture, or finish; as approved by Architect.
F. Refinish: To remove existing finishes to base material and apply new finish to match original, or as otherwise indicated.
G. Repair: To correct damage and defects, retaining existing materials, features, and finishes. This includes patching, piecing-in, splicing, consolidating, or otherwise reinforcing or upgrading materials.
H. Replace: To remove, duplicate, and reinstall entire item with new material. The original item is the pattern for creating duplicates unless otherwise indicated.
I. Replicate: To reproduce in exact detail, materials, and finish unless otherwise indicated.
J. Reproduce: To fabricate a new item, accurate in detail to the original, and from either the same or a similar material as the original, unless otherwise indicated.
K. Retain: To keep existing items that are not to be removed or dismantled.
L. Strip: To remove existing finish down to base material unless otherwise indicated.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Alteration Work Subschedule: A construction schedule coordinating the sequencing and scheduling of alteration work for entire Project, including each activity to be performed, and based on Contractor's Construction Schedule. Secure time commitments for performing critical construction activities from separate entities responsible for alteration work.

1. Schedule construction operations in sequence required to obtain best Work results.
2. Coordinate sequence of alteration work activities to accommodate the following:
    a. Owner's continuing occupancy of portions of existing building.
    b. Owner's partial occupancy of completed Work.
    c. Other known work in progress.
    d. Tests and inspections.
3. Detail sequence of alteration work, with start and end dates.
4. Utility Services: Indicate how long utility services will be interrupted. Coordinate shutoff, capping, and continuation of utility services.
5. Equipment Data: List gross loaded weight, axle-load distribution, and wheel-base dimension data for mobile and heavy equipment proposed for use in existing structure. Do not use such equipment without certification from Contractor's professional engineer that the structure can support the imposed loadings without damage.

B. Pedestrian and Vehicular Circulation: Coordinate alteration work with circulation patterns within Project building(s) and site. Some work is near circulation patterns and adjacent to restricted areas. Circulation patterns cannot be closed off entirely and in places can be only temporarily redirected around small areas of work. Access to restricted areas may not be obstructed. Plan and execute the Work accordingly.
    1. Refer to Construction Safety and Phasing Plan, Specifications and Civil Drawings for requirements. Comply with FAA requirements for active airfield.

1.5 PROJECT MEETINGS FOR ALTERATION WORK

A. Preliminary Conference for Alteration Work: Before starting alteration work, conduct conference at Project site.
    1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, testing service representative, specialists, and chemical-cleaner manufacturer(s) shall be represented at the meeting.
    2. Agenda: Discuss items of significance that could affect progress of alteration work, including review of the following:
        a. Alteration Work Subschedule: Discuss and finalize; verify availability of materials, specialists' personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays. b. Fire-prevention plan.
        b. Governing regulations.
        c. Areas where existing construction is to remain and the required protection.
        d. Hauling routes.
        e. Sequence of alteration work operations.
        f. Storage, protection, and accounting for salvaged and specially fabricated items.

g. Existing conditions, staging, and structural loading limitations of areas where materials are stored.
h. Qualifications of personnel assigned to alteration work and assigned duties.
i. Requirements for extent and quality of work, tolerances, and required clearances.
j. Embedded work such as flashings and lintels, special details, collection of waste, protection of occupants and the public, and condition of other construction that affects the Work or will affect the work.

3. Reporting: Record conference results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from conference.

B. Coordination Meetings: Conduct coordination meetings specifically for alteration work at weekly intervals. Coordination meetings are in addition to specific meetings held for other purposes, such as progress meetings and preinstallation conferences.

1. Attendees: In addition to representatives of Owner, Architect, and Contractor, each specialist, supplier, installer, and other entity concerned with progress or involved in planning, coordination, or performance of alteration work activities shall be represented at these meetings. All participants at conference shall be familiar with Project and authorized to conclude matters relating to alteration work.
2. Agenda: Review and correct or approve minutes of previous coordination meeting. Review other items of significance that could affect progress of alteration work. Include topics for discussion as appropriate to status of Project.
    a. Alteration Work Subschedule: Review progress since last coordination meeting. Determine whether each schedule item is on time, ahead of schedule, or behind schedule. Determine how construction behind schedule will be expedited with retention of quality; secure commitments from parties involved to do so. Discuss whether schedule revisions are required to ensure that current and subsequent activities are completed within the Contract Time.
    b. Schedule Updating: Revise Contractor's Alteration Work Subschedule after each coordination meeting where revisions to schedule have been made or recognized. Issue revised schedule concurrently with report of each meeting.
    c. Review present and future needs of each entity present, including review items listed in the "Preliminary Conference for Alteration Work" Paragraph in this article and the following:
        1) Interface requirements of alteration work with other Project Work.
        2) Status of submittals for alteration work.
        3) Access to alteration work locations.

4) Effectiveness of fire-prevention plan.
5) Quality and work standards of alteration work.
6) Change Orders for alteration work.

3. Reporting: Record meeting results and distribute copies to everyone in attendance and to others affected by decisions or actions resulting from each meeting.

1.6 MATERIALS OWNERSHIP

A. A. Historic items, relics, and similar objects including, but not limited to, cornerstones and their contents, commemorative plaques and tablets, antiques, and other items of interest or value to Owner that may be encountered or uncovered during the Work, regardless of whether they were previously documented, remain Owner's property.
   1. Carefully dismantle and salvage each item or object in a manner to prevent damage and protect it from damage, then promptly deliver it to Owner where directed at Project site.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Alteration Work Subschedule: Submit alteration work subschedule within 30 days of date established for commencement of alteration work.
B. Preconstruction Documentation: Show preexisting conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements that are to remain, including finish surfaces, that might be misconstrued as damage caused by Contractor's alteration work operations.
C. Alteration Work Program: Submit 30 days before work begins.
D. Fire-Prevention Plan: Submit 30 days before work begins.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Specialist Qualifications: An experienced firm regularly engaged in specialty work similar in nature, materials, design, and extent to alteration work as specified in each Section and that has completed a minimum of five recent projects with a record of successful in-service performance that demonstrates the firm's qualifications to perform this work.
   1. Field Supervisor Qualifications: Full-time supervisors experienced in specialty work similar in nature, material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project. Supervisors shall be on-site when specialty work begins and during its progress. Supervisors shall not be changed during Project except for causes beyond the control of the specialist firm.
      a. Construct new mockups of required work whenever a supervisor is replaced.
B. Alteration Work Program: Prepare a written plan for alteration work for whole Project, including each phase or process and protection of surrounding materials during operations. Show compliance with indicated methods and procedures specified in this and other Sections. Coordinate this whole-Project alteration work program with specific requirements of programs required in other alteration work Sections.

1. Dust and Noise Control: Include locations of proposed temporary dust- and noise-control partitions and means of egress from occupied areas coordinated with continuing on-site operations and other known work in progress.
2. Debris Hauling: Include plans clearly marked to show debris hauling routes, turning radii, and locations and details of temporary protective barriers.

C. Fire-Prevention Plan: Prepare a written plan for preventing fires during the Work, including placement of fire extinguishers, fire blankets, rag buckets, and other fire-control devices during each phase or process. Coordinate plan with Owner's fire-protection equipment and requirements. Include fire-watch personnel's training, duties, and authority to enforce fire safety.

D. Safety and Health Standard: Comply with ANSI/ASSE A10.6.

1.9 STORAGE AND HANDLING OF SALVAGED MATERIALS

A. Salvaged Materials:
1. Clean loose dirt and debris from salvaged items unless more extensive cleaning is indicated.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning; cushion against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.
3. Store items in a secure area until delivery to Owner.
4. Transport items to Owner's storage area on-site.
5. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.

B. Salvaged Materials for Reinstallation:
1. Repair and clean items for reuse as indicated.
2. Pack or crate items after cleaning and repairing; cushion against damage during handling. Label contents of containers.
3. Protect items from damage during transport and storage.
4. Reinstall items in locations indicated. Comply with installation requirements for new materials and equipment unless otherwise indicated. Provide connections, supports, and miscellaneous materials to make items functional for use indicated.

C. Existing Materials to Remain: Protect construction indicated to remain against damage and soiling from construction work. Where permitted by Architect, items may be dismantled and taken to a suitable, protected storage location during construction work and reinstalled in their original locations after alteration and other construction work in the vicinity is complete.

D. Storage: Catalog and store items within a weathertight enclosure where they are protected from moisture, weather, condensation, and freezing temperatures.
1. Identify each item for reinstallation with a nonpermanent mark to document its original location. Indicate original locations on plans, elevations, sections, or photographs by annotating the identifying marks.
2. Secure stored materials to protect from theft.

3. Control humidity so that it does not exceed 85 percent. Maintain temperatures 5 deg F or more above the dew point.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Survey of Existing Conditions: Record existing conditions that affect the Work by use of measured drawings, preconstruction photographs, and preconstruction videotapes.
   1. Comply with requirements specified in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
B. Discrepancies: Notify Architect of discrepancies between existing conditions and Drawings before proceeding with removal and dismantling work.
C. Size Limitations in Existing Spaces: Materials, products, and equipment used for performing the Work and for transporting debris, materials, and products shall be of sizes that clear surfaces within existing spaces, areas, rooms, and openings, including temporary protection, by 12 inches or more.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS - (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PROTECTION

A. Protect persons, motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm resulting from alteration work.
   1. Use only proven protection methods, appropriate to each area and surface being protected.
   2. Provide temporary barricades, barriers, and directional signage to exclude the public from areas where alteration work is being performed.
   3. Erect temporary barriers to form and maintain fire-egress routes.
   4. Erect temporary protective covers over walkways and at points of pedestrian and vehicular entrance and exit that must remain in service during alteration work.
   5. Contain dust and debris generated by alteration work, and prevent it from reaching the public or adjacent surfaces.
   6. Provide shoring, bracing, and supports as necessary. Do not overload structural elements.
   7. Protect floors and other surfaces along hauling routes from damage, wear, and staining.
   8. Provide supplemental sound-control treatment to isolate demolition work from other areas of the building.
B. Temporary Protection of Materials to Remain:
   1. Protect existing materials with temporary protections and construction. Do not remove existing materials unless otherwise indicated.

2. Do not attach temporary protection to existing surfaces except as indicated as part of the alteration work program.

C. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for protections and precautions. Protect against adverse effects of products and procedures on people and adjacent materials, components, and vegetation.

D. Utility and Communications Services:
   1. Notify Owner, Architect, authorities having jurisdiction, and entities owning or controlling wires, conduits, pipes, and other services affected by alteration work before commencing operations.
   2. Disconnect and cap pipes and services as required by authorities having jurisdiction, as required for alteration work.
   3. Maintain existing services unless otherwise indicated; keep in service, and protect against damage during operations. Provide temporary services during interruptions to existing utilities.

E. Existing Drains: Prior to the start of work in an area, test drainage system to ensure that it is functioning properly. Notify Architect immediately of inadequate drainage or blockage. Do not begin work in an area until the drainage system is functioning properly.
   1. Prevent solids such as adhesive or mortar residue or other debris from entering the drainage system. Clean out drains and drain lines that become sluggish or blocked by sand or other materials resulting from alteration work.
   2. Protect drains from pollutants. Block drains or filter out sediments, allowing only clean water to pass.

F. Existing Roofing: Prior to the start of work in an area, install roofing protection.

3.2 PROTECTION FROM FIRE

A. General: Follow fire-prevention plan and the following:
   1. Comply with NFPA 241 requirements unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Remove and keep area free of combustibles, including rubbish, paper, waste, and chemicals, unless necessary for the immediate work.
      a. If combustible material cannot be removed, provide fire blankets to cover such materials.

B. Heat-Generating Equipment and Combustible Materials: Comply with the following procedures while performing work with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, including welding, torchcutting, soldering, brazing, removing paint with heat, or other operations where open flames or implements using high heat or combustible solvents and chemicals are anticipated:
   1. Obtain Owner's approval for operations involving use of welding or other high-heat equipment. Use of open-flame equipment is not permitted. Notify Owner at least 72 hours before each occurrence, indicating location of such work.
   2. As far as practicable, restrict heat-generating equipment to shop areas or outside the building.

3. Do not perform work with heat-generating equipment in or near rooms or in areas where flammable liquids or explosive vapors are present or thought to be present. Use a combustible gas indicator test to ensure that the area is safe.
4. Use fireproof baffles to prevent flames, sparks, hot gases, or other high-temperature material from reaching surrounding combustible material.
5. Prevent the spread of sparks and particles of hot metal through open windows, doors, holes, and cracks in floors, walls, ceilings, roofs, and other openings.
6. Fire Watch: Before working with heat-generating equipment or combustible materials, station personnel to serve as a fire watch at each location where such work is performed. Fire-watch personnel shall have the authority to enforce fire safety. Station fire watch according to NFPA 51B, NFPA 241, and as follows:
    a. Train each fire watch in the proper operation of fire-control equipment and alarms.
    b. Prohibit fire-watch personnel from other work that would be a distraction from fire-watch duties.
    c. Cease work with heat-generating equipment whenever fire-watch personnel are not present.
    d. Have fire-watch personnel perform final fire-safety inspection each day beginning no sooner than 30 minutes after conclusion of work in each area to detect hidden or smoldering fires and to ensure that proper fire prevention is maintained.

C. Fire-Control Devices: Provide and maintain fire extinguishers, fire blankets, and rag buckets for disposal of rags with combustible liquids. Maintain each as suitable for the type of fire risk in each work area. Ensure that nearby personnel and the fire-watch personnel are trained in fire-extinguisher and blanket use.

D. Sprinklers: Where sprinkler protection exists and is functional, maintain it without interruption while operations are being performed. If operations are performed close to sprinklers, shield them temporarily with guards.
    1. Remove temporary guards at the end of work shifts, whenever operations are paused, and when nearby work is complete.

3.3 PROTECTION DURING APPLICATION OF CHEMICALS

A. Protect motor vehicles, surrounding surfaces of building, building site, plants, and surrounding buildings from harm or spillage resulting from applications of chemicals and adhesives.

B. Cover adjacent surfaces with protective materials that are proven to resist chemicals selected for Project unless chemicals being used will not damage adjacent surfaces as indicated in alteration work program. Use covering materials and masking agents that are waterproof and UV resistant and that will not stain or leave residue on surfaces to which they are applied. Apply protective materials according to manufacturer's written instructions. Do not apply liquid masking agents or adhesives to painted or porous surfaces. When no longer needed, promptly remove protective materials.

C. Do not apply chemicals during winds of sufficient force to spread them to unprotected surfaces.
D. Neutralize alkaline and acid wastes and legally dispose of off Owner's property.
E. Collect and dispose of runoff from chemical operations by legal means and in a manner that prevents soil contamination, soil erosion, undermining of paving and foundations, damage to landscaping, or water penetration into building interior.

3.4 GENERAL ALTERATION WORK

A. Have specialty work performed only by qualified specialists.
B. Ensure that supervisory personnel are present when work begins and during its progress.
C. Record existing work before each procedure (preconstruction), and record progress during the work. Use digital preconstruction documentation photographs or video recordings. Comply with requirements in Section 013233 "Photographic Documentation."
D. Perform surveys of Project site as the Work progresses to detect hazards resulting from alterations.
E. Notify Architect of visible changes in the integrity of material or components whether from environmental causes including biological attack, UV degradation, freezing, or thawing or from structural defects including cracks, movement, or distortion.
    1. Do not proceed with the work in question until directed by Architect.

END OF SECTION 01 35 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 40 00 - QUALITY REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for quality assurance and quality control.

B. Testing and inspecting services are required to verify compliance with requirements specified or indicated. These services do not relieve Contractor of responsibility for compliance with the Contract Document requirements.

1. Specified tests, inspections, and related actions do not limit Contractor's other quality-assurance and -control procedures that facilitate compliance with the Contract Document requirements.
2. Requirements for Contractor to provide quality-assurance and -control services required by Architect, Owner, or authorities having jurisdiction are not limited by provisions of this Section.
3. Specific test and inspection requirements are not specified in this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Quality-Assurance Services: Activities, actions, and procedures performed before and during execution of the Work to guard against defects and deficiencies and substantiate that proposed construction will comply with requirements.

B. Quality-Control Services: Tests, inspections, procedures, and related actions during and after execution of the Work to evaluate that actual products incorporated into the Work and completed construction comply with requirements. Services do not include contract enforcement activities performed by Architect.

C. Mockups: Full-size physical assemblies that are constructed on-site. Mockups are constructed to verify selections made under Sample submittals; to demonstrate aesthetic effects and, where indicated, qualities of materials and execution; to review coordination, testing, or operation; to show interface between dissimilar materials; and to demonstrate compliance with specified installation tolerances. Mockups are not Samples. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.

1. Composite Exterior Wall Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope erected separately from the building but on Project site, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.

D. Preconstruction Testing: Tests and inspections performed specifically for Project before products and materials are incorporated into the Work, to verify performance or

compliance with specified criteria.

E. Product Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed by an NRTL, an NVLAP, or a testing agency qualified to conduct product testing and acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, to establish product performance and compliance with specified requirements.

F. Source Quality—Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed at the source, e.g., plant, mill, factory, or shop.

G. Field Quality-Control Testing: Tests and inspections that are performed on-site for installation of the Work and for completed Work.

H. Testing Agency: An entity engaged to perform specific tests, inspections, or both. Testing laboratory shall mean the same as testing agency.

I. Installer/Applicator/Erector: Contractor or another entity engaged by Contractor as an employee, Subcontractor, or Sub-subcontractor, to perform a particular construction operation, including installation, erection, application, and similar operations.

1. Use of trade-specific terminology in referring to a trade or entity does not require that certain construction activities be performed by accredited or unionized individuals, or that requirements specified apply exclusively to specific trade(s).

J. Experienced: When used with an entity or individual, "experienced" means having successfully completed a minimum of five previous projects similar in nature, size, and extent to this Project; being familiar with special requirements indicated; and having complied with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.3 DELEGATED-DESIGN SERVICES

A. Performance and Design Criteria: Where professional design services or certifications by a design professional are specifically required of Contractor by the Contract Documents, provide products and systems complying with specific performance and design criteria indicated.

1. If criteria indicated are not sufficient to perform services or certification required, submit a written request for additional information to Architect.

1.4 CONFLICTING REQUIREMENTS

A. Referenced Standards: If compliance with two or more standards is specified and the standards establish different or conflicting requirements for minimum quantities or quality levels, comply with the most stringent requirement. Refer conflicting requirements that are different, but apparently equal, to Architect for a decision before

proceeding.

B. Minimum Quantity or Quality Levels: The quantity or quality level shown or specified shall be the minimum provided or performed. The actual installation may comply exactly with the minimum quantity or quality specified, or it may exceed the minimum within reasonable limits. To comply with these requirements, indicated numeric values are minimum or maximum, as appropriate, for the context of requirements. Refer uncertainties to Architect for a decision before proceeding.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Delegated-Design Services Submittal: In addition to Shop Drawings, Product Data, and other required submittals, submit a statement signed and sealed by the responsible design professional, for each product and system specifically assigned to Contractor to be designed or certified by a design professional, indicating that the products and systems are in compliance with performance and design criteria indicated. Include list of codes, loads, and other factors used in performing these services.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor's Quality-Control Plan: For quality-assurance and quality-control activities and responsibilities.

B. Qualification Data: For Contractor's quality-control personnel.

C. Contractor's Statement of Responsibility: When required by authorities having jurisdiction, submit copy of written statement of responsibility submitted to authorities having jurisdiction before starting work on the following systems:

1. Seismic-force-resisting system, designated seismic system, or component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.
2. Main wind-force-resisting system or a wind-resisting component listed in the Statement of Special Inspections.

D. Testing Agency Qualifications: For testing agencies specified in "Quality Assurance" Article to demonstrate their capabilities and experience. Include proof of qualifications in the form of a recent report on the inspection of the testing agency by a recognized authority.

1.7 CONTRACTOR'S QUALITY-CONTROL PLAN

A. Quality-Control Plan, General: Submit quality-control plan within 10 days of Notice of Award, and not less than five days prior to preconstruction conference. Submit in format acceptable to Architect. Identify personnel, procedures, controls, instructions, tests, records, and forms to be used to carry out Contractor's quality-assurance and

quality-control responsibilities. Coordinate with Contractor's Construction Schedule.

B. Quality-Control Personnel Qualifications: Engage qualified personnel trained and experienced in managing and executing quality-assurance and quality-control procedures similar in nature and extent to those required for Project.

1. Project quality-control manager may also serve as Project superintendent.

C. Submittal Procedure: Describe procedures for ensuring compliance with requirements through review and management of submittal process. Indicate qualifications of personnel responsible for submittal review.

D. Testing and Inspection: In quality-control plan, include a comprehensive schedule of Work requiring testing or inspection, including the following:

1. Contractor-performed tests and inspections including Subcontractor-performed tests and inspections. Include required tests and inspections and Contractor-elected tests and inspections. Distinguish source quality-control tests and inspections from field quality-control tests and inspections.
2. Special inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction and indicated on the Statement of Special Inspections.
3. Owner-performed tests and inspections indicated in the Contract Documents.

E. Continuous Inspection of Workmanship: Describe process for continuous inspection during construction to identify and correct deficiencies in workmanship in addition to testing and inspection specified. Indicate types of corrective actions to be required to bring work into compliance with standards of workmanship established by Contract requirements and approved mockups.

F. Monitoring and Documentation: Maintain testing and inspection reports including log of approved and rejected results. Include work Architect has indicated as nonconforming or defective. Indicate corrective actions taken to bring nonconforming work into compliance with requirements. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

1.8 REPORTS AND DOCUMENTS

A. Test and Inspection Reports: Prepare and submit certified written reports specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Date of issue.
2. Project title and number.
3. Name, address, and telephone number of testing agency.
4. Dates and locations of samples and tests or inspections.
5. Names of individuals making tests and inspections.
6. Description of the Work and test and inspection method.

7. Identification of product and Specification Section.
8. Complete test or inspection data.
9. Test and inspection results and an interpretation of test results.
10. Record of temperature and weather conditions at time of sample taking and testing and inspecting.
11. Comments or professional opinion on whether tested or inspected Work complies with the Contract Document requirements.
12. Name and signature of laboratory inspector.
13. Recommendations on retesting and reinspecting.

B. Manufacturer's Technical Representative's Field Reports: Prepare written information documenting tests and inspections specified in other Sections. Include the following:

1. Name, address, and telephone number of representative making report.
2. Statement on condition of substrates and their acceptability for installation of product.
3. Summary of installation procedures being followed, whether they comply with requirements and, if not, what corrective action was taken.
4. Results of operational and other tests and a statement of whether observed performance complies with requirements.
5. Other required items indicated in individual Specification Sections.

C. Permits, Licenses, and Certificates: For Owner's records, submit copies of permits, licenses, certifications, inspection reports, releases, jurisdictional settlements, notices, receipts for fee payments, judgments, correspondence, records, and similar documents, established for compliance with standards and regulations bearing on performance of the Work.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. General: Qualifications paragraphs in this article establish the minimum qualification levels required; individual Specification Sections specify additional requirements.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing products or systems similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

C. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm experienced in producing products similar to those indicated for this Project and with a record of successful in-service performance, as well as sufficient production capacity to produce required units.

D. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in installing, erecting, or assembling work similar in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in construction with a record of successful in-service performance.

E. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of the system, assembly, or product that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

F. Specialists: Certain Specification Sections require that specific construction activities shall be performed by entities who are recognized experts in those operations. Specialists shall satisfy qualification requirements indicated and shall be engaged for the activities indicated.

1. Requirements of authorities having jurisdiction shall supersede requirements for specialists.

G. Testing Agency Qualifications: An NRTL, an NVLAP, or an independent agency with the experience and capability to conduct testing and inspecting indicated, as documented according to ASTM E 329; and with additional qualifications specified in individual Sections; and, where required by authorities having jurisdiction, that is acceptable to authorities.

1. NRTL: A nationally recognized testing laboratory according to 29 CFR 1910.7.
2. NVLAP: A testing agency accredited according to NIST's National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program.

H. Manufacturer's Representative Qualifications: An authorized representative of manufacturer who is trained and approved by manufacturer to observe and inspect installation of manufacturer's products that are similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project.

I. Preconstruction Testing: Where testing agency is indicated to perform preconstruction testing for compliance with specified requirements for performance and test methods, comply with the following:

1. Contractor responsibilities include the following:
    a. Provide test specimens representative of proposed products and construction.
    b. Submit specimens in a timely manner with sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
    c. Build laboratory mockups at testing facility using personnel, products, and methods of construction indicated for the completed Work.
    d. When testing is complete, remove test specimens, assemblies, and mockups; do not reuse products on Project.
2. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Submit a certified written report of each test, inspection, and similar quality-assurance service to Architect, with copy to Contractor. Interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from the Contract

Documents.

J. Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required to comply with the following requirements, using materials indicated for the completed Work:

1. Build mockups in location and of size indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
3. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
4. Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting work, fabrication, or construction.
    a. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

K. Composite Exterior Wall Mockups: Before ordering materials or commencing elements of the Work noted as part of the exterior wall mockup, build mockup for approval of exterior materials and finishes. Coordinate installation of exterior envelope materials and products in individual Specification Sections, along with supporting materials.

1. The mockup includes, but is not limited to, the following materials:
    a. Masonry.
    b. Masonry reinforcing.
    c. Structural framing.
    d. Metal panels.
    e. Aluminum—framed entrances and storefront.
    f. Glazing.
    g. Sealants.
    h. Air barrier.
    i. Insulation.
    j. Flashing.
2. Schedule: Allow time for the construction of the mockup and review by Architect.
3. Submittal: List generic product names together with manufacturers, manufacturers' product names, model numbers, lot numbers, batch numbers, finish and color designations, source of supply, and other information as required to identify materials used. Include mix proportions for mortar and grout and source of aggregates.

L. In-Place Mockups: Before installing portions of the Work requiring in-place mockups, construct mockups incorporating required materials, assemblies, and mechanical and electrical systems, finished according to requirements. Provide required lighting and

additional lighting where required to enable Architect to evaluate quality of the Work.

1. Approved mockups may be incorporated into the Work.

1.10 QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner Responsibilities: Where quality-control services are indicated as Owner's responsibility, Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform these services.

1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names, addresses, and telephone numbers of testing agencies engaged and a description of types of testing and inspecting they are engaged to perform.
2. Costs for retesting and reinspecting construction that replaces or is necessitated by work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents will be charged to Contractor.

B. Contractor Responsibilities: Tests and inspections not explicitly assigned to Owner are Contractor's responsibility. Perform additional quality-control activities required to verify that the Work complies with requirements, whether specified or not.

1. Where services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, engage a qualified testing agency to perform these quality-control services.

a. Contractor shall not employ same entity engaged by Owner, unless agreed to in writing by Owner.

2. Notify testing agencies at least 24 hours in advance of time when Work that requires testing or inspecting will be performed.
3. Where quality-control services are indicated as Contractor's responsibility, submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each quality-control service.
4. Testing and inspecting requested by Contractor and not required by the Contract Documents are Contractor's responsibility.
5. Submit additional copies of each written report directly to authorities having jurisdiction, when they so direct.

C. Manufacturer's Field Services: Where indicated, engage a manufacturer's representative to observe and inspect the Work. Manufacturer's representative's services include examination of substrates and conditions, verification of materials, inspection of completed portions of the Work, and submittal of written reports.

D. Retesting/Reinspecting: Regardless of whether original tests or inspections were Contractor's responsibility, provide quality-control services, including retesting and reinspecting, for construction that replaced Work that failed to comply with the Contract Documents.

E. Testing Agency Responsibilities: Cooperate with Architect and Contractor in performance of duties. Provide qualified personnel to perform required tests and inspections.

1. Notify Architect and Contractor promptly of irregularities or deficiencies observed in the Work during performance of its services.

2. Determine the location from which test samples will be taken and in which in-situ tests are conducted.
3. Conduct and interpret tests and inspections and state in each report whether tested and inspected work complies with or deviates from requirements.
4. Submit a certified written report, in duplicate, of each test, inspection, and similar quality-control service through Contractor.
5. Do not release, revoke, alter, or increase the Contract Document requirements or approve or accept any portion of the Work.
6. Do not perform any duties of Contractor.

F. Associated Services: Cooperate with agencies performing required tests, inspections, and similar quality- control services, and provide reasonable auxiliary services as requested. Notify agency sufficiently in advance of operations to permit assignment of personnel. Provide the following:
1. Access to the Work.
2. Incidental labor and facilities necessary to facilitate tests and inspections.
3. Adequate quantities of representative samples of materials that require testing and inspecting. Assist agency in obtaining samples.
4. Facilities for storage and field curing of test samples.
5. Delivery of samples to testing agencies.
6. Preliminary design mix proposed for use for material mixes that require control by testing agency.
7. Security and protection for samples and for testing and inspecting equipment at Project site.

G. Coordination: Coordinate sequence of activities to accommodate required quality-assurance and -control services with a minimum of delay and to avoid necessity of removing and replacing construction to accommodate testing and inspecting.
1. Schedule times for tests, inspections, obtaining samples, and similar activities.

1.11 SPECIAL TESTS AND INSPECTIONS

A. Special Tests and Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to conduct special tests and inspections required by authorities having jurisdiction as the responsibility of Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used) PART

3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TEST AND INSPECTION LOG

A. Test and Inspection Log: Prepare a record of tests and inspections. Include the following:
1. Date test or inspection was conducted.

2. Description of the Work tested or inspected.
3. Date test or inspection results were transmitted to Architect.
4. Identification of testing agency or special inspector conducting test or inspection.

B. Maintain log at Project site. Post changes and revisions as they occur. Provide access to test and inspection log for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

3.2 REPAIR AND PROTECTION

A. General: On completion of testing, inspecting, sample taking, and similar services, repair damaged construction and restore substrates and finishes.

1. Provide materials and comply with installation requirements specified in other Specification Sections or matching existing substrates and finishes. Restore patched areas and extend restoration into adjoining areas with durable seams that are as invisible as possible. Comply with the Contract Document requirements for cutting and patching in Section 017300 "Execution."

B. Protect construction exposed by or for quality-control service activities.

C. Repair and protection are Contractor's responsibility, regardless of the assignment of responsibility for quality-control services.

END OF SECTION 01 40 00

SECTION 01 41 10 - SPECIAL INSPECTION PLAN

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Related Documents: Drawings and general provisions of Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division-1 Specification Sections apply to work specified in this Section.

1.2 SCOPE OF WORK

A. Services provided for by the Owner: A qualified inspector(s) will be retained by the owner to perform the work described in this section. The Special Inspector shall inspect all components of the building frame in accordance with this plan to verify that the work is in substantial conformance with all structural requirements of the contract documents. The contract documents are defined as the documents upon which the building permit was issued including all addenda and amendments issued by the Architect/Engineer.

C. This plan may be supplemented by additional requirements by the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) as may be deemed necessary during the course of the work.

D. This plan does not include inspections of site work, architectural components, mechanical, electrical, plumbing, fire protection systems, OSHA Safety requirements or any other non-structural items.

E. Special Inspection Services are separate and independent from all other Material Inspections and Quality Control Inspections and testing.

1.3 QUALIFICATIONS OF SPECIAL INSPECTOR

A. The Special Inspector(s) shall be a qualified person who shall demonstrate competence, to the satisfaction of the building official, for the inspection of the particular type of construction or operation requiring special inspection. The special inspector shall provide written documentation to the building official and Architect/Engineer demonstrating his or her competence and relevant experience or training. Experience or training shall be considered relevant when the documented experience or training is related in complexity to the same type of special inspection activities for projects of similar complexity and material qualities.

B. Resumes of the Special Inspector shall be submitted for review by the

Architect/Engineer of record who shall have full authority to determine that qualifications are met.

C. The Special Inspector shall provide to the owner insurance certificates evidencing all applicable coverage required by law and by the owner.

1.4 RESPONSIBILITIES OF SPECIAL INSPECTOR

A. The Special Inspector is responsible to the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ) for the project and to the Owner. The presence of a Special Inspector does not relieve the General Contractor from his responsibilities to carry out the work.

B. Prior to the beginning of the work, the Special Inspector shall become familiar with the scope of the work including all components that are to be inspected; develop a, knowledge of the contract documents, and all governing codes and regulations that may apply to the work.

C. The Special Inspector shall provide a certified affidavit to the Owner and to the Architect/Engineer of record attesting that he has reviewed the contract documents and understands their contents and that he has read and understands the "Special Inspection Plan" and that he intends to comply with their contents.

D. The Special Inspector shall observe all phases of the installation of the work, primarily structural components and shall report to the AHJ and to the Architect/Engineer of record his observations. The Special Inspector shall immediately bring to the attention of the AHJ and the Architect/Engineer of record, any variances or deviations from the contract documents that he may observe, however, the Special Inspector shall not attempt to make design decisions or attempt to render interpretations of the requirements of the contract documents. Any matter requiring interpretation shall be brought to the attention of the Architect/Engineer of record.

E. The Special Inspector shall cooperate fully with the General Contractor and his subcontractors but he shall not direct the contractor's work nor be responsible for construction means and methods.

1.5 REPORTING

A. The Special Inspector shall record progress, working conditions, observations, testing, deviations from the contract documents, and any required corrective actions.

B. The Special inspector shall notify the General Contractor immediately of any work or materials that are not in conformance with the contract documents. Copies of all such notices shall be immediately provided to the AHJ and to the Architect/Engineer.

C. The Special Inspector shall write, sign and seal a report each time an inspection is made.

The report shall include the following:

1. Name and location of the project, name of the Special Inspector, date and time of inspection, working conditions including weather and temperature, and type and location of work being performed.
2. A detailed report of the inspection performed including, if applicable, the presence and activities of the Materials Testing Agency.
3. Description of any observed deficiencies or unusual conditions affecting the work.
4. Notation of remediation of any previously noted deficiencies.
5. Notation of any materials test reports that do not meet the requirements of the contract documents.
6. Shoring and re-shoring inspection reports (if applicable)

D. The Special Inspector shall keep a record of any and all non-conforming work and shall issue non-compliance notices to the General Contractor with copies to the AHJ and the Architect.

E. Upon completion of the work and prior to substantial completion of the project, submit a signed and sealed certification to the AHJ and the Architect stating that to the best of his knowledge and belief, based upon the inspections and observations he has observed, the work has been carried out in substantial compliance with the contract documents.

1.6 RESPONSIBILITIES OF GENERAL CONTRACTOR

A. The General Contractor shall cooperate with and assist the Special Inspector in performing his inspections by providing free and unobstructed access to the areas of work upon which inspections are being made.

C. The General Contractor shall keep the Special Inspector informed about construction schedules and shall advise him at least 24 hours in advance of any required inspections.

D. The General Contractor shall provide copies of all revised drawings, approved shop drawings, supplemental sketches and erection drawings to the Special Inspector prior to the beginning of affected work.

E. Construction that deviates from the official contract documents and the costs of rectifying those deviations is the sole responsibility of the General Contractor.

F. The General Contractor shall receive all instructions pertaining to remediation or correction of non-complying work from the Architect / Engineer and NOT from the Special Inspector.

G. Any work requiring inspection that is performed without inspection and any work that is covered by contractors without inspection may require testing or removal. Any cost associated with such will be the responsibility of the responsible party.

H. Contractors shall carry out all shoring and re-shoring work in accordance with signed and sealed shoring and re-shoring drawings. The shoring engineer or his authorized agent shall inspect and certify to the AHJ and to the Architect that shoring and re-shoring is installed in accordance with approved drawings. Shoring inspection reports shall be available to the Special Inspector prior to installation of concrete.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 – INSPECTIONS

3.1 GENERAL

A. The following is a general inspection plan describing work that is to be inspected by the Special Inspector. The intent is to outline the minimum requirements necessary to confirm that the work complies with the contract documents. The following is a list of required inspections but is not intended to be an inspection checklist.

3.2 SUBSURFACE INVESTIGATION

A. All buildings shall have a soil bearing and/or pile load capacity certification issued prior to placement of foundation system. The General Contractor shall provide the Special Inspector with a signed and sealed copy of geotechnical engineering report. Verify the specified notes on the design drawings concur with the geotechnical engineering report issued for the project.

3.3 SITE PREPARATION

A. Verify the site preparation meets the requirements as outlined in the geotechnical engineering report prior to foundation installation.

3.4 FOUNDATIONS

A. Observe the foundation installation. Verify work performed meets the requirements as outlined in the geotechnical engineering report.

B. Verify that the required soil densities have been met by reviewing Materials Testing reports prior to placement of concrete.

C. Observe placement of reinforcement in footings prior to placement of concrete.

D. Observe placement of embedments in footings prior to placement of concrete.

E. Observe dowels and lap splices.

F. Observe concrete placement for compliance with requirements of contract documents.

3.5 SLAB-ON-GRADE

A. Observe sub-grade preparation including backfilling, compaction and performance of compaction tests by Materials Testing Agency.

B. Verify that sub-grade materials disturbed after original compaction is properly re-compacted.

C. Observe placement of screeds to obtain proper levels and thickness of slabs. Observe locations of slab depressions and steps in slabs to assure that minimum slab thickness is maintained.

D. Observe sizes and laps of reinforcing wire and other reinforcing.

E. Verify locations and types of control joints and construction joints for compliance with requirements of contract documents.

3.6 CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

A. Review approved shop drawings.

B. Observe placement of reinforcing for correct quantity, location and spacing.

C. Observe concrete cover over reinforcing.

D. Observe grade of steel reinforcing.

E. Observe length of lap splices, embedments and hooks.

F. Observe placement of structural embedments.

G. Observe form placement as for correct sizes of walls, beams, columns, and slabs.

H. Observe construction joints.

I. Observe clean up before concrete placement.

J. Observe methods of transporting, handling and placing of concrete including vibration consolidation, adding water, etc.

K. Observe tests conducted.

L. Review concrete test reports.

3.7 PRECAST CONCRETE SYSTEM

A. Review plant certification and quality control procedures.

B. Verify that precast members delivered to the project are in compliance with the contract documents and approved shop drawings. The General Contractor shall provide the Special Inspector with a signed and sealed detailed set of final, for construction, precast drawings.

C. Inspect all precast members for damage upon arrival at the site. Report any defective or damaged members.

D. Verify that the required connection details are provided and that they are in accordance with the contract documents.

E. Review certification of welders' qualifications. Certifications must be current.

F. Verify that all precast connections have been installed in compliance with the contract documents.

3.8 STRUCTURAL STEEL

A. Inspect all structural steel members and framing for compliance with requirements of contract documents and approved shop drawings.

B. Assure that no material is installed that has been damaged in shipping or improper storage or erection.

C. Confirm all sizes and grades of structural steel members.

D. Check members for straightness, finish and camber.

E. Check frame for plumbness, alignment and conformance to contract documents and erection plans.

F. Inspect setting of anchor bolts and check the installation of column base plates for proper leveling, grout type and grout application.

G. Inspect all field connections for proper configuration, fit-up, bolt type and sizes, and weld sizes and lengths.

H. Verify that impact wrenches are calibrated and that bolts are properly tightened.

I. Verify that shear connectors are installed in accordance with requirements of contract documents.

3.9 METAL DECK

A. Assure that no material is installed that has been damaged in shipping or improper storage or erection.

B. Verify that metal deck size, type, gauge and finish is in accordance with requirements of contract documents.

C. Inspect deck attachment to support members and installation of side lap fasteners.

D. Verify that all welds are properly painted where required.

3.10 MASONRY

A. Review approved shop drawings.

B. Observe size, condition, and configurations of masonry units.

C. Observe placement of vertical and horizontal reinforcing for correct quantity, location, spacing, alignment and splice lengths.

D. Verify mortar and cell grout mixtures used are per the contract documents.

3.11 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING

A. Inspect all cold-formed steel members and framing for compliance with requirements of contract documents and approved shop drawings.

B. Assure that no material is installed that has been damaged in shipping or improper storage or erection.

C. Confirm all member sizes, bracing, clips, straps and hold downs.

D. Inspect all field connections for proper configuration, screw sizes and quantity, and weld sizes and lengths.

3.12 NON-STRUCTURAL COMPONENTS

A. Verify that the expansion joint location(s), size and materials used are as specified and are installed in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

B. Verify erection and attachment of exterior cladding.

END OF SECTION 01 41 00

SECTION 01 42 00 - REFERENCES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Basic Contract definitions are included in the Conditions of the Contract.

B. "Approved": When used to convey Architect's action on Contractor's submittals, applications, and requests, "approved" is limited to Architect's duties and responsibilities as stated in the Conditions of the Contract.

C. "Directed": A command or instruction by Architect. Other terms including "requested," "authorized," "selected," "required," and "permitted" have the same meaning as "directed."

D. "Indicated": Requirements expressed by graphic representations or in written form on Drawings, in Specifications, and in other Contract Documents. Other terms including "shown," "noted," "scheduled," and "specified" have the same meaning as "indicated."

E. "Regulations": Laws, ordinances, statutes, and lawful orders issued by authorities having jurisdiction, and rules, conventions, and agreements within the construction industry that control performance of the Work.

F. "Furnish": Supply and deliver to Project site, ready for unloading, unpacking, assembly, installation, and similar operations.

G. "Install": Unload, temporarily store, unpack, assemble, erect, place, anchor, apply, work to dimension, finish, cure, protect, clean, and similar operations at Project site.

H. "Provide": Furnish and install, complete and ready for the intended use.

I. "Project Site": Space available for performing construction activities. The extent of Project site is shown on Drawings and may or may not be identical with the description of the land on which Project is to be built.

1.3 INDUSTRY STANDARDS

A. Applicability of Standards: Unless the Contract Documents include more stringent requirements, applicable construction industry standards have the same force and effect as if bound or copied directly into the Contract Documents to the extent referenced. Such standards are made a part of the Contract Documents by reference.

B. Publication Dates: Comply with standards in effect as of date of the Contract Documents unless otherwise indicated.

C. Copies of Standards: Each entity engaged in construction on Project should be familiar with industry standards applicable to its construction activity. Copies of applicable standards are not bound with the Contract Documents.

1. Where copies of standards are needed to perform a required construction activity, obtain copies directly from publication source.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS AND ACRONYMS

A. Industry Organizations: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities indicated in Gale's "Encyclopedia of Associations: National Organizations of the U.S." or in Columbia Books' "National Trade & Professional Associations of the United States."

B. Code Agencies: Where abbreviations and acronyms are used in Specifications or other Contract Documents, they shall mean the recognized name of the entities in the following list. This information is believed to be accurate as of the date of the Contract Documents.

1. ICC - International Code Council; www.iccsafe.org.
2. ICC-ES - ICC Evaluation Service, LLC; www.icc-es.org.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 42 00

SECTION 01 43 39 - MOCKUPS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Integrated exterior mockups.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for quality assurance requirements for aesthetic and workmanship mockups specified in other Sections.
2. Section 01 91 19.43 "Exterior Enclosure Commissioning" for testing building enclosure systems and assemblies as part of the exterior enclosure commissioning process.

C. Related Sections

1. Section 04 22 00 - Concrete Unit Masonry
2. Section 05 58 13 - Column Covers
3. Section 05 73 13 - Glazed Decorative Metal Railings
4. Section 06 16 00 – Sheathing
5. Section 06 41 16 - Plastic-Laminate-Clad Architectural Cabinets
6. Section 07 17 00 - Bentonite Waterproofing
7. Section 07 27 26 - Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers
8. Section 07 41 13.16 - Standing Seam Roof Panels
9. Section 07 42 43 - Metal Composite Material Wall Panels
10. Section 07 62 00 - Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
11. Section 07 81 00 - Applied Fire Protection
12. Section 07 95 13.13 - Interior Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies
13. Section 07 95 13.16 - Exterior Expansion Joint Cover Assemblies
14. Section 07 92 00 - Joint Sealants
15. Section 08 80 00 – Glazing
16. Section 09 29 00 - Gypsum Board
17. Section 09 30 13 - Ceramic Tiling
18. Section 09 30 23 - Glass Tiling
19. Section 09 51 13 - Acoustical Panel Ceilings
20. Section 09 51 23 - Acoustical Tile Ceilings
21. Section 09 51 33 - Acoustical Metal Pan Ceilings
22. Section 09 65 13 - Resilient Base and Accessories
23. Section 09 65 19 - Resilient Tile Flooring

24. Section 09 65 36 - Static-Control Resilient Flooring
25. Section 09 66 23 - Resinous Matrix Terrazzo Flooring
26. Section 09 67 23 - Resinous Flooring
27. Section 09 68 13 - Tile Carpeting
28. Section 09 72 00 - Wall Coverings
29. Section 09 91 14 - Exterior Painting (MPI Standards)
30. Section 09 91 24 - Interior Painting (MPI Standards)
31. Section 09 96 00 - High-Performance Coatings
32. Section 10 11 50 - Integrated Luminous Glass Column System
33. Section 10 14 00 – Signage
34. Section 12 36 61 - Solid Surfacing Countertops
35. Section 12 36 61.19 - Quartz Agglomerate Countertops

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Integrated Exterior Mockups: Mockups of the exterior envelope constructed on-site as freestanding temporary built elements, consisting of multiple products, assemblies, and subassemblies.

B. Preconstruction Laboratory Mockups: Integrated exterior mockups constructed at testing facility to verify performance characteristics.

C. Room Mockups: Mockups of typical interior spaces complete with wall, floor, and ceiling finishes; doors; windows; millwork; casework; specialties; furnishings and equipment; and lighting as indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, testing and inspecting agency representative, and installers of major systems whose Work is included in integrated exterior mockups.
2. Review coordination of equipment and furnishings provided by the Owner for room mockups.
3. Review locations and extent of mockups.
4. Review testing procedures to be performed on mockups.
5. Review and finalize schedule for mockups, and verify availability of materials, personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to complete mockups and testing and maintain schedule for the Work.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For integrated exterior mockups.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting attachment and support details.
2. Indicate manufacturer and model number of individual components, subassemblies, and assemblies.
3. Include site location drawing indicating orientation of mockup.
4. Revise and resubmit Shop Drawings to reflect approved modifications in details and component interfaces resulting from changes made during testing procedures.

B. Delegated Design Submittal: For temporary structural supports for mockups not attached to building structure, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For integrated exterior mockups.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E699 for testing indicated and accredited by IAS or ILAC Mutual Recognition Arrangement as complying with ISO/IEC 17025 and acceptable to Owner and Architect.

B. Build mockups to do the following:

1. Verify selections made under Sample submittals.
2. Demonstrate aesthetic effects.
3. Demonstrate the qualities of products and workmanship.
4. Demonstrate acceptable coordination between components and systems.
5. Perform preconstruction testing, such as window air- and water-leakage testing.

C. Fabrication: Before fabricating or installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups for each form of construction and finish required. Use materials and installation methods as required for the Work.

1. Build mockups of size indicated.
2. Build mockups in location indicated or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
3. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers who will be employed to perform same tasks during the construction at Project.
4. Demonstrate the proposed range of aesthetic effects and workmanship.
5. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
6. Demolish and remove mockups when directed unless otherwise indicated.

D. Notifications:

1. Notify Architect seven days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be constructed.
2. Notify Architect 14 days in advance of the dates and times when mockups will be tested.
3. Allow seven days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup.

E. Approval: Obtain Architect's approval of mockups before starting fabrication or construction of corresponding Work.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, approved mockups establish the standard by which the Work will be judged.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate schedule for construction of mockups, so construction, testing, and review of mockups do not impact Project schedule.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design support structure for free-standing mockups.

B. Structural Performance:

1. Seismic Performance: Mockups and support structure to withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.
2. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Mockup Testing Performance Requirements: Perform tests using design pressures and performance criteria indicated for assemblies and products that are specified in other Sections and incorporated into integrated exterior mockups.

2.2 INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

A. Construct integrated exterior mockups according to approved mockup Shop Drawings. Construct mockups to demonstrate constructability, coordination of trades, and sequencing of Work; and to ensure materials, components, subassemblies, assemblies, and interfaces integrate into a system complying with indicated performance and aesthetic requirements.

B. Design and construct foundation and superstructure to support free-standing integrated exterior mockups.

C. Build integrated exterior mockups using installers and construction methods that will be used in completed construction.

D. Use specified products that have been approved by Architect. Coordinate installation of materials and products specified in individual Specification Sections that include Work included in integrated exterior mockups.

E. The Work of integrated exterior mockups includes, but is not limited to, the following:

1. Precast architectural concrete.
2. Masonry veneer.
3. Stone cladding.
4. Cold-formed metal framing and sheathing.
5. Air and weather barriers.
6. Thermal insulation.
7. Through-wall flashing.
8. Flashing and sheet metal trim.
9. Joint sealants.
10. Metal wall panels.
11. Aluminum-framed entrances and storefront.
12. Glazed curtain walls.
13. Aluminum windows.
14. Glazing.

F. Photographic Documentation: Document construction of integrated exterior mockups with photographs in accordance with Section 01 32 33 "Photographic Documentation." Provide photographs showing details of interface of different materials and assemblies.

1. Document testing procedures, including water leakage and other deficiencies. Photograph modifications to component interfaces intended to correct deficiencies.

G. Provide and document modifications to construction details and interfaces between components and systems required to properly sequence the Work, or to pass performance testing requirements. Obtain Architect's approval for modifications.

H. Retain approved mockups constructed in place. Incorporate fully into the Work.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 TESTING OF INTEGRATED EXTERIOR MOCKUPS

A. Integrated Exterior Mockup Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

1. Testing and inspecting agency will interpret tests and state in each report whether tested Work complies with or deviates from requirements.

B. Integrated Exterior Mockup Testing Services: Perform the following tests in the following order:

1. Water-Spray Test: Before installation of interior finishes has begun, test areas designated by Architect in accordance with AAMA 501.2 for evidence of water penetration.

a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.

2. Air Leakage: Test in accordance with ASTM E783 at 1.5 times the rate specified in "Mockup Testing Performance Requirements" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft. at a static-air-pressure differential of 1.57 lbf/sq. ft..

a. Perform a minimum of three tests in areas as directed by Architect.

3. Water Penetration: Test in accordance with ASTM E1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure differential of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure differential specified for laboratory testing in "Mockup Testing Performance Requirements" Paragraph in "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and verify no evidence of water penetration.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections, and also to observe testing for the following systems and assemblies.

1. Curtain wall specified in Section 08 44 13 "Glazed Aluminum Curtain Walls."

D. Integrated exterior mockup will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 01 43 39

SECTION 01 50 00 - TEMPORARY FACILITIES AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes requirements for temporary utilities, support facilities, and security and protection facilities.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Permanent Enclosure: As determined by Architect, permanent or temporary roofing is complete, insulated, and weathertight; exterior walls are insulated and weathertight; and all openings are closed with permanent construction or substantial temporary closures.

1.3 USE CHARGES

A. General: Installation and removal of and use charges for temporary facilities shall be included in the Contract Sum unless otherwise indicated. Allow other entities to use temporary services and facilities without cost, including, but not limited to, Architect, testing agencies, and authorities having jurisdiction.
B. Water and Electric Power Service from Existing System: Water and electric power from Owner's existing system is available for use without metering and without payment of use charges. Provide connections and extensions of services as required for construction operations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Site Plan: Show temporary facilities, utility hookups, staging areas, and parking areas for construction personnel.
B. Erosion- and Sedimentation-Control Plan: Show compliance with requirements of EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.
C. Fire-Safety Program: Show compliance with requirements of NFPA 241 and authorities having jurisdiction. Indicate Contractor personnel responsible for management of fire-prevention program.
D. Moisture-Protection Plan: Describe procedures and controls for protecting materials and construction from water absorption and damage.
    1. Describe delivery, handling, and storage provisions for materials subject to water absorption or water damage.
    2. Indicate procedures for discarding water-damaged materials, protocols for mitigating water intrusion into completed Work, and replacing water-damaged Work.
    3. Indicate sequencing of work that requires water, such as sprayed fire-resistive materials, and describe plans for dealing with water from these operations.

Show procedures for verifying that wet construction has dried sufficiently to permit installation of finish materials.

E. Dust- and HVAC-Control Plan: Submit coordination drawing and narrative that indicates the dust- and HVAC-control measures proposed for use, proposed locations, and proposed time frame for their operation. Identify further options if proposed measures are later determined to be inadequate. Include the following:
   1. Locations of dust-control partitions at each phase of work.
   2. HVAC system isolation schematic drawing.
   3. Location of proposed air-filtration system discharge.
   4. Waste handling procedures.
   5. Other dust-control measures.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electric Service: Comply with NECA, NEMA, and UL standards and regulations for temporary electric service. Install service to comply with NFPA 70.
B. Tests and Inspections: Arrange for authorities having jurisdiction to test and inspect each temporary utility before use. Obtain required certifications and permits.
C. Accessible Temporary Egress: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines and ICC/ANSI A117.1.

1.6 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Use of Permanent Facilities: Engage Installer of each permanent service to assume responsibility for operation, maintenance, and protection of each permanent service during its use as a construction facility before Owner's acceptance, regardless of previously assigned responsibilities.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT AND MATERIAL

A. Chain-Link Fencing: Minimum 2-inch, 0.148-inch- thick, galvanized-steel, chain-link fabric fencing; minimum 6 feet high with galvanized-steel pipe posts; minimum 2-3/8-inch- OD line posts and 2-7/8inch- OD corner and pull posts, with 1-5/8-inch- OD top rails.
B. Fire Extinguishers: Portable, UL rated; with class and extinguishing agent as required by locations and classes of fire exposures.
C. Polyethylene Sheet: Reinforced, fire-resistive sheet, 10-mil minimum thickness, with flame-spread rating of 15 or less per ASTM E 84 and passing NFPA 701 Test Method 2.
D. Dust-Control Adhesive-Surface Walk-off Mats: Provide mats minimum 36 by 60 inches.
E. Self-Contained Toilet Units: Single-occupant units of chemical, aerated recirculation, or combustion type; vented; fully enclosed with a glass-fiber-reinforced polyester shell or similar nonabsorbent material.

F. HVAC Equipment: Unless Owner authorizes use of permanent HVAC system, provide vented, selfcontained, liquid-propane-gas or fuel-oil heaters with individual space thermostatic control.
    1. Use of gasoline-burning space heaters, open-flame heaters, or salamander-type heating units is prohibited.
    2. Heating Units: Listed and labeled for type of fuel being consumed, by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
    3. Permanent HVAC System: Use of the permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction is restricted by the condition listed below. If permanent HVAC system is used for temporary conditioning during construction, Contractor is responsible to protect return air from contamination by covering open end of duct with MERV 8 filter. Remove filter media at end of construction. Clean HVAC system as required in Section 017700 "Closeout Procedures."
        a. Owner must authorize use of permanent HVAC system for temporary use during construction.
G. Electrical Outlets: Properly configured, NEMA-polarized outlets to prevent insertion of 110- to 120-V plugs into higher-voltage outlets; equipped with ground-fault circuit interrupters, reset button, and pilot light.
H. Power Distribution System Circuits: Where permitted and overhead and exposed for surveillance, wiring circuits, not exceeding 125-V ac, 20-A rating, and lighting circuits may be nonmetallic sheathed cable.

2.2 TEMPORARY FACILITIES

A. Field Office: Contractor has option to provide a field office or use space in the existing building. Space is available in the existing bag room for a plan table.
    1. Coordinate final location of field offices with Owner. Preferred site is adjacent to intersection of Airport Blvd and the loading dock access road, adjacent to west end of credit card lot.
B. Storage and Fabrication Sheds: Provide sheds sized, furnished, and equipped to accommodate materials and equipment for construction operations.
    1. Store combustible materials apart from building.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Locate facilities where they will serve Project adequately and result in minimum interference with performance of the Work. Relocate and modify facilities as required by progress of the Work.
B. Provide each facility ready for use when needed to avoid delay. Do not remove until facilities are no longer needed or are replaced by authorized use of completed permanent facilities.

3.2 SITE USE PLAN

A. Confine operations within the areas indicated and as shown on the site use plan and as permitted by law, ordinances, and permits. Site shall not be unreasonably encumbered with materials, products, or construction equipment.
B. Contractor, in reviewing the use of the site, shall include access to proposed building for construction purposes, parking where possible for employees, temporary facilities including offices, storage, and workshop sheds or portable trailers, utility hookups, staging areas, storage materials and products, and unloading space.
C. Show additional area needed in the use of the site beyond that which may be indicated on the Drawings. Where additional fencing is required, such fencing shall be included at no additional cost to the Owner.

3.3 TEMPORARY UTILITY INSTALLATION

A. General: Install temporary service.
    1. Arrange with utility company, Owner, and existing users for time when service can be interrupted, if necessary, to make connections for temporary services.
B. Storm Sewers and Storm Drainage: If storm sewers are available, provide temporary connections to remove effluent that can be discharged lawfully. If storm sewers are not available or cannot be used, provide storm drainage ditches, dry wells, stabilization ponds, and similar facilities. If neither storm sewers nor storm drainage facilities can be lawfully used for discharge of effluent, provide containers to remove and dispose of effluent off-site in a lawful manner.
    1. Connect temporary storm sewers to municipal system as directed by authorities having jurisdiction.
    2. Filter out excessive soil, construction debris, chemicals, oils, and similar contaminants that might clog storm sewers or pollute waterways before discharge.
    3. Maintain temporary storm sewers and storm drainage facilities in a clean, sanitary condition. After heavy use, restore normal conditions promptly.
C. Water Service: Connect to Owner's existing water service facilities. Clean and maintain water service facilities in a condition acceptable to Owner. At Final Acceptance, restore these facilities to condition existing before initial use.
D. Sanitary Facilities: Provide temporary toilets and wash facilities for use of construction personnel. Coordinate and comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for type, number, location, operation, and maintenance of fixtures and facilities.
    1. Toilets: Install self-contained toilet units. Use of Owner's existing toilets will not be permitted.
    2. Disposable Supplies: Provide, and maintain adequate supply of, toilet tissue and similar disposable materials for use of construction personnel.
    3. Contractors shall provide drinking water for use of their personnel.
    4. Provide safety showers, eyewash fountains, and similar facilities where required by authorities having jurisdiction.

5. Contractor will have use of existing Ramp Level restrooms located in the existing Finance Department offices until such time as those spaces are renovated. Contractor is responsible for housekeeping duties of that area during construction.

E. Heating and Cooling: Provide temporary heating and cooling required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of low temperatures or high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed.
   1. Provide heating and cooling equipment as necessary to maintain a uniform indoor temperature of 68 to 72 degrees F.

F. Ventilation and Humidity Control: Provide temporary ventilation and humidity control required by construction activities for curing or drying of completed installations or for protecting installed construction from adverse effects of high humidity. Select equipment that will not have a harmful effect on completed installations or elements being installed. Coordinate ventilation requirements to produce ambient condition required and minimize energy consumption.
   1. Provide dehumidification systems when required to reduce substrate moisture levels to level required to allow installation or application of finishes.

G. Air-Quality Testing: For work is occurring in occupied areas of the Terminal, engage testing agency to perform the following:
   1. Conduct baseline indoor-air-quality testing, after construction ends and prior to occupancy, using testing protocols consistent with the EPA's "Compendium of Methods for the Determination of Air Pollutants in Indoor Air," and as additionally detailed in USGBC's "Green Building Design and Construction Reference Guide."
   2. Demonstrate that the contaminant maximum concentrations listed below are not exceeded:
      a. Formaldehyde: 27 ppb.
      b. Particulates (PM10): 50 mcg/cu. m.
      c. Total Volatile Organic Compounds (TVOC): 500 mcg/cu. m.
      d. 4-Phenylcyclohexene (4-PH): 6.5 mcg/cu. m.
      e. Carbon Monoxide: 9 ppm and no greater than 2 ppm above outdoor levels.
   3. For each sampling point where the maximum concentration limits are exceeded, conduct additional flush-out with outside air and retest the specific parameter(s) exceeded to indicate the requirements are achieved. Repeat procedure until all requirements have been met. When retesting noncomplying building areas, take samples from same locations as in the first test.
   4. Air-sample testing shall be conducted as follows:
      a. All measurements shall be conducted prior to occupancy but during normal occupied hours, and with building ventilation system starting at

the normal daily start time and operated at the minimum outside airflow rate for the occupied mode throughout the duration of the air testing.

b. Building shall have all interior finishes installed including, but not limited to, millwork, doors, paint, carpet, and acoustic tiles. Nonfixed furnishings such as workstations and partitions are encouraged, but not required, to be in place for the testing.

c. Number of sampling locations varies depending on the size of building and number of ventilation systems. For each portion of building served by a separate ventilation system, the number of sampling points shall not be less than one per 25,000 sq. ft. or for each contiguous floor area, whichever is larger, and shall include areas with the least ventilation and greatest presumed source strength.

H. Electric Power Service: Connect to Owner's existing electric power service. Maintain equipment in a condition acceptable to Owner.

I. Electric Distribution: Provide receptacle outlets adequate for connection of power tools and equipment.

1. Provide waterproof connectors to connect separate lengths of electrical power cords if single lengths will not reach areas where construction activities are in progress. Do not exceed safe length-voltage ratio.

J. Lighting: Provide temporary lighting with local switching that provides adequate illumination for construction operations, observations, inspections, and traffic conditions.

1. Install and operate temporary lighting that fulfills security and protection requirements without operating entire system.
2. Provide lighting fixtures capable of maintaining average illumination of 20 fc at desk height.

K. Electronic Communication Service: Provide wireless connectivity in the primary field office adequate for use by Architect and Owner to access Project electronic documents and maintain electronic communications.

L. Telephone Numbers: Provide a list of important telephone numbers. Include the following:

1. Police and fire departments.
2. Ambulance service.
3. Contractor's home office.
4. Contractor's emergency after-hours telephone number.
5. Architect's office.
6. Engineers' offices.
7. Owner's office.
8. Principal subcontractors' field and home offices.

M. Dust Control:

1. Airport operations are continuous in all areas of work and dust control is required in all areas where dust is a great deal of dust to be present above the

ceiling and make special provisions during the ceiling demolition phase to control dust and remove dust from the project throughout the work period.

N. Clean Up:
    1. Contractor shall, at all times, keep its work areas in a neat, clean, and safe condition. Upon completion of any portion of the Work, Contractor shall promptly remove all of its equipment, construction plant, temporary structures and surplus materials not to be used at or near the same location during later stages of Work. Upon completion of the Work and before final payment is made, Contractor shall at its expense, satisfactorily dispose of all plant, buildings, rubbish, unused materials, and other equipment and materials belonging to it or used in the performance of the Work, and Contractor shall leave the premises in a neat, clean, and safe condition. In the event of Contractor's failure to comply with the foregoing, the Owner may accomplish the same at Contractor's expense.
    2. At the completion of the Work, Contractor shall provide a final cleaning of all interior glass surfaces and wipe down all aluminum window mullions.
    3. In all Work areas Contractor shall maintain on staff sufficient personnel to provide cleaning of a "final clean" caliber at the end of EACH work shift, including removal of any and all work and personal trash, complete dust-down of all surfaces on which dust has accumulated during the work shift, vacuuming of all areas in the vicinity of work, wiping down holdroom seating wherever dust has accumulated, and any other work required to present a clean, operational building between 0430 – 2100 daily.

O. General Work Requirements and Constraints:
    1. All equipment and adequate queueing spaces must be in place and operational at each gate 0430 – 2100 daily unless otherwise approved in writing by Owner.
    2. The Contractor shall provide and make available daytime staff each workday after a night shift to come to the work area as needed to address issues that have come up as a result of the work. Examples of this include coming to the ticket lobby to mitigate tripping hazards caused by new floor conditions, removal of materials or FOD from the ramp, securing above-ceiling items that have come loose during the work shift, addressing issues with seating or cleanup in holdroom areas, clean-up, etc.
    3. Access to all tenant spaces must be provided between 0430 – 2100.
    4. Work is expected to Public from entering work zones. Remove barriers prior to 0430 each morning.

P. Establishment of Project Working Points:
    1. Contractor shall establish project working points to be used for measurements for all circulation corridor and centerline of column dimensions including terrazzo joints, centerline of column, column covers, soffits, etc.
    2. Coordinate column centerline layouts with Architect for coordination of expansion of Terminal and Holdroom column grids.

Q. Notices Required to Owner:
1. 30 day minimum notice to work in any area or in the vicinity of any tenant space, including submission of a completed Logistics permit.
2. 2-week look ahead including detailed listing and projected start and completion dates of any activities to occur within the next 2 weeks shall be provided weekly.
3. Electrical shutdown planning or generator startup planning to begin a minimum of 60 days in advance to allow adequate time for Owner to arrange staffing
4. Owner may desire for ILM staff to be present during generator startup activities- Contractor to schedule these activities a minimum of 30 days in advance.
5. Notice of HVAC cutover to be provided a minimum of 60 days in advance to allow adequate time for Owner to arrange staffing
6. Contractor should not communicate directly with airlines, concession or retail contacts, any other Tenant or Operator without prior permission from ILM project manager.
7. 5-day notice to Owner is required anytime entering tenant spaces on ticket level. ILM On Site representative and/or GC supervisory personnel must accompany the Contractor's workers whenever entering occupied tenant spaces on ramp level unless otherwise directed by the Owner.
8. Proper pre-planning is required in order to execute work efficiently and to provide the Owner with adequate information to properly notify all user groups such as tenants, airlines and the traveling public.
9. A fully completed Logistics permit must be submitted a minimum of 30 days prior to work occurring in any area, including details about the upcoming activity, exhibits clearly identifying the affected area, and any other pertinent information that can be shared with Owner contacts and other stakeholders.

3.4 SUPPORT FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with the following:
1. Provide construction for temporary offices, shops, and sheds located within construction area or within 30 feet of building lines that is noncombustible according to ASTM E 136. Comply with NFPA 241.
2. Maintain support facilities until Architect schedules Substantial Completion inspection. Remove before Substantial Completion. Personnel remaining after Substantial Completion will be permitted to use permanent facilities, under conditions acceptable to Owner.
3. Locate field offices, storage sheds, sanitary facilities, and other temporary construction and support facilities for easy access.

B. Traffic Controls: Coordinate and comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
1. Protect existing site improvements to remain including curbs, pavement, and utilities.
2. Maintain access for fire-fighting equipment and access to fire hydrants.

C. Parking: Provide temporary parking areas for construction personnel.
D. Dewatering Facilities and Drains: Coordinate and comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Maintain Project site, excavations, and construction free of water.
    1. Dispose of rainwater in a lawful manner that will not result in flooding Project or adjoining properties or endanger permanent Work or temporary facilities.
    2. Before connection and operation of permanent drainage piping system, provide temporary drainage where roofing or similar waterproof deck construction is completed.
E. Project Signs: Provide Project sign as indicated. Unauthorized signs are not permitted.
    1. Temporary Signs: Provide signs as required to inform public and individuals seeking entrance to Project. Provide temporary, directional signs for construction personnel and visitors.
    2. Engage an experienced sign painter to apply graphics for Project identification signs.
    3. Construct signs of exterior-type Grade B-B high-density concrete form overlay plywood unless indicated otherwise, and in sizes and thicknesses indicated. Support on posts and framing of preservative-treated wood.
    4. Paint sign panel and applied graphics with exterior-grade alkyd gloss enamel over exterior primer.
    5. Location of project identification sign as directed by Architect.
F. Waste Disposal Facilities: Provide waste-collection containers in sizes adequate to handle waste from construction operations. Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
G. Lifts and Hoists: Provide facilities necessary for hoisting materials and personnel. Truck cranes and similar devices used for hoisting materials are considered "tools and equipment" and not temporary facilities.

3.5 SECURITY AND PROTECTION FACILITIES INSTALLATION

A. Protection of Existing Facilities: Protect existing vegetation, equipment, structures, utilities, and other improvements at Project site and on adjacent properties. Repair damage to existing facilities.
B. Environmental Protection: Provide protection, operate temporary facilities, and conduct construction as required to comply with environmental regulations and that minimize possible air, waterway, and subsoil contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects. Avoid using tools and equipment that produce harmful noise. Restrict use of noisemaking tools and equipment to normal business hours.
C. Temporary Erosion and Sedimentation Control: Provide measures to prevent soil erosion and discharge of soil-bearing water runoff and airborne dust to undisturbed areas and to adjacent properties and walkways, according to requirements of 2003 EPA Construction General Permit or authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

1. Verify that flows of water redirected from construction areas or generated by construction activity do not enter or cross tree- or plant- protection zones.
2. Inspect, repair, and maintain erosion- and sedimentation-control measures during construction until permanent vegetation has been established.
3. Clean, repair, and restore adjoining properties and roads affected by erosion and sedimentation from Project site during the course of Project.
4. Remove erosion and sedimentation controls and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during removal.

D. Stormwater Control: Coordinate and comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide barriers in and around excavations and subgrade construction to prevent flooding by runoff of stormwater from heavy rains.

E. Tree and Plant Protection: Install temporary fencing located as indicated or outside the drip line of trees to protect vegetation from damage from construction operations. Protect tree root systems from damage, flooding, and erosion.

F. Site Enclosure Fence: Before construction operations begin, furnish and install site enclosure fence in a manner that will prevent people and animals from easily entering site except by entrance gates.
1. Extent of Fence: As required to enclose entire Project site or portion determined sufficient to accommodate construction operations.
2. Maintain security by limiting number of keys and restricting distribution to authorized personnel. Furnish one set of keys to Owner.

G. Pest Control: Perform control operations lawfully, using environmentally safe materials.

H. Barricades, Warning Signs, and Lights: Coordinate and comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for erecting structurally adequate barricades, including warning signs and lighting.
1. Provide protective measures as required to provide free and safe passage of the public on adjoining sidewalks and streets.

I. Temporary Enclosures: Provide temporary enclosures for protection of construction, in progress and completed, from exposure, foul weather, other construction operations, and similar activities. Provide temporary weathertight enclosure for building exterior.
1. Where heating or cooling is needed and permanent enclosure is incomplete, insulate temporary enclosures.
2. Vertical Openings: Close openings of 25 sq. ft. or less with plywood or similar materials.
3. Horizontal Openings: Close openings in floor or roof decks and horizontal surfaces with loadbearing, wood-framed construction.
4. Where temporary wood or plywood enclosure exceeds 100 sq. ft. in area, use fire-retardant-treated material for framing and main sheathing.

J. Temporary Partitions: Provide floor-to-ceiling dustproof non-combustible partitions to limit dust and dirt migration to completed areas. Protect air-handling equipment. Provide walk-off mats at each entrance through temporary partition.

K. Protect air-handling equipment.

L. Temporary Egress: Maintain temporary egress from existing occupied facilities as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

M. Covered Walkway: Erect protective, covered walkway for passage of individuals through or adjacent to Project site. Coordinate with entrance gates, other facilities, and obstructions. Comply with regulations of authorities having jurisdiction and requirements indicated on Drawings.
   1. Provide overhead decking, protective enclosure walls, handrails, barricades, warning signs, exit signs, lights, safe and well-drained walkways, and similar provisions for protection and safe passage.
   2. Paint and maintain appearance of walkway for duration of the Work.

N. Temporary Fire Protection: Install and maintain temporary fire-protection facilities of types needed to protect against reasonably predictable and controllable fire losses. Comply with NFPA 241; manage fire prevention program.
   1. Provide fire extinguishers, installed on walls on mounting brackets, visible and accessible from space being served, with sign mounted above.
      a. Field Offices: Class A stored-pressure water-type extinguishers.
      b. Other Locations: Class ABC dry-chemical extinguishers or a combination of extinguishers of NFPA-recommended classes for exposures.
      c. Locate fire extinguishers where convenient and effective for their intended purpose; provide not less than one extinguisher on each floor at or near each usable stairwell.
   2. Prohibit smoking on Project site.
   3. Supervise welding operations and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   4. Maintain unobstructed access to fire extinguishers, fire hydrants, temporary fire-protection facilities, stairways, and other access routes for firefighting.
   5. Supervise welding operations, combustion-type temporary heating units, and similar sources of fire ignition according to requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
   6. Permanent Fire Protection: At earliest feasible date in each area of Project, complete installation of permanent fire-protection facility, including connected services, and place into operation and use. Instruct key personnel on use of facilities.
   7. Provide hoses for fire protection of sufficient length to reach construction areas. Hang hoses with a warning sign stating that hoses are for fire-protection purposes only and are not to be removed. Match hose size with outlet size and equip with suitable nozzles.
   8. Develop and supervise an overall fire-prevention and -protection program for personnel at Project site. Review needs with local fire department and establish procedures to be followed. Instruct personnel in methods and procedures. Post warnings and information.

3.6 MOISTURE AND MOLD CONTROL

A. Contractor's Moisture-Protection Plan: Avoid trapping water in finished work. Document visible signs of mold that may appear during construction.
B. Control moisture and humidity inside building by maintaining effective dry-in conditions.
    1. If authorized by Owner, use permanent HVAC system to control humidity.
C. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, relative humidity, and exposure to water limits.
    1. Materials that may support mold growth, including wood and gypsum-based products, that become wet during the course of construction and remain wet for 48 hours are considered defective.
    2. Measure moisture content of materials that have been exposed to moisture during construction operations or after installation. Record readings beginning at time of exposure and continuing daily for 48 hours. Identify materials containing moisture levels higher than allowed. Report findings in writing to Architect.
    3. Remove materials that cannot be completely restored to their manufactured moisture level within 48 hours.

3.7 OPERATION, TERMINATION, AND REMOVAL

A. Supervision: Enforce strict discipline in use of temporary facilities. To minimize waste and abuse, limit availability of temporary facilities to essential and intended uses.
B. Maintenance: Maintain facilities in good operating condition until removal.
C. Temporary Facility Changeover: Do not change over from using temporary security and protection facilities to permanent facilities until Substantial Completion.
D. Termination and Removal: Remove each temporary facility when need for its service has ended, when it has been replaced by authorized use of a permanent facility, or no later than Substantial Completion. Complete or, if necessary, restore permanent construction that may have been delayed because of interference with temporary facility. Repair damaged Work, clean exposed surfaces, and replace construction that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.
    1. Materials and facilities that constitute temporary facilities are property of Contractor. Owner reserves right to take possession of Project identification signs.
    2. Remove temporary roads and paved areas not intended for or acceptable for integration into permanent construction. Where area is intended for landscape development, remove soil and aggregate fill that do not comply with requirements for fill or subsoil. Remove materials contaminated with road oil, asphalt and other petrochemical compounds, and other substances that might impair growth of plant materials or lawns. Repair or replace street paving, curbs, and sidewalks at temporary entrances, as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

3. At Substantial Completion, repair, renovate, and clean permanent facilities used during construction period. Comply with final cleaning requirements specified in Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures."

END OF SECTION 01 50 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 57 23 - TEMPORARY STORM WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Temporary stormwater pollution controls.

1.3 STORMWATER POLLUTION PREVENTION PLAN

A. The Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) is part of the Contract Documents and is bound into this Project Manual.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, and earthwork subcontractor.
2. Review requirements of the SWPPP, including permitting process, worker training, and inspection and maintenance requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPP): Within 15 days of date established for commencement of the Work, submit completed SWPPP.

B. EPA authorization under the EPA's "2017 Construction General Permit (CGP)."

C. Stormwater Pollution Prevention (SWPP) Training Log: For each individual performing Work under the SWPPP.

D. Inspection reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Stormwater Pollution Prevention Plan (SWPPP) Coordinator: Experienced individual or firm with a record of successful water pollution control management coordination of projects with similar requirements.

1. SWPPP Coordinator shall complete and finalize the SWPPP form.
2. SWPPP Coordinator shall be responsible for inspections and maintaining of all requirements of the SWPPP.

B. Installers: Trained as indicated in the SWPPP.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEMPORARY STORMWATER POLLUTION CONTROLS

A. Provide temporary stormwater pollution controls as required by the SWPPP.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with all best management practices, general requirements, performance requirements, reporting requirements, and all other requirements included in the SWPPP.

B. Locate stormwater pollution controls in accordance with the SWPPP.

C. Conduct construction as required to comply with the SWPPP and that minimize possible contamination or pollution or other undesirable effects.

1. Inspect, repair, and maintain SWPPP controls during construction.

a. Inspect all SWPPP controls not less than every seven days, and after each occurrence of a storm event, as outlined in the SWPPP.

D. Remove SWPPP controls at completion of construction and restore and stabilize areas disturbed during construction.

END OF SECTION 01 57 23

SECTION 01 60 00 - PRODUCT REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for selection of products for use in Project; product delivery, storage, and handling; manufacturers' standard warranties on products; special warranties; and comparable products.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Products: Items obtained for incorporating into the Work, whether purchased for Project or taken from previously purchased stock. The term "product" includes the terms "material," "equipment," "system," and terms of similar intent.

1. Named Products: Items identified by manufacturer's product name, including make or model number or other designation shown or listed in manufacturer's published product literature, that is current as of date of the Contract Documents.
2. New Products: Items that have not previously been incorporated into another project or facility. Products salvaged or recycled from other projects are not considered new products.
3. Comparable Product: Product that is demonstrated and approved through submittal process to have the indicated qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics that equal or exceed those of specified product.

B. Basis-of-Design Product Specification: A specification in which a specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by the words "basis-of-design product," including make or model number or other designation, to establish the significant qualities related to type, function, dimension, in-service performance, physical properties, appearance, and other characteristics for purposes of evaluating comparable products of additional manufacturers named in the specification.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product List: Submit a list, in tabular from, showing specified products. Include generic names of products required. Include manufacturer's name and proprietary product names for each product.

1. Coordinate product list with Contractor's Construction Schedule and the Submittals Schedule.
2. Form: Tabulate information for each product under the following column headings:

a. Specification Section number and title.

b. Generic name used in the Contract Documents.
c. Proprietary name, model number, and similar designations.
d. Manufacturer's name and address.
e. Projected delivery date or time span of delivery period.
f. Identification of items that require early submittal approval for scheduled delivery date.

3. Completed List: Within 60 days after date of commencement of the Work, submit 3 copies of completed product list. Include a written explanation for omissions of data and for variations from Contract requirements.
4. Architect's Action: Architect will respond in writing to Contractor within 15 days of receipt of completed product list. Architect's response will include a list of unacceptable product selections and a brief explanation of reasons for this action. Architect's response, or lack of response, does not constitute a waiver of requirement to comply with the Contract Documents.

B. Comparable Product Requests: Comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures."

C. Basis-of-Design Product Specification Submittal: Comply with requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures." Show compliance with requirements.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Compatibility: Contractor is responsible for providing products and construction methods compatible with other products and construction methods used on the Project.

B. Asbestos: No asbestos or asbestos-containing material may be incorporated into the Work.

1.5 PRODUCT DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver, store, and handle products using means and methods that will prevent damage, deterioration, and loss, including theft and vandalism. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Delivery and Handling:

1. Schedule delivery to minimize long-term storage at Project site and to prevent overcrowding of construction spaces.
2. Coordinate delivery with installation time to ensure minimum holding time for items that are flammable, hazardous, easily damaged, or sensitive to deterioration, theft, and other losses.
3. Deliver products to Project site in an undamaged condition in manufacturer's original sealed container or other packaging system, complete with labels and instructions for handling, storing, unpacking, protecting, and installing.

4. Inspect products on delivery to determine compliance with the Contract Documents and to determine that products are undamaged and properly protected.

C. Storage:

1. Store products to allow for inspection and measurement of quantity or counting of units.
2. Store materials in a manner that will not endanger Project structure.
3. Store products that are subject to damage by the elements, under cover in a weathertight enclosure above ground, with ventilation adequate to prevent condensation.
4. Protect foam plastic from exposure to sunlight, except to extent necessary for period of installation and concealment.
5. Comply with product manufacturer's written instructions for temperature, humidity, ventilation, and weather-protection requirements for storage.
6. Protect stored products from damage and liquids from freezing.

1.6 PRODUCT WARRANTIES

A. Warranties specified in other Sections shall be in addition to, and run concurrent with, other warranties required by the Contract Documents. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve Contractor of obligations under requirements of the Contract Documents.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Written warranty furnished by individual manufacturer for a particular product and specifically endorsed by manufacturer to Owner.
2. Special Warranty: Written warranty required by the Contract Documents to provide specific rights for Owner.

B. Special Warranties: Prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution.

1. Manufacturer's Standard Form: Modified to include Project-specific information and properly executed.
2. Specified Form: When specified forms are included with the Specifications, prepare a written document using indicated form properly executed.
3. Refer to other Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

C. Submittal Time: Comply with requirements in Section 01 78 36

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PRODUCT SELECTION PROCEDURES

A. General Product Requirements: Provide products that comply with the Contract Documents, are undamaged and, unless otherwise indicated, are new at time of installation.

1. Provide products complete with accessories, trim, finish, fasteners, and other items needed for a complete installation and indicated use and effect.
2. Standard Products: If available, and unless custom products or nonstandard options are specified, provide standard products of types that have been produced and used successfully in similar situations on other projects.
3. Owner reserves the right to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.
4. Where products are accompanied by the term "as selected," Architect will make selection.
5. Descriptive, performance, and reference standard requirements in the Specifications establish salient characteristics of products.

B. Product Selection Procedures:

1. Product: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer and product, provide the named product that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
2. Manufacturer/Source: Where Specifications name a single manufacturer or source, provide a product by the named manufacturer or source that complies with requirements. Comparable products or substitutions for Contractor's convenience will not be considered.
3. Products: Where Specifications include a list of names of both manufacturers and products, provide one of the products listed that complies with requirements.
4. Manufacturers: Where Specifications include a list of manufacturers' names, provide a product by one of the manufacturers listed that complies with requirements.
5. Basis-of-Design Product: Where Specifications name a product, or refer to a product indicated on Drawings, and include a list of manufacturers, provide the specified or indicated product or a comparable product by one of the other named manufacturers. Drawings and Specifications indicate sizes, profiles, dimensions, and other characteristics that are based on the product named. Comply with requirements in "Comparable Products" Article for consideration of an unnamed product by one of the other named manufacturers.

C. Visual Matching Specification: Where Specifications require "match Architect's sample", provide a product that complies with requirements and matches Architect's sample. Architect's decision will be final on whether a proposed product matches.

1. If no product available within specified category matches and complies with other specified requirements, comply with requirements in Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" for proposal of product.

D. Visual Selection Specification: Where Specifications include the phrase "as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range" or similar phrase, select a product that complies with requirements. Architect will select color, gloss, pattern, density, or texture from manufacturer's product line that includes both standard and premium items.

2.2 COMPARABLE PRODUCTS

A. Conditions for Consideration: Architect will consider Contractor's request for comparable product when the conditions of Section 01 25 00 "Substitution Procedures" are satisfied. If the conditions are not satisfied, Architect may return requests without action, except to record noncompliance with these requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Used)

END OF SECTION 01 60 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 73 00 - EXECUTION

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general administrative and procedural requirements governing execution of the Work including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Construction layout.
2. Field engineering and surveying.
3. Installation of the Work.
4. Cutting and patching.
5. Progress cleaning.
6. Starting and adjusting.
7. Protection of installed construction.
8. Correction of the Work.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for submitting final property survey with Project Record Documents, recording of Owner-accepted deviations from indicated lines and levels, and final cleaning.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For land surveyor.

B. Certificates: Submit certificate signed by land surveyor certifying that location and elevation of improvements comply with requirements.

C. Landfill Receipts: Submit copy of receipts issued by a landfill facility, licensed to accept hazardous materials, for hazardous waste disposal.

D. Certified Surveys: Submit two copies signed by surveyor.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Land Surveyor Qualifications: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing land-surveying services of the kind indicated.

B. Manufacturer's Installation Instructions: Obtain and maintain on—site manufacturer's written recommendations and instructions for installation of products and equipment.

C. Cutting and Patching: Comply with requirements for and limitations on cutting and patching of construction elements.

1. Structural Elements: When cutting and patching structural elements, notify Architect of locations and details of cutting and await directions from Architect before proceeding. Shore, brace, and support structural element during cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch structural elements in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity or increase deflection.
2. Operational Elements: Do not cut and patch operating elements and related components in a manner that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
3. Other Construction Elements: Do not cut and patch other construction elements or components in a manner that could change their load-carrying capacity, that results in reducing their capacity to perform as intended, or that results in increased maintenance or decreased operational life or safety.
4. Visual Elements: Do not cut and patch construction in a manner that results in visual evidence of cutting and patching. Do not cut and patch exposed construction in a manner that would, in Architect's opinion, reduce the building's aesthetic qualities. Remove and replace construction that has been cut and patched in a visually unsatisfactory manner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with requirements specified in other Sections.

B. In-Place Materials: Use materials for patching identical to in-place materials. For exposed surfaces, use materials that visually match in-place adjacent surfaces to the fullest extent possible.

1. If identical materials are unavailable or cannot be used, use materials that, when installed, will provide a match acceptable to Architect for the visual and functional performance of in-place materials.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Existing Conditions: The existence and location of underground and other utilities and construction indicated as existing are not guaranteed. Before beginning sitework, investigate and verify the existence and location of underground utilities, mechanical and electrical systems, and other construction affecting the Work.

1. Before construction, verify the location and invert elevation at points of connection of sanitary sewer, storm sewer, and water-service piping; underground electrical services, and other utilities.
2. Furnish location data for work related to Project that must be performed by public utilities serving Project site.

B. Examination and Acceptance of Conditions: Before proceeding with each component of the Work, examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer or Applicator present where indicated, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance. Record observations.

1. Examine roughing-in for mechanical and electrical systems to verify actual locations of connections before equipment and fixture installation.
2. Examine walls, floors, and roofs for suitable conditions where products and systems are to be installed.
3. Verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Written Report: Where a written report listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work is required by other Sections, include the following:

1. Description of the Work.

F. Record Log: Maintain a log of layout control work. Record deviations from required lines and levels. Include beginning and ending dates and times of surveys, weather conditions, name and duty of each survey party member, and types of instruments and tapes used. Make the log available for reference by Architect.

3.2 FIELD ENGINEERING

A. Reference Points: Locate existing permanent benchmarks, control points, and similar reference points before beginning the Work. Preserve and protect permanent benchmarks and control points during construction operations.

1. Do not change or relocate existing benchmarks or control points without prior written approval of Architect. Report lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks or control points promptly. Report the need to relocate permanent benchmarks or control points to Architect before proceeding.
2. Replace lost or destroyed permanent benchmarks and control points promptly. Base replacements on the original survey control points.

B. Benchmarks: Establish and maintain a minimum of two permanent benchmarks on Project site, referenced to data established by survey control points. Comply with authorities having jurisdiction for type and size of benchmark.

1. Record benchmark locations, with horizontal and vertical data, on Project Record Documents.

2. Where the actual location or elevation of layout points cannot be marked, provide temporary reference points sufficient to locate the Work.
3. Remove temporary reference points when no longer needed. Restore marked construction to its original condition.

C. Certified Survey: On completion of foundation walls, major site improvements, and other work requiring field-engineering services, prepare a certified survey showing dimensions, locations, angles, and elevations of construction and sitework.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Locate the Work and components of the Work accurately, in correct alignment and elevation, as indicated.

1. Make vertical work plumb and make horizontal work level.
2. Where space is limited, install components to maximize space available for maintenance and ease of removal for replacement.
3. Conceal pipes, ducts, and wiring in finished areas unless otherwise indicated.
4. Maintain minimum headroom clearance of 96 inches in occupied spaces and 90 inches in unoccupied spaces.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations for installing products in applications indicated.

C. Install products at the time and under conditions that will ensure the best possible results. Maintain conditions required for product performance until Substantial Completion.

D. Conduct construction operations so no part of the Work is subjected to damaging operations or loading in excess of that expected during normal conditions of occupancy.

E. Sequence the Work and allow adequate clearances to accommodate movement of construction items on site and placement in permanent locations.

F. Tools and Equipment: Do not use tools or equipment that produce harmful noise levels.

G. Templates: Obtain and distribute to the parties involved templates for work specified to be factory prepared and field installed. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing products to comply with indicated requirements.

H. Attachment: Provide blocking and attachment plates and anchors and fasteners of adequate size and number to securely anchor each component in place, accurately located and aligned with other portions of the Work. Where size and type of attachments are not indicated, verify size and type required for load conditions.

1. Mounting Heights: Where mounting heights are not indicated, mount

components at heights directed by Architect.

2. Allow for building movement, including thermal expansion and contraction.
3. Coordinate installation of anchorages. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

I. Joints: Make joints of uniform width. Where joint locations in exposed work are not indicated, arrange joints for the best visual effect. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints.

J. Hazardous Materials: Use products, cleaners, and installation materials that are not considered hazardous.

3.4 CUTTING AND PATCHING

A. Cutting and Patching, General: Employ skilled workers to perform cutting and patching. Proceed with cutting and patching at the earliest feasible time, and complete without delay.

1. Cut in-place construction to provide for installation of other components or performance of other construction, and subsequently patch as required to restore surfaces to their original condition.

B. Warranties: Remove, replace, patch, and repair materials and surfaces cut or damaged during installation or cutting and patching operations, by methods and with materials so as not to void warranties.

C. Temporary Support: Provide temporary support of work to be cut.

D. Protection: Protect in-place construction during cutting and patching to prevent damage. Provide protection from adverse weather conditions for portions of Project that might be exposed during cutting and patching operations.

E. Adjacent Occupied Areas: Avoid interference with use of adjoining areas or intemiption of free passage to adjoining areas.

F. Existing Utility Services and Mechanical/Electrical Systems: Where existing services/systems are required to be removed, relocated, or abandoned, bypass such services/systems before cutting to prevent intemiption to occupied areas.

G. Cutting: Cut in-place construction by sawing, drilling, breaking, chipping, grinding, and similar operations, including excavation, using methods least likely to damage elements retained or adjoining construction. If possible, review proposed procedures with original Installer; comply with original Installer's written recommendations.

1. In general, use hand or small power tools designed for sawing and grinding, not hammering and chopping. Cut holes and slots neatly to minimum size required,

and with minimum disturbance of adjacent surfaces. Temporarily cover openings when not in use.

- Remove liquid spills promptly.

2. Where dust would impair proper execution of the Work, broom-clean or vacuum the entire work area, as appropriate.

D. Installed Work: Keep installed work clean. Clean installed surfaces according to written instructions of manufacturer or fabricator of product installed, using only cleaning materials specifically recommended. If specific cleaning materials are not recommended, use cleaning materials that are not hazardous to health or property and that will not damage exposed surfaces.

E. Concealed Spaces: Remove debris from concealed spaces before enclosing the space.

F. Exposed Surfaces in Finished Areas: Clean exposed surfaces and protect as necessary to ensure freedom from damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

G. Waste Disposal: Do not bury or bum waste materials on-site. Do not wash waste materials down sewers or into waterways. Comply with waste disposal requirements in Section 01 74 19 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal."

H. During handling and installation, clean and protect construction in progress and adjoining materials already in place. Apply protective covering where required to ensure protection from damage or deterioration at Substantial Completion.

I. Clean and provide maintenance on completed construction as frequently as necessary through the remainder of the construction period. Adjust and lubricate operable components to ensure operability without damaging effects.

J. Limiting Exposures: Supervise construction operations to assure that no part of the construction, completed or in progress, is subject to harmful, dangerous, damaging, or otherwise deleterious exposure during the construction period.

3.5 STARTING AND ADJUSTING

A. Start equipment and operating components to confirm proper operation. Remove malfunctioning units, replace with new units, and retest.

B. Adjust equipment for proper operation. Adjust operating components for proper operation without binding.

C. Test each piece of equipment to verify proper operation. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Manufacturer's Field Service: Comply with qualification requirements in Section

01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

3.6 PROTECTION OF INSTALLED CONSTRUCTION

A. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure installed Work is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for temperature and relative humidity.

3.7 CORRECTION OF THE WORK

A. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Restore damaged substrates and finishes.

1. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment.

B. Restore permanent facilities used during construction to their specified condition.

C. Remove and replace damaged surfaces that are exposed to view if surfaces cannot be repaired without visible evidence of repair.

D. Repair components that do not operate properly. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired.

END OF SECTION 01 73 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 74 19 - CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for the following:
   1. Recycling nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.
   2. Disposing of nonhazardous demolition and construction waste.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Construction Waste: Building and site improvement materials and other solid waste resulting from construction, remodeling, renovation, or repair operations. Construction waste includes packaging.
B. Demolition Waste: Building and site improvement materials resulting from demolition or selective demolition operations.
C. Disposal: Removal off-site of demolition and construction waste and subsequent sale, recycling, reuse, or deposit in landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
D. Recycle: Recovery of demolition or construction waste for subsequent processing in preparation for reuse.

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Contractor is encouraged to recycle as much nonhazardous demolition and construction waste as practical, without incurring additional costs to the Owner.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with hauling and disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Used)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WASTE MANAGEMENT AND DISPOSAL

A. General: Provide handling, containers, storage, signage, transportation, and other items as required to implement waste management plan during the entire duration of the Contract.

1. Comply with operation, termination, and removal requirements in Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls."

B. Training: Train workers, subcontractors, and suppliers on proper waste management procedures, as appropriate for the Work.
   1. Review plan procedures and locations established for recycling and disposal.

C. Site Access and Temporary Controls: Conduct waste management operations to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, walkways, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.
   1. Designate and label specific areas on Project site necessary for separating materials that are to be salvaged, recycled, reused, donated, and sold.
   2. Comply with Section 01 50 00 "Temporary Facilities and Controls" for controlling dust and dirt, environmental protection, and noise control.

3.2 RECYCLING CONSTRUCTION WASTE, GENERAL

A. General: Recycle paper and beverage containers used by on-site workers.

B. Recycling Incentives: Revenues, savings, rebates, tax credits, and other incentives received for recycling waste materials shall accrue to Contractor.

C. Preparation of Waste: Prepare and maintain recyclable waste materials according to recycling or reuse facility requirements. Maintain materials free of dirt, adhesives, solvents, petroleum contamination, and other substances deleterious to the recycling process.

D. Procedures: Separate recyclable waste from other waste materials, trash, and debris. Separate recyclable waste by type at Project site to the maximum extent practical according to approved construction waste management plan.
   1. Provide appropriately marked containers or bins for controlling recyclable waste until removed from Project site. Include list of acceptable and unacceptable materials at each container and bin.
      a. Inspect containers and bins for contamination and remove contaminated materials if found.
   2. Stockpile processed materials on-site without intermixing with other materials. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.
   3. Stockpile materials away from construction area. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.
   4. Store components off the ground and protect from the weather.
   5. Remove recyclable waste from Owner's property and transport to recycling receiver or processor.

3.3 DISPOSAL OF WASTE

A. General: Except for items or materials to be salvaged, recycled, or otherwise reused, remove waste materials from Project site and legally dispose of them in a landfill or incinerator acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Except as otherwise specified, do not allow waste materials that are to be disposed of accumulate on-site.
2. Remove and transport debris in a manner that will prevent spillage on adjacent surfaces and areas.

B. Burning: Do not burn waste materials.

C. Disposal: Remove waste materials from Owner's property and legally dispose of them.

END OF SECTION 01 74 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 77 00 - CLOSEOUT PROCEDURES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for contract closeout, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Substantial Completion procedures.
2. Final Completion procedures.
3. Final cleaning.
4. Repair of the Work.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Initial submittal at Substantial Completion.

B. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Final submittal at Final Completion.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Certificates of Release: From authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Certificate of Insurance: For continuing coverage.

1.4 MAINTENANCE / EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Schedule of Maintenance / Extra Materials: For extra materials specified in other Sections.

1.5 SUBSTANTIAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Contractor's List of Incomplete Items: Prepare and submit a list of items to be completed and corrected (Contractor's punch list), indicating the value of each item on the list and reasons why the Work is incomplete.
2. Certificates of Release: Obtain and submit releases from authorities having jurisdiction permitting Owner unrestricted use of the Work and access to services

and utilities. Include occupancy permits, operating certificates, and similar releases.

3. Submit closeout submittals specified in other Division 01 Sections, including project record documents, operation and maintenance manuals, damage or settlement surveys, stair surveys, property surveys, and similar final record information.
4. Submit closeout submittals specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including specific warranties, workmanship bonds, maintenance service agreements, final certifications, and similar documents.
5. Submit extra materials specified in individual Divisions 02 through 33 Sections, including tools, spare parts, extra materials, and similar items, and deliver to location designated by Owner. Label with manufacturer's name and model number where applicable.
    a. Schedule of Extra Materials: Prepare and submit schedule of maintenance material submittal items, including name and quantity of each item and name and number of related Specification Section. Obtain Owner’s signature for receipt of submittals.
6. Submit changeover information related to Owner's occupancy, use, operation, and maintenance.
7. Submit test/adjust/balance records.

B. Procedures Prior to Substantial Completion: Complete the following a minimum of 10 days prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion. List items below that are incomplete at time of request.

1. Advise Owner of pending insurance changeover requirements.
2. Make final changeover of permanent locks and deliver keys to Owner. Advise Owner's personnel of changeover in security provisions.
3. Complete startup and testing of systems and equipment.
4. Perform preventive maintenance on equipment used prior to Substantial Completion.
5. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.
6. Advise Owner of changeover in heat and other utilities.
7. Participate with Owner in conducting inspection and walkthrough with local emergency responders.
8. Terminate and remove temporary facilities from Project site, along with mockups, construction tools, and similar elements.
9. Complete final cleaning requirements, including touchup painting.
10. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred exposed finishes to eliminate visual defects.

C. Inspection: Submit a written request for inspection to determine Substantial Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare the Certificate of Substantial Completion after inspection, or will notify Contractor of items, either on Contractor's list or additional items identified by Architect, that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.
2. Results of completed inspection will form the basis of requirements for final completion.

1.6 FINAL COMPLETION PROCEDURES

A. Submittals Prior to Final Completion: Before requesting final inspection for determining Final Completion, complete the following:

1. Submit a final Application for Payment according to Section 012900 "Payment Procedures."
2. Certified List of Incomplete Items: Submit certified copy of Architect's Substantial Completion inspection list of items to be completed or corrected (punch list), endorsed and dated by Architect. Certified copy of the list shall state that each item has been completed or otherwise resolved for acceptance.
3. Certificate of Insurance: Submit evidence of final, continuing insurance coverage complying with insurance requirements.
4. Instruct Owner's personnel in operation, adjustment, and maintenance of products, equipment, and systems.

B. Inspection: Submit a written request for final inspection to determine Final Completion a minimum of 10 days prior to date the work will be completed and ready for final inspection and tests. On receipt of request, Architect will either proceed with inspection or notify Contractor of unfulfilled requirements. Architect will prepare a final Certificate for Payment after inspection, or will notify Contractor of construction that must be completed or corrected before certificate will be issued.

1. Reinspection: Request reinspection when the Work identified in previous inspections as incomplete is completed or corrected.

1.7 LIST OF INCOMPLETE ITEMS (PUNCH LIST)

A. Organization of List: Include name and identification of each space and area affected by construction operations for incomplete items and items needing correction including, if necessary, areas disturbed by Contractor that are outside the limits of construction.

2. Organize list of spaces in sequential order.
3. Organize items applying to each space by major element, including categories for ceiling, individual walls, floors, equipment, and building systems.
4. Submit list of incomplete items to Architect and Owner in the following format:
    a. MS Excel electronic file. Architect will return annotated copy.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Cleaning Agents: Use cleaning materials and agents recommended by manufacturer or fabricator of the surface to be cleaned. Do not use cleaning agents that are potentially hazardous to health or property or that might damage finished surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FINAL CLEANING

A. General: Perform final cleaning. Conduct cleaning and waste-removal operations to comply with local laws and ordinances and Federal and local environmental and antipollution regulations.

B. Cleaning: Employ experienced workers or professional cleaners for final cleaning. Clean each surface or unit to condition expected in an average commercial building cleaning and maintenance program. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Complete the following cleaning operations before requesting inspection for certification of Substantial Completion:
    a. Clean Project site, yard, and grounds, in areas disturbed by construction activities, including landscape development areas, of rubbish, waste material, litter, and other foreign substances.
    b. Sweep paved areas broom clean. Remove petrochemical spills, stains, and other foreign deposits.
    c. Rake grounds that are neither planted nor paved to a smooth, even-textured surface.
    d. Remove tools, construction equipment, machinery, and surplus material from Project site.
    e. Clean exposed exterior and interior hard-surfaced finishes to a dirt-free condition, free of stains, films, and similar foreign substances. Avoid disturbing natural weathering of exterior surfaces. Restore reflective surfaces to their original condition.

f. Remove debris and surface dust from limited access spaces, including roofs, plenums, shafts, trenches, equipment vaults, manholes, attics, and similar spaces.

g. Sweep concrete floors broom clean in unoccupied spaces.

h. Vacuum carpet and similar soft surfaces, removing debris and excess nap; clean according to manufacturer's recommendations if visible soil or stains remain.

i. Clean transparent materials, including mirrors and glass in doors and windows. Remove glazing compounds and other noticeable, vision-obscuring materials. Polish mirrors and glass, taking care not to scratch surfaces.

j. Remove labels that are not permanent.

k. Wipe surfaces of mechanical and electrical equipment, elevator equipment, and similar equipment. Remove excess lubrication, paint and mortar droppings, and other foreign substances.

l. Clean plumbing fixtures to a sanitary condition, free of stains, including stains resulting from water exposure.

m. Replace disposable air filters and clean permanent air filters. Clean exposed surfaces of diffusers, registers, and grills.

n. Clean ducts, blowers, and coils that display contamination with particulate matter on inspection.

1) Clean HVAC system in compliance with NADCA Standard 1992-01. Provide written report on completion of cleaning.

o. Clean light fixtures, lamps, globes, and reflectors to function with full efficiency.

p. Leave Project clean and ready for occupancy.

3.2 REPAIR OF THE WORK

A. Complete repair and restoration operations before requesting inspection for determination of Substantial Completion.

B. Repair or remove and replace defective construction. Repairing includes replacing defective parts, refinishing damaged surfaces, touching up with matching materials, and properly adjusting operating equipment. Where damaged or worn items cannot be repaired or restored, provide replacements. Remove and replace operating components that cannot be repaired. Restore damaged construction and permanent facilities used during construction to specified condition.

1. Remove and replace chipped, scratched, and broken glass, reflective surfaces, and other damaged transparent materials.

2. Touch up and otherwise repair and restore marred or exposed finishes and surfaces. Replace finishes and surfaces that that already show evidence of repair or restoration.

    a. Do not paint over "UL" and other required labels and identification, including mechanical and electrical nameplates. Remove paint applied to required labels and identification.

3. Replace parts subject to operating conditions during construction that may impede operation or reduce longevity.
4. Replace burned-out bulbs, bulbs noticeably dimmed by hours of use, and defective and noisy starters in fluorescent and mercury vapor fixtures to comply with requirements for new fixtures.

END OF SECTION 01 77 00

SECTION 01 78 23 - OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DATA

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for preparing operation and maintenance manuals, including the following:

1. Operation and maintenance documentation directory.
2. Emergency manuals.
3. Operation manuals for systems, subsystems, and equipment.
4. Product maintenance manuals.
5. Systems and equipment maintenance manuals.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Manual Content: Operations and maintenance manual content is specified in individual Specification Sections to be reviewed at the time of Section submittals. Submit reviewed manual content formatted and organized as required by this Section.

1. Architect will comment on whether content of operations and maintenance submittals are acceptable.
2. Where applicable, clarify and update reviewed manual content to correspond to revisions and field conditions.

B. Format: Submit operations and maintenance manuals in the following formats:

1. One paper copy. Include a complete operation and maintenance directory. Enclose title pages and directories in clear plastic sleeves.
2. PDF electronic file on DVD. Assemble each manual into a composite electronically indexed file.

    a. Name each indexed document file in composite electronic index with applicable item name. Include a complete electronically linked operation and maintenance directory.
    b. Enable inserted reviewer comments on draft submittals.

C. Initial Manual Submittal: Submit draft copy of operation and maintenance manual at least 30 days before commencing demonstration and training. Architect will comment on whether general scope and content of manual are acceptable.

1. Correct or revise each manual to comply with Architect's comments. Submit corrected manual within 15 days of receipt of Architect's comments and prior to commencing demonstration and training.

D. Final Manual Submittal: Submit manuals in final form prior to requesting inspection for Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE DOCUMENTATION DIRECTORY

A. Directory: Prepare a single, comprehensive directory of emergency, operation, and maintenance data and materials, listing items and their location to facilitate ready access to desired information. Include a section in the directory for each of the following:

1. List of documents.
2. List of systems.
3. List of equipment.
4. Table of contents.

B. List of Systems and Subsystems: List systems alphabetically. Include references to operation and maintenance manuals that contain information about each system.

a. List of Equipment: List equipment for each system, organized alphabetically by system. For pieces of equipment not part of system, list alphabetically in separate list.

D. Tables of Contents: Include a table of contents for each emergency, operation, and maintenance manual.

E. Identification: In the documentation directory and in each operation and maintenance manual, identify each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment with same designation used in the Contract Documents. If no designation exists, assign a designation according to ASHRAE Guideline 4, "Preparation of Operating and Maintenance Documentation for Building Systems."

2.2 REQUIREMENTS FOR OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Organization: Unless otherwise indicated, organize each manual into a separate section for each system and subsystem, and a separate section for each piece of equipment not part of a system. Each manual shall contain a title page, table of contents, and manual contents.

B. Title Page: Include the following information:

1. Subject matter included in manual.
2. Name and address of Project.
3. Name and address of Owner.
4. Date of Substantial Completion.
5. Project number.
6. Name and contact information for Contractor.
7. Name and contact information for Architect.
8. Names and contact information for major consultants to the Architect that

designed the systems contained in the manuals.

c. Table of Contents: List each product included in manual, identified by product name, indexed to the content of the volume, and cross-referenced to Specification Section number in Project Manual.

D. Manual Contents: Organize into sets of manageable size. Arrange contents alphabetically by system, subsystem, and equipment. If possible, assemble instructions for subsystems, equipment, and components of one system into a single binder.

E. Manuals:

1. Paper Copy: Submit manuals in the form of hard copy, bound and labeled volumes.

a. Binders: Heavy-duty, three-ring, vinyl-covered, loose-leaf or post-type binders, in thickness necessary to accommodate contents, sized to hold 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper; with clear plastic sleeve on spine to hold label describing contents and with pockets inside covers to hold folded oversize sheets.

1) If two or more binders are necessary to accommodate data of a system, organize data in each binder into groupings by subsystem and related components. Cross- reference other binders if necessary to provide essential information for proper operation or maintenance of equipment or system.

2) Identify each binder on front and spine, with printed title "OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL," Project title or name, and subject matter of contents. Indicate volume number for multiple-volume sets.

b. Dividers: Heavy-paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each section of the manual. Mark each tab to indicate contents. Include typed list of products included in the section on each divider, cross-referenced to Specification Section number.

c. Protective Plastic Sleeves: Transparent plastic sleeves designed to enclose diagnostic software storage media for computerized electronic equipment.

d. Drawings: Attach reinforced, punched binder tabs on drawings and bind with text.

1) If oversize drawings are necessary, fold drawings to same size as text pages and use as foldouts.

2) If drawings are too large to be used as foldouts, fold and place drawings in labeled envelopes and bind envelopes in rear of manual. At appropriate locations in manual, insert typewritten pages indicating drawing titles, descriptions of contents, and drawing locations.

2. Electronic Files: Submit manuals in the form of a multiple file composite

electronic PDF file for each manual type required.

a. Electronic Files: Use electronic files prepared by manufacturer where available. Where scanning of paper documents is required, configure scanned file for minimum readable file size.
b. File Names and Bookmarks: Enable bookmarking of individual documents based on file names. Name document files to correspond to system, subsystem, and equipment names used in manual directory and table of contents. Group documents for each system and subsystem into individual composite bookmarked files, then create composite manual, so that resulting bookmarks reflect the system, subsystem, and equipment names in a readily navigated file tree. Configure electronic manual to display bookmark panel on opening file.

2.3 EMERGENCY MANUALS

A. Content: Organize manual into a separate section for type of emergency, emergency instructions and procedures.

B. Type of Emergency: Where applicable for each type of emergency indicated below, include instructions and procedures for each system, subsystem, piece of equipment, and component:

1. Fire.
2. Flood.
3. Gas leak.
4. Water leak.
5. Power failure.
6. Water outage.
7. System, subsystem, or equipment failure.
8. Chemical release or spill.

c. Emergency Instructions: Describe and explain warnings, trouble indications, error messages, and similar codes and signals. Include responsibilities of Owner's operating personnel for notification of Installer, supplier, and manufacturer to maintain warranties.

D. Emergency Procedures: Include instructions on stopping, shutdown instructions, operating instructions for conditions outside normal operating limits, required sequences for electric or electronic systems and special operating instructions and procedures.

2.4 OPERATION MANUALS

A. Content: In addition to requirements in this Section, include operation data required in individual Specification Sections and the following information:

1. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.

2. Performance and design criteria if Contractor has delegated design responsibility.
3. Operating standards.
4. Operating procedures.
5. Operating logs.
6. Wiring diagrams.
7. Control diagrams.
8. Piped system diagrams.
9. Precautions against improper use.
10. License requirements including inspection and renewal dates.

B. Descriptions: Include the following:

1. Product name and model number. Use designations for products indicated on Contract Documents.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Equipment identification with serial number of each component.
4. Equipment function.
5. Operating characteristics.
6. Limiting conditions.
7. Performance curves.
8. Engineering data and tests.
9. Complete nomenclature and number of replacement parts.

c. Operating Procedures: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Startup procedures.
2. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
3. Routine and normal operating instructions.
4. Regulation and control procedures.
5. Instructions on stopping.
6. Normal shutdown instructions.
7. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
8. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
9. Special operating instructions and procedures.

D. Systems and Equipment Controls: Describe the sequence of operation, and diagram controls as installed.

E. Piped Systems: Diagram piping as installed, and identify color-coding where required for identification.

2.5 PRODUCT, SYSTEMS, AND EQUIPMENT MAINTENANCE MANUALS

A. Content: Include source information, product information, manufacturers' maintenance documentation, maintenance procedures, repair materials and sources, maintenance and service schedules, spare parts list and source information, maintenance service contracts, and warranties and bonds, as described below.

B. Source Information: List each product, system, subsystem, and piece of equipment included in manual, identified by product name and arranged to match manual's table of contents. For each product, list name, address, and telephone number of Installer or supplier and maintenance service agent, and cross— reference Specification Section number and title in Project Manual and drawing or schedule designation or identifier where applicable.

C. Product Information: Include the following, as applicable:

1. Product name and model number.
2. Manufacturer's name.
3. Color, pattern, and texture.
4. Material and chemical composition.
5. Reordering information for specially manufactured products.

D. Manufacturers' Maintenance Documentation: Manufacturers' maintenance documentation including the following information for each component part or piece of equipment:

1. Standard maintenance instructions and bulletins.
2. Drawings, diagrams, and instructions required for maintenance, including disassembly and component removal, replacement, and assembly.
3. Identification and nomenclature of parts and components.
4. List of items recommended to be stocked as spare parts.

E. Maintenance Procedures: Include manufacturer's written recommendations and the following:

1. Test and inspection procedures.
2. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
3. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.
4. Troubleshooting guide.
5. Precautions against improper maintenance.
6. Schedule for routine cleaning and maintenance.
7. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
8. Aligning, adjusting, and checking instructions.
9. Repair instructions.

F. Repair Materials and Sources: Include lists of materials and local sources of materials.

G. Maintenance and Service Schedules: Include service and lubrication requirements, list of required lubricants for equipment, and separate schedules for preventive and routine maintenance and service with standard time allotment.

1. Scheduled Maintenance and Service: Tabulate actions for daily, weekly, monthly, quarterly, semiannual, and annual frequencies.

H. Spare Parts List and Source Information: Include lists of replacement and repair parts, with parts identified and cross-referenced to manufacturers' maintenance documentation and local sources of maintenance materials and related services.

I. Maintenance Service Contracts: Include copies of maintenance agreements with name and telephone number of service agent.

J. Warranties and Bonds: Include copies of warranties and bonds and lists of circumstances and conditions that would affect validity of warranties or bonds.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUAL PREPARATION

A. Emergency Manual: Assemble a complete set of emergency information indicating procedures for use by emergency personnel and by Owner's operating personnel for types of emergencies indicated.

B. Product Maintenance Manual: Assemble a complete set of maintenance data indicating care and maintenance of each product, material, and finish incorporated into the Work.

C. Operation and Maintenance Manuals: Assemble a complete set of operation and maintenance data indicating operation and maintenance of each system, subsystem, and piece of equipment not part of a system.

D. Manufacturers' Data: Where manuals contain manufacturers' standard printed data, include only sheets pertinent to product or component installed. Mark each sheet to identify each product or component incorporated into the Work. If data include more than one item in a tabular format, identify each item using appropriate references from the Contract Documents. Identify data applicable to the Work and delete references to information not applicable.

1. Prepare supplementary text if manufacturers' standard printed data are not available and where the information is necessary for proper operation and maintenance of equipment or systems.

E. Drawings: Prepare drawings supplementing manufacturers' printed data to illustrate the relationship of component parts of equipment and systems and to illustrate control sequence and flow diagrams. Coordinate these drawings with information contained in record Drawings to ensure correct illustration of completed installation.

1. Do not use original project record documents as part of operation and maintenance manuals.
2. Comply with requirements of newly prepared record Drawings in Section 017839 "Project Record Documents."

END OF SECTION 01 78 23

SECTION 01 78 36 - WARRANTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for warranties required by the Contract Documents, including manufacturer's standard warranties on products and special warranties.

1. Refer to the General Conditions for terms of the Contractor's period for correction of the Work.

B. Disclaimers and Limitations: Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve the Contractor of the warranty on the Work that incorporates the products. Manufacturer's disclaimers and limitations on product warranties do not relieve suppliers, manufacturers, and subcontractors required to countersign special warranties with the Contractor.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Standard product warranties are preprinted written warranties published by individual manufacturers for particular products and are specifically endorsed by the manufacturer to the Owner.

B. Special warranties are written warranties required by or incorporated in the Contract Documents, either to extend time limits provided by standard warranties or to provide greater rights for the Owner.

1.3 WARRANTY REQUIREMENTS

A. Related Damages and Losses: When correcting failed or damaged warranted construction, remove and replace construction that has been damaged as a result of such failure or must be removed and replaced to provide access for correction of warranted construction.

B. Reinstatement of Warranty: When Work covered by a warranty has failed and been corrected by replacement or rebuilding, reinstate the warranty by written endorsement. The reinstated warranty shall be equal to the original warranty with an equitable adjustment for depreciation.

C. Replacement Cost: Upon determination that Work covered by a warranty has failed, replace or rebuild the Work to an acceptable condition complying with requirements of

the Contract Documents. The Contractor is responsible for the cost of replacing or rebuilding defective Work regardless of whether the Owner has benefited from use of the Work through a portion of its anticipated useful service life.

D. Owner's Recourse: Expressed warranties made to the Owner are in addition to implied warranties and shall not limit the duties, obligations, rights, and remedies otherwise available under the law. Expressed warranty periods shall not be interpreted as limitations on the time in which the Owner can enforce such other duties, obligations, rights, or remedies.

1. Rejection of Warranties: The Owner reserves the right to reject warranties and to limit selection to products with warranties not in conflict with requirements of the Contract Documents.

E. Where the Contract Documents require a special warranty or similar commitment on the Work or part of the Work, the Owner reserves the right to refuse to accept the Work, until the Contractor presents evidence that entities required to countersign such commitments are willing to do so.

F. Warranty Commencement: Warranties required by the Contract Documents shall commence on the Date of Substantial Completion of the Work or designated portion thereof.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submit written warranties to the Architect prior to the date certified for Substantial Completion. If the Architect's Certificate of Substantial Completion designates a commencement date for warranties other than the date of Substantial Completion for the Work, or a designated portion of the Work, submit written warranties upon request of the Architect.

1. When a designated portion of the Work is completed and occupied or used by the Owner, by separate agreement with the Contractor during the construction period, submit properly executed warranties to the Architect within 15 days of completion of that designated portion of the Work.

B. When the Contract Documents require the Contractor, or the Contractor and a subcontractor, supplier or manufacturer to execute a special warranty, prepare a written document that contains appropriate terms and identification, ready for execution by the required parties. Submit a draft to the Owner, through the Architect, for approval prior to final execution.

C. Prepare a written document utilizing the sample “General Warranty” form located at the end of this Section, ready for execution by the Contractor. The Contractor shall submit

subcontractor, supplier, or manufacturer draft warranties to the Owner, through the Architect, for approval prior to final execution.

1. Refer to Divisions 2 through 33 Sections for specific content requirements and particular requirements for submitting special warranties.

D. Form of Submittal: At Final Completion compile two (2) copies of each required warranty properly executed by the Contractor, or by the Contractor, subcontractor, supplier, or manufacturer. Organize the warranty documents into an orderly sequence based on the table of contents of the Project Manual.

E. Bind warranties and bonds in heavy-duty, commercial-quality, durable 3-ring, vinyl-covered loose-leaf binders, thickness as necessary to accommodate contents, and sized to receive 8-1/2-by-11-inch paper.

1. Provide heavy paper dividers with plastic-covered tabs for each separate warranty. Mark the tab to identify the product or installation. Provide a typed description of the product or installation, including the name of the product, and the name, address, and telephone number of the Installer.
2. Identify each binder on the front and spine with the typed or printed title "WARRANTIES," Project title or name, name of the Contractor and date of Substantial Completion.
3. When warranted construction requires operation and maintenance manuals, provide additional copies of each required warranty, as necessary, for inclusion in each required manual.
4. Warranty Electronic File: Scan warranties and bonds and assemble complete warranty and bond submittal package into a single indexed electronic PDF file with links enabling navigation to each item. Provide bookmarked table of contents at beginning of document.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 01 78 36

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 78 39 - PROJECT RECORD DOCUMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for project record documents, including the following:
   1. Record Drawings.

1.2 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings: Comply with the following:
   1. Initial Submittal:
      a. Submit full-size paper copy of marked-up record prints.
      b. Architect will indicate whether general scope of changes, additional information recorded, and quality of drafting are acceptable.
   2. Final Submittal:
      a. Submit one full-size and one half-size paper-copy set of marked-up record prints.
      b. Include each drawing, whether or not changes and additional information were recorded.
   3. Engineered Systems: For Manufacturer/Contractor engineered systems, i.e. fire protection systems, light gauge framing systems, panelized systems, etc., Contractor shall submit two sets of security protected record drawings as follows:
      a. One in .DWG or acceptable CAD format (write protected);
      b. One in .PDF format, with seals and signatures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Record Prints: Maintain one set of marked-up paper copies of the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings, incorporating new and revised Drawings as modifications are issued.
   1. Preparation: Mark record prints to show the actual installation where installation varies from that shown originally. Require individual or entity who obtained precord data, whether individual or entity is Installer, subcontractor, or similar entity, to provide information for preparation of corresponding marked-up record prints.

a. Give particular attention to information on concealed elements that would be difficult to identify or measure and record later.
b. Record data as soon as possible after obtaining it.
c. Record and check the markup before enclosing concealed installations.

2. Content: Types of items requiring marking include, but are not limited to, the following:
   a. Dimensional changes to Drawings.
   b. Revisions to details shown on Drawings.
   c. Depths of foundations below first floor.
   d. Locations and depths of underground utilities.
   e. Revisions to routing of piping and conduits.
   f. Revisions to electrical circuitry.
   g. Actual equipment locations.
   h. Duct size and routing.
   i. Locations of concealed internal utilities.
   j. Changes made by Change Order or Construction Change Directive.
   k. Changes made following Architect's written orders.
   l. Details not on the original Contract Drawings.
   m. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
   n. Record information on the Work that is shown only schematically.
3. Mark the Contract Drawings and Shop Drawings completely and accurately. Use personnel proficient at recording graphic information in production of marked-up record prints.
4. Mark record sets with erasable, red-colored pencil. Use other colors to distinguish between changes for different categories of the Work at same location.
5. Note Construction Change Directive numbers, alternate numbers, Change Order numbers, and similar identification, where applicable.

B. Newly Prepared Record Drawings: Prepare new Drawings instead of preparing record Drawings where Architect determines that neither the original Contract Drawings nor Shop Drawings are suitable to show actual installation.
   1. New Drawings may be required when a Change Order is issued as a result of accepting an alternate, substitution, or other modification.
   2. Consult Architect for proper scale and scope of detailing and notations required to record the actual physical installation and its relation to other construction. Integrate newly prepared record Drawings into record Drawing sets; comply with procedures for formatting, organizing, copying, binding, and submitting.

C. Format: Identify and date each record Drawing; include the designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWING" in a prominent location.
   1. Record Prints: Organize record prints and newly prepared record Drawings into manageable sets.
      a. Bind each set with durable paper cover sheets. Include identification on cover sheets.
      b. Identification: As follows:

c. Project name.
d. Date.
e. Designation "PROJECT RECORD DRAWINGS."
f. Name of Architect.
g. Name of Contractor.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RECORDING AND MAINTENANCE

A. Recording: Maintain one copy of each submittal during the construction period for project record document purposes. Post changes and revisions to project record documents as they occur; do not wait until end of Project.

B. Maintenance of Record Documents and Samples: Store record documents and Samples in the field office apart from the Contract Documents used for construction. Do not use project record documents for construction purposes. Maintain record documents in good order and in a clean, dry, legible condition, protected from deterioration and loss. Provide access to project record documents for Architect's reference during normal working hours.

END OF SECTION 01 78 39

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 79 00 - DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes administrative and procedural requirements for instructing Owner's personnel, including the following:
   1. Demonstration of operation of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   2. Training in operation and maintenance of systems, subsystems, and equipment.
   3. Demonstration and training video recordings.

1.2 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Instruction Program: Submit outline of instructional program for demonstration and training, including a list of training modules and a schedule of proposed dates, times, length of instruction time, and instructors' names for each training module. Include learning objective and outline for each training module.
   1. Indicate proposed training modules using manufacturer-produced demonstration and training video recordings for systems, equipment, and products in lieu of video recording of live instructional module.
B. Qualification Data: For facilitator and instructor.
C. Attendance Record: For each training module, submit list of participants and length of instruction time.
D. Evaluations: For each participant and for each training module, submit results and documentation of performance-based test.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. At completion of training, submit complete training manual(s) for Owner's use.
   1. Training Manual: Prepared and bound in format matching operation and maintenance manuals. Mark appropriate identification on front and spine of each binder.
B. Demonstration and Training Video Recordings: Submit two copies within seven days of end of each training module.
   1. Identification: On each copy, provide an applied label with the following information:
      a. Name of Project.
      b. Name of Architect.
      c. Name of Contractor.
      d. Date of video recording.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Facilitator Qualifications: A firm or individual experienced in training or educating maintenance personnel in a training program similar in content and extent to that indicated for this Project, and whose work has resulted in training or education with a record of successful learning performance.
B. Instructor Qualifications: A factory-authorized service representative, complying with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," experienced in operation and maintenance procedures and training.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate instruction schedule with Owner's operations. Adjust schedule as required to minimize disrupting Owner's operations and to ensure availability of Owner's personnel.
B. Coordinate instructors, including providing notification of dates, times, length of instruction time, and course content.
C. Coordinate content of training modules with content of approved emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. Do not submit instruction program until operation and maintenance data has been reviewed and approved by Architect.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSTRUCTION PROGRAM

A. Program Structure: Develop an instruction program that includes individual training modules for each system and for equipment not part of a system, as required by individual Specification Sections.
B. Training Modules: Develop a learning objective and teaching outline for each module. Include a description of specific skills and knowledge that participant is expected to master. For each module, include instruction for the following as applicable to the system, equipment, or component:
    1. Basis of System Design, Operational Requirements, and Criteria: Include the following:
        a. System, subsystem, and equipment descriptions.
        b. Performance and design criteria if Contractor is delegated design responsibility.
        c. Operating standards.
        d. Regulatory requirements.
        e. Equipment function.
        f. Operating characteristics.
        g. Limiting conditions.
        h. Performance curves.

2. Documentation: Review the following items in detail:
    a. Emergency manuals.
    b. Operations manuals.
    c. Maintenance manuals.
    d. Project record documents.
    e. Identification systems.
    f. Warranties and bonds.
    g. Maintenance service agreements and similar continuing commitments.
3. Emergencies: Include the following, as applicable:
    a. Instructions on meaning of warnings, trouble indications, and error messages.
    b. Instructions on stopping.
    c. Shutdown instructions for each type of emergency.
    d. Operating instructions for conditions outside of normal operating limits.
    e. Sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    f. Special operating instructions and procedures.
4. Operations: Include the following, as applicable:
    a. Startup procedures.
    b. Equipment or system break-in procedures.
    c. Routine and normal operating instructions.
    d. Regulation and control procedures.
    e. Control sequences.
    f. Safety procedures.
    g. Instructions on stopping.
    h. Normal shutdown instructions.
    i. Operating procedures for emergencies.
    j. Operating procedures for system, subsystem, or equipment failure.
    k. Seasonal and weekend operating instructions.
    l. Required sequences for electric or electronic systems.
    m. Special operating instructions and procedures.
5. Adjustments: Include the following:
    a. Alignments.
    b. Checking adjustments.
    c. Noise and vibration adjustments.
    d. Economy and efficiency adjustments.
6. Troubleshooting: Include diagnostic instructions and test and inspection procedures.
7. Maintenance: Include the following:
    a. Inspection procedures.
    b. Types of cleaning agents to be used and methods of cleaning.
    c. List of cleaning agents and methods of cleaning detrimental to product.

d. Procedures for routine cleaning
e. Procedures for preventive maintenance.
f. Procedures for routine maintenance.
g. Instruction on use of special tools.

8. Repairs: Include the following:
   a. Diagnosis instructions.
   b. Repair instructions.
   c. Disassembly; component removal, repair, and replacement; and reassembly instructions.
   d. Instructions for identifying parts and components.
   e. Review of spare parts needed for operation and maintenance.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Assemble educational materials necessary for instruction, including documentation and training module.
B. Assemble training modules into a training manual organized in coordination with requirements in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data."
C. Set up instructional equipment at instruction location.

3.2 INSTRUCTION

A. Facilitator: Engage a qualified facilitator to prepare instruction program and training modules, to coordinate instructors, and to coordinate between Contractor and Owner for number of participants, instruction times, and location.
B. Engage qualified instructors to instruct Owner's personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain systems, subsystems, and equipment not part of a system.
   1. Owner will furnish Contractor with names and positions of participants.
C. Scheduling: Provide instruction at mutually agreed on times. For equipment that requires seasonal operation, provide similar instruction at start of each season.
   1. Schedule training with Owner with at least seven days' advance notice.
D. Training Location and Reference Material: Conduct training on-site in the completed and fully operational facility using the actual equipment in-place. Conduct training using final operation and maintenance data submittals.
E. Evaluation: At conclusion of each training module, assess and document each participant's mastery of module by use of a demonstration performance-based test.
F. Cleanup: Restore systems and equipment to condition existing before initial training use.

3.3 DEMONSTRATION AND TRAINING VIDEO RECORDINGS

A. General: Engage a qualified commercial videographer to record demonstration and training video recordings. Record each training module separately. Include classroom instructions and demonstrations, board diagrams, and other visual aids, but not student practice.
    1. At beginning of each training module, record each chart containing learning objective and lesson outline.
B. Video: Provide minimum 640 x 480 video resolution converted to format file type acceptable to Owner, on electronic media.
    1. Electronic Media: DVD with commercial-grade graphic label.
    2. File Hierarchy: Organize folder structure and file locations according to project manual table of contents. Provide complete screen-based menu.
    3. File Names: Utilize file names based upon name of equipment generally described in video segment, as identified in Project specifications.
    4. Contractor and Installer Contact File: Using appropriate software, create a file for inclusion on the Equipment Demonstration and Training DVD that describes the following for each Contractor involved on the Project, arranged according to Project table of contents:
        a. Name of Contractor/Installer.
        b. Business address.
        c. Business phone number.
        d. Point of contact.
        e. E-mail address.
C. Recording: Mount camera on tripod before starting recording, unless otherwise necessary to adequately cover area of demonstration and training. Display continuous running time.
D. Preproduced Video Recordings: Provide video recordings used as a component of training modules in same format as recordings of live training.

END OF SECTION 01 79 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 01 91 13 - GENERAL COMMISSIONING REQUIREMENTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Special Provisions, and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. General requirements for coordinating and scheduling commissioning activities.
2. Commissioning meetings.
3. Commissioning reports.
4. Use of commissioning process test equipment, instrumentation, and tools.
5. Adjusting, verifying, and documenting identified systems and assemblies.
6. Requirements for completing Construction Checklists, Pre-functional Performance Testing, and Functional Performance Testing

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 01 10 00 "Summary" for Commissioning Authority responsibilities.
2. Section 01 31 00 “Project Management and Coordination” for inclusion of Commissioning Provider in meetings and preinstallation conferences.
3. Section 01 32 00 “Construction Progress Documentation” for inclusion of commissioning in prescheduling conferences and the construction schedule.
4. Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedure requirements for commissioning process.
5. Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion submittal requirements.
6. Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for preliminary operation and
7. maintenance data submittal requirements. Section 01 91 19.43 "Exterior Enclosure Commissioning" for technical commissioning requirements for exterior closure.
8. Section 21 08 00 “Commissioning of Fire Suppression” for technical commissioning requirements for fire suppression systems.
9. Section 22 08 00 “Commissioning of Plumbing” for technical commissioning requirements for fire alarm systems.
10. Section 23 08 00 “Commissioning of HVAC” for technical commissioning requirements for fire alarm systems.
11. Division 23 for requirements for the Building Automation System.

12. Section 26 08 00 "Commissioning of Electrical Systems" for technical commissioning requirements for fire alarm systems.
13. Section 28 08 00 "Commissioning of Fire Detection and Alarm Systems" for technical commissioning requirements for fire alarm systems.
14. Section 34 08 00 "Commissioning of Checked Baggage Handling and Inspection System"

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Acceptance Criteria: Threshold of acceptable work quality or performance specified for a commissioning activity, including, but not limited to, construction checklists, performance tests, performance test demonstrations, commissioning tests, and commissioning test demonstrations.

B. BAS, Building Automation System: The centralized control and monitoring system for the building's mechanical, HVAC, electrical, lighting, plumbing, elevator, and fire protection and life safety systems. For commissioning purposes, it includes any new building automation and control systems, as well as the interconnection of new and existing building automation and control systems. See also Division 23 Section "Instrumentation and Controls for HVAC".

C. Certificate of Readiness: Written certification prepared by the Contractor, using form provided by the CxP, certifying the indicated system, assembly, equipment or component has been installed in accordance with the Contract Documents and manufacturer requirements; startup has been completed according to manufacturer requirements and the Contract Documents; and the system, assembly, equipment or component is ready for functional performance testing.

1. The goal of the certificate is to avoid costly delays or invalid functional performance test results due to lack of readiness, absence of commissioning team members, incomplete installation, incomplete sensor calibration, component malfunction, parts unavailability or other similar preventable circumstances.
2. The certification is a prerequisite of functional performance testing for each system, assembly, piece of equipment, or component indicated to be commissioned.

D. Commissioning Coordinator: The CMAR's CQC Managers assigned to manage, schedule, and coordinate the commissioning process.

E. Commissioning Provider (CxP): An independent entity engaged by the Owner and reporting to the Owner, The CxP facilitates and coordinates the commissioning activities in concert with the Commissioning Coordinators, Contractors, Architect, Engineer, and Owner. The CxP is responsible for organizing and coordinating the actions of the commissioning team in implementing the commissioning process.

F. Commissioning Plan: A document, prepared by the Commissioning Provider, that outlines the organization, schedule, allocation of resources, and documentation of commissioning requirements. The intent of the Commissioning Plan is to consolidate the commissioning requirements and processes identified, provide guidance in the execution of the commissioning process.

G. Commissioning: A systematic quality assurance process of ensuring that all building systems are installed and perform interactively according to the design intent and the Owner's operational needs. The commissioning process encompasses and coordinates the traditionally separate processes of system documentation, installation verification, equipment startup, control system calibration, testing and balancing, performance testing and operator training. The requirements specified here are limited to the construction, post construction, and warranty phase commissioning activities. The scope of the commissioning process is defined in this section and other discipline related commissioning specifications.

1. Commissioning is a third-party quality assurance process. It does not take the place of or duplicate the Contractor's quality control services required per Section 01 40 00 Section "Quality Requirements" or testing, adjusting, and balancing and other quality control testing or inspections required in individual Sections and normally the responsibility of the Contractor.

H. Commissioning Process Completion: The final stage of completion and acceptance of commissioning process when resolution of deficient conditions and issues, discovered during the commissioning process and retesting until acceptable results are obtained, has been accomplished.

1. Commissioning process is complete when the Work specified in this Section and related Sections has been completed and accepted, including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Completion of all deferred, delayed, and seasonal Functional Performance Testing.
b. Resolution of issues, as verified by retests performed and documented with acceptance of retest results.

I. Construction Checklist: A form used by the commissioning team during procurement and installation of systems, assemblies, equipment, and components with a list of items that once completed and "checked off" serves as written verification that each system, assembly, piece of equipment, or component to be commissioned has satisfactorily been delivered to the site, has been correctly installed, and successfully completed all Pre-startup Tests. The forms will be hosted by the CxP on web-based commissioning software.

J. Construction-Phase Commissioning-Process Completion: The stage of completion and acceptance of commissioning process when resolution of deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning process and retesting until acceptable results are obtained has been accomplished. Owner will establish in writing the date construction-phase commissioning-process completion is achieved. See paragraph 3.09 of this section for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion submittal requirements. Submit per the requirements of Section 01 77 00 "Closeout Procedures" (Paragraph 1.8 Final Completion Procedures

1. Commissioning process is complete when the Work specified of this Section and related Sections has been completed and accepted, including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Completion of tests and acceptance of test results.
    b. Resolution of issues, as verified by retests performed and documented with acceptance of retest results.

K. Deferred and Delayed Testing: Functional performance testing performed after Substantial Completion, and after occupancy, but before the warranty period is completed. Includes seasonal testing (described in this section) and may include delayed testing.

L. Issues Log: A list of issues, deficiencies, issues, and recommendations for improvements that require action, decision, correction, or closure. Items will be categorized as "open" or "closed" on a continuing basis throughout the project. The list is maintained and monitored for completion by the CxP on web-based commissioning software, but resolution and action is the responsibility of the entire commissioning team.

M. Issue or Deficiency: A condition in the installation or function of a component, piece of equipment, system, or assembly that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents or does not meet the acceptance criteria of functional performance testing.

1. Issues and Deficiencies resulting from work that is not in compliance with the Contract Documents are the responsibility of the Contractor to correct at no additional cost to the Owner, including costs for retesting, as applicable.

N. Functional Performance Testing (FPT): Performance testing covers the dynamic functions and operations of equipment and systems using manual or monitoring methods. Performance testing is the dynamic testing of systems under full operation. Systems testing is the dynamic testing of systems under full operation. Systems are tested under various modes, such as during low cooling loads, high loads, component failures, unoccupied, varying outside air temperatures, fire alarm, power failure, etc. The systems are run through all the control system's sequences of operation and components are verified to respond as the sequences state.

1. FPT is part of the commissioning process and is not meant to duplicate quality control services required per Section 01 40 00 Section "Quality Requirements" or testing, adjusting, and balancing and other quality control testing or inspections required in individual Sections and normally the responsibility of the Contractor.

O. Functional Performance Test (FPT) Procedures: The written procedures and documentation forms of tests used to guide and record functional performance testing. FPT procedures are composed of repeatable, step-by-step procedures and include the test prerequisites, the test process, the expected outcomes, and acceptance criteria. Forms or space for recording the results of tests may be included integrally in the written procedures or attached on separate sheets.

1. Responsibility for developing FPT procedures is shared between the CxP, the A/E, the Contractor, and the responsible trade subcontractors, generally including the mechanical, electrical, TAB, and controls trades. The CxP is responsible for developing the final FPT procedures and acceptance criteria.

P. Pre-Functional Performance Tests: Testing of the equipment and systems in advance of the Functional Performance Testing directed by the CxP. Pre-Functional Performance Tests are performed by the Contractor's team managed by the contractors Commissioning Coordinator and utilizing the CxP issued final FPT procedure forms. Evidence of successful completion of the Pre-Functional Performance Tests must be submitted to the CxP prior to scheduling the Functional Performance Testing with the CxP.

Q. Pre-Startup Tests: Tests specified in the Contract Document to verify proper installation and performance prior to system, assembly, or equipment startups. Example tests include pipe pressure tests, duct leakage tests, and factory tests.

R. Startup: The initial starting, energizing, or activating of dynamic equipment for permanent use, including programming, the verification of components and devices using and completing static pre-functional checklists, and the manufacturer's startup forms. Often performed by Factory Authorized Service Representatives, the Contractor shall reference individual equipment specification sections for startup requirements.

S. "Systems," "Assemblies," "Subsystems," "Equipment," and "Components": Where these terms are used together or separately, they shall mean "as-built" systems, assemblies, subsystems, equipment, and components.

T. TAB: Testing, Adjusting and Balancing.

1.4 ABBREVIATIONS

A. Abbreviations: The following are common abbreviations used in this *Specification* and in the *Commissioning Plan*.

1.5 COMMISSIONING TEAM

A. Members Appointed by Contractor(s):

1. Commissioning Coordinators: Persons employed by CMAR to manage, schedule, and coordinate commissioning process. The CMAR's CQC staff include:

   a. CQC Senior Manager
   b. CQC Manager (Site, Demo, & Utilities)
   c. CQC Manager (Structure & Envelope)
   d. CQC Manager (Interior Construction & Finishes)
   e. CQC Manager (BHS)
   f. CQC Manager (Mechanical, Plumbing, Sprinkler)
   g. CQC Manager (Electrical Systems)
   h. CQC Document Control Manager

2. Project superintendent and other employees that CMAR may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.
3. Subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists that CMAR may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.
4. Appointed team members shall have the authority to act on behalf of the entity they represent.

B. Members Appointed by Owner:

1. Commissioning Provider (CxP), plus consultants that Commissioning Provider may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.

2. Owner representative(s), facility operations and maintenance personnel, plus other employees, separate contractors, and consultants that Owner may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.
3. Architect, plus employees and consultants that Architect may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures" for submittal procedure general requirements for commissioning process.

B. Commissioning Plan Information:

1. The following information must be submitted to the CxP within 30 days of Notice to Proceed; CMAR at Package 1 and each subcontractor as they are brought on board for each package for inclusion in the CxP's Commissioning Plan.

   a. List of Contractor-appointed commissioning team members and other specific personnel and subcontractors performing the various commissioning requirements. Personnel shall include but not be limited to those identified in Paragraph 1.6 "Commissioning Team" . Include title, name, e-mail address, office phone number, and mobile number for each Commissioning Team member.
   b. CPM schedule that includes the schedule of commissioning activities integrated with the Construction Schedule. Comply with requirements in this Specification Section and Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation" for the Construction Schedule general requirements for commissioning process .
   c. List of instrumentation required for each test to include identification of parties that will provide instrumentation for each test.

C. Commissioning Coordinator Letter of Authority:

1. Within 10 days after approval of Commissioning Coordinator qualifications, submit a letter of authority for Commissioning Coordinator, signed by a principal of Contractor's firm. Letter shall authorize Commissioning Coordinator to do the following:

   a. Make inspections required for commissioning process.
   b. Coordinate, schedule, and manage commissioning process of Contractor, subcontractors, and suppliers.
   c. Obtain documentation required for commissioning process from Contractor, subcontractors, and suppliers.

d. Report issues, delayed resolution of issues, schedule conflicts, and lack of cooperation or expertise on the part of members of the commissioning team.

D. Contractor's CQC Staff Commissioning Qualification Data: For staff performing Contractor's commissioning activities to demonstrate their capabilities and experience submit qualifications meeting the requirements of 1.9 Quality Assurance At a minimum submit qualifications for staff specified in 1.6 A. 1. and also include Subcontractors, installers, suppliers, and specialists that CMAR may deem appropriate for a particular portion of the commissioning process.

E. List test instrumentation, equipment, and monitoring devices. Include the following information:

1. Make, model, serial number, and application for each instrument, equipment, and monitoring device.
2. Brief description of intended use.
3. Calibration record showing the following:

a. Calibration agency, including name and contact information.
b. Last date of calibration.
c. Range of values for which calibration is valid.
d. Certification of accuracy.
e. Certification for calibration equipment traceable to NIST.
f. Due date of the next calibration.

F. Pre-Startup Test Reports: At the end of each day in which Pre-Startup Tests or Factory Testing is conducted, submit test data reports.

G. Commissioning Construction Checklists: Construction Checklists as provided by the CxP must be fully executed as part of Certificate of Readiness.

H. Startup Plans: 30 days after approved submittals for each system, assembly, and piece of equipment, develop and submit a written startup plan describing steps and procedures that will result in its successful startup and energization in accordance with manufacturer requirements and the Contract Documents. Indicate names and qualifications of personnel that will be conducting startup activities. Include manufacturer startup instructions and manufacturer's startup checklists, as applicable.

I. Startup Documents: Include report and fully executed startup checklists and related documents.

a. Draft Report: Submit draft start-up reports to the CxP within seven days following successful completion of Startup and energization.

b. Final Report: Submit final Startup reports to the A/E and to the CxP within fourteen days following successful completion of the start-up and energization.

J. Certificate of Readiness: Prior to scheduling Functional Performance Tests for each system, complete each Certificate of Readiness provided by the CxP. These certify the system is ready for Functional Performance Testing. The Certificate of Readiness must include, but is not limited to, for each system to be commissioned, all equipment and system start-up reports; Associated Construction Checklists, Test Reports; Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Report; HVAC Trend Logs (where applicable) to the extent applicable to the system. The Contractor's Commissioning CQC team must sign and date the Certificate of Readiness. Submit the Certificate of Readiness for each system no later than 14 calendar days prior to Functional Performance Tests of that system.

K. Training Plan: Include a matrix listing each training requirement, content of the training, the trainer name, trainer contact information, and schedule and location of training. Submit an electronic copy of the Training Plan to the Commissioning Specialists and the Owner no later than 30 calendar days prior to the associated training. Refer to 017900 - Demonstration and Training.

L. Trend Logs: Refer to 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for trend log requirements. Trends are to be submitted in electronic format (Microsoft Excel, or Adobe PDF). Trends logs are to be submitted prior to the Functional Performance Testing and all subsequent deferred, seasonal, or delayed Functional Performance Testing.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion. Must be submitted prior to Substantial Completion as a requirement to achieve Substantial Completion.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools to include in operation and maintenance manuals. See Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data" for requirements. Must be submitted a minimum of 90 days prior to substantial completion for review by the A/E and CxP.

C. Request for Certificate of Commissioning Process Completion. Must be submitted upon completion of all deferred, delayed, and seasonal Functional Performance Testing.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. CMAR CQC Commissioning Manager Qualifications:

1. Each of the CQC Managers listed in Paragraph 1.6 A. 1. must have documented experience commissioning systems of similar complexity to those contained in these documents on at least three projects of similar scope and complexity.
2. Certification of CQC Managers: The following certifications are acceptable. Owner reserves the right to accept or reject certifications as evidence of qualification.

    a. Certified Commissioning Authority, by AABC Commissioning Group (ACG).
    b. Certified Commissioning Professional, by Building Commissioning Association.
    c. Accredited Commissioning-Process Authority Professional, by University of Wisconsin.
    d. Accredited Commissioning-Process Manager, by University of Wisconsin.
    e. Accredited Green Commissioning-Process Provider, by University of Wisconsin.
    f. Certified Building Commissioning Professional (BCxP), by ASHRAE

B. Calibration Agency Qualifications: Certified by The American Association for Laboratory Accreditation that the calibration agency complies with minimum requirements of ISO/IEC 17025.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TEST EQUIPMENT, INSTRUMENTATION, AND TOOLS

A. Test equipment and instrumentation required to perform the commissioning process shall remain the property of Contractor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Test equipment and instrumentation required to perform commissioning process shall comply with the following criteria:

1. Be manufactured for the purpose of testing and measuring tests for which they are being used and have an accuracy to test and measure system performance within the tolerances required to determine acceptable performance.
2. Calibrated and certified.

    a. Calibration performed and documented by a qualified calibration agency according to national standards applicable to the tools and instrumentation being calibrated. Calibration shall be current according to national standards or within test equipment and instrumentation manufacturer's recommended intervals, whichever is more frequent, but not less than within six months of initial use on Project. Calibration tags shall be permanently affixed.
    b. Repair and recalibrate test equipment and instrumentation if dismantled, dropped, or damaged since last calibrated.

3. Maintain test equipment and instrumentation.
4. Use test equipment and instrumentation only for testing or monitoring Work for which they are designed.

2.2 PROPRIETARY TEST EQUIPMENT, INSTRUMENTATION, AND TOOLS

A. Proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools are those manufactured or prescribed by tested equipment manufacturer and required for work on its equipment as a condition of equipment warranty, or as otherwise required to service, repair, adjust, calibrate, or perform work on its equipment.

1. Identify proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools required in the test equipment identification list submittal.
2. Proprietary test equipment, instrumentation, and tools shall become the property of Owner at Substantial Completion.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SYSTEMS TO BE COMMISSIONED

A. The systems with associated components to be commissioned are listed in each discipline specification section.

1. Building Envelope.
2. Plumbing.
3. HVAC.
4. Electrical.
5. Fire Alarm.
6. Fire Submission.
7. Baggage Handling.
8. Passenger Conveyance.
9. Security.

3.2 CONSTRUCTION CHECKLISTS (DEVELOPED BY CXP)

A. Construction Checks are provided for each system being commissioned within the discipline specific Commissioning specifications. These Construction Checklists are based on the Contract Documents. The checklists will be updated by the CxP to match the actual installed equipment within 60 days of all the equipment submittals having been approved.

3.3 FUNCTIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST (FPT) FORMS (DEVELOPED BY CXP):

A. FPT forms are provided for each system being commissioned within the discipline specific Commissioning specifications. These forms are based on the Contract Documents. The FPT forms will be updated by the CxP to match the actual installed equipment within 60 days of all the equipment submittals having been approved.

3.4 COMMISSIONING PROVIDER (CXP) RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Construction Phase

1. Commissioning Plan: The Commissioning Plan is issued by the CxP to the team within 30 days following construction Notice to Proceed. The Commissioning Plan is updated by the CxP throughout construction to reflect schedule updates.
2. Commissioning Kickoff Meeting: The CxP shall schedule the Commissioning Kickoff meeting no later than 30 days following construction Notice to Proceed. An agenda and meeting minutes shall be issued by the CxP.
3. Construction Checklists: Final Construction Checklists updated and issued by CxP later than 60 days after approval of submittals. CxP monitors contractor progress completing Construction Checklists and provides final acceptance of completed Construction Checklists.
4. Construction Submittals: Submittals reviewed by CxP concurrently with the A/E.
5. Functional Performance Test (FPT) Procedure Forms: Final FTP procedure forms updated and issued by CxP no later than 60 days after submittal approval.
6. Inspections, Pre-Startup Tests, and Startups: Site visits performed by CxP to verify installation, pre-startup tests, and startups.
7. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing (TAB) Report and Field Acceptance Testing: CxP witnesses TAB contractor performing balancing in accordance with 230593. Preliminary and Final TAB reports are reviewed by the CxP. TAB verification witnessed by the CxP.
8. Pre-Test and Startup Reports: CxP reviews pre-test and startup reports for all commissioned systems.
9. Pre-Functional Performance Testing: Pre-Functional Performance Testing performed by the Contractor using CxP prepared FPT forms is witnessed by the CxP.
10. Trend Logs: CxP reviews all Trend Log data submissions.
11. Certificates of Readiness. CxP issues Certificates of Readiness to contractors. CxP issues Certificates of Readiness to contractors to complete.
12. Functional Performance Testing: CxP, with assistance of relevant Contractors, witnesses and directs functional performance testing performed in accordance with the FPT procedure forms. CxP records FPT results.
13. Issues Log:

    a. The CxP records as an installation compliance issue Work found to be incomplete, inaccessible, at variance with the Contract Documents,

nonfunctional, or that does not comply with Construction Checklists, or Functional Performance Test procedures.

b. CxP records corrective action by Contractor before signing off the Issue.
c. The CxP tracks resolution of each Issue until it is resolved or accepted by the Owner.

14. System Acceptance: The CxP recommends system acceptance by the Owner upon completion of the Functional Performance Testing and resolution of all issues. For systems requiring deferred or seasonal testing, systems may be recommended by the CxP for partial acceptance by the Owner prior to the deferred or seasonal testing if they comply with all construction contract and accepted design requirements that can be tested during initial Functional Performance Tests.
15. Final Commissioning Report: The CxP issues the final commissioning report upon completion of all Functional Performance Testing and resolution of all items on the Issues Log.
16. Commissioning Systems Manual: The CxP issues the commissioning system manual upon completion of all Functional Performance Testing.

3.5 COMMISSIONING COORDINATOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Management and Coordination: Manage and coordinate commissioning process, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Coordinate with subcontractors on their commissioning responsibilities and activities.
2. Obtain, assemble, and submit commissioning documentation.
3. Attend periodic on-site commissioning meetings. Comply with requirements in Section 01 31 00 "Project Management and Coordination."
4. Review and comment on preliminary test procedures and data forms.
5. Report inconsistencies and issues in system operations.
6. Verify that tests have been completed and results comply with acceptance criteria, and that systems are ready before scheduling test demonstrations.
7. Prepare and submit specified commissioning reports.
8. Track commissioning issues until resolution and retesting is successfully completed.
9. Retain original records of Commissioning-Process Work, organized as required for the commissioning report. Provide Owner's representative access to these records on request.

B. Scheduling: Schedule the commissioning process:

1. Commence commissioning process within 14 days of Notice to Proceed.
2. Commissioning Schedule: Integrate commissioning activities into Construction Schedule. See Section 01 32 00 "Construction Progress Documentation."

a. Include detailed commissioning activities in monthly updated Construction Schedule and short-interval schedule submittals.
b. Schedule the start date and duration for the following commissioning activities:

1) Submittals.
2) Preliminary operation and maintenance manual submittals.
3) Factory Acceptance Testing
4) Construction Checklists
5) System and Equipment Startups
6) Testing and Balancing
7) Pre-Functional Performance Tests.
8) Trend Log submission (applicable to HVAC)
9) Functional Performance and Integrated systems Tests.
10) Deferred and Seasonal Functional Performance Tests.
11) Training and Demonstration

c. Schedule shall include a line item for each installation check, pre-startup test, startup, and factory test activity specific to the equipment or systems involved.
d. Show milestones and prerequisites for commissioning process as detailed in the Cx Plan. Show commissioning milestones, prerequisites, and dependencies in monthly updated critical-path-method construction schedule and short-interval schedule submittals.

3. Two-Week Look-Ahead Commissioning Schedule:

a. Two weeks prior to the beginning of startup pre-tests, factory testing, and equipment and system startups, submit a detailed two-week look-ahead schedule. Thereafter, submit updated two-week look-ahead schedules weekly for the duration of commissioning process.
b. Two-week look-ahead schedules shall identify the date, time, beginning location, Contractor personnel required, and anticipated duration for each startup or test activity.
c. Use two-week look-ahead schedules to notify and coordinate participation of Owner's witnesses.

3.6 CONTRACTOR RESPONSIBILITIES

A. Contractor Responsibilities:

1. Contractor is responsible for the commissioning of all installed equipment and systems as required in the Contract Documents.

2. Include all costs of commissioning requirements including manufacturer-certified start-up and testing of installed equipment.
3. Provide utility services, personnel, materials, tools, testing equipment, instrumentation and all other resources required for the commissioning process.
4. Commissioning Coordinators must:

    a. Manage, schedule, and coordinate commissioning process. Participate in, and perform commissioning team activities including, but not limited to, those described in this specification section and each individual discipline specific commissioning specification.
    b. Assign Subcontractor representatives with expertise and authority to perform commissioning team activities described in this specification section and each individual discipline specific commissioning specification.
    c. Manage and verify Subcontractors provide technicians who are familiar with the construction and operation of installed systems to participate in testing of installed systems, subsystems, and equipment.

B. Mockups:

1. General: Before installing portions of the Work requiring mockups, build mockups in accordance with Division 01 "Quality Requirements", using processes, techniques, assemblies, materials, equipment, and components indicated for the completed Work. Build integrated, static, non-functioning mockups in location and of size indicated, or if not indicated, as directed by the A/E, for materials, equipment, and assemblies indicated in individual Sections.

    a. Schedule mockup construction and review period prior to installation of typical equipment to facilitate completion and minimize rework.
    b. Demonstrate installation techniques and workmanship which result in ease of access, operability, and maintenance.
    c. Integrate the work of each trade required for a complete system. Employ supervisory personnel who will oversee mockup construction. Employ workers that will be employed during the construction at the Project.
    d. Notify A/E and CxP five (5) days in advance of dates and times when mockups are ready for review. Obtain A/E approval and CxP review of mockup before proceeding with subsequent installations.
    e. Make necessary corrections to installation and to subsequent construction to comply with Contract Documents and to maximize ease of access, operability, and maintenance.
    f. Allow two days for initial review and each re-review of each mockup and each corrected mockup.
    g. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.

C. Installation Verification:

1. Construction Checklists: Using construction checklists provided by the CxP, perform installation verification on each system and assembly indicated to be commissioned, including each individual piece of equipment and component. Verify that materials and components are complete and undamaged upon delivery to the Project site and prior to installation. Prior to installation, verify that materials and adjacent construction are acceptably prepared and ready for installation of system, assembly, equipment or component. Verify that systems, assemblies, equipment, and components have been installed in accordance with the Contract Documents and in a manner that will allow for access and ease of maintenance.

    a. Installation verification shall be performed and certified by the contractor individuals responsible for the component installation.
    b. Verify installation and complete construction checklists for each individual piece of equipment and component, as well as each individual system and assembly. Sampling is not allowed.
    c. Construction Checklists must be continuously updated as construction progresses.

2. Certification: Submit all completed Construction Checklists to the CxP prior to beginning functional performance testing, certifying that installation verification has been completed.

D. Pre-Startup Test Procedures:

1. For each piece of equipment, assembly, or system that is specified in the contract documents for pre-testing or factory testing, develop and submit a test plan describing tests, locations for tests, and provide names and qualifications of personnel that will be conducting the tests. Example tests include pipe pressure tests, duct leakage tests, and factory tests.
2. Test and evaluate performance of equipment and assemblies under a full range of operating conditions and loads as required by the contract documents.
3. Diagnose and correct failed test demonstrations as follows:

    a. Perform diagnostic tests and activities required to determine the fundamental cause of test failure.
    b. Record each step of the diagnostic procedure prior to performing the re-test.
    c. Record the results of each step of the re-test procedure.
    d. Determine and record corrective measures.
    e. Submit diagnosis of fundamental cause of issue for inclusion in the CxP's Issues Log.

4. Pre-Startup Retests:

    a. Schedule and repeat the complete test procedure for each test demonstration for which acceptable results are not achieved. Obtain signature of CxP on

retest data forms. Repeat test demonstration until acceptable results are achieved. Except for issues that are determined to result from design errors or omissions, or other conditions beyond Contractor's responsibility, compensate Owner for direct costs incurred as the result of repeated test demonstrations to achieve acceptable results.

b. For each repeated test demonstration, submit a new test data form, marked "Retest."

5. Do not correct commissioning compliance issues during test demonstrations.

   a. Exceptions will be allowed if the cause of the issue is obvious and resolution can be completed in less than five minutes. If corrections are made under this exception, note the deficient conditions on the test data.

E. Startup Procedures:

1. Startup Plan: For each system, assembly, and piece of equipment, develop and submit a written startup plan describing steps and procedures that will result in its successful startup and energization in accordance with manufacturer requirements and the Contract Documents. Indicate names and qualifications of personnel that will be conducting startup activities. Include manufacturer startup instructions and manufacturer's startup checklists, as applicable.
2. Startup, General: Comply with startup requirements required in this Section as well as individual material and equipment sections.

   a. Notify CxP 48 hours prior to startup testing.
   b. Use manufacturer's startup checklists to ensure pre-startup and startup procedures are performed in accordance with manufacturer requirements.
   c. Unless otherwise indicated, conduct startup using manufacturer technical representatives or manufacturer-certified technicians, experienced in startup of actual equipment or system being started.
   d. Comply with procedures indicated in approved start-up plan.
   e. Startup procedures are to make system, assembly, or equipment ready for permanent use. Once startup procedures have been completed, do not shut-down equipment. Do not temporarily startup systems, assemblies, or equipment for TAB, commissioning, or other reasons.

3. Startup Reports: Prepare and complete startup reports, documenting dates, activities and procedures performed, and results of startup.

   a. Startup reports shall be completed and certified by the individuals responsible for the startup.

4. Diagnose and correct failed startup demonstrations as follows:

a. Perform diagnostic tests and activities required to determine the fundamental cause of startup failure.
b. Record each step of the diagnostic procedure prior to performing the startup again.
c. Record the results of each step of repeated starteup procedure.
d. Determine and record corrective measures.
e. Submit diagnosis of fundamental cause of issue for inclusion in the CxP's Issues Log.

5. Repeated Startups:

a. Schedule and repeat the startups for which acceptable results are not achieved. Obtain signature of CxP on new startup forms. Repeat startups until acceptable results are achieved. Except for issues that are determined to result from design errors or omissions, or other conditions beyond Contractor's responsibility, compensate Owner for direct costs incurred as the result of repeated startups to achieve acceptable results.
b. For each repeated startup, submit a new startup form, marked "Retest."

F. Sensor Calibration:

1. Calibrate sensors as part of startup procedures, prior to testing, adjusting, and balancing.

G. Pre-Functional Performance Tests

1. Review the Functional Performance Test procedures provided by the CxP. Provide comments within 14 days of receipt from CxP.
2. After Contractor has reviewed and commented on the Functional Performance Test procedures, CxP will revise and reissue the approved revised FPT procedures marked "Approved for Testing."
3. Use only approved test procedures and test data forms marked "Approved for Testing" to perform and document tests and test demonstrations.
4. The Commissioning Coordinator shall schedule and perform Pre-functional Performance Tests in advance of scheduling the Functional Performance and Integrated Systems Tests with the CxP.
5. The Pre-functional Performance Tests must be performed by the Commissioning Coordinator and members of the contractor's commissioning team listed in 1.6 A.
6. Use the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems Test procedure forms issued by the CxP to guide the Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests. Pre-functional Performance Tests must be performed for each item of equipment and each system required to be commissioned and verify all sensor calibrations, control responses, safeties, interlocks, operating modes, sequences of operation, capacities, lighting levels, and all other performance requirements comply with construction contract and accepted design requirements regardless of

the specific items listed within the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems Test procedure forms provided.

7. The Commissioning Coordinator shall invite the CxP to witness all Pre-Functional Performance Testing. Notify CxP 48 hours prior to testing
8. The results of the Pre-Functional Performance Testing are to be provided to the CxP for review with the Certificates of Readiness.

H. Trend Logs

1. For the HVAC systems, Trend Log data must be gathered and submitted to the CxP as required by 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC". Issues identified by the CxP in the Trend Log data review must be responded to by the Commissioning Coordinator. Resolution of issues must be demonstrated through subsequent Trend Log submissions and resolutions must be accepted by the CxP.

I. Certificate of Readiness

1. The Commissioning Coordinator must complete all Certificates of Readiness provided by the CxP prior to scheduling Functional Performance Tests for each system. Provide all the associated documentation required as part of the submittal submission described in Paragraph 1.7 "Informational Submittals".

J. Scheduling Functional Performance Tests and Seasonal Functional Performance Tests

1. To meet contract requirements of completing Functional Performance Testing prior to Substantial Completion, perform Functional Performance Tests as soon as all contract work is completed, regardless of the season. Develop and implement means of artificial loading to demonstrate, to a reasonable level of confidence, the ability of the HVAC systems to handle both peak seasonal loads.
2. Full-Load Conditions: In addition to the initial Functional Performance Tests, perform Functional Performance Tests of HVAC systems under full-load conditions during peak heating and cooling seasons during outdoor air condition design extremes. See 230800 "Commissioning of HVAC" for details.
3. Schedule Delayed, Deferred, and Seasonal Functional Performance Tests in coordination with the Owner to limit impact on the facility operations

K. Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests

1. In coordination with the CxP, schedule Functional Performance Tests for each system only after the applicable Certificate of Readiness, and all Pre-Functional Performance Test results has been reviewed and approved by the CxP . All deficiencies on the Issues Log identified through any prior review, inspection, or test activity must be corrected and verified by the CxP before the start of Functional Performance Tests. Perform Integrated Systems Tests only after the Functional Performance Tests for each associated system are completed with all deficiencies

resolved and after the related Functional Performance Test forms have been signed by each commissioning team member.

2. Owner's witness will be present to witness commissioning work requiring the signature of an owner's witness, including, but not limited to, test demonstrations. Owner's project manager will coordinate attendance by Owner's witness with Contractor's published Commissioning Schedule. Owner's witness will provide no labor or materials in the commissioning work. The only function of Owner's witness will be to observe and comment on the progress and results of commissioning process.
3. Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests must be performed with the Commissioning Coordinator present and relevant members of the contractor's commissioning team listed in Paragraph 1.6 "Commissioning Team".
4. Functional Performance Tests or Integrated Systems Tests must be aborted when any system deficiency requiring more than 10 minutes to resolve prevents the successful completion of the test.
5. Functional Performance Tests or Integrated Systems Tests must be aborted when any required commissioning team member is not present for the test.
6. Perform and complete each step of the approved test procedures in the order listed.
7. Record data observed during performance of tests on approved data forms at the time of test performance and when the results are observed.
8. Test results that are not within the range of acceptable results will be recorded by the CxP.
9. Functional Performance Testing:

    a. Use the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems Test procedure forms issued by the CxP to guide the Functional Performance Tests and Integrated Systems Tests.
    b. Functional Performance Tests must be performed for each item of equipment and each system required to be commissioned and verify all sensor calibrations, control responses, safeties, interlocks, operating modes, sequences of operation, capacities, lighting levels, and all other performance requirements comply with construction contract and accepted design requirements regardless of the specific items listed within the Functional Performance Test and Integrated Systems procedure forms provided.
    c. Testing must progress from equipment or components to subsystems to systems to interlocks and connections between systems. Integrated Systems Tests must be performed for the interactive operation between systems such as HVAC systems, fire protection systems, back-up electrical supply, energy generation systems, and other systems, and verify correct interactive operation, acceptable speed of response, and other contract requirements for both normal and failure modes. Examples of Integrated Systems Tests include the correct operation of HVAC systems during emergency system activation, correct operation of uninterruptible power supplies or energy generators and

connected systems, or lighting system operation during power outage or emergency system activation. Depending upon the complexity or coordination involved in certain functional performance tests or integrated systems tests, CxP may require that separate meetings be held prior to these tests occurring to review test procedures, logistics, resource allocation, etc.

d. The order of components and systems to be tested must be verified by the Commissioning Coordinators with the CxP.

10. Deferred Functional Performance Tests:

    a. Deferred Test List: CxP and Commissioning Coordinator identify, in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, proposed deferred tests or other tests approved for deferral until specified seasonal or other conditions are available. When approved, deferred tests may be completed after the date of Construction-Phase Commissioning Completion. Identify proposed deferred tests in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion as follows:

        1) Identify deferred tests by number and title.
        2) Provide a target schedule for completion of deferred tests.

    b. Schedule and coordinate deferred tests. Schedule deferred tests when specified conditions are available. Notify Architect and CxP at least seven working days (minimum) in advance of tests.

    c. Where deferred tests are specified, coordinate participation of necessary personnel and of CxP and Owner's witness. Schedule deferred tests to minimize occupant and facility impact. Obtain Owner’s approval of the proposed schedule.

11. Delayed Functional Performance Tests:

    a. Delayed Test List: CxP and Commissioning Coordinator identify, in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, proposed delayed tests. Obtain Owner approval of proposed delayed tests, including proposed schedule of completion of each delayed test, before submitting request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion. Include the following in the request for Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion:

        1) Identify delayed tests by test number and title.
        2) Written approval of proposed delayed tests, including approved schedule of completion of delayed tests.

b. Schedule and coordinate delayed tests. Schedule delayed tests when conditions that caused the delay have been rectified. Notify Architect and CxP at least seven working days (minimum) in advance of tests.
c. Where delayed tests are approved, coordinate participation of necessary personnel and CxP and Owner's witness. Schedule delayed tests to minimize occupant and facility impact. Obtain Owner's approval of the proposed schedule.

12. Diagnose and correct failed Functional Performance Testing as follows:

    a. Perform diagnostic tests and activities required to determine the fundamental cause of issues observed.
    b. Record each step of the diagnostic procedure prior to performing the procedure. Update written procedure as changes become necessary.
    c. Record the results of each step of the diagnostic procedure.
    d. Record the conclusion of the diagnostic procedure on the fundamental cause of the issue.
    e. Determine and record corrective measures.
    f. Submit diagnosis of fundamental cause of issue for inclusion in the CxP's Issues Log and documentation within the FPT forms.

13. FPT Retest:

    a. Schedule and repeat the complete FPT procedure for each test demonstration for which acceptable results are not achieved. Repeat FPT test demonstration until acceptable results are achieved. Except for issues that are determined to result from design errors or omissions, or other conditions beyond Contractor's responsibility, compensate Owner for direct costs incurred as the result of repeated FPT demonstrations to achieve acceptable results.

14. Do not correct commissioning compliance issues during FPT demonstrations.

    a. Exceptions will be allowed if the cause of the issue is obvious and resolution can be completed in less than ten (10) minutes.

15. Acceptance

    a. The Contractor's Commissioning Coordinator must indicate acceptance of each item of equipment and systems tested along with signatures of each commissioning team member that participated in each Functional Performance Test or Integrated Systems Test Checklist.
    b. Tests for which test procedures and data forms are incomplete, not signed, or which indicate performance that does not comply with acceptance criteria will be rejected. Tests for which test procedures and data forms are rejected shall be repeated and results resubmitted.

c. System Acceptance: Systems may be partially accepted by the Owner prior to seasonal testing if they comply with all construction contract and accepted design requirements that can be tested during initial Functional Performance Tests. All Functional Performance Test procedures must be completed prior to full systems acceptance.

16. Aborted Functional Performance Tests and Re-Testing: Abort Functional Performance Tests, Integrated Systems Tests, or Seasonal Tests if any deficiency prevents successful completion of the test or if any required commissioning team member is not present for the test. Reimburse the Owner for all costs associated with the additional effort required for re-testing due to test failure and/or aborted tests. These costs must include salary, travel costs, and per diem for Owner commissioning team members. Re-test only after all deficiencies identified during the original tests have been corrected.

    a. 100 Percent Sample:

        1) Systems or equipment for which 100 percent sample size are tested fail if one or more of the test procedures results in discovery of a deficiency and the deficiency cannot be resolved within 10 minutes during the test.
        2) Re-test to the extent necessary to confirm that the deficiencies have been corrected without negatively impacting the performance of the rest of the system.

    b. Less than 100 Percent Sample

        1) For systems tests with a sample size less than 100 percent, if one or more of the test procedures for an item of equipment or a system results in discovery of a deficiency, regardless of whether the deficiency is corrected during the sample tests, the item of equipment or system fails the test.
        2) If the system failure rate is 5 percent or less, meaning that 5 percent or less of the equipment or systems had at least one deficiency, re-test only on the items which experienced the initial failures.
        3) If the system failure rate is higher than 5 percent, meaning that more than 5 percent of equipment or systems tested had at least one deficiency, re-test the items which experienced the initial failures to the extent necessary to confirm that the deficiencies have been corrected . In addition, test another random sample of the same size as the initial sample for the first time. If the second random sample set has any failures, re-test those failed items and all remaining equipment and systems to complete 100 percent testing of that system type.

L. Training Plan

1. Develop and submit to the CxP and Owner a training plan which identifies all training required by specification sections associated with commissioned systems. Refer to Specification Section 01 79 00 “Demonstration and Training” for requirements.
2. Document training attendance using training attendance rosters and provide completed attendance rosters to the CxP the Owner no later than 7 calendar days following the completion of training for each system to be commissioned.

3.7 COMMISSIONING MEETINGS

A. Commissioning Provider will schedule and conduct commissioning meetings. Commissioning Meetings shall be attended by the following:

1. CQC Commissioning Coordinators and assigned staff from the contractor and subcontractor
2. CxP and assigned staff
3. Resident Engineer assigned staff
4. Owner assigned staff

B. Meetings shall occur on a biweekly basis during active construction of any system required to be commissioned. During functional performance testing, commissioning meetings shall occur on a weekly basis.

C. The CxP will schedule special commissioning meetings as follows. The Commissioning Coordinators and relevant staff from the contractor and subcontractor shall attend:

1. Startup Scheduling Meetings: Will be held for each major system, assembly, and piece of equipment being commissioned. Additional Startup Scheduling Meetings will be held prior to Startups repeated due to failure.
2. Functional Performance Test Scheduling Meetings: Will be held for each system being commissioned. Additional FPT Scheduling Meetings will be held prior to FTPs repeated due to failure, delay, seasonal, or deferred testing.
3. TAB and Controls Coordination Meeting: Meeting will be held prior to the start of TAB work to coordinate balancing with the HVAC controls contractor.

3.8 CERTIFICATE OF CONSTRUCTION-PHASE COMMISSIONING PROCESS COMPLETION

A. When Contractor considers that construction-phase commissioning process, or a portion thereof which Owner agrees to accept separately, is complete, Contractor shall prepare and submit to Owner and CxP through Architect a comprehensive list of items to be completed or corrected. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter Contractor's responsibility to compete commissioning process.

B. On receipt of Contractor's list, the CxP will inspect to determine whether the construction-phase commissioning process or designated portion thereof is complete. If Commissioning Provider's inspection discloses items, whether included on Contractor's list or not, which is not sufficiently complete as defined in "Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion" Paragraph in the "Definitions" Article, Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion, complete or correct such items on notification by the CxP. In such case, Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the CxP to determine construction-phase commissioning process completion.

C. Contractor shall promptly correct deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning process. Costs of correcting such deficient conditions and issues, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for Architect's and CxP's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at Contractor's expense

D. When construction-phase commissioning process or designated portion is complete, the CxP will prepare a Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion that shall establish the date of completion of construction-phase commissioning process. Certificate of Construction-Phase Commissioning Process Completion shall be submitted prior to requesting inspection for determining date of Substantial Completion

3.9 CERTIFICATE OF COMMISSIONING PROCESS COMPLETION

A. When Contractor considers that the commissioning process is complete, Contractor shall prepare and submit to Owner and CxP through Architect a comprehensive list of items completed and corrected as part of the delayed, deferred, and seasonal Functional Performance Testing. Failure to include an item on such list does not alter Contractor's responsibility to compete commissioning process.

B. On receipt of Contractor's list, the CxP will inspect to determine whether the commissioning process is complete. If Commissioning Provider's inspection discloses items, whether included on Contractor's list or not, which is not sufficiently complete as defined in "Commissioning Process Completion" Paragraph in the "Definitions" Article, Contractor shall, before issuance of the Certificate of Commissioning Process Completion, complete or correct such items on notification by the CxP. In such case, Contractor shall then submit a request for another inspection by the CxP to determine construction-phase commissioning process completion.

C. Contractor shall promptly correct deficient conditions and issues discovered during commissioning process. Costs of correcting such deficient conditions and issues, including additional testing and inspections, the cost of uncovering and replacement, and compensation for Architect's and CxP's services and expenses made necessary thereby, shall be at Contractor's expense.

D. When the commissioning process is complete, the CxP will prepare a Certificate of Commissioning Process Completion that shall establish the date of completion of the commissioning process.

END OF SECTION 01 91 13

ITEM C-100
CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PROGRAM (CQCP)

100-1 General. Quality is more than test results. Quality is the combination of proper materials, testing, workmanship, equipment, inspection, and documentation of the project. Establishing and maintaining a culture of quality is key to achieving a quality project. The Contractor shall establish, provide, and maintain an effective Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP) that details the methods and procedures that will be taken to assure that all materials and completed construction required by this contract conform to contract plans, technical specifications and other requirements, whether manufactured by the Contractor, or procured from subcontractors or vendors. Although guidelines are established and certain minimum requirements are specified here and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications, the Contractor shall assume full responsibility for accomplishing the stated purpose.

The Contractor shall establish a CQCP that will:

a. Provide qualified personnel to develop and implement the CQCP.

b. Provide for the production of acceptable quality materials.

c. Provide sufficient information to assure that the specification requirements can be met.

d. Document the CQCP process.

The Contractor shall not begin any construction or production of materials to be incorporated into the completed work until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved by the Resident Project Representative (RPR). No partial payment will be made for materials subject to specific quality control (QC) requirements until the CQCP has been reviewed and approved.

The QC requirements contained in this section and elsewhere in the contract technical specifications are in addition to and separate from the quality assurance (QA) testing requirements. QA testing requirements are the responsibility of the RPR or Contractor as specified in the specifications.

A Quality Control (QC)/Quality Assurance (QA) workshop with the Engineer, Resident Project Representative (RPR), Contractor, subcontractors, testing laboratories, and Owner's representative must be held prior to start of construction. The QC/QA workshop will be facilitated by the Contractor. The Contractor shall coordinate with the Airport and the RPR on time and location of the QC/QA workshop. Items to be addressed, at a minimum, will include:

a. Review of the CQCP including submittals, QC Testing, Action & Suspension Limits for Production, Corrective Action Plans, Distribution of QC reports, and Control Charts.

b. Discussion of the QA program.

c. Discussion of the QC and QA Organization and authority including coordination and information exchange between QC and QA.

d. Establish regular meetings to discuss control of materials, methods and testing.

e. Establishment of the overall QC culture.

100-2 Description of program.

a. General description. The Contractor shall establish a CQCP to perform QC inspection and testing of all items of work required by the technical specifications, including those performed by subcontractors. The CQCP shall ensure conformance to applicable specifications and plans with respect to materials, off-site fabrication, workmanship, construction, finish, and functional performance. The CQCP shall be effective for control of all construction work performed under this Contract and shall specifically include surveillance and tests required by the technical specifications, in addition to other requirements of this section and any other activities deemed necessary by the Contractor to establish an effective level of QC.

b. Contractor Quality Control Program (CQCP). The Contractor shall describe the CQCP in a written document that shall be reviewed and approved by the RPR prior to the start of any production, construction, or off-site fabrication. The written CQCP shall be submitted to the RPR for review and approval at least 10 calendar days before the CQCP Workshop. The Contractor's CQCP and QC testing laboratory must be approved in writing by the RPR prior to the Notice to Proceed (NTP).

The CQCP shall be organized to address, as a minimum, the following:

1. QC organization and resumes of key staff
2. Project progress schedule
3. Submittals schedule
4. Inspection requirements
5. QC testing plan
6. Documentation of QC activities and distribution of QC reports
7. Requirements for corrective action when QC and/or QA acceptance criteria are not met
8. Material quality and construction means and methods. Address all elements applicable to the project that affect the quality of the pavement structure including subgrade, subbase, base, and surface course. Some elements that must be addressed include, but is not limited to mix design, aggregate grading, stockpile management, mixing and transporting, placing and finishing, quality control testing and inspection, smoothness, laydown plan, equipment, and temperature management plan.

The Contractor must add any additional elements to the CQCP that is necessary to adequately control all production and/or construction processes required by this contract.

100-3 CQCP organization. The CQCP shall be implemented by the establishment of a QC organization. An organizational chart shall be developed to show all QC personnel, their authority, and how these personnel integrate with other management/production and construction functions and personnel.

The organizational chart shall identify all QC staff by name and function, and shall indicate the total staff required to implement all elements of the CQCP, including inspection and testing for each item of work. If necessary, different technicians can be used for specific inspection and testing functions for different items of work. If an outside organization or independent testing laboratory is used for implementation of all or part of the CQCP, the personnel assigned shall be

subject to the qualification requirements of paragraphs 100-03a and 100-03b. The organizational chart shall indicate which personnel are Contractor employees and which are provided by an outside organization.

The QC organization shall, as a minimum, consist of the following personnel:

a. Program Administrator. The Contractor Quality Control Program Administrator (CQCPA) must be a full-time employee of the Contractor, or a consultant engaged by the Contractor. The CQCPA must have a minimum of five (5) years of experience in QC pavement construction with prior QC experience on a project of comparable size and scope as the contract.

Included in the five (5) years of paving/QC experience, the CQCPA must meet at least one of the following requirements:

(1) Professional Engineer with one (1) year of airport paving experience.

(2) Engineer-in-training with two (2) years of airport paving experience.

(3) National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) Civil Engineering Technology Level IV with three (3) years of airport paving experience.

(4) An individual with four (4) years of airport paving experience, with a Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering, Civil Engineering Technology or Construction.

The CQCPA must have full authority to institute any and all actions necessary for the successful implementation of the CQCP to ensure compliance with the contract plans and technical specifications. The CQCPA authority must include the ability to immediately stop production until materials and/or processes are in compliance with contract specifications. The CQCPA must report directly to a principal officer of the construction firm. The CQCPA may supervise the Quality Control Program on more than one project provided that person can be at the job site within two (2) hours after being notified of a problem.

b. QC technicians. A sufficient number of QC technicians necessary to adequately implement the CQCP must be provided. These personnel must be either Engineers, engineering technicians, or experienced craftsman with qualifications in the appropriate field equivalent to NICET Level II in Civil Engineering Technology or higher, and shall have a minimum of two (2) years of experience in their area of expertise.

The QC technicians must report directly to the CQCPA and shall perform the following functions:

(1) Inspection of all materials, construction, plant, and equipment for conformance to the technical specifications, and as required by paragraph 100-6.

(2) Performance of all QC tests as required by the technical specifications and paragraph100-8.

(3) Performance of tests for the RPR when required by the technical specifications.

Certification at an equivalent level of qualification and experience by a state or nationally recognized organization will be acceptable in lieu of NICET certification.

c. Staffing levels. The Contractor shall provide sufficient qualified QC personnel to monitor each work activity at all times. Where material is being produced in a plant for incorporation into the work, separate plant and field technicians shall be provided at each plant and field placement

location. The scheduling and coordinating of all inspection and testing must match the type and pace of work activity. The CQCP shall state where different technicians will be required for different work elements.

100-4 Project progress schedule. Critical QC activities must be shown on the project schedule as required by Section 80, paragraph 80-03, *Execution and Progress*.

100-5 Submittals schedule. The Contractor shall submit a detailed listing of all submittals (for example, mix designs, material certifications) and shop drawings required by the technical specifications. The listing can be developed in a spreadsheet format and shall include as a minimum:

a. Specification item number

b. Item description

c. Description of submittal

d. Specification paragraph requiring submittal

e. Scheduled date of submittal

100-6 Inspection requirements. QC inspection functions shall be organized to provide inspections for all definable features of work, as detailed below. All inspections shall be documented by the Contractor as specified by paragraph 100-9.

Inspections shall be performed as needed to ensure continuing compliance with contract requirements until completion of the particular feature of work. Inspections shall include the following minimum requirements:

a. During plant operation for material production, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of aggregates and other mix components, and to adjust and control mix proportioning to meet the approved mix design and other requirements of the technical specifications. All equipment used in proportioning and mixing shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition. The CQCP shall detail how these and other QC functions will be accomplished and used.

b. During field operations, QC test results and periodic inspections shall be used to ensure the quality of all materials and workmanship. All equipment used in placing, finishing, and compacting shall be inspected to ensure its proper operating condition and to ensure that all such operations are in conformance to the technical specifications and are within the plan dimensions, lines, grades, and tolerances specified. The CQCP shall document how these and other QC functions will be accomplished and used.

100-7 Contractor QC testing facility.

a. For projects that include Item P-401, Item P-403, and Item P-404, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM D3666, *Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials*:

- 8.1.3 Equipment Calibration and Checks;

- 8.1.9 Equipment Calibration, Standardization, and Check Records;
- 8.1.12 Test Methods and Procedures

b. For projects that include P-501, the Contractor shall ensure facilities, including all necessary equipment, materials, and current reference standards, are provided that meet requirements in the following paragraphs of ASTM C1077, Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation:

- 7 Test Methods and Procedures
- 8 Facilities, Equipment, and Supplemental Procedures

100-8 QC testing plan. As a part of the overall CQCP, the Contractor shall implement a QC testing plan, as required by the technical specifications. The testing plan shall include the minimum tests and test frequencies required by each technical specification Item, as well as any additional QC tests that the Contractor deems necessary to adequately control production and/or construction processes.

The QC testing plan can be developed in a spreadsheet fashion and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

a. Specification item number (e.g., P-401)

b. Item description (e.g., Hot Mix Asphalt Pavements)

c. Test type (e.g., gradation, grade, asphalt content)

d. Test standard (e.g., ASTM or American Association of State Highway and Transportation Officials (AASHTO) test number, as applicable)

e. Test frequency (e.g., as required by technical specifications or minimum frequency when requirements are not stated)

f. Responsibility (e.g., plant technician)

g. Control requirements (e.g., target, permissible deviations)

The QC testing plan shall contain a statistically-based procedure of random sampling for acquiring test samples in accordance with ASTM D3665. The RPR shall be provided the opportunity to witness QC sampling and testing.

All QC test results shall be documented by the Contractor as required by paragraph 100-9.

100-9 Documentation. The Contractor shall maintain current QC records of all inspections and tests performed. These records shall include factual evidence that the required QC inspections or tests have been performed, including type and number of inspections or tests involved; results of inspections or tests; nature of defects, deviations, causes for rejection, etc.; proposed remedial action; and corrective actions taken.

These records must cover both conforming and defective or deficient features, and must include a statement that all supplies and materials incorporated in the work are in full compliance with the terms of the contract. Legible copies of these records shall be furnished to the RPR daily. The records shall cover all work placed subsequent to the previously furnished records and shall be verified and signed by the CQCPA.

Contractor QC records required for the contract shall include, but are not necessarily limited to, the following records:

a. Daily inspection reports. Each Contractor QC technician shall maintain a daily log of all inspections performed for both Contractor and subcontractor operations. These technician's daily reports shall provide factual evidence that continuous QC inspections have been performed and shall, as a minimum, include the following:

(1) Technical specification item number and description

(2) Compliance with approved submittals

(3) Proper storage of materials and equipment

(4) Proper operation of all equipment

(5) Adherence to plans and technical specifications

(6) Summary of any necessary corrective actions

(7) Safety inspection.

(8) Photographs and/or video

The daily inspection reports shall identify all QC inspections and QC tests conducted, results of inspections, location and nature of defects found, causes for rejection, and remedial or corrective actions taken or proposed.

The daily inspection reports shall be signed by the responsible QC technician and the CQCPA. The RPR shall be provided at least one copy of each daily inspection report on the work day following the day of record. When QC inspection and test results are recorded and transmitted electronically, the results must be archived.

b. Daily test reports. The Contractor shall be responsible for establishing a system that will record all QC test results. Daily test reports shall document the following information:

(1) Technical specification item number and description

(2) Test designation

(3) Location

(4) Date of test

(5) Control requirements

(6) Test results

(7) Causes for rejection

(8) Recommended remedial actions

(9) Retests

Test results from each day's work period shall be submitted to the RPR prior to the start of the next day's work period. When required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall maintain statistical QC charts. When QC daily test results are recorded and transmitted electronically, the results must be archived.

100-10 Corrective action requirements. The CQCP shall indicate the appropriate action to be taken when a process is deemed, or believed, to be out of control (out of tolerance) and detail what action will be taken to bring the process into control. The requirements for corrective action

shall include both general requirements for operation of the CQCP as a whole, and for individual items of work contained in the technical specifications.

The CQCP shall detail how the results of QC inspections and tests will be used for determining the need for corrective action and shall contain clear rules to gauge when a process is out of control and the type of correction to be taken to regain process control.

When applicable or required by the technical specifications, the Contractor shall establish and use statistical QC charts for individual QC tests. The requirements for corrective action shall be linked to the control charts.

100-11 Inspection and/or observations by the RPR. All items of material and equipment are subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the point of production, manufacture or shipment to determine if the Contractor, producer, manufacturer or shipper maintains an adequate QC system in conformance with the requirements detailed here and the applicable technical specifications and plans. In addition, all items of materials, equipment and work in place shall be subject to inspection and/or observation by the RPR at the site for the same purpose.

Inspection and/or observations by the RPR does not relieve the Contractor of performing QC inspections of either on-site or off-site Contractor's or subcontractor's work.

100-12 Noncompliance.

a. The Resident Project Representative (RPR) will provide written notice to the Contractor of any noncompliance with their CQCP. After receipt of such notice, the Contractor must take corrective action.

b. When QC activities do not comply with either the CQCP or the contract provisions or when the Contractor fails to properly operate and maintain an effective CQCP, and no effective corrective actions have been taken after notification of non-compliance, the RPR will recommend the Owner take the following actions:

(1) Order the Contractor to replace ineffective or unqualified QC personnel or subcontractors and/or

(2) Order the Contractor to stop operations until appropriate corrective actions are taken.

METHOD OF MEASUREMENT

CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PLAN SHALL NOT BE MEASURED FOR PAYMENT. IT SHALL BE INCIDENTAL TO PROJECT RELATED PAY ITEMS.

BASIS OF PAYMENT

NO SEPARATE PAYMENT SHALL BE MADE FOR CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PLAN. COST FOR CONTRACTOR QUALITY CONTROL PLAN SHALL BE INCLUDED AS PART OF PROJECT RELATED PAY ITEMS.

REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET)

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM C1077	Standard Practice for Agencies Testing Concrete and Concrete Aggregates for Use in Construction and Criteria for Testing Agency Evaluation
ASTM D3665	Standard Practice for Random Sampling of Construction Materials
ASTM D3666	Standard Specification for Minimum Requirements for Agencies Testing and Inspecting Road and Paving Materials

END OF ITEM C-100

SECTION 03 11 16 – ARCHITECTURAL CONCRETE FORMLINERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Formliners for architectural concrete.
2. Formliner accessories.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
2. Section 03 41 00 "Precast Structural Concrete".

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following:

1. Form liners.
2. Form-release agent.

B. Shop Drawings: Plan, elevation, and details to show overall pattern, joint locations, form tie locations, edge, and other special conditions.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Formliner manufacturer: Minimum five years of experience manufacturing formliner to create formed architectural concrete surfaces.

B. Formliner Installer: Minimum five years of experience pouring horizontally and/or vertically formed architectural concrete. Installer must be trained in manufacturer's techniques to achieve the desired architectural surfaces.

C. Mockups: Formed surfaces to demonstrate typical joints, surface finish, texture, tolerances, and standard of workmanship.

1. Build panel(s) in the location indicated on the site or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect/Owner. Incorporate accessories and minimum one interior vertical formliner joint and one panel-to-panel joint where formliner ends meet.

2. Accepted mockup will be standard by which remaining work will be evaluated for technical and aesthetic merit. Accepted mockup is a prerequisite prior to use of formliner. Submit variations from mockup materials or techniques for approval prior to use

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Form Liners: Store form liners under cover to protect from sunlight, dirt, and debris. Avoid striking face with heavy, sharp, or heated objects that could cause permanent damage.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 BASIS OF DESIGN

A. Manufacturer:
   1. Custom Rock Formliner
      2020 West 7th Street, Saint Paul, MN 55116
      (651) 699-1345 Phone / (651) 699-1830 Fax
      info@customrock.com / www.customrock.com
   2. Requests for substitutions will be considered in accordance with the provisions of Section 016000.
   3. Provide all formliners from a single manufacturer.

B. Form Liner:
   1. Face Pattern: 8004 SIMULATED WAVE
   2. Orientation: Horizontal
   3. Depth: 3/4"
   4. Location: At all spandrel precast panels.
   5. Size: 5’-5” tall x 4’-0” wide.

C. Materials:
   1. V-Lite ABS Plastic: Premium quality ABS plastic.

2.2 ACCESSORIES

A. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch, minimum.

B. Rustication Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, kerfed for ease of form removal.

C. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.
2. Form release agent for form liners shall be acceptable to form liner manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMLINER PREPARATION

A. Before placing concrete, verify lines and levels of formwork and formliner patterns are within allowable tolerances.

B. On multiple-use grades, clean formliner before each use. Replace damaged formliner whose continued use or repair would negatively impact the aesthetics of the concrete finish.

C. Apply release to form liners before each use and within the same day that concrete is placed.

D. Use form release sprayer and vary spray angle to ensure complete coverage of all pattern features. Use a brush for deep or rough patterns.

3.2 FORMLINER INSTALLATION

A. Seal formliner joints, rustication/chamfer joints, and tie holes to prevent cement paste from bleeding.

B. Provide solid backing at formliner joints where unsupported by formwork to prevent deflection.

C. Construct formliner and chamfers to sizes, shapes, lines and dimensions shown. Work with one sheet at a time; position form liner against casting bed so that edges, pattern, and joints are square.

D. Provide openings, offsets, keyways, recesses, chamfers, blocking, and screeds as required to achieve architectural concrete textured finish.

E. Drill or pierce formliner to accommodate attachment to casting bed.

F. Strip liner panels within 24 hours and perpendicular to the concrete face in a way that avoids defects on finished surfaces. Take care to not damage liners intended for multiple use.

END OF SECTION 03 11 16

SECTION 03 30 00 - CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes cast-in-place concrete, including formwork, reinforcement, concrete materials, mixture design, placement procedures, and finishes.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Cementitious Materials: Portland cement alone or in combination with one or more of the following: blended hydraulic cement, fly ash, slag cement, other pozzolans, and silica fume; materials subject to compliance with requirements.

B. W/C Ratio: The ratio by weight of water to cementitious materials.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Before submitting design mixtures, review concrete design mixture and examine procedures for ensuring quality of concrete materials. Require representatives of each entity directly concerned with cast-in-place concrete to attend, including the following:

    a. Contractor's superintendent.
    b. Independent testing agency responsible for concrete design mixtures.
    c. Ready-mix concrete manufacturer.
    d. Concrete Subcontractor.
    e. Special concrete finish Subcontractor.

2. Review threshold inspection and testing and inspecting agency procedures for field quality control, concrete finishes and finishing, cold- and hot-weather concreting procedures, curing procedures, mass concrete procedures, construction contraction and isolation joints, and joint-filler strips, forms and

form removal limitations, shoring and reshoring procedures, vapor-retarder installation, anchor rod and anchorage device installation tolerances, steel reinforcement installation, concrete repair procedures, and concrete protection.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternate design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Steel Reinforcement Shop Drawings: Placing Drawings that detail fabrication, bending, and placement. Include bar sizes, lengths, material, grade, bar schedules, stirrup spacing, bent bar diagrams, bar arrangement, splices and laps, mechanical connections, tie spacing, hoop spacing, and supports for concrete reinforcement.

D. Construction Joint Layout: Indicate proposed construction joints required to construct the structure.

1. Location of construction joints is subject to approval of the Architect.

E. Samples: For waterstops.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material Certificates: For each of the following, signed by manufacturers:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Admixtures.
3. Form materials and form-release agents.
4. Steel reinforcement and accessories.
5. Fiber reinforcement.
6. Waterstops.
7. Curing compounds.
8. Floor and slab treatments.
9. Bonding agents.
10. Adhesives.

11. Vapor retarders.
12. Semirigid joint filler.
13. Joint-filler strips.
14. Repair materials.

D. Material Test Reports: For the following, from a qualified testing agency:

1. Aggregates: Include service record data indicating absence of deleterious expansion of concrete due to alkali aggregate reactivity.

E. Formwork Shop Drawings: Prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer, detailing fabrication, assembly, and support of formwork.

1. Shoring and Reshoring: Indicate proposed schedule and sequence of stripping formwork, shoring removal, and reshoring installation and removal.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Minutes of preinstallation conference.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who employs on Project personnel qualified as ACI-certified Flatwork Technician and Finisher and a supervisor who is an ACI-certified Concrete Flatwork Technician.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A firm experienced in manufacturing ready-mixed concrete products and that complies with ASTM C 94/C 94M requirements for production facilities and equipment.

1. Manufacturer certified according to NRMCA's "Certification of Ready Mixed Concrete Production Facilities."

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency qualified according to ASTM C 1077 and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

1. Personnel conducting field tests shall be qualified as ACI Concrete Field Testing Technician, Grade 1, according to ACI CP-1 or an equivalent certification program.
2. Personnel performing laboratory tests shall be ACI-certified Concrete Strength Testing Technician and Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade I. Testing agency laboratory supervisor shall be an ACI-certified Concrete Laboratory Testing Technician, Grade II.

D. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on concrete mixtures.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Steel Reinforcement: Deliver, store, and handle steel reinforcement to prevent bending and damage.

B. Waterstops: Store waterstops under cover to protect from moisture, sunlight, dirt, oil, and other contaminants.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Cold-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 306.1 and as follows. Protect concrete work from physical damage or reduced strength that could be caused by frost, freezing actions, or low temperatures.

1. When average high and low temperature is expected to fall below 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) for three successive days, maintain delivered concrete mixture temperature within the temperature range required by ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
2. Do not use frozen materials or materials containing ice or snow. Do not place concrete on frozen subgrade or on subgrade containing frozen materials.
3. Do not use calcium chloride, salt, or other materials containing antifreeze agents or chemical accelerators unless otherwise specified and approved in mixture designs.

B. Hot-Weather Placement: Comply with ACI 301 (ACI 301M) and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M), and as follows:

1. Maintain concrete temperature below 90 deg F (32 deg C) at time of placement. Chilled mixing water or chopped ice may be used to control temperature, provided water equivalent of ice is calculated to total amount of mixing water. Using liquid nitrogen to cool concrete is Contractor's option.
2. Fog-spray forms, steel reinforcement, and subgrade just before placing concrete. Keep subgrade uniformly moist without standing water, soft spots, or dry areas.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONCRETE, GENERAL

A. ACI Publications: Comply with the following unless modified by requirements in the Contract Documents:

1. ACI 301 (ACI 301M), "Specifications for Structural Concrete"
2. ACI 117 (ACI 117M), "Specifications for Tolerances for Concrete Construction and Materials"
3. ACI 207 (ACI 207M), "Guide to Mass Concrete," for concrete components as indicated on the Drawings.

2.2 FORM-FACING MATERIALS

A. Smooth-Formed Finished Concrete: Form-facing panels that provide continuous, true, and smooth concrete surfaces. Furnish in largest practicable sizes to minimize number of joints.

1. Plywood, metal, or other approved panel materials.
2. Exterior-grade plywood panels, suitable for concrete forms, complying with DOC PS 1, and as follows:

    a. High-density overlay, Class 1 or better.
    b. Medium-density overlay, Class 1 or better; mill-release agent treated and edge sealed.
    c. Structural 1, B-B or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.
    d. B-B (Concrete Form), Class 1 or better; mill oiled and edge sealed.

3. Overlaid Finnish birch plywood.

B. Rough-Formed Finished Concrete: Plywood, lumber, metal, or another approved material. Provide lumber dressed on at least two edges and one side for tight fit.

C. Forms for Cylindrical Columns, Pedestals, and Supports: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes that produce surfaces with gradual or abrupt irregularities not exceeding specified formwork surface class. Provide units with sufficient wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation.

D. Chamfer Strips: Wood, metal, PVC, or rubber strips, 3/4 by 3/4 inch (19 by 19 mm), minimum.

E. Form-Release Agent: Commercially formulated form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent treatments of concrete surfaces.

1. Formulate form-release agent with rust inhibitor for steel form-facing materials.

F. Form Ties: Factory-fabricated, removable or snap-off glass-fiber-reinforced plastic or metal form ties designed to resist lateral pressure of fresh concrete on forms and to prevent spalling of concrete on removal.

1. Furnish units that leave no corrodible metal closer than 1 inch (25 mm) to the plane of exposed concrete surface.
2. Furnish ties that, when removed, leave holes no larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in diameter in concrete surface.
3. Furnish ties with integral water-barrier plates to walls indicated to receive dampproofing or waterproofing.

2.3 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed.

B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706/A 706M, deformed.

C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184/A 184M, fabricated from ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), deformed bars, assembled with clips.

D. Plain-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, as drawn.

E. Deformed-Steel Wire: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M.

F. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

G. Deformed-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064/A 1064M, flat sheet.

2.4 REINFORCEMENT ACCESSORIES

A. Joint Dowel Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60 (Grade 420), plain-steel bars, cut true to length with ends square and free of burrs.

B. Zinc Repair Material: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

C. Bar Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded-wire reinforcement in place. Manufacture bar

supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete and as follows:

1. For concrete surfaces exposed to view, where legs of wire bar supports contact forms, use CRSI Class 1 plastic-protected steel wire or CRSI Class 2 stainless-steel bar supports.
2. For epoxy-coated reinforcement, use epoxy-coated or other dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.
3. For zinc-coated reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type or class of cementitious material of the same brand from the same manufacturer's plant, obtain aggregate from single source, and obtain admixtures from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Cementitious Materials:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I/II, except as otherwise indicated.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.
3. Slag Cement: ASTM C 989/C 989M, Grade 100 or 120.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: ASTM C 33/C 33M. Provide aggregates from a single source with documented service record data of at least 10 years' satisfactory service in similar applications and service conditions using similar aggregates and cementitious materials.

1. Maximum Coarse-Aggregate Size: 1 inch (25 mm) nominal.
2. Fine Aggregate: Free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement.

D. Lightweight Aggregate: ASTM C 330/C 330M.

E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260/C 260M.

F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and that do not contribute water-soluble chloride ions exceeding those permitted in hardened concrete. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type B.
3. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
4. High-Range, Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type F.

5. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
6. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

G. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

2.6 WATERSTOPS

A. Flexible PVC Waterstops: CE CRD-C 572, for embedding in concrete to prevent passage of fluids through joints. Factory fabricate corners, intersections, and directional changes.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following or approved alternate:

   a. BoMetals, Inc.
   b. Sika Greenstreak
   c. Paul Murphy Plastics Company
   d. Vinylex Corp.

2. Profile: Ribbed without center bulb.
3. Dimensions: 6 inches by 3/8 inch thick (150 mm by 10 mm thick); nontapered.

2.7 VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Sheet Vapor Retarder: ASTM E 1745, Class A. Include manufacturer's recommended adhesive or pressure-sensitive tape.

1. Fortifiber Building Systems Group; Moistop Ultra 15
2. W.R. Meadows, Inc.; Perminator 15 mil.
3. Raven Industries, Inc.; Vapor Block 15
4. Reef Industries, Inc.; Griffolyn 15 mil. Green
5. Stego Industries, LLC; Stego Wrap 15 mil. Class A

2.8 CURING MATERIALS

A. Evaporation Retarder: Waterborne, monomolecular film forming, manufactured for application to fresh concrete.

B. Absorptive Cover: AASHTO M 182, Class 2, burlap cloth made from jute or kenaf, weighing approximately 9 oz./sq. yd. (305 g/sq. m) when dry.

C. Moisture-Retaining Cover: ASTM C 171, polyethylene film or white burlap-polyethylene sheet.

D. Water: Potable.

E. Clear, Waterborne, Membrane-Forming Curing and Sealing Compound: ASTM C 1315, Type 1, Class A.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following or approved alternate:

a. ChemMasters; Polyseal WB.
b. Euclid Chemical Company, an RPM company; Super Diamond Clear VOX; LusterSeal WB 300.
c. Lambert Corporation; UV Safe Seal.
d. Meadows, W. R., Inc.; Vocomp-30.
e. Metalcrete Industries; Metcure 30.
f. Right Pointe; Right Sheen WB30.
g. Symons by Dayton Superior; Cure & Seal 31 Percent E.
h. Vexcon Chemicals, Inc.; Vexcon Starseal 1315.

2.9 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Expansion- and Isolation-Joint-Filler Strips: ASTM D 1751, asphalt-saturated cellulosic fiber or ASTM D 1752, cork or self-expanding cork.

B. Bonding Agent: ASTM C 1059/C 1059M, Type II, nonredispersible, acrylic emulsion or styrene butadiene.

C. Epoxy Bonding Adhesive: ASTM C 881, two-component epoxy resin, capable of humid curing and bonding to damp surfaces, of class suitable for application temperature and of grade to suit requirements, and as follows:

1. Types I and II, nonload bearing, and Types IV and V, load bearing, for bonding hardened or freshly mixed concrete to hardened concrete.

2.10 REPAIR MATERIALS

A. Proprietary systems recommended by the manufacturer for the specific applications required, subject to the Engineer's approval. Examples are as follows.

1. Bonding compound: Sikadur 32 hi-Mod LPL
2. Patching mortar: Sikatop 111 and 122
3. Injection Adhesive: Sikadur 36 Hi-Mod LV

2.11 CONCRETE MIXTURES, GENERAL

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture or field test data, or both, according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.

B. Cementitious Materials: Limit percentage, by weight, of cementitious materials other than portland cement in concrete as follows:

1. Fly Ash: 25 percent.
2. Slag Cement: 50 percent.

C. Limit water-soluble, chloride-ion content in hardened concrete to 0.10 percent by weight of cement.

D. Admixtures: Use admixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use water-reducing, high-range water-reducing, or plasticizing admixture in concrete, as required, for placement and workability.
2. Use water-reducing and -retarding admixture when required by high temperatures, low humidity, or other adverse placement conditions.
3. Use water-reducing admixture in pumped concrete, concrete for heavy-use industrial slabs and parking structure slabs, concrete required to be watertight, and concrete with a w/c ratio below 0.50.
4. Use corrosion-inhibiting admixture in concrete mixtures where indicated.

2.12 CONCRETE MIXTURES FOR BUILDING ELEMENTS

A. Footings, Pile Caps, and Grade Beams: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of placement.

B. Slabs-on-Grade: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.50.
3. Minimum Cementitious Materials Content: 520 lb/cu. yd.
4. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.

5. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

C. Walls: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of placement.

D. Topping Slabs: Normal-weight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days.
2. Maximum W/C Ratio: 0.45.
3. Slump Limit: 5 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
4. Air Content: 4.5 percent, plus or minus 1.5 percent at point of placement.

E. Elevated Slabs: Lightweight concrete.

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi at 28 days.
2. Calculated Equilibrium Unit Weight: 115 lb/cu. ft., plus or minus 3 lb/cu. ft. as determined by ASTM C 567/C 567M.
3. The responsibility for providing lightweight concrete within the specified equilibrium unit weight limits is the Contractor's; however, concrete arriving at the job site with a wet weight in excess of 125 lb/cu. ft. as determined by ASTM C138 and C567, is subject to rejection.
4. Limit dry shrinkage to 0.03 percent at 28 days. Aggregates shall be presoaked in accordance with ACI 304.2R when placement of concrete is by pumping.
5. Slump Limit: 4 inches, plus or minus 1 inch.
6. Air Content: Do not allow air content of trowel-finished floors to exceed 3 percent.

2.13 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.14 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver concrete according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. When air temperature is between 85 and 90 deg F (30 and 32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time from 1-1/2 hours to 75 minutes; when air temperature is above 90 deg F (32 deg C), reduce mixing and delivery time to 60 minutes.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 FORMWORK INSTALLATION

A. Design, erect, shore, brace, and maintain formwork, according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M), to support vertical, lateral, static, and dynamic loads, and construction loads that might be applied, until structure can support such loads.

B. Construct formwork so concrete members and structures are of size, shape, alignment, elevation, and position indicated, within tolerance limits of ACI 117 (ACI 117M).

C. Limit concrete surface irregularities, designated by ACI 347 as abrupt or gradual, as follows:

1. Class A, 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) for smooth-formed finished surfaces.
2. Class B, 1/4 inch (6 mm) for rough-formed finished surfaces.

D. Construct forms tight enough to prevent loss of concrete mortar.

E. Construct forms for easy removal without hammering or prying against concrete surfaces. Provide crush or wrecking plates where stripping may damage cast-concrete surfaces. Provide top forms for inclined surfaces steeper than 1.5 horizontal to 1 vertical.

1. Install keyways, reglets, recesses, and the like, for easy removal.
2. Do not use rust-stained steel form-facing material.

F. Set edge forms, bulkheads, and intermediate screed strips for slabs to achieve required elevations and slopes in finished concrete surfaces. Provide and secure units to support screed strips; use strike-off templates or compacting-type screeds.

G. Provide temporary openings for cleanouts and inspection ports where interior area of formwork is inaccessible. Close openings with panels tightly fitted to forms and securely braced to prevent loss of concrete mortar. Locate temporary openings in forms at inconspicuous locations.

H. Chamfer exterior corners and edges of permanently exposed concrete.

I. Form openings, chases, offsets, sinkages, keyways, reglets, blocking, screeds, and bulkheads required in the Work. Determine sizes and locations from trades providing such items.

J. Clean forms and adjacent surfaces to receive concrete. Remove chips, wood, sawdust, dirt, and other debris just before placing concrete.

K. Retighten forms and bracing before placing concrete, as required, to prevent mortar leaks and maintain proper alignment.

L. Coat contact surfaces of forms with form-release agent, according to manufacturer's written instructions, before placing reinforcement.

3.2 EMBEDDED ITEM INSTALLATION

A. Place and secure anchorage devices and other embedded items required for adjoining work that is attached to or supported by cast-in-place concrete. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.

1. Install anchor rods, accurately located, to elevations required and complying with tolerances in Section 7.5 of AISC 303.
2. Install reglets to receive waterproofing and to receive through-wall flashings in outer face of concrete frame at exterior walls, where flashing is shown at lintels, shelf angles, and other conditions.
3. Install dovetail anchor slots in concrete structures as indicated.

3.3 REMOVING AND REUSING FORMS

A. General: Formwork for sides of beams, walls, columns, and similar parts of the Work that does not support weight of concrete may be removed after cumulatively curing at not less than 50 deg F (10 deg C) for 24 hours after placing concrete. Concrete has to be hard enough to not be damaged by form-removal operations, and curing and protection operations need to be maintained.

1. Leave formwork for beam soffits, joists, slabs, and other structural elements that support weight of concrete in place until concrete has achieved its 28-day design compressive strength.
2. Remove forms only if shores have been arranged to permit removal of forms without loosening or disturbing shores.

B. Clean and repair surfaces of forms to be reused in the Work. Split, frayed, delaminated, or otherwise damaged form-facing material are not acceptable for exposed surfaces. Apply new form-release agent.

C. When forms are reused, clean surfaces, remove fins and laitance, and tighten to close joints. Align and secure joints to avoid offsets. Do not use patched forms for exposed concrete surfaces unless approved by Architect.

3.4 SHORING AND RESHORING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with ACI 318 (ACI 318M) and ACI 301 (ACI 301M) for design, installation, and removal of shoring and reshoring.

1. Do not remove shoring or reshoring until measurement of slab tolerances is complete.

B. In multistory construction, extend shoring or reshoring over a sufficient number of stories to distribute loads in such a manner that no floor or member will be excessively loaded or will induce tensile stress in concrete members without sufficient steel reinforcement.

C. Plan sequence of removal of shores and reshore to avoid damage to concrete. Locate and provide adequate reshoring to support construction without excessive stress or deflection.

3.5 VAPOR-RETARDER INSTALLATION

A. Sheet Vapor Retarders: Place, protect, and repair sheet vapor retarder according to ASTM E 1643 and manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lap joints 6 inches (150 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape.

3.6 STEEL REINFORCEMENT INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice" for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

1. Do not cut or puncture vapor retarder. Repair damage and reseal vapor retarder before placing concrete.

B. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, ice, and other foreign materials that reduce bond to concrete.

C. Accurately position, support, and secure reinforcement against displacement. Locate and support reinforcement with bar supports to maintain minimum concrete cover. Do not tack weld crossing reinforcing bars.

1. Weld reinforcing bars according to AWS D1.4/D 1.4M, where indicated.

D. Set wire ties with ends directed into concrete, not toward exposed concrete surfaces.

E. Install welded-wire reinforcement in longest practicable lengths on bar supports spaced to minimize sagging. Lap edges and ends of adjoining sheets at least one mesh

spacing. Offset laps of adjoining sheet widths to prevent continuous laps in either direction. Lace overlaps with wire.

3.7 JOINTS

A. General: Construct joints true to line with faces perpendicular to surface plane of concrete.

B. Construction Joints: Install so strength and appearance of concrete are not impaired, at locations indicated or as approved by Engineer.

1. Place joints perpendicular to main reinforcement. Continue reinforcement across construction joints unless otherwise indicated. Do not continue reinforcement through sides of strip placements of floors and slabs.
2. Form keyed joints as indicated. Embed keys at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into concrete.
3. Locate joints for beams, slabs, joists, and girders in the middle third of spans. Offset joints in girders a minimum distance of twice the beam width from a beam-girder intersection.
4. Locate horizontal joints in walls and columns at underside of floors, slabs, beams, and girders and at the top of footings or floor slabs.
5. Space vertical joints in walls as indicated. Locate joints beside piers integral with walls, near corners, and in concealed locations where possible.
6. Use a bonding agent at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.
7. Use epoxy-bonding adhesive at locations where fresh concrete is placed against hardened or partially hardened concrete surfaces.

C. Contraction Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: Form weakened-plane contraction joints, sectioning concrete into areas as indicated. Construct contraction joints for a depth equal to at least one-fourth of concrete thickness as follows:

1. Grooved Joints: Form contraction joints after initial floating by grooving and finishing each edge of joint to a radius of 1/8 inch (3.2 mm). Repeat grooving of contraction joints after applying surface finishes. Eliminate groover tool marks on concrete surfaces.
2. Sawed Joints: Form contraction joints with power saws equipped with shatterproof abrasive or diamond-rimmed blades. Cut 1/8-inch- (3.2-mm-) wide joints into concrete when cutting action does not tear, abrade, or otherwise damage surface and before concrete develops random contraction cracks.

D. Isolation Joints in Slabs-on-Grade: After removing formwork, install joint-filler strips at slab junctions with vertical surfaces, such as column pedestals, foundation walls, grade beams, and other locations, as indicated.

1. Extend joint-filler strips full width and depth of joint, terminating flush with finished concrete surface unless otherwise indicated.
2. Terminate full-width joint-filler strips not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) or more than 1 inch (25 mm) below finished concrete surface where joint sealants, specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants," are indicated.
3. Install joint-filler strips in lengths as long as practicable. Where more than one length is required, lace or clip sections together.

E. Doweled Joints: Install dowel bars and support assemblies at joints where indicated. Lubricate or asphalt coat one-half of dowel length to prevent concrete bonding to one side of joint.

3.8 WATERSTOP INSTALLATION

A. Flexible Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other joints indicated to form a continuous diaphragm. Install in longest lengths practicable. Support and protect exposed waterstops during progress of the Work. Field fabricate joints in waterstops according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Self-Expanding Strip Waterstops: Install in construction joints and at other locations indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions, adhesive bonding, mechanically fastening, and firmly pressing into place. Install in longest lengths practicable.

3.9 CONCRETE PLACEMENT

A. Before placing concrete, verify that installation of formwork, reinforcement, and embedded items is complete and that required inspections are completed.

B. Do not add water to concrete during delivery, at Project site, or during placement unless approved by Engineer.

C. Before test sampling and placing concrete, water may be added at Project site, subject to limitations of ACI 301 (ACI 301M).

1. Do not add water to concrete after adding high-range water-reducing admixtures to mixture.

D. Deposit concrete continuously in one layer or in horizontal layers of such thickness that no new concrete is placed on concrete that has hardened enough to cause seams or planes of weakness. If a section cannot be placed continuously, provide construction joints as indicated. Deposit concrete to avoid segregation.

1. Deposit concrete in horizontal layers of depth not to exceed formwork design pressures and in a manner to avoid inclined construction joints.
2. Consolidate placed concrete with mechanical vibrating equipment according to ACI 301 (ACI 301M).
3. Do not use vibrators to transport concrete inside forms. Insert and withdraw vibrators vertically at uniformly spaced locations to rapidly penetrate placed layer and at least 6 inches (150 mm) into preceding layer. Do not insert vibrators into lower layers of concrete that have begun to lose plasticity. At each insertion, limit duration of vibration to time necessary to consolidate concrete and complete embedment of reinforcement and other embedded items without causing mixture constituents to segregate.

E. Deposit and consolidate concrete for floors and slabs in a continuous operation, within limits of construction joints, until placement of a panel or section is complete.

1. Consolidate concrete during placement operations, so concrete is thoroughly worked around reinforcement and other embedded items and into corners.
2. Maintain reinforcement in position on chairs during concrete placement.
3. Screed slab surfaces with a straightedge and strike off to correct elevations.
4. Slope surfaces uniformly to drains where required.
5. Begin initial floating using bull floats or darbies to form a uniform and open-textured surface plane, before excess bleedwater appears on the surface. Do not further disturb slab surfaces before starting finishing operations.

3.10 FINISHING FORMED SURFACES

A. Rough-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material with tie holes and defects repaired and patched. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces not exposed to public view.

B. Smooth-Formed Finish: As-cast concrete texture imparted by form-facing material, arranged in an orderly and symmetrical manner with a minimum of seams. Repair and patch tie holes and defects. Remove fins and other projections that exceed specified limits on formed-surface irregularities.

1. Apply to concrete surfaces exposed to public view or to be covered with a coating or covering material applied directly to concrete.

C. Rubbed Finish: Apply the following to smooth-formed-finished as-cast concrete where indicated:

1. Smooth-Rubbed Finish: Not later than one day after form removal, moisten concrete surfaces and rub with carborundum brick or another abrasive until

producing a uniform color and texture. Do not apply cement grout other than that created by the rubbing process.

2. Grout-Cleaned Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply grout of a consistency of thick paint to coat surfaces and fill small holes. Mix 1 part portland cement to 1-1/2 parts fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding admixture and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Scrub grout into voids and remove excess grout. When grout whitens, rub surface with clean burlap and keep surface damp by fog spray for at least 36 hours.
3. Cork-Floated Finish: Wet concrete surfaces and apply a stiff grout. Mix 1 part portland cement and 1 part fine sand with a 1:1 mixture of bonding agent and water. Add white portland cement in amounts determined by trial patches, so color of dry grout matches adjacent surfaces. Compress grout into voids by grinding surface. In a swirling motion, finish surface with a cork float.

D. Related Unformed Surfaces: At tops of walls, horizontal offsets, and similar unformed surfaces adjacent to formed surfaces, strike off smooth and finish with a texture matching adjacent formed surfaces. Continue final surface treatment of formed surfaces uniformly across adjacent unformed surfaces unless otherwise indicated.

3.11 FINISHING FLOORS AND SLABS

A. General: Comply with ACI 302.1R recommendations for screeding, restraightening, and finishing operations for concrete surfaces. Do not wet concrete surfaces.

B. Float Finish: Consolidate surface with power-driven floats or by hand floating if area is small or inaccessible to power-driven floats. Restraighten, cut down high spots, and fill low spots. Repeat float passes and restraightening until surface is left with a uniform, smooth, granular texture.

1. Apply float finish to surfaces to receive trowel finish.

C. Trowel Finish: After applying float finish, apply first troweling and consolidate concrete by hand or power-driven trowel. Continue troweling passes and restraighten until surface is free of trowel marks and uniform in texture and appearance. Grind smooth any surface defects that would telegraph through applied coatings or floor coverings.

1. Apply a trowel finish to surfaces to be covered with resilient flooring, carpet, ceramic or quarry tile set over a cleavage membrane, paint, or another thin-film-finish coating system.

2. Finish and measure surface, so gap at any point between concrete surface and an unleveled, freestanding, 10-ft.- (3.05-m-) long straightedge resting on two high spots and placed anywhere on the surface does not exceed 1/4 inch.

D. Trowel and Fine-Broom Finish: Apply a first trowel finish to surfaces where ceramic or quarry tile is to be installed by either thickset or thinset method. While concrete is still plastic, slightly scarify surface with a fine broom.

E. Broom Finish: Apply a broom finish to exterior concrete platforms, steps, ramps, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Immediately after float finishing, slightly roughen trafficked surface by brooming with fiber-bristle broom perpendicular to main traffic route. Coordinate required final finish with Architect before application.

F. Slip-Resistive Finish: Before final floating, apply slip-resistive aggregate finish where indicated and to concrete stair treads, platforms, and ramps. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Uniformly spread 25 lb/100 sq. ft. (12 kg/10 sq. m) of dampened slip-resistive aggregate over surface in one or two applications. Tamp aggregate flush with surface, but do not force below surface.
2. After broadcasting and tamping, apply float finish.
3. After curing, lightly work surface with a steel wire brush or an abrasive stone and water to expose slip-resistive aggregate.

3.12 MISCELLANEOUS CONCRETE ITEM INSTALLATION

A. Filling In: Fill in holes and openings left in concrete structures after work of other trades is in place unless otherwise indicated. Mix, place, and cure concrete, as specified, to blend with in-place construction. Provide other miscellaneous concrete filling indicated or required to complete the Work.

B. Curbs: Provide monolithic finish to interior curbs by stripping forms while concrete is still green and by steel-troweling surfaces to a hard, dense finish with corners, intersections, and terminations slightly rounded.

C. Equipment Bases and Foundations:

1. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided.
2. Construct concrete bases 4 inches (100 mm) high unless otherwise indicated, and extend base not less than 6 inches (150 mm) in each direction beyond the maximum dimensions of supported equipment unless otherwise indicated or unless required for seismic anchor support.
3. Minimum Compressive Strength: 4000 psi (27.6 MPa) at 28 days.
4. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.

5. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete substrate.
6. Prior to pouring concrete, place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
7. Cast anchor-bolt insert into bases. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.

D. Steel Pan Stairs: Provide concrete fill for steel pan stair treads, landings, and associated items. Cast-in inserts and accessories as shown on Drawings. Screed, tamp, and trowel finish concrete surfaces.

3.13 CONCRETE PROTECTING AND CURING

A. General: Protect freshly placed concrete from premature drying and excessive cold or hot temperatures. Comply with ACI 306.1 for cold-weather protection and ACI 305.1 (ACI 305.1M) for hot-weather protection during curing.

B. Evaporation Retarder: Apply evaporation retarder to unformed concrete surfaces if hot, dry, or windy conditions cause moisture loss approaching 0.2 lb/sq. ft. x h (1 kg/sq. m x h) before and during finishing operations. Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions after placing, screeding, and bull floating or darbying concrete, but before float finishing.

C. Formed Surfaces: Cure formed concrete surfaces, including underside of beams, supported slabs, and other similar surfaces. If forms remain during curing period, moist cure after loosening forms. If removing forms before end of curing period, continue curing for remainder of curing period.

D. Unformed Surfaces: Begin curing immediately after finishing concrete. Cure unformed surfaces, including floors and slabs, concrete floor toppings, and other surfaces.

E. Cure concrete according to ACI 308.1, by one or a combination of the following methods:

1. Moisture Curing: Keep surfaces continuously moist for not less than seven days with the following materials:

    a. Water.
    b. Continuous water-fog spray.
    c. Absorptive cover, water saturated, and kept continuously wet. Cover concrete surfaces and edges with 12-inch (300-mm) lap over adjacent absorptive covers.

2. Moisture-Retaining-Cover Curing: Cover concrete surfaces with moisture-retaining cover for curing concrete, placed in widest practicable width, with sides and ends lapped at least 12 inches (300 mm), and sealed by waterproof tape or adhesive. Cure for not less than seven days. Immediately repair any holes or tears during curing period, using cover material and waterproof tape.

    a. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings.
    b. Moisture cure or use moisture-retaining covers to cure concrete surfaces to receive penetrating liquid floor treatments.
    c. Cure concrete surfaces to receive floor coverings with either a moisture-retaining cover or a curing compound that the manufacturer certifies does not interfere with bonding of floor covering used on Project.

3. Curing Compound: Apply uniformly in continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

    a. Removal: After curing period has elapsed, remove curing compound without damaging concrete surfaces by method recommended by curing compound manufacturer.

4. Curing and Sealing Compound: Apply uniformly to floors and slabs indicated in a continuous operation by power spray or roller according to manufacturer's written instructions. Recoat areas subjected to heavy rainfall within three hours after initial application. Repeat process 24 hours later and apply a second coat. Maintain continuity of coating and repair damage during curing period.

3.14 MASS CONCRETE

A. This provision applies to mass concrete pile cap components as indicated in the Drawings.

B. The mass concrete temperature after placement shall not exceed 158°F and the temperature difference between the core and exterior surfaces shall not exceed 35°F. Mass concrete should remain covered and monitored until the difference between the core temperature and the average daily ambient temperature is below 35°F. All mass concrete pours shall remain covered and protected a minimum of 7 days unless otherwise directed by the Engineer.

C. Submit an analysis, for review and approval, of the anticipated thermal developments in the mass concrete based on the proposed mix design, materials and casting procedures. At a minimum the analysis shall provide: an anticipated range of peak

temperatures, temperature gradients, time to peak temperature and recommended cure time. The submittal shall also describe the measures and procedures that will be taken to limit the temperature differential to 35°F or less between the core and exterior surfaces.

D. Methods for reducing thermal differential may involve but are not limited to a combination of the following:

1. Selecting materials that minimize the heat generated by hydration of the cement.
2. Cooling materials to reduce the temperature of the concrete in its plastic state.
3. Controlling the rate of concrete placement.
4. Insulating the concrete surface to prevent heat loss.
5. Providing supplemental heat at the concrete surface to prevent heat loss.
6. Other acceptable methods which may be developed by the Contractor.

E. The temperature of mass concrete at the time of placement shall not be less than 40°F nor more than 75°F.

F. The Contractor shall provide and install a minimum of six temperature sensing devices in each mass concrete pour to monitor temperature differentials between the core and exterior surfaces. These devices shall have an accuracy of ±2°F within the temperature range of 40°F to 180°F. One temperature sensing probe shall be placed near the core of the pour, and the remaining temperature sensing probes shall be placed at approximately two inches clear from the surface of the concrete furthest from the core. The Engineer shall approve the locations of the temperature sensing probes.

G. Readings from the temperature sensing devices shall be recorded at one-hour intervals, from the time casting is complete until the maximum temperature is established. After the maximum temperature is established, record readings from temperature sensing devices at two-hour intervals until consecutive readings indicated the temperature difference between the core and all exterior surfaces is less than 35°F.

H. If monitoring indicates the 35°F differential has been exceeded, the Contractor shall take immediate action to reduce the temperature differential to less than 35°F and revise the thermal plan to ensure future mass concrete pours meet the temperature limits. All revisions to the approved plan must be approved by the Engineer prior to implementation.

3.15 CONCRETE SURFACE REPAIRS

A. Defective Concrete: Repair and patch defective areas when approved by Architect or Engineer. Remove and replace concrete that cannot be repaired and patched to Architect or Engineer’s approval.

B. Patching Mortar: Mix dry-pack patching mortar, consisting of 1 part portland cement to 2-1/2 parts fine aggregate passing a No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve, using only enough water for handling and placing.

C. Repairing Formed Surfaces: Surface defects include color and texture irregularities, cracks, spalls, air bubbles, honeycombs, rock pockets, fins and other projections on the surface, and stains and other discolorations that cannot be removed by cleaning.

1. Immediately after form removal, cut out honeycombs, rock pockets, and voids more than 1/2 inch (13 mm) in any dimension to solid concrete. Limit cut depth to 3/4 inch (19 mm). Make edges of cuts perpendicular to concrete surface. Clean, dampen with water, and brush-coat holes and voids with bonding agent. Fill and compact with patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Fill form-tie voids with patching mortar or cone plugs secured in place with bonding agent.
2. Repair defects on surfaces exposed to view by blending white portland cement and standard portland cement so that, when dry, patching mortar matches surrounding color. Patch a test area at inconspicuous locations to verify mixture and color match before proceeding with patching. Compact mortar in place and strike off slightly higher than surrounding surface.
3. Repair defects on concealed formed surfaces that affect concrete's durability and structural performance as determined by Architect.

D. Repairing Unformed Surfaces: Test unformed surfaces, such as floors and slabs, for finish and verify surface tolerances specified for each surface. Correct low and high areas. Test surfaces sloped to drain for trueness of slope and smoothness; use a sloped template.

1. Repair finished surfaces containing defects. Surface defects include spalls, popouts, honeycombs, rock pockets, crazing and cracks in excess of 0.01 inch (0.25 mm) wide or that penetrate to reinforcement or completely through unreinforced sections regardless of width, and other objectionable conditions.
2. After concrete has cured at least 14 days, correct high areas by grinding.
3. Correct localized low areas during or immediately after completing surface finishing operations by cutting out low areas and replacing with patching mortar. Finish repaired areas to blend into adjacent concrete.
4. Correct other low areas scheduled to receive floor coverings with a repair underlayment. Prepare, mix, and apply repair underlayment and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface. Feather edges to match adjacent floor elevations.
5. Correct other low areas scheduled to remain exposed with a repair topping. Cut out low areas to ensure a minimum repair topping depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) to match adjacent floor elevations. Prepare, mix, and apply repair topping and primer according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a smooth, uniform, plane, and level surface.

6. Repair defective areas, except random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter, by cutting out and replacing with fresh concrete. Remove defective areas with clean, square cuts and expose steel reinforcement with at least a 3/4-inch (19-mm) clearance all around. Dampen concrete surfaces in contact with patching concrete and apply bonding agent. Mix patching concrete of same materials and mixture as original concrete, except without coarse aggregate. Place, compact, and finish to blend with adjacent finished concrete. Cure in same manner as adjacent concrete.
7. Repair random cracks and single holes 1 inch (25 mm) or less in diameter with patching mortar. Groove top of cracks and cut out holes to sound concrete and clean off dust, dirt, and loose particles. Dampen cleaned concrete surfaces and apply bonding agent. Place patching mortar before bonding agent has dried. Compact patching mortar and finish to match adjacent concrete. Keep patched area continuously moist for at least 72 hours.

E. Perform structural repairs of concrete, subject to Architect's approval, using epoxy adhesive and patching mortar.

F. Repair materials and installation not specified above may be used, subject to Architect's approval.

3.16 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a special inspector and qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports as outlined in the Threshold Inspection Plan.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform tests and inspections and to submit reports.

C. Concrete Tests: Testing of composite samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd. (4 cu. m), but less than 25 cu. yd. (19 cu. m), plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. (38 cu. m) or fraction thereof.
2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. (76 cu. m) or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.

    a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

3. Slump: ASTM C 143/C 143M; one test at point of placement for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture. Perform additional tests when concrete consistency appears to change.
4. Air Content: ASTM C 231/C 231M, pressure method, for normal-weight concrete; ASTM C 173/C 173M, volumetric method, for structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
5. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F (4.4 deg C) and below or 80 deg F (27 deg C) and above, and one test for each composite sample.
6. Unit Weight: ASTM C 567/C 567M, fresh unit weight of structural lightweight concrete; one test for each composite sample, but not less than one test for each day's pour of each concrete mixture.
7. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.

    a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
    b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

8. Compressive-Strength Tests: ASTM C 39/C 39M; test one set of two laboratory-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.

    a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
    b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

9. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
10. Strength of each concrete mixture will be satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).
11. Test results shall be reported in writing to Architect, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. Reports of compressive-strength tests shall contain Project identification name and number, date of concrete placement, name of concrete testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests.

12. Nondestructive Testing: Impact hammer, sonoscope, or other nondestructive device may be permitted by Architect but will not be used as sole basis for approval or rejection of concrete.
13. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency shall make additional tests of concrete when test results indicate that slump, air entrainment, compressive strengths, or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Architect. Testing and inspecting agency may conduct tests to determine adequacy of concrete by cored cylinders complying with ASTM C 42/C 42M or by other methods as directed by Architect.
14. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.
15. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

END OF SECTION 03 30 00

SECTION 03 41 00 - PRECAST STRUCTURAL CONCRETE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes precast structural concrete.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-In-Place Concrete".
2. Section 03 11 16 "Architectural Concrete Formliners".

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Design Mixtures: For each precast concrete mixture.

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include member locations, plans, elevations, dimensions, shapes and sections, openings, support conditions, and types of reinforcement, including special reinforcement.
2. Detail fabrication and installation of precast structural concrete units, including connections at member ends and to adjoining construction.

D. Delegated-Design Submittal: For precast structural concrete indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator and installer.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material certificates.

D. Material Test Reports: For aggregates.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A firm that assumes responsibility for engineering precast structural concrete units to comply with performance requirements. Responsibility includes preparation of Shop Drawings and comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.

1. Designated as a PCI-certified plant as follows:

a. Group C, Category C1 - Precast Concrete Products (no prestressed reinforcement), Category C2 - Prestressed Hollowcore and Repetitively Produced Products and Category C3 - Prestressed Straight Strand Structural Members

B. Erector Qualifications: A precast concrete erector Qualified by the Precast/Prestressed Concrete Institute (PCI) prior to beginning work at the jobsite. Submit a current Certificate of Compliance furnished by PCI designating qualification in Category S2 (Complex Structural Systems) for load-bearing members.

C. Professional Engineer Qualifications: A professional engineer licensed in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated. Engineering services are defined as those performed for installations of structural precast concrete that are similar to those indicated for this Project in material, design, and extent.

D. Quality-Control Standard: For manufacturing procedures, testing requirements, and quality-control recommendations for types of units required, comply with PCI MNL 116, "Manual for Quality Control for Plants and Production of Structural Precast Concrete Products."

E. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.4/D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Furnish loose connection hardware and anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction before starting that Work. Provide locations, setting diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions, as required, for installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer to design precast structural concrete units.

B. Design Standards: Comply with ACI 318 and with design recommendations in PCI MNL 120, "PCI Design Handbook - Precast and Prestressed Concrete," applicable to types of precast structural concrete units indicated.

C. Structural Performance: Precast structural concrete units and connections shall withstand design loads indicated within limits and under conditions indicated.

1. Fire-Resistance Rating: Select material and minimum thicknesses to provide indicated fire rating.

D. Vehicular Impact Loads: Design spandrel beams acting as vehicular barriers for passenger cars to resist a single load of 6,000 lb service load applied horizontally in any direction to the spandrel beam, with anchorages or attachments capable of transferring this load to the structure. Design spandrel beams, assuming the load to act at a height of 18 in and 27 in above the floor or ramp surface on an area not to exceed 1 sq. ft.

2.2 MOLD MATERIALS

A. Form Liners: Units of face design, texture, arrangement, and configuration indicated. Furnish with manufacturer's recommended form-release agent that does not bond with, stain, or adversely affect precast concrete surfaces and does not impair subsequent surface or joint treatments of precast concrete.

2.3 REINFORCING MATERIALS

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Low-Alloy-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 706, deformed.

C. Steel Bar Mats: ASTM A 184, fabricated from ASTM A 615, Grade 60, deformed bars, assembled with clips.

D. Plain-Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A 1064, plain, fabricated from as-drawn steel wire into flat sheets.

E. Supports: Suspend reinforcement from back of mold or use bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening reinforcing bars and welded wire reinforcement in place according to PCI MNL 116.

2.4 PRESTRESSING TENDONS

A. Strand: ASTM A 416, Grade 270, uncoated, seven-wire, low-relaxation strand.

2.5 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or Type III, gray, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Supplementary Cementitious Materials:

1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class C or F, with maximum loss on ignition of 3 percent.
2. Metakaolin: ASTM C 618, Class N.
3. Silica Fume: ASTM C 1240, with optional chemical and physical requirement.
4. Ground Granulated Blast-Furnace Slag: ASTM C 989, Grade 100 or 120.

C. Normal-Weight Aggregates: Except as modified by PCI MNL 116, ASTM C 33/C 33M, with coarse aggregates complying with Class 5S. Stockpile fine and coarse aggregates for each type of exposed finish from a single source (pit or quarry) for Project.

D. Water: Potable; free from deleterious material that may affect color stability, setting, or strength of concrete and complying with chemical limits of PCI MNL 116.

E. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C 260, certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other required admixtures.

F. Chemical Admixtures: Certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures and to not contain calcium chloride, or more than 0.15 percent chloride ions or other salts by weight of admixture.

2.6 STEEL CONNECTION MATERIALS

A. Carbon-Steel Shapes and Plates: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Carbon-Steel-Headed Studs: ASTM A 108, Grade 1010 through 1020, cold finished, AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type A or B, with arc shields and with minimum mechanical properties of PCI MNL 116.

C. Carbon-Steel Plate: ASTM A 283/A 283M, Grade C.

D. High-Strength, Low-Alloy Structural Steel: ASTM A 572/A 572M.

E. Carbon-Steel Structural Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade C.

F. Deformed-Steel Wire or Bar Anchors: ASTM A 496/A 496M or ASTM A 706/A 706M.

G. Carbon-Steel Bolts and Studs: ASTM A 307, Grade A ; carbon-steel, hex-head bolts and studs; carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563; and flat, unhardened steel washers, ASTM F 844.

H. High-Strength Bolts and Nuts: ASTM A 325 or ASTM A 490, Type 1, heavy hex steel structural bolts; heavy hex carbon-steel nuts, ASTM A 563; and hardened carbon-steel washers, ASTM F 436.

1. Do not zinc coat ASTM A 490 bolts.

I. Zinc-Coated Finish: For exterior steel items, steel in exterior walls, and items indicated for galvanizing, apply zinc coating by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123 or ASTM A 153.

1. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint with dry film containing not less than 94 percent zinc dust by weight, and complying with DOD-P-21035B or SSPC-Paint 20.

J. Shop-Primed Finish: Prepare surfaces of nongalvanized-steel items, except those surfaces to be embedded in concrete, according to requirements in SSPC-SP 3, and shop apply lead- and chromate-free, rust-inhibitive primer, complying with performance requirements in MPI 79 according to SSPC-PA 1.

2.7 BEARING PADS

A. Provide bearing pads for precast structural concrete units as recommended by precast fabricator for application.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout containing selected silica sands, portland cement, shrinkage-compensating agents, plasticizing and water-reducing agents, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade A for drypack and Grades B and C for flowable grout and of consistency suitable for application within a 30-minute working time. Water-soluble chloride ion content less than 0.06 percent by weight of cement when tested according to ASTM C 1218/C 1218M.

2.9 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type of precast concrete required.

1. Use fly ash, pozzolan, ground granulated blast-furnace slag, and silica fume as needed to reduce the total amount of portland cement, which would otherwise be used, by not less than 40 percent.
2. Limit use of fly ash to 20 percent replacement of portland cement by weight and ground granulated blast-furnace slag to 35 percent of portland cement by weight; metakaolin and silica fume to 10 percent of portland cement by weight.

B. Design mixtures may be prepared by a qualified independent testing agency or by qualified precast plant personnel at precast structural concrete fabricator's option.

C. Limit water-soluble chloride ions to maximum percentage by weight of cement permitted by ACI 318 or PCI MNL 116 when tested according to ASTM C 1218.

D. Normal-Weight Concrete Mixtures: Proportion full-depth mixture by either laboratory trial batch or field test data methods according to ACI 211.1, with materials to be used on Project, to provide normal-weight concrete with the following properties:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength (28 Days): 5000 psi.
2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.45.

E. Water Absorption: Limit water absorption to 6 percent by weight or 14 percent by volume, tested according to ASTM C 642, except for boiling requirement.

F. Add air-entraining admixture at manufacturer's prescribed rate to result in concrete at point of placement having an air content complying with PCI MNL 116.

G. When included in design mixtures, add other admixtures to concrete mixtures according to manufacturer's written instructions.

H. Concrete Mix Adjustments: Concrete mix design adjustments may be proposed if characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant.

2.10 FABRICATION

A. Cast-in Anchors, Inserts, Plates, Angles, and Other Anchorage Hardware: Fabricate anchorage hardware with sufficient anchorage and embedment to comply with design requirements. Accurately position for attachment of loose hardware, and secure in place during precasting operations. Locate anchorage hardware where it does not affect position of main reinforcement or concrete placement.

1. Weld-headed studs and deformed bar anchors used for anchorage according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS C5.4, "Recommended Practices for Stud Welding."

B. Furnish loose hardware items including steel plates, clip angles, seat angles, anchors, dowels, cramps, hangers, and other hardware shapes for securing precast structural concrete units to supporting and adjacent construction.

C. Cast-in reglets, slots, holes, and other accessories in precast structural concrete units as indicated on the Contract Drawings.

D. Cast-in openings larger than 10 inches (250 mm) in any dimension. Do not drill or cut openings or prestressing strand without Architect's approval.

E. Reinforcement: Comply with recommendations in PCI MNL 116 for fabricating, placing, and supporting reinforcement.

F. Reinforce precast structural concrete units to resist handling, transportation, and erection stresses and specified in-place loads.

G. Prestress tendons for precast structural concrete units by either pretensioning or post-tensioning methods. Comply with PCI MNL 116.

H. Comply with requirements in PCI MNL 116 and in this Section for measuring, mixing, transporting, and placing concrete. After concrete batching, no additional water may be added.

I. Place concrete in a continuous operation to prevent cold joints or planes of weakness from forming in precast concrete units.

J. Thoroughly consolidate placed concrete by vibration without dislocating or damaging reinforcement and built-in items, and minimize pour lines, honeycombing, or entrapped air voids on surfaces. Use equipment and procedures complying with PCI MNL 116.

K. Comply with PCI MNL 116 procedures for hot- and cold-weather concrete placement.

L. Identify pickup points of precast structural concrete units and orientation in structure with permanent markings, complying with markings indicated on Shop Drawings. Imprint or permanently mark casting date on each precast structural concrete unit on a surface that does not show in finished structure.

M. Cure concrete, according to requirements in PCI MNL 116, by moisture retention without heat or by accelerated heat curing using live steam or radiant heat and moisture. Cure units until compressive strength is high enough to ensure that stripping does not have an effect on performance or appearance of final product.

N. Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including structural, manufacturing tolerance, and appearance, unless repairs meet requirements in PCI MNL 116 and meet Architect's approval.

2.11 FABRICATION TOLERANCES

A. Fabricate precast structural concrete units to shapes, lines, and dimensions indicated so each finished unit complies with PCI MNL 116 product dimension tolerances as well as position tolerances for cast-in items.

2.12 FINISHES

A. Exposed faces shall be free of joint marks, grain, and other obvious defects. Corners, including false joints shall be uniform, straight, and sharp. Finish exposed-face surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match approved sample panels and as follows:

1. Smooth-Surface Finish: Provide surfaces to match approved sample for acceptable surface. Surfaces shall be free of excessive air voids, sand streaks, and honeycombs.

    a. Grade B Finish: Fill air pockets and holes larger than 1/4 inch in diameter with sand-cement paste matching color of adjacent surfaces. Fill air holes greater than 1/8 inch in width that occur more than once per 2 sq. in. Grind smooth form offsets or fins larger than 1/8 inch. Repair surface blemishes due to holes or dents in molds. Discoloration at form joints is permitted. Major imperfections, honeycombing, or defects are not permitted.

2. Textured-Surface Finish: Impart by form liners or inserts.

B. Finish exposed top and back surfaces of architectural precast concrete units to match face-surface finish.

C. Finish unexposed surfaces of architectural precast concrete units with as cast finish.

D. Smooth, steel trowel finish unformed surfaces. Consolidate concrete, bring to proper level with straightedge, float, and trowel to a smooth, uniform finish.

E. Apply roughened surface finish according to ACI 318 to precast concrete units that receive concrete topping after installation.

2.13 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Test and inspect precast structural concrete according to PCI MNL 116 requirements and ASTM C 1610/C 1610M, ASTM C 1611/C 1611M, ASTM C 1621/C 1621M, and ASTM C 1712/C 1712M.

B. Defective Units: Discard and replace precast structural concrete units that do not comply with requirements, including strength, manufacturing tolerances, and color and texture range. Chipped, spalled, or cracked units may be repaired, subject to Architect's approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install clips, hangers, bearing pads, and other accessories required for connecting precast structural concrete units to supporting members and backup materials.

B. Erect precast structural concrete level, plumb, and square within specified allowable tolerances. Provide temporary structural framing, shoring, and bracing as required to maintain position, stability, and alignment of units until permanent connections are complete.

1. Maintain horizontal and vertical joint alignment and uniform joint width as erection progresses.
2. Remove projecting lifting devices and use plastic patch caps or sand-cement grout to fill voids within recessed lifting devices flush with surface of adjacent precast surfaces when recess is exposed.
3. For hollow-core slab voids used as electrical raceways or mechanical ducts, align voids between units and tape butt joint at end of slabs.

C. Connect precast structural concrete units in position by bolting, welding, grouting, or as otherwise indicated on Shop Drawings. Remove temporary shims, wedges, and spacers as soon as practical after connecting and grouting are completed.

D. Field cutting of precast units is not permitted without approval of Delegated Engineer.

E. Fasteners: Do not use drilled or powder-actuated fasteners for attaching accessory items to precast, prestressed concrete units.

F. Welding: Comply with applicable requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M and AWS D1.4/D1.4M for welding, welding electrodes, appearance, quality of welds, and methods used in correcting welding work.

G. At bolted connections, use lock washers, tack welding, or other approved means to prevent loosening of nuts after final adjustment.

H. Grouting or Dry-Packing Connections and Joints: Grout connections and joints and open spaces at keyways, connections, and joints where required or indicated on Shop Drawings. Retain flowable grout in place until hard enough to support itself. Alternatively, pack spaces with stiff dry-pack grout material, tamping until voids are completely filled.

3.2 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erect precast structural concrete units level, plumb, square, and in alignment without exceeding the noncumulative erection tolerances of PCI MNL 135.

B. Minimize variations between adjacent slab members by jacking, loading, or other method recommended by fabricator and approved by Architect.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: For requirements refer to Division 1 Section 01 40 00 “Special Inspection Plan”.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Visually inspect field welds and test according to ASTM E 165 or to ASTM E 709 and ASTM E 1444. High-strength bolted connections are subject to inspections.

D. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

E. Repair or remove and replace work where tests and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

F. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, shall be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 REPAIRS

A. Repair precast structural concrete units if permitted by Architect.

1. Repairs may be permitted if structural adequacy, serviceability, durability, and appearance of units have not been impaired.

B. Mix patching materials and repair units so cured patches blend with color, texture, and uniformity of adjacent exposed surfaces and show no apparent line of demarcation between original and repaired work, when viewed in typical daylight illumination from a distance of 20 feet.

C. Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings with galvanizing repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M.

D. Wire brush, clean, and paint damaged prime-painted components with same type of shop primer.

E. Remove and replace damaged precast structural concrete units that cannot be repaired or when repairs do not comply with requirements as determined by Architect.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean mortar, plaster, fireproofing, weld slag, and other deleterious material from concrete surfaces and adjacent materials immediately.

B. Clean exposed surfaces of precast concrete units after erection and completion of joint treatment to remove weld marks, other markings, dirt, and stains.

1. Perform cleaning procedures, if necessary, according to precast concrete fabricator's written recommendations. Protect other work from staining or damage due to cleaning operations.
2. Do not use cleaning materials or processes that could change the appearance of exposed concrete finishes or damage adjacent materials.

END OF SECTION 03 41 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 04 20 00 - UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For reinforcing steel. Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For each type and size of product. For masonry units, include data on material properties and material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.

B. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test according to ASTM C 109/C 109M for compressive strength, ASTM C 1506 for water retention, and ASTM C 91/C 91M for air content.
2. Include test reports, according to ASTM C 1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6, except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.

C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.

1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units shall be listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.2 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.

B. CMUs: ASTM C 90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength of 1900 psi.
2. Density Classification: Normal weight unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 CONCRETE LINTELS

A. Concrete Lintels: ASTM C 1623, matching CMUs in color, texture, and density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated.

2.4 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C 207, Type S.

C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

D. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C 144.

1. For joints less than 1/4-inch thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 sieve.
2. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
3. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

E. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C 404.

F. Epoxy Pointing Mortar: ASTM C 395, epoxy-resin-based material formulated for use as pointing mortar for glazed or pre-faced masonry units (and approved for such use by manufacturer of units); in color indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, as selected by Architect from manufacturer's colors.

G. Water: Potable.

2.5 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated-Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M or ASTM A 996/A 996M, Grade 60.

B. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: ASTM A 951/A 951M.

1. Interior Walls: Mill galvanized carbon steel.
2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: 0.148-inch diameter.
5. Spacing of Cross Rods, Tabs, and Cross Ties: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet, with prefabricated corner and tee units.

C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement for Single-Wythe Masonry: Ladder or truss type with single pair of side rods.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D 1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from PVC.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from PVC, complying with ASTM D 2287, Type PVC-65406 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D 226/D 226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.7 MASONRY CLEANERS

A. Proprietary Acidic Cleaner: Manufacturer's standard-strength cleaner designed for removing mortar/grout stains, efflorescence, and other new construction stains from new masonry without discoloring or damaging masonry surfaces. Use product expressly approved for intended use by cleaner manufacturer and manufacturer of masonry units being cleaned.

2.8 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
2. For reinforced masonry, use portland cement-lime.

B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 270, Proportion Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.

1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
2. For reinforced masonry, use Type M or Type S.

D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C 476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C 476, Table 1 or paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 3000 psi.
3. Provide grout with a slump of 8 to 11 inches measured according to ASTM C 143/C 143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

B. Select and arrange units for exposed unit masonry to produce a uniform blend of colors and textures. Mix units from several pallets or cubes as they are placed.

3.2 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet, or 1/2-inch maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 20 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet, 3/8 inch in 20 feet or 1/2-inch maximum.

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch, with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch.
2. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch or minus 1/4 inch.
3. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch.

3.3 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

C. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

D. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

E. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24-inches under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.4 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay CMUs as follows:

1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

C. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches.

1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches o.c.

2. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches beyond openings.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

3.6 ANCHORING MASONRY TO CONCRETE

A. Anchor masonry to concrete, where masonry abuts or faces concrete, to comply with the following:

1. Provide an open space not less than 1 inch wide between masonry and concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches o.c. vertically.

3.7 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY INSTALLATION

A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.

1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and that of other loads that may be placed on them during construction.

B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.

1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Engage a testing agency to perform tests and prepare reports. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements shall be done at Contractor's expense.

B. For special inspection requirements refer to Division 1 Section 01 40 00 "Special Inspection Plan".

C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. of wall area or portion thereof.

D. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, according to ASTM C 1019.

3.9 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

B. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes.
3. Protect adjacent surfaces from contact with cleaner.
4. Wet wall surfaces with water before applying cleaners; remove cleaners promptly by rinsing surfaces thoroughly with clear water.
5. Clean masonry with a proprietary acidic cleaner applied according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 04 20 00

SECTION 04 22 00 - CONCRETE UNIT MASONRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Concrete masonry units.
2. Mortar and grout.
3. Steel reinforcing bars.
4. Masonry-joint reinforcement.
5. Embedded flashing.
6. Miscellaneous masonry accessories.
7. Masonry-cell fill.

B. Products Installed but not Furnished under This Section:

1. Cast-stone trim in concrete unit masonry.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for installing anchor sections of adjustable masonry anchors for connecting to structural steel frame.
2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for exposed sheet metal flashing and for furnishing manufactured reglets installed in masonry joints.
3. Section 08 95 16 "Wall Vents" for wall vents (brick vents).

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. CMU(s): Concrete masonry unit(s).

B. Reinforced Masonry: Masonry containing reinforcing steel in grouted cells.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For the following:

1. Masonry Units: Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of special shapes.
2. Reinforcing Steel: Detail bending, lap lengths, and placement of unit masonry reinforcing bars. Comply with ACI 315. Show elevations of reinforced walls.
3. Fabricated Flashing: Detail corner units, end-dam units, and other special applications.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Material Certificates: For each type and size of the following:

1. Masonry units.

a. Include data on material properties, material test reports substantiating compliance with requirements.
b. For masonry units used in structural masonry, include data and calculations establishing average net-area compressive strength of units.

2. Integral water repellant used in CMUs.
3. Cementitious materials. Include name of manufacturer, brand name, and type.
4. Mortar admixtures.
5. Preblended, dry mortar mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
6. Grout mixes. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.
7. Reinforcing bars.
8. Joint reinforcement.
9. Anchors, ties, and metal accessories.

C. Mix Designs: For each type of mortar and grout. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

1. Include test reports for mortar mixes required to comply with property specification. Test in accordance with ASTM C109/C109M for compressive strength, ASTM C1506 for water retention, and ASTM C91/C91M for air content.
2. Include test reports, in accordance with ASTM C1019, for grout mixes required to comply with compressive strength requirement.

D. Statement of Compressive Strength of Masonry: For each combination of masonry unit type and mortar type, provide statement of average net-area compressive strength of masonry units, mortar type, and resulting net-area compressive strength of masonry determined in accordance with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

E. Cold-Weather and Hot-Weather Procedures: Detailed description of methods, materials, and equipment to be used to comply with requirements.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1093 for testing indicated.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store masonry units on elevated platforms in a dry location. If units are not stored in an enclosed location, cover tops and sides of stacks with waterproof sheeting, securely tied. If units become wet, do not install until they are dry.

B. Store cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location. Do not use cementitious materials that have become damp.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination avoided.

D. Deliver preblended, dry mortar mix in moisture-resistant containers. Store preblended, dry mortar mix in delivery containers on elevated platforms in a dry location or in covered weatherproof dispensing silos.

E. Store masonry accessories, including metal items, to prevent corrosion and accumulation of dirt and oil.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Protection of Masonry: During construction, cover tops of walls, projections, and sills with waterproof sheeting at end of each day's work. Cover partially completed masonry when construction is not in progress.

1. Extend cover a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm) down both sides of walls, and hold cover securely in place.

B. Do not apply uniform floor or roof loads for at least 12 hours and concentrated loads for at least three days after building masonry walls or columns.

C. Stain Prevention: Prevent grout, mortar, and soil from staining the face of masonry to be left exposed or painted. Immediately remove grout, mortar, and soil that come in contact with such masonry.

1. Protect base of walls from rain-splashed mud and from mortar splatter by spreading coverings on ground and over wall surface.
2. Protect sills, ledges, and projections from mortar droppings.

3. Protect surfaces of window and door frames, as well as similar products with painted and integral finishes, from mortar droppings.
4. Turn scaffold boards near the wall on edge at the end of each day to prevent rain from splashing mortar and dirt onto completed masonry.

D. Cold-Weather Requirements: Do not use frozen materials or materials mixed or coated with ice or frost. Do not build on frozen substrates. Remove and replace unit masonry damaged by frost or by freezing conditions. Comply with cold-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

1. Cold-Weather Cleaning: Use liquid cleaning methods only when air temperature is 40 deg F (4 deg C) and higher and will remain so until masonry has dried, but not less than seven days after completing cleaning.

E. Hot-Weather Requirements: Comply with hot-weather construction requirements contained in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations for Masonry Units: Obtain exposed masonry units of a uniform texture and color, or a uniform blend within the ranges accepted for these characteristics, from single source from single manufacturer for each product required.

B. Source Limitations for Mortar Materials: Obtain mortar ingredients of a uniform quality, including color for exposed masonry, from single manufacturer for each cementitious component and from single source or producer for each aggregate.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Provide structural unit masonry that develops indicated net-area compressive strengths at 28 days.

1. Determine net-area compressive strength of masonry from average net-area compressive strengths of masonry units and mortar types (unit-strength method) in accordance with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

2.3 UNIT MASONRY, GENERAL

A. Masonry Standard: Comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 except as modified by requirements in the Contract Documents.

B. Defective Units: Referenced masonry unit standards may allow a certain percentage of units to contain chips, cracks, or other defects exceeding limits stated. Do not use units where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.

C. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with requirements for fire-resistance-rated assembly designs indicated.

1. Where fire-resistance-rated construction is indicated, units are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 CONCRETE MASONRY UNITS

A. Shapes: Provide shapes indicated and as follows, with exposed surfaces matching exposed faces of adjacent units unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide special shapes for lintels, corners, jambs, sashes, movement joints, headers, bonding, and other special conditions.
2. Provide square-edged units for outside corners unless otherwise indicated.

B. Integral Water Repellent: Provide units made with integral water repellent for exposed units.

1. Integral Water Repellent: Liquid polymeric, integral water-repellent admixture that does not reduce flexural bond strength. Units made with integral water repellent, when tested in accordance with ASTM E514/E514M as a wall assembly made with mortar containing integral water-repellent manufacturer's mortar additive, with test period extended to 24 hours, show no visible water or leaks on the back of test specimen.

C. CMUs: ASTM C90.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Provide units with minimum average net-area compressive strength as indicated on Drawings.
2. Density Classification: Normal weight.
3. Size (Width): Manufactured to dimensions 3/8 inch (10 mm) less-than-nominal dimensions.

D. Concrete Building Brick: ASTM C55.

1. Unit Compressive Strength: Reference specification 042613 Masonry Veneer.

2.5 CONCRETE AND MASONRY LINTELS

A. General: Provide one of the following:

B. Concrete Lintels Matching CMU in Color, Texture: ASTM C1623, matching density classification; and with reinforcing bars indicated. Provide lintels with net-area compressive strength not less than that of CMUs.

C. Precast or Formed-in-Place Concrete Lintels: Precast or formed-in-place concrete lintels complying with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-In-Place Concrete," and with reinforcing bars indicated.

D. Masonry Lintels: Prefabricated or built-in-place masonry lintels made from bond beam CMUs matching adjacent CMUs in color, texture, and density classification, with reinforcing bars placed as indicated and filled with coarse grout. Cure precast lintels before handling and installing. Temporarily support built-in-place lintels until cured.

2.6 MORTAR AND GROUT MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or II, except Type III may be used for cold-weather construction. Provide natural color or white cement as required to produce mortar color indicated.

1. Alkali content is not more than 0.1 percent when tested in accordance with ASTM C114.

B. Hydrated Lime: ASTM C207, Type S.

C. Portland Cement-Lime Mix: Packaged blend of portland cement and hydrated lime containing no other ingredients.

D. Masonry Cement: ASTM C91/C91M.

E. Mortar Cement: ASTM C1329/C1329M.

F. Aggregate for Mortar: ASTM C144.

1. For mortar that is exposed to view, use washed aggregate consisting of natural sand or crushed stone.
2. For joints less than 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, use aggregate graded with 100 percent passing the No. 16 (1.18-mm) sieve.
3. White-Mortar Aggregates: Natural white sand or crushed white stone.
4. Colored-Mortar Aggregates: Natural sand or crushed stone of color necessary to produce required mortar color.

G. Aggregate for Grout: ASTM C404.

H. Cold-Weather Admixture: Nonchloride, noncorrosive, accelerating admixture complying with ASTM C494/C494M, Type C, and recommended by manufacturer for use in masonry mortar of composition indicated.

I. Water-Repellent Admixture: Liquid water-repellent mortar admixture intended for use with CMUs containing integral water repellent from same manufacturer.

J. Water: Potable.

2.7 REINFORCEMENT

A. Uncoated Steel Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A615/A615M or ASTM A996/A996M, Grade 60 (Grade 420).

B. Reinforcing Bar Positioners: Wire units designed to fit into mortar bed joints spanning masonry unit cells and to hold reinforcing bars in center of cells. Units are formed from 0.148-inch (3.77-mm) steel wire, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication. Provide units designed for number of bars indicated.

C. Masonry-Joint Reinforcement, General: Ladder type complying with ASTM A951/A951M.

1. Interior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
2. Exterior Walls: Hot-dip galvanized carbon steel.
3. Wire Size for Side Rods: **0.187-inch (4.76-mm)** diameter.
4. Wire Size for Cross Rods: **0.148-inch (3.77-mm)** diameter.
5. Spacing of Cross Rods: Not more than 16 inches (407 mm) o.c.
6. Provide in lengths of not less than 10 feet (3 m), with prefabricated corner and tee units.

2.8 TIES AND ANCHORS

A. General: Ties and anchors extend at least 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) into masonry but with at least a 5/8-inch (16-mm) cover on outside face.

B. Materials: Provide ties and anchors specified in this article that are made from materials that comply with the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Mill-Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 coating.
2. Hot-Dip Galvanized, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A82/A82M, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B-2 coating.
3. Stainless Steel Wire: ASTM A580/A580M, Type 316.

4. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, Commercial Steel, G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
5. Steel Sheet, Galvanized after Fabrication: ASTM A1008/A1008M, Commercial Steel, with ASTM A153/A153M, Class B coating.
6. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 316.
7. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

C. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Structural Steel Framing: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.
1. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel or stainless steel wire.

D. Adjustable Anchors for Connecting to Concrete: Provide anchors that allow vertical or horizontal adjustment but resist tension and compression forces perpendicular to plane of wall.

1. Tie Section: Triangular-shaped wire tie made from **0.187-inch- (4.76-mm-)** diameter, hot-dip galvanized steel or stainless steel wire.
2. Corrugated-Metal Ties: Metal strips not less than 7/8 inch (22 mm) wide with corrugations having a wavelength of 0.3 to 0.5 inch (7.6 to 12.7 mm) and an amplitude of 0.06 to 0.10 inch (1.5 to 2.5 mm) made from **0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) thick steel sheet, galvanized after fabrication** with dovetail tabs for inserting into dovetail slots in concrete.

    a. **0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-)** thick, galvanized sheet may be used at interior walls unless otherwise indicated.

E. Partition Top Anchors: 0.105-inch- (2.66-mm-) thick metal plate with a 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) diameter metal rod 6 inches (152 mm) long welded to plate and with closed-end plastic tube fitted over rod that allows rod to move in and out of tube. Fabricate from steel, hot-dip galvanized after fabrication or stainless steel.

F. Rigid Anchors: Fabricate from steel bars 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) wide by 1/4 inch (6.35 mm) thick by 24 inches (610 mm) long, with ends turned up 2 inches (51 mm) or with cross pins unless otherwise indicated.

1. Corrosion Protection: Hot-dip galvanized to comply with ASTMA 153/A153M.

2.9 EMBEDDED FLASHING MATERIALS

A. Metal Flashing: Provide metal flashing complying with SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" and as follows:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, 0.016 inch (0.40 mm) thick.
2. Copper: ASTM B370, Temper H00, cold-rolled copper sheet, 16-oz./sq. ft. (4.9-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0216 inch (0.55 mm) thick or ASTM B370, Temper H01, high-yield copper sheet, 12-oz./sq. ft. (3.7-kg/sq. m) weight or 0.0162 inch (0.41 mm) thick.
3. Fabricate continuous flashings in sections 96 inches (2400 mm) long minimum, but not exceeding 12 feet (3.7 m). Provide splice plates at joints of formed, smooth metal flashing.
4. Fabricate through-wall metal flashing embedded in masonry from **stainless steel**, with ribs at 3-inch (76-mm) intervals along length of flashing to provide an integral mortar bond.
5. Fabricate through-wall flashing with snaplock receiver on exterior face where indicated to receive counterflashing.
6. Fabricate through-wall flashing with drip edge **unless otherwise** indicated. Fabricate by extending flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees **and hemmed**.
7. Fabricate through-wall flashing with sealant stop **unless otherwise** indicated. Fabricate by bending metal back on itself 3/4 inch (19 mm) at exterior face of wall and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
8. Fabricate metal [**drip edges**] [**and**] [**sealant stops**] for ribbed metal flashing from plain metal flashing of same metal as ribbed flashing and extending at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall with hemmed inner edge to receive ribbed flashing and form a hooked seam. Form hem on upper surface of metal so that completed seam sheds water.
9. Fabricate metal drip edges from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and 1/2 inch (13 mm) out from wall, with outer edge bent down 30 degrees **and hemmed**.
10. Fabricate metal sealant stops from stainless steel. Extend at least 3 inches (76 mm) into wall and out to exterior face of wall. At exterior face of wall, bend metal back on itself for 3/4 inch (19 mm) and down into joint 1/4 inch (6 mm) to form a stop for retaining sealant backer rod.
11. Fabricate metal expansion-joint strips from **stainless steel** to shapes indicated.
12. Solder metal items at corners.

B. Application: Unless otherwise indicated, use the following:

1. Where flashing is indicated to receive counterflashing, use metal flashing.
2. Where flashing is indicated to be turned down at or beyond the wall face, use metal flashing.
3. Where flashing is partly exposed and is indicated to terminate at the wall face, use metal flashing **with a drip edge and a sealant stop, or elastomeric thermoplastic flashing with a drip edge**.

4. Where flashing is fully concealed, use **metal flashing**.

C. Single-Wythe CMU Flashing System: System of CMU cell flashing pans and interlocking CMU web covers made from UV-resistant, high-density polyethylene. Cell flashing pans have integral weep spouts designed to be built into mortar bed joints and that extend into the cell to prevent clogging with mortar.

D. Revise "Elastomeric Sealant" Subparagraph below if sealant of specific type, grade, class, and use is required.
1. Elastomeric Sealant: ASTM C920, chemically curing **urethane** sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in sheet metal flashing and remain watertight.

E. Adhesives, Primers, and Seam Tapes for Flashings: Flashing manufacturer's standard products or products recommended by flashing manufacturer for bonding flashing sheets to each other and to substrates.

2.10 MISCELLANEOUS MASONRY ACCESSORIES

A. Compressible Filler: Premolded filler strips complying with ASTM D1056, Grade 2A1; compressible up to 35 percent; of width and thickness indicated; formulated from neoprene, urethane or PVC.

B. Preformed Control-Joint Gaskets: Made from styrene-butadiene-rubber compound, complying with ASTM D2000, Designation M2AA-805 and designed to fit standard sash block and to maintain lateral stability in masonry wall; size and configuration as indicated.

C. Bond-Breaker Strips: Asphalt-saturated felt complying with ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt).

2.11 MORTAR AND GROUT MIXES

A. General: Do not use admixtures, including pigments, air-entraining agents, accelerators, retarders, water-repellent agents, antifreeze compounds, or other admixtures unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not use calcium chloride in mortar or grout.
2. Use portland cement-lime or masonry cement mortar unless otherwise indicated.
3. Add cold-weather admixture (if used) at same rate for all mortar that will be exposed to view, regardless of weather conditions, to ensure that mortar color is consistent.

B. Preblended, Dry Mortar Mix: Furnish dry mortar ingredients in form of a preblended mix. Measure quantities by weight to ensure accurate proportions, and thoroughly blend ingredients before delivering to Project site.

C. Mortar for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C270, Proportion/Property Specification. Provide the following types of mortar for applications stated unless another type is indicated.

1. For masonry below grade or in contact with earth, use Type M.
2. For reinforced masonry, use Type S.

D. Grout for Unit Masonry: Comply with ASTM C476.

1. Use grout of type indicated or, if not otherwise indicated, of type (fine or coarse) that will comply with TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for dimensions of grout spaces and pour height.
2. Proportion grout in accordance with ASTM C476, paragraph 4.2.2 for specified 28-day compressive strength indicated, but not less than 3000 psi.
3. Provide grout with a slump of **8 to 11 inches (200 to 280 mm)** as measured in accordance with ASTM C143/C143M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. For the record, prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.
2. Verify that foundations are within tolerances specified.
3. Verify that reinforcing dowels are properly placed.
4. Verify that substrates are free of substances that would impair mortar bond.

B. Before installation, examine rough-in and built-in construction for piping systems to verify actual locations of piping.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Build chases and recesses to accommodate items specified in this and other Sections.

B. Leave openings for equipment to be installed before completing masonry. After installing equipment, complete masonry to match construction immediately adjacent to opening.

C. Use full-size units without cutting if possible. If cutting is required to provide a continuous pattern or to fit adjoining construction, cut units with motor-driven saws; provide clean, sharp, unchipped edges. Allow units to dry before laying unless wetting of units is specified. Install cut units with cut surfaces and, where possible, cut edges concealed.

3.3 TOLERANCES

A. Dimensions and Locations of Elements:

1. For dimensions in cross section or elevation, do not vary by more than plus 1/2 inch (12 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
2. For location of elements in plan, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/2 inch (12 mm).
3. For location of elements in elevation, do not vary from that indicated by more than plus or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm) in a story height or 1/2 inch (12 mm) total.

B. Lines and Levels:

1. For bed joints and top surfaces of bearing walls, do not vary from level by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
2. For conspicuous horizontal lines, such as lintels, sills, parapets, and reveals, do not vary from level by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
3. For vertical lines and surfaces do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
4. For conspicuous vertical lines, such as external corners, door jambs, reveals, and expansion and control joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/8 inch in 10 feet (3 mm in 3 m), 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
5. For lines and surfaces, do not vary from straight by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), 3/8 inch in 20 feet (9 mm in 6 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
6. For vertical alignment of exposed head joints, do not vary from plumb by more than 1/4 inch in 10 feet (6 mm in 3 m), or 1/2-inch (12-mm) maximum.
7. For faces of adjacent exposed masonry units, do not vary from flush alignment by more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm).

C. Joints:

1. For bed joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm), with a maximum thickness limited to 1/2 inch (12 mm).
2. For exposed bed joints, do not vary from bed-joint thickness of adjacent courses by more than 1/8 inch (3 mm).
3. For head and collar joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus 3/8 inch (9 mm) or minus 1/4 inch (6 mm).
4. For exposed head joints, do not vary from thickness indicated by more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.4 LAYING MASONRY WALLS

A. Lay out walls in advance for accurate spacing of surface bond patterns with uniform joint thicknesses and for accurate location of openings, movement-type joints, returns, and offsets. Avoid using less-than-half-size units, particularly at corners, jambs, and, where possible, at other locations.

B. Bond Pattern for Exposed Masonry: Unless otherwise indicated, lay exposed masonry in running bond; do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

C. Lay concealed masonry with all units in a wythe in running bond or bonded by lapping not less than **4 inches (100 mm)**. Bond and interlock each course of each wythe at corners. Do not use units with less-than-nominal 4-inch (100-mm) horizontal face dimensions at corners or jambs.

D. Stopping and Resuming Work: Stop work by stepping back units in each course from those in course below; do not tooth. When resuming work, clean masonry surfaces that are to receive mortar, remove loose masonry units and mortar, and wet brick if required before laying fresh masonry.

E. Built-in Work: As construction progresses, build in items specified in this and other Sections. Fill in solidly with masonry around built-in items.

F. Fill space between steel frames and masonry solidly with mortar unless otherwise indicated.

G. Where built-in items are to be embedded in cores of hollow masonry units, place a layer of metal lath, wire mesh, or plastic mesh in the joint below, and rod mortar or grout into core.

H. Fill cores in hollow CMUs with grout 24 inches (600 mm) under bearing plates, beams, lintels, posts, and similar items unless otherwise indicated.

3.5 MORTAR BEDDING AND JOINTING

A. Lay hollow CMUs as follows:

1. Bed face shells in mortar and make head joints of depth equal to bed joints.
2. Bed webs in mortar in all courses of piers, columns, and pilasters.
3. Bed webs in mortar in grouted masonry, including starting course on footings.
4. Fully bed entire units, including areas under cells, at starting course on footings where cells are not grouted.

B. Lay solid CMUs with completely filled bed and head joints; butter ends with sufficient mortar to fill head joints and shove into place. Do not deeply furrow bed joints or slush head joints.

C. Set cast-stone trim units in full bed of mortar with full vertical joints. Fill dowel, anchor, and similar holes.

1. Clean soiled surfaces with fiber brush and soap powder and rinse thoroughly with clear water.
2. Wet joint surfaces thoroughly before applying mortar.
3. Rake out mortar joints for pointing with sealant.

D. Rake out mortar joints at pre-faced CMUs to a uniform depth of 1/4 inch (6 mm) and point with epoxy mortar to comply with epoxy-mortar manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Tool exposed joints slightly concave when thumbprint hard, using a jointer larger than joint thickness unless otherwise indicated.

F. Cut joints flush for masonry walls to receive plaster or other direct-applied finishes (other than paint) unless otherwise indicated.

G. Cut joints flush where indicated to receive waterproofing unless otherwise indicated.

3.6 MASONRY-JOINT REINFORCEMENT

A. General: Install entire length of longitudinal side rods in mortar with a minimum cover of 5/8 inch (16 mm) on exterior side of walls, 1/2 inch (13 mm) elsewhere. Lap reinforcement a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

1. Space reinforcement not more than 16 inches (406 mm) o.c.
2. Space reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) o.c. in foundation walls and parapet walls.

3. Provide reinforcement not more than 8 inches (203 mm) above and below wall openings and extending 12 inches (305 mm) beyond openings in addition to continuous reinforcement.

B. Interrupt joint reinforcement at control and expansion joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide continuity at wall intersections by using prefabricated T-shaped units.

D. Provide continuity at corners by using prefabricated L-shaped units.

E. Cut and bend reinforcing units as directed by manufacturer for continuity at corners, returns, offsets, column fireproofing, pipe enclosures, and other special conditions.

3.7 ANCHORING MASONRY TO STRUCTURAL STEEL AND CONCRETE

A. Anchor masonry to structural steel and concrete, where masonry abuts or faces structural steel or concrete, to comply with the following:

1. Provide an open space not less than **1/2 inch (13 mm)** wide between masonry and structural steel or concrete unless otherwise indicated. Keep open space free of mortar and other rigid materials.
2. Anchor masonry with anchors embedded in masonry joints and attached to structure.
3. Space anchors as indicated, but not more than 24 inches (610 mm) o.c. vertically and 36 inches (915 mm) o.c. horizontally.

3.8 CONTROL AND EXPANSION JOINTS

A. General: Install control- and expansion-joint materials in unit masonry as masonry progresses. Do not allow materials to span control and expansion joints without provision to allow for in-plane wall or partition movement.

B. Form control joints in concrete masonry using one of the following methods:

1. Fit bond-breaker strips into hollow contour in ends of CMUs on one side of control joint. Fill resultant core with grout, and rake out joints in exposed faces for application of sealant.
2. Install preformed control-joint gaskets designed to fit standard sash block.
3. Install interlocking units designed for control joints. Install bond-breaker strips at joint. Keep head joints free and clear of mortar, or rake out joint for application of sealant.
4. Install temporary foam-plastic filler in head joints, and remove filler when unit masonry is complete for application of sealant.

3.9 LINTELS

A. Provide lintels where shown and where openings of more than 12 inches (305 mm) for brick-size units and 24 inches (610 mm) for block-size units are shown without structural steel or other supporting lintels.

3.10 FLASHING

A. General: Install embedded flashing at ledges and other obstructions to downward flow of water in wall where indicated.

B. Install flashing as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. Prepare masonry surfaces so they are smooth and free from projections that could puncture flashing. Where flashing is within mortar joint, place through-wall flashing on sloping bed of mortar and cover with mortar. Before covering with mortar, seal penetrations in flashing with adhesive, sealant, or tape **as recommended by flashing manufacturer**.
2. At lintels, extend flashing a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) into masonry at each end. At heads and sills, extend flashing 6 inches (150 mm) at ends and turn up not less than 2 inches (50 mm) to form end dams.
3. Interlock end joints of ribbed sheet metal flashing by overlapping ribs not less than 1-1/2 inches (38 mm) or as recommended by flashing manufacturer, and seal lap with elastomeric sealant complying with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for application indicated.
4. Install metal drip edges beneath flexible flashing at exterior face of wall. Stop flexible flashing 1/2 inch (13 mm) back from outside face of wall, and adhere flexible flashing to top of metal drip edge.

C. Install single-wythe CMU flashing system in bed joints of CMU walls where indicated to comply with manufacturer's written instructions. Install CMU cell pans with upturned edges located below face shells and webs of CMUs above and with weep spouts aligned with face of wall. Install CMU web covers so that they cover upturned edges of CMU cell pans at CMU webs and extend from face shell to face shell.

D. Install reglets and nailers for flashing and other related construction where they are shown to be built into masonry.

3.11 REINFORCED UNIT MASONRY

A. Temporary Formwork and Shores: Construct formwork and shores as needed to support reinforced masonry elements during construction.

1. Construct formwork to provide shape, line, and dimensions of completed masonry as indicated. Make forms sufficiently tight to prevent leakage of mortar and grout. Brace, tie, and support forms to maintain position and shape during construction and curing of reinforced masonry.
2. Do not remove forms and shores until reinforced masonry members have hardened sufficiently to carry their own weight and other loads that may be placed on them during construction.

B. Placing Reinforcement: Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6.

C. Grouting: Do not place grout until entire height of masonry to be grouted has attained enough strength to resist grout pressure.

1. Comply with requirements in TMS 602/ACI 530.1/ASCE 6 for cleanouts and for grout placement, including minimum grout space and maximum pour height.
2. Limit height of vertical grout pours to not more than 60 inches (1520 mm).

3.12 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing and Inspecting: Owner will engage special inspectors to perform tests and inspections and prepare reports. Allow inspectors access to scaffolding and work areas as needed to perform tests and inspections. Retesting of materials that fail to comply with specified requirements is done at Contractor's expense.

B. Inspections: Special inspections in accordance with Level indicated on Drawings in TMS 402/ACI 530/ASCE 5.

1. Begin masonry construction only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared mortar.
2. Place grout only after inspectors have verified compliance of grout spaces and of grades, sizes, and locations of reinforcement.
3. Place grout only after inspectors have verified proportions of site-prepared grout.

C. Testing Frequency: One set of tests for each 5000 sq. ft. (464 sq. m) of wall area or portion thereof.

D. Mortar Aggregate Ratio Test (Proportion Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780.

E. Mortar Test (Property Specification): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C780. Test mortar for mortar air content and compressive strength.

F. Grout Test (Compressive Strength): For each mix provided, in accordance with ASTM C1019.

3.13 REPAIRING, POINTING, AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace masonry units that are loose, chipped, broken, stained, or otherwise damaged or that do not match adjoining units. Install new units to match adjoining units; install in fresh mortar, pointed to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Pointing: During the tooling of joints, enlarge voids and holes, except weep holes, and completely fill with mortar. Point up joints, including corners, openings, and adjacent construction, to provide a neat, uniform appearance. Prepare joints for sealant application, where indicated.

C. In-Progress Cleaning: Clean unit masonry as work progresses by dry brushing to remove mortar fins and smears before tooling joints.

D. Final Cleaning: After mortar is thoroughly set and cured, clean exposed masonry as follows:

1. Remove large mortar particles by hand with wooden paddles and nonmetallic scrape hoes or chisels.
2. Test cleaning methods on sample wall panel; leave one-half of panel uncleaned for comparison purposes. Obtain Architect's approval of sample cleaning before proceeding with cleaning of masonry.
3. Clean concrete masonry by applicable cleaning methods indicated in NCMA TEK 8-4A.

3.14 MASONRY WASTE DISPOSAL

A. Salvageable Materials: Unless otherwise indicated, excess masonry materials are Contractor's property. At completion of unit masonry work, remove from Project site.

B. Masonry Waste Recycling: Return broken CMUs not used as fill to manufacturer for recycling.

C. Excess Masonry Waste: Remove excess clean masonry waste that cannot be used as fill, as described above or recycled, and other masonry waste, and legally dispose of off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 04 22 00

SECTION 05 12 00 - STRUCTURAL STEEL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Structural steel.
2. Field-installed shear connectors.
3. Grout.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 12 13 "Architecturally Exposed Structural Steel Framing" for additional requirements for architecturally exposed structural steel.
2. Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking" for field installation of shear connectors through deck.
3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for miscellaneous steel fabrications and other steel items not defined as structural steel.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Structural Steel: Elements of the structural frame indicated on Drawings and as described in AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorage items to be embedded in or attached to other construction without delaying the Work. Provide setting diagrams, sheet metal templates, instructions, and directions for installation.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication of structural-steel components.

1. Include details of cuts, connections, splices, camber, holes, and other pertinent data.
2. Include embedment Drawings.
3. Indicate welds by standard AWS symbols, distinguishing between shop and field welds, and show size, length, and type of each weld. Show backing bars that are to be removed and supplemental fillet welds where backing bars are to remain.
4. Indicate type, size, and length of bolts, distinguishing between shop and field bolts. Identify pretensioned and slip-critical, high-strength bolted connections.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, fabricator and testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

D. Product Test Reports: For the following:

1. Bolts, nuts, and washers including mechanical properties and chemical analysis.
2. Direct-tension indicators.
3. Tension-control, high-strength, bolt-nut-washer assemblies.
4. Shear stud connectors.
5. Shop primers.
6. Nonshrink grout.

E. Field quality-control and special inspection reports.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: A qualified fabricator that participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Plant, Category STD.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified installer who participates in the AISC Quality Certification Program and is designated an AISC-Certified Erector, Category ACSE.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Comply with applicable provisions of the following specifications and documents:

1. AISC 303.
2. AISC 360.
3. RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

1. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

B. Store fasteners in a protected place in sealed containers with manufacturer's labels intact.

1. Fasteners may be repackaged provided Owner's testing and inspecting agency observes repackaging and seals containers.
2. Clean and relubricate bolts and nuts that become dry or rusty before use.
3. Comply with manufacturers' written recommendations for cleaning and lubricating ASTM F 1852 fasteners and for retesting fasteners after lubrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STRUCTURAL-STEEL MATERIALS

A. W-Shapes: ASTM A 992/A 992M

B. Channels, Angles: ASTM A 36/A 36M

C. Plate and Bar: ASTM A 36/A 36M

D. Cold-Formed Hollow Structural Sections: ASTM A 500/A 500M, Grade C, structural tubing.

E. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

2.2 BOLTS, CONNECTORS, AND ANCHORS

A. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 325 (ASTM A 325M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts; ASTM A 563, Grade C, (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers; all with plain finish.

1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 325 (ASTM F 959M, Type 8.8), compressible-washer type with plain finish.

B. High-Strength Bolts, Nuts, and Washers: ASTM A 490 (ASTM A 490M), Type 1, heavy-hex steel structural bolts[or tension-control, bolt-nut-washer assemblies with splined ends]; ASTM A 563, Grade DH, (ASTM A 563M, Class 10S) heavy-hex carbon-steel nuts; and ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon-steel washers with plain finish.

1. Direct-Tension Indicators: ASTM F 959, Type 490 (ASTM F 959M, Type 10.9), compressible-washer type with plain finish.

C. Shear Connectors: ASTM A 108, Grades 1015 through 1020, headed-stud type, cold-finished carbon steel; AWS D1.1/D1.1M, Type B.

D. Threaded Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, or as indicated on plans.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Plain

E. Headed Anchor Rods: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, straight, or as indicated on plans.

1. Nuts: ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M) heavy-hex carbon steel.
2. Plate Washers: ASTM A 36/A 36M carbon steel.
3. Washers: ASTM F 436 (ASTM F 436M), Type 1, hardened carbon steel.
4. Finish: Plain

2.3 PRIMER

A. Primer: Fabricator's standard lead- and chromate-free, nonasphaltic, rust-inhibiting primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

B. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

2.4 GROUT

A. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout, noncorrosive and nonstaining, mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

B. Approved Manufacturers:

1. Master Builders, Inc., Cleveland, Ohio.
2. Sika Corporation, Lyndhurst, New Jersey.
3. Five Star Products, Inc., Fairfield, Connecticut.
4. Lambert Corporation, Orlando, Florida.
5. U.S. Grout Corporation, Fairfield, Connecticut.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Structural Steel: Fabricate and assemble in shop to greatest extent possible. Fabricate according to AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges," and to AISC 360.

1. Camber structural-steel members where indicated.
2. Fabricate beams with rolling camber up.
3. Identify high-strength structural steel according to ASTM A 6/A 6M and maintain markings until structural steel has been erected.
4. Mark and match-mark materials for field assembly.
5. Complete structural-steel assemblies, including welding of units, before starting shop-priming operations.

B. Bolt Holes: Cut, drill, or punch standard bolt holes perpendicular to metal surfaces.

C. Finishing: Accurately finish ends of columns and other members transmitting bearing loads.

D. Cleaning: Clean and prepare steel surfaces that are to remain unpainted according to SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

E. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Holes: Provide holes required for securing other work to structural steel and for other work to pass through steel members.

1. Cut, drill, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces. Do not thermally cut bolt holes or enlarge holes by burning.

2. Baseplate Holes: Cut, drill, mechanically thermal cut, or punch holes perpendicular to steel surfaces.
3. Weld threaded nuts to framing and other specialty items indicated to receive other work.

2.6 SHOP CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Shop install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened.

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1Mfor tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Assemble and weld built-up sections by methods that maintain true alignment of axes without exceeding tolerances in AISC 303 for mill material.

2.7 SHOP PRIMING

A. Shop prime steel surfaces except the following:

1. Surfaces embedded in concrete or mortar. Extend priming of partially embedded members to a depth of 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Surfaces to be field welded.
3. Surfaces of high-strength bolted, slip-critical connections.
4. Surfaces to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials (applied fireproofing).
5. Galvanized surfaces.
6. Surfaces enclosed in interior construction.

B. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to be painted. Remove loose rust and mill scale and spatter, slag, or flux deposits. Prepare surfaces according to the following specifications and standards:
1. SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

C. Priming: Immediately after surface preparation, apply primer according to manufacturer's written instructions and at rate recommended by SSPC to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils. Use priming methods that result in full coverage of joints, corners, edges, and exposed surfaces.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.
2. Apply two coats of shop paint to surfaces that are inaccessible after assembly or erection. Change color of second coat to distinguish it from first.

2.8 GALVANIZING

A. Hot-Dip Galvanized Finish: Apply zinc coating by the hot-dip process to structural steel according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

1. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work unless they function as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify, with certified steel erector present, elevations of concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces and locations of anchor rods, bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Provide temporary shores, guys, braces, and other supports during erection to keep structural steel secure, plumb, and in alignment against temporary construction loads and loads equal in intensity to design loads. Remove temporary supports when permanent structural steel, connections, and bracing are in place unless otherwise indicated.

1. Do not remove temporary shoring supporting composite deck construction until cast-in-place concrete has attained its design compressive strength.

3.3 ERECTION

A. Set structural steel accurately in locations and to elevations indicated and according to AISC 303 and AISC 360.

B. Baseplates, Bearing Plates and Leveling Plates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates. Clean bottom surface of plates.

1. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts as required.
2. Weld plate washers to top of baseplate.
3. Snug-tighten anchor rods after supported members have been positioned and plumbed. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.

4. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain. Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

C. Maintain erection tolerances of structural steel within AISC 303, "Code of Standard Practice for Steel Buildings and Bridges."

D. Align and adjust various members that form part of complete frame or structure before permanently fastening. Before assembly, clean bearing surfaces and other surfaces that are in permanent contact with members. Perform necessary adjustments to compensate for discrepancies in elevations and alignment.

1. Level and plumb individual members of structure.
2. Make allowances for difference between temperature at time of erection and mean temperature when structure is completed and in service.

E. Splice members only where indicated.

F. Do not use thermal cutting during erection unless approved by Engineer.

G. Do not enlarge unfair holes in members by burning or using drift pins. Ream holes that must be enlarged to admit bolts.

H. Shear Connectors: Prepare steel surfaces as recommended by manufacturer of shear connectors. Use automatic end welding of headed-stud shear connectors according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.4 FIELD CONNECTIONS

A. High-Strength Bolts: Install high-strength bolts according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts" for type of bolt and type of joint specified.

1. Joint Type: Snug tightened

B. Weld Connections: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M for tolerances, appearances, welding procedure specifications, weld quality, and methods used in correcting welding work.

1. Comply with AISC 303 and AISC 360 for bearing, alignment, adequacy of temporary connections, and removal of paint on surfaces adjacent to field welds.
2. Remove backing bars or runoff tabs where indicated, back gouge, and grind steel smooth.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the inspections specified in the Threshold Inspection Plan.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Bolted Connections: Inspect and test bolted connections according to RCSC's "Specification for Structural Joints Using ASTM A 325 or A 490 Bolts." Test and a minimum 10% of high strength bolts for proper tensioning.

D. Welded Connections: Visually inspect all field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

1. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect a minimum 10% of full penetration field welds according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M and the following inspection procedures, at testing agency's option:
   a. Ultrasonic Inspection: ASTM E 164.

E. In addition to visual inspection, test and inspect field-welded shear connectors according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M for stud welding and as follows:

1. Perform bend tests if visual inspections reveal either a less-than-continuous 360-degree flash or welding repairs to any shear connector.
2. Conduct tests according to requirements in AWS D1.1/D1.1M on additional shear connectors if weld fracture occurs on shear connectors already tested.

3.6 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean areas where galvanizing is damaged or missing and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

B. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean exposed areas where primer is damaged or missing and paint with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Clean and prepare surfaces by SSPC-SP 2 hand-tool cleaning or SSPC-SP 3 power-tool cleaning.

END OF SECTION 05 12 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 31 00 - STEEL DECKING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Roof deck.
2. Composite floor deck.
3. Noncomposite form deck.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight and lightweight structural concrete fill over steel deck.
2. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop- and field-welded shear connectors.
3. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for framing deck openings with miscellaneous steel shapes.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of deck, accessory, and product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout and types of deck panels, anchorage details, reinforcing channels, pans, cut deck openings, special jointing, accessories, and attachments to other construction.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of steel deck.

C. Product Test Reports: For tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating that each of the following complies with requirements:

1. Power-actuated mechanical fasteners.

D. Evaluation Reports: For steel deck, from ICC-ES.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect steel deck from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling.

B. Stack steel deck on platforms or pallets and slope to provide drainage. Protect with a waterproof covering and ventilate to avoid condensation.

1. Protect and ventilate acoustical cellular roof deck with factory-installed insulation to maintain insulation free of moisture.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. AISI Specifications: Comply with calculated structural characteristics of steel deck according to AISI's "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Structural Members."

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 ROOF DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
2. Epic Metals Corporation.
3. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
4. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
5. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group

B. Fabrication of Roof Deck: Fabricate panels, without top-flange stiffening grooves, to comply with SDI RD and with the following:

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
2. Deck Profile: Type WR, wide rib.
3. Profile Depth: As indicated
4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.3 COMPOSITE FLOOR DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
2. Epic Metals Corporation.
3. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
4. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
5. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group

B. Composite Floor Deck: Fabricate panels, with integrally embossed or raised pattern ribs and interlocking side laps, to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Composite Steel Floor Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:

1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 50 (345), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.4 NONCOMPOSITE FORM DECK

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Canam United States; Canam Group Inc.
2. Epic Metals Corporation.
3. Marlyn Steel Decks, Inc.
4. New Millennium Building Systems, LLC.
5. Nucor Corp.; Vulcraft Group

B. Noncomposite Form Deck: Fabricate ribbed-steel sheet noncomposite form-deck panels to comply with "SDI Specifications and Commentary for Noncomposite Steel Form Deck," in SDI Publication No. 31, with the minimum section properties indicated, and with the following:
1. Galvanized-Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Structural Steel (SS), Grade 33 (230), G60 (Z180) zinc coating.
2. Profile Depth: As indicated.
3. Design Uncoated-Steel Thickness: As indicated.
4. Span Condition: Triple span or more.

2.5 ACCESSORIES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard accessory materials for deck that comply with requirements indicated.

B. Mechanical Fasteners:
1. Corrosion-resistant, low-velocity, power-actuated or pneumatically driven carbon-steel fasteners; or self-drilling, self-threading screws.
2. Design and manufacture: Knurled shank with forged ballistic point. Manufacturing process shall ensure steel ductility and prevent development of hydrogen embrittlement.
3. Fastener types:

a. For use with steel bar joist and light structural steel framing supports with top chord or flange thickness 1/8 in. to 3/8 in.:

1. Hilti X-HSN 24 (1/8 in. up to and including 3/8 in.)

b. For use with structural steel framing supports with top flange thickness 1/4 in. or thicker:

1. Hilti X-ENP-19 L15 (1/4 in. or thicker)

C. Side-Lap Fasteners:

1. Design and Manufacture: Hex washer head undercut with reverse serrations; self-piercing or stitch point at center.
2. Fastener Types: Provide the following or approved alternate:

    a. Hilti S-SLC01 M HWH Sidelap Connector (For 20 and 22 gauge deck)
    b. Hilti S-SLC02 M HWH Sidelap Connector (For 16 and 18 gauge deck)

3. Drive mechanical sidelap connectors completely through adjacent lapped roof deck sheets to achieve positive engagement of adjacent sheets with a minimum of three thread penetration.

D. Flexible Closure Strips: Vulcanized, closed-cell, synthetic rubber.

E. Miscellaneous Sheet Metal Deck Accessories: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), not less than 0.0359-inch (0.91-mm) design uncoated thickness, of same material and finish as deck; of profile indicated or required for application.

F. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Steel sheet, minimum yield strength of 33,000 psi (230 MPa), of same material and finish as deck, and of thickness and profile recommended by SDI Publication No. 31 for overhang and slab depth.

G. Column Closures, End Closures, Z-Closures, and Cover Plates: Steel sheet, of same material, finish, and thickness as deck unless otherwise indicated.

H. Weld Washers: Uncoated steel sheet, shaped to fit deck rib, [0.0598 inch (1.52 mm)] [0.0747 inch (1.90 mm)] thick, with factory-punched hole of 3/8-inch (9.5-mm) minimum diameter.

I. Flat Sump Plates: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck. For drains, cut holes in the field.

J. Recessed Sump Pans: Single-piece steel sheet, 0.0747 inch (1.90 mm) thick, of same material and finish as deck, with 3-inch- (76-mm-) wide flanges and level recessed pans of 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) minimum depth. For drains, cut holes in the field.

K. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M

L. Repair Paint: Manufacturer's standard rust-inhibitive primer of same color as primer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine supporting frame and field conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install deck panels and accessories according to applicable specifications and commentary in SDI Publication No. 31, manufacturer's written instructions, and requirements in this Section.

B. Install temporary shoring before placing deck panels if required to meet deflection limitations.

C. Locate deck bundles to prevent overloading of supporting members.

D. Place deck panels on supporting frame and adjust to final position with ends accurately aligned and bearing on supporting frame before being permanently fastened. Do not stretch or contract side-lap interlocks.

E. Place deck panels flat and square and fasten to supporting frame without warp or deflection.

F. Cut and neatly fit deck panels and accessories around openings and other work projecting through or adjacent to deck.

G. Provide additional reinforcement and closure pieces at openings as required for strength, continuity of deck, and support of other work.

H. Comply with AWS requirements and procedures for manual shielded metal arc welding, appearance and quality of welds, and methods used for correcting welding work.

I. Mechanical fasteners may be used in lieu of welding to fasten deck. Locate mechanical fasteners and install according to deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ROOF-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten roof-deck panels to steel supporting members with approved mechanical fasteners. Install fasteners at the spacing and pattern indicated on the drawings.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports with approved mechanical fasteners at the spacing and pattern indicated on the drawings, and at intervals not exceeding the lesser of 1/2 of the span or 18 inches (457 mm).

C. Roof Sump Pans and Sump Plates: Install over openings provided in roof deck and mechanically fasten flanges to top of deck. Space mechanical fasteners not more than 12 inches (305 mm) apart with at least one fastener at each corner.

D. Miscellaneous Roof-Deck Accessories: Install ridge and valley plates, finish strips, end closures, and reinforcing channels according to deck manufacturer's written instructions. Weld or mechanically fasten to substrate to provide a complete deck installation.

1. Weld cover plates at changes in direction of roof-deck panels unless otherwise indicated.

E. Flexible Closure Strips: Install flexible closure strips over partitions, walls, and where indicated. Install with adhesive according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure complete closure.

3.4 FLOOR-DECK INSTALLATION

A. Fasten floor-deck panels to steel supporting members by arc spot (puddle) welds of the surface diameter indicated and as follows:

1. Weld Diameter: 5/8 inch, nominal.
2. Weld Spacing: Space and locate welds as indicated on the drawings.

B. Side-Lap and Perimeter Edge Fastening: Fasten side laps and perimeter edges of panels between supports at the spacing and pattern indicated on the drawings and at intervals not exceeding the lesser of one-half of the span or 36 inches (914 mm), and as follows:

1. Mechanically fasten with self-drilling, No. 12 diameter or larger, carbon-steel screws.

C. Pour Stops and Girder Fillers: Weld steel sheet pour stops and girder fillers to supporting structure according to SDI recommendations unless otherwise indicated.

D. Floor-Deck Closures: Weld steel sheet column closures, cell closures, and Z-closures to deck, according to SDI recommendations, to provide tight-fitting closures at open ends of ribs and sides of deck.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Field welds will be subject to inspection.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on both surfaces of deck with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 05 31 00

SECTION 05 40 00 - COLD-FORMED METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior non-load-bearing wall framing.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include layout, spacings, sizes, thicknesses, and types of cold-formed steel framing; fabrication; and fastening and anchorage details, including mechanical fasteners.
2. Indicate reinforcing channels, opening framing, supplemental framing, strapping, bracing, bridging, splices, accessories, connection details, and attachment to adjoining work.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For cold-formed steel framing.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product certificates.

C. Product test reports.

D. Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors and power-actuated fasteners, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Product Tests: Mill certificates or data from a qualified independent testing agency.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. AllSteel & gypsum Products, Inc.
2. Dietrich Metal Framing; a Worthington Industries Company.
3. Nuconsteel; a Nucor company.
4. SCAFCO Corporation.
5. The Steel Network, Inc.
6. United Metal Products, Inc.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design cold-formed steel framing.

B. Structural Performance: Provide cold-formed steel framing capable of withstanding design loads as indicated on the drawings.
1. Design framing systems to provide for movement of framing members located outside the insulated building envelope without damage or overstressing, sheathing failure, connection failure, undue strain on fasteners and anchors, or other detrimental effects when subject to a maximum ambient temperature change of 120 deg F.
2. Design framing system to maintain clearances at openings, to allow for construction tolerances, and to accommodate live load deflection of primary building structure.
3. Design exterior non-load-bearing wall framing to accommodate horizontal deflection without regard for contribution of sheathing materials.

C. Cold-Formed Steel Framing Standards: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, framing shall comply with AISI S100, AISI S200, and the following:

1. Wall Studs: AISI S211.
2. Headers: AISI S212.
3. Lateral Design: AISI S213.

2.3 COLD-FORMED STEEL FRAMING MATERIALS

A. Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated, of grade and coating designation as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60.

B. Steel Sheet for Vertical Deflection Clips: ASTM A 653/A 653M, structural steel, zinc coated, of grade and coating as follows:

1. Grade: As required by structural performance.
2. Coating: G60.

2.4 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL FRAMING

A. Steel Studs: Manufacturer's standard C-shaped steel studs, of web depths indicated, punched, with stiffened flanges, and as follows:

1. Minimum Base-Metal Thickness: 0.0329 inch
2. Flange Width: 1-3/8 inches

B. Steel Track: Manufacturer's standard U-shaped steel track, of web depths indicated, unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, and matching minimum base-metal thickness of steel studs.

C. Vertical Deflection Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of accommodating upward and downward vertical displacement of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web.

D. Single Deflection Track: Manufacturer's single, deep-leg, U-shaped steel track; unpunched, with unstiffened flanges, of web depth to contain studs while allowing free vertical movement, with flanges designed to support horizontal loads and transfer them to the primary structure.

E. Drift Clips: Manufacturer's standard bypass or head clips, capable of isolating wall stud from upward and downward vertical displacement and lateral drift of primary structure through positive mechanical attachment to stud web and structure.

2.5 FRAMING ACCESSORIES

A. Fabricate steel-framing accessories from ASTM A 1003/A 1003M, Structural Grade, Type H, metallic coated steel sheet, of same grade and coating designation used for framing members.

B. Provide accessories of manufacturer's standard thickness and configuration, unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 ANCHORS, CLIPS, AND FASTENERS

A. Steel Shapes and Clips: ASTM A 36/A 36M, zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 123/A 123M.

B. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, threaded carbon-steel, carbon-steel nuts, and flat, hardened-steel washers; zinc coated by hot-dip process according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class C.

C. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with bolts of same basic metal as fastened metal, if visible, unless otherwise indicated; with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as appropriate for the substrate.

1. Uses: Securing cold-formed steel framing to structure.
2. Type: Torque-controlled expansion anchor or adhesive anchor.
3. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
4. Material for Exterior or Interior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593, and nuts, ASTM F 594.

D. Power-Actuated Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

E. Mechanical Fasteners: ASTM C 1513, corrosion-resistant-coated, self-drilling, self-tapping, steel drill screws.

1. Head Type: Low-profile head beneath sheathing; manufacturer's standard elsewhere.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Galvanizing Repair Paint: ASTM A 780/A 780M.

B. Cement Grout: Portland cement, ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I; and clean, natural sand, ASTM C 404. Mix at ratio of 1 part cement to 2-1/2 parts sand, by volume, with minimum water required for placement and hydration.

C. Nonmetallic, Nonshrink Grout: Factory-packaged, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout, complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, and with a fluid consistency and 30-minute working time.

D. Shims: Load-bearing, high-density, multimonomer, nonleaching plastic; or cold-formed steel of same grade and metallic coating as framing members supported by shims.

E. Sealer Gaskets: Closed-cell neoprene foam, 1/4 inch (6 mm) thick, selected from manufacturer's standard widths to match width of bottom track or rim track members as required.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cold-formed steel framing may be shop or field fabricated for installation, or it may be field assembled.

B. Install cold-formed steel framing according to AISI S200, AISI S202, and manufacturer's written instructions unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. Install cold-formed steel framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, and with connections securely fastened.

D. Install framing members in one-piece lengths unless splice connections are indicated for track or tension members.

E. Install temporary bracing and supports to secure framing and support loads equal to those for which structure was designed. Maintain braces and supports in place, undisturbed, until entire integrated supporting structure has been completed and permanent connections to framing are secured.

F. Do not bridge building expansion joints with cold-formed steel framing. Independently frame both sides of joints.

G. Install insulation in framing-assembly members, such as headers, sills, boxed joists, and multiple studs at openings, that are inaccessible on completion of framing work.

H. Fasten hole-reinforcing plate over web penetrations that exceed size of manufacturer's approved or standard punched openings.

3.2 EXTERIOR NON-LOAD-BEARING WALL INSTALLATION

A. Install continuous tracks sized to match studs. Align tracks accurately and securely anchor to supporting structure.

B. Fasten both flanges of studs to top and bottom track unless otherwise indicated. Space studs as follows:

1. Stud Spacing: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Set studs plumb, except as needed for diagonal bracing or required for nonplumb walls or warped surfaces and similar requirements.

D. Isolate non-load-bearing steel framing from building structure to prevent transfer of vertical loads while providing lateral support.

1. Install single deep-leg deflection tracks and anchor to building structure.
2. Connect vertical deflection clips to studs and anchor to building structure.
3. Connect drift clips to cold-formed steel framing and anchor to building structure.

E. Install horizontal bridging in wall studs, spaced vertically in rows indicated on Shop Drawings but not more than 48 inches apart. Fasten at each stud intersection.

1. Channel Bridging: Cold-rolled steel channel, welded or mechanically fastened to webs of punched studs.
2. Strap Bridging: Combination of flat, taut, steel sheet straps of width and thickness indicated and stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness to match studs. Fasten flat straps to stud flanges and secure solid blocking to stud webs or flanges.
3. Bar Bridging: Proprietary bridging bars installed according to manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Top Bridging for Single Deflection Track: Install row of horizontal bridging within 12 inches of single deflection track. Install a combination of bridging and stud or stud-track solid blocking of width and thickness matching studs, secured to stud webs or flanges.

1. Install solid blocking at centers indicated on Shop Drawings.

G. Install miscellaneous framing and connections, including stud kickers, web stiffeners, clip angles, continuous angles, anchors, and fasteners, to provide a complete and stable wall-framing system.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Install cold-formed steel framing level, plumb, and true to line to a maximum allowable tolerance variation of 1/8 inch in 10 feet (1:960) and as follows:

1. Space individual framing members no more than plus or minus 1/8 inch (3 mm) from plan location. Cumulative error shall not exceed minimum fastening requirements of sheathing or other finishing materials.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing: Engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Field and shop welds will be subject to testing and inspecting.

C. Testing agency will report test results promptly and in writing to Contractor and Architect.

D. Cold-formed steel framing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

3.5 REPAIRS AND PROTECTION

A. Galvanizing Repairs: Prepare and repair damaged galvanized coatings on fabricated and installed cold-formed steel framing with galvanized repair paint according to ASTM A 780/A 780M and manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 05 40 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 50 00 - METAL FABRICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.
2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Elevator machine beams, hoist beams, and divider beams.
6. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
7. Metal ladders.
8. Elevator pit sump covers.
9. Metal bollards.
10. Pipe Downspout guards.
11. Loose bearing and leveling plates for applications where they are not specified in other Sections.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of metal fabrications that are anchored to or that receive other work. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details of metal fabrications and their connections. Show anchorage and accessory items. Provide Shop Drawings for the following:

1. Steel framing and supports for overhead doors and grilles.

2. Steel framing and supports for countertops.
3. Steel framing and supports for mechanical and electrical equipment.
4. Steel framing and supports for applications where framing and supports are not specified in other Sections.
5. Elevator machine beams, hoist beams, and divider beams.
6. Steel shapes for supporting elevator door sills.
7. Elevator pit sump covers.
8. Metal bollards.
9. Downspout guards.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

B. Mill Certificates: Signed by stainless-steel manufacturers, certifying that products furnished comply with requirements.

C. Welding certificates.

D. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

E. Research/Evaluation Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with metal fabrications by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METALS

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For metal fabrications exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

C. Stainless-Steel Sheet, Strip, and Plate: ASTM A 240/A 240M or ASTM A 666, Type 304 for concealed locations and Type 316L for exposed locations.

D. Stainless-Steel Bars and Shapes: ASTM A 276, Type 304 for concealed locations and Type 316L for exposed locations.

E. Steel Tubing: ASTM A 500/A 500M, cold-formed steel tubing.

F. Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Standard Weight (Schedule 40) unless otherwise indicated.

G. Aluminum Plate and Sheet: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M), Alloy 6061-T6.

H. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T6.

2.2 FASTENERS

A. General: Unless otherwise indicated, provide Type 316 stainless-steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, at exterior walls. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

1. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening aluminum.
2. Provide stainless-steel fasteners for fastening stainless steel.

B. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 307, Grade A (ASTM F 568M, Property Class 4.6); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

C. Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A 325, Type 3 (ASTM A 325M, Type 3); with hex nuts, ASTM A 563, Grade C3 (ASTM A 563M, Class 8S3); and, where indicated, flat washers.

D. Stainless-Steel Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head annealed stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M); with hex nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M); and, where indicated, flat washers; Alloy Group 1 (A1).

E. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F 1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A 563 (ASTM A 563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

1. Hot-dip galvanize or provide mechanically deposited, zinc coating where item being fastened is indicated to be galvanized.

F. Anchors, General: Anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488/E 488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

G. Cast-in-Place Anchors in Concrete: Either threaded type or wedge type unless otherwise indicated; galvanized ferrous castings, either ASTM A 47/A 47M malleable iron or ASTM A 27/A 27M cast steel. Provide bolts, washers, and shims as needed, all hot-dip galvanized per ASTM F 2329.

H. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B 633 or ASTM F 1941 (ASTM F 1941M), Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 1 (A1) stainless-steel bolts, ASTM F 593 (ASTM F 738M), and nuts, ASTM F 594 (ASTM F 836M).

I. Slotted-Channel Inserts: Cold-formed, hot-dip galvanized-steel box channels (struts) complying with MFMA-4, 1-5/8 by 7/8 inches (41 by 22 mm) by length indicated with anchor straps or studs not less than 3 inches (75 mm) long at not more than 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. Provide with temporary filler and tee-head bolts, complete with washers and nuts, all zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B 633, Class Fe/Zn 5, as needed for fastening to inserts.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Shop Primers: Provide primers that comply with Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 “Interior Painting".

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Water-Based Primer: Emulsion type, anticorrosive primer for mildly corrosive environments that is resistant to flash rusting when applied to cleaned steel, complying with MPI#107 and compatible with topcoat.

D. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

E. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

F. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D 1187/D 1187M.

H. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout complying with ASTM C 1107/C 1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

I. Concrete: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, concrete with a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa).

2.4 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Shop Assembly: Preassemble items in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

C. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

D. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

E. Weld corners and seams continuously to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

F. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners or welds where possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) fasteners unless otherwise indicated. Locate joints where least conspicuous.

G. Fabricate seams and other connections that are exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.

H. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap metal fabrications as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

I. Provide for anchorage of type indicated; coordinate with supporting structure. Space anchoring devices to secure metal fabrications rigidly in place and to support indicated loads.

J. Where units are indicated to be cast into concrete or built into masonry, equip with integrally welded steel strap anchors, 1/8 by 1-1/2 inches (3.2 by 38 mm), with a minimum 6-inch (150-mm) embedment and 2-inch (50-mm) hook, not less than 8 inches (200 mm) from ends and corners of units and 24 inches (600 mm) o.c., unless otherwise indicated.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Provide steel framing and supports not specified in other Sections as needed to complete the Work.

B. Fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of welded construction unless otherwise indicated. Fabricate to sizes, shapes, and profiles indicated and as necessary to receive adjacent construction.

1. Fabricate units from slotted channel framing where indicated.
2. Furnish inserts for units installed after concrete is placed.

C. Galvanize all exterior miscellaneous framing and supports and at where indicated.

D. Prime interior miscellaneous framing and supports with zinc-rich primer primer unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 METAL LADDERS

A. General:

1. For elevator pit ladders, comply with ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

B. Steel Ladders:

1. Space siderails 16 inches (406 mm) apart unless otherwise indicated.
2. Siderails: Continuous, 3/8-by-2-1/2-inch (9.5-by-64-mm) steel flat bars, with eased edges.
3. Rungs: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) diameter steel bars.
4. Fit rungs in centerline of siderails; plug-weld and grind smooth on outer rail faces.
5. Provide nonslip surfaces on top of each rung, either by coating rung with aluminum-oxide granules set in epoxy-resin adhesive or by using a type of manufactured rung filled with aluminum-oxide grout.
6. Support each ladder at top and bottom and not more than 60 inches (1500 mm) o.c. with welded or bolted steel brackets.
7. Prime ladders, including brackets and fasteners, with zinc-rich primer.

2.7 ELEVATOR PIT SUMP COVERS

A. Fabricate from 1/8-inch (3.2-mm) rolled-steel floor plate with four 1-inch- (25-mm-) diameter holes for water drainage and for lifting.

B. Provide steel angle supports as indicated.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS STEEL TRIM

A. Unless otherwise indicated, fabricate units from steel shapes, plates, and bars of profiles shown with continuously welded joints and smooth exposed edges. Miter corners and use concealed field splices where possible.

B. Provide cutouts, fittings, and anchorages as needed to coordinate assembly and installation with other work.

1. Provide with integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete or masonry construction.

C. Galvanize exterior miscellaneous steel trim.

D. Prime interior miscellaneous steel trim with zinc-rich primer.

2.9 METAL BOLLARDS

A. Fabricate metal bollards from 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness rectangular steel tubing or as indicated.

1. Cap bollards with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate.
2. Where bollards are indicated to receive controls for door operators, provide cutouts for controls and holes for wire.
3. Where bollards are indicated to receive light fixtures, provide cutouts for fixtures and holes for wire.

B. Fabricate bollards with 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick steel baseplates for bolting to concrete slab. Drill baseplates at all four corners for 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.

1. Where bollards are to be anchored to sloping concrete slabs, angle baseplates for plumb alignment of bollards.

C. Fabricate sleeves for bollard anchorage from steel pipe or tubing with 1/4-inch- (6.4-mm-) thick steel plate welded to bottom of sleeve. Make sleeves not less than 8 inches (200 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (19 mm) larger than OD of bollard.

D. Fabricate internal sleeves for removable bollards from Schedule 40 steel pipe or 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) wall-thickness steel tubing with an OD approximately 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) less than ID of bollards. Match drill sleeve and bollard for 3/4-inch (19-mm) steel machine bolt.

E. Hot dip galvanize bollards, after fabrication with zinc-rich primer.

2.10 DOWNSPOUT GUARDS

A. Fabricate downspout guards from 3/8-inch- (9.5-mm-) thick by 12-inch- (300-mm-) wide steel plate, bent to fit flat against the wall or column at both ends and to fit around pipe with 2-inch (50-mm) clearance between pipe and pipe guard. Drill each end for two 3/4-inch (19-mm) anchor bolts.

B. Galvanize and prime downspout guards.

C. Prime downspout guards with zinc-rich primer.

2.11 METAL DOWNSPOUT BOOTS

A. Provide downspout boots made from cast aluminum in heights indicated with inlets of size and shape to suit downspouts. Provide units with flanges and holes for countersunk anchor bolts.

1. Outlet: At 35 degrees from horizontal, to discharge onto splash block or pavement.

2.12 LOOSE BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Provide loose bearing and leveling plates for steel items bearing on masonry or concrete construction. Drill plates to receive anchor bolts and for grouting.

B. Galvanize plates.

C. Prime plates with zinc-rich primer.

2.13 STEEL WELD PLATES AND ANGLES

A. Provide steel weld plates and angles not specified in other Sections, for items supported from concrete construction as needed to complete the Work. Provide each unit with no fewer than two integrally welded steel strap anchors for embedding in concrete.

2.14 FINISHES, GENERAL

A. Finish metal fabrications after assembly.

B. Finish exposed surfaces to remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, and to blend into surrounding surface.

2.15 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A 153/A 153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A 123/A 123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.

B. Preparation for Shop Priming Galvanized Items: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with metallic phosphate process.

C. Shop prime iron and steel items not indicated to be galvanized unless they are to be embedded in concrete, sprayed-on fireproofing, or masonry, or unless otherwise indicated.

1. Shop prime with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.

D. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Exterior Items: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
2. Items Indicated to Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3, "Commercial Blast Cleaning."
3. Other Items: SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

E. Shop Priming: Apply shop primer to comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

1. Stripe paint corners, crevices, bolts, welds, and sharp edges.

2.16 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. As-Fabricated Finish: AA-M12.

B. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, Class I, AA-M12C22A41.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal fabrications. Set metal fabrications accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; with edges and surfaces level, plumb, true, and free of rack; and measured from established lines and levels.

B. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.

C. Field Welding: Comply with the following requirements:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds and surfaces smooth and blended so no roughness shows after finishing and contour of welded surface matches that of adjacent surface.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where metal fabrications are required to be fastened to in-place construction. Provide threaded fasteners for use with concrete and masonry inserts, toggle bolts, through bolts, lag screws, wood screws, and other connectors.

E. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

F. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that come into contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals with the following:

1. Cast Aluminum: Heavy coat of bituminous paint.
2. Extruded Aluminum: Two coats of clear lacquer.

3.2 INSTALLING MISCELLANEOUS FRAMING AND SUPPORTS

A. General: Install framing and supports to comply with requirements of items being supported, including manufacturers' written instructions and requirements indicated on Shop Drawings.

B. Anchor supports for overhead doors and overhead grilles securely to, and rigidly brace from, building structure.

C. Support steel girders on solid grouted masonry, concrete, or steel pipe columns. Secure girders with anchor bolts embedded in grouted masonry or concrete or with bolts through top plates of pipe columns.

1. Where grout space under bearing plates is indicated for girders supported on concrete or masonry, install as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

D. Install pipe columns on concrete footings with grouted baseplates. Position and grout column baseplates as specified in "Installing Bearing and Leveling Plates" Article.

1. Grout baseplates of columns supporting steel girders after girders are installed and leveled.

3.3 INSTALLING PREFABRICATED BUILDING COLUMNS

A. Install prefabricated building columns to comply with AISC 360, "Specifications for Structural Steel Buildings," and with requirements applicable to listing and labeling for fire-resistance rating indicated.

3.4 INSTALLING METAL BOLLARDS

A. Anchor bollards to existing construction with expansion anchors. Provide four 3/4-inch (19-mm) bolts at each bollard unless otherwise indicated.

1. Embed anchor bolts at least 4 inches (100 mm) in concrete.

3.5 INSTALLING BEARING AND LEVELING PLATES

A. Set bearing and leveling plates on wedges, shims, or leveling nuts. After bearing members have been positioned and plumbed, tighten anchor bolts. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of bearing plate before caulking or packing with nonshrink grout.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Touchup Painting: Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas. Paint uncoated and abraded areas with the same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

1. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint are specified in Section 099113 "Exterior Painting" or Section 099123 "Interior Painting."

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A 780/A 780M.

END OF SECTION 05 50 00

SECTION 05 51 13 - METAL PAN STAIRS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preassembled steel stairs with concrete-filled treads.
2. Steel tube railings and guards attached to metal stairs.
3. Steel tube handrails attached to walls adjacent to metal stairs.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written instructions to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for metal stairs, railings, and guards.

1. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, blocking for attachment of wall-mounted handrails, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry.
2. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

C. Coordinate locations of hanger rods and struts with other work so they do not encroach on required stair width and are within fire-resistance-rated stair enclosure.

D. Schedule installation of railings and guards so wall attachments are made only to completed walls.

1. Do not support railings and guards temporarily by any means that do not satisfy structural performance requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For metal pan stairs and the following:

1. Perforated metal.
2. Woven-wire mesh.
3. Welded-wire mesh.

4. Prefilled metal-pan-stair treads.
5. Abrasive nosings.
6. Shop primer products.
7. Nonslip-aggregate concrete finish.
8. Abrasive-coating finish to formed-metal stairs.
9. Handrail wall brackets.
10. Grout.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
2. Indicate sizes of metal sections, thickness of metals, profiles, holes, and field joints.
3. Include plan at each level.
4. Indicate locations of anchors, weld plates, and blocking for attachment of wall-mounted handrails.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For stairs, railings and guards, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Paint Compatibility Certificates: From manufacturers of topcoats applied over shop primers, certifying that shop primers are compatible with topcoats.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Fabricator of products.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials to permit easy access for inspection and identification.

1. Keep steel members off ground and spaced by using pallets, dunnage, or other supports and spacers.
2. Protect steel members and packaged materials from corrosion and deterioration.

3. Do not store materials on structure in a manner that might cause distortion, damage, or overload to members or supporting structures.

    a. Repair or replace damaged materials or structures as directed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design stairs, railings and guards, including attachment to building construction.

B. Structural Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Uniform Load: 100 lbf/sq. ft. (4.79 kN/sq. m).
2. Concentrated Load: 300 lbf (1.33 kN) applied on an area of 4 sq. in. (2580 sq. mm).
3. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.
4. Stair Framing: Capable of withstanding stresses resulting from railing and guard loads in addition to loads specified above.
5. Limit deflection of treads, platforms, and framing members to L/360 or 1/4 inch (6.4 mm), whichever is less.

C. Structural Performance of Railings and Guards: Railings and guards, including attachment to building construction, withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

    a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
    b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
    c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2. Infill of Guards:

    a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
    b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

3. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

D. Seismic Performance of Stairs: Metal stairs withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. Component Importance Factor: 1.0.

2.2 METALS

A. Metal Surfaces: Provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces unless otherwise indicated. For components exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or blemishes.

B. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

C. Steel Tubing for Railings and Guards: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed)
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

D. Steel Pipe for Railings and Guards: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.
1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

E. Uncoated, Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1008/A1008M, structural steel,Grade 25 (Grade 170), unless another grade is required by design loads; exposed.

F. Uncoated, Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A1011/A1011M, steel, Grade 30 (Grade 205), unless another grade is required by design loads.

G. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275) coating, structural steel, Grade 33 (Grade 230), unless another grade is required by design loads.

H. Perforated Metal, Uncoated: Cold-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A1008/A1008M, or hot-rolled steel sheet, ASTM A1011/A1011M, commercial steel Type B, thickness and pattern indicated on architectural drawings.

2.3 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide Type 304 stainless steel fasteners for exterior use and zinc-plated fasteners with coating complying with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5 where built into exterior walls.

1. Select fasteners for type, grade, and class required.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings and Guards to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings and guards to other types of construction indicated and capable of withstanding design loads.

C. Bolts and Nuts: Regular hexagon-head bolts, ASTM A307, Grade A; with hex nuts, ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

D. Anchor Bolts: ASTM F1554, Grade 36, of dimensions indicated; with nuts, ASTM A563 (ASTM A563M); and, where indicated, flat washers.

1. Provide mechanically deposited or hot-dip, zinc-coated anchor bolts for exterior stairs.

E. Post-Installed Anchors: Torque-controlled expansion anchors or chemical anchors capable of sustaining, without failure, a load equal to six times the load imposed when installed in unit masonry and four times the load imposed when installed in concrete, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 (A4) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594 (ASTM F836M).

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Electrodes: Comply with AWS requirements.

B. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

C. Zinc-Rich Primer: Comply with SSPC-Paint 20, Type II, Level 2, and compatible with topcoat.

D. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish system indicated.

E. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint complying with ASTM A780/A780M and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

G. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-packaged, nonmetallic aggregate grout; recommended by manufacturer for exterior use; noncorrosive and nonstaining; mixed with water to consistency suitable for application and a 30-minute working time.

H. Prefilled Concrete Treads:

1. Concrete Materials and Properties: Comply with requirements in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for normal-weight, air-entrained, ready-mix concrete with minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) and maximum aggregate size of 1/2 inch (13 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Nonslip-Aggregate Concrete Finish: Factory-packaged abrasive aggregate made from fused, aluminum-oxide grits or crushed emery; rustproof and nonglazing; unaffected by freezing, moisture, or cleaning materials.
3. Plain Steel Welded-Wire Reinforcement: ASTM A1064/A10645M, galvanized steel, 6 by 6 inches (152 by 152 mm), W1.4 by W1.4, unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
4. Reinforcement Supports: Bolsters, chairs, spacers, and other devices for spacing, supporting, and fastening welded-wire reinforcement in place.

    a. Manufacture bar supports from steel wire, plastic, or precast concrete according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice," of greater compressive strength than concrete.

I. For galvanized reinforcement, use galvanized wire or dielectric-polymer-coated wire bar supports.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Provide complete stair assemblies, including metal framing, hangers, struts, railings and guards, clips, brackets, bearing plates, and other components necessary to support and anchor stairs and platforms on supporting structure.

1. Join components by welding unless otherwise indicated.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

B. Assemble stairs, railings, and guards in shop to greatest extent possible.

1. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.
2. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.

1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

D. Form bent-metal corners to smallest radius possible without causing grain separation or otherwise impairing work.

E. Form exposed work with accurate angles and surfaces and straight edges.

F. Weld connections to comply with the following:

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.
4. Weld exposed corners and seams continuously unless otherwise indicated.
5. At exposed connections, finish exposed welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 - No evidence of welded joint

G. Form exposed connections with hairline joints, flush and smooth, using concealed fasteners where possible.

1. Where exposed fasteners are required, use Phillips flat-head (countersunk) screws or bolts unless otherwise indicated.
2. Locate joints where least conspicuous.
3. Fabricate joints that will be exposed to weather in a manner to exclude water.
4. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2.6 FABRICATION OF STEEL-FRAMED STAIRS

A. NAAMM Stair Standard: Comply with NAAMM AMP 510, "Metal Stairs Manual," for Architectural Class, unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

B. Stair Framing:

1. Stringers: Fabricate of steel channels unless indicated otherwise on Drawings.

a. Stringer Size: As required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article
b. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube stringers.
c. Finish: Galvanized.

2. Platforms: Construct of steel channel or steel rectangular tube headers and miscellaneous framing members as required to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article.

    a. Provide closures for exposed ends of channel and rectangular tube framing.
    b. Finish: Galvanized.

3. Weld or bolt stringers to headers; weld or bolt framing members to stringers and headers. If using bolts, fabricate and join so bolts are not exposed on finished surfaces.

C. Metal Pan Stairs: Form risers, subtread pans, and subplatforms to configurations shown from steel sheet of thickness needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than 0.067 inch (1.7 mm).

1. Fabricate treads and landing subplatforms of exterior stairs so finished walking surfaces slope to drain.
2. Steel Sheet, Uncoated: Cold-rolled steel sheet unless otherwise indicated.
3. Galvanized Steel Sheet: Galvanized steel sheet
4. Directly weld metal pans to stringers; locate welds on top of subtreads where they will be concealed by concrete fill. Do not weld risers to stringers.
5. Shape metal pans to include nosing integral with riser.
6. Attach abrasive nosings to risers.
7. At Contractor's option, provide stair assemblies with metal pan subtreads filled with reinforced concrete during fabrication.

2.7 FABRICATION OF STAIR RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Comply with applicable requirements in Section 055213 "Pipe and Tube Railings."

B. Fabricate railings and guards to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, details, finish, and member sizes, including wall thickness of member, post spacings, wall bracket spacing, and anchorage, but not less than that needed to withstand indicated loads.

1. Rails and Posts: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter top and bottom rails and 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) square posts.
2. Picket Infill: 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) round pickets spaced to prohibit the passage of a 4-inch (100-mm) diameter sphere.
3. Perforated-Metal Infill: Perforated-metal panels edged with U-shaped channels made from metal sheet, of same metal as perforated metal, and not less than 0.043 inch (1.1 mm) thick. Orient perforated metal with pattern as indicated on Drawings.

4. Intermediate Rails Infill: 1-5/8-inch- (41-mm-) diameter intermediate rails spaced less than 12 inches (305 mm) clear.

C. Welded Connections: Fabricate railings and guards with welded connections.

1. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.

    a. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate internally.

2. Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose.
3. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.
4. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
5. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
6. Remove flux immediately.
7. Finish welds to comply with NOMMA's "Voluntary Joint Finish Standards" for Finish #1 - No evidence of a welded joint as shown in NAAMM AMP 521.

D. Form changes in direction of railings and guards as follows:
1. By flush bends or by inserting prefabricated flush-elbow fittings.

E. For changes in direction made by bending, use jigs to produce uniform curvature for each repetitive configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.

F. Close exposed ends of railing and guard members with prefabricated end fittings.

G. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated.

1. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

H. Connect posts to stair framing by direct welding unless otherwise indicated.

I. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, end closures, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors for interconnecting components and for attaching to other work.

1. Furnish inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting to concrete or masonry work.
2. For galvanized railings and guards, provide galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous-metal components.

3. For nongalvanized railings and guards, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves, except galvanize anchors embedded in exterior masonry and concrete construction.

J. Fillers: Provide fillers made from steel plate, or other suitably crush-resistant material, where needed to transfer wall bracket loads through wall finishes to structural supports.

1. Size fillers to suit wall finish thicknesses and to produce adequate bearing area to prevent bracket rotation and overstressing of substrate.

2.8 FINISHES

A. Finish metal stairs after assembly.

B. Galvanizing: Hot-dip galvanize items as indicated to comply with ASTM A153/A153M for steel and iron hardware and with ASTM A123/A123M for other steel and iron products.

1. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
2. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

C. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated, ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 3, "Power Tool Cleaning."

D. Apply shop primer to uncoated surfaces of metal stair components, except those with galvanized finishes and those to be embedded in concrete or masonry unless otherwise indicated. Comply with SSPC-PA 1, "Paint Application Specification No. 1: Shop, Field, and Maintenance Painting of Steel," for shop painting.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify elevations of floors, bearing surfaces and locations of bearing plates, and other embedments for compliance with requirements.

1. For wall-mounted railings, verify locations of concealed reinforcement within gypsum board and plaster assemblies.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF METAL PAN STAIRS

A. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Provide anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing metal stairs to in-place construction.

1. Include threaded fasteners for concrete and masonry inserts, through-bolts, lag bolts, and other connectors.

B. Cutting, Fitting, and Placement: Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing metal stairs. Set units accurately in location, alignment, and elevation, measured from established lines and levels and free of rack.

C. Install metal stairs by welding stair framing to steel structure or to weld plates cast into concrete unless otherwise indicated.

1. Grouted Baseplates: Clean concrete- and masonry-bearing surfaces of bond-reducing materials, and roughen surfaces prior to setting plates.

a. Clean bottom surface of plates.
b. Set plates for structural members on wedges, shims, or setting nuts.
c. Tighten anchor bolts after supported members have been positioned and plumbed.
d. Do not remove wedges or shims but, if protruding, cut off flush with edge of plate before packing with grout.
e. Promptly pack grout solidly between bearing surfaces and plates so no voids remain.

1) Neatly finish exposed surfaces; protect grout and allow to cure.
2) Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions for shrinkage-resistant grouts.

D. Provide temporary bracing or anchors in formwork for items that are to be built into concrete, masonry, or similar construction.

E. Fit exposed connections accurately together to form hairline joints.

1. Weld connections that are not to be left as exposed joints but cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.
2. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of exterior units that have been hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and are for bolted or screwed field connections.
3. Comply with requirements for welding in "Fabrication, General" Article.

F. Place and finish concrete fill for treads and platforms to comply with Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install abrasive nosings with anchors fully embedded in concrete.

2. Center nosings on tread width.

G. Install precast concrete treads with adhesive supplied by manufacturer.

H. Install precast terrazzo treads according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF RAILINGS AND GUARDS

A. Adjust railing and guard systems before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints with tight, hairline joints.

1. Space posts at spacing indicated or, if not indicated, as required by design loads.
2. Plumb posts in each direction, within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
3. Align rails and guards so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of stairs for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).
4. Secure posts, rail ends, and guard ends to building construction as follows:

a. Anchor posts to steel by welding or bolting to steel supporting members.
b. Anchor handrail and guard ends to concrete and masonry with steel round flanges welded to rail and guard ends and anchored with post-installed anchors and bolts.

B. Install railing gates level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference.

1. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means.
2. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

C. Attach handrails to wall with wall brackets.

1. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.
2. Secure wall brackets to building construction as required to comply with performance requirements.

3.4 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with same material as used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

B. Repair of Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

END OF SECTION 05 51 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 05 52 13 - PIPE AND TUBE RAILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel railings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 055113 "Metal Pan Stairs" for steel tube railings associated with metal pan stairs.

1.2 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate selection of shop primers with topcoats to be applied over them. Comply with paint and coating manufacturers' written recommendations to ensure that shop primers and topcoats are compatible with one another.

B. Coordinate installation of anchorages for railings. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors, that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Manufacturer's product lines of mechanically connected railings.
2. Fasteners.
3. Post-installed anchors.
4. Handrail brackets.
5. Shop primer.
6. Intermediate coats and topcoats.
7. Bituminous paint.
8. Nonshrink, nonmetallic grout.
9. Anchoring cement.
10. Metal finishes.
11. Paint products.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Delegated Design Submittal: For railings, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

B. Product Test Reports: For tests on railings performed by a qualified testing agency, in accordance with ASTM E894 and ASTM E935.

C. Research Reports: For post-installed anchors, from ICC-ES or other qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of railings from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of walls and other construction contiguous with railings by field measurements before fabrication.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design railings, including attachment to building construction.

B. Structural Performance: Railings, including attachment to building construction, withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated:

1. Handrails and Top Rails of Guards:

a. Uniform load of 50 lbf/ ft. (0.73 kN/m) applied in any direction.
b. Concentrated load of 200 lbf (0.89 kN) applied in any direction.
c. Uniform and concentrated loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

2. Infill of Guards:

a. Concentrated load of 50 lbf (0.22 kN) applied horizontally on an area of 1 sq. ft. (0.093 sq. m).
b. Infill load and other loads need not be assumed to act concurrently.

C. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces

2.2 METALS, GENERAL

A. Metal Surfaces, General: Provide materials with smooth surfaces, without seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, stains, discolorations, or blemishes.

B. Brackets, Flanges, and Anchors: Cast or formed metal of same type of material and finish as supported rails unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage and that provides 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail to finished wall surface.

2.3 STEEL RAILINGS

A. Tubing: ASTM A500/A500M (cold formed).

B. Pipe: ASTM A53/A53M, Type F or Type S, Grade A, Standard Weight (Schedule 40), unless another grade and weight are required by structural loads.

1. Provide galvanized finish for exterior installations and where indicated.

C. Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A36/A36M.

2.4 FASTENERS

A. Fastener Materials:

1. Ungalvanized-Steel Railing Components: Plated steel fasteners complying with ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5 for zinc coating.
2. Hot-Dip Galvanized Railing Components: Type 304 stainless steel or hot-dip zinc-coated steel fasteners complying with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329/F2329M for zinc coating.
3. Finish exposed fasteners to match appearance, including color and texture, of railings.

B. Fasteners for Anchoring Railings to Other Construction: Select fasteners of type, grade, and class required to produce connections suitable for anchoring railings to other types of construction and capable of withstanding design loads.

C. Fasteners for Interconnecting Railing Components:

1. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Provide concealed fasteners for interconnecting railing components and for attaching them to other work, unless exposed fasteners are unavoidable or are the standard fastening method for railings indicated.

D. Post-Installed Anchors: Fastener systems with working capacity greater than or equal to the design load, according to an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC193 or ICC-ES AC308.

1. Material for Interior Locations: Carbon-steel components zinc-plated to comply with ASTM B633 or ASTM F1941/F1941M, Class Fe/Zn 5, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Material for Exterior Locations and Where Stainless Steel Is Indicated: Alloy Group 2 (A4) stainless steel bolts, ASTM F593, and nuts, ASTM F594.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: Select in accordance with AWS specifications for metal alloy welded.

B. Etching Cleaner for Galvanized Metal: Complying with MPI#25.

C. Galvanizing Repair Paint: High-zinc-dust-content paint, complying with SSPC-Paint 20 and compatible with paints specified to be used over it.

D. Universal Shop Primer: Fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal modified-alkyd primer complying with MPI#79 and compatible with topcoat.

1. Use primer containing pigments that make it easily distinguishable from zinc-rich primer.

E. Epoxy Zinc-Rich Primer: Complying with MPI#20 and compatible with topcoat.

F. Shop Primer for Galvanized Steel: Primer formulated for exterior use over zinc-coated metal and compatible with finish paint systems indicated.

G. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion, complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

H. Nonshrink, Nonmetallic Grout: Factory-packaged, nonstaining, noncorrosive, nongaseous grout, complying with ASTM C1107/C1107M. Provide grout specifically recommended by manufacturer for interior and exterior applications.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate railings to comply with requirements indicated for design, dimensions, member sizes and spacing, details, finish, and anchorage, but not less than that required to support structural loads.

B. Shop assemble railings to greatest extent possible to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations.

1. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.
2. Use connections that maintain structural value of joined pieces.

C. Cut, drill, and punch metals cleanly and accurately.

1. Remove burrs and ease edges to a radius of approximately 1/32 inch (1 mm) unless otherwise indicated.
2. Remove sharp or rough areas on exposed surfaces.

D. Form work true to line and level with accurate angles and surfaces.

E. Fabricate connections that are exposed to weather in a manner that excludes water.

1. Provide weep holes where water may accumulate.
2. Locate weep holes in inconspicuous locations.

F. Cut, reinforce, drill, and tap as indicated to receive finish hardware, screws, and similar items.

G. Connections: Fabricate railings with welded connections unless otherwise indicated.

H. Welded Connections: Cope components at connections to provide close fit, or use fittings designed for this purpose. Weld all around at connections, including at fittings.

1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove flux immediately.

I. Form changes in direction as follows:

1. By bending or by inserting prefabricated elbow fittings
2. By bending to smallest radius that will not result in distortion of railing member.

J. Bend members in jigs to produce uniform curvature for each configuration required. Maintain cross section of member throughout entire bend without buckling, twisting, cracking, or otherwise deforming exposed surfaces of components.

K. Close exposed ends of hollow railing members with prefabricated cap and end fittings of same metal and finish as railings.

L. Provide wall returns at ends of wall-mounted handrails unless otherwise indicated. Close ends of returns unless clearance between end of rail and wall is 1/4 inch (6 mm) or less.

M. Brackets, Flanges, Fittings, and Anchors: Provide wall brackets, flanges, miscellaneous fittings, and anchors to interconnect railing members to other work unless otherwise indicated.

1. At brackets and fittings fastened to plaster or gypsum board partitions, provide crush-resistant fillers or other means to transfer loads through wall finishes to structural supports and prevent bracket or fitting rotation and crushing of substrate.

N. Provide inserts and other anchorage devices for connecting railings to concrete or masonry work.

1. Fabricate anchorage devices capable of withstanding loads imposed by railings.
2. Coordinate anchorage devices with supporting structure.

O. For railing posts set in concrete, provide stainless steel sleeves not less than 6 inches (150 mm) long with inside dimensions not less than 1/2 inch (13 mm) greater than outside dimensions of post, with metal plate forming bottom closure.

P. For removable railing posts, fabricate slip-fit sockets from stainless steel tube or pipe whose ID is sized for a close fit with posts; limit movement of post without lateral load, measured at top, to not more than one-fortieth of post height.

1. Provide socket covers designed and fabricated to resist being dislodged.
2. Provide chain with eye, snap hook, and staple across gaps formed by removable railing sections at locations indicated. Fabricate from same metal as railings.

Q. Toe Boards: Where indicated, provide toe boards at railings around openings and at edge of open-sided floors and platforms. Fabricate to dimensions and details indicated.

2.7 STEEL AND IRON FINISHES

A. Galvanized Railings:

1. Hot-dip galvanize exterior steel railings, including hardware, after fabrication.
2. Comply with ASTM A123/A123M for hot-dip galvanized railings.
3. Comply with ASTM A153/A153M for hot-dip galvanized hardware.
4. Do not quench or apply post-galvanizing treatments that might interfere with paint adhesion.
5. Fill vent and drain holes that are exposed in the finished Work, unless indicated to remain as weep holes, by plugging with zinc solder and filing off smooth.

B. For galvanized railings, provide hot-dip galvanized fittings, brackets, fasteners, sleeves, and other ferrous components.

C. Preparing Galvanized Railings for Shop Priming: After galvanizing, thoroughly clean railings of grease, dirt, oil, flux, and other foreign matter, and treat with etching cleaner.

D. For nongalvanized-steel railings, provide nongalvanized ferrous-metal fittings, brackets, fasteners, and sleeves; however, hot-dip galvanize anchors to be embedded in exterior concrete or masonry.

E. Preparation for Shop Priming: Prepare uncoated ferrous-metal surfaces to comply with requirements indicated below:

1. Exterior Railings: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
2. Railings Indicated To Receive Zinc-Rich Primer: SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
3. Railings Indicated To Receive Primers Specified in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings": SSPC-SP 6/NACE No. 3.
4. Other Railings: SSPC-SP 3.

F. Primer Application: Apply shop primer to prepared surfaces of railings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with requirements in SSPC-PA 1 for shop painting. Primer need not be applied to surfaces to be embedded in concrete or masonry.

1. Shop prime uncoated railings with universal shop primer unless zinc-rich primer is indicated.
2. Do not apply primer to galvanized surfaces.

G. Shop-Painted Finish: Comply with Section 099113 "Exterior Painting.

1. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine plaster and gypsum board assemblies, where reinforced to receive anchors, to verify that locations of concealed reinforcements are clearly marked for Installer. Locate reinforcements and mark locations if not already done.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Perform cutting, drilling, and fitting required for installing railings.

1. Fit exposed connections together to form tight, hairline joints.
2. Install railings level, plumb, square, true to line; without distortion, warp, or rack.
3. Set railings accurately in location, alignment, and elevation; measured from established lines and levels.
4. Do not weld, cut, or abrade surfaces of railing components that are coated or finished after fabrication and that are intended for field connection by mechanical or other means without further cutting or fitting.
5. Set posts plumb within a tolerance of 1/16 inch in 3 feet (2 mm in 1 m).
6. Align rails so variations from level for horizontal members and variations from parallel with rake of steps and ramps for sloping members do not exceed 1/4 inch in 12 feet (6 mm in 3.5 m).

B. Control of Corrosion: Prevent galvanic action and other forms of corrosion by insulating metals and other materials from direct contact with incompatible materials.

1. Coat concealed surfaces of aluminum that will be in contact with grout, concrete, masonry, wood, or dissimilar metals, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint.

C. Adjust railings before anchoring to ensure matching alignment at abutting joints.

D. Fastening to In-Place Construction: Use anchorage devices and fasteners where necessary for securing railings and for properly transferring loads to in-place construction.

3.3 RAILING CONNECTIONS

A. Welded Connections: Use fully welded joints for permanently connecting railing components. Comply with requirements for welded connections in "Fabrication" Article, whether welding is performed in the shop or in the field.

B. Expansion Joints: Install expansion joints at locations indicated but not farther apart than required to accommodate thermal movement. Provide slip-joint internal sleeve, extending 2 inches (50 mm) beyond joint on either side; fasten internal sleeve securely to one side; and locate joint within 6 inches (150 mm) of post.

3.4 ANCHORING POSTS

A. Use stainless steel pipe sleeves preset and anchored into concrete for installing posts. After posts are inserted into sleeves, fill annular space between post and sleeve with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Form or core-drill holes not less than 5 inches (125 mm) deep and 3/4 inch (20 mm) larger than OD of post for installing posts in concrete. Clean holes of loose material, insert posts, and fill annular space between post and concrete with nonshrink, nonmetallic grout, mixed and placed to comply with anchoring material manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Cover anchorage joint with flange of same metal as post, attached to post with setscrews

D. Anchor posts to metal surfaces with flanges, angle type, or floor type, as required by conditions, connected to posts and to metal supporting members as follows:

   1. For steel railings, weld flanges to post and bolt to metal supporting surfaces.

E. Install removable railing sections, where indicated, in slip-fit stainless steel sockets cast in concrete.

3.5 ATTACHING RAILINGS

A. Anchor railing ends to concrete and masonry with flanges connected to railing ends and anchored to wall construction with anchors and bolts.

B. Anchor railing ends to metal surfaces with flanges bolted to metal surfaces and welded to railing ends.

C. Attach handrails to walls with wall brackets, except where end flanges are used. Provide brackets with 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) clearance from inside face of handrail and finished wall surface.

1. Use type of bracket with predrilled hole for exposed bolt anchorage.
2. Locate brackets as indicated or, if not indicated, at spacing required to support structural loads.

D. Secure wall brackets and railing end flanges to building construction as follows:

1. For concrete and solid masonry anchorage, use drilled-in expansion shields and hanger or lag bolts.
2. For hollow masonry anchorage, use toggle bolts.
3. For wood stud partitions, use hanger or lag bolts set into studs or wood backing between studs. Coordinate with carpentry work to locate backing members.

E. Install railing gates level, plumb, and secure for full opening without interference.

1. Attach hardware using tamper-resistant or concealed means.
2. Adjust hardware for smooth operation.

3.6 REPAIR

A. Touchup Painting:

1. Immediately after erection, clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint, and paint exposed areas with the same material used for shop painting to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-painted surfaces.

a. Apply by brush or spray to provide a minimum 2.0-mil (0.05-mm) dry film thickness.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and repair galvanizing to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes of railings from damage during construction period with temporary protective coverings approved by railing manufacturer. Remove protective coverings at time of Substantial Completion.

B. Restore finishes damaged during installation and construction period, so no evidence remains of correction work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop; make required alterations and refinish entire unit, or provide new units.

END OF SECTION 05 52 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 06 10 00 – ROUGH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Wood blocking and nailers.
2. Wood furring.
3. Wood sleepers.
4. Plywood backing panels.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Boards or Strips: Lumber of less than 2 inches nominal size in least dimension.

B. Dimension Lumber: Lumber of 2 inches nominal size or greater but less than 5 inches nominal size in least dimension.

C. Exposed Framing: Framing not concealed by other construction.

D. OSB: Oriented strand board.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.
1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated lumber both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency according to ASTM D5664.
4. For products receiving a waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.

B. Fastener Patterns: Full-size templates for fasteners in exposed framing.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates:
   1. For dimension lumber specified to comply with minimum allowable unit stresses. Indicate species and grade selected for each use and design values approved by the ALSC Board of Review.
B. Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
   1. Fire-retardant-treated wood.
   2. Power-driven fasteners.
C. Qualification Statements: For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack wood products flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect wood products from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 WOOD PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: Comply with DOC PS 20 and applicable rules of grading agencies indicated. If no grading agency is indicated, comply with the applicable rules of any rules-writing agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review. Grade lumber by an agency certified by the ALSC Board of Review to inspect and grade lumber under the rules indicated.

   1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of grading agency.
   2. Where nominal sizes are indicated, provide actual sizes required by DOC PS 20 for moisture content specified. Where actual sizes are indicated, they are minimum dressed sizes for dry wood products.

2.2 FIRE-RETARDANT TREATMENT

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, materials shall comply with requirements in this article, that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Lumber and Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested according to ASTM E84, and with no

evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Treatment shall not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Exterior Type: Treated materials shall comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant- treated lumber and plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering according to ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.
3. Interior Type A: Treated materials shall have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested according to ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.

C. Kiln-dry lumber after treatment to maximum moisture content of 19 percent. Kiln-dry plywood after treatment to maximum moisture content of 15 percent.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.

1. For exposed lumber indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, mark end or back of each piece or omit marking and provide certificates of treatment compliance issued by testing agency.

E. Application: Treat all rough carpentry unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS LUMBER

A. Provide miscellaneous lumber indicated and lumber for support or attachment of other construction, including the following:
1. Blocking.
2. Nailers.
3. Rooftop equipment bases and support curbs.
4. Cants.
5. Furring.
6. Grounds.
7. Utility shelving.

B. Concealed Boards: 15 percent maximum moisture content and any of the following species and grades:
1. Mixed southern pine or southern pine; No. 2 grade; SPIB.
2. Hem-fir or hem-fir (north); Construction or No. 2 Common grade; NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.
3. Spruce-pine-fir (south) or spruce-pine-fir; Construction or No. 2 Common grade;

NeLMA, NLGA, WCLIB, or WWPA.

4. Eastern softwoods; No. 2 Common grade; NeLMA.
5. Northern species; No. 2 Common grade; NLGA.
6. Western woods; Construction or No. 2 Common grade; WCLIB or WWPA.

C. For blocking not used for attachment of other construction, Utility, Stud, or No. 3 grade lumber of any species may be used provided that it is cut and selected to eliminate defects that will interfere with its attachment and purpose.

D. For blocking and nailers used for attachment of other construction, select and cut lumber to eliminate knots and other defects that will interfere with attachment of other work.

E. For furring strips for installing plywood or hardboard paneling, select boards with no knots capable of producing bent-over nails and damage to paneling.

2.4 PLYWOOD BACKING PANELS

A. Equipment Backing Panels: Plywood, DOC PS 1,, fire-retardant treated, in thickness indicated or, if not indicated, not less than 1/2-inch nominal thickness.

2.5 FASTENERS

A. General: Fasteners shall be of size and type indicated and shall comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture. Provide nails or screws, in sufficient length, to penetrate not less than 1-1/2 inches into wood substrate.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

2.6 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Adhesives for Gluing Furring to Concrete or Masonry: Formulation complying with ASTM D3498 that is approved for use indicated by adhesive manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install plywood backing panels by fastening to studs; coordinate locations with utilities requiring backing panels. Install fire-retardant-treated plywood backing panels with classification marking of testing agency exposed to view.

B. Do not splice structural members between supports unless otherwise indicated.

C. Provide blocking and framing as indicated and as required to support facing materials, fixtures, specialty items, and trim.

1. Provide metal clips for fastening gypsum board or lath at corners and intersections where framing or blocking does not provide a surface for fastening edges of panels. Space clips not more than 16 inches o.c.

D. Sort and select lumber so that natural characteristics do not interfere with installation or with fastening other materials to lumber. Do not use materials with defects that interfere with function of member or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement.

E. Comply with AWPA M4 for applying field treatment to cut surfaces of preservative-treated lumber.

1. Use inorganic boron for items that are continuously protected from liquid water.
2. Use copper naphthenate for items not continuously protected from liquid water.

F. Securely attach rough carpentry work to substrate by anchoring and fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in ICC's International Building Code (IBC).
2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

G. Use steel common nails unless otherwise indicated. Select fasteners of size that will not fully penetrate members where opposite side will be exposed to view or will receive finish materials. Make tight connections between members. Install fasteners without splitting wood. Drive nails snug but do not countersink nail heads unless otherwise indicated.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF WOOD BLOCKING AND NAILERS

A. Install where indicated and where required for attaching other work. Form to shapes indicated and cut as required for true line and level of attached work. Coordinate locations with other work involved.
B. Attach items to substrates to support applied loading. Recess bolts and nuts flush with surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
C. Provide permanent grounds of dressed, pressure-preservative-treated, key-beveled

lumber not less than 1-1/2 inches wide and of thickness required to bring face of ground to exact thickness of finish material. Remove temporary grounds when no longer required.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF WOOD FURRING

A. Install level and plumb with closure strips at edges and openings. Shim with wood as required for tolerance of finish work.

B. Furring to Receive Plywood or Hardboard Paneling: Install 1-by-3-inch nominal-size furring horizontally and vertically at 24 inches o.c.

C. Furring to Receive Gypsum Board: Install 1-by-2-inch nominal-size furring vertically at 16 inches o.c.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect wood that has been treated with inorganic boron (SBX) from weather. If, despite protection, inorganic boron-treated wood becomes wet, apply EPA-registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

B. Protect rough carpentry from weather. If, despite protection, rough carpentry becomes wet, apply EPA- registered borate treatment. Apply borate solution by spraying to comply with EPA-registered label.

END OF SECTION 06 10 00

SECTION 06 16 00 - SHEATHING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Wall sheathing.
2. Roof sheathing.
3. Parapet sheathing.
4. Sheathing joint and penetration treatment.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for plywood backing panels.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Indicate type of preservative used and net amount of preservative retained.
2. Include data for fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated plywood complies with requirements. Include physical properties of treated materials.
3. For fire-retardant treatments, include physical properties of treated plywood both before and after exposure to elevated temperatures, based on testing by a qualified independent testing agency in accordance with ASTM D5516.
4. For products receiving waterborne treatment, include statement that moisture content of treated materials was reduced to levels specified before shipment to Project site.
5. For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing, include manufacturer's technical data and tested physical and performance properties of products.

B. Shop Drawings: For air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing

assemblies.

1. Show locations and extent of sheathing, accessories, and assemblies specific to Project conditions.
2. Include details for sheathing joints and cracks, counterflashing strips, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.
3. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: From air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing manufacturer, certifying compatibility of sheathing accessory materials with Project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the sheathing.

B. Product Test Reports: For each air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing assembly, indicating compliance with specified requirements, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Evaluation Reports: For the following, from ICC-ES:
1. Fire-retardant-treated plywood.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer of air-barrier and water-resistant glass-mat gypsum sheathing.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. For testing agency providing classification marking for fire-retardant-treated material, an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction that periodically performs inspections to verify that the material bearing the classification marking is representative of the material tested.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Stack panels flat with spacers beneath and between each bundle to provide air circulation. Protect sheathing from weather by covering with waterproof sheeting, securely anchored. Provide for air circulation around stacks and under coverings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance Ratings: As tested in accordance with ASTM E119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Indicated by design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 WOOD PANEL PRODUCTS

A. Emissions: Products comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Public Health's "Standard Method for the Testing and Evaluation of Volatile Organic Chemical Emissions from Indoor Sources Using Environmental Chambers."

B. Thickness: As needed to comply with requirements specified, but not less than thickness indicated.

C. Factory mark panels to indicate compliance with applicable standard.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED PLYWOOD

A. General: Where fire-retardant-treated materials are indicated, use materials complying with requirements in this article that are acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and with fire-test-response characteristics specified as determined by testing identical products per test method indicated by a qualified testing agency.

B. Fire-Retardant-Treated Plywood by Pressure Process: Products with a flame-spread index of 25 or less when tested in accordance with ASTM E84, and with no evidence of significant progressive combustion when the test is extended an additional 20 minutes, and with the flame front not extending more than 10.5 feet beyond the centerline of the burners at any time during the test.

1. Use treatment that does not promote corrosion of metal fasteners.
2. Exterior Type: Treated materials comply with requirements specified above for fire-retardant-treated plywood by pressure process after being subjected to accelerated weathering in accordance with ASTM D2898. Use for exterior locations and where indicated.

3. Interior Type A: Treated materials are to have a moisture content of 28 percent or less when tested in accordance with ASTM D3201/D3201M at 92 percent relative humidity. Use where exterior type is not indicated.

4. Design Value Adjustment Factors: Treated lumber plywood are to be tested in accordance with ASTM D5516, and design value adjustment factors are to be calculated in accordance with ASTM D6305. Span ratings after treatment are not to be less than span ratings specified.

C. Kiln-dry material after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

D. Identify fire-retardant-treated plywood with appropriate classification marking of qualified testing agency.

2.4 WALL SHEATHING

A. Plywood Wall Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 16/0.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

B. Paper-Surfaced Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C1396/C1396M, gypsum sheathing; with water-resistant-treated core and with water-repellent paper bonded to core's face, back, and long edges.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Gypsum.
b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
c. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
d. National Gypsum Company.
e. USG Corporation 1.

2. Type and Thickness: Regular 1/2 inch and Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
3. Edge and End Configuration: V-shaped, tongue-and-groove long edges; square ends or Square.
4. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

C. Glass-Mat Gypsum Wall Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one

of the following:

a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
b. Georgia-Pacific Gypsum LLC.
c. National Gypsum Company.
d. USG Corporation 1.

2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch and Type X, 5/8 inch thick.
3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

D. Cementitious Backer Unit Wall Sheathing: ASTM C1325, Type A.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. C-Cure.
b. Custom Building Products.
c. FinPan, Inc.

2. Thickness: As indicated.

2.5 ROOF SHEATHING

A. Plywood Roof Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 16/0.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

2.6 PARAPET SHEATHING

A. Plywood Parapet Sheathing: Either DOC PS 1 or DOC PS 2, Exterior, Structural I sheathing.

1. Span Rating: Not less than 16/0.
2. Nominal Thickness: Not less than 1/2 inch.

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Parapet Sheathing: ASTM C1177/C1177M.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
b. National Gypsum Company.
c. USG Corporation 1.

2. Type and Thickness: Regular, 1/2 inch thick.
3. Size: 48 by 96 inches for vertical installation.

2.7 FASTENERS

A. General: Provide fasteners of size and type indicated that comply with requirements specified in this article for material and manufacture.

1. For roof, parapet, and wall sheathing, provide fasteners with hot-dip zinc coating complying with ASTM A153/A153M.

B. Nails, Brads, and Staples: ASTM F1667.

C. Power-Driven Fasteners: Fastener systems with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on ICC-ES AC70.

D. Screws for Fastening Sheathing to Wood Framing: ASTM C1002.

E. Screws for Fastening Wood Structural Panels to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: ASTM C954, except with wafer heads and reamer wings, length as recommended by screw manufacturer for material being fastened.

F. Screws for Fastening Gypsum Sheathing to Cold-Formed Metal Framing: Steel drill screws, in length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached.

1. For steel framing less than 0.0329 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C1002.
2. For steel framing from 0.033 to 0.112 inch thick, use screws that comply with ASTM C954.

G. Screws for Fastening Composite Nail Base Insulated Roof Sheathing to Metal Roof Deck: Steel drill screws, in type and length recommended by sheathing manufacturer for thickness of sheathing to be attached, with organic-polymer or other corrosion-protective coating having a salt-spray resistance of more than 800 hours in accordance with ASTM B117. Provide washers or plates if recommended by sheathing manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials with defects that impair quality of sheathing or pieces that are too small to use with minimum number of joints or optimum joint arrangement. Arrange joints so that pieces do not span between fewer than three support members.

B. Cut panels at penetrations, edges, and other obstructions of work; fit tightly against abutting construction unless otherwise indicated.

C. Securely attach to substrate by fastening as indicated, complying with the following:

1. Table 2304.9.1, "Fastening Schedule," in the ICC's International Building Code.
2. Table R602.3(1), "Fastener Schedule for Structural Members," and Table R602.3(2), "Alternate Attachments," in the ICC's International Residential Code for One- and Two-Family Dwellings.
3. ICC-ES evaluation report for fastener.

D. Coordinate wall, parapet, and roof sheathing installation with flashing and joint-sealant installation so these materials are installed in sequence and manner that prevent exterior moisture from passing through completed assembly.

E. Do not bridge building expansion joints; cut and space edges of panels to match spacing of structural support elements.

F. Coordinate sheathing installation with installation of materials installed over sheathing so sheathing is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of the workday when rain is forecast.

3.2 GYPSUM SHEATHING INSTALLATION

A. Comply with GA-253 and with manufacturer's written instructions.
1. Fasten gypsum sheathing to cold-formed metal framing with screws.
2. Install panels with a 3/8-inch gap where non-load-bearing construction abuts structural elements.
3. Install panels with a 1/4-inch gap where they abut masonry or similar materials that might retain moisture, to prevent wicking.

B. Apply fasteners so heads bear tightly against face of sheathing, but do not cut into facing.

C. Horizontal Installation: Install sheathing with V-grooved edge down and tongue edge up.

Interlock tongue with groove to bring long edges in contact with edges of adjacent panels without forcing. Abut ends over centers of studs, and stagger end joints of adjacent panels not less than one stud spacing. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.

D. Vertical Installation: Install vertical edges centered over studs. Abut ends and edges with those of adjacent panels. Attach at perimeter and within field of panel to each stud.

1. Space fasteners approximately 8 inches o.c. and set back a minimum of 3/8 inch from edges and ends of panels.

E. Seal sheathing joints according to sheathing manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Apply elastomeric sealant to joints and fasteners and trowel flat. Apply sufficient amount of sealant to completely cover joints and fasteners after troweling. Seal other penetrations and openings.

3.3 CEMENTITIOUS BACKER UNIT INSTALLATION

A. Install panels and treat joints in accordance with ANSI A108.11 and manufacturer's written instructions for type of application indicated.

END OF SECTION 06 16 00

SECTION 06 20 23 – FINISH CARPENTRY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Interior standing and running trim.
2. Fitting and installation of wood doors, hollow metal doors and frames.
3. Installing finish door hardware.
4. Finish woodwork, wood benches tops, and trim.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 06 Section "Rough Carpentry" for furring, blocking, and other carpentry work not exposed to view.
2. Division 08 Section “Hollow Metal Doors and Frames.”
3. Division 08 Section “Door Hardware.”
4. Division 09 Section "Interior Painting" for finishing of interior finish carpentry.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Lumber grading agencies, and the abbreviations used to reference them, include the following:

1. NeLMA: Northeastern Lumber Manufacturers' Association.
2. NHLA: National Hardwood Lumber Association.
3. NLGA: National Lumber Grades Authority.
4. SPIB: The Southern Pine Inspection Bureau.
5. WCLIB: West Coast Lumber Inspection Bureau.
6. WWPA: Western Wood Products Association.

B. MDF: Medium-density fiberboard.

C. MDO Plywood: Plywood with a medium-density overlay on the face.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of process and factory-fabricated product. Indicate component materials and dimensions and include construction and application details.

1. Include data for wood-preservative and fire-retardant treatment from chemical treatment manufacturer and certification by treating plant that treated materials comply with requirements.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of trim/paneling indicated.

C. Research/Evaluation Reports: Showing that fire-retardant-treated wood complies with building code in effect for Project.

D. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Forest Certification: For the following wood products, provide materials produced from wood obtained from forests certified by an FSC-accredited certification body to comply with FSC 1.2, "Principles and Criteria":

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect materials against weather and contact with damp or wet surfaces. Stack lumber, plywood, and other panels flat with spacers between each bundle to provide air circulation. Provide for air circulation within and around stacks and under temporary coverings.

B. Deliver interior finish carpentry materials only when environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas. If interior finish carpentry materials must be stored in other than installation areas, store only where environmental conditions meet requirements specified for installation areas.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install interior finish carpentry materials until building is enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in space is completed and nominally dry, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining temperature and relative humidity at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

B. Do not install finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that materials are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that materials are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty for Columns: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by manufacturer, Installer, and Contractor, in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 1 year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS, GENERAL

A. Lumber: DOC PS 20 and applicable grading rules of inspection agencies certified by ALSC's Board of Review.

1. Factory mark each piece of lumber with grade stamp of inspection agency indicating grade, species, moisture content at time of surfacing, and mill.

B. Softwood Plywood: DOC PS 1.

C. Hardboard: AHA A135.4.

D. MDF: ANSI A208.2, Grade 130.

E. Particleboard: ANSI A208.1, Grade M-2.

2.2 WOOD-PRESERVATIVE-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Lumber: AWPA C2. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

B. Plywood: AWPA C9. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 18 percent.

C. Preservative Chemicals: Wood preservatives equal to alkaline copper quaternary (ACQ)

in accordance with the following:

1. AWPB LP-2, above ground application, .25 lb. per cubic foot of lumber, and 19% maximum MC.

2. AWPB LP-22 ground contact, .40 lb. per cubic foot of lumber, and 19% maximum MC.

D. For exposed items indicated to receive transparent finish, do not use chemical formulations that contain colorants or that bleed through or otherwise adversely affect finishes.

E. Do not use material that is warped or does not comply with requirements for untreated material.

F. Mark lumber with treatment quality mark of an inspection agency approved by ALSC's Board of Review.

G. Mark plywood with appropriate classification marking of an inspection agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.3 FIRE-RETARDANT-TREATED MATERIALS

A. Lumber: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C20. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 19 percent.

B. Plywood: Comply with performance requirements in AWPA C27. Kiln dry after treatment to a maximum moisture content of 15 percent.

C. For exposed items indicated to receive a stained or natural finish, use chemical formulations that do not contain colorants and provide materials that do not have marks from spacer sticks on the exposed face.

D. Do not use material that does not comply with requirements for untreated material or is warped or discolored.

E. Identify fire-retardant-treated wood with appropriate classification marking of testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM

A. Hardwood Lumber Trim for Transparent Finish (Stain or Clear Finish):

1. Species and Grade: Red oak; Clear A finish; NHLA.
2. Maximum Moisture Content: 10 percent.
3. Finger Jointing: Not allowed.
4. Gluing for Width: Use for lumber trim wider than 6 inches.
5. Veneered Material: Not allowed.
6. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).
7. Matching: Selected for compatible grain and color.

B. Lumber Trim for Opaque Finish (Painted):

1. Species and Grade: Eastern white pine, Finish or 1 Common; NeLMA or NLGA.
2. Species and Grade: White woods, 1 Common; WWPA.
3. Species and Grade: Yellow poplar; A finish; NHLA.
4. Maximum Moisture Content: 13 percent.
5. Face Surface: Surfaced (smooth).

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Fasteners for Interior Finish Carpentry: Nails, screws, and other anchoring devices of type, size, material, and finish required for application indicated to provide secure attachment, concealed where possible.

B. Glue: Aliphatic-resin, polyurethane, or resorcinol wood glue recommended by manufacturer for general carpentry use.

1. Use wood glue that has a VOC content of 30 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Installation Adhesive for Foam Plastic Moldings: Product recommended for indicated use by foam plastic molding manufacturer.

1. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Multipurpose Construction Adhesive: Formulation complying with ASTM D 3498 that is recommended for indicated use by adhesive manufacturer.

1. Use adhesive that has a VOC content of 70 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine finish carpentry materials before installation. Reject materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of projections and substances detrimental to application.

B. Before installing interior finish carpentry, condition materials to average prevailing humidity in installation areas for a minimum of 24 hours unless longer conditioning is recommended by manufacturer.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Do not use materials that are unsound, warped, improperly treated, or finished, inadequately seasoned, or too small to fabricate with proper jointing arrangements.

1. Do not use manufactured units with defective surfaces, sizes, or patterns.
2. Install in accordance with manufacturer's detailed installation guidelines.

B. Install interior finish carpentry level, plumb, true, and aligned with adjacent materials. Use concealed shims where necessary for alignment.

1. Scribe and cut interior finish carpentry to fit adjoining work. Refinish and seal cuts as recommended by manufacturer.
2. Countersink fasteners, fill surface flush, and sand where face fastening is unavoidable.
3. Install to tolerance of 1/8 inch in 96 inches for level and plumb. Install adjoining interior finish carpentry with 1/32-inch maximum offset for flush installation and 1/16-inch maximum offset for reveal installation.
4. Coordinate interior finish carpentry with materials and systems in or adjacent to it. Provide cutouts for mechanical and electrical items that penetrate interior finish carpentry.

C. Fabrication and installation of all acrylic solid surface stools shall be performed by an accredited fabrication shop in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions and final shop drawings.

3.4 STANDING AND RUNNING TRIM INSTALLATION

A. Install with minimum number of joints practical, using full-length pieces from maximum lengths of lumber available. Do not use pieces less than 24 inches long, except where necessary. Stagger joints in adjacent and related standing and running trim. Cope at returns and miter at corners to produce tight-fitting joints with full-surface contact throughout length of joint. Use scarf joints for end-to-end joints. Plane backs of casings to provide uniform thickness across joints where necessary for alignment.

1. Match color and grain pattern of trim for transparent finish (stain or clear finish) across joints.
2. Install trim after gypsum board joint finishing operations are completed.
3. Drill pilot holes in hardwood before fastening to prevent splitting. Fasten to prevent movement or warping. Countersink fastener heads on exposed carpentry work and fill holes.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Replace interior finish carpentry that is damaged or does not comply with requirements. Interior finish carpentry may be repaired or refinished if work complies with requirements and shows no evidence of repair or refinishing. Adjust joinery for uniform appearance.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean interior finish carpentry on exposed and semi-exposed surfaces. Touch up factory-applied finishes to restore damaged or soiled areas.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed products from damage from weather and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

B. Remove and replace finish carpentry materials that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

END OF SECTION 06 20 23

SECTION 07 14 00 - FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Provide a cold fluid-applied polyurethane waterproofing system on structural concrete, plywood sheathing, cover board, metal, or other substrates.

1. Work includes substrate preparation.
2. Work includes bridging and sealing air leakage and water intrusion pathways and gaps including connections of the walls to the roof air barrier, and penetrations of the building envelope including piping, conduit, ducts, and similar items.

B. Related Work: The following items are not included in this Section and are specified under the designated Sections:

1. Section 03 30 00 – CAST-IN-PLACE CONCRETE.
2. Section 06 16 00 – SHEATHING.
3. Section 07 60 00 – FLASHING AND SHEET METAL.
4. Section 07 92 13 – ELASTOMERIC JOINT SEALANTS.
5. Section 21 14 25 – DECK DRAINS.
6. DIVISION 6 – WOOD, PLASTICS AND COMPOSITES for wood decking
7. DIVISION 32 – EXTERIOR IMPROVEMENTS for pavers and pavement

1.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Cold fluid applied polyurethane waterproofing system is intended to perform as a continuous barrier against liquid water and to flash or discharge to the exterior incidental water. Membrane system is intended to receive an impervious overburden of optional insulation and concrete, tile in a cementitious setting bed, pavers in a sand setting bed, or asphalt pavement, and shall accommodate movements of building materials as required with accessory sealant materials at locations such as: changes in substrate, perimeter conditions and penetrations. Installed waterproofing membrane system shall not permit the passage of water and will withstand the design pressures calculated in accordance with the most current revision of ASCE 7.

B. Manufacturer shall provide all primary waterproofing materials that are physically and chemically compatible when installed in accordance with manufacturers current application requirements.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Submittals: Comply with project requirements for submittals as specified in Division 01.

B. Product Data: For each product.

C. Shop Drawings: Manufacturer's standard details and shop drawings for the specified system.

D. Installer's Authorization: Installer shall provide written documentation from the manufacturer of their authorization to install the system, and eligibility to obtain the warranty specified in this section.

E. Manufacturer' Certification: Certification showing full time quality control of production facilities and that each batch of material is tested to ensure conformance with the manufacturer's published physical properties.

F. VOC Certification: Manufacturer's certification that all waterproofing system products meet current Volatile Organic Compound (VOC) regulations as established by the State in which they are being installed; and stating total VOC content, in grams per liter, for all system components (i.e. primers, adhesives, coatings, etc.).

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications: Manufacturer shall demonstrate qualifications to supply materials of this section by certifying the following:

1. Membrane Manufacturer shall have been producing fluid-applied waterproofing membranes for over 30 years.
2. Membrane Manufacturer shall have available an in-house technical staff to assist the contractor, when necessary, in the application of the products and site review of the assembly.

B. Installer's Qualifications: The Contractor shall demonstrate qualifications to perform the Work of this Section by submitting certification or license by the waterproofing membrane manufacturer as a trained and authorized applicator of the product the installer intends to use.

C. Source Limitations: All components listed in this section shall be provided by a single manufacturer or approved by the primary waterproofing manufacturer.

D. Materials Compatibility: All materials included in the waterproofing assembly, as well as associated materials adhered to/applied beneath the waterproofing membrane shall have been tested and verified to be compatible. Include written testing documentation and test reports if requested by Architect.

E. Final Inspection: Manufacturer's representative shall provide to the Architect a comprehensive site visit report after the completion of the waterproofing system.

F. Applicable Regulations: Comply with local code and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Do not exceed VOC regulations as established by the State in which they are being installed, including total VOC content, in grams per liter, for all system components (i.e. primers, adhesives, coatings, and similar items).

G. Waterproofing Terminology: Refer to ASTM D1079 and the glossary of the National Roofing Contractors Association (NRCA) Roofing and Waterproofing Manual for definitions of waterproofing terms related to this section.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Prior to scheduled commencement of the waterproofing installation and associated work, conduct a meeting at the project site with the installer, architect/consultant, owner, manufacturer's representative, and any other persons directly involved with the performance of the Work. The Installer shall record conference discussions and to include decisions and agreements reached (or disagreements) and furnish copies of recorded discussions to each attending party. The main purpose of this meeting is to review foreseeable methods and procedures related to the Work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Deliver all waterproofing materials to the site in original containers, with factory seals intact.

B. Store all pail goods in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry location within their specified temperature storage range.

C. Do not expose materials to moisture in any form before, during, or after delivery to the site. Reject delivery of materials that show evidence of contact with moisture.

D. Remove manufacturer supplied plastic covers from materials provided with such. Use "breathable" type covers such as canvas tarpaulins to allow venting and protection from weather and moisture. Cover and protect materials at the end of each workday. Do not remove any protective tarpaulins until immediately before the material will be installed.

E. Materials shall be stored above 55°F (12.6°C) a minimum of 24 hours prior to application.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Weather: Proceed with waterproofing only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit. Membrane application can proceed when precipitation is imminent. Sikalastic RoofPro is capable of curing in immersion immediately after application. Visual marks in the form of pock marks may occur if uncured membrane is exposed to heavy rainfall but is not considered a limiting factor in the performance of the waterproofing membrane. Ambient/substrate temperatures shall be above 41°F (5°C) when applying the waterproofing system.

B. All surfaces to receive the waterproofing membrane shall be free from visible water, dew, frost, snow, and ice and be 5^0 F above the dew point. Application of waterproofing membrane shall be conducted in well-ventilated areas.

C. Waterproofing Membrane:

1. Waterproofing membrane is not intended to be exposed or in contact with a constant temperature below -22°F (-30°C) or in excess of 176°F (80°C). See technical data sheets for limitations, i.e., hot pipes and vents or direct steam venting.
2. Specified waterproofing membrane is non-flammable and VOC compliant. Consult container, packaging labels and Material Safety Data Sheets (MSDS) for specific safety information.
3. Specified waterproofing membrane is resistant to gasoline, paraffin, fuel oil, mineral spirits, and moderate solutions of acids and alkalis, acid rain and detergents. Some low molecular weight alcohols can soften. Any exposure to foreign materials or chemical discharges shall be presented to membrane manufacturer for evaluation to determine any impact on the waterproof membrane assembly performance prior to warranty issuance.

D. Contractor shall ensure adequate protection during installation of the waterproofing system.

E. Specified waterproofing membrane may be used as a temporary waterproofing barrier when applied at a wet film thickness of 15-20 mils to a properly prepared deck. When the specified waterproofing membrane is used as a temporary waterproofing barrier the waterproofing membrane does not need to be removed prior to installation of the finished waterproofing system. An approved Sikalastic RoofPro Primer will need to be applied to the approved deck prior to applying the temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier. Sika Reactivation Primer will be applied in between the existing temporary roofing/waterproofing barrier and finished roofing/waterproofing system after existing temporary barrier is clean, dry, and sound.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Provide manufacturer's standard warranty. Materials warranty shall be for a minimum of one year starting at the date of Substantial Completion. System warranty shall be for the following duration in accordance with specified system.

1. Warranty Length: 20 years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Sika Corporation, 201 Polito Avenue, Lyndhurst NJ 07071. Toll Free 800-933-SIKA (7452), usa.sika.com. No substitutions without prior written approval by the Architect.

B. Approved equal

2.2 WATERPROOFING SYSTEM

A. Fluid-Applied Membrane System, 20 Year Warranty: Sikalastic RoofPro WP 20, Premium Reemat:

1. Base Layer: Sikalastic 624 WP, 45 mils wet film thickness; 35 sf/gal coverage rate approx.
2. Top Layer: Sikalastic 624 WP, 40 mils wet film thickness; 40 sf/gal coverage rate approx.

2.3 MEMBRANES AND COATINGS

A. Base embedment coat with either Reemat or Fleece reinforcement shall be Sikalastic 624 WP by Sika Corp, a single component, cold, fluid applied, moisture triggered, aliphatic, polyurethane base coat membrane.

B. Topcoat with either Reemat or Fleece reinforcement shall be Sikalastic 624 WP by Sika Corp, a single component, cold, fluid applied, moisture triggered, aliphatic, polyurethane topcoat membrane.

C. Base coat and topcoat membranes shall be low in VOC's and be a one component elastomeric polyurethane membrane that may be applied by brush, roller or spray. Membrane shall have the following physical properties and conforms to ASTM D7311-07: Standard Specification for Liquid Applied, Single Component, Moisture-Triggered, Aliphatic Polyurethanes.

D. Liquid Property Requirements:

1. Viscosity, ASTM D2196: 5 to 20 Pa.s (pascal.seconds).

2. Volume Solids, ASTM D2697: 71% minimum.
3. Weight Solids: ASTM D1644: 78% minimum.
4. Sag Resistance, ASTM D4400: No sag at 700 micrometers (0.028 in. / 28 mil)

E. Film Physical Property Requirements:

1. Tensile Strength (Tension): ASTM D412: Minimum 1.86 MPa (270lb/in2)
2. Elongation: ASTM D412 : MIN 200%.
3. Accelerated Weathering FL/UV – 5000 Hours, ASTM G 154, No cracking or checking.
4. Water Vapor Transmission, Permeability / Permeance: ASTM E96: Maximum 8.5 gms/m2/ day (0.033 perm-inches).
5. Flexibility – Mandrel Bend, ASTM D522: Pass, no cracking or flaking.
6. Tear Resistance, ASTM D625: Minimum 5.8 kN/m (33 lbf/in)
7. Indentation Hardness, ASTM D2240: 82 Durometer Units (+/- 5 units)
8. Dynamic Puncture Resistance, ASTM D5635: Minimum 15 joules (357 ft.pounds)
9. Static Puncture Resistance, ASTM D5602: Minimum 20.7 kg. (45.5 lbs.)

2.4 MEMBRANE REINFORCEMENT - FIBERGLASS

A. Reinforcement for the waterproofing membrane system shall be Sika Reemat Premium by Sika Corp, a conformable, random strand fiberglass mat specifically designed to provide greater impact resistance and greater resistance to excessive thermal and structural movement while maintaining elasticity and membrane film integrity.

B. Supplemental reinforcement of the waterproofing membrane system shall be Sika Flexitape Heavy by Sika Corp, a nylon mesh specifically designed for local reinforcement of the waterproofing membrane at structural cracks, expansion joints and transitions between dissimilar materials, OR Sika Joint Tape SA by Sika Corp., a self-adhering polymeric rubberized tape with woven polyester facer.

2.5 FILLET BEAD AND PENETRATION SEALANT

A. Sealant for fillet bead applications and membrane penetrations shall be Sikaflex 11FC by Sika Corp., a one-part polyurethane sealant suitable for fillet bead transition compound to be applied prior to the installation of the membrane system at changes in substrate direction, sealing reglet terminations, cracks in the substrate and penetrations of the waterproofing system.

B. Exposed finish sealant shall be Sikaflex Hyflex 150 LM by Sika Corp., a one-part low modules hybrid sealant OR Sikasil WS-295. A one-part, low-modulus, weather sealing, silicone sealant suitable for finishing terminations at saw cuts and all UV exposed sealant terminations. SikaHyflex-150 LM is also suitable for fillet bead transition, changes in substrate direction, cracks in the substrate and penetrations of the roof before installation of the RoofPro membrane system.

2.6 PRIMERS

A. Concrete, roof cover boards and sealing cementitious and gypsum-based substrates shall be primed with Sika Concrete Primer Lo-VOC by Sika Corp., a single component, rapid curing, high solids, moisture cured primer or Sikalastic® EP Primer/Sealer or Sikalastic® EP Primer Rapid by Sika Corp., a two-component, cyclo-aliphatic, amine cured material.

B. Green and damp concrete shall be primed with Sikalastic® GDC primer by Sika Corp., a 2-component, moisture mitigating epoxy primer for Green, Damp and Dry Concrete surfaces as well as plywood.

C. Metal substrates shall be primed with Sikalastic® EP Primer/Sealer by Sika Corp., a two-component, cyclo-aliphatic, amine cured material with a high level of corrosion resistance for metal, bleed blocking on stable asphaltic surfaces, and chemically treated wood or the faster curing version Sikalastic® EP Primer Rapid by Sika Corp.

D. Membrane over-coating primer shall be Sika Reactivation Primer by Sika Corp., a single component polyurethane-based primer specifically designed for the reactivation of existing waterproofing system applications prior to membrane over-coating.

2.7 CONCRETE REPAIR AND PATCHING

A. Horizontal Cementitious repair mortar to repair bug holes, spalled areas, and other non-structural surface defects, or to slope decks shall be SikaQuick 1000 by Sika Corp., a two component, polymer-modified, Portland cement, fast-setting, trowel-grade mortar. Vertical & Overhead Cementitious repair mortar to repair bug holes, spalled areas and other non- structural surface defects shall be SikaQuick VOH.

B. Epoxy resin or urethane to fill uneven areas and birdbaths shall be Sikadur-22 Lo-Mod or Sikalastic-720.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that surfaces and conditions are ready to accept the Work of this section. Notify Architect in writing of any discrepancies. Commencement of the Work in an area shall indicate Installer's acceptance of the substrate.

B. Surfaces shall be sound, dry, clean, and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants. Fill voids, gaps, and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full flush.

3.2 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Verify that the deck is clean and smooth, free of depressions, waves, or projections, and properly sloped to drains, valleys, eaves, scuppers, or gutters. Verify that all openings or penetrations through the intended substrate are secured back to solid blocking. Ensure all preparatory Work is complete prior to applying membrane.

B. Mechanical fasteners used to secure sheathing boards or penetrate sheathing boards shall be set flush with sheathing and fastened into solid backing.

C. All surfaces shall be blown clean using best methods to remove any remaining loose debris.

D. All cracks and voids greater than 0.040 inches shall be routed and caulked with a polyurethane sealant. Allow to cure per waterproofing membrane manufacturer's technical data sheets prior to over-coating with the specified waterproofing membrane system.

E. At all inside corners, gaps, or voids at the juncture of the deck and penetrations apply a minimum 3/4-inch fillet bead of polyurethane sealant and allow to cure per waterproofing membrane manufacturer's technical data sheets prior to installing the waterproofing membrane system.

F. At all moving cracks, moving joints between dissimilar materials, and similar conditions, create a minimum 1-inch-wide bond break utilizing bond breaker tape, centered over the crack or joint.

G. Membrane terminations shall be established prior to project start-up and documented in shop drawings. Terminations shall occur in raked-out mortar joints, saw cut terminations or under installed counter-flashing materials.

H. Use tape lines to achieve a straight edge detail. Remove tape while application is still wet for clean lines.

3.3 SUBSTRATE PREPARATION

A. Acceptable substrates include concrete, concrete block, solid wood/plywood sheathing, cover board/thermal barriers, metal, and sound existing roofing membrane.

B. Structural Concrete:

1. Acceptable concrete substrates are limited to poured in place concrete decks.
2. Minimum deck thickness for structural concrete is 4 inches (10.2 cm).
3. Concrete surface to be light broom finish or equivalent.

4. Curing agents shall be checked for compatibility with specified waterproofing materials. Most curing agents shall be completely removed from the substrate by grinding, scarifying, or other mechanical means.
5. Concrete and masonry surfaces shall be low-pressure (5,000 psi or less) power-washed in accordance with ICRI Guideline No. 03732: Selecting and Specifying Concrete Surface Preparation for Sealers, Coatings, and Polymer Overlays to remove all dirt, debris or surface contamination that would compromise bonding of the specified waterproofing membrane system. Remove oil or grease with solvents, or detergent and water. Rinse surface clean of remaining cleaning agents.
6. Do not apply on substrates with moisture content greater than 4% by weight, measured by Tramex Concrete Moisture Encounter meter.
7. Application to Damp (moisture content greater than 4%) Concrete: Sikalastic® GDC Primer can be applied to damp concrete as soon as surface water has dissipated after rainfall or other sources of water have ceased.
8. Application to Green Concrete: Sikalastic® GDC Primer can be applied to horizontal concrete surfaces 48 hours after concrete pour (or when concrete is walkable) and vertical surfaces 24 hours after forms are removed.
9. Minimum substrate compressive strength > 3000 psi. at the time Sikalastic® GDC Primer is applied

C. Metal Surfaces:

1. Exposed drain bowls, pipes, and other metal surfaces shall be cleaned by power tool cleaning (SSPC SP-3 or SP-11) to remove corrosion deposits and achieve clean, bright metal followed by a solvent wipe with acetone prior to application of the specified primer.

3.4 PRIMING

A. Concrete, Masonry, Cover Boards, and Wood:

1. Mix and apply specified primer for concrete/masonry/wood surfaces by brush or roller at the application rate shown on the technical data sheet. Porous, rough, or absorbent surfaces will decrease coverage rates.
2. Allow to cure and dry in accordance with manufacturer's technical data sheets.

B. Metal:

1. Apply specified primer for metal drain bowls and other metal surfaces by brush or roller at the application rate shown on the technical data sheet to achieve an overall wet film thickness of 6-8 mils. **High roughness of the substrate will decrease coverage rates.**
2. Allow to cure and dry in accordance with manufacturer's technical data sheets.

C. Existing Membrane Tie-In:

1. Apply specified reactivation primer to existing waterproofing membrane greater than seven (7) days old by roller at a maximum coverage rate of 250 sf/gallon. Allow to cure in accordance with manufacturer's technical data sheets prior to application of subsequent waterproofing membrane system.

3.5 MEMBRANE REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcement of Cracks, Plywood and Cover Board Joints, Base/Curb Flashing Transitions and Dissimilar Materials:

1. For all locations where the specified membrane system is to be applied directly to the substrate surface, provide reinforcement of cracks and joints prior to applying the specified membrane system.
2. For all moving cracks and joints, create a minimum 1-inch-wide bond break centered over the crack or joint by applying bond break tape centered over each crack or joint.
3. For all non-moving cracks and joints, rout and seal with Sikaflex polyurethane sealant.
4. For all horizontal-to-vertical transitions, provide a ¾" x ¾" Sikaflex polyurethane sealant cant.
5. Apply a minimum of a 3-inch-wide strip of Sika Joint Tape SA directly and pressure roll for best adhesion. Thereafter apply liquid roofing/waterproofing membrane saturating woven polyester facer. Or apply a minimum 3-inch-wide strip of Sika Flexitape Heavy reinforcement into a bed of liquid roofing/waterproofing membrane at 30 -40 wet mils. Back roll reinforcement to fully embed reinforcement into the wet liquid polyurethane membrane. Add more liquid membrane as needed to fully saturate and embed the reinforcement. *****Sika Flexitape Heavy cannot be applied over built up systems at cover board joints, only Sika Joint Tape SA.
6. Ensure reinforcement is not in tension during embedment.

3.6 COLD FLUID APPLIED MEMBRANE APPLICATION

A. Install waterproofing membrane system in accordance with current technical data sheets and in accordance with warranty guideline requirements.

B. Apply base embedment coat to horizontal deck and vertical wall surfaces by brush or 1/2-inch nap roller to achieve a continuous and uniform minimum wet film thicknesses as specified in warranty guideline requirements. Alternate application methods are notched squeegee and backroll or spray methods.

C. Immediately lay specified conformable reinforcement into the wet base embedment resin coat. Reemat reinforcement is typically torn or precut at flashings/penetrations before or during application.

D. Apply pressure to the membrane reinforcement with a roller to fully embed and saturate the membrane reinforcement into liquid waterproofing material. Remove air pockets from under the membrane by rolling them out.

E. Apply additional liquid material as required to ensure the membrane reinforcement is fully embedded and has conformed to the substrate without tenting or visible pinholes.

F. Overlap sheets of Reemat membrane reinforcement a minimum of 2 inches in all directions.

G. Extend membrane reinforcement vertically at adjacent wall surfaces in accordance with project details and specifications.

H. When using fiberglass mat reinforcement, allow the base embedment coat to fully cure dry prior to the placement of top coat or other applications of the specified waterproofing material.

I. Apply topcoat by nap roller, brush, or spray to achieve a continuous and uniform minimum wet film thickness as specified in warranty guideline requirements.

J. Install all flashings in accordance with manufacturer's standard details and job specific details.

3.7 PARAPET AND WALL FLASHINGS

A. Clean, prepare and prime flashing substrate surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications.

B. All parapet, wall, and curb flashings shall be provided with a cant bead of Sika 11FC sealant cant with Flexitape or Sika SA Tape reinforcement prior to Sika Reemat Premium/Sika Fleece flashing application. Terminate waterproofing membrane system at raked-out mortar joints, termination saw cut joint, or under installed counter-flashing materials. Seal all mortar joints and saw cut joints with Sikaflex polyurethane sealant.

C. Install metal counter flashings in accordance with project details.

3.8 DRIP EDGES AND OTHER METAL FLANGED FLASHING

A. Clean, prepare and prime metal flange surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications.

B. Metal flanges are typically encapsulated between two membrane layers, usually by providing membrane flashing as a stripping ply over the metal flange, with the field or flashing membrane extending beneath the metal flange. It is also acceptable to install the stripping ply under the metal flange and extend the field or flashing membrane over the metal flange.

C. For insulated waterproofing assemblies, metal flanges shall be mechanically fastened through the first membrane layer to wood nailers. For direct to substrate membrane applications where the waterproofing membrane is applied directly to the structural deck, metal flanges shall be mechanically fastened through the first membrane layer to the structural deck.

3.9 DRAINS

A. Clean, prepare and prime surfaces ready to receive membrane applications. Block drain bowl opening to avoid waterproofing material from entering the drainage system.

B. Remove strainer baskets and clamping rings from the drain bowl assembly. Temporarily replace the bolts back into assembly to avoid miss-alignment of connections after membrane applications are completed.

C. Extend the liquid waterproofing material and membrane reinforcement directly into the bowl of the prepared drain.

D. Remove drain blocks and allow the waterproofing system to fully cure dry prior to re-connecting the drain bowl assembly.

3.10 PENETRATIONS

A. Clean, prepare and prime surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications. Ensure that penetrations are secured to prevent movement.

B. Penetration flashings typically consist of two components. A vertical flashing component extends up the penetration and is torn (if Reemat reinforcement) at the bottom so that it can be extended horizontally onto the deck/substrate. A horizontal flashing component covers all of the tears/finger cuts and extends vertically up the penetration. The intent is to achieve a 2–3-inch overlap of the two flashing components.

3.11 EXPANSION JOINTS

A. Clean, prepare and prime surfaces ready to receive membrane flashing applications. For insulated waterproofing assemblies, wood nailers shall be installed as insulation stops prior to expansion joint flashing application.

B. Expansion joints shall be sealed with a compressible filler such as batt insulation to prevent condensation and to provide support for the flashing bellows.

C. Expansion joint flashings typically consist of four components. An initial reinforced membrane cradle of 6" wide Flexitape Heavy or Fleece is installed first, followed by a compressible foam rod under 25% compression, extending equally above and below the membrane level. A second reinforced membrane layer is installed over the foam rod to create a bellows. A third reinforced membrane layer is installed over the bellows. It is acceptable to use the flashing or waterproofing membrane as the final layer.

3.12 APPLICATION OF PENETRATION SEALANT

A. Seal reglet-based membrane terminations, heads of exposed mechanical fasteners, around penetrations, duct work, electrical and other apparatus extending through the waterproofing membrane with specified penetration sealant.

3.13 FLOOD TEST (WHERE APPLICABLE/AS REQUIRED)

A. Upon the completion of the waterproofing membrane system and associated terminations the contractor shall flood test the system. Provide temporary stops and plugs for the drains within the test area. Flood test with a minimum 2 inches of water for no less than 24 hours.

B. Repair and retest the system for no less than 24 hours, report all deficiencies to the Architect. Remove temporary stops and plugs. No other Work is to proceed without prior direction from the Architect.

3.14 MEMBRANE HIGH VOLTAGE ELD INTEGRITY TESTING
(WHERE APPLICABLE/AS REQUIRED)

A. Independent third-party testing companies are hired outside of Sika to perform high voltage ELD integrity testing of the completed Sikalastic RoofPro membrane.

B. Upon completion of the system installation and final inspection by manufacturer, the 3rd party testing company can then perform high voltage ELD integrity testing of the membrane.

C. Requirements for ELD testing, membrane has to cure a minimum of 14 days, membrane surface must be completely dry to perform testing, and high voltage testing method must be used: minimum 7.5 k/v.

D. Upon completion of ELD membrane testing a verbal report shall be provided to the A/E/C and manufacturer followed by a formal report. If ELD testing proves voids or inconsistencies in the membrane, all repairs are to be made by the installing applicator. Once satisfactory test results are received, all approved overburden should be installed within 48 hours.

3.15 PROTECTION

A. Protect waterproofing Work from other trades until completion.

B. Stage materials in such a manner that avoids foot traffic over completed waterproofed areas.

C. Provide temporary walkways and platforms to protect completed Work from traffic and point loading during the application process.

D. Provide temporary membrane tie-ins and water-stops at the end of each workday and remove prior to commencement of Work the following day.

3.16 AGGREGATE SURFACING/WEAR COURSE

A. After it has been allowed to cure 72 hours at 70°F, apply 32 mils WFT (50 SF/gallon) Sikadur 22 Lo-Mod resin to cured waterproofing membrane

B. While wet, Broadcast 16-30 kiln-dried aggregate (iron free and dust free) to refusal into the wet resin layer and allow to cure. Remove all loose aggregate.

C. Finish – Apply 18 mils WFT Sikalastic 745 AL to seal kiln-dried sand.

3.17 CLEAN-UP

A. Work areas are to be kept clean, clear, and free of debris at all times.

B. Do not allow trash, waste, and/or debris to collect on the work area. Trash, waste, and/or debris shall be removed from the work area on a daily basis.

C. All tools and unused materials shall be collected at the end of each workday and stored properly off of the finished waterproofed surface and protected from exposure to the elements.

D. Dispose of or recycle all trash and excess material in a manner conforming to current EPA regulations and local laws.

E. Properly clean the finished deck surface after completion, and make sure the drains and gutters are not clogged.

F. Clean and restore all damaged surfaces to their original condition.

END OF SECTION 07 14 00

SECTION 07 14 16 - COLD FLUID-APPLIED WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Polyurethane waterproofing.
   2. Accessory waterproofing system materials.

B. Related Requirements:

   1. Section 07 18 00 "Traffic Coatings" for exposed, fluid-applied membrane with an integral wearing surface.
   2. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Compatible: Material that will not adversely affect adjacent materials, is chemically compatible with adjacent materials, and where required for bond, achieves adhesive compatibility with adjacent materials.

B. Chemical Compatibility: Material that will not break down, deteriorate, degrade, or prematurely fail when in contact with another material. Material that will not cause chemical breakdown, deterioration, degradation, staining, or premature failure of another material.

C. Adhesive Compatibility: Material that will develop bond strength or provide a suitable surface for another material to develop bond strength complying with requirements when in contact with another material.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate requirements to provide suitable substrate for waterproofing and to minimize penetrations in waterproofing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and tested physical and performance properties of waterproofing.

2. Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate locations and extent of waterproofing.
2. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, sheet flashings, penetrations, inside and outside corners, expansion-joint conditions, tie-ins with adjoining waterproofing, and other termination conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by waterproofing manufacturer. Minimum of 5 years' experience in application of similar systems and products on projects of similar size and scope.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Company shall be ISO 9001:2015 Certified.

C. Manufacturer: Minimum 15 years of experience in manufacturing of high build coatings.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by waterproofing manufacturer. Protect stored materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Remove and replace materials that cannot be applied within their stated shelf life.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Apply waterproofing within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

1. Do not apply waterproofing to frozen, damp, or wet substrates, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above dew point.
2. Do not apply waterproofing when snow, rain, fog, or mist are present, or when such weather conditions are imminent during application and curing period.

B. Maintain adequate ventilation during application and curing of waterproofing materials.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or remove and replace waterproofing that fails to remain watertight within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Installer's Special Warranty: Submit warranty, covering the Work of this Section, for warranty period of 2 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1. Warranty includes leak remediation, including repair, removal, and replacement.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Waterproofing System: Obtain waterproofing materials from same manufacturer as waterproofing membrane or manufacturer approved by waterproofing membrane manufacturer.

2.2 POLYURETHANE WATERPROOFING

A. Single-Component, Modified Polyurethane Waterproofing: ASTM C836/C836M

1. Basis of Design:

a. Sikalastic® HLM 5000 GC by Sika Corporation.

2. Acceptable manufacturers are:

a. Sika
b. WR Meadows
c. Tremco
d. Approved equal

3. Performance Requirements: The following properties are based on product's standard system.

a. Minimum Recovery: 90 percent.
b. Swelling in Water (3 days at room temperature): None.
c. Service Temperature Range:
1) Minimum: Minus 40 degrees F (Minus 40 degrees C).
2) Maximum: 120 degrees F (49 degrees C).
d. Hardness, Shore OO: 85, ASTM C836.

e. Tensile Strength: 150 psi (1.0 MPa), ASTM D412.
f. Average Elongation: 600 percent, ASTM D412.
g. 100% Modulus: 80 psi (0.6 MPa), ASTM D412.
h. Moisture-Vapor Permeability (dry perms): < 0.1, ASTM E96.
i. Crack Bridging Test: Passed 1/16 inch (2 mm), ASTM C836.
j. Extensibility After Heat Aging: No cracking, ASTM C836.
k. Weight Loss (20 percent maximum): 16 percent, ASTM C836.

4. Color: Black or manufacturers standard.

2.3 ACCESSORY WATERPROOFING SYSTEM MATERIALS

A. General: Accessory materials as recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer for intended use and compatible with one another and with waterproofing.

B. Primer: Liquid primer as recommended in writing for substrate by waterproofing manufacturer.

1. Basis of Design:
a. Sikadur-22 Lo-Mod by Sika Corporation

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that concrete has cured and aged for minimum time period as recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.
2. Verify that substrate is visibly dry and within the moisture limits as recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer. Test for capillary moisture by plastic sheet method in accordance with ASTM D4263.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrates for waterproofing application.

B. Mask off adjoining surfaces not receiving waterproofing to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.

C. Close off deck drains and other deck penetrations to prevent spillage and migration of waterproofing fluids.

D. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, acid residues, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

E. Remove fins, ridges, and other projections, and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids.

3.3 PREPARATION AT TERMINATIONS, PENETRATIONS, AND CORNERS

A. Prepare surfaces at terminations and penetrations through waterproofing and at expansion joints, drains, sleeves, and corners in accordance with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in **ASTM C898/C898M**.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOFING

A. General: Apply waterproofing in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and to recommendations in **ASTM C898/C898M**.

B. Start installing waterproofing in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.

C. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended rate and allow it to dry.

D. Unreinforced Waterproofing Membrane Applications: Mix materials and apply waterproofing by spray, roller, notched squeegee, trowel, or other application method suitable to slope of substrate.

1. Apply one or more coats of waterproofing to obtain a seamless membrane free of entrapped gases and pinholes, with a minimum dry film thickness of **60 mils (1.5 mm)**.
2. Verify manufacturer's recommended wet film thickness of waterproofing every 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m).

E. Cure waterproofing, taking care to prevent contamination and damage to membrane. Ensure waterproofing membrane has cured before installation of topping.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: **Owner will engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections:

1. Testing agency to verify thickness of waterproofing during application for each 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m) of installed waterproofing or part thereof.

B. Perform the following tests before overlying construction is placed:

1. Flood Testing: Flood test each completed horizontal waterproofed area for leaks, in accordance with recommendations in ASTM D5957. Install temporary containment assemblies, plug, or dam drains, and flood with potable water.

    a. Flood to an average depth of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm)] with a minimum depth of 1 inch (25 mm)] and not exceeding a depth of [4 inches (100 mm)].
    b. Flood each area for 24 - 48 hours.
    c. After flood testing, repair leaks, repeat flood tests, and make further repairs until waterproofing and flashing installations are watertight.

        1) Cost of retesting is the responsibility of Contractor.

    d. Testing agency to prepare survey report indicating locations of initial leaks, if any, and final survey report.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a site representative qualified by waterproofing system manufacturer to inspect substrate conditions, surface preparation, membrane application, flashings, protection, and drainage components and to furnish daily reports to Architect.

1. Final Inspection: Arrange for waterproofing system manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect system installation on completion, and to prepare inspection report.
2. Repair or remove and replace components of waterproofing system where inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

D. Additional Tests and Inspections:

1. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine if replaced or additional work complies with specified requirements.
2. Waterproofing system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 PROTECTION AND CLEANING

A. Protect waterproofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Protect installed membrane from damage due to UV light, harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings where material is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

C. Correct deficiencies in or remove waterproofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall waterproofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and in accordance with warranty requirements.

D. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended in writing by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 14 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 17 00 - BENTONITE WATERPROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Bentonite waterproofing.
2. Molded-sheet drainage panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving" for excavating and backfilling.
2. Section 31 50 00 "Excavation Support and Protection" for permanent below-grade support systems that receive blind-side waterproofing.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, and installation instructions.

B. Shop Drawings: Include installation details for waterproofing, penetrations, and interface with other work.

C. Samples: For each of the following products, in sizes indicated:

1. Waterproofing: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
2. Protection Course: 6 inches (150 mm) square.
3. Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: 6 inches (150 mm) square.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of waterproofing material.

B. Preconstruction Test Reports: For water samples taken at Project site along with recommendations resulting from these tests.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of installation on typical vertical and horizontal surfaces 10 sq. ft. (0.9 sq. m) in size.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform preconstruction testing on ground water.

1. Obtain water samples from Project site at approximate locations where waterproofing will be installed and test for acids, alkalis, brine, or other contaminants that may inhibit performance of waterproofing materials.
2. Comply with waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit bentonite waterproofing to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1. Do not apply waterproofing materials to surfaces where ice or frost is visible. Do not apply bentonite waterproofing materials in areas with standing water.
2. Do not place bentonite clay products in panel or composite form on damp surfaces unless such practice is approved in writing by manufacturer.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agree(s) to repair or replace components of bentonite waterproofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMPOSITE POLYETHYLENE/BENTONITE MEMBRANE

A. Composite Polyethylene/Bentonite Membrane: Minimum 90-mil- (2.3-mm-) thick membrane consisting of a polyethylene geomembrane bonded to a layer of bentonite.

1. **Manufacturers:** Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. C.R. Meadows
b. CETCO is a subsidiary of Minerals Technologies Inc.
c. Tremco Incorporated.
d. Approved equal

2. Puncture Resistance: 70 lbf (311 N) according to ASTM D4833 or 169 lbf (752 N) according to ASTM E154.
3. Vapor Permeance: 0.03 perm according to ASTM E96/E96M.

2.2 PROTECTION COURSE

A. Protection Course: Protection mat of type and thickness as recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer for each Project condition.

1. Adhesive: As recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

2.3 MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Nonwoven-Geotextile-Faced Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a nonwoven, needle-punched geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 70 (0.21-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core, [**with**] [**or**] [**without**] a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate of 9 to 18 gpm per ft. (112 to 220 L/min. per m).

B. Woven-Geotextile-Faced Molded-Sheet Drainage Panels: Composite subsurface drainage panel consisting of a studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.43-mm) sieve, laminated to one side of the core, [**with**] [**or**]

[**without**] a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a horizontal flow rate of not less than 2.8 gpm per ft. (35 L/min. per m).

C. Molded-Sheet Collector-Panel System: Composite subsurface collector-panel system by same manufacturer as primary molded-sheet drainage panels; consisting of a high-profile, studded, nonbiodegradable, molded-plastic-sheet drainage core; with a woven-geotextile facing with an apparent opening size not exceeding No. 40 (0.425-mm) sieve laminated to one side of the core, [**with**] [**or**] [**without**] a polymeric film bonded to the other side; and with a vertical flow rate of [**9 to 15 gpm per ft. (112 to 188 L/min. per m)**] <**Insert value**> and a horizontal flow rate of <**Insert value**>. Provide system with manufacturer's outlets, connectors, tapes, and other accessories to connect primary molded-sheet drainage panels with piped subdrainage system.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Granular Bentonite: Sodium bentonite clay containing a minimum of 90 percent montmorillonite (hydrated aluminum silicate), with a minimum of 90 percent passing a No. 20 (0.85-mm) sieve.

B. Bentonite Mastic: Bentonite compound of trowelable consistency, specifically formulated for application at joints and penetrations.

C. Bentonite Tubes: Manufacturer's standard 2-inch- (50-mm-) diameter, water-soluble tube containing approximately 1.5 lb/ft. (2.2 kg/m) of granular bentonite; hermetically sealed; designed specifically for placing on wall footings at line of joint with exterior base of wall.

D. Termination Bar: Extruded-aluminum or formed-stainless steel bars with upper flange to receive sealant.

E. Plastic Protection Sheet: Polyethylene sheeting according to ASTM D4397; thickness as recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer to suit application but at least 6 mils (0.15 mm) thick.

F. Cement Grout Patching Material: Grout mix compatible with substrate being patched and recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

G. Masonry Fasteners: Case-hardened nails or hardened-steel, powder-actuated fasteners. Depending on manufacturer's written requirements, provide 1/2- or 1-inch- (13- or 25-mm-) diameter washers under fastener heads.

H. Sealants: As recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer. Comply with requirements specified in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

I. Tapes: Waterproofing manufacturer's recommended waterproof tape for joints between sheets, membranes, or panels.

J. Adhesive: Waterproofing manufacturer's water-based adhesive used to secure waterproofing to both vertical and horizontal surfaces.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrate preparations and other conditions affecting performance of bentonite waterproofing.

B. Examine bentonite materials before installation. Reject materials that have been prematurely exposed to moisture.

C. Verify that substrate is complete and that work that will penetrate waterproofing is complete and rigidly installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean, prepare, and treat substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Formed Concrete Surfaces: Remove fins and projections. Fill voids, rock pockets, form-tie holes, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Horizontal Concrete Surfaces: Remove debris, standing water, oily substances, mud, and similar substances that could impair the bonding ability of concrete or the effectiveness of waterproofing. Fill voids, cracks greater than 1/8 inch (3 mm), honeycomb areas, and other defects with bentonite mastic or cement grout patching material according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Excavation Support and Protection System: If water is seeping, use plastic protection sheets or other suitable means to prevent wetting the bentonite waterproofing. Fill minor gaps and spaces 1/8 inch (3 mm) wide or wider with wood, metal, concrete, or other appropriate filling material. Cover or fill large voids and crevices with cement mortar according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Prepare substrates, voids, cracks, and cavities; and install waterproofing and accessories according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Before installing, verify the correct side of waterproofing that will face substrate surface.
2. Apply granular bentonite around penetrations in horizontal surfaces and changes in plane according to manufacturer's details in preparation for bentonite tubes and mastic.
3. Apply bentonite tubes, bentonite mastic, or both at changes of plane, construction joints in substrate, projections, and penetrations.
4. Prime concrete substrates. Primer may be omitted on concrete surfaces that comply with manufacturer's written requirements for dryness, surface texture, and freedom from imperfections.

B. Apply bentonite tubes continuously on footing against base of wall to be waterproofed.

C. Protect waterproofing from damage and wetting before and during subsequent construction operations. Repair punctures, tears, and cuts.

D. Install protection course before backfilling or placing overburden when recommended in writing by waterproofing manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF COMPOSITE POLYETHYLENE/BENTONITE MEMBRANE

A. Install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) unless otherwise indicated. Stagger end joints between membranes a minimum of 24 inches (600 mm). Seal joints with permanent seam tape.

B. Below Structural Slabs-on-Grade: Apply waterproofing membrane with polyethylene side down, and staple ends and edges.

1. Install under footings, grade beams, and pile caps; or continue waterproofing through key joints between footings and foundation walls, and extend a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) up or beyond perimeter slab forms.
2. Protect waterproofing from damage caused by reinforcing bar supports with sharp edges.

C. Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a continuous layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 4 inches (100 mm).

D. Concrete Walls: Apply mastic to form continuous 3/4-inch (19-mm) cant or fillet at intersection of footings and walls.

1. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane horizontally, extending a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) onto the footing. Lap membrane ends and edges a minimum of 2 inches (50 mm).
2. Secure membrane to wall.
3. Apply mastic to form continuous 3/4-inch (19-mm) layer around penetrations.
4. Termination at Grade: Extend waterproofing membrane to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finish grade unless otherwise indicated. Secure top edge with termination bar. Apply sealant to top edge of termination bar.

E. Excavation Support and Protection (Permanent Shoring): Cut, clean, and treat tiebacks and similar projections. Encase tieback heads, rods, nuts, and plates according to waterproofing manufacturer's written instructions for each configuration. If water is present, cover shoring and lagging with plastic protection sheets; remove plastic sheets before placing concrete.

1. Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped minimum of 4 inches (100 mm) and nailed to shoring.
2. Inspect and repair waterproofing membrane after reinforcing steel has been placed. Coordinate and control concrete placement to avoid damage to waterproofing.

F. Horizontal Roofs, Plazas, and between Slabs: Starting at lowest point, install a layer of waterproofing membrane, with ends and edges lapped a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm).

1. Apply mastic to form continuous 3/4-inch (19-mm) cant or fillet at intersection of horizontal and vertical substrates. Extend waterproofing membrane to top of curb or to a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) above plane of waterproofing; secure with manufacturer's recommended tape.
2. Clean overlap area and apply waterproof tape, rolling the exposed edge to seal to membrane below.
3. Turn edges up and seal to vertical surfaces.
4. Cover waterproofing with a plastic slip-sheet and seal seams with permanent seam tape.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF MOLDED-SHEET DRAINAGE PANELS

A. Place and secure molded-sheet drainage panels according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use adhesives or another method that does not penetrate waterproofing. Lap edges and ends of geotextile to maintain continuity. Protect installed molded-sheet drainage panels during subsequent construction.

1. For vertical applications, install [**board insulation**] [**protection course**] before installing drainage panels.

B. Molded-Sheet Collector-Panel System: Install according to manufacturer's written instructions. Connect to piped subdrainage system.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed waterproofing installation before covering with other construction, and provide written report stating that installation complies with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Remove and replace applications of bentonite waterproofing where inspection indicates that it does not comply with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 17 00

SECTION 07 18 00 - TRAFFIC COATINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes traffic coatings and pavement markings for the following applications:

1. Pedestrian traffic.
2. Vehicular traffic.
3. Equipment-room floor.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for moisture curing of concrete traffic coating substrate.
2. Section 07 19 00 "Water Repellents" for penetrating and film-forming water repellents applied on traffic-bearing surfaces.
3. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants and accessories and joint preparation.
4. Sections 07 90 00 / 07 95 00 Joint Protection/ Expansion Control
5. Section 32 17 23 "Pavement Markings" for traffic marking paint and coatings.

1.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Fluid-applied polyurethane waterproofing coating consisting of fast-setting, two-component, reactive curing mechanism with very low odor for vehicular and pedestrian areas. VOC compliant.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of traffic coating product and expansion joint accessory specified, indicating compliance with requirements.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations for traffic coating system components. Show details for each type of substrate, movement joints, corners, and edge conditions, including penetrations, transitions, and terminations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on rigid backing.

1. Provide stepped Samples on backing to illustrate buildup of traffic coatings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturer, and traffic coating Inspector.

1. Certification of manufacturer's approval of Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: Test data for traffic coating products and traffic coating system, by qualified testing agency, indicating proposed traffic coating meets performance requirements, when requested by Architect.

C. Warranty: Sample of unexecuted manufacturer and installer special warranties.

D. Field quality control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For traffic coatings to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A manufacturer-approved firm with minimum five years' experience in installation of specified products in successful use on similar projects, employing workers trained by manufacturer, including a full-time on-site supervisor with a minimum of three years' experience installing similar work, and able to communicate verbally with Contractor , Architect, and employees.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer listed in this chapter with minimum five years’ experience in manufacture of traffic coating as one of its principal products.

1. Manufacturer's product submitted has been in satisfactory operation on five similar installations for at least five years.
2. Approval of Manufacturers and Comparable Products: submit the following in accordance with project substitution requirements, within time allowed for substitution review:

a. Completed and signed Substitution Request form.
b. Product data, including certified independent test data indicating compliance with requirements.
c. Sample shop drawings from similar project.

d. Project references: Minimum of five installations of similar system not less than five years old, with Owner and Architect contact information.
e. Name and resume of proposed qualified Inspector.
f. Sample warranty.

C. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified independent agency experienced in the installation of the specified traffic coating system, and qualified to perform observation and inspection specified in Field Quality Control Article to determine Installer's compliance with the requirements of this Project, acceptable to Architect, retained by the Contractor.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Apply traffic coatings within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended in writing by manufacturer. Do not apply traffic coatings to damp or wet substrates, when temperatures are below 40 deg F, when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, or when temperatures are less than 5 deg F above dew point.

1. Do not apply traffic coatings in snow, rain, fog, or mist, or when such weather conditions are imminent during the application and curing period. Apply only when frost-free conditions occur throughout the depth of substrate.

B. Do not install traffic coating until items that penetrate membrane have been installed.

C. Pavement-Marking Paint: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for oil-based materials 50 deg F for water-based materials , and not exceeding 95 deg F .

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace traffic coating that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Adhesive or cohesive failures.
b. Abrasion or tearing failures.
c. Surface crazing or spalling.
d. Intrusion of water, oils, gasoline, grease, salt, deicer chemicals, or acids into deck substrate.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

A. Source Limitations:

1. Obtain traffic coatings from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Obtain primary traffic-coating materials, including primers, from traffic-coating manufacturer. Obtain accessory materials including aggregates, sheet flashings, joint sealants, and substrate repair materials of types and from sources recommended in writing by primary material manufacturer.
3. Obtain pavement-marking paint from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Basis of Design is Sikalastic 720 One Shot.

C. Acceptable manufacturers are:

1. Sika
2. BASF
3. Tremco
4. Pecora Corporation
5. Carlisle Coatings
6. Polycoat Products
7. Approved equal

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Traffic coating system shall be capable of performing as a continuous watertight installation and as a moisture drainage plane transitioned to adjacent flashings and discharging water to the structure exterior. Traffic coating shall accommodate normal substrate movement and seal expansion and control joints, construction material transitions, opening transitions, penetrations, and perimeter conditions without resultant moisture deterioration.

B. Compatibility: Provide traffic coating system materials that are compatible with one another and with adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by traffic coating manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Performance Requirements: Provide material complying with the following requirements:

1. Basecoat

a. Hardness: Shore A (60) per ASTM D 2240.
b. Tensile strength: 752 psi (5.2 MPa) per ASTM D 412.
c. Elongation: 595 percent per ASTM D 412.
d. Tear strength: 74 pli per ASTM D 1004.
e. Weight loss: 16 percent. Max: 40.

2. Tensile Strength: 3,000 psi (20.7 MPa), 3,400 psi (23.4 MPa) per ASTM D 412.
3. Elongation: 30 percent, 340 percent per ASTM D 412.
4. Hardness Shore A 94, per ASTM D 2240.
5. Taber Abrasion Resistance 100 mgms lost, 82 mgms, per ASTM C 957. CS-17 Wheel, 1,000 gm load, 1,000 cycles.

2.3 TRAFFIC COATING

A. Traffic Coating: Fluid-applied, moisture-curing, polyurethane, waterproofing, traffic-bearing, membrane deck coating system complying with ASTM C957

B. Preparatory and Base Coats as recommended in writing for project conditions by traffic coating manufacturer.

C. Primer: one component, moisture-curing polyurethane

D. Topcoat: two component, aliphatic top coat with UV resistance.

E. Aggregate: Manufacturer's standard aggregate free of respirable crystalline silica.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. General: Accessory materials as described in manufacturer's written installation instructions, recommended to produce complete traffic coating system meeting performance requirements, and compatible with traffic coating material and adjacent materials.

B. Joint Sealants: As specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

C. Expansion Joint Pre-compressed or Closed Cell, Monolithic Foam System.

D. Adhesive: Contact adhesive recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.

E. Reinforcing Strip: Fiberglass mesh recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content, surface smoothness, and other conditions affecting performance of traffic-coating work.

B. Verify Ensure substrates are sound and free of dust, dirt, laitance, paints, oils, grease, curing compounds or any other contaminants.

C. Verify substrate has properly cured. If efflorescence is present, mechanically remove it before proceeding. For extreme cases where this is not adequate, consult with manufacturer

1. Concrete should have minimum compressive strength of 3,000 psi (21 MPa) and be cured for minimum of 28 days or 80 percent of design strength.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Begin coating application only after substrate construction and penetrating work have been completed.
2. Begin coating application only after minimum concrete-curing and -drying period recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer has passed and after substrates are dry.
3. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and prepare substrates according to ASTM C1127 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce clean, dust-free, dry substrate for traffic-coating application. Remove projections, fill voids, and seal joints if any, as recommended in writing by traffic-coating manufacturer.

B. Priming: Unless manufacturer recommends in writing against priming, prime substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by traffic-coating material on same day. Reprime areas exposed for more time than recommended by manufacturer.

C. Schedule preparation work so dust and other contaminants from process do not fall on wet, newly coated surfaces.

D. Mask adjoining surfaces not receiving traffic coatings to prevent overspray, spillage, leaking, and migration of coatings. Prevent traffic-coating materials from entering deck substrate penetrations and clogging weep holes and drains.

E. Concrete Substrates: Mechanically abrade surface to a uniform profile acceptable to manufacturer, according to ASTM D4259. Do not acid etch.

1. Remove grease, oil, paints, and other penetrating contaminants from concrete.
2. Remove concrete fins, ridges, and other projections.
3. Remove laitance, glaze, efflorescence, curing compounds, concrete hardeners, form-release agents, and other incompatible materials that might affect coating adhesion.

4. Remove remaining loose material to provide a sound surface, and clean surfaces according to ASTM D4258.

3.3 APPLICATION – GENERAL

A. Apply traffic coating according to ASTM C1127 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply coats of specified compositions for each type of traffic coating at locations as indicated.

C. Start traffic-coating application in presence of manufacturer's technical representative.

D. Surface Pre-striping and Detailing

1. Pre-stripe with primer 1 inch beyond surfaces that require detail work, using short- nap roller.
2. For nonmoving joints and cracks less than 1/16 inch wide, apply 25 to 30 wet mils of base coat pre-striping over cured primer. Apply basecoat to fill and overlap joints or cracks 3 inches on each side. Feather edges.
3. Route dynamic cracks and joints over 1/16 inch to minimum of 1/4 inch by 1/4 inch (6 by 6 mm) and clean. Install bond breaker tape or approved bond breaker material to prevent adhesion to bottom of joint. Prime joint faces only with sealant primer and fill with sealant. Fill joints deeper than 1/4 inch with backer rod and deep joint sealant. For cracks, apply sealant flush with adjacent surface. For expansion joints, apply sealant slightly concave.
4. Coat low movement sealed joints 1 inch or less with deck coating system.
5. Do not coat expansion joints exceeding 1 inch wide or any sealant joints which have moderate to high movement, including primary wide expansion-joint system.
6. Where coating system will be terminated and no wall, joint or other break exists, cut 3/16 inch by 3/16 inch (6 by 6 mm) keyway into concrete. Fill and coat keyway as application of base coat progresses.

E. Cure traffic coatings. Prevent contamination and damage during coating application and curing.

3.5 TERMINATIONS AND PENETRATIONS

A. Prepare vertical and horizontal surfaces at terminations and penetrations through traffic coatings and at expansion joints, drains, and sleeves according to ASTM C1127 and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Provide sealant cants at penetrations and at reinforced and nonreinforced, deck-to-wall butt joints.

C. Apply into stormwater drain openings in deck levels below the grate as indicated on detail drawings

D. Terminate edges of deck-to-deck expansion joints with preparatory base-coat strip.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following field tests and inspections:

1. Materials Testing:

a. Samples of material delivered to Project site shall be taken, identified, sealed, and certified in presence of Contractor.
b. Testing agency shall perform tests for characteristics specified, using applicable referenced testing procedures.
c. Testing agency shall verify thickness of coatings during traffic-coating application for each 600 sq. ft. of installed traffic coating or part thereof.

2. Electronic Leak-Detection Testing:

a. Testing agency shall test each deck area for leaks using an electronic leak-detection method that locates discontinuities in the traffic-coating membrane.
b. Testing agency shall perform tests on abutting or overlapping smaller areas as necessary to cover entire test area.
c. Testing agency shall create a conductive electronic field over the area of traffic coating to be tested and electronically determine locations of discontinuities or leaks, if any, in the traffic coating.
d. Testing agency shall provide survey report indicating locations of discontinuities, if any.

B. Final Traffic-Coating Inspection: Arrange for traffic-coating manufacturer's technical personnel to inspect membrane installation on completion.

1. Notify Architect or Owner 48 hours in advance of date and time of inspection.

C. Waterproofing will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect traffic coatings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 07 18 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 21 00 - THERMAL INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Extruded polystyrene foam-plastic board.
2. Polyisocyanurate foam-plastic board.
3. Glass-fiber blanket.
4. Glass-fiber board.
5. Mineral-wool blanket.
6. Mineral-wool board.
7. Spray-applied cellulosic insulation.
8. Reflective.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Installer's Certification: Listing type, manufacturer, and R-value of insulation installed in each element of the building thermal envelope.

1. For blown-in or sprayed fiberglass and cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, indicate initial installed thickness, settled thickness, settled R-value, installed density, coverage area, and number of bags installed.
2. Sign, date, and post the certification in a conspicuous location on Project site.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Evaluation Reports: For foam-plastic insulation, from ICC-ES.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration due to moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store inside and in a dry location. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

B. Protect foam-plastic board insulation as follows:

1. Do not expose to sunlight except to necessary extent for period of installation and concealment.
2. Protect against ignition at all times. Do not deliver foam-plastic board materials to Project site until just before installation time.
3. Quickly complete installation and concealment of foam-plastic board insulation in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EXTRUDED POLYSTYRENE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD

A. Extruded polystyrene boards in this article are also called "XPS boards." Roman numeral designators in ASTM C 578 are assigned in a fixed random sequence, and their numeric order does not reflect increasing strength or other characteristics.

B. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type VII: ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi minimum compressive strength; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. DiversiFoam Products.
b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
c. Owens Corning.

C. Extruded Polystyrene Board, Type VII, Drainage Panels: ASTM C 578, Type VII, 60-psi minimum compressive strength; maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E 84; fabricated with shiplap or channel edges and with one side having grooved drainage channels.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. DiversiFoam Products.
b. Dow Chemical Company (The).
c. Owens Corning.

2.2 POLYISOCYANURATE FOAM-PLASTIC BOARD (Under Floor Deck at unenclosed areas)

A. Polyisocyanurate Board, Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation with Facers Both Sides: Rigid cellular foam, complying with ASTM C1289; Type I, aluminum foil both faces; Class 2, glass fiber-reinforced core.

1. Basis of Design:
   a. Dow Chemical Company; THERMAX™ Heavy Duty: www.dowbuildingsolutions.com.
2. Flame Spread Index (FSI): Class A - 0 to 25, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke Developed Index (SDI): 450 or less, when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Front Facer: 4.0 mil white embossed aluminum.
5. Back Facer: 1.25 mil embossed aluminum.
6. Fire Propagation Characteristics: Passes NFPA 285 testing as part of an approved assembly.

2.3 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET

A. Glass-Fiber Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

   a. CertainTeed Corporation.
   b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
   c. Knauf Insulation.
   d. Owens Corning.

2.4 GLASS-FIBER BLANKET INSULATION – INTERIM CANOPY

A. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C665, Type I; passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

    a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    c. Owens Corning.

2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

B. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Polypropylene-Scrim-Kraft Faced: ASTM C665, Type II (nonreflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.Owens Corning.
2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

C. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Kraft Faced: ASTM C665, Type II (nonreflective faced), Class C (faced surface not rated for flame propagation); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier).

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.Owens Corning.
2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

D. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Reinforced-Foil Faced: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced), Class A (faced surface with a flame-spread index of 25 or less); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.Owens Corning.

2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

E. Glass-Fiber Blanket Insulation, Foil Faced: ASTM C665, Type III (reflective faced), Class B (faced surface with a flame-propagation resistance of 0.12 W/sq. cm); Category 1 (membrane is a vapor barrier), faced with foil scrim, foil-scrim kraft, or foil-scrim polyethylene.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.Owens Corning.
2. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

2.5 GLASS-FIBER BOARD

A. Glass-Fiber Board, Unfaced: ASTM C 612, Type IA; unfaced, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84, passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of 4.4 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    b. Knauf Insulation.

B. Glass-Fiber Board, Faced: ASTM C 612, Type IA; faced on one side with foil-scrim-kraft with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft., thermal resistivity of not less than 4.34 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CertainTeed Corporation.
    b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    c. Knauf Insulation.
    d. Owens Corning.

2.6 GLASS-FIBER BOARD INSULATION – INTERIM CANOPY

A. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation, Unfaced: ASTM C612, Type IA; unfaced, passing ASTM E136 for combustion characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

    a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    c. Owens Corning.

2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Nominal Density: 2.25 lb/cu. ft.
5. Thermal Resistivity: 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
6. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

B. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation, Faced: ASTM C612, Type IA; faced on one side with foil-scrim-kraft or foil-scrim-polyethylene vapor retarder.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

    a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
    b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
    c. Owens Corning.

2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 25 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Nominal Density: 2.25 lb/cu. ft..
5. Thermal Resistivity: 4.3 deg F x h x sq. ft./Btu x in. at 75 deg F.
6. Labeling: Provide identification of mark indicating R-value of each piece of insulation 12 inches and wider in width.

2.7 MINERAL-WOOL BLANKETS

A. Mineral-Wool Blanket, Unfaced: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
b. Rockwool International.
c. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.

2.8 MINERAL-WOOL BOARD

A. Mineral-Wool Board, Type II, Unfaced: ASTM C 612, Type II; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 15 and zero, respectively, per ASTM E 84; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics. Nominal density of 6 lb/cu. ft..

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
b. Rockwool International.
c. Thermafiber, Inc.; an Owens Corning company.

2.9 SPRAY-APPLIED CELLULOSIC INSULATION

A. Self-Supported, Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: ASTM C1149, Type I (materials applied with liquid adhesive; suitable for either exposed or enclosed applications), chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. GreenFiber.
b. Hamilton Manufacturing Inc.
c. International Cellulose Corp.

2.10 LOOSE-FILL INSULATION – INTERIM CANOPY

A. Cellulosic-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C739, chemically treated for flame-resistance, processing, and handling characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Greenfiber, LLC.
b. Hamilton Manufacturing, Inc. (HMI).
c. Nu-Wool Co., Inc.

B. Glass-Fiber Loose-Fill Insulation: ASTM C764, Type I for pneumatic application orType II for poured application.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
b. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
c. Knauf Insulation.

2. Flame-Spread Index: Not more than 5 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
3. Smoke-Developed Index: Not more than 5 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

2.11 REFLECTIVE INSULATION – INTERIM CANOPY

A. Reflective Insulation: ASTM C1224, with one or more low-emittance surfaces with emittance value of 0.1 or less as measured per ASTM C1371.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Environmentally Safe Products (ESP) Low-E Reflective Insulation.

2. Construction: Surfaces separated with internal expanders.
3. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Maximum flame spread and smoke developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Water-Vapor Transmission: 1 perm, maximum.

2.12 INSULATION FASTENERS

A. Adhesively Attached, Spindle-Type Anchors: Plate welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. AGM Industries, Inc.
b. Gemco.

2. Plate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.

3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.

B. Adhesively Attached, Angle-Shaped, Spindle-Type Anchors: Angle welded to projecting spindle; capable of holding insulation of specified thickness securely in position with self-locking washer in place.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Gemco.

2. Angle: Formed from 0.030-inch-thick, perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet with each leg 2 inches square.

3. Spindle: Copper-coated, low-carbon steel; fully annealed; 0.105 inch in diameter; length to suit depth of insulation.

C. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge for increased stiffness, sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches square or in diameter.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. AGM Industries, Inc.
b. Gemco.

2. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in the following locations:

    a. Crawl spaces.
    b. Ceiling plenums.
    c. Attic spaces.

D. Insulation Standoff: Spacer fabricated from galvanized mild-steel sheet for fitting over spindle of insulation anchor to maintain air space of 1 inch 2 inches 3 inches between face of insulation and substrate to which anchor is attached.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

    a. Gemco.

E. Anchor Adhesive: Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation anchors securely to substrates without damaging insulation, fasteners, or substrates.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. AGM Industries, Inc.
    b. Gemco.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

A. Insulation for Miscellaneous Voids:

1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 764, Type II, loose fill; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 5, per ASTM E 84.
2. Spray Polyurethane Foam Insulation: ASTM C1029, Type II, closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.
3. Polyurethane Pour-In-Place Insulation: Closed cell, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 75 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84, specifically formulated for pour-in-place applications.

    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:Huntsman Building Solutions.Adhesive for Bonding Insulation: Product compatible with insulation and air and water barrier materials, and with demonstrated capability to bond insulation securely to substrates without damaging insulation and substrates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to insulation, including removing projections capable of puncturing insulation or vapor retarders, or that interfere with insulation attachment.

3.2 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions applicable to products and applications.

B. Install insulation that is undamaged, dry, and unsoiled and that has not been left exposed to ice, rain, or snow at any time.

C. Extend insulation to envelop entire area to be insulated. Fit tightly around obstructions and fill voids with insulation. Remove projections that interfere with placement.

D. Provide sizes to fit applications and selected from manufacturer's standard thicknesses, widths, and lengths. Apply single layer of insulation units unless multiple layers are otherwise shown or required to make up total thickness or to achieve R-value.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION IN FRAMED CONSTRUCTION

A. Blanket Insulation: Install in cavities formed by framing members according to the following requirements:

1. Use insulation widths and lengths that fill the cavities formed by framing members. If more than one length is required to fill the cavities, provide lengths that will produce a snug fit between ends.
2. Place insulation in cavities formed by framing members to produce a friction fit between edges of insulation and adjoining framing members.
3. Maintain 3-inch clearance of insulation around recessed lighting fixtures not rated for or protected from contact with insulation.
4. For metal-framed wall cavities where cavity heights exceed 96 inches, support unfaced blankets mechanically and support faced blankets by taping flanges of insulation to flanges of metal studs.
5. Vapor-Retarder-Faced Blankets: Tape joints and ruptures in vapor-retarder facings, and seal each continuous area of insulation to ensure airtight installation.

    a. Exterior Walls: Set units with facing placed toward exterior of construction interior of construction as indicated on Drawings.

b. Interior Walls: Set units with facing placed as indicated on Drawings toward areas of high humidity <Insert location>.

B. Miscellaneous Voids: Install insulation in miscellaneous voids and cavity spaces where required to prevent gaps in insulation using the following materials:

1. Glass-Fiber Insulation: Compact to approximately 40 percent of normal maximum volume equaling a density of approximately 2.5 lb/cu. ft..
2. Spray Polyurethane Insulation: Apply according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Loose-Fill Insulation: Apply according to ASTM C 1015 and manufacturer's written instructions. Level horizontal applications to uniform thickness as indicated, lightly settle to uniform density, but do not compact excessively.

1. For cellulosic-fiber loose-fill insulation, comply with CIMA's Bulletin #2, "Standard Practice for Installing Cellulose Insulation."

D. Spray-Applied Cellulosic Insulation: Apply spray-applied insulation according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Do not apply insulation until installation of pipes, ducts, conduits, wiring, and electrical outlets in walls is completed and windows, electrical boxes, and other items not indicated to receive insulation are masked.
2. After insulation is applied, make flush with face of studs by using method recommended by insulation manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF REFLECTIVE INSULATION

A. Install sheet reflective insulation according to ASTM C727.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GLAZING WALL INSULATION

A. Install board insulation in glazing-wall construction according to manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Hold insulation in place by securing metal clips and straps or integral pockets within window frames, spaced at intervals recommended in writing by insulation manufacturer to hold insulation securely in place without touching spandrel glass. Maintain cavity width of dimension indicated on Drawings between insulation and glass.
2. Install insulation to fit snugly without bowing.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed insulation from damage due to harmful weather exposures, physical abuse, and other causes. Provide temporary coverings or enclosures where insulation is subject to abuse and cannot be concealed and protected by permanent construction immediately after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 21 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 26 00 - VAPOR RETARDERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Polyethylene vapor retarders.
2. Reinforced-polyethylene vapor retarders.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 03 30 00 "Cast-in-Place Concrete" for under-slab vapor retarders.
2. Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation" for vapor retarders integral with insulation products.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Minimum as required by Energy and Building Codes. Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: ASTM D4397, 10-mil- (0.25-mm-) thick sheet, with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (5.7 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

2.2 REINFORCED-POLYETHYLENE VAPOR RETARDERS

A. Minimm as required by Energy and Building Codes. Reinforced-Polyethylene Vapor Retarders: Sheet with outer layers of polyethylene film laminated to an inner reinforcing layer consisting of either nylon cord or polyester scrim and weighing not less than [20 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9 kg/100 sq. m)], with maximum permeance rating of 0.1 perm (5.7 ng/Pa x s x sq. m).

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Vapor-Retarder Tape: Pressure-sensitive tape of type recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer for sealing joints and penetrations in vapor retarder.

B. Adhesive for Vapor Retarders: Product recommended by vapor-retarder manufacturer and has demonstrated capability to bond vapor retarders securely to substrates indicated.

C. Vapor-Retarder Fasteners: Pancake-head, self-tapping steel drill screws; with fender washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrates of substances that are harmful to vapor retarders, including removing projections capable of puncturing vapor retarders.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS ON FRAMING

A. Place vapor retarders on side of construction indicated on Drawings.

B. Extend vapor retarders to extremities of areas to protect from vapor transmission. Secure vapor retarders in place with adhesives, vapor retarder fasteners, or other anchorage system as recommended by manufacturer. Extend vapor retarders to cover miscellaneous voids in insulated substrates, including those filled with loose-fiber insulation.

C. Seal vertical joints in vapor retarders over framing by lapping no fewer than two studs and sealing with vapor-retarder tape according to vapor-retarder manufacturer's written instructions. Locate all joints over framing members or other solid substrates.

D. Seal joints caused by pipes, conduits, electrical boxes, and similar items penetrating vapor retarders with vapor-retarder tape to create an airtight seal between penetrating objects and vapor retarders.

E. Repair tears or punctures in vapor retarders immediately before concealment by other work. Cover with vapor-retarder tape or another layer of vapor retarders.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VAPOR RETARDERS IN CRAWL SPACES

A. Install vapor retarders over prepared grade. Lap joints a minimum of 12 inches (305 mm) and seal with manufacturer's recommended tape. Install second layer over pathways to equipment.

B. Extend vapor retarder over footings and seal to foundation wall or grade beam with manufacturer's recommended tape.

1. Extend vapor retarder vertically minimum 24 inches (610 mm) above top of footing.

C. Seal around penetrations such as utilities and columns in order to create a monolithic, airtight membrane at grade surface, perimeter, and all vertical penetrations.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect vapor retarders from damage until concealed by permanent construction.

END OF SECTION 07 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 27 26 – FLUID-APPLIED MEMBRANE AIR BARRIERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following:

1. Materials and installation methods for fluid-applied, vapor impermeable air barrier membrane system located in the non-accessible part of the wall.
2. Materials and installation methods to bridge and seal air leakage pathways in roof and foundation junctions, window and door openings, control and expansion joints, masonry ties, piping and other penetrations through the wall assembly.

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-In-Place Concrete
2. Section 04 22 00 – Concrete Unit Masonry
3. Section 06 16 00 - Sheathing
4. Section 07 62 00 – Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim
5. Section 07 92 00 – Joint Sealants

1.03 DEFINITIONS

A. Air Barrier Assembly: The collection of air barrier materials and auxiliary materials applied to an opaque wall, including joints and junctions to abutting construction, to control air movement through the wall.

1.04 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Air barrier shall be capable of performing as a continuous vapor-impermeable air barrier and as a liquid-water drainage plane flashed to discharge to the exterior incidental condensation or water penetration. Air barrier assemblies shall be capable of accommodating substrate movement and of sealing substrate expansion and control joints, construction material changes, and transitions at

perimeter conditions without deterioration and air leakage exceeding specified limits.

B. The building envelope shall be designed and constructed with a continuous air barrier to control air leakage into, or out of the conditioned space. An air barrier shall also be provided for interior partitions between conditioned space and space designed to maintain temperature or humidity levels which differ from those in the conditioned space by more than 50% of the difference between the conditioned space and design ambient conditions. The air barrier shall have the following characteristics:

1. It must be continuous, with all joints made airtight.
2. It shall have a dry mil thickness of at least 40 mils (1.02mm)
3. It shall have an air permeability not to exceed 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57 psf) (equal to 0.02 L/s. x sq. m. @ 75 Pa), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2178.
4. It shall have an air permeability not to exceed 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57 psf) (equal to 0.2 L/s. x sq. m. @ 75 Pa), when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.
5. It shall be capable of withstanding positive and negative combined design wind, fan and stack pressures on the envelope without damage or displacement, and shall transfer the load to the structure. It shall not displace adjacent materials under full load.
6. It shall be durable or maintainable.
7. The air barrier shall be joined in an airtight and flexible manner to the air barrier material of adjacent systems, allowing for the relative movement of systems due to thermal and moisture variations and creep. Connection shall be made between:

    a. Foundation and walls
    b. Walls and windows or doors
    c. Different wall systems
    d. Wall and roof
    e. Wall and roof over unconditioned space
    f. Walls, floor and roof across construction, control and expansion joints
    g. Walls, floors and roof to utility, pipe and duct penetrations

8. All penetrations of the air barrier and paths of air infiltration/exfiltration shall be made airtight.

1.05 REFERENCES

A. The following standards and publications are applicable to the extent referenced in the text. The most recent version of these standards is implied unless otherwise stated.

B. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) and National Fire Protection Association (NFPA)

1. ASTM C1193 Guide for Use of Joint Sealants
2. ASTM D412 Standard Test Methods for Rubber Properties in Tension
3. ASTM D570 Standard Test Method for Water Absorption of Plastics
4. ASTM D1004 Standard Test Method for Tear Resistance (Graves Tear) of Plastic Film and Sheeting
5. ASTM D1876 Test Method for Peel Resistance of Adhesives
6. ASTM D1938 Standard Test Method for Tear-Propagation Resistance (Trouser Tear) of Plastic Film and Thin Sheeting by a Single-Tear Method
7. ASTM D1970 Standard Specification for Self-Adhering Polymer Modified Bituminous Sheet Materials Used as Steep Roofing Underlayment for Ice Dam Protection
8. ASTM D4258 Practice for Surface Cleaning Concrete for Coating
9. ASTM D4263 Test Method for Indicating Moisture in Concrete by the Plastic Sheet Method
10. ASTM D4541 Standard Test Method for Pull-Off Strength of Coatings Using Portable Adhesion Testers
11. ASTM E96 Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials
12. ASTM E154 Test Methods for Water Vapor Retarders Used in Contact with Earth Under Concrete Slabs, on Walls, or as Ground Cover
13. ASTM E1186 Practice for Air Leakage Site Detection in Building Envelopes and Air Retarder Systems
14. ASTM E2178 Standard Test Method for Air Permeance of Building Materials
15. ASTM E2357 Standard Test Method for Determining Air Leakage of Air Barrier Assemblies
16. NPFA 285 Standard Fire Test Method for Evaluation of Fire Propagation Characteristics of Exterior Non-Load-Bearing Wall Assemblies Containing Combustible Components

1.06 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include manufacturer's written instructions for evaluating, preparing, and treating substrate; technical data; and tested physical and performance properties of air barrier.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations and extent of air barrier. Include details for substrate joints and cracks, counterflashing strip, penetrations, inside and outside corners, terminations, and tie-ins with adjoining construction.

1. Include details of interfaces with other materials that form part of air barrier
2. Include details of mockups

C. Samples: Submit representative samples of the following for approval:

1. Fluid-Applied membrane
2. Self-Adhered Transition Membrane
3. Self-Adhered Through Wall Flashing

D. Product Certificates: For air barriers, certifying compatibility of air barrier and accessory materials with project materials that connect to or that come in contact with the barrier; signed by product manufacturer.

E. Qualification Data: For Applicator.

F. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for air barriers, submit certified test report showing compliance with requirements specified for ASTM E2178.

G. Warranty: Submit a sample warranty identifying the terms and conditions stated in Article 1.10.

1.07 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer: Air barrier systems shall be manufactured and marketed by a firm with a minimum of 20 years experience in the production and sales of waterproofing and air barriers. Manufacturers proposed for use, but not named in these specifications shall submit evidence of ability to meet all requirements specified, and include a list of projects of similar design and complexity completed within the past five years.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary air-barrier material and all air barrier assembly materials through one source from a single manufacturer.

C. Applicator Qualifications: A firm experienced in applying air barrier materials similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for this Project, whose work has resulted in applications with a record of successful in-service performance.

D. Mockups: Before beginning installation of air barrier, provide air barrier work for exterior wall assembly mockups, incorporating backup wall construction, external cladding, window, door frame and sill, insulation, and flashing to demonstrate surface preparation, crack and joint treatment, and sealing of gaps, terminations, and penetrations of air barrier membrane.

E. Pre-Installation Conference: A pre-installation conference shall be held prior to commencement of field operations to establish procedures to maintain optimum working conditions and to coordinate this work with related and adjacent work. Preinstallation conference shall include the Contractor, installer, Architect, and system manufacturer's field representative. Agenda for meeting shall include but not be limited to the following:

1. Review of submittals
2. Review of surface preparation, minimum curing period and installation procedures
3. Review of special details and flashings
4. Sequence of construction, responsibilities, and schedule for subsequent operations
5. Review of mock-up requirements
6. Review of inspection, testing, protection and repair procedures

1.08 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials and products in labeled packages. Store and handle in strict compliance with manufacturer’s instructions, recommendations and material safety data sheets. Protect from damage from sunlight, weather, excessive temperatures and construction operations. Remove damaged material from the site and dispose of in accordance with applicable regulations.

B. Do not double-stack pallets of fluid applied membrane components on the job site. Provide cover on top and all sides, allowing for adequate ventilation.

C. Protect fluid-applied membrane components from freezing and extreme heat.

D. Sequence deliveries to avoid delays, but minimize on-site storage.

1.09 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Apply air barrier within the range of ambient and substrate temperatures recommended by air barrier manufacturer. Protect substrates from environmental conditions that affect performance of air barrier. Do not apply air barrier to a wet substrate or during snow, rain, fog, or mist.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Submit manufacturer's warranty that air barrier and accessories are free of defects at time of delivery and are manufactured to meet manufacturer's published physical properties and material specifications.

B. Warranty Period: Five years from date of completion of the air barrier membrane installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 FLUID-APPLIED, VAPOR IMPERMEABLE MEMBRANE AIR BARRIER

A. FLUID-APPLIED AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE: Perm-A-Barrier® NPL 10, as manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies, 62 Whittemore Avenue, Cambridge, MA, or approved equal. A fluid-applied, vapor impermeable membrane that cures to form a resilient, monolithic, fully bonded elastomeric membrane when applied to construction surfaces. The membrane provides superior protection against the damaging effects of air and liquid water ingress on the building structures. Product shall meet the following requirements:

1. Membrane Air Permeance: ASTM E2178: Not to exceed 0.004 cfm/sq. ft. under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57 psf) (equal to 0.02 L/s. x sq. m. @ 75 Pa)
2. Assembly Air Permeance: Provide a continuous air barrier assembly that has an air leakage not to exceed 0.04 cfm/sq. ft. of surface area under a pressure differential of 0.3 in. water (1.57 psf) (equal to 0.2 L/s. x sq. m. of surface area at 75 Pa) when tested in accordance with ASTM E2357.
3. Water Resistance: ASTM E331: Pass.
4. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, Method A: < 1 perm
5. Water Vapor Permeance: ASTM E96, Method B: < 1 perm
6. Pull Adhesion: ASTM D4541: minimum 20 psi or substrate failure to glass faced wall board (failure occurs when glass facing pulls away from gypsum core), and minimum 50 psi to concrete/CMU
7. Elongation: ASTM D412-Die C: minimum 300%
8. Low temperature flexibility and crack bridging: ASTM C1305: Pass at minus 15 degrees Fahrenheit (at minus 26 degrees Celsius).
9. Nail sealability: ASTM D1970: Pass
10. Fire Resistance: Evaluated to NFPA 285 as part of various wall assemblies

B. PREFABRICATED WINDOW CORNER: VYCORner manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies, or approved equal. Plastic inside corner to be mechanically fastened into lower corners of windows prior to installation of window flashing.

C. TRANSITION MEMBRANE: Perm-A-Barrier Detail Membrane manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal. A 0.9 mm (36 mils) of self-adhesive rubberized asphalt integrally bonded to 0.1 mm (4 mil) of cross-laminated, high-density polyethylene film to provide a min. 1.0 mm (40 mil) thick membrane.

Membrane shall be interleaved with disposable silicone-coated release paper until installed, conforming with the following:

1. Water Vapor Transmission: ASTM E96, Method B: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/Pa s. sq. m.) maximum
2. Air Permeance at 75 Pa (0.3 in. water) pressure difference: 0.0006 L/s. sq. m (0.00012 cfm/ sq. ft.) maximum
3. Puncture Resistance: ASTM E154: 178 N (40 lbs.) minimum
4. Lap Adhesion at minus 4 degrees Celsius (25 degrees Fahrenheit): ASTM D1876: 880 N/m (5.0 lbs./in.) of width
5. Low Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970: Unaffected to minus 43 degrees Celsius (minus 45 degrees Fahrenheit)
6. Tensile Strength: ASTM D412, Die C Modified: minimum 2.7 MPa (400 psi)
7. Elongation, Ultimate Failure of Rubberized Asphalt: ASTM D412, Die C: minimum 200%

D. FLEXIBLE MEMBRANE THRU-WALL FLASHING: Perm-A-Barrier Wall Flashing manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal. A 0.8 mm (32 mils) of self-adhesive rubberized asphalt integrally bonded to 0.2 mm (8 mil) of cross-laminated, high-density polyethylene film to provide a min. 1.0 mm (40 mil) thick membrane. Membrane shall be interleaved with disposable silicone-coated release paper until installed, conforming with the following:

1. Water Vapor Transmission: ASTM E96, Method B: 0.05 perms (2.9 ng/ Pa s. sq. m.) maximum
2. Water Absorption: ASTM D570: max. 0.1% by weight
3. Puncture Resistance: ASTM E154: 356 N (80 lbs.) minimum
4. Tear Resistance
   a. Initiation, ASTM D1004: min. 58 N (13.0 lbs.) M.D.
   b. Propagation, ASTM D1938: min. 40 N (9.0 lbs.) M.D.
5. Lap Adhesion at minus 4 degrees Celsius (25 degrees Fahrenheit): ASTM D1876: 880 N/m (5.0 lbs./in.) of width
6. Low Temperature Flexibility: ASTM D1970: Unaffected to minus 43 degrees Celsius (minus 45 degrees Fahrenheit)
7. Tensile Strength: ASTM D412, Die C Modified: minimum 5.5 MPa (800 psi)
8. Elongation, Ultimate Failure of Rubberized Asphalt: ASTM D412, Die C: minimum 200%

2.02 PRIMERS

A. Primer for Self-Adhered Transition Membrane and Flexible Membrane Wall Flashing: Perm-A-Barrier WB Primer manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or

approved equal. A water-based primer which imparts an aggressive, high tack finish on the treated substrate.

1. Flash Point: No flash to boiling point
2. VOC Content: Not to exceed 10 g/L
3. Application Temperature: minus 4 degrees Celsius (25 degrees Fahrenheit) and above
4. Freezing point (as packaged): minus 7 degrees Celsius (21 degrees Fahrenheit)

B. Primer for Self-Adhered Transition Membrane and Flexible Membrane Wall Flashing: Perm-A-Barrier Primer Plus manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies, or approved equal. A water-based primer which imparts an aggressive, high tack finish on the treated substrate. Product shall have the following minimum physical properties:

1. Color: Milky White (wet), Clear (dry)
2. Weight: 8.25 lbs./gal.
3. Solids Content (by weight): 53-57%
4. Solvent Type: Water
5. VOC Content: Not to excess 1 g/L
6. Application Temperature: 4 degrees Celsius (40 degrees Fahrenheit) and above

2.03 PENETRATIONS & TERMINATION SEALANT

A. Liquid Membrane for Details and Terminations and Substrate Patching: Bituthene Liquid Membrane manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal. A two-part, elastomeric, trowel grade material designed for use with fluid-applied membranes, self-adhered membranes and tapes. 10 g/L maximum VOC content.

B. Sealant for Details, Final Terminations and Sheathing Joint Treatment: Grace S100 Sealant manufactured by GCP Applied Technologies or approved equal. A one-part, neutral curing, ultra low modulus material designed for use with fluid-applied membranes, self-adhered membrane and tapes. 98 g/L maximum VOC content.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that substrates and conditions are ready to accept the Work of this section. Notify architect in writing of any discrepancies. Commencement of the Work or any parts thereof shall mean acceptance of the prepared substrates.

B. All surfaces must be sound, dry, clean and free of oil, grease, dirt, excess mortar or other contaminants detrimental to the adhesion of the membranes. Fill voids, gaps

and spalled areas in substrate to provide an even plane. Strike masonry joints full-flush.
Curing compounds or release agents used in concrete construction must be resin based without oil, wax or pigments.

3.02 SURFACE PREPARATION

A. Refer to manufacturer's literature for requirements for preparation of substrates. Surfaces shall be sound and free of voids, spalled areas, loose aggregate and sharp protrusions. Remove contaminants such as grease, oil and wax from exposed surfaces. Remove dust, dirt, loose stone and debris. Use repair materials and methods that are acceptable to manufacturer of the fluid-applied air barrier assembly.

B. Exterior sheathing panels: Ensure that the boards are sufficiently stabilized with corners and edges fastened with appropriate screws.

C. Masonry Substrates: Apply air and vapor barrier over concrete block and brick with smooth trowel-cut mortar joints, struck full and flush. Fill all voids and holes, particularly in the mortar joints, with a lean mortar mix, non-shrinking grout or parge coat.

D. Related Materials: Treat construction joints and install flashing as recommended by manufacturer.

E. Clean, prepare, treat, and seal substrate according to manufacturer's written instructions. Provide clean, dust-free, and dry substrate for air barrier application.

F. Mask off adjoining surfaces not covered by air barrier to prevent spillage and overspray affecting other construction.

G. Remove grease, oil, bitumen, form-release agents, paints, curing compounds, and other penetrating contaminants or film-forming coatings from concrete.

H. Remove fins, ridges, mortar, and other projections and fill honeycomb, aggregate pockets, holes, and other voids in concrete with substrate patching membrane.

I. Remove excess mortar from masonry ties, shelf angles, and other obstructions.

J. At changes in substrate plane, apply Perm-A-Barrier S100 Sealant or Bituthene Liquid Membrane at sharp corners and edges to form a smooth transition from one plane to another.

K. Cover gaps in substrate plane and form a smooth transition from one substrate plane to another with stainless-steel sheet mechanically fastened to structural framing to provide continuous support for air barrier.

3.03 JOINT TREATMENT

A. Concrete and Masonry: Prepare, treat, rout, and fill joints and cracks in substrate according to ASTM C1193 and air barrier manufacturer's written instructions. Remove dust and dirt from joints and cracks complying with ASTM D4258 before coating surfaces.

B. Gypsum Sheathing: Completely fill sheathing joints with Perm-A-Barrier S100 Sealant and install a scratch coat (approximately 15-30 mils) of Perm-A-Barrier S100 Sealant with a margin trowel or similar onto the face of the sheathing approximately 1 in. on each side of the sheathing joint, ensuring the edges are tapered to prevent shadowing of the air barrier membrane.

3.04 AIR BARRIER MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Apply air barrier membrane to achieve a continuous air barrier according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply air barrier membrane within manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges.

C. Apply a continuous unbroken air barrier to substrates according to the following minimum thickness. Apply membrane in full contact around protrusions such as masonry ties.

1. Vapor-Impermeable Membrane Air Barrier: 70-mil (1.8-mm) wet film thickness, 40-mil (1.0-mm) dry film thickness.

D. Do not cover air barrier until it has been tested and inspected by Owner's testing agency.

E. Correct deficiencies in or remove air barrier that does not comply with requirements; repair substrates and reapply air barrier components.

3.05 PREFABRICATED WINDOW CORNER INSTALLATION

A. Install prefabricated window corners into rough openings of windows at bottom corners of the window openings prior to installing primer and transition membrane. Install the corners into the rough opening in accordance with manufacturer’s installation instructions.

3.06 TRANSITION MEMBRANE INSTALLATION

A. Install strips, transition membrane, and auxiliary materials according to air barrier manufacturer's written instructions to form a seal with adjacent construction and maintain a continuous air barrier.

B. Apply primer to substrates to receive transition membrane at required rate and allow to dry. Limit priming to areas that will be covered by transition tape in same day. Re-prime areas exposed for more than 24 hours.

1. Prime glass-fiber-surfaced gypsum sheathing not covered with air membrane material with number of prime coats needed to achieve required bond, with adequate drying time between coats.

C. Connect and seal exterior wall air barrier membrane continuously to roofing membrane air barrier, concrete below-grade structures, floor-to floor construction, exterior glazing and window systems, glazed curtain-wall systems, storefront systems, exterior louvers, exterior door framing, and other construction used in exterior wall openings, using accessory materials.

D. At end of each working day, seal top edge of strips and transition membrane to substrate with termination sealant.

E. Apply joint sealants forming part of air barrier assembly within sealant manufacturer's recommended application temperature ranges. Consult sealant manufacturer when sealant cannot be applied within these temperature ranges.

1. Wall Openings: Prime concealed perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors. Apply transition membrane so that a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of coverage is achieved over both substrates. Roll firmly to enhance adhesion.

F. Fill gaps in perimeter frame surfaces of windows, curtain walls, storefronts, and doors, and miscellaneous penetrations of air barrier membrane with foam sealant.

G. Repair punctures, voids, and deficient lapped seams in strips and transition membrane. Slit and flatten fish-mouths and blisters. Patch with transition membrane extending 6 inches (150 mm) beyond repaired areas in strip direction.

3.07 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner may engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Inspections: Air barrier materials and installation are subject to inspection for compliance with requirements. Inspections may include the following:

1. Continuity of air barrier system has been achieved throughout the building envelope with no gaps or holes
2. Continuous structural support of air barrier system has been provided
3. Masonry and concrete surfaces are smooth, clean and free of cavities, protrusions, and mortar droppings
4. Site conditions for application temperature and dryness of substrates have been maintained
5. Maximum exposure time of materials to UV deterioration has not been exceeded
6. Surfaces have been primed, if applicable
7. Laps in strips and transition membrane have complied with minimum requirements and have been shingled in the correct direction (or mastic has been applied on exposed edges), with no fish-mouths
8. Termination sealant has been applied on cut edges
9. Strips and transition membrane have been firmly adhered to substrate
10. Compatible materials have been used
11. Transitions at changes in direction and structural support at gaps have been provided.
12. Connections between assemblies (membrane and sealants) have complied with requirements for cleanliness, preparation and priming of surfaces, structural support, integrity, and continuity of seal
13. All penetrations have been sealed

C. Tests: Testing to be performed will be determined by Owner's testing agency from among the following tests:

1. Qualitative Testing: Air barrier assemblies will be tested for evidence of air leakage according to ASTM E1186.

D. Remove and replace deficient air barrier components and retest as specified above.

3.08 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect air barrier system from damage during application and remainder of construction period, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Protect air barrier from exposure to UV light and harmful weather exposure as required by manufacturer. Remove and replace main air barrier material exposed for more than 2 months.

C. Clean spills, stains, and soiling from construction that would be exposed in the completed work using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

D. Remove masking materials after installation.

END OF SECTION 07 27 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 41 13.16 - STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Standing-seam metal roof panels.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review structural loading limitations of deck, purlins and rafters during and after roofing.
6. Review flashings, special details, drainage, penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel systems during and after installation.
9. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
10. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches (1:10).

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches (305 mm) long by actual panel width. Include clips, fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.
   1. Build mockups for typical roof area only, including attachments, underlayment and accessories.
      a. Size: [12 feet (3.5 m) long by 6 feet (1.75 m)].
      b. Each type of exposed seam and seam termination.
   2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
   3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

E. Copper Panels: Wear gloves when handling to prevent fingerprints and soiling of surface.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

B. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 year fluoropolymer finish, 10 year siliconized polyester finish from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special Weathertightness Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace standing-seam metal roof panel assemblies that fail to remain weathertight, including leaks, within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Energy Performance: Provide roof panels that are listed on the EPA/DOE's ENERGY STAR "Roof Product List" for steep-slope roof products.

B. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E1592:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/180 As indicated on Drawings, of the span.

4. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E1646 or ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft. (300 Pa).

D. Hydrostatic-Head Resistance: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E2140.

E. Wind-Uplift Resistance: Provide metal roof panel assemblies that comply with UL 580 for wind-uplift-resistance class indicated.

1. Uplift Rating: UL 90.

F. FM Global Listing: Provide metal roof panels and component materials that comply with requirements in FM Global 4471 as part of a panel roofing system and that are listed in FM Global's "Approval Guide" for Class 1 or noncombustible construction, as applicable. Identify materials with FM Global markings.

1. Fire/Windstorm Classification: Class 1A-[60] [75] [90] [105] [120] <Insert number>.
2. Hail Resistance: [MH] [SH].

G. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 STANDING-SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

A. Provide factory-formed metal roof panels designed to be installed by lapping and interconnecting raised side edges of adjacent panels with joint type indicated and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips in side laps. Include clips, cleats, pressure plates, and accessories required for weathertight installation.

1. Steel Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1514.
2. Aluminum Panel Systems: Unless more stringent requirements are indicated, comply with ASTM E1637.

B. Vertical-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with vertical ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.

C. Manufacturers
1. Carlisle Corporation
2. Mueller, Inc.
3. McElroy Metal
4. MBCI

5. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.

a. Thickness: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
b. Surface: Smooth, flat finish.
c. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer, FEVE fluoropolymer, Siliconized polyester, Clear anodized.
d. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range] <Insert color>.

6. Clips: One-piece fixed, Two-piece floating to accommodate thermal movement.

a. Material: 0.028-inch- (0.71-mm-), 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
b. Material: 0.0250-inch- (0.635-mm-), 0.0625-inch- (1.587-mm-) thick, stainless steel sheet.

7. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm) .
8. Panel Height: 1.0 inch (25 mm).

D. Trapezoidal-Rib, Snap-Joint, Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panels: Formed with raised trapezoidal ribs at panel edges and intermediate stiffening ribs symmetrically spaced, a flat pan between ribs; designed for sequential installation by mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips located under one side of panels, engaging opposite edge of adjacent panels, and snapping panels together.

E.
1. Carlisle Corporation

2. Mueller, Inc.
3. McElroy Metal
4. MBCI

5. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275) coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

    a. Nominal Thickness: 0.040 inch (1.02 mm).
    b. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer, FEVE fluoropolymer.
    c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

6. Aluminum Sheet: Coil-coated sheet, ASTM B209 (ASTM B209M), alloy as standard with manufacturer, with temper as required to suit forming operations and structural performance required.

    a. Thickness: [0.032 inch (0.81 mm)] [0.040 inch (1.02 mm)].
    b. Surface: [Smooth, flat] [Embossed] finish.
    c. Exterior Finish: [Two-coat fluoropolymer] [Three-coat fluoropolymer] [Mica fluoropolymer] [Metallic fluoropolymer] [FEVE fluoropolymer] [Siliconized polyester] [Clear anodized] [Color anodized] <Insert finish>.
    d. Color: [As indicated by manufacturer's designations] [Match Architect's samples] [As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range] <Insert color>.

7. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, [Type 304] [Type 316], fully annealed.

    a. Nominal Thickness: [0.0188 inch (0.477 mm)] [0.0250 inch (0.635 mm)] [0.0313 inch (0.795 mm)] [0.0375 inch (0.952 mm)] [0.050 inch (1.270 mm)].
    b. Exterior Finish: [ASTM A480/A480M No. 4] [ASTM A480/A480M No. 2B] <Insert finish>.

8. Clips: [One-piece fixed] [Two-piece floating] to accommodate thermal movement.

    a. Material: 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
    b. Material: [0.0250-inch- (0.635-mm-)] [0.0625-inch- (1.587-mm-)] thick, stainless steel sheet.

9. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm).
10. Panel Height: 3 inches (76 mm).

a. Material: 0.064-inch- (1.63-mm-) nominal thickness, zinc-coated (galvanized) or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet.
b. Material: 0.0625-inch- (1.587-mm-) thick, stainless steel sheet.

11. Joint Type: As standard with manufacturer.
12. Panel Coverage: 24 inches (610 mm).
13. Panel Height: 3.0 inches (76 mm).

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Self-Adhering, High-Temperature Underlayment: Provide self-adhering, cold-applied, sheet underlayment, a minimum of 30 mils (0.76 mm) thick, consisting of slip-resistant, polyethylene-film top surface laminated to a layer of butyl or SBS-modified asphalt adhesive, with release-paper backing. Provide primer when recommended by underlayment manufacturer.

1. Thermal Stability: Stable after testing at 240 deg F (116 deg C); ASTM D1970.
2. Low-Temperature Flexibility: Passes after testing at minus 20 deg F (29 deg C); ASTM D1970.
3. <Double click here to find, evaluate, and insert list of manufacturers and products.>

B. Slip Sheet: Manufacturer's recommended slip sheet, of type required for application.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645; cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 (Z275 hot-dip galvanized) coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 (Class AZM150) coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fascia, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and ridges, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, eaves, rakes, corners, bases, framed openings, ridges, fasciae, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

D. Gutters: Formed from same material as roof panels, complete with end pieces, outlet tubes, and other special pieces as required. Fabricate in minimum 96-inch- (2400-mm-) long sections, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Furnish gutter supports spaced a maximum of 36 inches (914 mm) o.c., fabricated from same metal as gutters. Provide wire ball strainers of compatible metal at outlets. Finish gutters to match metal roof panels, roof fascia and rake trim.

E. Downspouts: Formed from same material as roof panels. Fabricate in 10-foot- (3-m-) long sections, complete with formed elbows and offsets, of size and metal thickness according to SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Finish downspouts to match gutters.

F. Roof Curbs: Fabricated from same material as roof panels, 0.048-inch (1.2-mm) nominal thickness; with bottom of skirt profiled to match roof panel profiles and with welded top box and integral full-length cricket. Fabricate curb subframing of 0.060-inch- (1.52-mm-) nominal thickness, angle-, C-, or Z-shaped steel sheet. Fabricate curb and subframing to withstand indicated loads of size and height indicated. Finish roof curbs to match metal roof panels.

1. Insulate roof curb with 1-inch- (25-mm-) thick, rigid insulation.

G. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads.

H. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch (13 mm) wide and 1/8 inch (3 mm) thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

C. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal panel manufacturer for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:

1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

2. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
3. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
4. Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
5. FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether (FEVE) resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
6. Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
7. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil (0.013 mm).

D. Aluminum Panels and Accessories:

1. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
2. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
3. Mica Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended mica flakes containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.
4. Metallic Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Three-coat fluoropolymer finish with suspended metallic flakes containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride

(PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

5. FEVE Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Two-coat fluoropolymer finish containing 100 percent fluorinated ethylene vinyl ether (FEVE) resin in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
6. Siliconized Polyester: Epoxy primer and silicone-modified, polyester-enamel topcoat; with a dry film thickness of not less than 0.2 mil (0.005 mm) for primer and 0.8 mil (0.02 mm) for topcoat.
7. Exposed Anodized Finish:

    a. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, [AA-M12C22A41, Class I, 0.018 mm] [AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm] or thicker.
    b. Color Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A42/A44, Class I, 0.018 mm or thicker.

E. Stainless Steel Panels and Accessories:

1. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
2. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.

    a. Run grain of directional finishes with long dimension of each piece.
    b. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
    c. Directional Satin Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine primary and secondary roof framing to verify that rafters, purlins, angles, channels, and other structural panel support members and anchorages have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.
2. Examine solid roof sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal roof panel manufacturer.

a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Self-Adhering Sheet Underlayment: Apply primer if required by manufacturer. Comply with temperature restrictions of underlayment manufacturer for installation. Apply at locations indicated on Drawings, wrinkle free, in shingle fashion to shed water, and with end laps of not less than 6 inches (152 mm) staggered 24 inches (610 mm) between courses. Overlap side edges not less than 3-1/2 inches (90 mm). Extend underlayment into gutter trough. Roll laps with roller. Cover underlayment within 14 days.

1. Apply over the entire roof surface.

B. Felt Underlayment: Apply at locations indicated [below] [on Drawings], in shingle fashion to shed water, and with lapped joints of not less than 2 inches (50 mm).

C. Slip Sheet: Apply slip sheet over underlayment before installing metal roof panels.

D. Flashings: Install flashings to cover underlayment to comply with requirements specified in Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF STANDING SEAM METAL ROOF PANELS

A. Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.

3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
2. Aluminum Panels: Use aluminum or stainless steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use aluminum or galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.
3. Copper Panels: Use copper, stainless steel, or hardware-bronze fasteners.
4. Stainless Steel Panels: Use stainless steel fasteners.

C. Anchor Clips: Anchor metal roof panels and other components of the Work securely in place, using manufacturer's approved fasteners according to manufacturers' written instructions.

D. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

E. Standing-Seam Metal Roof Panel Installation: Fasten metal roof panels to supports with concealed clips at each standing-seam joint at location, spacing, and with fasteners recommended in writing by manufacturer.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.
2. Install pressure plates at locations indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.
3. Snap Joint: Nest standing seams and fasten together by interlocking and completely engaging factory-applied sealant.
4. Watertight Installation:

    a. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant or tape to seal joints of metal panels, using sealant or tape as recommend in writing by manufacturer as needed to make panels watertight.
    b. Provide sealant or tape between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
    c. At panel splices, nest panels with minimum 6-inch (152-mm) end lap, sealed with sealant and fastened together by interlocking clamping plates.

F. Clipless Metal Panel Installation: Fasten metal panels to supports with screw fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing recommended by manufacturer.

G. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal roof panel manufacturers; or, if not indicated, types recommended by metal roof panel manufacturer.

H. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level as indicated. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that will be permanently watertight and weather resistant.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and achieve waterproof and weather-resistant performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet (3 m) with no joints allowed within 24 inches (610 mm) of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently weather resistant and waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch (25 mm) deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

I. Gutters: Join sections with riveted and soldered or lapped and sealed joints. Attach gutters to eave with gutter hangers spaced not more than 36 inches (914 mm) o.c. using manufacturer's standard fasteners. Provide end closures and seal watertight with sealant. Provide for thermal expansion.

J. Downspouts: Join sections with telescoping joints. Provide fasteners designed to hold downspouts securely 1 inch (25 mm) away from walls; locate fasteners at top and bottom and at approximately 60 inches (1524 mm) o.c. in between

1. Provide elbows at base of downspouts to direct water away from building.

K. Roof Curbs: Install flashing around bases where they meet metal roof panels.

L. Pipe Flashing: Form flashing around pipe penetration and metal roof panels. Fasten and seal to metal roof panels as recommended by manufacturer.

3.5 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align metal panel units within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet (6 mm in 6 m) on slope and location lines as indicated and within 1/8-inch (3-mm) offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect metal roof panel installation, including accessories. Report results in writing.

B. Remove and replace applications of metal roof panels where tests and inspections indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements.

C. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 41 13.16

SECTION 07 42 00 - PERFORATED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Perforated and fabricated architectural metals.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 1 Section: Submittal Procedures.
2. Division 1 Section: Quality Control.
3. Division 1 Section: Closeout Submittals.
4. Division 3 Section: Cast-in-Place Concrete: Installation of Anchors.
5. Division 4 Section: Masonry Anchorage and Reinforcement: Installation of Anchors.
6. Division 5 Section: Metal Fabrications.
7. Division 5 Section: Metal Stairs and Ladders.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit listed submittals in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data and installation instructions for custom perforated metal architectural designs, including manufacturer's SPEC-DATA® product sheet. Include material, finish, available thicknesses and opening sizes.

C. Drawings:

1. Submit shop drawings detailing installation procedures, including layout, dimensions, anchorage, reinforcement, connections, supports and support placement.

D. Samples:

1. Submit 12" x 12" sample of perforation pattern in required material thickness. Sample to include formed edges per system design and finish as specified.

E. Quality Assurance:

1. Certificates: Product certificates signed by manufacturer certifying materials comply with specified performance characteristics and criteria and physical requirements.
2. Manufacturer's Instructions: Manufacturer's installation instructions.

F. Manufacturer's Field Reports: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements.

G. Closeout Submittals: Submit the following:

1. Warranty: Warranty documents specified herein.
2. Operation and Maintenance Data: Operation and maintenance data for installed products in accordance with Division 1 Closeout Submittals (Maintenance Data and Operation Data) Section. Include methods for maintaining installed products and precautions against cleaning materials and methods detrimental to finishes and performance.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: Fabrication performed in quality controlled manufacturing environment by experienced fabricators with references indicating multiple satisfactory experiences fabricating perforated metals as required for this project.

C. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly as shown on Drawings, including supports, attachments, and accessories.
2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of metal panel assembly mockup, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

D. General: Comply with Division 1 Product Requirements.

E. Ordering: Comply with manufacturer's ordering instructions and lead time requirements to avoid construction delays.

F. Delivery, Storage and Protection:

1. Deliver materials in original sealed manufacturer's packaging.
2. Store materials in dry, secure location.
3. Store in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. When warranties are required, verify with Owner's counsel that special warranties stated in this article are not less than remedies available to Owner under prevailing local laws.

1. Manufacturer's Warranty: Submit, for Owner's acceptance, manufacturer's standard warranty document executed by authorized company official. Manufacturer's warranty is in addition to, and not a limitation of, other rights Owner may have under Contract Documents.

1.9 WASTE MANAGEMENT & DISPOSAL

A. Deposit packaging materials in appropriate container onsite for recycling or reuse.

B. Avoid using landfill waste disposal procedures when recycling facilities are available.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORATED ARCHITECTURAL METALS

A. Basis of Design: Hendrick Architectural H-Clad HD System

1. Material: Aluminum: To ASTM B209.
   a. Thickness: 0.190" thick 5052-H32
   b. Sheet Size: Varies, refer to drawings
   c. Shape: Formed panel edges per design details
   d. Finish: Kynar factory finished

2. Perforations:
   a. Round: 1.5" diameter holes, 66.6 % open area, 1.75" staggered spacing.

3. Panel Margins: 1.125" min. margins all 4 sides
4. Fasteners: Stainless steel HWH w/ rubber washer
   a. 12" o.c. – long legs only
5. Sub-framing: 6"x4 3/4"x1/4" vertical aluminium tube
6. Sub-framing Fasteners: All stainless steel hardware

B. Subject to compliance with requirements, provide a comparable product by the following:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. SEAS
   b. Accurate Metal Fabricating

C. Substitions: Refer to Substitutions Section for procedures and submission requirements.

1. Pre-Contract (Bidding Period) Substitutions: Submit written requests ten (10) days prior to bid date.
2. Post-Contract (Construction Period) Substitutions: Submit written request in order to avoid curtain wall installation and construction delays.
3. Product Literature and Drawings: Submit product literature and drawings modified to suit specific project requirements and job conditions.
4. Certificates: Submit certificate(s) certifying substitute manufacturer (1) attesting to adherence to specification requirements for curtain wall system performance criteria, and (2) has been engaged in the design, manufacturer and fabrication of aluminum curtain walls for a period of not less than ten (10) years.
5. Test Reports: Submit test reports verifying compliance with each test requirement required by the project.
6. Samples: Provide samples of typical product sections and finish samples in manufacturer's standard sizes.

D. Substitution Acceptance: Acceptance will be in written form, either as an addendum or modification, and documented by a formal change order signed by the Owner and Contractor.

E. Source Limitations: Obtain all components of curtain-wall system, including framing and accessories, from single manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 MANUFACTURER'S INSTRUCTIONS

A. Compliance: Comply with manufacturer's written data, including product technical bulletins, product catalog installation instructions, product carton installation instructions, and manufacturer's SPEC-DATA® product sheet.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Site Verification of Conditions:

1. Verify substrate conditions are acceptable for product installation in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

2. Examine area to receive architectural metalwork for compliance with installation clearances.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install in compliance with manufacturer's product data, including product technical bulletins, application and installation instructions.

B. Erect metalwork square, plumb, straight and true.

C. Provide suitable means of anchorage as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Match exposed fastening devices to attached metalwork.

E. Provide components and setting templates to appropriate trades for placement in concrete or masonry.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Have manufacturer of products supplied under this Section review Work involved in handling, installation/application and protection of its product[s], and submit written reports in acceptable format to verify compliance of Work with Contract.

B. Protect installed product's finish surfaces from damage during construction.

3.5 COMPLETION & CLEANUP

A. After installation and prior to final acceptance, inspect metalwork for any damage. Repair or replace damaged installed products.

B. Clean installed products in accordance with manufacturer's instructions prior to Owner's acceptance. Remove protective coverings.

C. On completion and verification of performance of installation, remove surplus materials, excess materials, rubbish, tools and equipment.

END OF SECTION 07 42 00

SECTION 07 42 13.19 - INSULATED METAL WALL PANELS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Foamed-insulation-core metal wall panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Owner's insurer if applicable, metal panel Installer, metal panel manufacturer's representative, structural-support Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects metal panels, including installers of doors, windows, and louvers.
2. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
3. Review methods and procedures related to metal panel installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
4. Examine support conditions for compliance with requirements, including alignment between and attachment to structural members.
5. Review flashings, special siding details, wall penetrations, openings, and condition of other construction that affect metal panels.
6. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance, certificates, and tests and inspections if applicable.
7. Review temporary protection requirements for metal panel assembly during and after installation.
8. Review procedures for repair of metal panels damaged after installation.
9. Document proceedings, including corrective measures and actions required, and furnish copy of record to each participant.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for each type of panel and accessory.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include fabrication and installation layouts of metal panels; details of edge conditions, joints, panel profiles, corners, anchorages, attachment system, trim, flashings, closures, and accessories; and special details.
2. Accessories: Include details of the flashing, trim, and anchorage systems, at a scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of metal panel indicated with factory-applied color finishes.

1. Include similar Samples of trim and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Metal Panels: 12 inches long by actual panel width. Include fasteners, closures, and other metal panel accessories.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Product Test Reports: For each product, tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

C. Field quality-control reports.

D. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For metal panels to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are trained and approved by manufacturer.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical metal panel assembly as shown on Drawings, including corner, supports, attachments, and accessories.
2. Water-Spray Test: Conduct water-spray test of metal panel assembly mockup, testing for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver components, metal panels, and other manufactured items so as not to be damaged or deformed. Package metal panels for protection during transportation and handling.

B. Unload, store, and erect metal panels in a manner to prevent bending, warping, twisting, and surface damage.

C. Stack metal panels horizontally on platforms or pallets, covered with suitable weathertight and ventilated covering. Store metal panels to ensure dryness, with positive slope for drainage of water. Do not store metal panels in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

D. Retain strippable protective covering on metal panels during installation.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit assembly of metal panels to be performed according to manufacturers' written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate metal panel installation with rain drainage work, flashing, trim, construction of soffits, and other adjoining work to provide a leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of metal panel systems that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including rupturing, cracking, or puncturing.
b. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty on Panel Finishes: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace metal panels that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: **20** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. KingSpan,720 Marion Road, Columbus, OH 43207. T:614-444-0110, www.kingspanpanels.com. No substitutions without prior written approval by the Architect.

B. Centria: Insulated Metal Panel System – IMP Manufacturer

C. Approved equal.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Structural Performance: Provide metal panel systems capable of withstanding the effects of the following loads, based on testing according to ASTM E72:

1. Wind Loads: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Other Design Loads: As indicated on Drawings.

3. Deflection Limits: For wind loads, no greater than 1/240 of the span.

B. Air Infiltration: Air leakage of not more than 0.06 cfm/sq. ft. when tested according to ASTM E283 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..

C. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No water penetration when tested according to ASTM E331 at the following test-pressure difference:

1. Test-Pressure Difference: 6.24 lbf/sq. ft..

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes by preventing buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

E. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Provide metal wall panels and system components with the following fire-test-response characteristics, as determined by testing identical panels and system components per test method indicated below by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Fire-Resistance Characteristics: Provide materials and construction tested for fire resistance per ASTM E119.
2. Intermediate-Scale Multistory Fire Test: Tested mockup, representative of completed multistory wall assembly of which wall panel is a part, complies with NFPA 285 for test method and required fire-test-response characteristics of exterior non-load-bearing wall panel assemblies.
3. Radiant Heat Exposure: No ignition when tested according to NFPA 268.
4. Potential Heat: Acceptable level when tested according to NFPA 259.
5. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Provide wall panels with a flame-spread index of 25 or less and a smoke-developed index of 450 or less, per ASTM E84.

2.3 FOAMED-INSULATION-CORE METAL WALL PANELS

A. General: Provide factory-formed and -assembled metal wall panels fabricated from two metal facing sheets and insulation core foamed in place during fabrication, and with joints between panels designed to form weathertight seals. Include accessories required for weathertight installation.

1. Insulation Core: Modified isocyanurate or polyurethane foam using a non-CFC blowing agent, with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 450, respectively.

    a. Closed-Cell Content: 90 percent when tested according to ASTM D6226.
    b. Density: 2.0 to 2.6 lb/cu. ft. when tested according to ASTM D1622.
    c. Compressive Strength: Minimum 20 psi when tested according to ASTM D1621.
    d. Shear Strength: 26 psi when tested according to ASTM C273/C273M.

B. Concealed-Fastener, Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Formed with tongue-and-groove panel edges; designed for sequential installation by interlocking panel edges and mechanically attaching panels to supports using concealed clips or fasteners.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Kingspan Insulated Panels,; Benchmark Architectural Wall Panels: Designwall 2000 or a comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Metl-Span; Cornerstone Building Brands.
    b. MBCI; Cornerstone Building Brands.

2. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Facings of zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet complying with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation, or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet complying with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation; structural quality. Prepainted by the coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.

    a. Nominal Thickness: 0.032 inch, per manufacturer.
    b. Exterior Finish: Three-coat fluoropolymer.

        1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

    c. Interior Finish: Siliconized polyester.

        1) Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

3. Backer Board: On back side of exterior facing.
4. Snap-on Batten: Same material, finish, and color as exterior facings of wall panels.
5. Panel Size: 30”x24” nominal.
6. Panel Thickness: 3.0 inches.
7. Thermal-Resistance Value (R-Value): 24.1 according to ASTM C1363.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Miscellaneous Metal Subframing and Furring: ASTM C645, cold-formed, metallic-coated steel sheet, ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 aluminum-zinc-alloy coating designation unless otherwise indicated. Provide manufacturer's standard sections as required for support and alignment of metal panel system.

B. Panel Accessories: Provide components required for a complete, weathertight panel system including trim, copings, fasciae, mullions, sills, corner units, clips, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Match material and finish of metal panels unless otherwise indicated.

1. Closures: Provide closures at eaves and rakes, fabricated of same metal as metal panels.
2. Backing Plates: Provide metal backing plates at panel end splices, fabricated from material recommended by manufacturer.
3. Closure Strips: Closed-cell, expanded, cellular, rubber or crosslinked, polyolefin-foam or closed-cell laminated polyethylene; minimum 1-inch-thick, flexible closure strips; cut or premolded to match metal panel profile. Provide closure strips where indicated or necessary to ensure weathertight construction.

C. Flashing and Trim: Provide flashing and trim formed from same material as metal panels as required to seal against weather and to provide finished appearance. Locations include, but are not limited to, bases, drips, sills, jambs, corners, endwalls, framed openings, rakes, fasciae, parapet caps, soffits, reveals, and fillers. Finish flashing and trim with same finish system as adjacent metal panels.

D. Panel Fasteners: Self-tapping screws designed to withstand design loads. Provide exposed fasteners with heads matching color of metal panels by means of plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide EPDM or PVC sealing washers for exposed fasteners.

E. Panel Sealants: Provide sealant type recommended by manufacturer that are compatible with panel materials, are nonstaining, and do not damage panel finish.

1. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, gray polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.
2. Joint Sealant: ASTM C920; elastomeric polyurethane or silicone sealant; of type, grade, class, and use classifications required to seal joints in metal panels and remain weathertight; and as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.
3. Butyl-Rubber-Based, Solvent-Release Sealant: ASTM C1311.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. General: Fabricate and finish metal panels and accessories at the factory, by manufacturer's standard procedures and processes, as necessary to fulfill indicated performance requirements demonstrated by laboratory testing. Comply with indicated profiles and with dimensional and structural requirements.

B. Provide panel profile, including major ribs and intermediate stiffening ribs, if any, for full length of panel.

C. Fabricate metal panel joints with factory-installed captive gaskets or separator strips that provide a weathertight seal and prevent metal-to-metal contact, and that minimize noise from movements.

D. Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim: Fabricate flashing and trim to comply with manufacturer's recommendations and recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" that apply to design, dimensions, metal, and other characteristics of item indicated.

1. Form exposed sheet metal accessories that are without excessive oil canning, buckling, and tool marks and that are true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
2. Seams for Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with epoxy seam sealer. Rivet joints for additional strength.
3. Seams for Other Than Aluminum: Fabricate nonmoving seams in accessories with flat-lock seams. Tin edges to be seamed, form seams, and solder.
4. Sealed Joints: Form nonexpansion, but movable, joints in metal to accommodate sealant and to comply with SMACNA standards.
5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Exposed fasteners are not allowed on faces of accessories exposed to view.
6. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

    a. Size: As recommended by SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" or metal wall panel manufacturer for application but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Protect mechanical and painted finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved Samples. Noticeable

variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

C. Steel Panels and Accessories:

1. Three-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Concealed Finish: Apply pretreatment and manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish consisting of prime coat and wash coat with a minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, metal panel supports, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Examine wall framing to verify that girts, angles, channels, studs, and other structural panel support members and anchorage have been installed within alignment tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.
2. Examine wall sheathing to verify that sheathing joints are supported by framing or blocking and that installation is within flatness tolerances required by metal wall panel manufacturer.

    a. Verify that air- or water-resistive barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Examine roughing-in for components and systems penetrating metal panels to verify actual locations of penetrations relative to seam locations of metal panels before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Miscellaneous Supports: Install subframing, furring, and other miscellaneous panel support members and anchorages according to ASTM C754 and metal panel manufacturer's written recommendations.

3.3 METAL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Install metal panels according to manufacturer's written instructions in orientation, sizes, and locations indicated. Install panels perpendicular to supports unless otherwise indicated. Anchor metal panels and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.

1. Shim or otherwise plumb substrates receiving metal panels.
2. Flash and seal metal panels at perimeter of all openings. Fasten with self-tapping screws. Do not begin installation until air- or water-resistive barriers and flashings that will be concealed by metal panels are installed.
3. Install screw fasteners in predrilled holes.
4. Locate and space fastenings in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment.
5. Install flashing and trim as metal panel work proceeds.
6. Locate panel splices over, but not attached to, structural supports. Stagger panel splices and end laps to avoid a four-panel lap splice condition.
7. Align bottoms of metal panels and fasten with blind rivets, bolts, or self-tapping screws. Fasten flashings and trim around openings and similar elements with self-tapping screws.
8. Provide weathertight escutcheons for pipe- and conduit-penetrating panels.

B. Fasteners:

1. Steel Panels: Use stainless-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the exterior; use galvanized-steel fasteners for surfaces exposed to the interior.

C. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other or corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action as recommended in writing by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Joint Sealers: Install gaskets, joint fillers, and sealants where indicated and where required for weathertight performance of metal wall panel assemblies. Provide types of gaskets, fillers, and sealants indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.

1. Seal metal wall panel end laps with double beads of tape or sealant, full width of panel. Seal side joints where recommended by metal wall panel manufacturer.
2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSULATED METAL WALL PANEL INSTALLATION

A. General: Apply continuous ribbon of sealant to panel joint on concealed side of insulated metal wall panels as vapor seal; apply sealant to panel joint on exposed side of panels for weather seal.

1. Fasten foamed-insulation-core metal wall panels to supports with fasteners at each lapped joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer.
2. Apply panels and associated items true to line for neat and weathertight enclosure. Avoid "panel creep" or application not true to line.
3. Provide metal-backed washers under heads of exposed fasteners on weather side of insulated metal wall panels.
4. Locate and space exposed fasteners in uniform vertical and horizontal alignment. Use proper tools to obtain controlled uniform compression for positive seal without rupture of washer.
5. Provide sealant tape at lapped joints of insulated metal wall panels and between panels and protruding equipment, vents, and accessories.
6. Apply a continuous ribbon of sealant tape to panel side laps and elsewhere as needed to make panels weathertight.
7. Apply snap-on battens to exposed-fastener, insulated-core metal wall panel seams to conceal fasteners.

B. Foamed-Insulation-Core Metal Wall Panels: Fasten metal wall panels to supports with concealed clips at each joint at location and spacing and with fasteners recommended by manufacturer. Fully engage tongue and groove of adjacent panels.

1. Install clips to supports with self-tapping fasteners.

C. Accessory Installation: Install accessories with positive anchorage to building and weathertight mounting, and provide for thermal expansion. Coordinate installation with flashings and other components.

1. Install components required for a complete metal panel system including trim, copings, corners, seam covers, flashings, sealants, gaskets, fillers, closure strips, and similar items. Provide types indicated by metal panel manufacturer; or, if not indicated, provide types recommended by metal panel manufacturer.

D. Flashing and Trim: Comply with performance requirements, manufacturer's written installation instructions, and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual." Provide concealed fasteners where possible, and set units true to line and level. Install work with laps, joints, and seams that are permanently watertight.

1. Install exposed flashing and trim that is without buckling and tool marks, and that is true to line and levels indicated, with exposed edges folded back to form hems. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to achieve waterproof performance.
2. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim. Space movement joints at a maximum of 10 feet with no joints allowed within 24 inches of corner or intersection. Where lapped expansion provisions cannot be used or would not be sufficiently waterproof, form expansion joints of intermeshing

hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with mastic sealant (concealed within joints).

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Water-Spray Test: After installation, test area of assembly as directed by Architect for water penetration according to AAMA 501.2.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect completed metal wall panel installation, including accessories.

D. Metal wall panels will be considered defective if they do not pass test and inspections.

E. Additional tests and inspections, at Contractor's expense, are performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as metal panels are installed, unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions. On completion of metal panel installation, clean finished surfaces as recommended by metal panel manufacturer. Maintain in a clean condition during construction.

B. After metal panel installation, clear weep holes and drainage channels of obstructions, dirt, and sealant.

C. Replace metal panels that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 07 42 13.19

SECTION 07 54 23 - THERMOPLASTIC-POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Adhered thermoplastic polyolefin (TPO) roofing system.
2. Roof insulation.
3. Insulation accessories and cover board.
4. Walkways.

B. Section includes installation of sound-absorbing insulation strips in ribs of roof deck. Sound-absorbing insulation strips are furnished under Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking."

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 10 00 "Rough Carpentry" for wood nailers, curbs, and blocking; and for wood-based, structural-use roof deck panels.
2. Section 07 62 00 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for metal roof flashings and counterflashings.
3. Section 07 42 13.23 “Metal Composite Material Wall Panels” for copings.
4. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for joint sealants, joint fillers, and joint preparation.
5. Section 22 14 23 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for roof drains.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Roofing Terminology: Definitions in ASTM D1079 and glossary in NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Membrane Roof Systems" apply to Work of this Section.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preliminary Roofing Conference: Before starting roof deck construction, conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.

2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Review deck substrate requirements for conditions and finishes, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

B. Preinstallation Roofing Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Meet with Owner, Architect, Construction Manager, Owner's insurer if applicable, testing and inspecting agency representative, roofing Installer, roofing system manufacturer's representative, deck Installer, air barrier Installer, and installers whose work interfaces with or affects roofing, including installers of roof accessories and roof-mounted equipment.
2. Review methods and procedures related to roofing installation, including manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Review and finalize construction schedule, and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
4. Examine deck substrate conditions and finishes for compliance with requirements, including flatness and fastening.
5. Review structural loading limitations of roof deck during and after roofing.
6. Review base flashings, special roofing details, roof drainage, roof penetrations, equipment curbs, and condition of other construction that affects roofing system.
7. Review governing regulations and requirements for insurance and certificates if applicable.
8. Review temporary protection requirements for roofing system during and after installation.
9. Review roof observation and repair procedures after roofing installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For insulation and roof system component fasteners, include copy of SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listing.

B. Shop Drawings: Include roof plans, sections, details, and attachments to other work, including the following:

1. Layout and thickness of insulation.
2. Base flashings and membrane termination details.
3. Flashing details at penetrations.
4. Tapered insulation layout, thickness, and slopes.
5. Roof plan showing orientation of steel roof deck and orientation of roof membrane, fastening spacings, and patterns for mechanically fastened roofing system.
6. Insulation fastening patterns for corner, perimeter, and field-of-roof locations.
7. Tie-in with adjoining air barrier.

C. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Roof membrane and flashings, of color required.
2. Walkway pads or rolls, of color required.

D. Wind Uplift Resistance Submittal: For roofing system, indicating compliance with wind uplift performance requirements.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Certificates:

1. Performance Requirement Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that roofing system complies with requirements specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

a. Submit evidence of compliance with performance requirements.

2. Special Warranty Certificate: Signed by roof membrane manufacturer, certifying that all materials supplied under this Section are acceptable for special warranty.

C. Product Test Reports: For roof membrane and insulation, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency, indicating compliance with specified requirements.

D. Evaluation Reports: For components of roofing system, from ICC-ES.

E. Field Test Reports:

1. Fastener-pullout test results and manufacturer's revised requirements for fastener patterns.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For roofing system to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Certified statement from existing roof membrane manufacturer stating that existing roof warranty has not been affected by Work performed under this Section.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Manufacturers: A qualified manufacturer that is listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roofing system identical to that used for this Project.
2. Installers: A qualified firm that is approved, authorized, or licensed by roofing system manufacturer to install manufacturer's product and that is eligible to receive manufacturer's special warranty.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver roofing materials to Project site in original containers with seals unbroken and labeled with manufacturer's name, product brand name and type, date of manufacture, approval or listing agency markings, and directions for storing and mixing with other components.

B. Store liquid materials in their original undamaged containers in a clean, dry, protected location and within the temperature range required by roofing system manufacturer. Protect stored liquid material from direct sunlight.

1. Discard and legally dispose of liquid material that cannot be applied within its stated shelf life.

C. Protect roof insulation materials from physical damage and from deterioration by sunlight, moisture, soiling, and other sources. Store in a dry location. Comply with insulation manufacturer's written instructions for handling, storing, and protecting during installation.

D. Handle and store roofing materials, and place equipment in a manner to avoid permanent deflection of deck.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Weather Limitations: Proceed with installation only when existing and forecasted weather conditions permit roofing system to be installed according to manufacturer's written instructions and warranty requirements.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of roofing system that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Special warranty includes roof membrane, base flashings, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, and other components of roofing system.
2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Project Warranty: Submit roofing Installer's warranty, on warranty form at end of this Section, signed by Installer, covering the Work of this Section, including all components of roofing system such as roof membrane, base flashing, roof insulation, fasteners, cover boards, and walkway products, for the following warranty period:

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Installed roofing system and flashings to withstand specified uplift pressures, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Roof system and flashings to remain watertight.

1. Accelerated Weathering: Roof to withstand 2000 hours of exposure when tested according to ASTM G152, ASTM G154, or ASTM G155.
2. Impact Resistance: Roof membrane to resist impact damage when tested according to ASTM D3746, ASTM D4272, or the "Resistance to Foot Traffic Test" in FM Approvals 4470.

B. Material Compatibility: Roofing materials to be compatible with one another and adjacent materials under conditions of service and application required, as demonstrated by roof membrane manufacturer based on testing and field experience.

C. Wind Uplift Resistance: Design roofing system to resist the following wind uplift pressures when tested according to FM Approvals 4474, UL 580, or UL 1897:

1. Zone 1 (Roof Area Field): As indicated on the Structural drawings.
2. Zone 2 (Roof Area Perimeter): As indicated on the Structural drawings.

D. SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies Listing: Roof membrane, base flashings, and component materials comply with requirements in FM Approvals 4450 or FM Approvals 4470 as part of a roofing system, and are listed in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies for roof assembly identical for that specified for this Project.

E. Exterior Fire-Test Exposure: ASTM E108 or UL 790, Class A; for application and roof slopes indicated; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

2.2 THERMOPLASTIC POLYOLEFIN (TPO) ROOFING

A. TPO Sheet: ASTM D6878/D6878M, internally fabric- or scrim-reinforced, fabric-backed TPO sheet.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Carlisle Syntec Systems; Sure-Weld® TPO or a comparable product by one of the following:

a. Cooley Group.
b. Custom Seal Inc.
c. Firestone Building Products.
d. Flex Membrane International Corp.
e. GAF.
f. GenFlex Roofing Systems.
g. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.
h. Versico Roofing Systems; Carlisle Construction Materials.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain components for roofing system from roof membrane manufacturer or manufacturers approved by roof membrane manufacturer.
3. Thickness: 80 mils, nominal.
4. Exposed Face Color: White.

2.3 ACCESSORY ROOFING MATERIALS

A. General: Accessory materials recommended by roofing system manufacturer for intended use and compatible with other roofing components.

1. Adhesive and Sealants: Comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Sheet Flashing: Manufacturer's standard unreinforced TPO sheet flashing, 55 mils thick, minimum, of same color as TPO sheet.

C. Prefabricated Pipe Flashings: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

D. Roof Vents: As recommended by roof membrane manufacturer.

1. Size: Not less than 4-inch diameter.

E. Bonding Adhesive: Manufacturer's standard.

F. Slip Sheet: ASTM D2178/D2178M, Type IV; glass fiber; asphalt-impregnated felt.

G. Metal Termination Bars: Manufacturer's standard, predrilled stainless steel or aluminum bars, approximately 1 by 1/8 inch thick; with anchors.

H. Metal Battens: Manufacturer's standard, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated or zinc-coated steel sheet, approximately 1 inch wide by 0.05 inch thick, prepunched.

I. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners and metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roofing components to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

J. Miscellaneous Accessories: Provide pourable sealers, preformed cone and vent sheet flashings, preformed inside and outside corner sheet flashings, T-joint covers, lap sealants, termination reglets, and other accessories.

2.4 ROOF INSULATION

A. General: Preformed roof insulation boards manufactured or approved by TPO roof membrane manufacturer, approved for use in SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assemblies.

B. Polyisocyanurate Board Insulation: ASTM C1289, Type II, Class 2, Grade 2, felt or glass-fiber mat facer on both major surfaces.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Atlas Polyiso Roof and Wall Insulation.
b. Carlisle Syntec Systems.
c. CertainTeed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
d. GAF.
e. Hunter Panels; a Carlisle company.
f. Johns Manville; a Berkshire Hathaway company.

2. Compressive Strength: 20 psi.
3. Size: 48 by 48 inches.
4. Thickness:

    a. Base Layer: 1-1/2 inches.
    b. Upper Layer: 4 inches or as required for minimum R value.

C. Tapered Insulation: Provide factory-tapered insulation boards.

1. Material: Match roof insulation.
2. Minimum Thickness: 1/4 inch.
3. Slope:

    a. Roof Field: 1/4 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
    b. Saddles and Crickets: 1/2 inch per foot unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

2.5 INSULATION ACCESSORIES AND COVER BOARD

A. General: Roof insulation accessories recommended by insulation manufacturer for intended use and compatibility with other roofing system components.

B. Fasteners: Factory-coated steel fasteners with metal or plastic plates complying with corrosion-resistance provisions in FM Approvals 4470, designed for fastening roof insulation and cover boards to substrate, and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

C. Induction-Welding Plates: Minimum 3-inch diameter with recessed center, 0.034-inch thick, aluminum-zinc-alloy-coated steel plates, factory-coated with adhesive formulated for roof membrane, with corresponding corrosion-resistant fasteners.

D. Insulation Adhesive: Insulation manufacturer's recommended adhesive formulated to attach roof insulation to substrate or to another insulation layer as follows:

1. Modified asphaltic, asbestos-free, cold-applied adhesive.
2. Bead-applied, low-rise, one-component or multicomponent urethane adhesive.
3. Full-spread, spray-applied, low-rise, two-component urethane adhesive.

E. Fiber-Reinforced Cementitious Cover Board: ASTM C1325, fiber-mat-reinforced cementitious board.

1. Thickness: 1/2 inch.

2.6 WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways: Factory-formed, nonporous, heavy-duty, slip-resisting, surface-textured walkway pads or rolls, approximately 3/16 inch thick and acceptable to roofing system manufacturer.

1. Size: Approximately36 by 60 inches.
2. Color: Contrasting with roof membrane.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that roof openings and penetrations are in place, curbs are set and braced, and roof-drain bodies are securely clamped in place.
2. Verify that wood blocking, curbs, and nailers are securely anchored to roof deck at penetrations and terminations and that nailers match thicknesses of insulation.
3. Verify that surface plane flatness and fastening of steel roof deck complies with requirements in Section 05 31 00 "Steel Decking."

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean substrate of dust, debris, moisture, and other substances detrimental to roofing system installation according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions. Remove sharp projections.

B. Prevent materials from entering and clogging roof drains and conductors and from spilling or migrating onto surfaces of other construction. Remove roof-drain plugs when no work is taking place or when rain is forecast.

C. Install sound-absorbing insulation strips according to acoustical roof deck manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF ROOFING, GENERAL

A. Install roofing system according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements, and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29.

B. Complete terminations and base flashings and provide temporary seals to prevent water from entering completed sections of roofing system at end of workday or when rain is forecast. Remove and discard temporary seals before beginning Work on adjoining roofing.

C. Coordinate installation and transition of roofing system component serving as an air barrier with air barrier specified under Section 07 27 26 "Fluid-Applied Membrane Air Barriers."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF INSULATION

A. Coordinate installing roofing system components so insulation is not exposed to precipitation or left exposed at end of workday.

B. Comply with roofing system and roof insulation manufacturer's written instructions for installing roof insulation.

C. Installation Over Metal Decking:

1. Install base layer of insulation with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows and with long joints continuous at right angle to flutes of decking.

    a. Locate end joints over crests of decking.
    b. Where installing composite and noncomposite insulation in two or more layers, install noncomposite board insulation for bottom layer and intermediate layers, if applicable, and install composite board insulation for top layer.
    c. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
    d. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
    e. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.

        1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.

    f. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
    g. Cut and fit insulation within 1/4 inch of nailers, projections, and penetrations.
    h. Mechanically attach base layer of insulation using mechanical fasteners specifically designed and sized for fastening specified board-type roof insulation to metal decks.

        1) Fasten insulation to resist specified uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

2. Install upper layers of insulation and tapered insulation with joints of each layer offset not less than 12 inches from previous layer of insulation.
   a. Install with long joints continuous and with end joints staggered not less than 12 inches in adjacent rows.
   b. Trim insulation neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
   c. Make joints between adjacent insulation boards not more than 1/4 inch in width.
   d. At internal roof drains, slope insulation to create a square drain sump with each side equal to the diameter of the drain bowl plus 24 inches.

      1) Trim insulation so that water flow is unrestricted.

   e. Fill gaps exceeding 1/4 inch with insulation.
   f. Adhere each layer of insulation to substrate using adhesive according to SPRI's Directory of Roof Assemblies listed roof assembly requirements for specified Wind Uplift Load Capacity and FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 1-29, as follows:

      1) Set each layer of insulation in a solid mopping of hot roofing asphalt, applied within plus or minus 25 deg F of equiviscous temperature.
      2) Set each layer of insulation in ribbons of bead-applied insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.
      3) Set each layer of insulation in a uniform coverage of full-spread insulation adhesive, firmly pressing and maintaining insulation in place.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF COVER BOARDS

A. Install cover boards over insulation with long joints in continuous straight lines with end joints staggered between rows. Offset joints of insulation below a minimum of 6 inches in each direction.

   1. Trim cover board neatly to fit around penetrations and projections, and to fit tight to intersecting sloping roof decks.
   2. At internal roof drains, conform to slope of drain sump.

      a. Trim cover board so that water flow is unrestricted.

   3. Cut and fit cover board tight to nailers, projections, and penetrations.
   4. Loosely lay cover board over substrate.
   5. Fasten cover boards to resist uplift pressure at corners, perimeter, and field of roof.

B. Install slip sheet over cover board and beneath roof membrane.

C. Place plates in required fastening patterns and secure in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

1. Install plates and fasteners tight and flat to substrate with no dimpling, and with fastener extending 1 inch minimum into roof deck; do not overdrive fasteners.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF MECHANICALLY FASTENED ROOF MEMBRANE

A. Mechanically fasten roof membrane over area to receive roofing according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.

C. For in-splice attachment, install roof membrane with long dimension perpendicular to steel roof deck flutes.

D. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.

E. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer. Stagger end laps.

F. Mechanically fasten or adhere roof membrane securely at terminations, penetrations, and perimeter of roofing.

G. Apply roof membrane with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

H. In-Seam Attachment: Secure one edge of TPO sheet using fastening plates or metal battens centered within seam, and mechanically fasten TPO sheet to roof deck.

I. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.

1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and flashing sheet.
2. Verify field strength of seams a minimum of twice daily, and repair seam sample areas.
3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.

J. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF INDUCTION-WELDED ROOF MEMBRANE

A. Unroll roof membrane and allow to relax before installing.

B. Start installation of roofing in presence of roofing system manufacturer's technical personnel.

C. Accurately align roof membrane, and maintain uniform side and end laps of minimum dimensions required by manufacturer, with side laps shingled with slope of roof deck where possible.

D. Seams: Clean seam areas, overlap roof membrane, and hot-air-weld side and end laps of roof membrane and sheet flashings to ensure a watertight seam installation.

1. Test lap edges with probe to verify seam weld continuity.
2. Apply lap sealant to seal cut edges of roof membrane and sheet flashings.
3. Repair tears, voids, and lapped seams in roof membrane that do not comply with requirements.

E. Spread sealant bed over deck-drain flange at roof drains, and securely seal roof membrane in place with clamping ring.

F. Induction-weld roof membrane to plates in accordance with roofing system manufacturer's written instructions, creating 100 percent bond between underside of membrane and top of plates; a partial bond is unacceptable.

1. Test welds to verify adhesion of roof membrane to top of plates in accordance with membrane manufacturer’s instructions.

3.8 INSTALLATION OF BASE FLASHING

A. Install sheet flashings and preformed flashing accessories, and adhere to substrates according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Apply bonding adhesive to substrate and underside of sheet flashing at required rate, and allow to partially dry. Do not apply to seam area of flashing.

C. Flash penetrations and field-formed inside and outside corners with cured or uncured sheet flashing.

D. Clean seam areas, overlap, and firmly roll sheet flashings into the adhesive. Hot-air weld side and end laps to ensure a watertight seam installation.

E. Terminate and seal top of sheet flashings and mechanically anchor to substrate through termination bars.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF WALKWAYS

A. Flexible Walkways:

1. Install flexible walkways at the following locations:

a. Retain one or more subparagraphs below. Revise to suit Project.
b. Perimeter of each rooftop unit.
c. Between each rooftop unit location, creating a continuous path connecting rooftop unit locations.
d. Between each roof hatch and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
e. Top and bottom of each roof access ladder.
f. Between each roof access ladder and each rooftop unit location or path connecting rooftop unit locations.
g. Locations indicated on Drawings.
h. As required by roof membrane manufacturer's warranty requirements.

2. Provide 6-inch clearance between adjoining pads.
3. Heat weld to substrate or adhere walkway products to substrate with compatible adhesive according to roofing system manufacturer's written instructions.

3.10 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect roofing system from damage and wear during remainder of construction period. When remaining construction does not affect or endanger roofing system, inspect roofing system for deterioration and damage, describing its nature and extent in a written report, with copies to Architect and Owner.

B. Correct deficiencies in or remove roofing system that does not comply with requirements, repair substrates, and repair or reinstall roofing system to a condition free of damage and deterioration at time of Substantial Completion and according to warranty requirements.

C. Clean overspray and spillage from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

3.11 ROOFING INSTALLER'S WARRANTY

A. WHEREAS _____ of _____, herein called the "Roofing Installer," has performed roofing and associated work ("work") on the following project:

1. Owner: <**Insert name of Owner**>.
2. Owner Address: <**Insert address**>.
3. Building Name/Type: <**Insert information**>.
4. Building Address: <**Insert address**>.

5. Area of Work: <**Insert information**>.
6. Acceptance Date: _____.
7. Warranty Period: <**Insert time**>.
8. Expiration Date: _____.

B. AND WHEREAS Roofing Installer has contracted (either directly with Owner or indirectly as a subcontractor) to warrant said work against leaks and faulty or defective materials and workmanship for designated Warranty Period,

C. NOW THEREFORE Roofing Installer hereby warrants, subject to terms and conditions herein set forth, that during Warranty Period Roofing Installer will, at Roofing Installer's own cost and expense, make or cause to be made such repairs to or replacements of said work as are necessary to correct faulty and defective work and as are necessary to maintain said work in a watertight condition.

D. This Warranty is made subject to the following terms and conditions:

1. Specifically excluded from this Warranty are damages to work and other parts of the building, and to building contents, caused by:

    a. lightning;
    b. peak gust wind speed exceeding <**Insert mph**>;
    c. fire;
    d. failure of roofing system substrate, including cracking, settlement, excessive deflection, deterioration, and decomposition;
    e. faulty construction of parapet walls, copings, chimneys, skylights, vents, equipment supports, and other edge conditions and penetrations of the work;
    f. vapor condensation on bottom of roofing; and
    g. activity on roofing by others, including construction contractors, maintenance personnel, other persons, and animals, whether authorized or unauthorized by Owner.

2. When work has been damaged by any of foregoing causes, Warranty shall be null and void until such damage has been repaired by Roofing Installer and until cost and expense thereof have been paid by Owner or by another responsible party so designated.
3. Roofing Installer is responsible for damage to work covered by this Warranty but is not liable for consequential damages to building or building contents resulting from leaks or faults or defects of work.
4. During Warranty Period, if Owner allows alteration of work by anyone other than Roofing Installer, including cutting, patching, and maintenance in connection with penetrations, attachment of other work, and positioning of anything on roof, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said alterations, but only to the extent said alterations affect work covered by this Warranty. If Owner engages Roofing Installer to perform said alterations, Warranty shall not become null and

void unless Roofing Installer, before starting said work, shall have notified Owner in writing, showing reasonable cause for claim, that said alterations would likely damage or deteriorate work, thereby reasonably justifying a limitation or termination of this Warranty.

5. During Warranty Period, if original use of roof is changed and it becomes used for, but was not originally specified for, a promenade, work deck, spray-cooled surface, flooded basin, or other use or service more severe than originally specified, this Warranty shall become null and void on date of said change, but only to the extent said change affects work covered by this Warranty.
6. Owner shall promptly notify Roofing Installer of observed, known, or suspected leaks, defects, or deterioration and shall afford reasonable opportunity for Roofing Installer to inspect work and to examine evidence of such leaks, defects, or deterioration.
7. This Warranty is recognized to be the only warranty of Roofing Installer on said work and shall not operate to restrict or cut off Owner from other remedies and resources lawfully available to Owner in cases of roofing failure. Specifically, this Warranty shall not operate to relieve Roofing Installer of responsibility for performance of original work according to requirements of the Contract Documents, regardless of whether Contract was a contract directly with Owner or a subcontract with Owner's General Contractor.

E. IN WITNESS THEREOF, this instrument has been duly executed this _____ day of _____, _____.

1. Authorized Signature: _____.
2. Name: _____.
3. Title: _____.

END OF SECTION 07 54 23

SECTION 07 62 00 - SHEET METAL FLASHING AND TRIM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Formed wall sheet metal fabrications.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim layout and seams with sizes and locations of penetrations to be flashed, and joints and seams in adjacent materials.

B. Coordinate sheet metal flashing and trim installation with adjoining roofing and wall materials, joints, and seams to provide leakproof, secure, and noncorrosive installation.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each of the following

   1. Underlayment materials.
   2. Elastomeric sealant.
   3. Butyl sealant.
   4. Epoxy seam sealer.

B. Shop Drawings: For sheet metal flashing and trim.

   1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
   2. Detail fabrication and installation layouts, expansion-joint locations, and keyed details. Distinguish between shop- and field-assembled Work.
   3. Include identification of material, thickness, weight, and finish for each item and location in Project.
   4. Include details for forming, including profiles, shapes, seams, and dimensions.

5. Include details for joining, supporting, and securing, including layout and spacing of fasteners, cleats, clips, and other attachments. Include pattern of seams.
6. Include details of termination points and assemblies.
7. Include details of expansion joints and expansion-joint covers, including showing direction of expansion and contraction from fixed points.
8. Include details of roof-penetration flashing.
9. Include details of edge conditions, including eaves, ridges, valleys, rakes, crickets, flashings, and counterflashings.
10. Include details of special conditions.
11. Include details of connections to adjoining work.
12. Detail formed flashing and trim at scale of not less than 1-1/2 inches per 12 inches.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 12 inches long by actual width.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of sheet metal and accessory indicated with factory-applied finishes.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish.

1. Sheet Metal Flashing: 12 inches long by actual width of unit, including finished seam and in required profile. Include fasteners, cleats, clips, closures, and other attachments.
2. Trim, Metal Closures, Expansion Joints, Joint Intersections, and Miscellaneous Fabrications: 12 inches long and in required profile. Include fasteners and other exposed accessories.
3. Unit-Type Accessories and Miscellaneous Materials: Full-size Sample.
4. Anodized Aluminum Samples: Samples to show full range to be expected for each color required.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For fabricator.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of coping and roof edge flashing that is ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested.

C. Product Test Reports: For each product, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Evaluation Reports: For copings and roof edge flashing, from an agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction showing compliance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1.

E. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For sheet metal flashing and trim, and its accessories, to include in maintenance manuals.

B. Special warranty.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricator Qualifications: Employs skilled workers who custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim similar to that required for this Project and whose products have a record of successful in-service performance.

1. For copings and roof edge flashings that are ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 tested, shop shall be listed as able to fabricate required details as tested and approved.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Do not store sheet metal flashing and trim materials in contact with other materials that might cause staining, denting, or other surface damage.

1. Store sheet metal flashing and trim materials away from uncured concrete and masonry.
2. Protect stored sheet metal flashing and trim from contact with water.

B. Protect strippable protective covering on sheet metal flashing and trim from exposure to sunlight and high humidity, except to extent necessary for period of sheet metal flashing and trim installation.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty on Finishes: Manufacturer agrees to repair finish or replace sheet metal flashing and trim that shows evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Exposed Panel Finish: Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.

b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Finish Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sheet metal flashing and trim assemblies, including cleats, anchors, and fasteners, shall withstand wind loads, structural movement, thermally induced movement, and exposure to weather without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction. Completed sheet metal flashing and trim shall not rattle, leak, or loosen, and shall remain watertight.

B. Sheet Metal Standard for Flashing and Trim: Comply with NRCA's "The NRCA Roofing Manual: Architectural Metal Flashing, Condensation and Air Leakage Control, and Reroofing" and SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" requirements for dimensions and profiles shown unless more stringent requirements are indicated.

C. SPRI Wind Design Standard: Manufacture and install copings roof edge flashings tested in accordance with ANSI/SPRI/FM 4435/ES-1 and capable of resisting the following design pressure:

1. Design Pressure: As indicated on Drawings.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes to prevent buckling, opening of joints, overstressing of components, failure of joint sealants, failure of connections, and other detrimental effects. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

2.2 SHEET METALS

A. Protect mechanical and other finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying strippable, temporary protective film before shipping.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, alloy as standard with manufacturer for finish required, with temper as required to suit forming operations and performance required; with

smooth, flat surface.

1. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
   a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 2605. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

2. Color: Match Architect's sample.

3. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

C. Stainless Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304, dead soft, fully annealed; with smooth, flat surface.
   1. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M, No. 2D (dull, cold rolled).

      a. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.
      b. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.
         1) When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.

D. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: Provide zinc-coated (galvanized) steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A653/A653M, G90 coating designation or aluminum-zinc alloy-coated steel sheet in accordance with ASTM A792/A792M, Class AZ50 coating designation, Grade 40; prepainted by coil-coating process to comply with ASTM A755/A755M.
   1. Surface: Smooth, flat.
   2. Exposed Coil-Coated Finish:
      a. Two-Coat Fluoropolymer: AAMA 621. Fluoropolymer finish containing not less than 70 percent polyvinylidene fluoride (PVDF) resin by weight in both color coat and clear topcoat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions for seacoast and severe environments.

   3. Color: Match Architect's sample.
   4. Concealed Finish: Pretreat with manufacturer's standard white or light-colored acrylic or polyester backer finish, consisting of prime coat and wash coat with minimum total dry film thickness of 0.5 mil.

2.3 UNDERLAYMENT MATERIALS

A. Felt: ASTM D226**/**D226M, Type II (No. 30), asphalt-saturated organic felt; nonperforated.

B. Slip Sheet: Rosin-sized building paper, 3 lb/100 sq. ft. minimum.

2.4 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Provide materials and types of fasteners, protective coatings, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required for complete sheet metal flashing and trim installation and as recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item unless otherwise indicated.

B. Fasteners: Wood screws, annular threaded nails, self-tapping screws, self-locking rivets and bolts, and other suitable fasteners designed to withstand design loads and recommended by manufacturer of primary sheet metal or manufactured item.

1. General: Blind fasteners or self-drilling screws, gasketed, with hex-washer head.
    a. Exposed Fasteners: Heads matching color of sheet metal using plastic caps or factory-applied coating. Provide metal-backed EPDM or PVC sealing washers under heads of exposed fasteners bearing on weather side of metal.
    b. Blind Fasteners: High-strength aluminum or stainless steel rivets suitable for metal being fastened.
    c. Spikes and Ferrules: Same material as gutter; with spike with ferrule matching internal gutter width.
2. Fasteners for Aluminum Sheet: Aluminum or Series 300 stainless steel.
3. Fasteners for Stainless Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel.
4. Fasteners for Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Steel Sheet: Series 300 stainless steel or hot-dip galvanized steel in accordance with ASTM A153/A153M or ASTM F2329.

C. Sealant Tape: Pressure-sensitive, 100 percent solids, polyisobutylene compound sealant tape with release-paper backing. Provide permanently elastic, nonsag, nontoxic, nonstaining tape 1/2 inch wide and 1/8 inch thick.

D. Butyl Sealant: ASTM C1311, single-component, solvent-release butyl rubber sealant; polyisobutylene plasticized; heavy bodied for hooked-type expansion joints with limited movement.

E. Epoxy Seam Sealer: Two-part, noncorrosive, aluminum seam-cementing compound, recommended by aluminum manufacturer for exterior nonmoving joints, including riveted joints.

F. Bituminous Coating: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion in accordance with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

G. Asphalt Roofing Cement: ASTM D4586, asbestos free, of consistency required for application.

H. Reglets: Units of type, material, and profile required, formed to provide secure interlocking of separate reglet and counterflashing pieces, and compatible with flashing indicated with factory-mitered and -welded corners and junctions and with interlocking counterflashing on exterior face, of same metal as reglet.
   1. Source Limitations: Obtain reglets from single source from single manufacturer.
   2. Material: Aluminum, 0.024 inch thick or Galvanized steel, 0.022 inch thick.
   3. Surface-Mounted Type: Provide with slotted holes for fastening to substrate, with neoprene or other suitable weatherproofing washers, and with channel for sealant at top edge.
   4. Accessories:
      a. Flexible-Flashing Retainer: Provide resilient plastic or rubber accessory to secure flexible flashing in reglet where clearance does not permit use of standard metal counterflashing or where Drawings show reglet without metal counterflashing.
      b. Counterflashing Wind-Restraint Clips: Provide clips to be installed before counterflashing to prevent wind uplift of counterflashing's lower edge.
   5. Finish: With manufacturer's standard color coating.

2.5 FABRICATION, GENERAL

A. Custom fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and recommendations in cited sheet metal standard that apply to design, dimensions, geometry, metal thickness, and other characteristics of item required.
   1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in shop to greatest extent possible.
   2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim in thickness or weight needed to comply with performance requirements, but not less than that specified for each application and metal.
   3. Verify shapes and dimensions of surfaces to be covered and obtain field measurements for accurate fit before shop fabrication.
   4. Form sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates without excessive oil-canning, buckling, and tool marks; true to line, levels, and slopes; and with exposed edges folded back to form hems.
   5. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible. Do not use exposed fasteners on faces exposed to view.

B. Fabrication Tolerances:

1. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to a tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.
2. Fabricate sheet metal flashing and trim that is capable of installation to tolerances specified.

C. Expansion Provisions: Form metal for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with butyl sealant concealed within joints.
2. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Sealant Joints: Where movable, nonexpansion-type joints are required, form metal in accordance with cited sheet metal standard to provide for proper installation of elastomeric sealant.

E. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices from same material as accessory being anchored or from compatible, noncorrosive metal.

F. Fabricate cleats and attachment devices of sizes as recommended by cited sheet metal standard for application, but not less than thickness of metal being secured.

G. Seams:
1. Fabricate nonmoving seams with flat-lock seams. Form seams and seal with elastomeric sealant unless otherwise recommended by sealant manufacturer for intended use. Rivet joints where necessary for strength.

H. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

2.6 WALL SHEET METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Through-Wall Flashing: Fabricate continuous flashings in minimum 96-inch-long, but not exceeding 12-foot-long, sections, under copings, and at shelf angles. Fabricate discontinuous lintel, sill, and similar flashings to extend 6 inches beyond each side of wall openings; and form with 2-inch-high, end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Fabricate head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings. Form head and sill flashing with 2- inch-high,

end dams. Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.032 inch thick.
2. Stainless Steel: 0.0156 inch thick.

C. Wall Expansion-Joint Cover: Fabricate from the following materials:
1. Aluminum: 0.040 inch thick.
2. Stainless Steel: 0.0188 inch thick.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, substrate, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify compliance with requirements for installation tolerances of substrates.
2. Verify that substrate is sound, dry, smooth, clean, sloped for drainage, and securely anchored.
3. Verify that air- or water-resistant barriers have been installed over sheathing or backing substrate to prevent air infiltration or water penetration.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF UNDERLAYMENT

A. Felt Underlayment: Install felt underlayment, wrinkle free, using adhesive to minimize use of mechanical fasteners under sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lap joints not less than 2 inches.

B. Install slip sheet, wrinkle free, over underlayment before installing sheet metal flashing and trim.

1. Install in shingle fashion to shed water.
2. Lapp joints not less than 4 inches.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to comply with details indicated and

recommendations of cited sheet metal standard that apply to installation characteristics required unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.

1. Install fasteners, protective coatings, separators, sealants, and other miscellaneous items as required to complete sheet metal flashing and trim system.
2. Install sheet metal flashing and trim true to line, levels, and slopes. Provide uniform, neat seams with minimum exposure of sealant.
3. Anchor sheet metal flashing and trim and other components of the Work securely in place, with provisions for thermal and structural movement.
4. Install sheet metal flashing and trim to fit substrates and to result in watertight performance.
5. Install continuous cleats with fasteners spaced not more than 12 inches o.c.
6. Space individual cleats not more than 12 inches apart. Attach each cleat with at least two fasteners. Bend tabs over fasteners.
7. Install exposed sheet metal flashing and trim with limited oil-canning, and free of buckling and tool marks.
8. Do not field cut sheet metal flashing and trim by torch.
9. Do not use graphite pencils to mark metal surfaces.

B. Metal Protection: Where dissimilar metals contact each other, or where metal contacts pressure-treated wood or other corrosive substrates, protect against galvanic action or corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous coating or by other permanent separation as recommended by sheet metal manufacturer or cited sheet metal standard.

1. Coat concealed side of uncoated-aluminum and stainless steel sheet metal flashing and trim with bituminous coating where flashing and trim contact wood, ferrous metal, or cementitious construction.
2. Underlayment: Where installing sheet metal flashing and trim directly on cementitious or wood substrates, install underlayment and cover with slip sheet.

C. Expansion Provisions: Provide for thermal expansion of exposed flashing and trim.

1. Space movement joints at maximum of 10 feet with no joints within 24 inches of corner or intersection.
2. Form expansion joints of intermeshing hooked flanges, not less than 1 inch deep, filled with sealant concealed within joints.
3. Use lapped expansion joints only where indicated on Drawings.

D. Fasteners: Use fastener sizes that penetrate substrate not less than recommended by fastener manufacturer to achieve maximum pull-out resistance.

E. Conceal fasteners and expansion provisions where possible in exposed work and locate to minimize possibility of leakage. Cover and seal fasteners and anchors as required for a

tight installation.

F. Seal joints as required for watertight construction.

1. Use sealant-filled joints unless otherwise indicated.

a. Embed hooked flanges of joint members not less than 1 inch into sealant.
b. Form joints to completely conceal sealant.
c. When ambient temperature at time of installation is between 40 and 70 deg F, set joint members for 50 percent movement each way.
d. Adjust setting proportionately for installation at higher ambient temperatures.

1) Do not install sealant-type joints at temperatures below 40 deg F.

2. Prepare joints and apply sealants to comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WALL FLASHINGS

A. Install sheet metal wall flashing to intercept and exclude penetrating moisture in accordance with cited sheet metal standard unless otherwise indicated. Coordinate installation of wall flashing with installation of wall-opening components such as windows, doors, and louvers.

B. Opening Flashings in Frame Construction: Install continuous head, sill, jamb, and similar flashings to extend 4 inches beyond wall openings.

3.5 INSTALLATION TOLERANCES

A. Installation Tolerances: Shim and align sheet metal flashing and trim within installed tolerance of 1/4 inch in 20 feet on slope and location lines indicated on Drawings and within 1/8-inch offset of adjoining faces and of alignment of matching profiles.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed metal surfaces of substances that interfere with uniform oxidation and weathering.

B. Clean off excess sealants.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films as sheet metal flashing and trim are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. On completion of sheet metal flashing and trim installation, remove unused materials and clean finished surfaces as recommended in writing by sheet metal flashing and trim manufacturer.

C. Maintain sheet metal flashing and trim in clean condition during construction.

D. Replace sheet metal flashing and trim that have been damaged or that have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures, as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 07 62 00

SECTION 07 81 23 - INTUMESCENT FIRE PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coatings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 078100 "Applied Fire Proofing" for sprayed fire-resistive materials (SFRM).

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review products, design ratings, restrained and unrestrained conditions, thicknesses, and other performance requirements.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coatings.
2. Substrate primers.
3. Reinforcing fabric.
4. Reinforcing mesh.
5. Topcoat.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 4 inches square in size.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer and testing agency.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating.

C. Evaluation Reports: For mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating, from ICC-ES.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm or individual certified, licensed, or otherwise qualified by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer as experienced and with sufficient trained staff to install manufacturer's products according to specified requirements.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup of each type of fire protection and different substrate and each required finish as shown on Drawings.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not apply fire protection when ambient or substrate temperature is 50 deg F or lower unless temporary protection and heat are provided to maintain temperature at or above this level for 24 hours before, during, and for 24 hours after product application.

B. Ventilation: Ventilate building spaces during and after application of fire protection, providing complete air exchanges according to manufacturer's written instructions. Use natural means or, if they are inadequate, forced-air circulation until fire protection dries thoroughly.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Assemblies: Provide fire protection, including auxiliary materials, according to requirements of each fire-resistance design and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain fire protection for each fire-resistance design from single source.

C. Fire-Resistance Design: Indicated on Drawings, tested according to ASTM E119 or UL 263; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Steel members are to be considered unrestrained unless specifically noted otherwise.

D. Asbestos: Provide products containing no detectable asbestos.

2.2 MASTIC AND INTUMESCENT FIRE-RESISTIVE COATINGS

A. Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistive Coating P7: Manufacturer's standard, and complying with indicated fire-resistance design.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

    a. Hilti, Inc.
    b. PPG Paints; PPG Industries, Inc.
    c. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

2. Application: Designated for "interior general purpose" and "conditioned interior space purpose" use by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Thickness: As required for fire-resistance design indicated, measured according to requirements of fire-resistance design.
4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

    a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

5. Finish: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's standard finishes.

    a. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. Provide auxiliary materials that are compatible with mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating and substrates and are approved by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use in fire-resistance designs indicated.

B. Substrate Primers: Primers approved by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer and complying with required fire-resistance design by UL or another testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Reinforcing Fabric: Glass- or carbon-fiber fabric of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance designs indicated; approved and provided by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer.

D. Reinforcing Mesh: Metallic mesh reinforcement of type, weight, and form required to comply with fire-resistance design indicated; approved and provided by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer. Include pins and attachment.

E. Topcoat: Suitable for application over mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating; of type recommended in writing by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer for each fire-resistance design.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for substrates and other conditions affecting performance of the Work and according to each fire-resistance design.

1. Verify that substrates are free of dirt, oil, grease, release agents, rolling compounds, mill scale, loose scale, incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants, or other foreign substances capable of impairing bond of fire protection with substrates under conditions of normal use or fire exposure.
2. Verify that objects penetrating fire protection, including clips, hangers, support sleeves, and similar items, are securely attached to substrates.
3. Verify that substrates receiving fire protection are not obstructed by ducts, piping, equipment, or other suspended construction that will interfere with fire protection application.

B. Conduct tests according to mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer's written instructions to verify that substrates are free of substances capable of interfering with bond.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Cover other work subject to damage from fallout or overspray of fire protection materials during application.

B. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of fire protection.

C. Prime substrates where included in fire-resistance design and where recommended in writing by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer unless compatible shop primer has been applied and is in satisfactory condition to receive fire protection.

D. For applications visible on completion of Project, repair substrates to remove surface imperfections that could affect uniformity of texture and thickness in finished surface of fire protection. Remove minor projections and fill voids that would telegraph through fire-resistive products after application.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Construct fire protection assemblies that are identical to fire-resistance design indicated and products as specified, tested, and substantiated by test reports; for thickness, primers, topcoats, finishing, and other materials and procedures affecting fire protection Work.

B. Comply with mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer's written instructions for mixing materials, application procedures, and types of equipment used to mix, convey, and apply fire protection; as applicable to particular conditions of installation and as required to achieve fire-resistance ratings indicated.

C. Coordinate application of fire protection with other construction to minimize need to cut or remove fire protection.

1. Do not begin applying fire protection until clips, hangers, supports, sleeves, and other items penetrating fire protection are in place.
2. Defer installing ducts, piping, and other items that would interfere with applying fire protection until application of fire protection is completed.

D. Install auxiliary materials as required, as detailed, and according to fire-resistance design and mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer's written instructions for conditions of exposure and intended use. For auxiliary materials, use attachment and

anchorage devices of type recommended in writing by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer.

E. Spray apply fire protection to maximum extent possible. After the spraying operation in each area, complete the coverage by trowel application or other placement method recommended in writing by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer.

F. Extend fire protection in full thickness over entire area of each substrate to be protected.

G. Install body of fire protection in a single course unless otherwise recommended in writing by mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer.

H. Provide a uniform finish complying with description indicated for each type of fire protection material and matching finish approved for required mockups.

I. Cure fire protection according to mastic and intumescent fire-resistive coating manufacturer's written instructions.

J. Do not install enclosing or concealing construction until after fire protection has been applied, inspected, and tested and corrections have been made to deficient applications.

K. Finishes: Where indicated, apply fire protection to produce the following finishes:

1. Manufacturer's Standard Finishes: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions for each finish selected.
2. Spray-Textured Finish: Finish left as spray applied with no further treatment.
3. Rolled, Spray-Textured Finish: Even finish produced by rolling spray-applied finish with a damp paint roller to remove drippings and excessive roughness.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Test and inspect as required by the IBC, Subsection 1705.14, "Mastic and Intumescent Fire-Resistant Coatings."

B. Perform the tests and inspections of completed Work in successive stages. Do not proceed with application of fire protection for the next area until test results for previously completed applications of fire protection show compliance with requirements. Tested values must equal or exceed values as specified and as indicated and required for approved fire-resistance design.

C. Fire protection will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

1. Remove and replace fire protection that does not pass tests and inspections, and retest.
2. Apply additional fire protection, per manufacturer's written instructions, where test results indicate insufficient thickness, and retest.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Cleaning: Immediately after completing spraying operations in each containable area of Project, remove material overspray and fallout from surfaces of other construction and clean exposed surfaces to remove evidence of soiling.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect fire protection, according to advice of manufacturer and Installer, from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes, so fire protection is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.7 REPAIRS

A. As installation of other construction proceeds, inspect fire protection and repair damaged areas and fire protection removed due to work of other trades.

B. Repair fire protection damaged by other work before concealing it with other construction.

C. Repair fire protection by reapplying it using same method as original installation or using manufacturer's recommended trowel-applied product.

END OF SECTION 07 81 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 84 13 - PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Penetrations in fire-resistance-rated walls.
2. Penetrations in horizontal assemblies.
3. Penetrations in smoke barriers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 84 43 "Joint Firestopping" for joints in or between fire-resistance-rated construction, at exterior curtain-wall/floor intersections, and in smoke barriers.

1.2 ALLOWANCES

A. Penetration firestopping Work is part of an allowance.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Penetration Firestopping Systems Schedule listing systems from the following:

1. UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" under product category XHEZ.
2. Intertek Group's "Directory of Listed Building Products" under "Firestop Systems".
3. FM Global's "Building Materials Approval Guide" under "Wall and Floor Penetration Fires Stops".

C. Product Schedule: For each penetration firestopping system. Include location, illustration of firestopping system, and design designation of qualified testing and inspecting agency.

1. Engineering Judgments: Where Project conditions require modification to a qualified testing and inspecting agency's illustration for a particular penetration firestopping system, submit illustration, with modifications marked, approved by penetration firestopping system manufacturer's fire-protection engineer as an engineering judgment or equivalent fire-resistance-rated assembly developed in accordance with current International Firestop Council (IFC) guidelines. Obtain approval of authorities having jurisdiction prior to submittal.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Listed System Designs: For each penetration firestopping system, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Installer Certificates: From Installer indicating that penetration firestopping systems have been installed in compliance with requirements and manufacturer's written instructions.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A firm that has been approved by FM Approvals according to FM Approvals 4991, "Approval Standard for Firestop Contractors," or been evaluated by UL and found to comply with its "Qualified Firestop Contractor Program Requirements."

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install penetration firestopping system when ambient or substrate temperatures are outside limits permitted by penetration firestopping system manufacturers or when substrates are wet because of rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

B. Install and cure penetration firestopping materials per manufacturer's written instructions using natural means of ventilations or, where this is inadequate, forced-air circulation.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate construction of openings and penetrating items to ensure that penetration firestopping systems can be installed according to specified firestopping system design.

B. Coordinate sizing of sleeves, openings, core-drilled holes, or cut openings to accommodate penetration firestopping systems.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain joint firestop systems for each type of joint opening indicated from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics:

1. Perform penetration firestopping system tests by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Test per testing standards referenced in "Penetration Firestopping Systems" Article. Provide rated systems complying with the following requirements:

a. Penetration firestop systems installed with products bearing the classification marking of a qualified product certification agency in accordance with listed system designs published by a qualified testing agency.

1) UL in its online directory "Product iQ."
2) Intertek Group in its "Directory of Building Products."
3) FM Approvals in its "Approval Guide."

2.3 PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

A. Penetration Firestopping Systems: Systems that resist spread of fire, passage of smoke and other gases, and maintain original fire-resistance rating of construction penetrated. Penetration firestopping systems are to be compatible with one another, with the substrates forming openings, and with penetrating items if any.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. 3M Fire Protection Products.
b. A/D Fire Protection Systems Inc.
c. Construction Solutions.
d. Grabber Construction Products.
e. Hilti, Inc.
f. HOLDRITE.
g. NUCO Inc.
h. Passive Fire Protection Partners.
i. RectorSeal.
j. Specified Technologies, Inc.
k. STC Sound Control.
l. Tremco, Inc.

B. Penetrations in Fire-Resistance-Rated Walls: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

1. F-Rating: Not less than the fire-resistance rating of the wall penetrated.
2. Membrane Penetrations: Install recessed fixtures such that the required fire resistance will not be reduced.

C. Penetrations in Horizontal Assemblies: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per ASTM E814 or UL 1479.

1. F-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor penetrated.
2. T-Rating: At least one hour, but not less than the fire-resistance rating of the floor. The following floor penetrations do not require a T-rating:

    a. Those within the cavity of a wall.
    b. Floor, tub, or shower drains within a concealed space.
    c. 4-inch or smaller metal conduit penetrating directly into metal-enclosed electrical switchgear.

3. W-Rating: Provide penetration firestopping systems with a Class 1 W-rating in accordance with UL 1479.

D. Penetrations in Smoke Barriers: Penetration firestopping systems with ratings determined per UL 1479.

1. L-Rating: Not exceeding 5.0 cfm/sq. ft. of penetration opening and no more than 50-cfm cumulative total for any 100 sq. ft. at both ambient and elevated temperatures.

E. Exposed Penetration Firestopping Systems: Flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of less than 25 and 450, respectively, per ASTM E84.

F. Accessories: Provide components for each penetration firestopping system that are needed to install fill materials and to maintain ratings required. Use only those components specified by penetration firestopping system manufacturer and approved by qualified testing and inspecting agency for conditions indicated.

1. Permanent forming/damming/backing materials.
2. Substrate primers.
3. Collars.
4. Steel sleeves.

2.4 FILL MATERIALS

A. Cast-in-Place Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled devices for use in cast-in-place concrete floors and consisting of an outer sleeve lined with an intumescent strip, a flange attached to one end of the sleeve for fastening to concrete formwork, and a neoprene gasket.

B. Latex Sealants: Single-component latex formulations that do not re-emulsify after cure during exposure to moisture.

C. Firestop Devices: Factory-assembled collars formed from galvanized steel and lined with intumescent material sized to fit specific diameter of penetrant.

D. Intumescent Composite Sheets: Rigid panels consisting of aluminum-foil-faced intumescent elastomeric sheet bonded to galvanized-steel sheet.

E. Intumescent Putties: Nonhardening, water-resistant, intumescent putties containing no solvents or inorganic fibers.

F. Intumescent Wrap Strips: Single-component intumescent elastomeric strips for use around combustible penetrants.

G. Mortars: Prepackaged dry mixes consisting of a blend of inorganic binders, hydraulic cement, fillers and lightweight aggregate formulated for mixing with water at Project site to form a nonshrinking, homogeneous mortar.

H. Pillows/Bags: Compressible, removable, and reusable intumescent pillows encased in fire-retardant polyester or glass-fiber cloth. Where exposed, cover openings with steel-reinforcing wire mesh to protect pillows/bags from being easily removed.

I. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

J. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants.

K. Fire-Rated Cable Sleeve Kits: Complete kits designed for new or existing cable penetrations through walls to accept standard accessories.

L. Thermal Wrap: Flexible protective wrap tested and listed for up to 2-hour fire ratings in accordance with ASTM E814/UL 1479 for membrane penetrations or ASTM E1725/UL 1724 for thermal barrier and circuit integrity protection.

M. Fire-Rated Cable Pathways: Single or gangable device modules composed of a steel raceway with integral intumescent material and requiring no additional action in the form of plugs, twisting closure, putty, pillows, sealant, or otherwise to achieve fire and air-leakage ratings.

N. Retrofit Device for Cable Bundles: Factory-made, intumescent, collar-like device for firestopping existing over-filled cable sleeves and capable of being installed around projecting sleeves and cable bundles.

O. Wall-Opening Protective Materials: Intumescent, non-curing putty pads or self-adhesive inserts for protection of electrical switch and receptacle boxes.

P. Fire-Rated HVAC Retaining Angles: Steel angle system with integral intumescent firestop gasket for use around rectangular steel HVAC ducts without fire dampers.

Q. Firestop Plugs: Flexible, re-enterable, intumescent, foam-rubber plug for use in blank round openings and cable sleeves.

R. Fire-Rated Cable Grommet: Molded two-piece grommet made of plenum-grade polymer and foam inner core for sealing small cable penetrations in gypsum walls up to 1/2 inch diameter.

S. Closet Flange Gasket: Molded, single-component, flexible, intumescent gasket for use beneath a water closet (toilet) flange in floor applications.

T. Endothermic Wrap: Flexible, insulating, fire-resistant, endothermic wrap for protecting membrane penetrations of utility boxes, critical electrical circuits, communications lines, and fuel lines.

2.5 MIXING

A. Penetration Firestopping Materials: For those products requiring mixing before application, comply with penetration firestopping system manufacturer's written instructions for accurate proportioning of materials, water (if required), type of mixing equipment, selection of mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other items

or procedures needed to produce products of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for application indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for opening configurations, penetrating items, substrates, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning: Before installing penetration firestopping systems, clean out openings immediately to comply with manufacturer's written instructions and with the following requirements:

1. Remove from surfaces of opening substrates and from penetrating items foreign materials that could interfere with adhesion of penetration firestopping materials.
2. Clean opening substrates and penetrating items to produce clean, sound surfaces capable of developing optimum bond with penetration firestopping materials. Remove loose particles remaining from cleaning operation.
3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.

B. Prime substrates where recommended in writing by manufacturer using that manufacturer's recommended products and methods. Confine primers to areas of bond; do not allow spillage and migration onto exposed surfaces.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PENETRATION FIRESTOPPING SYSTEMS

A. General: Install penetration firestopping systems to comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions and published drawings for products and applications.

B. Install forming materials and other accessories of types required to support fill materials during their application and in the position needed to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths required to achieve fire ratings.

1. After installing fill materials and allowing them to fully cure, remove combustible forming materials and other accessories not forming permanent components of firestopping.

C. Install fill materials by proven techniques to produce the following results:

1. Fill voids and cavities formed by openings, forming materials, accessories and penetrating items to achieve required fire-resistance ratings.
2. Apply materials so they contact and adhere to substrates formed by openings and penetrating items.
3. For fill materials that will remain exposed after completing the Work, finish to produce smooth, uniform surfaces that are flush with adjoining finishes.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Wall Identification: Permanently label walls containing penetration firestopping systems with the words "FIRE AND/OR SMOKE BARRIER - PROTECT ALL OPENINGS," using lettering not less than 3 inches high and with minimum 0.375-inch strokes.

1. Locate in accessible concealed floor, floor-ceiling, or attic space at 15 feet from end of wall and at intervals not exceeding 30 feet.

B. Penetration Identification: Identify each penetration firestopping system with legible metal or plastic labels. Attach labels permanently to surfaces adjacent to and within 6 inches of penetration firestopping system edge so labels are visible to anyone seeking to remove penetrating items or firestopping systems. Use mechanical fasteners or self-adhering-type labels with adhesives capable of permanently bonding labels to surfaces on which labels are placed. Include the following information on labels:

1. The words "Warning - Penetration Firestopping - Do Not Disturb. Notify Building Management of Any Damage."
2. Contractor's name, address, and phone number.
3. Designation of applicable testing and inspecting agency.
4. Date of installation.
5. Manufacturer's name.
6. Installer's name.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections according to ASTM E2174.

B. Where deficiencies are found or penetration firestopping system is damaged or removed because of testing, repair or replace penetration firestopping system to comply with requirements.

C. Proceed with enclosing penetration firestopping systems with other construction only after inspection reports are issued and installations comply with requirements.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean off excess fill materials adjacent to openings as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials that are approved in writing by penetration firestopping system manufacturers and that do not damage materials in which openings occur.

B. Provide final protection and maintain conditions during and after installation that ensure that penetration firestopping systems are without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, immediately cut out and remove damaged or deteriorated penetration firestopping material and install new materials to produce systems complying with specified requirements.

END OF SECTION 07 84 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 07 92 00 - JOINT SEALANTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Silicone joint sealants.
2. Nonstaining silicone joint sealants.
3. Urethane joint sealants.
4. Mildew-resistant joint sealants.
5. Butyl joint sealants.
6. Latex joint sealants.
7. Preformed joint seals.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Joint-sealants.
2. Joint sealant backing materials.
3. Expansion joint materials.

B. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color charts consisting of strips of cured sealants showing the full range of colors available for each product exposed to view.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type and color of joint sealant required, provide Samples with joint sealants in 1/2-inch-wide joints formed between two 6-inch-long strips of material matching the appearance of exposed surfaces adjacent to joint sealants.

D. Joint-Sealant Schedule: Include the following information:

1. Joint-sealant application, joint location, and designation.
2. Joint-sealant manufacturer and product name.
3. Joint-sealant formulation.
4. Joint-sealant color.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Test and Evaluation Reports:

1. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Schedule: Include the following information for each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested:

    a. Joint-sealant location and designation.
    b. Manufacturer and product name.
    c. Type of substrate material.
    d. Proposed test.
    e. Number of samples required.

2. Preconstruction Laboratory Test Reports: For each joint sealant and substrate material to be tested from sealant manufacturer, indicating the following:

    a. Materials forming joint substrates and joint-sealant backings have been tested for compatibility and adhesion with joint sealants.
    b. Interpretation of test results and written recommendations for primers and substrate preparation are needed for adhesion.

3. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: Indicate which sealants and joint preparation methods resulted in optimum adhesion to joint substrates based on testing specified in "Preconstruction Testing" Article.

B. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field-Adhesion-Test Reports: For each sealant application tested.

C. Sample warranties.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty Documentation:

1. Manufacturers' special warranties.
2. Installer's special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installers: Authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.
2. Testing Agency: Qualified in accordance with ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

1.6 MOCKUPS

A. Install sealant in mockups of assemblies specified in other Sections that are indicated to receive joint sealants specified in this Section. Use materials and installation methods specified in this Section.

1.7 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Laboratory Testing: Submit to joint-sealant manufacturers, for testing indicated below, samples of materials that will contact or affect joint sealants.

1. Adhesion Testing: Use ASTM C794 to determine whether priming and other specific joint preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of joint sealants to joint substrates.
2. Compatibility Testing: Use ASTM C1087 to determine sealant compatibility when in contact with glazing and gasket materials.
3. Stain Testing: Use ASTM C1248 to determine stain potential of sealant when in contact with stone substrates.
4. Submit manufacturer's recommended number of pieces of each type of material, including joint substrates, joint-sealant backings, and miscellaneous materials.
5. Schedule sufficient time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
6. For materials failing tests, obtain joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures, including use of specially formulated primers.
7. Testing will not be required if joint-sealant manufacturers submit data that are based on previous testing, not older than 24 months, of sealant products for adhesion to, staining of, and compatibility with joint substrates and other materials matching those submitted.

B. Preconstruction Field-Adhesion Testing: Before installing sealants, field test their adhesion to Project joint substrates as follows:

1. Locate test joints where indicated on Project or, if not indicated, as directed by Architect.
2. Conduct field tests for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
3. Notify Architect seven days in advance of dates and times when test joints will be erected.
4. Arrange for tests to take place with joint-sealant manufacturer's technical representative present.

    a. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1.1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.

1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

5. Report whether sealant failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. For sealants that fail adhesively, retest until satisfactory adhesion is obtained.
6. Evaluation of Preconstruction Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing, in absence of other indications of noncompliance with requirements, will be considered satisfactory. Do not use sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not proceed with installation of joint sealants under the following conditions:

1. When ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by joint-sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.
2. When joint substrates are wet.
3. Where joint widths are less than those allowed by joint-sealant manufacturer for applications indicated.
4. Where contaminants capable of interfering with adhesion have not yet been removed from joint substrates.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Installer's Warranty: Installer agrees to repair or replace joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to furnish joint sealants to repair or replace those joint sealants that do not comply with performance and other requirements specified in this Section within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Special warranties specified in this article exclude deterioration or failure of joint sealants from the following:

1. Movement of the structure caused by stresses on the sealant exceeding sealant manufacturer's written specifications for sealant elongation and compression.
2. Disintegration of joint substrates from causes exceeding design specifications.

3. Mechanical damage caused by individuals, tools, or other outside agents.
4. Changes in sealant appearance caused by accumulation of dirt or other atmospheric contaminants.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOURCE LIMITATIONS

A. Obtain joint sealants from single manufacturer for each sealant type.

2.2 JOINT SEALANTS, GENERAL

A. Compatibility: Provide joint sealants, backings, and other related materials that are compatible with one another and with joint substrates under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by joint-sealant manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.

B. Colors of Exposed Joint Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.3 SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Silicone, S, NS, 50, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Adfast.
    b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    c. Pecora Corporation.
    d. Sika Corporation - Building Components.

B. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
    b. Pecora Corporation.
    c. Permathane; ITW Polymer Sealants North America.

d. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
f. The Dow Chemical Company.

C. Silicone, S, P, 100/50, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Pecora Corporation.

2.4 NONSTAINING SILICONE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Nonstaining Joint Sealants: No staining of substrates when tested in accordance with ASTM C1248.

B. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 50, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 50 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 50, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adfast.
b. GE Construction Sealants; Momentive Performance Materials Inc.
c. Pecora Corporation.
d. Sika Corporation - Building Components.
e. The Dow Chemical Company.
f. Tremco Incorporated.

C. Silicone, Nonstaining, S, NS, 100/50, T, NT: Nonstaining, single-component, nonsag, plus 100 percent and minus 50 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 100/50, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. The Dow Chemical Company.

2.5 URETHANE JOINT SEALANTS

A. Urethane, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, nontraffic-use, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adfast.
b. Bostik; Arkema.
c. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.
d. Master Builders Solutions.
e. Pecora Corporation.
f. Permathane; ITW Polymer Sealants North America.
g. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
h. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
i. Sika Corporation - Building Components.
j. Tremco Incorporated.

B. Urethane, S, NS, 25, T, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. LymTal International, Inc.
b. Master Builders Solutions.

C. Urethane, S, P, 35, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 35 percent and minus 35 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 35, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Bostik; Arkema.

D. Urethane, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Master Builders Solutions.
b. Pecora Corporation.
c. Polymeric Systems, Inc.
d. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).

E. Urethane, M, P, 25, T, NT: Multicomponent, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, urethane joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type M, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bostik; Arkema.
b. LymTal International, Inc.
c. Master Builders Solutions.
d. Pecora Corporation.
e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
f. Tremco Incorporated.

2.6 MILDEW-RESISTANT JOINT SEALANTS

A. Mildew-Resistant Joint Sealants: Formulated for prolonged exposure to humidity with fungicide to prevent mold and mildew growth.

B. Silicone, Mildew Resistant, Acid Curing, S, NS, 25, NT: Mildew-resistant, single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, acid-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, Use NT.
1. Pecora Corporation,
2. Sika Corporation
3. The Dow Chemical Company
4. Tremco Incorporated

2.7 BUTYL JOINT SEALANTS

A. Butyl-Rubber-Based Joint Sealants: ASTM C1311.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bostik; Arkema.
b. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.
c. GSSI Sealants.
d. Pecora Corporation.
e. Sika Corporation - Building Components.

f. The Dow Chemical Company

2.8 LATEX JOINT SEALANTS

A. Acrylic Latex: Acrylic latex or siliconized acrylic latex, ASTM C834, Type OP, Grade NF.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

a. Adfast.
b. Everkem Diversified Products, Inc.
c. Franklin International.
d. Pecora Corporation.
e. Sherwin-Williams Company (The).
f. Tremco Incorporated.
g. The Dow Chemical Company

2.9 PREFORMED JOINT SEALS

A. Silicone coated, ultraviolet resistant, dual-faced, fire-rated, watertight primary wall seal.
1. Emseal Joint Systems
2. Tremco Incorporated
3. Balco; A CSW Industrials Company
4. Approved Equal

B. Performance Requirements:
1. Material shall be capable of movements of +25%, -25% (50% total) of nominal material size

C. Sealant for Adhering Extruded-Silicone Joint Seals: Silicone adhesive sealant recommended by extruded-silicone joint seal manufacturer.

2.10 JOINT-SEALANT BACKING

A. Sealant Backing Material, General: Nonstaining; compatible with joint substrates, sealants, primers, and other joint fillers; and approved for applications indicated by sealant manufacturer based on field experience and laboratory testing.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Adfast.
b. Alcot Plastics Ltd.
c. Construction Foam Products; a division of Nomaco, Inc.

d. Master Builders Solutions.

B. Cylindrical Sealant Backings: ASTM C1330, Type C (closed-cell material with a surface skin) Type B (bicellular material with a surface skin) or any of the preceding types, as approved in writing by joint-sealant manufacturer for joint application indicated, and of size and density to control sealant depth and otherwise contribute to producing optimum sealant performance.

C. Bond-Breaker Tape: Polyethylene tape or other plastic tape recommended by sealant manufacturer for preventing sealant from adhering to rigid, inflexible joint-filler materials or joint surfaces at back of joint. Provide self-adhesive tape where applicable.

2.11 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Primer: Material recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer where required for adhesion of sealant to joint substrates indicated, as determined from preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests and field tests.

B. Cleaners for Nonporous Surfaces: Chemical cleaners acceptable to manufacturers of sealants and sealant backing materials, free of oily residues or other substances capable of staining or harming joint substrates and adjacent nonporous surfaces in any way, and formulated to promote optimum adhesion of sealants to joint substrates.

C. Masking Tape: Nonstaining, nonabsorbent material compatible with joint sealants and surfaces adjacent to joints.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine joints indicated to receive joint sealants, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for joint configuration, installation tolerances, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Cleaning of Joints: Clean out joints immediately before installing joint sealants to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions and the following requirements:

1. Remove all foreign material from joint substrates that could interfere with adhesion of joint sealant, including dust, paints (except for permanent, protective coatings tested and approved for sealant adhesion and compatibility by sealant manufacturer), old joint sealants, oil, grease, waterproofing, water repellents, water, surface dirt, and frost.
2. Clean porous joint substrate surfaces by brushing, grinding, mechanical abrading, or a combination of these methods to produce a clean, sound substrate capable of developing optimum bond with joint sealants. Remove loose particles remaining after cleaning operations above by vacuuming or blowing out joints with oil-free compressed air. Porous joint substrates include the following:

    a. Concrete.
    b. Masonry.
    c. Unglazed surfaces of ceramic tile.
    d. Exterior insulation and finish systems.

3. Remove laitance and form-release agents from concrete.
4. Clean nonporous joint substrate surfaces with chemical cleaners or other means that do not stain, harm substrates, or leave residues capable of interfering with adhesion of joint sealants. Nonporous joint substrates include the following:

    a. Metal.
    b. Glass.
    c. Porcelain enamel.
    d. Glazed surfaces of ceramic tile.

B. Joint Priming: Prime joint substrates where recommended by joint-sealant manufacturer or as indicated by preconstruction joint-sealant-substrate tests or prior experience. Apply primer to comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written instructions. Confine primers to areas of joint-sealant bond; do not allow spillage or migration onto adjoining surfaces.

C. Masking Tape: Use masking tape where required to prevent contact of sealant or primer with adjoining surfaces that otherwise would be permanently stained or damaged by such contact or by cleaning methods required to remove sealant smears. Remove tape immediately after tooling without disturbing joint seal.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF JOINT SEALANTS

A. General: Comply with joint-sealant manufacturer's written installation instructions for products and applications indicated, unless more stringent requirements apply.

B. Sealant Installation Standard: Comply with recommendations in ASTM C1193 for use of joint sealants as applicable to materials, applications, and conditions indicated.

C. Install sealant backings of type indicated to support sealants during application and at position required to produce cross-sectional shapes and depths of installed sealants relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

1. Do not leave gaps between ends of sealant backings.
2. Do not stretch, twist, puncture, or tear sealant backings.
3. Remove absorbent sealant backings that have become wet before sealant application, and replace them with dry materials.

D. Install bond-breaker tape behind sealants where sealant backings are not used between sealants and backs of joints.

E. Install sealants using proven techniques that comply with the following and at the same time backings are installed:

1. Place sealants so they directly contact and fully wet joint substrates.
2. Completely fill recesses in each joint configuration.
3. Produce uniform, cross-sectional shapes and depths relative to joint widths that allow optimum sealant movement capability.

F. Tooling of Nonsag Sealants: Immediately after sealant application and before skinning or curing begins, tool sealants according to requirements specified in subparagraphs below to form smooth, uniform beads of configuration indicated; to eliminate air pockets; and to ensure contact and adhesion of sealant with sides of joint.

1. Remove excess sealant from surfaces adjacent to joints.
2. Use tooling agents that are approved in writing by sealant manufacturer and that do not discolor sealants or adjacent surfaces.
3. Provide concave joint profile in accordance with Figure 8A in ASTM C1193 unless otherwise indicated.
4. Provide flush joint profile at locations indicated on Drawings, or as may be directed in accordance with Figure 8B in ASTM C1193.
5. Provide recessed joint configuration of recess depth and at locations indicated on Drawings, or as may be directed in accordance with Figure 8C in ASTM C1193.

    a. Use masking tape to protect surfaces adjacent to recessed tooled joints.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. Field-Adhesion Testing: Field test joint-sealant adhesion to joint substrates as follows:

a. Extent of Testing: Test completed and cured sealant joints as follows:

1) Perform 10 tests for the first 1000 ft. of joint length for each kind of sealant and joint substrate.
2) Perform one test for each 1000 ft. of joint length thereafter or one test per each floor per elevation.

b. Test Method: Test joint sealants in accordance with Method A, Field-Applied Sealant Joint Hand Pull Tab, in Appendix X1 in ASTM C1193 or Method A, Tail Procedure, in ASTM C1521.

1) For joints with dissimilar substrates, verify adhesion to each substrate separately; extend cut along one side, verifying adhesion to opposite side. Repeat procedure for opposite side.

c. Inspect tested joints and report on the following:

1) Whether sealants filled joint cavities and are free of voids.
2) Whether sealant dimensions and configurations comply with specified requirements.
3) Whether sealants in joints connected to pulled-out portion failed to adhere to joint substrates or tore cohesively. Include data on pull distance used to test each kind of product and joint substrate. Compare these results to determine if adhesion complies with sealant manufacturer's field-adhesion hand-pull test criteria.

d. Record test results in a field-adhesion-test log. Include dates when sealants were installed, names of persons who installed sealants, test dates, test locations, whether joints were primed, adhesion results and percent elongations, sealant material, sealant configuration, and sealant dimensions.

e. Repair sealants pulled from test area by applying new sealants following same procedures used originally to seal joints. Ensure that original sealant surfaces are clean and that new sealant contacts original sealant.

2. Evaluation of Field-Adhesion-Test Results: Sealants not evidencing adhesive failure from testing or noncompliance with other indicated requirements will be considered satisfactory. Remove sealants that fail to adhere to joint substrates during testing or to comply with other requirements. Retest failed applications until test results prove sealants comply with indicated requirements.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean off excess sealant or sealant smears adjacent to joints as the Work progresses by methods and with cleaning materials approved in writing by manufacturers of joint sealants and of products in which joints occur.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect joint sealants during and after curing period from contact with contaminating substances and from damage resulting from construction operations or other causes so sealants are without deterioration or damage at time of Substantial Completion. If, despite such protection, damage or deterioration occurs, cut out, remove, and repair damaged or deteriorated joint sealants immediately so installations with repaired areas are indistinguishable from original work.

END OF SECTION 07 92 00

SECTION 07 95 13.16 – EXTERIOR EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 Work Included

A. The work shall consist of furnishing and installing waterproof expansion joints in accordance with the details shown on the plans and the requirements of the specifications. Preformed sealant shall be silicone pre-coated, preformed, pre-compressed, self-expanding, sealant system.

B. Related Work
- Division 4 - Masonry
- Division 7 - Thermal & Moisture Protection
- Division 7 - Sealants, Caulking and Waterproofing

1.2 Submittals

A. General – Submit the following according to Division 1 Specification Section.

B. Standard Submittal Package – Submit typical expansion joint drawing(s) indicating pertinent dimensions, general construction, expansion joint opening dimensions and product information.

C. Sample of material is required at time of submittal.

D. All products must be certified by independent laboratory test report to exceed the requirements of curtain wall performance tests ASTM E330, E283-04, and E331. Product must meet or exceed hurricane-force wind loading with no deflection at both positive and negative pressures up to 4954 Pascals—equal to 200 mph winds (ASTM E330-02-procedure A).

E. All products must be certified by independent laboratory test report to ASTM E90-09 and to meet or exceed an STC 52 in STC 56 wall and OITC 38 rating in an OITC 38 wall.

F. All products must be certified by independent laboratory test report to be free in composition of any waxes or wax compounds using FTIR and DSC testing.

G. All products shall be certified in writing to be: a) capable of withstanding 150°F (65°C) for 3 hours while compressed down to the minimum of movement capability dimension of the basis of design product (-50% of nominal material size) without evidence of any bleeding of impregnation medium from the

material; and b) that the same material after the heat stability test and after first being cooled to room temperature will subsequently self-expand to the maximum of movement capability dimension of the basis-of-design product (+50% of nominal material size) within 24 hours at room temperature 68°F (20°C).

H. Quality and Environmental control: Manufacturer shall be certified to both ISO-9001:2015 (quality management) and ISO-14001:2015 (environmental management), and shall provide written confirmation that formal Quality and Environmental management systems and processes have been adopted.

1.3 Product Delivery, Storage and Handling

A. Deliver products to site in Manufacturer's original, intact, labeled containers. Handle and protect as necessary to prevent damage or deterioration during shipment, handling and storage. Store in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.4 Basis of Design

A. All joints shall be designed to meet the specified performance criteria of the SEISMIC COLORSEAL product as manufactured by: (USA & International) EMSEAL JOINT SYSTEMS, LTD 25 Bridle Lane, Westborough, MA 01581-2603, Toll Free: 800-526-8365. (Canada) EMSEAL, LLC 120 Carrier Drive, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 5R1 Toll Free: 800-526-8365. www.emseal.com

B. Alternate manufacturers must demonstrate that their products meet or exceed the design criteria and must submit certified performance test reports performed by nationally recognized independent laboratories as called for in section 1.02 Submittals. Submittal of alternates must be made three weeks prior to bid opening to allow proper evaluation time.

1.5 Quality Assurance

A. The General Contractor will conduct a pre-construction meeting with all parties and trades involved in the treatment of work at and around expansion joints including, but not limited to, concrete, mechanical, electrical, HVAC, landscaping, masonry, curtain wall, waterproofing, fire-stopping, caulking, flooring and other finish trade subcontractors. All superintendents and foremen with responsibility for oversight and setting of the joint gap must attend this meeting. The General Contractor is responsible to coordinate and schedule all trades and ensure that all subcontractors understand their responsibilities in relation to expansion joints and that their work cannot impede anticipated structural movement at the expansion joints, or compromise the achievement of watertightness or life safety at expansion joints in any way.

B. Warranty – Manufacturer's standard warranty shall apply.

C. LEED Building Performance Requirements:

1) The VOC of the silicone must not exceed 40 grams/liter
2) All substitute products must be proved to be certified by independent test report to exceed the requirements of curtain wall performance tests ASTM E330, E283-04, and E331. Product must meet or exceed hurricane-force wind loading with no deflection at both positive and negative pressures up to 4954 Pascals—equal to 200 mph winds (ASTM E330-02-procedure A).
3) Products must be proved to have been certified by independent test report in accordance with ASTM C518-04 and demonstrate an R-Value per 1-inch (25mm) of depth of not less than 2.15 at as-installed nominal joint size compression.
4) Products must be proved to have been certified by independent test report to ASTM E-90-09 and to meet or exceed a STC rating of 52 and OITC rating of 38.
5) Product must be proved by independent test report to have air permeability not to exceed 0.02 L/(s.m2) at 75 Pascals as required by the Air Barrier Association of America (ABAA) and conform to ASTM E283-04.

PART 2 – PRODUCT

2.1 General

A. Provide watertight, energy-efficient exterior joints in vertical-plane walls (above-grade). Typical locations include, but are not limited to the following: applications in window perimeters, other façade penetrations such as doors, store fronts, vents, HVAC units, panel to panel joints, curtain walls, control joints, between dissimilar materials, high-movement and seismic structural expansion joints, acoustic partition barriers, and new-to-existing connections.

B. Provide SEISMIC COLORSEAL as manufactured by EMSEAL JOINT SYSTEMS LTD and as indicated on drawings for vertical expansion joint locations.

C. Preformed sealant shall be silicone pre-coated, preformed, pre-compressed, self-expanding, sealant system. Expanding foam to be cellular foam impregnated with a water-based, non-drying, 100% acrylic dispersion. Seal shall combine factory-applied, low-modulus silicone and a backing of acrylic-impregnated expanding foam into a unified hybrid sealant system.

D. Material shall be capable of movements of +50%, -50% (100% total) of nominal material size

E. Silicone external color facing to be factory-applied to the foam while it is partially pre-compressed to a width greater than maximum joint extension and cured before final compression. When compressed to final supplied dimension, a bellow(s) to handle movement must be created in the silicone coating. Silicone coating to be available in a range of not less than 26 standard colors for coordination with typical building materials.

F. Select the sealant system model appropriate to the movement and design requirements at each joint location that meet the project specification or as defined by the structural engineer of record.

G. Manufacturer's Checklist must be completed by expansion joint subcontractor and returned to manufacturer at time of ordering material.

2.2 Fabrication

A. SEISMIC COLORSEAL by EMSEAL JOINT SYTEMS LTD must be supplied precompressed to less than the joint size, packaged in shrink-wrapped lengths (sticks) with a mounting adhesive on one face.

B. Directional changes and terminations into horizontal plane surfaces to be provided by factory-manufactured universal-90-degree single units containing minimum 12-inch long leg and 6-inch long leg or custom leg on each side of the direction change or through field fabrication in strict accordance with installation instructions.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

A. Preparation of the Work Area

1. The contractor shall provide a properly formed and prepared expansion joint openings constructed to the exact dimensions and elevations shown on manufacturer's standard system drawings or as shown on the contract drawings. Deviations from these dimensions will not be allowed without the written consent of the engineer of record.

2. The contractor shall clean the joint opening of all contaminants immediately prior to installation of expansion joint system. Repair spalled, irregular or

unsound joint surfaces using accepted industry practices for repair of the substrates in question. Remove protruding roughness to ensure joint sides are smooth. Ensure that there is sufficient depth to receive the full depth of the size of the SEISMIC COLORSEAL being installed plus at least ¼-inch (6mm) for the application of corner beads. Refer to Manufacturers Installation Guide for detailed step-by-step instructions.

3. No drilling, or screwing, or fasteners of any type are permitted to anchor the sealant system into the substrate.

3.2 Clean and Protect

A. Protect the system and its components during construction. Subsequent damage to the expansion joint system will be repaired at the general contractor's expense. After work is complete, clean exposed surfaces with a suitable cleaner that will not harm or attack the finish.

END OF SECTION 07 95 13.16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

07 95 13.19 – PARKING DECK EXPANSION JOINT COVER ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 Work Included

A. The work shall consist of furnishing and installing waterproof expansion joints in accordance with the details shown on the plans and the requirements of the specifications. The expansion joint shall be a blockout-mounted chemically anchored extruded rubber gland/nosing system.

B. Related Work
- Division 3 - Cast-in-Place Concrete
- Division 7 - Thermal & Moisture Protection
- Division 7 - Sealants, Caulking and Waterproofing

1.2 Submittals

A. General – Submit the following according to Division 1 Specification Section.

B. Standard Submittal Package – Submit typical expansion joint drawings(s) indicating pertinent dimensions, general construction, expansion joint opening dimensions and product information.

C. Sample of material is required at time of submittal.

1.3 Product Delivery, Storage and Handling

A. Deliver products to site in Manufacturer's original, intact, labeled containers. Handle and protect as necessary to prevent damage or deterioration during shipment, handling and storage. Store in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

1.4 Basis of Design

A. All joints shall be designed to meet the specified performance criteria of the project as manufactured by: (USA & International) EMSEAL JOINT SYSTEMS, LTD 25 Bridle Lane, Westborough, MA 01581-2603, Toll Free: 800-526-8365. (Canada) EMSEAL, LLC 120 Carrier Drive, Toronto, Ontario, Canada M9W 5R1 Toll Free: 800-526-8365. www.emseal.com

B. Alternate manufacturers must demonstrate that their products meet or exceed the design criteria. Submittal of alternates must be made three weeks prior to bid opening to allow proper evaluation time.

1.5 Quality Assurance

A. The General Contractor will conduct a pre-construction meeting with all parties and trades involved in the treatment of work at and around expansion joints including, but not limited to, concrete, mechanical, electrical, HVAC, landscaping, masonry, curtain wall, waterproofing, fire-stopping, caulking, flooring and other finish trade subcontractors. All superintendents and foremen with responsibility for oversight and setting of the joint gap must attend this meeting. The General Contractor is responsible to coordinate and schedule all trades and ensure that all subcontractors understand their responsibilities in relation to expansion joints and that their work cannot impede anticipated structural movement at the expansion joints, or compromise the achievement of watertighness or life safety at expansion joints in any way.

B. The General Contractor shall provide a field report that summarizes the project conditions and any remedial action necessary to correct field conditions (substrate, joint size, blockout, vertical offsets, etc.) that may affect expansion joint system performance.

C. Warranty – Manufacturer's standard warranty shall apply.

PART 2 – PRODUCT

2.1 General

A. Provide traffic durable, watertight, expansion joint by EMSEAL JOINT SYSTEMS for expansion joints and isolation joints in decks. Typical locations include, but are not limited to the following: applications for joints over occupied space, parking deck joints, stair tower perimeters, elevator perimeters, stadium tread and risers, stadium concourses, and solid slab structural expansion joints. System shall perform waterproofing, traffic bearing and movement-accommodation functions.

B. Provide THERMAFLEX TM or TCR as manufactured by EMSEAL JOINT SYSTEMS LTD and as indicated on drawings for horizontal expansion joint locations.

C. Expansion joint system shall be comprised of: 1.) a heat-weldable, santoprene, thermoplastic-rubber, double-celled or multi-celled, extrusion with perforated flanges and, 2.) manufacturer's cold applied elastomeric nosing.

D. Elastomeric nosing shall be a two-part polyurethane material (epoxies not permitted) mixed with aggregate with sand particles not to exceed 30-mesh. Nosing material shall be pourable grade material capable of encapsulating the perforated flanges in a single pour without the laying of a setting-bed or tack coat. The material shall flow so as to fill voids or irregularities in concrete blockouts and beneath the perforated flanges of the gland. Material shall cure to flexible (non-rigid) state. So as to ensure proper mixing, flow ability, and consolidation, mixed nosing material shall have an aggregate loading ratio by weight of liquid resin to aggregate not exceed 1:2.

E. System to be installed into blockouts on each side of the joint-gap prepared to the dimensions of ¾" deep x 3" wide (20mm deep x 75 mm wide) for TM and ¾" deep x 3 1/2" wide (20mm deep x 90mm wide) for TCR.

F. Final selection of the seal size to be coordinated between manufacturer, designer, and contractor(s) in consideration of expected movements as a product of structural design and expected temperature variations, taking into account as-built joint-gap sizes and temperatures at expected installation time. Width of joint-gaps at time of casting or cutting to be adjusted, if necessary, from baseline temperature used and specified by designer in determining system suitability.

G. Manufacturer's Checklist must be completed by expansion joint subcontractor and returned to manufacturer at time of ordering material.

2.2 Fabrication

A. Directional changes and terminations into vertical plane surfaces (walls, parapets, ends of decks, etc) as well as to transition the material through curbs, treads and risers or other in-slab plane changes to be provided by factory-manufactured assemblies that preserve continuity of seal. Transitions between THERMAFLEX and any other of Manufacturer's joint systems in the vertical plane to be executed according to Manufacturer's details and to be warranted as watertight.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 Installation

A. Preparation of the Work Area

1. The contractor shall provide properly formed and prepared expansion joint openings constructed to the exact dimensions and elevations shown on manufacturer's standard system drawings or as shown on the contract

drawings. Deviations from these dimensions will not be allowed without the written consent of the engineer of record.

2. The contractor shall clean the joint opening of all contaminants immediately prior to installation of expansion joint system. Repair spalled, irregular or unsound joint surfaces using accepted industry practices for repair of the substrates in question. Remove protruding roughness to ensure joint sides are smooth. Refer to Manufacturers Installation Guide for detailed step-by-step instructions.

3. System to be installed by qualified sub-contractors only according to detailed published installation procedures and/or in accordance with job-specific installation instructions of manufacturer's field technician. Bids must include for presence of paid-for manufacturer's field technician to be present during initial preparation, inspection, and material installation.

3.2 Clean and Protect

A. Protect the system and its components during construction. Subsequent damage to the expansion joint system will be repaired at the general contractor's expense. After work is complete, clean exposed surfaces with a suitable cleaner that will not harm or attack the finish.

END OF SECTION 07 95 13.19

SECTION 08 11 13 - HOLLOW METAL DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Interior standard steel doors and frames.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware for door hardware for hollow-metal donors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Minimum Thickness: Minimum thickness of base metal without coatings according to NAAMM-HMMA 803 or SDI A250.8.

1.4 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate anchorage installation for hollow-metal frames. Furnish setting drawings, templates, and directions for installing anchorages, including sleeves, concrete inserts, anchor bolts, and items with integral anchors. Deliver such items to Project site in time for installation.

B. Coordinate requirements for installation of door hardware, electrified door hardware, and access control and security systems.

1.5 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.6 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, core descriptions, fire-resistance ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Include the following:

1. Elevations of each door type.
2. Details of doors, including vertical- and horizontal-edge details and metal thicknesses.
3. Frame details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
4. Locations of reinforcement and preparations for hardware.
5. Details of each different wall opening condition.
6. Details of electrical raceway and preparation for electrified hardware, access control systems, and security systems.
7. Details of anchorages, joints, field splices, and connections.
8. Details of accessories.
9. Details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For hollow-metal doors and frames with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Product Schedule: For hollow-metal doors and frames, prepared by or under the supervision of supplier, using same reference numbers for details and openings as those on Drawings. Coordinate with final door hardware schedule.

1.7 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Test Reports: For each type of hollow-metal door and frame assembly, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

B. Oversize Construction Certification: For assemblies required to be fire-rated and exceeding limitations of labeled assemblies.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Provide exterior hollow metal doors and frames as complete and tested assemblies, including approved hardware specified under Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware", to meet the wind loads, design pressures, debris impact resistance, and glass and glazing requirements as required by building code sections applicable to the Project.
1. Each unit to bear a permanent label with manufacturer's name, city, state, and statement indicting Product Control Approval.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver hollow-metal doors and frames palletized, packaged, or crated to provide protection during transit and Project-site storage. Do not use nonvented plastic.

1. Provide additional protection to prevent damage to factory-finished units.

B. Deliver welded frames with two removable spreader bars across bottom of frames, tack welded to jambs and mullions.

C. Store hollow-metal doors and frames vertically under cover at Project site with head up. Place on minimum 4-inch-high wood blocking. Provide minimum 1/4-inch space between each stacked door to permit air circulation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Ceco Door; ASSA ABLOY.
2. Curries Company; ASSA ABLOY.
3. Karpen Steel Custom Doors & Frames.
4. J/R Metal Frames Manufacturing, Inc.
5. North American Door Corp.
6. Pioneer Industries, Inc.
7. Steelcraft; an Ingersoll-Rand Company

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Assemblies: Complying with NFPA 80 and listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for fire-protection ratings indicated, based on testing at positive pressure according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C.

1. Smoke- and Draft-Control Assemblies: Provide assemblies with gaskets listed and labeled for smoke and draft control by a qualified testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, based on testing according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

2.3 INTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Standard-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 1; SDI A250.4, Level C. At interior locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

C. Doors:

a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.032 inch.
d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.
e. Edge Bevel: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges.
f. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
g. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener laminated mineral board core for fire-rated doors.

2. Frames:

a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch.
b. Construction: Knocked down.

3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.4 EXTERIOR STANDARD STEEL DOORS AND FRAMES

A. Construct hollow-metal doors and frames to comply with standards indicated for materials, fabrication, hardware locations, hardware reinforcement, tolerances, and clearances, and as specified.

B. Heavy-Duty Doors and Frames: SDI A250.8, Level 2; SDI A250.4, Level B. At exterior locations indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.

1. Doors:

a. Type: As indicated in the Door and Frame Schedule.
b. Thickness: 1-3/4 inches.
c. Face: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.042 inch, with minimum A60coating.
d. Edge Construction: Model 1, Full Flush.

e. Edge Bevel: Bevel lock edge 1/8 inch in 2 inches: Provide manufacturer's standard beveled or square edges for other exterior doors.
f. Top Edge Closures: Close top edges of doors with flush closures of same material as face sheets. Seal joints against water penetration.
g. Bottom Edges: Close bottom edges of doors where required for attachment of weather stripping with end closures or channels of same material as face sheets. Provide weep-hole openings in bottoms of exterior doors to permit moisture to escape.
h. Core: Manufacturer's standard.
i. Fire-Rated Core: Manufacturer's standard vertical steel stiffener with insulation core for fire-rated doors.

2. Frames:

a. Materials: Metallic-coated steel sheet, minimum thickness of 0.053 inch, with minimum A60 coating.
b. Construction: Full profile welded.

3. Exposed Finish: Prime.

2.5 FRAME ANCHORS

A. Jamb Anchors:

1. Type: Anchors of minimum size and type required by applicable door and frame standard, and suitable for performance level indicated.
2. Quantity: Minimum of three anchors per jamb, with one additional anchor for frames with no floor anchor. Provide one additional anchor for each 24 inches of frame height above 7 feet.
3. Postinstalled Expansion Anchor: Minimum 3/8-inch-diameter bolts with expansion shields or inserts, with manufacturer's standard pipe spacer.

B. Floor Anchors: Provide floor anchors for each jamb and mullion that extends to floor.

C. Floor Anchors for Concrete Slabs with Underlayment: Adjustable-type anchors with extension clips, allowing not less than 2-inch height adjustment. Terminate bottom of frames at top of underlayment.

D. Material: ASTM A 879/A 879M, Commercial Steel (CS), 04Z coating designation; mill phosphatized.

1. For anchors built into exterior walls, steel sheet complying with ASTM A 1008/A 1008M or ASTM A 1011/A 1011M; hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M, Class B.

2.6 MATERIALS

A. Cold-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; suitable for exposed applications.

B. Hot-Rolled Steel Sheet: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B; free of scale, pitting, or surface defects; pickled and oiled.

C. Metallic-Coated Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, Commercial Steel (CS), Type B.

D. Inserts, Bolts, and Fasteners: Hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 153/A 153M.

E. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hollow-metal frames of type indicated.

F. Mineral-Fiber Insulation: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing); consisting of fibers manufactured from slag or rock wool; with maximum flame-spread and smoke-developed indexes of 25 and 50, respectively; passing ASTM E 136 for combustion characteristics.

2.7 FABRICATION

A. Door Astragals: Provide split astragal on one leaf of pairs of doors where required by NFPA 80 for fire-performance rating or where indicated. Extend minimum 3/4 inch (19 mm) beyond edge of door on which astragal is mounted or as required to comply with published listing of qualified testing agency.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Fabricate in one piece except where handling and shipping limitations require multiple sections. Where frames are fabricated in sections, provide alignment plates or angles at each joint, fabricated of metal of same or greater thickness as frames.
   1. Provide countersunk, flat- or oval-head exposed screws and bolts for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Door Silencers: Except on weather-stripped frames, drill stops to receive door silencers as follows. Keep holes clear during construction.

      a. Single-Door Frames: Drill stop in strike jamb to receive three door silencers.

   3. Terminated Stops: Terminate stops 6 inches above finish floor with a 90-degree angle cut, and close open end of stop with steel sheet closure. Cover opening in extension of frame with welded-steel filler plate, with welds ground smooth and flush with frame.

C. Hardware Preparation: Factory prepare hollow-metal doors and frames to receive templated mortised hardware, and electrical wiring; include cutouts, reinforcement, mortising, drilling, and tapping according to SDI A250.6, the Door Hardware Schedule, and templates.

1. Reinforce doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.
2. Comply with BHMA A156.115 for preparing hollow-metal doors and frames for hardware.

2.8 STEEL FINISHES

A. Prime Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard primer.

1. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free primer complying with SDI A250.10; recommended by primer manufacturer for substrate; compatible with substrate and field-applied coatings despite prolonged exposure.

B. Factory Finish: Clean, pretreat, and apply manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat, complying with SDI A250.3.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Remove welded-in shipping spreaders installed at factory. Restore exposed finish by grinding, filling, and dressing, as required to make repaired area smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch up factory-applied finishes where spreaders are removed.

B. Drill and tap doors and frames to receive nontemplated, mortised, and surface-mounted door hardware.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install hollow-metal doors and frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place. Comply with approved Shop Drawings and with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Hollow-Metal Frames: Comply with SDI A250.11 NAAMM-HMMA 840.

1. Set frames accurately in position; plumbed, aligned, and braced securely until permanent anchors are set. After wall construction is complete, remove temporary braces without damage to completed Work.

    a. Where frames are fabricated in sections, field splice at approved locations by welding face joint continuously; grind, fill, dress, and make splice smooth, flush, and invisible on exposed faces. Touch-up finishes.
    b. Install frames with removable stops located on secure side of opening.

2. Fire-Rated Openings: Install frames according to NFPA 80.
3. Floor Anchors: Secure with postinstalled expansion anchors.

    a. Floor anchors may be set with power-actuated fasteners instead of postinstalled expansion anchors if so indicated and approved on Shop Drawings.

4. Solidly pack mineral-fiber insulation inside frames.
5. Installation Tolerances: Adjust hollow-metal frames to the following tolerances:

    a. Squareness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at door rabbet on a line 90 degrees from jamb perpendicular to frame head.
    b. Alignment: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs on a horizontal line parallel to plane of wall.
    c. Twist: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at opposite face corners of jambs on parallel lines, and perpendicular to plane of wall.
    d. Plumbness: Plus or minus 1/16 inch, measured at jambs at floor.

C. Hollow-Metal Doors: Fit and adjust hollow-metal doors accurately in frames, within clearances specified below.

1. Non-Fire-Rated Steel Doors: Comply with SDI A250.8 NAAMM-HMMA 841 and NAAMM-HMMA guide specification indicated.
2. Fire-Rated Doors: Install doors with clearances according to NFPA 80.
3. Smoke-Control Doors: Install doors according to NFPA 105.

3.3 CLEANING AND TOUCHUP

A. Prime-Coat Touchup: Immediately after erection, sand smooth rusted or damaged areas of prime coat and apply touchup of compatible air-drying, rust-inhibitive primer.

B. Metallic-Coated Surface Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with galvanizing repair paint according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Factory-Finish Touchup: Clean abraded areas and repair with same material used for factory finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Touchup Painting: Cleaning and touchup painting of abraded areas of paint are specified in painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 08 11 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 31 13 - ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes access doors and frames for walls and ceilings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of access door and frame indicated. Include construction details, materials, individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details of access doors and frames for each type of substrate. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Access Door and Frame Schedule: Provide complete access door and frame schedule, including types, locations, sizes, latching or locking provisions, and other data pertinent to installation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Ceiling Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including access doors and frames, lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, and special trim are shown and coordinated with each other.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Size Variations: Obtain Architect's acceptance of manufacturer's standard-size units, which may vary slightly from sizes indicated.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Verification: Determine specific locations and sizes for access doors needed to gain access to concealed plumbing, mechanical, or other concealed work, and indicate in the schedule specified in "Submittals" Article.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Access Doors and Frames: Where required, provide assemblies complying

with NFPA 80 that are listed and labeled by a qualified testing agency, for fire-protection ratings indicated, according to NFPA 252 or UL 10B.

2.2 STEEL MATERIALS

A. Steel Plates, Shapes, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.

B. Steel Sheet: Uncoated or cold-rolled steel sheet substrate complying with ASTM A 1008/ A 1008M, Commercial Steel (CS), exposed.

2.3 ACCESS DOORS AND FRAMES FOR WALLS AND CEILINGS

A. Flush Access Doors and Frames with Exposed Trim: Fabricated from steel sheet.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Acudor Products, Inc.
    b. Babcock-Davis
    c. J. L. Industries, Inc.
    d. Karp Associates, Inc.
    e. Larsen's Manufacturing Company
    f. MIFAB, Inc.
    g. Milcor Inc.
    h. Nystrom, Inc.
    i. Williams Bros. Corporation of America (The)
2. Description: Face of door flush with frame, with exposed flange and concealed hinge.
3. Locations: Wall and ceiling surfaces.
4. Door: Minimum 0.060-inch thick sheet metal, set flush with exposed face flange of frame, factory primed.
5. Frame: Minimum 0.060-inch thick sheet metal with 1-inch- wide, surface-mounted trim, factory primed.
6. Hinges: Continuous piano.
7. Latch: Cam latch operated by screwdriver with interior release.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General: Provide access door and frame assemblies manufactured as integral units ready for installation.

B. Metal Surfaces: For metal surfaces exposed to view in the completed Work, provide materials with smooth, flat surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials with exposed pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.

C. Doors and Frames: Grind exposed welds smooth and flush with adjacent surfaces. Furnish attachment devices and fasteners of type required to secure access panels to types of supports indicated.

1. Exposed Flanges: Nominal 1 to 1-1/2 inches wide around perimeter of frame.
2. Provide mounting holes in frames for attachment of units to metal framing.
3. Provide mounting holes in frame for attachment of masonry anchors. Furnish adjustable metal masonry anchors.

D. Latching Mechanisms: Furnish number required to hold doors in flush, smooth plane when closed.

2.5 FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

D. Painted Finishes: Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

1. Factory Primed: Apply manufacturer's standard, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing access doors and frames.

B. Set frames accurately in position and attach securely to supports with plane of face panels aligned with adjacent finish surfaces.

3.3 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust doors and hardware after installation for proper operation.

B. Remove and replace doors and frames that are warped, bowed, or otherwise damaged.

END OF SECTION 08 31 13

SECTION 08 34 83 FIRE & SMOKE DOOR CONTAINMENT SYSTEM

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.01 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Smoke detector activated Fire & Smoke door smoke containment curtain and control system designed seal the hoistway opening.

B. Products Supplied But Not Installed Under This Section:
   1. End-of-line diode (3.9V, 2W). Installed at smoke detector to monitor the circuit.

C. Related Sections:
   1. 09 2200–Non-Load Bearing Wall Framing: Metal backing in housing mounting area.
   2. 09 9100–Paints: Field painting of specified components; repainting of existing field painted Fire & Smoke door frames.
   3. 28 3000–Detection and Alarm: Provisions for smoke detectors.
   4. Division 26 Sections for 120VAC and control circuit power including conduit, boxes, conductors, wiring devices, and emergency power.

1.02 REFERENCES

A. NFPA Codes and Standards:
   1. 70 – National Electrical Code.
   2. 105 – Recommended Practice for the Installation of Smoke-Control Door Assemblies.
   3. 72-2002 and 2007 – National Fire Alarm Code
   4. 80 – Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives

B. International Building Code
   1. 2003.
   2. 2006
   3. 2009
   4. 2012
   5. 2015

C. UL Standards:
   1. 268 – Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
   2. 508 – Industrial Control Equipment.
   3. 864 – Control Units for Fire Protective Signaling Systems.
   4. 1784 – Air Leakage Tests for Door Assemblies.

1.03 SUBMITTALS

A. Reference Section 01 33 00–Submittal Procedures; submit following items:

1. Product Data.
2. Shop Drawings: Include door width and height, jamb width, jamb and head projection, curtain width, mounting height, and housing width. Show and identify related work performed under other sections of the specifications.
3. Quality Assurance/Control Submittals:
    a. Qualifications:
        1) Proof of manufacturer qualifications.
        2) Proof of Installer qualifications.
    b. Certifications: Copy of specified items.
    c. Manufacturer's installation instructions and testing procedures

1.04 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Comply Section 01 77 00 – Closeout Submittals; submit following items:
    1. Operation and Maintenance Manual
    2. Manufacturer's Warranties

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Overall Standards:
    1. Manufacturer shall maintain a quality control program in accordance with ISO 9001:2008.
    2. Manufacturer shall maintain an in-plant UL follow up inspection procedure.

B. Qualifications:
    1. Manufacturer Qualifications: Minimum ten years' experience in producing smoke and fire protection closures.
    2. Installer Qualifications: Factory approved by manufacturer.

C. Certifications:
    1. Proof of compliance with:
        a. NFPA 105
    2. Underwriters Laboratories
        a. UL Standard 10D 3hr Listing Label
        b. UL standard 1784 Listing Label
        c. ASTM E84 Listing Label

D. Pre-Installation Meeting:
    1. Schedule and convene a pre-installation meeting prior to commencement of field operations with representatives of the following in attendance: Owner, Architect, General Contractor, smoke containment system sub-contractor, painting sub-contractor, and electrical sub-contractor.
    2. Review substrate conditions, requirements of related work, installation instructions, storage and handling procedures, and protection measures.
    3. Keep minutes of meeting including responsibilities of various parties and deviations from specifications or installation instructions.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Reference Section 01 66 00 – Product Storage and Handling Requirements.

B. Follow manufacturer's instructions.

1.07 WARRANTY

A. Provide manufacturer's standard two year warranty.

B. Inspection, Maintenance and Testing:
   1. Perform minimum annual inspection and testing on each fire and smoke containment system as required by NFPA 80, manufacturer's warranty, and as otherwise required by the local authority having jurisdiction.
   2. Provide inspection and test documentation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURER

A. Cornel Model SmokeShield™ Fire & Smoke

B. Manufacturer:
   1. CornellCookson, 24 Elmwood Drive, Mountain Top, PA 18707
      www.cornellookson.com

C. Label each fire and smoke containment system with following information:
   1. Manufacturer's name.
   2. Label of listing agency.
   3. Fire protection rating.
   4. Air leakage label

2.02 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire Protection rating tested and labeled to UL10D 3hr.

B. Air Leakage: Not to exceed 3 cfm (0.001416 m^3/s) per sf of door opening at 0.1 in (25 Pa) water pressure differential at ambient temperature and 400 degrees F (204 degrees C) tested and labeled to UL 1784 per IBC 2006, 2009, and 2012

2.03 COMPONENTS

A. Construct the curtain head box from 20 gauge structural components with a 24 gauge pre finished galvanized steel cover.

B. Provide a removable headbox cover allowing full width access to the assembly and curtain.

Standard head box sizes will include standard upset and require 11″ overall headroom for single curtain/barrel assemblies in openings to 16′x 11′; 12″ for openings to 16′x16′, and 13″ for openings to 16′x20′.

C. Headbox Finish: Standard powder coated finish.

D. Guides: Provide14 GA cold rolled steel standard powder coat to match header finish. Size: 3-5/8 inches (57.2 mm) wide; 1-3/4 inch.

E. Provide guide assemblies that expose no visible fasteners or shadow lines.

F. Provide bottom bar composed of steel shapes sufficient to prevent deflection during a fire event and to blend into surrounding finishes where specified with standard powder coat to match header finish.

G. Provide a barrel constructed of steel tubing of sufficient geometry to limit deflection to less than 1/32″ per foot of opening width.

H. Provide intermediate support rollers capable of preventing barrel deflection into the opening under the extreme heat conditions of a fire event as a UL listed component.

I. Provide a tubular shaped motor residing within the barrel that includes a 115 volt A.C. motor, planetary gearbox assembly, failsafe release mechanism and centrifugal governor.

J. Provide a tubular motor assembly constructed of all-metallic components that will not sustain flame or contribute to combustion during a fire event.

K. Provide a flush mount key switch to operate the curtain open and closed.

L. Provide a motor controller housed in a steel enclosure that may be mounted in numerous positions or locations for maximum versatility.

M. Provide a battery backup system to prevent curtain deployment during power outages for up to 8 hours.

N. Provide an integral centrifugal governing system that does not require battery or electrical power, and controls curtain descent to 8″ – 12″ per second.

O. Provide curtain material as tested and listed that includes F-920 filament fiberglass with stainless steel wire reinforcement.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates upon which work will be installed.
   1. Verify related work performed under other sections is complete and in accordance with Shop Drawings.
   2. Verify wall surfaces and Fire & Smoke door frames are acceptable for installation of system components.

B. Coordinate with responsible entity to perform corrective work on unsatisfactory substrates.

3.02 INSTALLATION

A. Install smoke and fire system components in accordance with manufacturer's installation instructions.

3.03 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Field Test: Follow manufacturer's cycle test procedures.
   1. Notify Owner's Representative, local Fire Marshal, alarm sub-contractor and [Fire & Smoke sub-contractor] [Fire & Smoke service company] minimum one week in advance of scheduled testing.
   2. Complete inspection and drop test documentation.

3.04 DEMONSTRATION

A. Demonstrate required testing and maintenance procedures to Owner's Representative.

B. Maintenance and Testing:
   1. Perform minimum annual inspection and drop testing on each unit as required by the manufacturer's warranty, NFPA 80, or under direction of the local authority having jurisdiction.
   2. Retain a record of tests per NFPA 80.

END OF SECTION 08 34 83

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 41 13 - INTERIOR ALUMINUM-FRAMED ENTRANCES AND STOREFRONT

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior aluminum frames for doors and glazing.
2. Interior aluminum doors.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For aluminum frames:

1. Include elevations, sections, and installation details for each wall-opening condition.
2. Include details for each frame type, including dimensioned profiles and metal thicknesses.
3. Include locations of reinforcements and preparations for hardware.
4. Include details of anchorages, joints, field splices, connections, and accessories.
5. Include details of moldings, removable stops, and glazing.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

D. Product Schedule: For aluminum frames. Use same designations indicated on Drawings. Coordinate with door hardware schedule and glazing.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For aluminum frames to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of each type of aluminum frame and door in typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Frameworks; an Assa Abloy Company
2. Modulex Products, Inc.
3. RACO Interior Products, Inc.
4. Or approved curtain wall manufacturer.

B. Source Limitations: Obtain aluminum frames and frame-manufacturer's doors from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 COMPONENTS

A. Aluminum Framing: ASTM B 221, with alloy and temper required to suit structural and finish requirements, and not less than 0.062 inch thick.

B. Door Frames: Extruded aluminum, reinforced for hinges, strikes, and closers.

C. Glazing Frames: Extruded aluminum, for 3/8-inch glass thickness.

1. Glazing Plane: Center.

D. Trim: Extruded aluminum, not less than 0.062 inch thick; removable, snap-in glazing stops and door stops, without exposed fasteners.

E. Doors: Manufacturer's standard, factory-assembled, 1-3/4-inch-thick, aluminum-framed door construction.

1. Door Operation: Swinging.
2. Stiles: Wide.

F. Door Finish: Match frame and trim finish.

G. Frame and Trim Finish: High-performance organic finish.

2.3 ACCESSORIES

A. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic, stainless-steel or other noncorrosive metal fasteners compatible with frames, stops, panels, reinforcement plates, hardware, anchors, and other items being fastened.

B. Door Silencers: Manufacturer's standard continuous mohair, wool pile, or vinyl seals.

C. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard extruded or molded rubber or plastic, to accommodate glazing thickness indicated.

D. Glass: As specified in Section 08 80 00 "Glazing."

E. Door Hardware: As specified in Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware."

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Provide concealed corner reinforcements and alignment clips for accurately fitted hairline joints at butted and mitered connections.

B. Machine jambs and prepare for hardware, with concealed reinforcement plates, drilled and tapped as required, and fastened within frame with concealed screws.

C. Fabricate frames for glazing with removable stops to allow glazing replacement without dismantling frame.

1. Locate removable stops on the inside of spaces accessed by keyed doors.

D. Fabricate components to allow secure installation without exposed fasteners.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. High-Performance Organic Finish: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that wall thickness does not exceed standard tolerances allowed by throat size of indicated aluminum frame.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install aluminum frames plumb, rigid, properly aligned, and securely fastened in place; according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Install frame components in the longest possible lengths with no piece less than 48 inches; components 96 inches or shorter shall be one piece.

1. Fasten to suspended ceiling grid on maximum 48-inch centers, using sheet metal screws or other fasteners approved by frame manufacturer.
2. Use concealed installation clips to produce tightly fitted and aligned splices and connections.
3. Secure clips to extruded main-frame components and not to snap-in or trim members.
4. Do not leave screws or other fasteners exposed to view when installation is complete.

C. Glass: Install glass according to Section 088000 "Glazing" and aluminum-frame manufacturer's written instructions.

D. Doors: Install doors aligned with frames and fitted with required hardware.

E. Door Hardware: Install according to Section 087100 "Door Hardware" and aluminum-frame manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Inspect installation, correct misalignments, and tighten loose connections.

B. Doors: Adjust doors to operate smoothly and easily, without binding or warping. Adjust hardware to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Clean exposed frame surfaces promptly after installation, using cleaning methods recommended in writing by frame manufacturer and according to AAMA 609 and 610.

D. Touch Up: Repair marred frame surfaces to blend inconspicuously with adjacent unrepaired surface so touchup is not visible from a distance of 48 inches as viewed by Architect. Remove and replace frames with damaged finish that cannot be satisfactorily repaired.

END OF SECTION 08 41 13

SECTION 08 44 13 - GLAZED ALUMINUM CURTAIN WALLS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes

1. Conventionally glazed aluminum curtain walls.
2. Exterior manual-swing entrance doors.
3. Sun control devices.

B. Products installed, but not furnished, under this Section include the following:

1. Door hardware furnished under Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Comply with performance requirements specified, as determined by testing of manufacturer's standard glazed aluminum curtain walls representing those indicated for this Project without failure due to defective manufacture, fabrication, installation, or other defects in construction.

1. Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall withstand movements of supporting structure including, but not limited to, story drift, twist, column shortening, long-term creep, and deflection from uniformly distributed and concentrated live loads.
2. Failure also includes the following:
   a. Thermal stresses transferring to building structure.
   b. Glass breakage.
   c. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
   d. Loosening or weakening of fasteners, attachments, and other components.
   e. Failure of operating units.

B. Delegated Design: Design glazed aluminum curtain walls, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

1. Professional engineer shall be legally qualified to practice in jurisdiction where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the kind indicated.

C. Wind Loads: As indicated on Structural Drawings.

D. Structural-Test Performance: Test according to ASTM E 330 as follows:

1. When tested at positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies do

not evidence deflection exceeding specified limits.

2. When tested at 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures, assemblies, including anchorage, do not evidence material failures, structural distress, and permanent deformation of main framing members exceeding 0.2 percent of span.
3. Test Durations: As required by design wind velocity, but not less than 10 seconds.

E. Deflection of Framing Members: At design wind pressure, as follows:

1. Deflection Normal to Wall Plane: Limited to edge of glass in a direction perpendicular to glass plane not exceeding L/175 of the glass edge length for each individual glazing lite or an amount that restricts edge deflection of individual glazing lites to 3/4 inch, whichever is less.
2. Deflection Parallel to Glazing Plane: Limited to amount not exceeding that which reduces glazing bite to less than 75 percent of design dimension and that which reduces edge clearance between framing members and glazing or other fixed components to less than 1/8 inch.

F. Story Drift: Accommodate design displacement of adjacent stories indicated.

1. Test Performance: Meeting criteria for passing based on building occupancy type when tested according to AAMA 501.4 at design displacement.

G. Water Penetration under Static Pressure: No evidence of water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas when tested according to ASTM E 331 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 20 percent of positive wind-load design pressure, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.

1. Maximum Water Leakage: No uncontrolled water penetrating assemblies or water appearing on assemblies' normally exposed interior surfaces from sources other than condensation. Water leakage does not include water controlled by flashing and gutters that is drained to exterior.

H. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements resulting from the following maximum change (range) in ambient and surface temperatures:

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.
2. Test Interior Ambient-Air Temperature: 75 deg F.
3. Test Performance: No buckling; stress on glass; sealant failure; excess stress on framing, anchors, and fasteners; or reduction of performance when tested according to AAMA 501.5.

I. Energy Performance: Glazed aluminum curtain walls shall have certified and labeled energy performance ratings in accordance with NFRC.

1. Thermal Transmittance (U-factor): Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have U-factor of not more than 0.45 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined according to

NFRC 100.

2. Solar Heat Gain Coefficient: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have a solar heat gain coefficient of no greater than 0.40 as determined according to NFRC 200.
3. Air Infiltration: Maximum air leakage through fixed glazing and framing areas of 0.30 cfm/sq. ft. of fixed wall area as determined according to ASTM E 283 at a minimum static-air-pressure differential of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
4. Condensation Resistance: Fixed glazing and framing areas shall have an NFRC-certified condensation resistance rating of no less than 50 as determined according to NFRC 500.

J. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests according to ASTM E 1996 for Project's wind zone.

1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet of grade.
2. Small-Missile Test: For glazed openings located more than 30 feet above grade.

1.3 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Provide glazed aluminum curtain walls that comply with test- performance requirements indicated, as evidenced by reports of tests performed on manufacturer's standard assemblies by a qualified testing agency.

1. Preconstruction Testing Program: Perform tests specified in "Performance Requirements" Article on laboratory mockups in the following order:

a. Structural-performance preloading at 50 percent of the specified wind-load design pressure when tested according to ASTM E 330.
b. Air infiltration when tested according to ASTM E 283.
c. Water penetration under static pressure when tested according to ASTM E 331.
d. Structural performance at design load when tested according to ASTM E 330. Repeat air filtration when tested according to ASTM E 283.
e. Repeat water penetration under static pressure when tested according to ASTM E 331.
f. Structural performance at maximum 150 percent of positive and negative wind-load design pressures when tested according to ASTM E 330.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For glazed aluminum curtain walls. Include plans, elevations, sections, full-size details, and attachments to other work.

1. Include details of provisions for assembly expansion and contraction and for draining moisture occurring within the assembly to the exterior.
2. Show sill flashing.
3. Include full-size isometric details of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of glazed aluminum curtain walls, showing the following:
    a. Joinery, including concealed welds.
    b. Anchorage.
    c. Expansion provisions.
    d. Glazing.
    e. Flashing and drainage.
4. Include laboratory mockup Shop Drawings, prepared by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, showing details of laboratory mockup.
    a. Resubmit Shop Drawings with changes made to glazed aluminum curtain walls to successfully complete preconstruction testing.

C. Samples for Verification:
1. For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.
2. Sill flashing.

D. Fabrication Sample: Of each vertical-to-horizontal intersection of assemblies, made from 12-inch lengths of full-size components and showing details of the following:
1. Joinery, including concealed welds.
2. Anchorage.
3. Expansion provisions.
4. Glazing.
5. Flashing and drainage.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For glazed aluminum curtain walls indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Energy Performance Certificates: For glazed aluminum curtain walls, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.
1. Basis for Certification: NFRC-certified energy performance values for each glazed aluminum curtain wall.

D. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified preconstruction testing agency, for glazed aluminum curtain walls, indicating compliance with performance requirements.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For glazed aluminum curtain walls to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain glazed aluminum curtain wall and entrances through one source from a single manufacturer.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer capable of fabricating glazed aluminum curtain walls that meet or exceed energy performance requirements indicated and of documenting this performance by certification, labeling, and inclusion in lists. Manufacturer shall have not less than 10 years successful experience in the fabrication of assemblies of the type and quality required.

C. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

1. Installer shall have successfully completed not less than two projects of similar size, scope, and complexity as that of this Project within the last three years.

D. Preconstruction Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ISO/IEC 17025 and accredited by ICC-ES for preconstruction testing indicated.

E. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E 699 for testing indicated.

F. Product Options: Information on Drawings and in Specifications establishes requirements for aesthetic effects and performance characteristics of assemblies. Aesthetic effects are indicated by dimensions, arrangements, alignment, and profiles of components and assemblies as they relate to sightlines, to one another, and to adjoining construction.

1. Do not revise intended aesthetic effects, as judged solely by Architect, except with Architect's approval. If revisions are proposed, submit comprehensive

explanatory data to Architect for review.

G. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."

H. Energy Performance Standards: Comply with NFRC for minimum standards of energy performance, materials, components, accessories, and fabrication. Comply with more stringent requirements if indicated.

1. Provide NFRC-certified glazed aluminum curtain walls with an attached label.

I. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for fabrication and installation.

1. Build mockup of typical wall area as shown on Drawings.
2. Include flashing, factory fabricated sill flashing, and other items indicated under sample submittals.
3. Field testing shall be performed on mockups according to requirements in "Field Quality Control" Article.
4. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
5. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

J. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01. Review methods and procedures related to glazed aluminum curtain walls including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review and discuss the finishing of glazed aluminum curtain wall that is required to be coordinated with the finishing of other aluminum work for color and finish matching.
3. Review, discuss, and coordinate the interrelationship of curtain wall with other exterior wall components. Include provisions for structural anchorage, flashing, weeping, sealants, and protection of finishes.
4. Review and discuss the sequence of work required to construct a watertight and weathertight exterior building envelope.
5. Inspect and discuss the condition of substrate and other preparatory work performed by other trades.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual locations of structural supports for glazed aluminum curtain walls by field measurements before fabrication and indicate measurements on Shop Drawings.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Assembly Warranty: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of glazed aluminum curtain walls that do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:
    a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
    b. Noise or vibration created by wind and thermal and structural movements.
    c. Deterioration of metals and other materials beyond normal weathering.
    d. Water penetration through fixed glazing and framing areas.
    e. Failure of operating components.
2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components on which finishes do not comply with requirements or that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period. Warranty does not include normal weathering.

1. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Entrance Door Hardware:

1. Maintenance Tools and Instructions: Furnish a complete set of specialized tools and maintenance instructions as needed for Owner's continued adjustment, maintenance, and removal and replacement of entrance door hardware.
2. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide six months' full maintenance by skilled employees of entrance door hardware Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper entrance door hardware operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.
    a. Coordinate with door hardware supplier for replacement of defective items.
3. Continuing Maintenance Proposal: From Installer to Owner, in the form of a standard yearly (or other period) maintenance agreement, starting on date initial

maintenance service is concluded. State services, obligations, conditions, and terms for agreement period and for future renewal options.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturer: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. EFCO Corporation
2. Kawneer North America; an Alcoa Company
3. Oldcastle BuildingEnvelope
4. Tubelite
5. Wausau Window and Wall Systems
6. YKK AP America Inc.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.
1. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209.
2. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221.
3. Extruded Structural Pipe and Tubes: ASTM B 429.
4. Structural Profiles: ASTM B 308/B 308M.
5. Welding Rods and Bare Electrodes: AWS A5.10/A5.10M.

B. Steel Reinforcement:Manufacturer's standard zinc-rich, corrosion-resistant primer complying with:

SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00; applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

6. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
7. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
8. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

2.3 FRAMING

A. Framing Members:Manufacturer's standard extruded- or formed-aluminum framing members of thickness required and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Construction: Thermally improved.
2. Glazing System: Retained mechanically with gaskets on four sides.
3. Glazing Plane: Match existing.

4. Framing Depth: As indicated on Drawings, or as required to meet wind loads.
5. Sightline: Match existing.
6. Finish: High-performance organic finish.

B. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

C. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

1. Use self-locking devices where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration.
2. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.

D. Sill Extension: Extruded aluminum. Profile as indicated on Drawings.

E. Sill Flashing: Manufacturer's tested and approved sill flashing system, finished to match curtainwall; designed to direct water away from building when installed horizontally at sill.

1. PVC is not acceptable.

F. Anchors: Three-way adjustable anchors with minimum adjustment of 1 inch that accommodate fabrication and installation tolerances in material and finish compatible with adjoining materials and recommended by manufacturer.

1. Concrete and Masonry Inserts: Hot-dip galvanized cast-iron, malleable-iron, or steel inserts complying with ASTM A 123/A 123M or ASTM A 153/A 153M requirements.

G. Perimeter Filler: Provide perimeter filler / backer plate to close back of frame and facilitate placement of backer rod and sealant.

H. Concealed Flashing: Dead-soft, 0.018-inch- thick stainless steel, ASTM A 240/A 240M of type recommended by manufacturer.

I. Framing Sealants: Manufacturer's standard sealants.

2.4 GLAZING

A. Glazing: Comply with Section 088000 "Glazing."

B. Glazing Gaskets: Manufacturer's standard sealed-corner pressure-glazing system of black, resilient elastomeric glazing gaskets, setting blocks, and shims or spacers.

C. Glazing Sealants: As recommended by manufacturer.

2.5 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements except containing no asbestos, formulated for 30-mil thickness per coat.

2.6 ENTRANCE DOOR SYSTEMS

A. Aluminum Entrance Doors: Manufacturer's standard glazed entrance doors for manual-swing operation.

1. Door Construction: 2-1/4 inches overall thickness, with minimum 0.125-inch thick, extruded- aluminum tubular rail and stile members. Mortise and tenon joinery at corner with full width 3/8- inch diameter tie rods secured with locking washers and hex nuts.

a. Thermal Construction: High-performance plastic connectors separate aluminum members exposed to the exterior from members exposed to the interior.

2. Door Design: Wide stile, 5-inch nominal width.

a. Accessible Doors: Smooth surfaced for width of door in area within 10 inches above floor or ground plane.

3. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Beveled, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and preformed gaskets.

a. Provide nonremovable glazing stops on outside of door.

2.7 ENTRANCE DOOR HARDWARE

A. General: Except for items specified in this Article, entrance door hardware to be furnished under Section 087100 "Door Hardware."

1. All hardware preparation and installation to be performed as Work of this Section.

B. Weather Stripping: Manufacturer's standard replaceable components.

1. Compression Type: Made of ASTM D 2000, molded neoprene, or ASTM D 2287, molded PVC.
2. Sliding Type: AAMA 701, made of wool, polypropylene, or nylon woven pile with nylon-fabric or aluminum-strip backing.

2.8 SUN CONTROL DEVICES

A. Sun Control Devices: Integral sun control system consisting of mount, panel retainer, shelf struts, cover retainer, cover and aluminum panels, fabricated for direct attachment to curtain wall system, field sized and assembled to profile indicated, finished to match curtain wall system.

B. Light Shelf and Light Guard:

1. Panels: Aluminum sheet, 0.090 minimum thickness.
2. Framing, Struts, and Supports: Extruded aluminum.
3. Fascia Profile: As indicated on Drawings.
4. Provide end caps installed on each end, attached to the shelf struts.
5. Slope top panel of light guard to drain. Provide a drip edge.

2.9 INSULATED SPANDREL PANELS

A. Insulated Spandrel Panels: Laminated, metal-faced flat panels with no deviations in plane exceeding 0.8 percent of panel dimension in width or length.

1. Overall Panel Thickness: 1 inch.
2. Exterior and Interior Skin: Aluminum.
    a. Thickness: Manufacturer's standard for finish and texture indicated.
    b. Finish: Match framing system.
    c. Texture: Smooth.
    d. Backing Sheet: 1/8-inch- thick tempered hardboard.
3. Thermal Insulation Core: Manufacturer's standard rigid, closed-cell, polyisocyanurate board or extruded polystyrene board.
4. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
    a. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
    b. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

2.10 FABRICATION

A. Form or extrude aluminum shapes before finishing.

B. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.

C. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
2. Accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered.
3. Physical and thermal isolation of glazing from framing members.

4. Accommodations for thermal and mechanical movements of glazing and framing to maintain required glazing edge clearances.
5. Provisions for field replacement of glazing from interior for vision glass and exterior for spandrel glazing and metal panels.
6. Fasteners, anchors, and connection devices that are concealed from view to greatest extent possible.

D. Fabricate components that, when assembled, have the following characteristics:

1. Internal guttering system or other means to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.
2. Pressure-equalized system or double barrier design with primary air and vapor barrier at interior side of glazed aluminum curtain wall and secondary seal weeped and vented to exterior.

E. Factory-Assembled Frame Units:

1. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
2. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.
3. Install glazing to comply with requirements in Section 088000 "Glazing."

F. Entrance Doors: Reinforce doors as required for installing entrance door hardware.

1. At pairs of exterior doors, provide sliding-type weather stripping retained in adjustable strip and mortised into door edge.
2. At exterior doors, provide weather sweeps applied to door bottoms.

G. Entrance Door Hardware Installation: Factory install entrance door hardware to the greatest extent possible. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed entrance door hardware before applying finishes.

H. After fabrication, clearly mark components to identify their locations in Project according to Shop Drawings.

2.11 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Apply finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.12 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with the NAAMM "Metal Finishes Manual" for recommendations relative to application and designations of finishes.

B. High-Performance Organic Finish for Curtain Wall Framing: Two-coat fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Do not install damaged components.
3. Fit joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
4. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints.
5. Install anchors with separators and isolators to prevent metal corrosion and electrolytic deterioration and to prevent impeding movement of moving joints.
6. Provide fasteners at spacing as recommended by manufacturer.
7. Weld components in concealed locations to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Protect glazing surfaces from welding.
8. Seal joints watertight unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Protection:

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape or installing nonconductive spacers as recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

C. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within glazed aluminum curtain wall to exterior.

D. Install components plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades.

E. Installation of Sill Flashing: Extend sloped flashing to exterior face of building per manufacturer's instruction.

1. Set flashing in a continuous bed of sealant.
2. Do not apply sealant between flashing and bottom of curtain wall frame, except as required by manufacturer to comply with specified performance requirements.

F. Install operable units level and plumb, securely anchored, and without distortion. Adjust weather- stripping contact and hardware movement to produce proper operation.

G. Install glazing as specified in Section 088000 "Glazing."

H. Entrance Doors: Install doors to produce smooth operation and tight fit at contact points.

1. Exterior Doors: Install to produce weathertight enclosure and tight fit at weather stripping.
2. Field-Installed Entrance Door Hardware: Install surface-mounted entrance door hardware according to entrance door hardware manufacturers' written instructions using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.

I. Install weatherseal sealant according to Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" and according to sealant manufacturer's written instructions to produce weatherproof joints. Install joint filler behind sealant as recommended by sealant manufacturer.

3.3 ERECTION TOLERANCES

A. Erection Tolerances: Install glazed aluminum curtain walls to comply with the following maximum tolerances:

1. Plumb: 1/8 inch in 10 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
2. Level: 1/8 inch in 20 feet; 1/4 inch in 40 feet.
3. Alignment:

a. Where surfaces abut in line or are separated by reveal or protruding element up to 1/2 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/16 inch.
b. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element from 1/2 to 1 inch wide, limit offset from true alignment to 1/8 inch.
c. Where surfaces are separated by reveal or protruding element of 1 inch wide or more, limit offset from true alignment to 1/4 inch.

4. Location: Limit variation from plane to 1/8 inch in 12 feet; 1/2 inch over total length.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Contractor/Installer Testing: Contractor/Installer shall be prepared to provide the following minimum testing as part of the Work.

1. Testing shall be in compliance with AAMA 501.2. Testing shall be performed at approximately 10 percent and 50 percent completion. A minimum of 2 test areas to be tested at each phase. Additional testing may be required if installation crew changes of if construction is suspended and resumed after an extended period of time. Coordinate with Architect's representative for areas to be tested, testing times, and representative's availability to monitor tests.

B. Testing Agency: Owner may engage a qualified independent testing and inspecting agency to perform field tests and inspections.

C. Testing Services: Testing and inspecting of representative areas to determine compliance of installed systems with specified requirements shall take place as follows. Do not proceed with installation of the next area until test results for previously completed areas show compliance with requirements.

1. Air Infiltration: Areas shall be tested for air leakage of 1.5 times the rate specified for laboratory testing under "Performance Requirements" Article, but not more than 0.09 cfm/sq. ft., of fixed wall area when tested according to ASTM E 783 at a minimum static-air-pressure difference of 6.24 lbf/sq. ft.
2. Water Penetration: Areas shall be tested according to ASTM E 1105 at a minimum uniform and cyclic static-air-pressure difference of 0.67 times the static-air-pressure difference specified for laboratory testing under Part 1 "Performance Requirements" Article, but not less than 6.24 lbf/sq. ft., and shall not evidence water penetration.

D. Repair or remove work if test results and inspections indicate that it does not comply with specified requirements.

E. Additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, will be performed to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

F. Glazed aluminum curtain walls will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust operating entrance door hardware to function smoothly as recommended by manufacturer.

1. For entrance doors accessible to people with disabilities, adjust closers to provide a 3-second closer sweep period for doors to move from a 70-degree open position to 3 inches from the latch, measured to the leading door edge.

END OF SECTION 08 44 13

SECTION 08 45 00 - TRANSLUCENT WALL AND ROOF ASSEMBLIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This section includes the following:

1. Sloped monolithic polycarbonate glazing panel system and accessories as shown in drawings and as specified.
2. Provide a complete canopy glazing assembly of extruded solid polycarbonate panels as part of a complete aluminum framed glazing system that has been tested and warranted by the manufacturer. Cellular or multi-cell polycarbonate panels are not acceptable.
3. Factory provided anchors, brackets and hardware necessary to complete the assembly and weather tightness performance requirements. All flashing up to but not penetrating adjoining work are also required as part of the system and shall be included according to the approved manufacturer submittals or equivalents shall be sourced by others.

B. Related Sections: The following sections contain requirements that relate to this section

1. Division 5 Section "Structural Steel"
2. Division 7 Section "Flashing and Sheet Metal"
3. Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants"

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Provide a complete system consisting of aluminum frame and monolithic polycarbonate glazing capable of withstanding loads as defined by the local governing codes having jurisdiction where the system is to be installed without failure. Failure to include the following:

1. Deflection exceeding specified limits.
2. Thermal stresses transferred to supporting structure.
3. Framing members transferring stresses, including those caused by thermal and structural movement to glazing.
4. Weakening of fasteners, attachments and other components.

B. Deflection Limits: Maximum calculated deflection of any framing member in a direction normal to the glazing plane when subjected to specified design pressures shall be limited to **L/120** of its clear span.

C. Structural Loads: Provide structural monolithic polycarbonate panel assemblies, including anchorage, capable of withstanding the effects of the following design loads:

1. Roof Loads:
   a. Concentrated Load: ***45 psf*** point load applied to framing members at location that produces the most severe stress or deflection.
   b. Snow Load: ***9 psf***
   c. Wind Load: ***56 psf***

d. Seismic Load: ***0 psf***

D. Structural Performance: Uniform Static Air pressure Difference in accordance to ASTM E 330.
1. 3/8" (.375 inch nominal) Panel: No damage or disengagement at (+/-) 260 psf.
2. Purlin/Girt Spacing for 3/8" (.375 inch nominal) Panel: 9 feet maximum
3. Mullion Spacing: 24 inches maximum

I. Flammability:
1. Approved light transmitting plastic with CC1 classification per ASTM D-635 and IBC 2606.4.
2. Smoke density no greater than 75 per ASTM D2843.
3. Self-ignition temperature, per ASTM-1929 no less than 550 degrees Celsius.

J. Weatherability:
4. Panels shall consist of a polycarbonate resin with a permanent, co-extruded, ultra-violet protective layer. Post applied coatings or films of dissimilar materials are not acceptable.
5. Color change: Per ASTM D 2244.

K. Appearance:
1. Panel thickness: 3/8" (.375 inch nominal)
2. Panel profile: Flat uniform extruded monolithic sheet.
a. Other glazing panels including standing seam and corrugated profiles are not acceptable.
b. Systems utilizing raised metal or plastic batten/mullion covers over ¼" tall are unacceptable.
3. Panel width: 24" (nominal)
4. Panel color:
a. BLUE HIGH (Bh)+THUNDER (N51)
b. KODA BLUE HIGH (Bh) +RED TINT (RT)
c. KODA FOUNTAIN (B43)
d. KODA CORNFLOWER (B46)
e.Panels shall be uniform in color according to manufacturer standard allowable variation.

L. Solar Performance:
1. Visible light transmission
a. BLUE HIGH (Bh)+THUNDER (N51)
b. KODA BLUE HIGH (Bh) +RED TINT (RT)
c. KODA FOUNTAIN (B43)
d. *KODA CORNFLOWER (B46)*

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data Sheets: Submit manufacturer's product data, including details of construction and installation, materials and finish and installation instructions applicable to the configuration.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Shall include Plans and / or elevations and details of the system and its installation. Flashing sealants and anchorage shall be clearly indicated.
2. Shall note gauges of brake metal, the finish on the framing and any other information

required to properly describe and install the system.

C. Samples for Selection: Submit manufacturer's samples for each glazing type (12" x 12"), framing system (6"), finish, and color specified.

D. Manufacturer's Certification: Submit manufacturer's certification that materials comply with specified requirements and are suitable for intended application.

E. Manufacturer's Project References: Submit list of completed projects including project name and location, name of architect, and type of daylighting manufactured.

F. Warranty: Submit manufacturer's standard warranty.

G. Test Reports:
   1. *ASTM D 635 - Standard Test Method for Rate of Burning and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Self-Supporting Plastics in a Horizontal Position.*
   2. *ASTM D 1929 – Standard Test Method for Determining Ignition Temperatures of Plastics.*
   3. *ASTM E 1996 (Level D) – Standard Specification for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors, and Impacted Protective Systems Impacted by Windborne Debris in Hurricanes. (Large Missile Impact Testing).* ***(3/8" thick panel required)***
   4. *ASTM E 1886 – Standard Test Method for Performance of Exterior Windows, Curtain Walls, Doors and Impact Protective Systems Impacted by Missile(s) and Exposed to Cyclic Pressure Differentials.* ***(3/8" thick panel required)***
   5. *ASTM D 2843 – Standard Test Method for Density of Smoke from the Burning or Decomposition of Plastics.*
   6. *ASTM D 1003 – Standard Test Method for Haze and Luminous Transmittance of Transparent Plastics.*
   7. *ASTM D 1925 - Standard Test Method for Yellowness Index of Plastics.*
   8. *ASTM E 330 – Standard Test Method for Structural Performance of Exterior Windows, Doors, Skylights and Curtain Wall by Uniform Static Air Pressure Difference.*
   9. *TAS 201-94 – Criteria for Testing Impact of Materials as Required by Section 1626 of the Florida Building Code.* ***(3/8" thick panel required)***
   10. *TAS 202-94 – Criteria for Testing Impact and Non-Impact Resistant Building Envelope Components Using Uniform Static Air Pressure Required by Florida Building Code.* ***(3/8" thick panel required)***
   11. *TAS 203-94 – Criteria for Testing Products Subject to Cyclic Wind Pressure Loading Required by Florida Building Code.* ***(3/8" thick panel required)***

1.4 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Written warranty, executed by the manufacturer agreeing to repair components of glazing that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period. Failure includes, but are not limited to the following:

   1. Structural failures.
   2. Failure of systems to meet performance requirements.
   3. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

B. System Warranty: Provide written warranty from manufacturer agreeing to replace materials that exhibit defects from manufacturing or fabrication that contribute to water leakage (as defined above) or Structural failure. The manufacturer will, in a timely fashion, furnish (only) new components to replace those found to be defective.
   1. ***Warranty Period: 1*** year from date of shipment from manufacturer.

C. Polycarbonate Warranty: Provide written warranty from manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace work that has or develops defects in the polycarbonate panels. "Defects" is defined as abnormal aging or deterioration.
   1. ***Warranty period for polycarbonate: 5*** years from date of shipment from manufacturer against:
      a. Yellowing – The changes of yellowing index established in accordance to ASTM D 1925 standard should be less than 10 delta after 10 years, in relation to the original value.
      b. Change in light transmission of no more than 6% per ASTM D-1003 in relation to the original value.
      c. No delamination of panel affecting appearance, performance or structural integrity of the cellular polycarbonate glazing panel.
      d. No breakage due to direct effect from weather conditions and hail impact as defined by manufacturers written warranty submitted as part of section ***[1.3/F]*** in this specification.

D. Finish Warranty: Provide written warranty from manufacturer agreeing to repair or replace work with finish defects. "Defects" is defined as peeling, chipping, chalking, fading, abnormal aging or deterioration and failure to perform as required.
   1. **Warranty Period for "Anodized" finish:**
      a. 10 Years from date of shipment from manufacturer.
      b. Longer warranty periods available upon request if specified.
   2. **Warranty Period for Fluoropolymer PVDF ("Kynar") finish:**
      a. AAMA 2605 (70% Fluoropolymer PVDF) – 10 years from date of shipment from manufacturer.
      b. AAMA 2604 (50% Fluoropolymer PVDF) – 5 years from date of shipment from manufacturer.
   3. **Warranty for Baked Enamel finish:**
      a. AAMA 2603 – 1 year from date of shipment.
   4. **Warranty Period for "Tnemec" finish:**
      a. 10 Years from date of shipment from manufacturer.
      b. Longer warranty periods available upon request if specified.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Custom Canopy System by 3form, LLC., Salt Lake City, Utah, USA / telephone 801-649-2500
B. Approved equal.
C. Substitutions: Manufacturers shall not be considered without prior approval in writing no later

than ten (10) calendar days prior to bid. Substitute manufacturers must have been in the vertical glazing manufacturing for not less than a period of 15 years and must submit to the Architect the following:

1. List of similar projects successfully completed within the last 5 years.
2. Proof of financial capability.
3. Complete details of proposed glazing system.
4. Complete specifications for Architect's review.
5. Include proof of conformance and test reports per section 1.3/G.
    a. Any exceptions taken from this specification must be noted on the approval request. A list of all approved manufacturers and products will be issued by addendum. No other manufacturers will be acceptable. No verbal approvals will be given. Listing manufacturer's names in this specification does not constitute approval of their products or relieve them of compliance with all the performance requirements.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Framing System:

1. Shall be extruded aluminum alloy of 6063-T5, 6005-T5 or 6061-T6 ASTM B 221. All sections shall be formed true to detail and free from defects impairing appearance, strength and durability. Provide integral weep holes in factory supplied extrusions and welded corner assemblies to provide end damns where applicable.

B. Glazing Gaskets:

1. Shall be elastomeric, having low friction where in contact with the glazing panel.
2. Shall be compatible with the polycarbonate glazing panel.

C. Fasteners:

1. In general, concealed fasteners are to be used for all aluminum framing unless noted in submittal drawings.
2. In system construction, the use of adhesives and sealants are not allowed.
3. Where exposed, fasteners shall be stainless steel with stainless steel backed neoprene washers
4. Concealed fasteners may be stainless steel or zinc-plated steel in accordance with ASTM specifications A165-55 or A164-55.
5. Bolts, anchors and other fastening devices shall be as required for the strength of the connections and shall be suitable for conditions encountered. Washers shall be of the same material as the fasteners.

D. Sealants: Single component, non-sag, high performance, non-priming, gun grade sealant furnished by glazing manufacturer.

1. Factory-Applied Sealant: Gunnable, non-hardening, elastomeric sealant. ASTM C 920, Type S, Class 12, Grade NS. Fed Spec TT-S-1657, Type 1.n.
2. Field-Applied Sealant: Approved by translucent insulated daylighting manufacturer.
3. Sealant conforms to USDA Approval standards.

E. Flashing:

1. Minimum of .040" thick Aluminum.
2. Factory formed to project profile(s) in 10-ft. lengths, whenever practical, to allow for field trimming and fitment to suit as-built conditions.
3. The finish on this flashing metal shall match as closely as possible the finish on the aluminum framing members.
4. Concealed flashing: Manufacturer's standard corrosion resistant, non-staining, non-bleeding flashing compatible with adjacent materials
5. Exposed flashing: Aluminum sheet alloy of 5005-H34, thickness as required for proper performance per application.

F. Polycarbonate Glazing Panels:

1. Panels shall consist of a polycarbonate resin with a permanent, co-extruded, ultraviolet protective layer on both faces of the panel. This protective layer shall be co-extruded by the manufacturer during the original manufacturing process of the panel and shall be a permanent, non-removable, part of the panel. Post applied coating or films of dissimilar materials are unacceptable and not allowed.
2. Provide monolithic (solid) polycarbonate panel as follows:
    a. Thickness 3/8" (.375 inch) nominal.
    b. Manufactured in The United States.
    c. Color selected from manufacturer's standard available colors by Architect.
    d. Extruded to length:
        1. 3/8" (.375 inch nominal) – up to [24] feet in length. Color and manufacturer will limit overall maximum length.
4. Multi-cellular, corrugated, standing seam or batten type panels will not be accepted.

2.3 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate framing components as follows:

1. Factory prepare, fit and assemble components where practical prior to delivery.
2. Fabricate components that, when assembled, will fit precisely and accurately with mitered or coped ends producing hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
3. Fabricate components to accommodate thermal expansion and contraction, field adjustment and provide minimum clearance and shimming for proper glazing system installation and performance.
4. Fabricate components to properly drain water passing joints; drain condensation and moisture occurring and mitigating within glazing system to the exterior through internal guttering and a weep system.
5. Fabricate components to ensure that glazing is properly isolated for low friction thermal and physical movement within the glazing system.
6. Fabricate components with straight, sharp profiles and edges free from defects or deformations before finishing.
7. Fabricate, fit and assemble components to the greatest extent practical before finishing.
8. Reinforce components and member as required to retain fastener thread and engagement.

9. Fabricate glazing retainer bars for fastener placement at 12″ on center
10. Weld components before finishing and in concealed location to greatest extent practical to minimize distortion and/or discoloration.

B. Provide aluminum framing to the longest lengths possible to minimize splice joints. Splice joints will be sealed and locked with at least a six inch offset between frame components.

C. Provide welded corner assemblies were practical.

D. Prepare aluminum framing components for anchors and connection devices, fasteners and hardware.

E. Fabricate glazing panels as follows:

1. Polycarbonate panels will be extruded and fabricated to the longest length possible.
2. Monolithic polycarbonate panels will be shop fabricated to a nominal width of 24″

2.4 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. General: Comply with NAAMM "Metal Finish Manual" recommendations for application and designations of finishes.

B. Finish designations prefixed by AA conform to the system for designations of aluminum finished established by the Aluminum Association.

1. "Clear" Anodized Finish: Class 1 AA-M10 C22 A41 in accordance with AAMA 611-12 Architectural Class 1 Clear anodized finish.
2. "Color" Anodized Finish Class 1 AA-M10 C22 A42/A44 in accordance with AAMA 611-12 Architectural Class 1 anodized finish.
    a.Color:
        1. "Champagne"
3. 70% Fluoropolymer PVDF "Kynar" Finish: complying with AAMA 2605.
    a.Standard Color: Provide manufacture's full range of colors.
4. 50% Fluoropolymer PVDF "Kynar" Finish: complying with AAMA 2604.
    a.Color: Provide manufacture's full range of colors.
5. Baked Enamel Finish: complying with AAMA 2603.
    a.Color: Provide manufacture's full range of colors.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas to receive translucent glazing. Notify Contractor / Architect of conditions that would adversely affect installation or subsequent utilization of daylighting. Do not proceed with installation until unsatisfactory conditions are corrected.

B. Ensure supports to receive translucent insulated daylighting are clean, flat, level, plumb, square, accurately aligned, and correctly located.

C. All submitted opening sizes, dimensions and tolerances are to be field verified by the installer

unless otherwise stipulated.

D. Installer to examine site conditions to verify readiness. Notify general contractor or owner about any defects requiring corrections, including but not limited to improperly sloping sill substrates and uneven planar substrates. Do not work until conditions are satisfactory

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install components in strict accordance with manufacturer's instructions and approved shop drawings. Use proper fasteners and hardware for material attachments as specified.
B. Use methods of attachment to structure which include provisions for thermal movement.
C. Glazing shall be installed in accordance with panel and system manufacturer's guidelines.
D. Install daylighting including flashing, fasteners, hardware, gaskets, joint sealants, and glazing materials required for a complete, weathertight installation.
E. Remove all protective coverings on polycarbonate panels during or immediately after installation.
F. Apply joint sealants in accordance to sealant and system manufacturer's guidelines. Use sealant approved by system manufacturer as specified previously in specification.
G. Repair any minor installation marks or damage to metal finish in accordance with manufacturer's instructions and as approved by Architect. Remove and replace damaged components that cannot be successfully repaired as determined by Architect.

3.4 CLEANING

A. During installation, protect exposed surfaces against accumulation of paint, caulking, disfiguration and damage.
B. Interior glazing surfaces shall be cleaned as the panels are being installed. The exterior shall be cleaned as each phase of the work is completed.
C. Remove excess joint sealant in accordance with sealant manufacturer's instructions.
D. Clean inside and outside of glazing panels immediately after installation and after joint sealants have cured.
E. Follow panel manufacturer's instructions when cleaning exposed panel surfaces. Clean polycarbonate and frame at time of installation.
F. Clean glazing panels in accordance with panel and system manufacturer's instructions and guidelines.
G. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that would damage metal finish or glazing.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed translucent insulated daylighting from damage during construction.
B. Remove and replace damaged daylighting components as determined by Architect.

END OF SECTION 08 45 00

SECTION 08 46 00 – AUTOMATIC ENTRANCE DOORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior, sliding, power-operated automatic entrances.

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 7 Section "Sealants and Caulking" for joint Sealant installation at perimeter of aluminum-framed systems.
2. Division 8 Section "Finish Hardware" (Scheduled by Describing Products)" for door hardware for hollow metal doors.
3. Division 8 Section "Glazing" for glazing
4. Division 16 Sections for electrical connections including conduit and wiring for door controls and operators.
5. Division 17 / 28 Section for electrical and access controls.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AAADM: American Association of Automatic Door Manufacturers.

B. Activation Device: Device that, when actuated, sends an electrical signal to the door operator to open the door.

C. International Building Code.

D. Safety Device: Device that, to avoid injury, prevents a door from opening or closing.

E. For automatic door terminology, refer to BHMA A156.10 for definitions of terms.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design automatic entrances, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Automatic entrances shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to requirements noted within Structural Drawings.

C. Windborne-Debris Impact Resistance: Pass missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests when tested according to ASTM E 1886 and testing information in ASTM E 1996 for Wind Zone 2.

1. Large-Missile Test: For glazed openings located within 30 feet (9.1 m) of grade.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes. Base calculations on surface temperatures of materials due to both solar heat gain and nighttime-sky heat loss.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

E. Opening-Force Requirements:

1. Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf (222 N) required to manually set door in motion if power fails, and not more than 15 lbf (67 N) required to open door to minimum required width.
2. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Not more than 50 lbf (222 N) required for a breakaway door or panel to open.
3. Accessible Interior Doors: Not more than 5 lbf (22 N) to fully open door.

F. Entrapment Force Requirements:

1. Power-Operated Sliding Doors: Not more than 30 lbf (133 N) required to prevent stopped door from closing.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for automatic entrances. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For automatic entrances. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, hardware mounting heights, and attachments to other work.

1. For installed products indicated to comply with design loads, include structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
2. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.
3. Activation and safety devices.
4. Include hardware schedule and indicate hardware types, functions, quantities, and locations.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For units with factory-applied color and metal-cladding finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, in manufacturer's standard sizes.

E. Delegated-Design Submittal: For automatic entrances indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate requirements for seismic restraints.

F. Qualification Data: For Installer and manufacturer.

G. Product Certificates: For each type of emergency-exit automatic entrance, from manufacturer.

H. Product Test Reports: Based on evaluation of comprehensive tests performed by a qualified testing agency, for automatic entrances.

I. Field quality-control reports.

J. Maintenance Data: For automatic entrances, safety devices, and control systems to include in maintenance manuals.

K. Warranties: Sample of special warranties.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: A manufacturer with company certificate issued by AAADM.

B. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation and maintenance of units required for this Project and who employs a certified inspector.

1. Maintenance Proximity: Not more than two hours' normal travel time from Installer's place of business to Project site.

C. Certified Inspector Qualifications: Certified by AAADM.

D. Source Limitations for Automatic Entrances: Obtain automatic entrances from single source from single manufacturer.

E. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

F. Power-Operated Door Standard: BHMA A156.10.

G. Emergency-Exit Door Requirements: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction for automatic entrances serving as a required means of egress.

H. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to automatic entrances including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Structural load limitations.
b. Construction schedule. Verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
c. Coordination with electrical, security, glazing, and other trades.
d. Required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings to receive automatic entrances by field measurements before fabrication.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Templates: Obtain templates for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory prepared for installing automatic entrances, and distribute to parties involved. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing automatic entrances to comply with indicated requirements.

B. Electrical System Roughing-in: Coordinate layout and installation of automatic entrances with connections to power supplies and access-control system.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of automatic entrances that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including, but not limited to, excessive deflection.
b. Faulty operation of operators, controls, and hardware.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering and use.

2. Warranty Period: Two years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Finish Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components that show evidence of deterioration of factory-applied finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Hunter units when tested according to ASTM D 2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested according to ASTM D 4214.
c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: 20 years from date of Substantial Completion.

1.10 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, provide 12 months' full maintenance by skilled employees of automatic entrance Installer. Include quarterly preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of worn or defective components, lubrication, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper automatic entrance operation at rated speed and capacity. Provide parts and supplies the same as those used in the manufacture and installation of original equipment.

1. Engage a certified inspector to perform safety inspection after each adjustment or repair and at end of maintenance period. Furnish completed inspection reports to Owner.
2. Perform maintenance, including emergency callback service, during normal working hours.

3. Include 24-hour-per-day, 7-day-per-week, emergency callback service.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: Alloy and temper recommended by manufacturer for type of use and finish indicated.

1. Extruded Bars, Rods, Profiles, and Tubes: ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M).
2. Sheet and Plate: ASTM B 209 (ASTM B 209M).

B. Steel Reinforcement: With manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant primer complying with SSPC-PS Guide No. 12.00 applied immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment. Select surface preparation methods according to recommendations in SSPC-SP COM and prepare surfaces according to applicable SSPC standard.

1. Structural Shapes, Plates, and Bars: ASTM A 36/A 36M.
2. Cold-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1008/A 1008M.
3. Hot-Rolled Sheet and Strip: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M.

C. Stainless-Steel Bars: ASTM A 276 or ASTM A 666, Type 304.

D. Stainless-Steel Tubing: ASTM A 554, Grade MT 304.

E. Nonmetallic, Shrinkage-Resistant Grout: Premixed, nonmetallic, noncorrosive, nonstaining grout; complying with ASTM C 1107; of consistency suitable for application.

F. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied, asphalt-mastic paint complying with SSPC-Paint 12 requirements, except containing no asbestos; formulated for 30-mil (0.76-mm) thickness per coat.

G. Fasteners and Accessories: Manufacturer's standard corrosion-resistant, nonstaining, nonbleeding fasteners and accessories compatible with adjacent materials.

2.2 SLIDING AUTOMATIC ENTRANCES

A. General: Provide manufacturer's standard automatic entrances including doors, sidelites, framing, headers, carrier assemblies, roller tracks, door operators, activation and safety devices, and accessories required for a complete installation.

B. Sliding Automatic Entrance :

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stanley Access Technologies Series 3000 Dura-Glide in non-secure walls, Dura-Shield Series at doors indicated with Safety and Security Window Film in Door Schedule, comparable product by one of the following:

    a. Besam Automated Entrance Systems, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.

    b. Horton Automatics; Div. of Overhead Door Corporation.

    c. Stanley Access Technologies; Div. of The Stanley Works.

3. Configuration: Biparting-sliding doors, with two sliding leaves, transom, and pocketed sidelites on each side.

    a. Traffic Pattern: 1 way.

    b. Emergency Breakaway Capability: As indicated on Drawings.

    c. Mounting: Between jambs.

4. Operator Features:

    a. Power opening and closing.

    b. Drive System: belt.

    c. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.

    d. Adjustable hold-open time between 0 and 30 seconds.

    e. Obstruction recycle.

    f. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator , key operated.

    g. Energy-conservation switch that reduces door-opening width.

    h. 2 each ¼ HP motors.

    i. Lock.

5. Sliding Door Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Manufacturer's standard carrier assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of

nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track, or ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track. Support doors from carrier assembly by cantilever and pivot assembly.

a. Rollers: Minimum of two ball-bearing roller wheels and two antirise rollers for each active leaf.

6. Sliding Door Threshold: Manufacturer's standard threshold members and bottom-guide track system, with stainless-steel, ball-bearing-center roller wheels.

a. Configuration: Saddle-type threshold across door opening and surface-mounted or recessed guide track system at sidelites.

7. Combination Activation and Safety Device: Combination motion/presence sensor.

8. Activation Device: Motion sensor mounted on each side of door header to detect pedestrians in activating zone and to open door.

9. Safety Devices: Presence sensor mounted on each side of door header and one photoelectric beam mounted in sidelite jambs to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.

10. Sidelite Safety Device: Presence sensor, mounted above each sidelite on side of door opening through which doors travel, to detect obstructions and to prevent door from opening.

11. Finish: Finish framing, door(s), sidelite(s), and header with finish matching adjacent curtain wall and finish matching adjacent storefront.

a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

C. Sliding Automatic Entrance:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
2. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Stanley Access Technologies "Dura-Glide 2000AG (All Glass) Bi-Part or comparable product by one of the following:

a. Biparting-Sliding Units:

1) Besam Automated Entrance Systems, Inc.; an ASSA ABLOY Group company.
2) Horton Automatics; Div. of Overhead Door Corporation.
3) Stanley Access Technologies; Div. of The Stanley Works.

3. Configuration: Biparting-sliding doors, with two sliding leaves, and pocketed sidelites on each side.

   a. Traffic Pattern: One way.
   b. Emergency Breakaway Capability: Sliding leaves.
   c. Mounting: Between jambs.

4. Operator Features:

   a. Power opening and closing.

   b. Integrated Door Positioning Switch
   c. Drive System: belt.
   d. Adjustable opening and closing speeds.
   e. Adjustable hold-open time between 0 and 30 seconds.
   f. Obstruction recycle.
   g. On-off/hold-open switch to control electric power to operator, key operated.
   h. Energy-conservation switch that reduces door-opening width.
   i. Motors: 2 each ¼ HP.
   j. Lock

5. Sliding Door Carrier Assemblies and Overhead Roller Tracks: Manufacturer's standard carrier assembly that allows vertical adjustment; consisting of nylon- or delrin-covered, ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a continuous roller track, or ball-bearing-center steel wheels operating on a nylon- or delrin-covered, continuous roller track. Support doors from carrier assembly by cantilever and pivot assembly.

   a. Rollers: Minimum of two ball-bearing roller wheels and two antirise rollers for each active leaf.

6. Sliding Door Threshold: Manufacturer's standard threshold members and bottom-guide track system, with stainless-steel, ball-bearing-center roller wheels.
   a. Configuration: No threshold across door opening.

7. Combination Activation and Safety Device: Combination motion/presence sensor.

8. Safety Devices: Presence sensor mounted on each side of door header and one photoelectric beam mounted in jambs to detect pedestrians in presence zone and to prevent door from closing.
9. Finish: Finish framing, doors and header with high-performance organic finish (two-coat fluoropolymer).

    a. Color: As selected by Architect from full range of industry colors and color densities.

2.3 ENTRANCE COMPONENTS

A. Framing and Transom Members: Manufacturer's standard extruded aluminum, minimum 0.125 inch (3.2 mm) thick and reinforced as required to support imposed loads.

1. Nominal Size: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Extruded Glazing Stops and Applied Trim: Minimum 0.062-inch (1.6-mm) wall thickness.

B. Stile and Rail Doors: Manufacturer's standard 1-3/4-inch- (45-mm-) thick, glazed doors with minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members. Mechanically fasten corners with reinforcing brackets that are welded, or incorporate concealed tie-rods that span full length of top and bottom rails.

1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and manufacturer's standard preformed gaskets.
2. Stile Design: No stiles.
3. Rail Design: 4-3/8-inch nominal height.

C. Transom: Manufacturer's standard 1-3/4-inch- (45-mm-) deep minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded-aluminum tubular stile and rail members matching door design and finish.

1. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Same materials and design as for stile and rail door.
2. Glazing Stops and Gaskets: Square, snap-on, extruded-aluminum stops and manufacturer's standard preformed gaskets.

D. Headers: Fabricated from minimum 0.125-inch- (3.2-mm-) thick, extruded aluminum and extending full width of automatic entrance units to conceal door operators and controls. Provide hinged or removable access panels for service and adjustment of door operators and controls. Secure panels to prevent unauthorized access.

1. Mounting: Concealed, with one side of header flush with framing.

2. Capacity: Capable of supporting doors up to 175 lb (79 kg) per leaf over spans up to 14 feet (4.3 m) without intermediate supports.

a. Provide sag rods for spans exceeding 14 feet (4.3 m).

E. Brackets and Reinforcements: Manufacturer's standard high-strength aluminum with nonstaining, nonferrous shims for aligning system components.

F. Signage: Affixed to both sides of each door as required by BHMA A156.10 for type of door and its operation.

1. Application Process: Decals.
2. Provide sign materials with instructions for field application after glazing is installed.

2.4 DOOR OPERATORS AND ACTIVATION AND SAFETY DEVICES

A. Door Operators: Provide door operators of size recommended by manufacturer for door size, weight, and movement; for condition of exposure; and for long-term, maintenance-free operation under normal traffic load for type of occupancy indicated.

1. Door Operator Performance: Provide door operators that will open and close doors and maintain them in fully closed position when subjected to Project's design wind loads.
2. Electromechanical Operators: Concealed, self-contained, overhead unit powered by fractional-horsepower, permanent-magnet dc motor; with closing speed controlled mechanically by gear train and dynamically by braking action of electric motor; with solid-state microprocessor controller; UL 325; and with manual operation with power off.

B. Motion Sensors: Self-contained, K-band-frequency, microwave-scanner units with metal or plastic housing; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10; with relay hold time of not less than 2 to 10 seconds.

1. Provide capability for switching between bidirectional and unidirectional detection.
2. For one-way-traffic entrances, sensor on egress side shall not be active when doors are fully closed.

C. Presence Sensors: Self-contained, infrared-scanner units with metal or plastic housing; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10; with relay hold time of not less than 2 to 10 seconds. Sensors shall remain active at all times.

D. Combination Motion/Presence Sensors: Self-contained units; consisting of both motion and presence sensors in a single metal or plastic housing; adjustable to provide detection field sizes and functions required by BHMA A156.10.

1. Motion Sensor: K-band-frequency, microwave-scanner units; with relay hold time of not less than 2 to 10 seconds.

a. Provide capability for switching between bidirectional and unidirectional detection.
b. For one-way-traffic entrances, sensor on egress side shall not be active when doors are fully closed.

2. Presence Sensor: Infrared-scanner units; with relay hold time of not less than 2 to 10 seconds. Sensors shall remain active at all times.

E. Photoelectric Beams: Pulsed infrared, sender-receiver assembly for recessed mounting. Beams shall not be active when doors are fully closed.

F. Key Switch: Recess-mounted, door control switch with key-controlled actuator; enclosed in 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) junction box. Provide faceplate engraved with letters indicating switch functions.

1. Face-Plate Material: Stainless steel as selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
2. Functions: Two-way automatic, hold open, one-way exit, and off.
3. Mounting: Recess mounted in door jamb.

G. Electrical Interlocks: Unless units are equipped with self-protecting devices or circuits, provide electrical interlocks to prevent activation of operator when door is locked, latched, or bolted.

H. Opening-Width Control: Two-position switch that in the normal position allows sliding doors to travel to full opening width and in the alternate position reduces opening to a selected partial opening width.

2.5 HARDWARE

A. General: Provide units in sizes and types recommended by automatic entrance and hardware manufacturers for entrances and uses indicated. Finish exposed parts to match door finish unless otherwise indicated.

B. Breakaway Device for Power-Operated Doors: Provide breakaway device that allows door to swing out in direction of egress to full 90 degrees from any operating position. Maximum force to open door shall be 50 lbf (222 N) according to

BHMA A156.10. Interrupt powered operation of door operator while in breakaway mode.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. General: Factory fabricate automatic entrance components to designs, sizes, and thicknesses indicated and to comply with indicated standards.

1. Form aluminum shapes before finishing.
2. Weld in concealed locations to greatest extent possible to minimize distortion or discoloration of finish. Remove weld spatter and welding oxides from exposed surfaces by descaling or grinding.
3. Use concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible. Where exposed fasteners are required, use countersunk Phillips flat-head machine screws, finished to match framing.

    a. Where fasteners are subject to loosening or turning out from thermal and structural movements, wind loads, or vibration, use self-locking devices.
    b. Reinforce members as required to receive fastener threads.

4. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.

B. Framing: Provide automatic entrances as prefabricated assemblies. Complete fabrication, assembly, finishing, hardware application, and other work before shipment to Project site.

1. Fabricate tubular and channel frame assemblies with manufacturer's standard welded or mechanical joints. Provide subframes and reinforcement as required for a complete system to support required loads.
2. Perform fabrication operations in manner that prevents damage to exposed finish surfaces.
3. Form profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
4. Provide components with concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.
5. Fabricate components with accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
6. Fabricate exterior components to drain water passing joints and condensation and moisture occurring or migrating within system to the exterior.
7. Provide anchorage and alignment brackets for concealed support of assembly from building structure.
8. Allow for thermal expansion of exterior units.

C. Doors: Factory fabricated and assembled in profiles indicated. Reinforce as required to support imposed loads and for installing hardware.

D. Metal Cladding: Provide metal cladding, completely cladding all visible surfaces as part of prefabricated entrance assemblies before shipment to Project site.

1. Perform fabrication operations in manner that prevents damage to exposed finish surfaces.
2. Form profiles that are sharp, straight, and free of defects or deformations.
3. Provide components with concealed fasteners and anchor and connection devices.
4. Fabricate components with accurately fitted joints with ends coped or mitered to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion.
5. Fabricate exterior components to drain water passing joints and condensation and moisture occurring or migrating within system to the exterior.
6. Allow for thermal expansion at exterior entrances.

E. Door Operators: Factory fabricated and installed in headers, including adjusting and testing.

F. Glazing: Fabricate framing with minimum glazing edge clearances for thickness and type of glazing indicated, according to GANA's "Glazing Manual."

G. Hardware: Factory install hardware to greatest extent possible; remove only as required for final finishing operation and for delivery to and installation at Project site. Cut, drill, and tap for factory-installed hardware before applying finishes.

H. Activation and Safety Devices:

1. General: Factory install devices in doors and headers as required by BHMA A156.10 for type of door and direction of travel.
2. Install photoelectric beams in vertical jambs of sidelites, with dimension above finished floor as follows:

a. Top Beam: 48 inches (1219 mm).
b. Bottom Beam: 24 inches (610 mm).

3. Install photoelectric beams in sides of guide rails, with dimension above finished floor not less than 24 inches (610 mm).

2.7 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Apply organic and anodic finishes to formed metal after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.8 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: AAMA 2603 except with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

1. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, header support, and other conditions affecting performance of automatic entrances.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Do not install damaged components. Fit frame joints to produce hairline joints free of burrs and distortion. Rigidly secure nonmovement joints. Seal joints watertight.

1. Where aluminum will contact dissimilar metals, protect against galvanic action by painting contact surfaces with primer or by applying sealant or tape recommended by manufacturer for this purpose.
2. Where aluminum will contact concrete or masonry, protect against corrosion by painting contact surfaces with bituminous paint.

B. Entrances: Install automatic entrances plumb and true in alignment with established lines and grades without warp or rack of framing members and doors. Anchor securely in place.

1. Install surface-mounted hardware using concealed fasteners to greatest extent possible.
2. Set headers, carrier assemblies, tracks, operating brackets, and guides level and true to location with anchorage for permanent support.
3. Install components to drain water passing joints, condensation occurring within framing members, and moisture migrating within system to exterior.
4. Level recesses for recessed thresholds using nonshrink grout.
5. Provide thresholds where indicated.

C. Door Operators: Connect door operators to electrical power distribution system as specified in Division 16 Sections.

D. Access-Control Devices: Connect access-control devices to access-control system as specified in Division 16 Sections.

E. Activation and Safety Devices: Install and adjust devices to provide detection field and functions indicated.

F. Glazing: Install glazing as specified in Division 8 Section "Glazing" and as indicated in the drawings.

G. Sealants: Comply with requirements specified in Division 7 Section "Joint Sealants" to provide weathertight installation.

H. Signage: Apply signage on both sides of each door and breakaway sidelight as required by referenced door standards.

I. Wiring within Automatic Entrance Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's written limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspection: Engage Installer's certified inspector to test and inspect automatic entrances and prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Certified inspector shall test and inspect each automatic entrance to determine compliance of installed systems with applicable BHMA standards.
2. Inspection Report: Certified inspector shall submit report in writing to Architect and Contractor within 24 hours after inspection.

B. Work will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust door operators, controls, and hardware for smooth and safe operation and for weathertight closure; comply with requirements in BHMA A156.10.

B. Lubricate operating hardware and other moving parts as recommended by manufacturer.

C. Readjust door operators and controls after repeated operation of completed installation equivalent to 3 days' use by normal traffic (100 to 300 cycles). Lubricate hardware, operating equipment, and other moving parts.

D. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 3 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean glass and metal surfaces promptly after installation. Remove excess glazing and sealant compounds, dirt, and other substances. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

1. Comply with requirements in Division 8 Section "Glazing" for cleaning and maintaining glass.

3.6 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a certified inspector to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain automatic entrances.

END OF SECTION 08 46 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 71 00 – DOOR HARDWARE PART

1 - GENERAL

1.01 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.02 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Mechanical and electrified door hardware for:

   a. Swinging doors.
   b. Gates.

2. Electronic access control system components, including:

   a. Electronic access control devices.

3. Field verification, preparation and modification of existing doors and frames to receive new door hardware.
4. The intent of the hardware specification is to specify the hardware for interior and exterior doors, and to establish a type, continuity, and standard of quality. However, it is the door hardware supplier's responsibility to thoroughly review existing conditions, schedules, specifications, drawings, and other Contract Documents to verify the suitability of the hardware specified.

B. Exclusions: Unless specifically listed in hardware sets, hardware is not specified in this section for:

1. Windows
2. Cabinets (casework), including locks in cabinets
3. Signage
4. Toilet accessories

C. Related Sections:

1. Division 01 Section "Alternates" for alternates affecting this section.
2. Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants" for sealant requirements applicable to

threshold installation specified in this section.

3. Division 09 sections for touchup, finishing or refinishing of existing openings modified by this section.

4. Division 26 sections for connections to electrical power system and for low-voltage wiring.

5. Division 28 sections for coordination with other components of electronic access control system.

1.03 REFERENCES

A. UL - Underwriters Laboratories

1. UL 10B - Fire Test of Door Assemblies
2. UL 10C - Positive Pressure Test of Fire Door Assemblies
3. UL 1784 - Air Leakage Tests of Door Assemblies
4. UL 305 - Panic Hardware

B. DHI - Door and Hardware Institute

1. Sequence and Format for the Hardware Schedule
2. Recommended Locations for Builders Hardware
3. Key Systems and Nomenclature

C. ANSI - American National Standards Institute

1. ANSI/BHMA A156.1 - A156.29, and ANSI/BHMA A156.31 - Standards for Hardware and Specialties

1.04 SUBMITTALS

A. General:

1. Submit in accordance with Conditions of Contract and Division 01 requirements.
2. Highlight, encircle, or otherwise specifically identify on submittals deviations from Contract Documents, issues of incompatibility or other issues which may detrimentally affect the Work.
3. Prior to forwarding submittal, comply with procedures for verifying existing door and frame compatibility for new hardware, as specified in PART 3, “EXAMINATION” article, herein.

B. Action Submittals:

1. Product Data: Product data including manufacturers’ technical product data for each item of door hardware, installation instructions, maintenance of operating

parts and finish, and other information necessary to show compliance with requirements.

2. Riser and Wiring Diagrams: After final approval of hardware schedule, submit details of electrified door hardware, indicating:

    a. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring and including:
        1) Details of interface of electrified door hardware and building safety and security systems.
        2) Schematic diagram of systems that interface with electrified door hardware.
        3) Point-to-point wiring.
        4) Risers.

3. Samples for Verification: If requested by Architect, submit production sample or sample installations of each type of exposed hardware unit in finish indicated, and tagged with full description for coordination with schedule.

    a. Samples will be returned to supplier in like-new condition. Units that are acceptable to Architect may, after final check of operations, be incorporated into Work, within limitations of key coordination requirements.

4. Door Hardware Schedule: Submit schedule with hardware sets in vertical format as illustrated by Sequence of Format for the Hardware Schedule as published by the Door and Hardware Institute. Indicate complete designations of each item required for each door or opening, include:

    a. Door Index; include door number, heading number, and Architects hardware set number.
    b. Opening Lock Function Spreadsheet: List locking device and function for each opening.
    c. Quantity, type, style, function, size, and finish of each hardware item.
    d. Name and manufacturer of each item.
    e. Fastenings and other pertinent information.
    f. Location of each hardware set cross-referenced to indications on Drawings.
    g. Explanation of all abbreviations, symbols, and codes contained in schedule.
    h. Mounting locations for hardware.
    i. Door and frame sizes and materials.
    j. Name and phone number for local manufacturer's representative for each product.
    k. Operational Description of openings with any electrified hardware (locks, exits, electromagnetic locks, electric strikes, automatic operators, door position switches, magnetic holders or closer/holder units, and access control components). Operational description should include operational descriptions for: egress, ingress (access), and fire/smoke alarm connections.
        1) Submittal Sequence: Submit door hardware schedule concurrent with submissions of Product Data, Samples, and Shop Drawings. Coordinate submission of door hardware schedule with scheduling requirements of other work to facilitate fabrication of other work that is critical in Project

construction schedule.

5. Key Schedule:

    a. After Keying Conference, provide keying schedule listing levels of keying as well as explanation of key system's function, key symbols used and door numbers controlled.
    b. Use ANSI/BHMA A156.28 “Recommended Practices for Keying Systems” as guideline for nomenclature, definitions, and approach for selecting optimal keying system.
    c. Provide 3 copies of keying schedule for review prepared and detailed in accordance with referenced DHI publication. Include schematic keying diagram and index each key to unique door designations.
    d. Index keying schedule by door number, keyset, hardware heading number, cross keying instructions, and special key stamping instructions.
    e. Provide one complete bitting list of key cuts and one key system schematic illustrating system usage and expansion.
        1) Forward bitting list, key cuts and key system schematic directly to Owner, by means as directed by Owner.

    f. Prepare key schedule by or under supervision of supplier, detailing Owner’s final
    keying instructions for locks.

6. Templates: After final approval of hardware schedule, provide templates for doors, frames and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared for door hardware installation.

C. Informational Submittals:

1. Qualification Data: For Supplier, Installer and Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Product data for electrified door hardware:

    a. Certify that door hardware approved for use on types and sizes of labeled fire-rated doors complies with listed fire-rated door assemblies.

3. Certificates of Compliance:

    a. UL listings for fire-rated hardware and installation instructions if requested by Architect or Authority Having Jurisdiction.
    b. Installer Training Meeting Certification: Letter of compliance, signed by Contractor, attesting to completion of installer training meeting specified in “QUALITY ASSURANCE” article, herein.
    c. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference Certification: Letter of compliance, signed by Contractor, attesting to completion of electrified hardware coordination conference, specified in “QUALITY ASSURANCE” article, herein.

4. Warranty: Special warranty specified in this Section.

D. Closeout Submittals:

1. Operations and Maintenance Data: Provide in accordance with Division 01 and include:

a. Complete information on care, maintenance, and adjustment; data on repair and replacement parts, and information on preservation of finishes.
b. Catalog pages for each product.
c. Factory order acknowledgement numbers (for warranty and service)
d. Name, address, and phone number of local representative for each manufacturer.
e. Parts list for each product.
f. Final approved hardware schedule, edited to reflect conditions as-installed.
g. Final keying schedule
h. Copies of floor plans with keying nomenclature
i. As-installed wiring diagrams for each opening connected to power, both low voltage and 110 volts.
j. Copy of warranties including appropriate reference numbers for manufacturers to identify project.

1.05 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Product Substitutions: Comply with product requirements stated in Division 01 and as specified herein.

1. Where specific manufacturer's product is named and accompanied by "No Substitute," including make or model number or other designation, provide product specified. (Note: Certain products have been selected for their unique characteristics and particular project suitability.)

a. Where no additional products or manufacturers are listed in product category, requirements for "No Substitute" govern product selection.

2. Where products indicate "acceptable manufacturers" or "acceptable manufacturers and products", provide product from specified manufacturers, subject to compliance with specified requirements and "Single Source Responsibility" requirements stated herein.

B. Supplier Qualifications and Responsibilities: Recognized architectural hardware supplier with record of successful in-service performance for supplying door hardware similar in quantity, type, and quality to that indicated for this Project and that provides certified Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC) available to Owner, Architect, and Contractor, at reasonable times during the Work for consultation.

1. Warehousing Facilities: In Project's vicinity.
2. Scheduling Responsibility: Preparation of door hardware and keying schedules.
3. Engineering Responsibility: Preparation of data for electrified door hardware, including Shop Drawings, based on testing and engineering analysis of manufacturer's standard units in assemblies similar to those indicated for this Project.
4. Coordination Responsibility: Assist in coordinating installation of electronic security hardware with Architect and electrical engineers and provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.

    a. Upon completion of electronic security hardware installation, inspect and verify that all components are working properly.

C. Architectural Hardware Consultant Qualifications: Person who is experienced in providing consulting services for door hardware installations that are comparable in material, design, and extent to that indicated for this Project and meets these requirements:

1. For door hardware, DHI-certified, Architectural Hardware Consultant (AHC).
2. Can provide installation and technical data to Architect and other related subcontractors.
3. Can inspect and verify components are in working order upon completion of installation.
4. Capable of producing wiring diagrams.
5. Capable of coordinating installation of electrified hardware with Architect and electrical engineers.

D. Single Source Responsibility: Obtain each type of door hardware from single manufacturer.

1. Provide electrified door hardware from same manufacturer as mechanical door hardware, unless otherwise indicated.
2. Manufacturers that perform electrical modifications and that are listed by testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction are acceptable.

E. Fire-Rated Door Openings: Provide door hardware for fire-rated openings that complies with NFPA 80 and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction. Provide only items of door hardware that are listed products tested by Underwriters Laboratories, Intertek Testing Services, or other testing and inspecting organizations acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for use on types and sizes of doors indicated, based on testing at positive pressure and according to NFPA 252 or UL 10C and in compliance with requirements of fire-rated door and door frame labels.

F. Smoke- and Draft-Control Door Assemblies: Where smoke- and draft-control door assemblies are required, provide door hardware that meets requirements of assemblies tested according to UL 1784 and installed in compliance with NFPA 105.

G. Accessibility Requirements: For door hardware on doors in an accessible route, comply with
governing accessibility regulations cited in "REFERENCES" article, herein.

H. Keying Conference: Conduct conference at Project site to comply with requirements in Division 01.

1. Attendees: Owner, Contractor, Architect, Installer, Owner's security consultant, and Supplier's Architectural Hardware Consultant.
2. Incorporate keying conference decisions into final keying schedule after reviewing door hardware keying system including:

a. Function of building, flow of traffic, purpose of each area, degree of security required, and plans for future expansion.
b. Preliminary key system schematic diagram.
c. Requirements for key control system.
d. Requirements for access control.
e. Address for delivery of keys.

I. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Inspect and discuss preparatory work performed by other trades.
3. Inspect and discuss electrical roughing-in for electrified door hardware.
4. Review sequence of operation for each type of electrified door hardware.
5. Review required testing, inspecting, and certifying procedures.

J. Coordination Conferences:

1. Installation Coordination Conference: Prior to hardware installation, schedule and hold meeting to review questions or concerns related to proper installation and adjustment of door hardware.

a. Attendees: Door hardware supplier, door hardware installer, Contractor.
b. After the meeting, provide letter of compliance to Architect, indicating when meeting was held and who was in attendance.

2. Electrified Hardware Coordination Conference: Prior to ordering electrified hardware, schedule and hold meeting to coordinate door hardware with security, electrical, doors and frames, and other related suppliers.

a. Attendees: electrified door hardware supplier, doors and frames supplier, electrified door hardware installer, electrical subcontractor, Owner, Owner's security consultant, Architect and Contractor.

b. After the meeting, provide letter of compliance to Architect, indicating

when coordination conference was held and who was in attendance.

1.06 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Inventory door hardware on receipt and provide secure lock-up for hardware delivered to Project site.

B. Tag each item or package separately with identification coordinated with final door hardware schedule, and include installation instructions, templates, and necessary fasteners with each item or package.

1. Deliver each article of hardware in manufacturer's original packaging.

C. Project Conditions:

1. Maintain manufacturer-recommended environmental conditions throughout storage and installation periods.
2. Provide secure lock-up for door hardware delivered to Project. Control handling and installation of hardware items so that completion of Work will not be delayed by hardware losses both before and after installation.

D. Protection and Damage:

1. Promptly replace products damaged during shipping.
2. Handle hardware in manner to avoid damage, marring, or scratching. Correct, replace or repair products damaged during Work.
3. Protect products against malfunction due to paint, solvent, cleanser, or any chemical agent.

E. Deliver keys and permanent cores to Owner by registered mail or overnight package service.

1.07 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of floor-recessed door hardware with floor construction. Cast anchoring inserts into concrete. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

B. Installation Templates: Distribute for doors, frames, and other work specified to be factory or shop prepared. Check Shop Drawings of other work to confirm that adequate provisions are made for locating and installing door hardware to comply with indicated requirements.

C. Security: Coordinate installation of door hardware, keying, and access control with Owner's security consultant.

D. Electrical System Roughing-In: Coordinate layout and installation of electrified door hardware with connections to power supplies and building safety and security systems.

E. Existing Openings: Where existing doors, frames and/or hardware are to remain, field verify existing functions, conditions and preparations and coordinate to suit opening conditions and to provide proper door operation.

F. Direct shipments not permitted, unless approved by Contractor.

1.08 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of door hardware that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: Years from date of Substantial Completion, for durations indicated.

a. Closers:
   1) Mechanical: 30 years.
   2) Electrified: 2 years.

b. Automatic Operators: 2 years.
c. Exit Devices:
   1) Mechanical: 3 years.
   2) Electrified: 1 year.

d. Locksets:
   1) Mechanical: 10 years.
   2) Electrified: 1 year.

e. Continuous Hinges: Lifetime warranty.
f. Key Blanks: Lifetime

2. Warranty does not cover damage or faulty operation due to improper installation, improper use or abuse.

1.09 MAINTENANCE

A. Maintenance Tools:

1. Furnish complete set of special tools required for maintenance and adjustment of hardware, including changing of cylinders.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.01 MANUFACTURERS

A. Approval of manufacturers and/or products other than those listed as "Scheduled Manufacturer" or "Acceptable Manufacturers" in the individual article for the product category shall be in accordance with QUALITY ASSURANCE article, herein.

B. Approval of products from manufacturers indicated in "Acceptable Manufacturers" is contingent upon those products providing all functions and features and meeting all requirements of scheduled manufacturer's product.

C. Where specified hardware is not adaptable to finished shape or size of members requiring hardware, furnish suitable types having same operation and quality as type specified, subject to Architect's approval.

2.02 MATERIALS

A. Fasteners

1. Provide hardware manufactured to conform to published templates, generally prepared for machine screw installation.
2. Furnish screws for installation with each hardware item. Finish exposed (exposed under any condition) screws to match hardware finish, or, if exposed in surfaces of other work, to match finish of this other work including prepared for paint surfaces to receive painted finish.
3. Provide concealed fasteners for hardware units exposed when door is closed except when no standard units of type specified are available with concealed fasteners. Do not use thru-bolts for installation where bolt head or nut on opposite face is exposed in other work unless thru-bolts are required to fasten hardware securely. Review door specification and advise Architect if thru-bolts are required.
4. Install hardware with fasteners provided by hardware manufacturer.

B. Modification and Preparation of Existing Doors: Where existing door hardware is indicated to be removed and reinstalled.

1. Provide necessary fillers, Dutchmen, reinforcements, and fasteners, compatible with existing materials, as required for mounting new opening hardware and to cover existing door and frame preparations.
2. Use materials which match materials of adjacent modified areas.
3. When modifying existing fire-rated openings, provide materials permitted by NFPA 80 as required to maintain fire-rating.

C. Provide screws, bolts, expansion shields, drop plates and other devices necessary for hardware installation.

1. Where fasteners are exposed to view: Finish to match adjacent door hardware material.

D. Cable and Connectors: Hardwired Electronic Access Control Lockset and Exit Device Trim:

1. Data: 24AWG, 4 conductor shielded, Belden 9843, 9841 or comparable.
2. DC Power: 18 AWG, 2 conductor, Belden 8760 or comparable.
3. Provide type of data and DC power cabling required by access control device manufacturer for this installation.

4. Where scheduled in the hardware sets, provide each item of electrified hardware and wire harnesses with sufficient number and wire gauge with standardized Molex plug connectors to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Provide Molex connectors that plug directly into connectors from harnesses, electric locking and power transfer devices. Provide through-door wire harness for each electrified locking device installed in a door and wire harness for each electrified hinge, electrified continuous hinge, electrified pivot, and electric power transfer for connection to power supplies.

2.03 HINGES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Ives 5BB series.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Hager BB series, McKinney TA/T4A series.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.1.
2. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, up to and including 36 inches (914 mm) wide:

   a. Exterior: Standard weight, bronze or stainless steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high
   b. Interior: Standard weight, steel, 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) high

3. 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors over 36 inches (914 mm) wide:

   a. Exterior: Heavy weight, bronze/stainless steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high
   b. Interior: Heavy weight, steel, 5 inches (127 mm) high

4. Provide three hinges per door leaf for doors 90 inches (2286 mm) or less in height, and one additional hinge for each 30 inches (762 mm) of additional door height.
5. Where new hinges are specified for existing doors or existing frames, provide new hinges of identical size to hinge preparation present in existing door or existing frame.
6. Hinge Pins: Except as otherwise indicated, provide hinge pins as follows:

a. Steel Hinges: Steel pins
b. Non-Ferrous Hinges: Stainless steel pins
c. Out-Swinging Exterior Doors: Non-removable pins
d. Out-Swinging Interior Lockable Doors: Non-removable pins
e. Interior Non-lockable Doors: Non-rising pins

7. Width of hinges: 4-1/2 inches (114 mm) at 1-3/4 inch (44 mm) thick doors, and 5 inches (127 mm) at 2 inches (51 mm) or thicker doors. Adjust hinge width as required for door, frame, and wall conditions to allow proper degree of opening.
8. Provide hinges with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware. Locate electric hinge at second hinge from bottom or nearest to electrified locking component.
9. Provide mortar guard for each electrified hinge specified.

2.04 CONTINUOUS HINGES

A. Aluminum Geared

1. Manufacturers:

a. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.

b. Acceptable Manufacturers: Select, Hager.

2. Requirements:

a. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.26, Grade 1.
b. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges, where specified in the hardware sets, fabricated from 6063-T6 aluminum.
c. Provide split nylon bearings at each hinge knuckle for quiet, smooth, self-lubricating operation.
d. Provide hinges capable of supporting door weights up to 450 pounds, and successfully tested for 1,500,000 cycles.
e. On fire-rated doors, provide aluminum geared continuous hinges that are classified for use on rated doors by testing agency acceptable to authority having jurisdiction.
f. Provide aluminum geared continuous hinges with electrified option scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with sufficient number and wire gage to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.
g. Install hinges with fasteners supplied by manufacturer.
h. Provide hinges 1 inch (25 mm) shorter in length than nominal height of door, unless otherwise noted or door details require shorter length and with symmetrical hole pattern.

2.05 ELECTRIC POWER TRANSFER

A. Manufacturers:

   a. Scheduled Manufacturer: Von Duprin EPT-10.
   b. Acceptable Manufacturers: ABH PT1000, Securitron CEPT-10.

B. Provide power transfer with electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets. Provide with number and gage of wires sufficient to accommodate electric function of specified hardware.

C. Locate electric power transfer per manufacturer's template and UL requirements, unless interference with operation of door or other hardware items.

2.06 FLUSH BOLTS

A. Manufacturers:

   1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
   2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Hager.

B. Requirements:

   1. Provide automatic, constant latching, and manual flush bolts with forged bronze or stainless-steel face plates, extruded brass levers, and with wrought brass guides and strikes. Provide 12 inch (305 mm) steel or brass rods at doors up to 90 inches (2286 mm) in height. For doors over 90 inches (2286 mm) in height increase top rods by 6 inches

(152 mm) for each additional 6 inches (152 mm) of door height. Provide dust-proof strikes at each bottom flush bolt.

2.07 COORDINATORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood.

B. Requirements:

1. Where pairs of doors are equipped with automatic flush bolts, an astragal, or other hardware that requires synchronized closing of the doors, provide bar-type coordinating device, surface applied to underside of stop at frame head.
2. Provide filler bar of correct length for unit to span entire width of opening, and appropriate brackets for parallel arm door closers, surface vertical rod exit device strikes or other stop mounted hardware. Factory-prepared coordinators for vertical rod devices as specified.

2.08 ALUMINUM DOOR LOCKS – NARROW STYLE

A. Manufacturer and Product:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Adams Rite 4900 series X 4568/9 Lever or 4590/1 Paddle.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: No Substitute.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide narrow style aluminum door locks as specified. Cylinders: Refer to “KEYING” article, herein.
2. Provide locks with necessary backset as required for door detail with full 5/8 inch (16 mm) throw latchbolt.
3. Provide manufacturer’s standard strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.

2.09 CYLINDRICAL LOCKS – GRADE 1

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Schlage ND series.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Sargent 11-Line, Best 93K series.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide cylindrical locks conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Series 4000, Grade 1, and UL Listed for 3 hour fire doors.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.

3. Provide cylindrical locksets exceeding the ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Grade 1 performance standards for strength, security, and durability in the categories below:

    a. Abusive Locked Lever Torque Test – minimum 3,100 inch-pounds without gaining access
    b. Cycle life - tested to minimum 10 million cycles per ANSI/BHMA A156.2 Cycle Test with no visible lever sag or use of performance aids such as set screws or spacers.

4. Provide locks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset, unless noted otherwise, with 1/2 inch latch throw. Provide proper latch throw for UL listing at pairs.
5. Provide locksets with separate anti-rotation thru-bolts, and no exposed screws.
6. Provide independently operating levers with two external return spring cassettes mounted under roses to prevent lever sag.
7. Provide standard ASA strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.
8. Provide electrified options as scheduled in the hardware sets.
9. Lever Trim: Solid cast levers without plastic inserts, and wrought roses on both sides.

    a. Lever Design: Schlage Rhodes (RHO).

2.10 AUXILIARY LOCKS

A. Deadlocks:

1. Manufacturers and Products:

    a. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Schlage L400 series.
    b. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Best 38H series, Sargent 4870 series.

2. Requirements:

    a. Provide mortise deadlock series conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156 and function as specified.
    b. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
    c. Provide deadlocks with standard 2-3/4 inches (70 mm) backset. Provide deadbolt with full 1 inch (25 mm) throw, constructed of stainless steel.

d. Provide manufacturer's standard strike.

B. Aluminum Door Deadbolt - Narrow Style:

1. Manufacturers and Products:

a. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Adams Rite MS1850 Series.
b. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: No Substitute.

2. Requirements:

a. Provide narrow style aluminum door deadbolts as specified.
b. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
c. Provide deadbolts with necessary backset with full 1-13/32 inches (36 mm) throw deadbolt.

d. Provide manufacturer's standard strikes unless extended lip strikes are necessary to protect trim.

2.11 EXIT DEVICES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Von Duprin 99/33A series (Owner Preferred).
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Detex Advantex series, Sargent 80 series,.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide exit devices tested to ANSI/BHMA A156.3 Grade 1 and UL listed for Panic Exit or Fire Exit Hardware.
2. Cylinders: Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
3. Provide touchpad type exit devices, fabricated of brass, bronze, stainless steel, or aluminum, plated to standard architectural finishes to match balance of door hardware.
4. Touchpad must extend a minimum of one half of door width. No plastic inserts are allowed in touchpads.
5. Provide exit devices with deadlatching feature for security and for future addition of alarm kits and/or other electrified requirements.
6. Provide flush end caps for exit devices.
7. Provide exit devices with manufacturer's approved strikes.
8. Provide exit devices cut to door width and height. Install exit devices at height recommended by exit device manufacturer, allowable by governing building codes, and approved by Architect.
9. Mount mechanism case flush on face of doors, or provide spacers to fill gaps behind devices. Where glass trim or molding projects off face of door, provide glass bead kits.

10. Provide cylindrical or hex-key dogging as specified at non fire-rated openings.
11. Removable Mullions: 2 inches (51 mm) x 3 inches (76 mm) steel tube. Where scheduled as keyed removable mullion, provide type that can be removed by use of a keyed cylinder, which is self-locking when re-installed.
12. Provide factory drilled weep holes for exit devices used in full exterior application, highly corrosive areas, and where noted in hardware sets.
13. Provide electrified options as scheduled.
14. Top latch mounting: double or single tab mount for steel doors, face mount for aluminum doors eliminating requirement of tabs, and double tab mount for wood doors.
15. Provide exit devices with optional trim designs to match other lever and pull designs used on the project.

    a. Tactile Warning (Knurling): Where required by authority having jurisdiction. Provide on levers on exterior (secure side) of doors serving rooms considered to be hazardous.

2.12 MAGNETIC LOCKS

A. Magnetic Locks – Surface Type:

1. Manufacturers and Products:

    a. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Schlage M490 series.
    b. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Dynalock 3000 series, Security Door Controls 1510 series.

2. Requirements:

    a. Provide magnetic locks certified to meet ANSI/BHMA A156.23 classification criteria including minimum holding force of 1500 LBF. Provide magnetic locks equipped with SPDT Magnetic Bond Sensing device, where specified, to monitor whether sufficient magnetic holding force exists to ensure adequate locking and SPDT Door Status Monitor device, where specified, to monitor whether door is open or closed. Provide bond sensors fully concealed within electromagnet to resist tampering or damage.
    b. Provide magnetic locks certified to meet UL10C, and UL1034 for burglary-resistant electronic locking mechanisms.
    c. Provide fasteners, mounting brackets, and spacer bars required for mounting and details.
    d. Provide power supply recommended and approved by manufacturer of magnetic locks.
    e. Where magnetic locks are scheduled, provide complete assemblies of controls, switches, power supplies, relays, and parts/material recommended

and approved by manufacturer of magnetic locks for each individual leaf. Switches control both doors simultaneously at pairs. Locate controls as directed by Architect.

2.13 POWER SUPPLIES

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: Schlage/Von Duprin PS900 series.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Dynalock 5000 series, Security Door Controls 600 series.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide power supplies approved by manufacturer of supplied electrified hardware.
2. Provide appropriate quantity of power supplies necessary for proper operation of electrified locking components as recommended by manufacturer of electrified locking components with consideration for each electrified component using power supply, location of power supply, and approved wiring diagrams. Locate power supplies as directed by Architect.
3. Provide regulated and filtered 24 VDC power supply, and UL class 2 listed.
4. Provide power supplies with the following features:

    a. 12/24 VDC Output, field selectable.
    b. Class 2 Rated power limited output.
    c. Universal 120-240 VAC input.
    d. Low voltage DC, regulated and filtered.
    e. Polarized connector for distribution boards.
    f. Fused primary input.
    g. AC input and DC output monitoring circuit w/LED indicators.
    h. Cover mounted AC Input indication.

    i. Tested and certified to meet UL294.
    j. NEMA 1 enclosure.
    k. Hinged cover w/lock down screws.
    l. High voltage protective cover.

5.

2.14 CYLINDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Schlage.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide small format interchangeable cylinders/cores to match Owner's existing Best key system, compliant with ANSI/BHMA A156.5; latest revision, Section 12, Grade 1; permanent cylinders; cylinder face finished to match lockset, manufacturer's series as indicated. Refer to "KEYING" article, herein.
2. Provide the following keyway: Keyway to match existing key system.

C. Construction Keying:

1. Replaceable Construction Cores.

a. Provide temporary construction cores replaceable by permanent cores, furnished in accordance with the following requirements.
   1) 3 construction control keys
   2) 12 construction change (day) keys.

b. Owner or Owner's Representative will replace temporary construction cores with
permanent cores.

2.15 KEYING

A. Comply with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

B. Provide cylinders/cores keyed into Owner's existing keying system managed by Owner's locksmith, complying with guidelines in ANSI/BHMA A156.28, incorporating decisions made at keying conference.

C. Requirements:

1. Provide permanent cylinders/cores keyed by the manufacturer according to the following key system.

a. Master Keying system as directed by the Owner.

2. Forward bitting list and keys separately from cylinders, by means as directed by Owner. Failure to comply with forwarding requirements will be cause for replacement of cylinders/cores involved at no additional cost to Owner.
3. Provide keys with the following features:

a. Material: Nickel silver; minimum thickness of .107-inch (2.3mm)
b. Patent Protection: Keys and blanks protected by one or more utility patent(s).

4. Identification:

a. Mark permanent cylinders/cores and keys with applicable blind code per DHI publication "Keying Systems and Nomenclature" for identification. Do not provide blind code marks with actual key cuts.
b. Identification stamping provisions must be approved by the Architect and Owner.
c. Stamp cylinders/cores and keys with Owner's unique key system facility code as established by the manufacturer; key symbol and embossed or stamped with "DO NOT DUPLICATE" along with the "PATENTED" or patent number to enforce the patent protection.
d. Failure to comply with stamping requirements will be cause for replacement of keys involved at no additional cost to Owner.
e. Forward permanent cylinders/cores to Owner, separately from keys, by means as directed by Owner.

5. Quantity: Furnish in the following quantities.

a. Change (Day) Keys: 3 per cylinder/core.
b. Permanent Control Keys: 3.
c. Master Keys: 6.

2.16 DOOR CLOSERS

A. Manufacturers and Products:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer and Product: LCN 4040XP series.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers and Products: Corbin-Russwin DC8000 series, Sargent 281 series.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide door closers conforming to ANSI/BHMA A156.4 Grade 1 requirements by BHMA certified independent testing laboratory. ISO 9000 certify closers. Stamp units with date of manufacture code.
2. Provide door closers with fully hydraulic, full rack and pinion action with high strength cast iron cylinder, and full complement bearings at shaft.
3. Cylinder Body: 1-1/2 inch (38 mm) diameter with 3/4 inch (19 mm) diameter double heat-treated pinion journal.
4. Hydraulic Fluid: Fireproof, passing requirements of UL10C, and requiring no seasonal closer adjustment for temperatures ranging from 120 degrees F to -30 degrees F.
5. Spring Power: Continuously adjustable over full range of closer sizes, and providing reduced opening force as required by accessibility codes and standards.

6. Hydraulic Regulation: By tamper-proof, non-critical valves, with separate

adjustment for latch speed, general speed, and backcheck.
7. Provide closers with solid forged steel main arms and factory assembled heavy-duty forged forearms for parallel arm closers.
8. Pressure Relief Valve (PRV) Technology: Not permitted.
9. Finish for Closer Cylinders, Arms, Adapter Plates, and Metal Covers: Powder coating finish which has been certified to exceed 100 hours salt spray testing as described in ANSI Standard A156.4 and ASTM B117, or has special rust inhibitor (SRI).
10. Provide special templates, drop plates, mounting brackets, or adapters for arms as required for details, overhead stops, and other door hardware items interfering with closer mounting.

2.17 DOOR TRIM

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Hager.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide push plates 4 inches (102 mm) wide by 16 inches (406 mm) high by 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick and beveled 4 edges. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches (102 mm) wide plate, adjust width to fit.
2. Provide push bars of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Provide push bars of sufficient length to span from center to center of each stile. Where required, mount back to back with pull.
3. Provide offset pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Where required, mount back to back with push bar.
4. Provide flush pulls as scheduled. Where required, provide back-to-back mounted model.
5. Provide pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled. Where required, mount back to back with push bar.
6. Provide pull plates 4 inches (102 mm) wide by 16 inches (406 mm) high by 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled 4 edges, and prepped for pull. Where width of door stile prevents use of 4 inches (102 mm) wide plate, adjust width to fit.
7. Provide wire pulls of solid bar stock, diameter and length as scheduled.
8. Provide decorative pulls as scheduled. Where required, mount back to back with pull.

2.18 PROTECTION PLATES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.

2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide kick plates, mop plates, and armor plates minimum of 0.050 inch (1 mm) thick, beveled four edges as scheduled. Furnish with sheet metal or wood screws, finished to match plates.

2. Sizes of plates:

a. Kick Plates: 10 inches (254 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs
b. Mop Plates: 4 inches (102 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs
c. Armor Plates: 36 inches (914 mm) high by 2 inches (51 mm) less width of door on single doors, 1 inch (25 mm) less width of door on pairs

2.19 OVERHEAD STOPS AND OVERHEAD STOP/HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturers: Glynn-Johnson.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Rixson, Sargent.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop or holder as specified for exterior and interior vestibule single acting doors.
2. Provide heavy duty concealed mounted overhead stop or holder as specified for double acting doors.
3. Provide heavy or medium duty and concealed or surface mounted overhead stop or holder for interior doors as specified. Provide medium duty surface mounted overhead stop for interior doors and at any door that swings more than 140 degrees before striking wall, open against equipment, casework, sidelights, and where conditions do not allow wall stop or floor stop presents tripping hazard.
4. Where overhead holders are specified provide friction type at doors without closer and positive type at doors with closer.

2.20 DOOR STOPS AND HOLDERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.

2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood.

B. Provide door stops at each door leaf:

1. Provide wall stops wherever possible. Provide convex type where mortise type locks are used and concave type where cylindrical type locks are used.
2. Where a wall stop cannot be used, provide universal floor stops for low or high rise options.
3. Where wall or floor stop cannot be used, provide medium duty surface mounted overhead stop.

2.21 THRESHOLDS, SEALS, DOOR SWEEPS, AUTOMATIC DOOR BOTTOMS, AND GASKETING

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Zero International.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: National Guard, Reese.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide thresholds, weather-stripping (including door sweeps, seals, and astragals) and gasketing systems (including smoke, sound, and light) as specified and per architectural details. Match finish of other items.
2. Size of thresholds:

a. Saddle Thresholds: 1/2 inch (13 mm) high by jamb width by door width

3. Provide door sweeps, seals, astragals, and auto door bottoms only of type where resilient or flexible seal strip is easily replaceable and readily available.

2.22 SILENCERS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Steelcraft, Republic.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide "push-in" type silencers for hollow metal or wood frames.
2. Provide one silencer per 30 inches (762 mm) of height on each single frame, and two for each pair frame.
3. Omit where gasketing is specified.

2.23 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Schlage.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: GE-Interlogix, Sargent.

B. Requirements:

1. Provide recessed or surface mounted type door position switches as specified.
2. Coordinate door and frame preparations with door and frame suppliers. If switches are being used with magnetic locking device, provide minimum of 4 inches (102 mm) between switch and magnetic locking device.

2.24 LATCH PROTECTORS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood.

B. Provide stainless steel latch protectors of type required to function with specified lock.

2.25 COAT HOOKS

A. Manufacturers:

1. Scheduled Manufacturer: Ives.
2. Acceptable Manufacturers: Burns, Rockwood.

B. Provide coat hooks as specified.

2.26 FINISHES

A. Finish: BHMA 626/652 (US26D); except:

1. Hinges at Exterior Doors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
2. Continuous Hinges: BHMA 630 (US32D)
3. Continuous Hinges: BHMA 628 (US28)
4. Push Plates, Pulls, and Push Bars: BHMA 630 (US32D)
5. Protection Plates: BHMA 630 (US32D)
6. Overhead Stops and Holders: BHMA 630 (US32D)
7. Door Closers: Powder Coat to Match
8. Wall Stops: BHMA 630 (US32D)
9. Latch Protectors: BHMA 630 (US32D)
10. Weatherstripping: Clear Anodized Aluminum

11. Thresholds: Mill Finish Aluminum

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.01 EXAMINATION

A. Prior to installation of hardware, examine doors and frames, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, labeled fire-rated door assembly construction, wall and floor construction, and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Existing Door and Frame Compatibility: Field verify existing doors and frames receiving new hardware and existing conditions receiving new openings. Verify that new hardware is compatible with existing door and frame preparation and existing conditions.

C. Examine roughing-in for electrical power systems to verify actual locations of wiring connections before electrified door hardware installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.02 PREPARATION

A. Where on-site modification of doors and frames is required:

1. Carefully remove existing door hardware and components being reused. Clean, protect, tag, and store in accordance with storage and handling requirements specified herein.
2. Field modify and prepare existing door and frame for new hardware being installed.
3. When modifications are exposed to view, use concealed fasteners, when possible.
4. Prepare hardware locations and reinstall in accordance with installation requirements for new door hardware and with:

    a. Steel Doors and Frames: For surface applied door hardware, drill and tap doors and frames according to ANSI/SDI A250.6.
    b. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.5 "Recommended Hardware Reinforcement Locations for Mineral Core Wood Flush Doors."
    c. Doors in rated assemblies: NFPA 80 for restrictions on on-site door hardware preparation.

3.03 INSTALLATION

A. Mounting Heights: Mount door hardware units at heights to comply with the following, unless otherwise indicated or required to comply with governing regulations.

1. Standard Steel Doors and Frames: ANSI/SDI A250.8.
2. Custom Steel Doors and Frames: HMMA 831.
3. Wood Doors: DHI WDHS.3, "Recommended Locations for Architectural Hardware for Wood Flush Doors."

B. Install each hardware item in compliance with manufacturer's instructions and recommendations, using only fasteners provided by manufacturer.

C. Do not install surface mounted items until finishes have been completed on substrate. Protect all installed hardware during painting.

D. Set units level, plumb and true to line and location. Adjust and reinforce attachment substrate as necessary for proper installation and operation.

E. Drill and countersink units that are not factory prepared for anchorage fasteners. Space fasteners and anchors according to industry standards.

F. Install operating parts so they move freely and smoothly without binding, sticking, or excessive clearance.

G. Hinges: Install types and in quantities indicated in door hardware schedule but not fewer than quantity recommended by manufacturer for application indicated or one hinge for every 30 inches (750 mm) of door height, whichever is more stringent, unless other equivalent means of support for door.

H. Lock Cylinders: Install construction cores to secure building and areas during construction period.

1. Replace construction cores with permanent cores as indicated in keying section.

I. Wiring: Coordinate with Division 26, ELECTRICAL sections for:

1. Conduit, junction boxes and wire pulls.
2. Connections to and from power supplies to electrified hardware.
3. Connections to fire/smoke alarm system and smoke evacuation system.
4. Connection of wire to door position switches and wire runs to central room or area, as directed by Architect.
5. Testing and labeling wires with Architect's opening number.

J. Door Closers: Mount closers on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors from corridors. Mount closers so they are not visible in corridors, lobbies and other public spaces unless approved by Architect.

K. Closer/Holders: Mount closer/holders on room side of corridor doors, inside of exterior doors, and stair side of stairway doors.

L. Power Supplies: Locate power supplies as indicated or, if not indicated, above accessible ceilings or in equipment room, or alternate location as directed by Architect.

M. Thresholds: Set thresholds in full bed of sealant complying with requirements specified in Division 07 Section "Joint Sealants."

N. Stops: Provide floor stops for doors unless wall or other type stops are indicated in door hardware schedule. Do not mount floor stops where they may impede traffic or present tripping hazard.

O. Perimeter Gasketing: Apply to head and jamb, forming seal between door and frame.

P. Meeting Stile Gasketing: Fasten to meeting stiles, forming seal when doors are closed.

Q. Door Bottoms: Apply to bottom of door, forming seal with threshold when door is closed.

3.04 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Architectural Hardware Consultant: Engage qualified independent Architectural Hardware Consultant to perform inspections and to prepare inspection reports.

1. Architectural Hardware Consultant will inspect door hardware and state in each report whether installed work complies with or deviates from requirements, including whether door hardware is properly installed and adjusted.

3.05 ADJUSTING

A. Initial Adjustment: Adjust and check each operating item of door hardware and each door to ensure proper operation or function of every unit. Replace units that cannot be adjusted to

operate as intended. Adjust door control devices to compensate for final operation of heating and ventilating equipment and to comply with referenced accessibility requirements.

1. Electric Strikes: Adjust horizontal and vertical alignment of keeper to properly engage lock bolt.
2. Door Closers: Adjust sweep period to comply with accessibility requirements and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Occupancy Adjustment: Approximately three to six months after date of Substantial Completion, Installer's Architectural Hardware Consultant must examine and readjust each item of door hardware, including adjusting operating forces, as necessary to ensure function of doors, door hardware, and electrified door hardware.

3.06 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean adjacent surfaces soiled by door hardware installation.

B. Clean operating items as necessary to restore proper function and finish.

C. Provide final protection and maintain conditions that ensure door hardware is without damage or deterioration at time of Substantial Completion.

3.07 DOOR HARDWARE SCHEDULE

A. Locksets, exit devices, and other hardware items are referenced in the following hardware sets for series, type and function. Refer to the above-specifications for special features, options, cylinders/keying, and other requirements.

B. Hardware Sets:

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 01

Provide each RU door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	652	SCH
1	EA	SFIC MORTISE CYL.	80-105 X B520-378 118 36-083 36-082-025	626	SCH

NOTE: HARDWARE BY DOOR SUPPLIER 626 SCH

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 02

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	CD-98-NL	626	VON
2	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC MORTISE CYL.	80-110 X K510-730 36-083 36-082-025	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC RIM CYLINDER	80-116	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 03

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	CD-98-NL	626	VON
2	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC MORTISE CYL.	80-110 X K510-730 36-083 36-082-025	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC RIM CYLINDER	80-116	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	188SBK PSA (AS REQUIRED)	BK	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 04

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND10S RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 05

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND10S RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 06

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ENTRANCE/OFFICE LOCK	ND50BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	COAT AND HAT HOOK	507	626	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 07

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	ND70BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 08

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	ASTRAGAL	339AA ASTRAGAL	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 09

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	630	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND10S RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 10

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PASSAGE SET	ND10S RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 11

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	PRIVACY LOCK	L9040 06A 09-662 630 10-072 630 L583-363 L283-722	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	SINGLE HOOK	507B	626	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 12

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	CLASSROOM LOCK	ND70BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 13

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY FROM OUTSIDE.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 14

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	OH STOP	450S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 15

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 16

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP CUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	LOCK GUARD	LG1	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 18

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
6	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	CONST LATCHING BOLT	FB51P	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDC RHO	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL	US26D	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
2	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	ASTRAGAL	339AA ASTRAGAL	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 19

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	PANIC HARDWARE	CD-98-NL	626	VON
2	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC MORTISE CYL.	80-110 X K510-730 36-083 36-082-025	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC RIM CYLINDER	80-116	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 20

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 TW4	652	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT CARD READER BY OTHERS		SCE

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS. SWITCH IN INSIDE LEVER SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH FOR REQUEST TO EXIT (REX).

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 20.1

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
3	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	INSTITUTION LOCK	ND82BDC RHO	626	SCH
2	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	ELECTRIC STRIKE	6211 FSE CON 12/16/24/28 VAC/VDC	630	VON
1	EA	OH STOP	100S	630	GLY
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
2			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED FROM BOTH SIDES. ACCESS OR EGRESS BY KEY OR VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY RELEASES ELECTRIC STRIKE.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 20.2

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5	652	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1 4.5 X 4.5 TW4	652	IVE
1	EA	EU STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP REG OR PA AS REQ	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
	EA	NOTE	CARD READER BY OTHERS EXIT ALARM BY OTHERS.		

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED, LOCKED, AND ALARMED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH, BYPASSES ALARM, AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS. UNAUTHORIZED EGRESS RESULTS IN ALARM. AUTHORIZED EGRESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND BYPASSES ALARM, ALLOWING FREE EGRESS WITHOUT ALARM.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 21

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 TW4	630	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. ACCESS BY KEY, OR VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND MOMENTARILY UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. INSIDE LEVER ALWAYS FREE FOR EGRESS.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 22

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	224HD	628	IVE
1	EA	MAGNETIC LOCK	M490P ATS/LED 12/24 VDC	628	SCE
1	EA	PUSH/PULL BAR	9190HD-10"-NO	630	IVE
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA	689	LCN
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK FA900 KL900	LGR	SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		
1			PROVIDE FACTORY POINT TO POINT WIRING DIAGRAMS		

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY LOCKED IN BOTH DIRECTIONS. AUTHORIZED ACCESS OR EGRESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH UNLOCKS MAGNETIC LOCK AND ALLOWS DOOR TO BE PUSHED OR PULLED OPEN.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 23

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
5	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 TW4	630	IVE
2	EA	MANUAL FLUSH BOLT	FB457 12"	626	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	ASTRAGAL	339AA ASTRAGAL	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 24
Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	224HD EPT	628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC FIRE EXIT HARDWARE	QEL-99-NL-F-CON 24 VDC	626	VON
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC RIM CYLINDER	80-116	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	BLK	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS FA900 KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

ALARM BY ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER.
OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. AUTHORIZED ACCESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND RETRACTS EXIT DEVICE LATCHBOLT, ALLOWING DOOR TO BE PULLED OPEN. AUTHORIZED EGRESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND ALARM, ALLOWING DOOR TO BE PUSHED OPEN USING TOUCH PAD EXIT DEVICE. EGRESS WITHOUT VALID CREDENTIAL WILL SOUND ALARM. FREE EGRESS ALLOWED AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 25
Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	224HD EPT	628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	ELEC PANIC HARDWARE	QEL-99-NL-CON 24 VDC	626	VON
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC RIM CYLINDER	80-116	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SHCUSH	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	BLK	IVE
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS FA900 KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

ALARM BY ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER.
OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. AUTHORIZED ACCESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND RETRACTS EXIT DEVICE LATCHBOLT, ALLOWING DOOR TO BE PULLED OPEN. AUTHORIZED EGRESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND ALARM, ALLOWING DOOR TO BE PUSHED OPEN USING TOUCH PAD EXIT DEVICE. EGRESS WITHOUT VALID CREDENTIAL WILL SOUND ALARM. FREE EGRESS ALLOWED AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 26

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
5	EA	HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 NRP	630	IVE
1	EA	ELECTRIC HINGE	5BB1HW 4.5 X 4.5 TW4	630	IVE
1	EA	AUTO FLUSH BOLT	FB31P	630	IVE
1	EA	DUST PROOF STRIKE	DP1	626	IVE
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	COORDINATOR	COR X FL	US26D	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP DEL SCUSH	689	LCN
2	EA	ARMOR PLATE	8400 34" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	ASTRAGAL	339AA ASTRAGAL	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
2	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS KL900	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

DOOR ALARM BY ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER.
OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. AUTHORIZED ACCESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCHES AND UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. AUTHORIZED EGRESS VIA VALID CREDENTIAL WHICH BYPASSES ALARM. FREE EGRESS ALLOWED AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 27

Provide each SGL door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
1	EA	CONT. HINGE	224HD EPT	628	IVE
1	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
1	EA	STOREROOM LOCK	ND80BDCEU RHO RX CON 12V/24V DC	626	SCH
1	EA	SFIC CORE	80-033	626	SCH
1	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP EDA	689	LCN
1	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 2" LDW B-CS	BLK	IVE
1	EA	WALL STOP	WS406/407CVX	630	IVE
1	EA	RAIN DRIP	142AA	AA	ZER
1	EA	GASKETING	429AA-S	AA	ZER
1	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	DOOR CONTACT	679-05HM	BLK	SCE
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK 900-2RS FA900 KL900 120/240 VAC	LGR	SCE
1	SET	WIRING DIAGRAMS	DOOR ELEVATION AND POINT- TO-POINT		SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		

ALARM BY ACCESS CONTROL PROVIDER.
OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOOR NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED. AUTHORIZED ACCESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND UNLOCKS OUTSIDE LEVER. AUTHORIZED EGRESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL READ, WHICH SHUNTS DOOR POSITION SWITCH AND ALARM. EGRESS WITHOUT VALID CREDENTIAL WILL SOUND ALARM. FREE EGRESS ALLOWED AT ALL TIMES.

HARDWARE GROUP NO. 28

Provide each PR door(s) with the following:

QTY		DESCRIPTION	CATALOG NUMBER	FINISH	MFR
2	EA	CONT. HINGE	224HD EPT	628	IVE
2	EA	POWER TRANSFER	EPT10 CON	689	VON
2	EA	RX PUSHPAD	672 RD 12/24 VDC	628	SCE
1	EA	MAGNETIC LOCK	M492P ATS/LED-2	628	SCE
2	EA	90 DEG OFFSET PULL	8190EZHD 10" O	630-316	IVE
2	EA	SURFACE CLOSER	4040XP SCUSH	689	LCN
2	EA	KICK PLATE	8400 10" X 1" LDW B-CS	630	IVE
1	EA	MEETING STILE	8879AA	AA	ZER
2	EA	DOOR SWEEP	39A	A	ZER
1	EA	THRESHOLD	655A-223	A	ZER
1	EA	POWER SUPPLY	PS902 BBK FA900 KL900	LGR	SCE
1			CARD READER BY OTHERS		
1			PROVIDE FACTORY POINT TO POINT WIRING DIAGRAMS		

OPERATIONAL DESCRIPTION: DOORS NORMALLY CLOSED AND LOCKED MAGNETICALLY. AUTHORIZED ACCESS BY VALID CREDENTIAL, WHICH UNLOCKS MAGNETIC LOCKS, ALLOWING DOORS TO BE PULLED OPEN. FREE EGRESS ALLOWED AT ALL TIMES BY TOUCH SENSE BAR, WHICH RELEASES MAGNETIC LOCKS, ALLOWING DOORS TO BE PUSHED OPEN.

END OF SECTION 08 71 00

SECTION 08 80 00 - GLAZING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Glass products.
2. Laminated glass.
3. Insulating glass.
4. Glazing sealants.
5. Glazing tapes.
6. Miscellaneous glazing materials.

B. Related Requirements:

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Glass Manufacturers: Firms that produce primary glass, fabricated glass, or both, as defined in referenced glazing publications.

B. Glass Thicknesses: Indicated by thickness designations in millimeters in accordance with ASTM C1036.

C. IBC: International Building Code.

D. Interspace: Space between lites of an insulating-glass unit.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate glazing channel dimensions to provide necessary bite on glass, minimum edge and face clearances, and adequate sealant thicknesses, with reasonable tolerances to achieve proper safety margins for glazing retention under each design load case, load case combination, and service condition.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review and finalize construction schedule and verify availability of materials, Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review temporary protection requirements for glazing during and after installation.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Glass Samples: For each type of glass product other than clear monolithic vision glass; 12 inches square.

1. Tinted glass.
2. Coated glass.
3. Laminated glass.
4. Insulating glass.
5. Spandrel glass.

C. Glazing Accessory Samples: For sealants and colored spacers, in 12-inch lengths. Install sealant Samples between two strips of material representative in color of adjoining framing system.

D. Glazing Schedule: List glass types and thicknesses for each size opening and location. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

E. Delegated Design Submittal: For glass indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer, manufacturers of fabricated glass units glass, testing agency and sealant testing agency.

B. Product Certificates: For glass.

C. Product Test Reports: For fabricated glass and glazing sealants, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

1. For glazing sealants, provide test reports based on testing current sealant formulations within previous 36-month period.

D. Preconstruction adhesion and compatibility test report.

E. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fabricated-Glass Manufacturer Qualifications: A qualified manufacturer of fabricated glass units who is approved and certified by primary glass manufacturer.

B. Installer Qualifications: A qualified glazing contractor for this Project who is certified under the North American Contractor Certification Program (NACC) for Architectural Glass & Metal (AG&M) contractors.

C. Glass Testing Agency Qualifications: A qualified independent testing agency accredited according to the NFRC CAP 1 Certification Agency Program.

D. Sealant Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent testing agency qualified according to ASTM C1021 to conduct the testing indicated.

E. Mockups: Build mockups to demonstrate aesthetic effects and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Install glazing in mockups to match glazing systems required for Project, including glazing methods.
2. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Adhesion and Compatibility Testing: Test each glass product, tape sealant, gasket, glazing accessory, and glass-framing member for adhesion to and compatibility with elastomeric glazing sealants.

1. Testing is not required if data are submitted based on previous testing of current sealant products and glazing materials matching those submitted.
2. Use ASTM C1087 to determine whether priming and other specific joint-preparation techniques are required to obtain rapid, optimum adhesion of glazing sealants to glass, tape sealants, gaskets, and glazing channel substrates.
3. Test no fewer than eight Samples of each type of material, including joint substrates, shims, sealant backings, secondary seals, and miscellaneous materials.
4. Schedule enough time for testing and analyzing results to prevent delaying the Work.
5. For materials failing tests, submit sealant manufacturer's written instructions for corrective measures including use of specially formulated primers.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect glazing materials in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent damage to glass and glazing materials from condensation, temperature changes, direct exposure to sun, or other causes.

B. Comply with insulating-glass manufacturer's written instructions for venting and sealing units to avoid hermetic seal ruptures due to altitude change.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not proceed with glazing when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by glazing material manufacturers and when glazing channel substrates are wet from rain, frost, condensation, or other causes.

1. Do not install glazing sealants when ambient and substrate temperature conditions are outside limits permitted by sealant manufacturer or are below 40 deg F.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Coated-Glass Products: Manufacturer agrees to replace coated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of coated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning coated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include peeling, cracking, and other indications of deterioration in coating.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Laminated Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace laminated-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of laminated glass is defined as defects developed from normal use that are not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning laminated glass contrary to manufacturer's written instructions. Defects include edge separation, delamination materially obstructing vision through glass, and blemishes exceeding those allowed by referenced laminated-glass standard.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

C. Manufacturer's Special Warranty for Insulating Glass: Manufacturer agrees to replace insulating-glass units that deteriorate within specified warranty period. Deterioration of insulating glass is defined as failure of hermetic seal under normal use that is not attributed to glass breakage or to maintaining and cleaning insulating glass contrary to

manufacturer's written instructions. Evidence of failure is obstruction of vision by dust, moisture, or film on interior surfaces of glass.

1. Warranty Period: 10 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Guardian Glass; SunGard. (SunGuard® SNR 35 BOD)
2. Oldcastle Building Envelope (OBE); CRH Americas.
3. Pilkington North America.
4. Viracon, Inc.
5. Vitro Architectural Glass

B. Glazing:
1. GL1: Color as selected by architect from manufacturer’s full range; to match existing glazing at terminal.
2. GL2: Laminated, Glass
3. GL3: Spandral color as selected by Architect from manufacturer’s full range; to match existing glazing at terminal.
4. WF1: Solyx glass finish SXJ-0598 dual mist frost gradient. Install on GL2 per manufacturers requirements.

C. Source Limitations for Glass: Obtain tinted and coated glass from single source from single manufacturer.

D. Source Limitations for Glazing Accessories: For each product and installation method, obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: Installed glazing systems shall withstand normal thermal movement and wind and impact loads (where applicable) without failure, including loss or glass breakage attributable to defective manufacture, fabrication, or installation; failure of sealants or gaskets to remain watertight and airtight; deterioration of glazing materials; or other defects in construction.

B. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements," to design glazing.

C. Structural Performance: Glazing shall withstand the following design loads within limits and under conditions indicated determined in accordance with the NCBC and ASTM E1300:

1. Design Wind Pressures: As indicated on Drawings.

    a. Wind Design Data: As indicated on Drawings and as recognized by NCBC.
2. Maximum Lateral Deflection: For glass supported on all four edges, limit center-of-glass deflection at design wind pressure to not more than 1/50 times the short-side length or 1 inch, whichever is less.
3. Thermal Loads: Design glazing to resist thermal stress breakage induced by differential temperature conditions and limited air circulation within individual glass lites and insulated glazing units.

D. Windborne-Debris-Impact Resistance: Exterior glazing shall pass ASTM E1886 missile-impact and cyclic-pressure tests in accordance with ASTM E1996 for Wind Zone where project is located for enhanced protection.

1. Large-Missile Test: For glazing located within 30 feet of grade.
2. Small-Missile Test: For glazing located between 30 feet and 60 feet above grade.

E. Safety Glazing: Where safety glazing is indicated, provide glazing that complies with 16 CFR 1201, Category II.

F. Thermal and Optical Performance Properties: Provide glass with performance properties specified, as indicated in manufacturer's published test data, based on procedures indicated below:

1. For monolithic-glass lites, properties are based on units with lites 6 mm thick.
2. For laminated-glass lites, properties are based on products of construction indicated.
3. For insulating-glass units, properties are based on units of thickness indicated for overall unit and for each lite.
4. U-Factors: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 100 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program, expressed as Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F.
5. SHGC and Visible Transmittance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 200 and based on most current non-beta version of LBL's WINDOW computer program.
6. Visible Reflectance: Center-of-glazing values, in accordance with NFRC 300.

2.3 GLASS PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. Glazing Publications: Comply with published recommendations of glass product manufacturers and organizations below unless more stringent requirements are indicated. See these publications for glazing terms not otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

1. NGA Publications: "Laminated Glazing Reference Manual" and "Glazing Manual."
2. IGMA Publication for Sloped Glazing: IGMA TB-3001, "Guidelines for Sloped Glazing."
3. IGMA Publication for Insulating Glass: SIGMA TM-3000, "North American Glazing Guidelines for Sealed Insulating Glass Units for Commercial and Residential Use."

B. Safety Glazing Labeling: Where safety glazing is indicated, permanently mark glazing with certification label of the SGCC or another certification agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or manufacturer. Label shall indicate manufacturer's name, type of glass, thickness, and safety glazing standard with which glass complies.

C. Insulating-Glass Certification Program: Permanently marked either on spacers or on at least one component lite of units with appropriate certification label of the IGCC.

D. Thickness: Where glass thickness is indicated, it is a minimum. Provide glass that complies with performance requirements and is not less than thickness indicated.

1. Thickness of Tinted Glass: Provide same thickness for each tint color indicated throughout Project.

E. Strength: Where annealed float glass is indicated, provide annealed float glass, heat-strengthened float glass, or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where heat-strengthened float glass is indicated, provide heat-strengthened float glass or fully tempered float glass as needed to comply with "Performance Requirements" Article. Where fully tempered float glass is indicated, provide fully tempered float glass.

2.4 GLASS PRODUCTS

A. Clear Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 1 (clear), Quality-Q3.

B. Tinted Annealed Float Glass: ASTM C1036, Type I, Class 2 (tinted), Quality-Q3.

C. Fully Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT (fully tempered), Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

D. Heat-Strengthened Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind HS (heat strengthened), Type I, Condition A (uncoated) unless otherwise indicated, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3.

1. Fabrication Process: By horizontal (roller-hearth) process with roll-wave distortion parallel to bottom edge of glass as installed unless otherwise indicated.

E. Reflective- and Low-E-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1376.

F. Ceramic-Coated Vision Glass: ASTM C1048, Condition C, Type I, Class 1 (clear) or Class 2 (tinted) as indicated, Quality-Q3; and complying with Specification No. 95-1-31 in NGA's "Engineering Standards Manual."

G. Ceramic-Coated Spandrel Glass: ASTM C1048, Type I, Condition B, Quality-Q3.

2.5 LAMINATED GLASS

A. Windborne-Debris-Impact-Resistant Laminated Glass: Comply with requirements specified above for laminated glass except laminate glass with one of the following to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions:
1. Construction: Laminate glass with polyvinyl butyral interlayer reinforced with polyethylene terephthalate film to comply with interlayer manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Interlayer Thickness: Provide thickness not less than that indicated and as needed to comply with requirements.
3. Interlayer Color: Clear unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 INSULATING GLASS

A. Insulating-Glass Units: Factory-assembled units consisting of sealed lites of glass separated by a dehydrated interspace, qualified in accordance with ASTM E2190.

1. Sealing System: Dual seal, with manufacturer's standard primary and secondary sealants.
2. Perimeter Spacer: Manufacturer's standard spacer material and construction.
3. Desiccant: Molecular sieve or silica gel, or a blend of both.

2.7 GLAZING SEALANTS

A. General:

1. Compatibility: Compatible with one another and with other materials they contact, including glass products, seals of insulating-glass units, and glazing channel substrates, under conditions of service and application, as demonstrated by sealant manufacturer based on testing and field experience.
2. Suitability: Comply with sealant and glass manufacturers' written instructions for selecting glazing sealants suitable for applications indicated and for conditions existing at time of installation.
3. Colors of Exposed Glazing Sealants: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range of industry colors.

B. Neutral-Curing Silicone Glazing Sealant, Class 100/50: Complying with ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Use NT.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS GLAZING MATERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape complying with referenced glazing standard, recommended in writing by manufacturers of glass and other glazing materials for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaners, Primers, and Sealers: Types recommended by sealant or gasket manufacturer.

C. Setting Blocks:
1. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

D. Spacers:
1. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

E. Edge Blocks:
1. Type recommended in writing by sealant or glass manufacturer.

F. Cylindrical Glazing Sealant Backing: ASTM C1330, Type O (open-cell material), of size and density to control glazing sealant depth and otherwise produce optimum glazing sealant performance.

2.9 FABRICATION OF GLAZING UNITS

A. Fabricate glazing units in sizes required to fit openings indicated for Project, with edge and face clearances, edge and surface conditions, and bite complying with written instructions

of product manufacturer and referenced glazing publications, to comply with system performance requirements.

1. Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes acting on glass framing members and glazing components.

    a. Temperature Change: 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F, material surfaces.

B. Clean-cut or flat-grind vertical edges of butt-glazed monolithic lites to produce square edges with slight chamfers at junctions of edges and faces.

C. Grind smooth and polish exposed glass edges and corners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine framing, glazing channels, and stops, with Installer present, for compliance with the following:

1. Manufacturing and installation tolerances, including those for size, squareness, and offsets at corners.
2. Presence and functioning of weep systems.
3. Minimum required face and edge clearances.
4. Effective sealing between joints of glass-framing members.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean glazing channels and other framing members receiving glass immediately before glazing. Remove coatings not firmly bonded to substrates.

B. Examine glazing units to locate exterior and interior surfaces. Label or mark units as needed so that exterior and interior surfaces are readily identifiable. Do not use materials that leave visible marks in the completed Work.

3.3 GLAZING, GENERAL

A. Comply with combined written instructions of manufacturers of glass, sealants, gaskets, and other glazing materials, unless more stringent requirements are indicated, including those in referenced glazing publications.

B. Protect glass edges from damage during handling and installation. Remove damaged glass from Project site and legally dispose of off Project site. Damaged glass includes glass with edge damage or other imperfections that, when installed, could weaken glass, impair performance, or impair appearance.

C. Apply primers to joint surfaces where required for adhesion of sealants, as determined by preconstruction testing.

D. Install setting blocks in sill rabbets, sized and located to comply with referenced glazing publications, unless otherwise required by glass manufacturer. Set blocks in thin course of compatible sealant suitable for heel bead.

E. Do not exceed edge pressures stipulated by glass manufacturers for installing glass lites.

F. Provide spacers for glass lites where length plus width is larger than 50 inches.

1. Locate spacers directly opposite each other on both inside and outside faces of glass. Install correct size and spacing to preserve required face clearances, unless gaskets and glazing tapes are used that have demonstrated ability to maintain required face clearances and to comply with system performance requirements.
2. Provide 1/8-inch-minimum bite of spacers on glass and use thickness equal to sealant width. With glazing tape, use thickness slightly less than final compressed thickness of tape.

G. Provide edge blocking where indicated or needed to prevent glass lites from moving sideways in glazing channel, as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer and in accordance with requirements in referenced glazing publications.

H. Set glass lites in each series with uniform pattern, draw, bow, and similar characteristics.

I. Set glass lites with proper orientation so that coatings face exterior or interior as specified.

3.4 GASKET GLAZING (DRY)

A. Cut compression gaskets to lengths recommended by gasket manufacturer to fit openings exactly, with allowance for stretch during installation.

B. Insert soft compression gasket between glass and frame or fixed stop so it is securely in place with joints miter cut and bonded together at corners.

C. Installation with Drive-in Wedge Gaskets: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket by inserting dense compression gaskets formed and installed to lock in place against faces of removable stops. Start gasket applications at corners and work toward centers of openings. Compress gaskets to produce

a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

D. Installation with Pressure-Glazing Stops: Center glass lites in openings on setting blocks and press firmly against soft compression gasket. Install dense compression gaskets and pressure-glazing stops, applying pressure uniformly to compression gaskets. Compress gaskets to produce a weathertight seal without developing bending stresses in glass. Seal gasket joints with sealant recommended in writing by gasket manufacturer.

E. Install gaskets so they protrude past face of glazing stops.

3.5 SEALANT GLAZING (WET)

A. Install continuous spacers, or spacers combined with cylindrical sealant backing, between glass lites and glazing stops to maintain glass face clearances and to prevent sealant from extruding into glass channel and blocking weep systems until sealants cure. Secure spacers or spacers and backings in place and in position to control depth of installed sealant relative to edge clearance for optimum sealant performance.

B. Force sealants into glazing channels to eliminate voids and to ensure complete wetting or bond of sealant to glass and channel surfaces.

C. Tool exposed surfaces of sealants to provide a substantial wash away from glass.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Immediately after installation, remove nonpermanent labels and clean surfaces.

B. Protect glass from contact with contaminating substances resulting from construction operations. Examine glass surfaces adjacent to or below exterior concrete and other masonry surfaces at frequent intervals during construction, but not less than once a month, for buildup of dirt, scum, alkaline deposits, or stains.

1. If, despite such protection, contaminating substances do contact with glass, remove substances immediately as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer. Remove and replace glass that cannot be cleaned without damage to coatings.

C. Remove and replace glass that is damaged during construction period.

D. Wash glass on both exposed surfaces not more than four days before date scheduled for inspections that establish date of Substantial Completion. Wash glass as recommended in writing by glass manufacturer.

3.7 MONOLITHIC GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Clear Glass Type: Annealed, Heat-strengthened, and fully tempered float glass.

1. Minimum Thickness: 6 mm.
2. Safety glazing required.

3.8 INSULATING-LAMINATED-GLASS SCHEDULE

A. Low-E-Coated, Clear Insulating Laminated Glass Type: Thicknesses as required for large missile impact resistance.

1. Basis-of-Design Product: Guardian Glass- SunGard® SNR 35
2. Overall Unit Thickness: 1-3/16 inch.
3. Low-E Coating: Pyrolytic on second surface.
4. Winter Nighttime U-Factor: Not more than 0.50 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined in accordance with NCBC 2020 (7th Edition).
5. Summer Daytime U-Factor: Not more than 0.50 Btu/sq. ft. x h x deg F as determined in accordance with NCBC 2020 (7th Edition).
6. Visible Light Transmittance: 0.51 percent minimum.
7. SGHC: Not more than 0.25 as determined in accordance with NCBC 2020 (7th Edition).
8. Safety glazing required.

END OF SECTION 08 80 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 08 84 00 - PLASTIC GLAZING
TRANSLUCENT RESIN PANEL SYSTEM

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Polycarbonate plastic glazing

B. Enhanced UV-resistant polycarbonate plastic glazing.

C. Laminated polycarbonate plastic glazing.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 07 92 00 – Joint Sealers

B. Section 08 52 00 – Aluminum Windows

C. Section 08 63 00 – Metal-Framed Skylights

D. Section 08 80 00 – Glazing

E. Section 08 85 00 – Glazing Accessories

F. Section 08 91 00 – Metal-Framed Curtain Wall

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI Z 97.1 - American National Standard for Glazing Materials Used in Buildings -- Safety Performance Specifications and Methods of Test.

B. ASTM D 256 - Standard Test Method for Determining the Pendulum Impact Resistance of Notched Specimens of Plastics.

C. ASTM D 638 - Standard Test Method for Tensile Properties of Plastics.

D. ASTM D 790 - Standard Test Methods for Flexural Properties of Unreinforced and Reinforced Plastics and Electrical Insulating Materials.

E. ASTM D 1929 - Standard Test Method for Ignition Properties of Plastics.

F. ASTM D 635 – Standard Test Method for Rate of Building and/or Extent and Time of Burning of Plastics in a Horizontal Position.

G. ASTM E 84 – Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building

Materials

H. CAN/ULC 102.2 – Standard Method of Test for Surface Burning Characteristics of Flooring, Floor Coverings, and Miscellaneous Materials and Assemblies.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

D. General: Submit the following in accordance with conditions of contact and Division 1 specification section 01 33 00 "Submittal Procedures".

E. Product Data: Submit manufacturer's product data; including product description, fabrication information, and compliance with specified performance requirements.

F. Submit product test reports from a qualified independent 3rd party testing agency indication each type and class of panel system complies with the project performance requirements, based on comprehensive testing of current products. Previously completed test reports will be acceptable if for current manufacturer and indicative of products used on this project.

1. Test reports required are:
    a. Rate of Burning (ASTM D 635)
    b. Self-Ignition Temperature (ASTM D 1929)
    c. Flame Spread and Smoke Developed (ASTM E 84)
    d. Impact Strength (ASTM D 3763)
    e. Safety Glazing and Impact Strength (ANSI Z97.1-2004)

G. Samples for Initial Selection:

1. Submit minimum 2-inch by 2-inch samples. Indicate full color.

H. Samples for Verification:

1. Submit minimum 4-inch by 4-inch sample for each type and color of solid plastic fabrication.

I. Mockups:

1. Build mockups to verify selections made under sample Submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects.
2. Build mockup of [each type of] Plastic Fabrication.
3. Approved mockups may become part of the completed work if undistributed at time of Substantial Completion.

J. Maintenance Data: Submit manufacturer's care and maintenance data, including care, repair and cleaning instructions. Include in Project closeout documents.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer's Qualifications

1. Materials and systems shall be manufactured by a company continuously and regularly employed in the manufacture of specified materials for a period of at least five (5) consecutive years and which can show evidence of those materials being satisfactory used on at least six (6) projects of similar size, scope and location.
2. Manufacturer must have documented training and qualification program for fabrication and installation of plastic fabrications.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver Plastic Fabrications, systems and specified items in manufacturer's standard protective masking.

B. Store materials in a flat orientation in a dry place that is not exposed to exterior elements.

C. Handle materials to prevent damage to finished surfaces.

D. Before installing Plastic Fabrications, permit them to reach room temperature.

E. Do not deliver Plastic Fabrications, systems, components and accessories to Project site until areas are ready for installation.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Special Warranty on Plastic Fabrications: Manufacturer's standard form agreeing to repair or replace units that fail in material or workmanship within the specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: 5 years from ship date.

C. The warranty shall not deprive the owner of other rights or remedies the Owner may have under provisions of the Contract Documents, and is in addition to and runs concurrent with other warranties made by the Contractor under the requirements of the Contract Documents.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER

A. Manufacturer: 3form, Inc., Salt Lake City, Utah, USA / telephone 801-649-2500

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Koda XT produced from polycarbonate sheet

1. Engineered polycarbonate resin
2. Sheet Size: Maximum 4'x10'
3. Thickness: Minimum ¼"
4. Basis of Design Product: The design of Plastic Fabrications is based on Koda XT as provided by 3form, Inc. Products from other manufacturers must be approved by the Architect and Designer prior to bidding in accordance with the Instructions to Bidders and Section 10 60 00 "Product Requirements".

B. Sheet Minimum Performance Attributes:

1. Rate of Burning (ASTM D 635). Material must attain CC1Rating for a nominal thickness of 1.5 mm (0.060 in.) and greater.
2. Self-Ignition Temperature (ASTM D 1929). Material must have a Self-Ignition Temperature greater than 650°F.
3. Flame Spread and Smoke developed testing (ASTM E 84). Material must be able to meet a level of Class B (Flame spread less than 75 and smoke less than 450) at thickness of ½".
4. Impact Strength. Minimum impact strength test as measured by ASTM D 3763 of 20 ft. lbs. (for durability, shipping, installation, and use).
5. Safety Glazing. Material must attain a Class A impact rating in accordance with ANSI Z97.1-2004.

C. Interlayer Materials:

1. C3 Color: Play with 50,000 options in the core color palette. Combine colors up to three layers deep to control the hue, intensity and translucency, creating an exciting range of exact color specifications.
2. HighRes: Translucent high resolution imagery.

2.3 FABRICATION

B. General: Fabricate Plastic Fabrications to designs, sizes and thicknesses indicated and to comply with indicated standards. Sizes, profiles and other characteristics are indicated on the drawings.

C. Comply with manufacturer's written recommendations for fabrication.

D. Machining: Acceptable means of machining are listed below. Ensure that material is not chipped or warped by machining operations.

1. Sawing: Select equipment and blades suitable for type of cut required.
2. Drilling: Drills specifically designed for use with plastic products.
3. Milling: Climb cut where possible.
4. Routing
5. Tapping

E. Forming: Form products to shapes indicated using the appropriate method listed below. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Cold Bending
2. Hot Bending

F. Laminating: Laminate to substrates indicated using adhesives and techniques recommended by manufacturer.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Gaskets shall be as per manufacturer's standards to meet performance criteria.

B. Fasteners shall be per manufacturer's standards to meet performance requirements.

2.5 MISCELLANEOUS MATTERIALS

A. General: Provide products of material, size, and shape required for application indicated, and with a proven record of compatibility with surfaces contacted in installation.

B. Cleaner: Type recommended by manufacturer.

C. Fasteners: Use screws designed specifically for plastics.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where installation of Plastic Fabrications will occur, with Installer present, for compliance with manufacturer's requirements. Verify that substrates and conditions are satisfactory for installation and comply with requirements specified.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for the installation of Plastic Fabrications.

B. Manufacturer's shop to fabricate items to the greatest degree possible.

C. Utilize all fasteners recommended by manufacturer for type of installation indicated. Material that is chipped, warped, hazed or discolored as a result of installation or fabrication methods will be rejected.

D. Install components plumb, level and rigid, scribed to adjacent finishes, in accordance with approved shop drawings and product data.

G. We recommend that installation is completed by a 3form Certified Installer. Contact 3form for more information or to get a quote.

3.3 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Protect surfaces from damage until date of substantial completion. Repair work or replace damaged work, which cannot be repaired to Architect's satisfaction.

END OF SECTION 08 84 00

SECTION 08 91 19 - FIXED LOUVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fixed extruded-aluminum louvers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for field painting exterior louvers.
2. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for field painting interior louvers.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Louver Terminology: Definitions of terms for metal louvers contained in AMCA 501 apply to this Section unless otherwise defined in this Section or in referenced standards.

B. Horizontal Louver: Louver with horizontal blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are horizontal).

C. Vertical Louver: Louver with vertical blades (i.e., the axis of the blades are vertical).

D. Drainable-Blade Louver: Louver with blades having gutters that collect water and drain it to channels in jambs and mullions, which carry it to bottom of unit and away from opening.

E. Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver: Louver that provides specified wind-driven-rain performance, as determined by testing in accordance with AMCA 500-L.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. For louvers specified to bear AMCA seal, include printed catalog pages showing specified models with appropriate AMCA Certified Ratings Seals.

B. Shop Drawings: For louvers and accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work. Show frame profiles and blade profiles, angles, and spacing.

1. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashings, sealants, and other means of preventing water intrusion.
2. Show mullion profiles and locations.

C. Samples: For each type of metal finish required.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Windborne-debris-impact-resistance test reports.

B. Sample Warranties: For manufacturer's special warranties.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."
3. AWS D1.6/D1.6M, "Structural Welding Code - Stainless Steel."

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Field Measurements: Verify actual dimensions of openings by field measurements before fabrication.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Finish Warranty, Factory-Applied Finishes: Standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair finishes or replace aluminum that shows evidence of deterioration of baked enamel, powder coat, or organic finishes within specified warranty period.

1. Deterioration includes, but is not limited to, the following:

a. Color fading more than 5 Delta E units when tested in accordance with ASTM D2244.
b. Chalking in excess of a No. 8 rating when tested in accordance with ASTM D4214.

c. Cracking, checking, peeling, or failure of paint to adhere to bare metal.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fixed louvers from single source from a single manufacturer where indicated to be of same type, design, or factory-applied color finish.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design louvers, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using structural and seismic performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Louvers withstand the effects of gravity loads and the following loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated without permanent deformation of louver components, noise or metal fatigue caused by louver-blade rattle or flutter, or permanent damage to fasteners and anchors. Wind pressures are considered to act normal to the face of the building.

1. Wind Loads:

a. Determine loads based on pressures as indicated on Drawings.

C. Seismic Performance:

1. As indicated on Drawings.

a. Design earthquake spectral response acceleration, short period (Sds) for Project as shown on drawings.
b. Component Importance Factor: as indicated on drawings.

D. Louver Performance Ratings: Provide louvers complying with requirements specified, as demonstrated by testing manufacturer's stock units identical to those provided, except for length and width in accordance with AMCA 500-L.

E. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change (Range): 120 deg F, ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

F. SMACNA Standard: Comply with recommendations in SMACNA's "Architectural Sheet Metal Manual" for fabrication, construction details, and installation procedures.

2.3 FIXED EXTRUDED-ALUMINUM LOUVERS

A. Vertical, Wind-Driven-Rain-Resistant Louver, Extruded Aluminum:

1. Manufacturers:
   a. Architectural Louvers
   b. United Enertech Corporation
   c. Industrial Louvers, Inc.
   d. Ruskin Company
2. Louver Depth: 3 inches.min
3. Frame and Blade Nominal Thickness: Not less than 0.050 inch for blades and 0.080 inch for frames.
4. Mullion Type: Exposed.
5. Louver Performance Ratings:
   a. Free Area: as indicated on drawings.
   b. Point of Beginning Water Penetration: As indicated on drawings.
   c. Air Performance: As indicated on drawings.
6. AMCA Seal: Mark units with AMCA Certified Ratings Seal.

2.4 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5, T-52, or T6.

B. Fasteners: Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.

1. Use tamper-resistant screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
2. For fastening aluminum, use aluminum or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
3. For fastening galvanized steel, use hot-dip-galvanized-steel or 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
4. For fastening stainless steel, use 300 series stainless steel fasteners.
5. For color-finished louvers, use fasteners with heads that match color of louvers.

C. Postinstalled Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors, fabricated from stainless steel components, with allowable load or strength design capacities calculated in accordance with ICC-ES AC193 and ACI 318 greater than or equal to the design load, as determined by testing in accordance with ASTM E488/E488M conducted by a qualified testing agency.

D. Bituminous Paint: Cold-applied asphalt emulsion complying with ASTM D1187/D1187M.

2.5 FABRICATION

A. Factory assemble louvers to minimize field splicing and assembly. Disassemble units as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and coordinated installation.

B. Vertical Assemblies: Where height of louver units exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, fabricate units to permit field-bolted assembly with close-fitting joints in jambs and mullions, reinforced with splice plates.

1. Horizontal Mullions: Provide horizontal mullions at joints unless continuous vertical assemblies are indicated.

C. Fabricate frames, including integral sills, to fit in openings of sizes indicated, with allowances made for fabrication and installation tolerances, adjoining material tolerances, and perimeter sealant joints.

1. Frame Type: Channel unless otherwise indicated.

D. Include supports, anchorages, and accessories required for complete assembly.

E. Provide vertical mullions of type and at spacings indicated, but not more than is recommended by manufacturer, or 72 inches o.c., whichever is less.
1. Exposed Mullions: Where indicated, provide units with exposed mullions of same width and depth as louver frame. Where length of louver exceeds fabrication and handling limitations, provide interlocking split mullions designed to permit expansion and contraction.

F. Join frame members to each other and to fixed louver blades with fillet welds concealed from view unless otherwise indicated or size of louver assembly makes bolted connections between frame members necessary.

A. Provide extended sills for recessed louvers.

2.6 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. High-Performance Organic Finish, Two-Coat PVDF: Fluoropolymer finish complying with AAMA 2605 and containing not less than 70 percent PVDF resin by weight in color coat.

1. Prepare, pretreat, and apply coating to exposed metal surfaces to comply with coating and resin manufacturers' written instructions.
2. Color and Gloss: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 LOUVER SCREENS

A. General: Provide screen at each exterior louver.

1. Screen Location for Fixed Louvers: Interior face.
2. Screening Type: Bird screening.

B. Secure screen frames to louver frames with machine screws with heads finished to match louver, spaced a maximum of 6 inches from each corner and at 12 inches o.c.

C. Louver Screen Frames: Fabricate with mitered corners to louver sizes indicated.

1. Metal: Same type and form of metal as indicated for louver to which screens are attached. Reinforce extruded-aluminum screen frames at corners with clips.
2. Finish: Same finish as louver frames to which louver screens are attached.
3. Type: Non-rewirable, U-shaped frame.

D. Louver Screening for Aluminum Louvers:

1. Bird Screening, Aluminum: 1/2-inch-square mesh, 0.063-inch wire.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and openings, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions, and directions for installation of anchorages that are to be embedded in concrete or masonry

construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to Project site.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Locate and place louvers level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Use concealed anchorages where possible. Provide brass or lead washers fitted to screws where required to protect metal surfaces and to make a weathertight connection.

C. Form closely fitted joints with exposed connections accurately located and secured.

D. Provide perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

E. Protect unpainted galvanized- and nonferrous-metal surfaces that are in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals from corrosion and galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint or by separating surfaces with waterproof gaskets or nonmetallic flashing.

F. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as louver installation progresses, where weathertight louver joints are required. Comply with Section 079200 "Joint Sealants" for sealants applied during louver installation.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Clean exposed louver surfaces that are not protected by temporary covering, to remove fingerprints and soil during construction period. Do not let soil accumulate during construction period.

B. Before final inspection, clean exposed surfaces with water and a mild soap or detergent not harmful to finishes. Thoroughly rinse surfaces and dry.

C. Restore louvers damaged during installation and construction, so no evidence remains of corrective work. If results of restoration are unsuccessful, as determined by Architect, remove damaged units and replace with new units.

1. Touch up minor abrasions in finishes with air-dried coating that matches color and gloss of, and is compatible with, factory-applied finish coating.

END OF SECTION 08 91 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 22 16 - NON-STRUCTURAL METAL FRAMING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Non-load-bearing steel framing systems for interior partitions.
2. Suspension systems for interior ceilings and soffits.
3. Grid suspension systems for gypsum board ceilings.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 40 00 "Cold-Formed Metal Framing" for exterior and interior load-bearing and exterior non-load-bearing wall studs; floor joists; and roof rafters and ceiling joists.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of code-compliance certification for studs and tracks.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Code-Compliance Certification of Studs and Tracks: Provide documentation that framing members are certified according to the product-certification program of the Certified Steel Stud Association, the Steel Framing Industry Association, the Steel Stud Manufacturers Association, or the Supreme Steel Framing System Association.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Notify manufacturer of damaged materials received prior to installation.

B. Deliver materials in manufacturer's original, unopened, undamaged containers with identification labels intact.

C. Protect cold-formed metal framing from corrosion, deformation, and other damage during delivery, storage, and handling as required by AISI S202, "Code of Standard Practice for Cold-Formed Steel Structural Framing."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies that incorporate non-load-bearing steel framing, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated, according to ASTM E119 by an independent testing agency.

B. STC-Rated Assemblies: For STC-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated on Drawings, according to ASTM E90 and classified according to ASTM E413 by an independent testing agency.

C. Design framing systems in accordance with AISI S220, "North American Specification for the Design of Cold-Formed Steel Framing - Nonstructural Members," unless otherwise indicated.

D. Design Loads: As indicated on architectural Drawings or 5 lbf/sq. ft. minimum as required by the IBC.

2.2 FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. Framing Members, General: Comply with AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10 for conditions indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. CEMCO; California Expanded Metal Products Co.
    b. ClarkDietrich.
    c. MRI Steel Framing, LLC.
    d. SCAFCO Steel Stud Company.
    e. Steel Construction Systems.

2. Steel Sheet Components: Comply with AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10

requirements for metal unless otherwise indicated.

3. Protective Coating: Comply with AISI S220; ASTM A653/A653M, G40; or coating with equivalent corrosion resistance. Galvannealed products are unacceptable.

    a. Coating demonstrates equivalent corrosion resistance with an evaluation report acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Studs and Track: AISI S220 and ASTM C645, Section 10.
1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

C. Firestop Tracks: Top track manufactured to allow partition heads to expand and contract with movement of structure while maintaining continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated; in thickness not less than indicated for studs and in width to accommodate depth of studs.

D. Flat Strap and Backing Plate: Steel sheet for blocking and bracing in length and width indicated.

1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0269 inch.

E. Cold-Rolled Channel Bridging: Steel, 0.0538-inch minimum base-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Clip Angle: Not less than 1-1/2 by 1-1/2 inches, 0.068-inch-thick, galvanized steel.

F. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645.
1. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

G. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep, steel sheet members designed to reduce sound transmission.

1. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

H. Cold-Rolled Furring Channels: 0.053-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Furring Brackets: Adjustable, corrugated-edge-type steel sheet with minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0329 inch.
3. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

I. Z-Shaped Furring: With slotted or nonslotted web, face flange of 1-1/4 inches, wall attachment flange of 7/8 inch, minimum uncoated-steel thickness of 0.0179 inch, and depth required to fit insulation thickness indicated.

2.3 SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Tie Wire: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.062-inch-diameter wire, or double strand of 0.048-inch-diameter wire.

B. Wire Hangers: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper, 0.16 inch in diameter.

C. Flat Hangers: Steel sheet, 1 by 3/16 inch by length indicated.

D. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): Cold-rolled, commercial-steel sheet with a base-steel thickness of 0.0538 inch and minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges.

1. Depth: 2 inches.

E. Furring Channels (Furring Members):

1. Cold-Rolled Channels: 0.0538-inch uncoated-steel thickness, with minimum 1/2-inch-wide flanges, 3/4 inch deep.
2. Steel Studs and Tracks: ASTM C645.

a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0269 inch.
b. Depth: As indicated on Drawings.

3. Hat-Shaped, Rigid Furring Channels: ASTM C645, 7/8 inch deep.

a. Minimum Base-Steel Thickness: 0.0296 inch.

4. Resilient Furring Channels: 1/2-inch-deep members designed to reduce sound transmission.

a. Configuration: Asymmetrical or hat shaped.

F. Grid Suspension System for Gypsum Board Ceilings: ASTM C645, direct-hung system composed of main beams and cross-furring members that interlock.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Armstrong Ceiling & Wall Solutions.
b. Certainteed; SAINT-GOBAIN.
c. USG Corporation.

2.4 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards.

1. Fasteners for Steel Framing: Of type, material, size, corrosion resistance, holding power, and other properties required to fasten steel members to substrates.

B. Isolation Strip at Exterior Walls: Provide one of the following:

1. Asphalt-Saturated Organic Felt: ASTM D226/D226M, Type I (No. 15 asphalt felt), nonperforated.
2. Foam Gasket: Adhesive-backed, closed-cell vinyl foam strips that allow fastener penetration without foam displacement, 1/8 inch thick, in width to suit steel stud size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates, with Installer present, and including welded hollow-metal frames, cast-in anchors, and structural framing, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Suspended Assemblies: Coordinate installation of suspension systems with installation of overhead structure to ensure that inserts and other provisions for anchorages to building structure have been installed to receive hangers at spacing required to support the Work and that hangers will develop their full strength.

1. Furnish concrete inserts and other devices indicated to other trades for installation in advance of time needed for coordination and construction.

B. Coordination with Sprayed Fire-Resistive Materials:

1. Before sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, attach offset anchor plates or

ceiling tracks to surfaces indicated to receive sprayed fire-resistive materials. Where offset anchor plates are required, provide continuous plates fastened to building structure not more than 24 inches o.c.

2. After sprayed fire-resistive materials are applied, remove them only to extent necessary for installation of non-load-bearing steel framing. Do not reduce thickness of fire-resistive materials below that are required for fire-resistance ratings indicated. Protect adjacent fire-resistive materials from damage.

3.3 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Installation Standard: ASTM C754.

1. Gypsum Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C841 that apply to framing installation.
2. Portland Cement Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C1063 that apply to framing installation.
3. Gypsum Veneer Plaster Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C844 that apply to framing installation.
4. Gypsum Board Assemblies: Also comply with requirements in ASTM C840 that apply to framing installation.

B. Install framing and accessories plumb, square, and true to line, with connections securely fastened.

C. Install supplementary framing, and blocking to support fixtures, equipment services, heavy trim, grab bars, toilet accessories, furnishings, or similar construction.

D. Install bracing at terminations in assemblies.

E. Do not bridge building control and expansion joints with non-load-bearing steel framing members. Frame both sides of joints independently.

3.4 INSTALLING FRAMED ASSEMBLIES

A. Install framing system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.

B. Where studs are installed directly against exterior masonry walls or dissimilar metals at exterior walls, install isolation strip between studs and exterior wall.

C. Install studs so flanges within framing system point in same direction.

D. Install tracks at floors and overhead supports. Extend framing full height to structural supports or substrates above suspended ceilings except where partitions are indicated to terminate at suspended ceilings. Continue framing around ducts that penetrate partitions above ceiling.

1. Slip-Type Head Joints: Where framing extends to overhead structural supports, install to produce joints at tops of framing systems that prevent axial loading of finished assemblies.
2. Door Openings: Screw vertical studs at jambs to jamb anchor clips on door frames; install track section (for cripple studs) at head and secure to jamb studs.

    a. Install two studs at each jamb unless otherwise indicated.
    b. Install cripple studs at head adjacent to each jamb stud, with a minimum 1/2-inch clearance from jamb stud to allow for installation of control joint in finished assembly.
    c. Extend jamb studs through suspended ceilings and attach to underside of overhead structure.

3. Other Framed Openings: Frame openings other than door openings the same as required for door openings unless otherwise indicated. Install framing below sills of openings to match framing required above door heads.
4. Fire-Resistance-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated and support closures and to make partitions continuous from floor to underside of solid structure.

    a. Firestop Track: Where indicated, install to maintain continuity of fire-resistance-rated assembly indicated.

5. Sound-Rated Partitions: Install framing to comply with sound-rated assembly indicated.
6. Curved Partitions:

    a. Bend track to uniform curve and locate straight lengths so they are tangent to arcs.
    b. Begin and end each arc with a stud, and space intermediate studs equally along arcs. On straight lengths of no fewer than two studs at ends of arcs, place studs 6 inches o.c.

E. Direct Furring:

1. Screw to wood framing.
2. Attach to concrete or masonry with stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.

F. Z-Shaped Furring Members:

1. Erect insulation, specified in Section 072100 "Thermal Insulation," vertically and hold in place with Z-shaped furring members spaced 24 inches o.c.
2. Except at exterior corners, securely attach narrow flanges of furring members to wall with concrete stub nails, screws designed for masonry attachment, or powder-driven fasteners spaced 24 inches o.c.
3. At exterior corners, attach wide flange of furring members to wall with short flange extending beyond corner; on adjacent wall surface, screw-attach short flange of furring channel to web of attached channel. At interior corners, space second member no more than 12 inches from corner and cut insulation to fit.

G. Installation Tolerance: Install each framing member so fastening surfaces vary not more than 1/8 inch from the plane formed by faces of adjacent framing.

3.5 INSTALLING CEILING SUSPENSION SYSTEMS

A. Install suspension system components according to spacings indicated, but not greater than spacings required by referenced installation standards for assembly types.

1. Hangers: 48 inches o.c.
2. Carrying Channels (Main Runners): 48 inches o.c.
3. Furring Channels (Furring Members): 16 inches o.c.

B. Isolate suspension systems from building structure where they abut or are penetrated by building structure to prevent transfer of loading imposed by structural movement.

C. Suspend hangers from building structure as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structural or suspension system.

    a. Splay hangers only where required to miss obstructions and offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.

2. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with locations of hangers required to support standard suspension system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in the form of trapezes or equivalent devices.

    a. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling

loads within performance limits established by referenced installation standards.

3. Wire Hangers: Secure by looping and wire tying, either directly to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for substrate, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
4. Flat Hangers: Secure to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices and fasteners that are secure and appropriate for structure and hanger, and in a manner that will not cause hangers to deteriorate or otherwise fail.
5. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck.
6. Do not attach hangers to permanent metal forms. Furnish cast-in-place hanger inserts that extend through forms.
7. Do not attach hangers to rolled-in hanger tabs of composite steel floor deck.
8. Do not connect or suspend steel framing from ducts, pipes, or conduit.

D. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Wire tie furring channels to supports.

E. Grid Suspension Systems: Attach perimeter wall track or angle where grid suspension systems meet vertical surfaces. Mechanically join main beam and cross-furring members to each other and butt-cut to fit into wall track.

F. Installation Tolerances: Install suspension systems that are level to within 1/8 inch in 12 feet measured lengthwise on each member that will receive finishes and transversely between parallel members that will receive finishes.

END OF SECTION 09 22 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 29 00 - GYPSUM BOARD

PART 1 - GENERAL

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Interior gypsum board.
2. Exterior gypsum board for ceilings and soffits.
3. Tile backing panels.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 06 16 00 "Sheathing" for gypsum sheathing for exterior walls.
2. Section 09 22 16 "Non-Structural Metal Framing" for non-structural steel framing and suspension systems that support gypsum board panels.
3. Section 09 30 13 "Ceramic Tiling" for cementitious backer units installed as substrates for ceramic tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of trim accessory indicated.

D. Samples for Verification: For the following products:

1. Trim Accessories: Full-size Sample in 12-inch- (300-mm-) long length for each trim accessory indicated.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store materials inside under cover and keep them dry and protected against weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction traffic, and other potential causes of damage. Stack panels flat and supported on risers on a flat platform to prevent sagging.

1.5 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with ASTM C 840 requirements or gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions, whichever are more stringent.

B. Do not install paper-faced gypsum panels until installation areas are enclosed and conditioned.

C. Do not install panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: For fire-resistance-rated assemblies, provide materials and construction identical to those tested in assembly indicated according to ASTM E 119 by an independent testing agency.

2.2 GYPSUM BOARD, GENERAL

A. Size: Provide maximum lengths and widths available that will minimize joints in each area and that correspond with support system indicated.

2.3 INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
1. Thickness: 5/8 INCH
2. Long Edges: Tapered

B. Gypsum Board, Type X: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
   1. Thickness: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm).
   2. Long Edges: Tapered and featured (rounded or beveled) for prefilling.

C. Gypsum Ceiling Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M.
   1. Thickness: 1/2 inch (12.7 mm).
   2. Long Edges: Tapered.

D. Water Resistant Gypsum Wallboard: ASTM C 630/ C630M-03. (Non-tiled)
   1. Thickness: 5/8 INCH
   2. Long Edges: Tapered

2.4 EXTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: ASTM C 1396/C 1396M, with manufacturer's standard edges.
   1. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X, Unless noted otherwise.

B. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: ASTM C1177/C1177M, with fiberglass mat laminated to both sides and with manufacturer's standard edges.
   1. Core: 5/8 inch (15.9 mm), Type X, Unless noted otherwise.

2.5 TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Waterproof Cement Backer Units: ANSI A118.9 and ASTM C 1288 or ASTM C 1325 and ASTM E136, with manufacturer's standard edges.
   1. Thickness: As indicated.
   2. Mold Resistance: ASTM D 3273, score of 10 as rated according to ASTM D 3274.
   3. Achieve Fire Rating where indicated on Drawings

2.6 TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. Interior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

   1. Material: Galvanized or aluminum-coated steel sheet or rolled zinc
   2. Shapes:

      a. Cornerbead.
      b. Bullnose bead.
      c. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
      d. L-Bead: L-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
      e. U-Bead: J-shaped; exposed short flange does not receive joint compound.

f. Expansion (control) joint.
g. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: With notched or flexible flanges.

B. Exterior Trim: ASTM C 1047.

1. Material: Hot-dip galvanized-steel sheet, plastic, or rolled zinc
2. Shapes:

a. Cornerbead.
b. LC-Bead: J-shaped; exposed long flange receives joint compound.
c. Expansion (Control) Joint: One-piece, rolled zinc with V-shaped slot and removable strip covering slot opening.

C. Aluminum Trim: Extruded accessories of profiles and dimensions indicated.
1. Aluminum: Alloy and temper with not less than the strength and durability properties of ASTM B 221 (ASTM B 221M), Alloy 6063-T5.

2. Finish: Corrosion-resistant primer compatible with joint compound and finish materials specified.

2.7 JOINT TREATMENT MATERIALS

A. General: Comply with ASTM C 475/C 475M.

B. Joint Tape:

1. Interior Gypsum Board: Paper.
2. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Paper.
3. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: 10-by-10 glass mesh.
4. Tile Backing Panels: As recommended by panel manufacturer.

C. Joint Compound for Interior Gypsum Board: For each coat, use formulation that is compatible with other compounds applied on previous or for successive coats.

1. Prefilling: At open joints, rounded or beveled panel edges, and damaged surface areas, use setting-type taping compound.
2. Embedding and First Coat: For embedding tape and first coat on joints, fasteners, and trim flanges, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.

a. Use setting-type compound for installing paper-faced metal trim accessories.

3. Fill Coat: For second coat, use drying-type, all-purpose compound.
4. Finish Coat: For third coat, use setting-type, sandable topping compound.

5. Skim Coat: For final coat of Level 5 finish, use high-build interior coating product designed for application by airless sprayer and to be used instead of skim coat to produce Level 5 finish.

D. Joint Compound for Exterior Applications:

1. Exterior Gypsum Soffit Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting- type, sandable topping compound.
2. Glass-Mat Gypsum Sheathing Board: As recommended by sheathing board manufacturer.

E. Joint Compound for Tile Backing Panels:

1. Glass-Mat, Water-Resistant Backing Panel: As recommended by backing panel manufacturer.
2. Cementitious Backer Units: As recommended by backer unit manufacturer.
3. Water-Resistant Gypsum Backing Board: Use setting-type taping compound and setting-type, sandable topping compound.

2.8 AUXILIARY MATERIALS

A. General: Provide auxiliary materials that comply with referenced installation standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Laminating Adhesive: Adhesive or joint compound recommended for directly adhering gypsum panels to continuous substrate.

C. Steel Drill Screws: ASTM C 1002 unless otherwise indicated.

1. Use screws complying with ASTM C 954 for fastening panels to steel members from 0.033 to 0.112 inch (0.84 to 2.84 mm) thick.
2. For fastening cementitious backer units, use screws of type and size recommended by panel manufacturer.

D. Sound-Attenuation Blankets: ASTM C 665, Type I (blankets without membrane facing) produced by combining thermosetting resins with mineral fibers manufactured from glass, slag wool, or rock wool.

1. Fire-Resistance-Rated Assemblies: Comply with mineral-fiber requirements of assembly.

E. Acoustical Sealant: Manufacturer's standard non-sag, paintable, non-staining latex sealant complying with ASTM C 834. Product effectively reduces airborne sound transmission through perimeter joints and openings in building construction as

demonstrated by testing representative assemblies according to ASTM E 90.

F. Thermal Insulation: As specified in Section 07 21 00 "Thermal Insulation."

G. Vapor Retarder: As specified in Section 07 26 00 "Vapor Retarders."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and substrates including welded hollow-metal frames and support framing, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine panels before installation. Reject panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION AND FINISHING PANELS, GENERAL

A. Comply with ASTM C 840.

B. Install ceiling panels across framing to minimize the number of abutting end joints and to avoid abutting end joints in central area of each ceiling. Stagger abutting end joints of adjacent panels not less than one framing member.

C. Install panels with face side out. Butt panels together for a light contact at edges and ends with not more than 1/16 inch (1.5 mm) of open space between panels. Do not force into place.

D. Locate edge and end joints over supports, except in ceiling applications where intermediate supports or gypsum board back-blocking is provided behind end joints. Do not place tapered edges against cut edges or ends. Stagger vertical joints on opposite sides of partitions. Do not make joints other than control joints at corners of framed openings.

E. Form control and expansion joints with space between edges of adjoining gypsum panels.

F. Cover both faces of support framing with gypsum panels in concealed spaces (above

ceilings, etc.), except in chases braced internally.

1. Unless concealed application is indicated or required for sound, fire, air, or smoke ratings, coverage may be accomplished with scraps of not less than 8 sq. ft. (0.7 sq. m) in area.
2. Fit gypsum panels around ducts, pipes, and conduits.
3. Where partitions intersect structural members projecting below underside of floor/roof slabs and decks, cut gypsum panels to fit profile formed by structural members; allow 1/4- to 3/8-inch- (6.4- to 9.5-mm-) wide joints to install sealant.

G. Isolate perimeter of gypsum board applied to non-load-bearing partitions at structural abutments. Provide 1/4- to 1/2-inch- (6.4- to 12.7-mm-) wide spaces at these locations and trim edges with edge trim where edges of panels are exposed. Seal joints between edges and abutting structural surfaces with acoustical sealant.

H. Attachment to Steel Framing: Attach panels so leading edge or end of each panel is attached to open (unsupported) edges of stud flanges first.

I. Install sound attenuation blankets before installing gypsum panels unless blankets are readily installed after panels have been installed on one side.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF INTERIOR GYPSUM BOARD

A. Install interior gypsum board in the following locations:

1. Wallboard Type: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
2. Type X: Vertical surfaces unless otherwise indicated.
3. Ceiling Type: As indicated on Drawings.

B. Single-Layer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum panels before wall/partition board application to greatest extent possible and at right angles to framing unless otherwise indicated.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing), unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly, and minimize end joints.

    a. Stagger abutting end joints not less than one framing member in alternate courses of panels.
    b. At stairwells and other high walls, install panels horizontally unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply gypsum panels vertically (parallel to framing) with no end joints. Locate edge joints over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Apply gypsum panels to supports with steel drill screws.

C. Multilayer Application:

1. On ceilings, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers before applying base layers on walls/partitions; apply face layers in same sequence. Apply base layers at right angles to framing members and offset face-layer joints one framing member, 16 inches (400 mm) minimum, from parallel base-layer joints, unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly.
2. On partitions/walls, apply gypsum board indicated for base layers and face layers vertically (parallel to framing) with joints of base layers located over stud or furring member and face-layer joints offset at least one stud or furring member with base-layer joints unless otherwise indicated or required by fire-resistance-rated assembly. Stagger joints on opposite sides of partitions.
3. On Z-shaped furring members, apply base layer vertically (parallel to framing) and face layer either vertically (parallel to framing) or horizontally (perpendicular to framing) with vertical joints offset at least one furring member. Locate edge joints of base layer over furring members.
4. Fastening Methods: Fasten base layers with screws; fasten face layers with adhesive and supplementary fasteners.

D. Laminating to Substrate: Where gypsum panels are indicated as directly adhered to a substrate (other than studs, joists, furring members, or base layer of gypsum board), comply with gypsum board manufacturer's written instructions and temporarily brace or fasten gypsum panels until fastening adhesive has set.

3.4 INSTALLATION OF EXTERIOR GYPSUM PANELS FOR CEILINGS AND SOFFITS

A. Apply panels perpendicular to supports, with end joints staggered and located over supports.

1. Install with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) open space where panels abut other construction or structural penetrations.
2. Fasten with corrosion-resistant screws.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF TILE BACKING PANELS

A. Cementitious Backer Units: ANSI A108.11, at locations indicated to receive tile.

B. Water-Resistant Backing Board: Install at locker room ceilings and walls with water pipe penetrations in non-tiled areas with 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) gap where panels abut

other construction or penetrations.

C. Where tile backing panels abut other types of panels in same plane, shim surfaces to produce a uniform plane across panel surfaces.

3.6 INSTALLING TRIM ACCESSORIES

A. General: For trim with back flanges intended for fasteners, attach to framing with same fasteners used for panels. Otherwise, attach trim according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Control Joints: Install control joints according to ASTM C 840 and in specific locations approved by Architect for visual effect.

C. Interior Trim: Install in the following locations:

1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners unless otherwise indicated.
2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges
3. L-Bead: Use Where indicated
4. U-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges
5. Curved-Edge Cornerbead: Use at curved openings.

D. Exterior Trim: Install in the following locations:

1. Cornerbead: Use at outside corners.
2. LC-Bead: Use at exposed panel edges

E. Aluminum Trim: Install in locations indicated on Drawings.

3.7 FINISHING GYPSUM BOARD

A. General: Treat gypsum board joints, interior angles, edge trim, control joints, penetrations, fastener heads, surface defects, and elsewhere as required to prepare gypsum board surfaces for decoration. Promptly remove residual joint compound from adjacent surfaces.

B. Prefill open joints**,** rounded or beveled edges, and damaged surface areas.

C. Apply joint tape over gypsum board joints, except for trim products specifically indicated as not intended to receive tape.

D. Gypsum Board Finish Levels: Finish panels to levels indicated below and according to ASTM C 840:

1. Level 1: Ceiling plenum areas, concealed areas, and where indicated.
2. Level 2: Panels that are substrate for tile
3. Level 3: Accessory to Vehicle Storage areas.
4. Level 4: At panel surfaces that will be exposed to view unless otherwise indicated

    a. Primer and its application to surfaces per MPI standards.

E. Cementitious Backer Units: Finish according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 PROTECTION

A. Protect adjacent surfaces from drywall compound and promptly remove from floors and other non-drywall surfaces. Repair surfaces stained, marred, or otherwise damaged during drywall application.

B. Protect installed products from damage from weather, condensation, direct sunlight, construction, and other causes during remainder of the construction period.

C. Remove and replace panels that are wet, moisture damaged, and mold damaged.

1. Indications that panels are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration, sagging, or irregular shape.
2. Indications that panels are mold damaged include, but are not limited to, fuzzy or splotchy surface contamination and discoloration.

END OF SECTION 09 29 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 30 13 - CERAMIC TILING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Porcelain tile.
   2. Thresholds.
   3. Waterproof membranes.
   4. Crack isolation membranes.
   5. Metal edge strips

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants" for sealing of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile surfaces.
   2. Section 09 29 00 "Gypsum Board" for glass-mat, water-resistant backer board.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. General: Definitions in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards and in ANSI A137.1 apply to Work of this Section unless otherwise specified.

B. Face Size: Actual tile size, excluding spacer lugs.

C. Module Size: Actual tile size plus joint width indicated.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

   1. Review requirements in ANSI A108.01 for substrates and for preparation by other trades.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show locations of each type of tile and tile pattern. Show widths, details, and locations of expansion, contraction, control, and isolation joints in tile substrates and finished tile surfaces.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For tile, grout, and accessories involving color selection.

D. Samples for Verification:

1. Full-size units of each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required.
2. Assembled samples mounted on a rigid panel, with grouted joints, for each type and composition of tile and for each color and finish required. Make samples at least 12 inches square, but not fewer than four tiles. Use grout of type and in color or colors approved for completed Work.
3. Full-size units of each type of trim and accessory.
4. Stone thresholds in 6-inch lengths.
5. Metal edge strips in 6-inch lengths.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

B. Master Grade Certificates: For each shipment, type, and composition of tile, signed by tile manufacturer and Installer.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of product.

D. Product Test Reports: For tile-setting and -grouting products.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match and are from the same production runs as products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Tile and Trim Units: Furnish quantity of full-size units equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, color, pattern, and size indicated.

2. Grout: Furnish quantity of grout equal to 3 percent of amount installed for each type, composition, and color indicated.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer is a Five-Star member of the National Tile Contractors Association or a Trowel of Excellence member of the Tile Contractors' Association of America.

2. Installer's supervisor for Project holds the International Masonry Institute's Foreman Certification.
3. Installer employs only Ceramic Tile Education Foundation Certified Installers or installers recognized by the U.S. Department of Labor as Journeyman Tile Layers for Project.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Build mockup of each type of floor tile installation.
2. Build mockup of each type of wall tile installation.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store packaged materials in original containers with seals unbroken and labels intact until time of use. Comply with requirements in ANSI A137.1 for labeling tile packages.

B. Store tile and cementitious materials on elevated platforms, under cover, and in a dry location.

C. Store aggregates where grading and other required characteristics can be maintained and contamination can be avoided.

D. Store liquid materials in unopened containers and protected from freezing.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install tile until construction in spaces is complete and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated in referenced standards and manufacturer's written instructions.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations for Tile: Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from single source or producer.

1. Obtain tile of each type and color or finish from same production run and of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties for each contiguous area.

B. Source Limitations for Setting and Grouting Materials: Obtain ingredients of a uniform quality for each mortar, adhesive, and grout component from single manufacturer and each aggregate from single source or producer.

1. Obtain setting and grouting materials, except for unmodified Portland cement and aggregate, from single manufacturer.
2. Obtain waterproof membrane and crack isolation membrane, except for sheet products, from manufacturer of setting and grouting materials.

C. Source Limitations for Other Products: Obtain each of the following products specified in this Section from a single manufacturer:

1. Stone thresholds.
2. Waterproof membrane.
3. Crack isolation membrane.
4. Metal edge strips.

2.2 PRODUCTS, GENERAL

A. ANSI Ceramic Tile Standard: Provide tile that complies with ANSI A137.1 for types, compositions, and other characteristics indicated.

1. Provide tile complying with Standard grade requirements unless otherwise indicated.

B. ANSI Standards for Tile Installation Materials: Provide materials complying with ANSI A108.02, ANSI standards referenced in other Part 2 articles, ANSI standards referenced by TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules, and other requirements specified.

C. Factory Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations within ranges, blend tile in factory and package so tile units taken from one package show same range in colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples.

2.3 TILE PRODUCTS

A. Ceramic Tile of several types are required and scheduled for various locations on the Drawings. Equivalent products, subject to general requirements, may be considered for review and approval.

1. Manufactuers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
    a. Ceramic Technics/StoneSource
    b. Crossville Studios
    c. Trinity Surfaces

2.4 THRESHOLDS

A. General: Fabricate to sizes and profiles indicated or required to provide transition indicated or required between adjacent floor finishes.

1. Bevel edges at 1:2 slope, with lower edge of bevel aligned with or up to 1/16 inch above adjacent floor surface. Finish bevel to match top surface of threshold. Limit height of threshold to 1/2 inch or less above adjacent floor surface.

2.5 WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.10 and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and continuous fabric reinforcement.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    b. Bostik, Inc.
    c. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
    d. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
    e. MAPEI Corporation.

C. Fluid-Applied Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
    b. Bostik, Inc.

c. C-Cure.
d. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
e. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
f. MAPEI Corporation.

D. Latex-Portland Cement Waterproof Mortar: Flexible, waterproof mortar consisting of cement-based mix and latex additive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. C-Cure.
b. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
c. MAPEI Corporation.

2.6 CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

A. General: Manufacturer's standard product, selected from the following, that complies with ANSI A118.12 for standard performance and is recommended by the manufacturer for the application indicated. Include reinforcement and accessories recommended by manufacturer.

B. Fabric-Reinforced, Fluid-Applied Membrane: System consisting of liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer and fabric reinforcement.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
b. Bostik, Inc.
c. Custom Building Products.
d. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
e. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
f. MAPEI Corporation.

C. Fluid-Applied Membrane: Liquid-latex rubber or elastomeric polymer.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bostik, Inc.
b. C-Cure.
c. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
d. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
e. MAPEI Corporation.

D. Latex-Portland Cement Crack-Resistant Mortar: Flexible mortar consisting of cement-based mix and latex additive.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. C-Cure.
b. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
c. MAPEI Corporation.

2.7 SETTING MATERIALS

A. Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.4.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
b. Bostik, Inc.
c. C-Cure.
d. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
e. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.
f. MAPEI Corporation.

2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.4.

B. Improved Modified Dry-Set Mortar (Thinset): ANSI A118.15.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.

b. C-Cure.
c. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
d. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.

2. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix containing dry, redispersible, vinyl acetate or acrylic additive to which only water must be added at Project site.
3. Provide prepackaged, dry-mortar mix combined with acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene-rubber liquid-latex additive at Project site.
4. For wall applications, provide mortar that complies with requirements for nonsagging mortar in addition to the other requirements in ANSI A118.15.

2.8 GROUT MATERIALS

A. Sand-Portland Cement Grout: ANSI A108.10, consisting of white or gray cement and white or colored aggregate as required to produce color indicated.

B. High-Performance Tile Grout: ANSI A118.7.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
b. Bostik, Inc.
c. C-Cure.
d. H.B. Fuller Construction Products Inc. / TEC.
e. LATICRETE SUPERCAP, LLC.

2. MAPEI CorporationPolymer Type:

a. Ethylene vinyl acetate or acrylic additive, in dry, redispersible form, prepackaged with other dry ingredients.
b. Acrylic resin or styrene-butadiene rubber in liquid-latex form for addition to prepackaged dry-grout mix.

2.9 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Underlayments and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer of tile-setting materials for installations indicated.

B. Vapor-Retarder Membrane: Polyethylene sheeting, ASTM D4397, 4.0 mils thick.

C. Metal Edge Strips: Angle or L-shaped, height to match tile and setting-bed thickness, metallic or combination of metal and PVC or neoprene base, designed specifically for flooring applications; stainless steel, ASTM A276/A276M or ASTM A666, 300 Series exposed-edge material.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Blanke Corporation.
b. Ceramic Tool Company, Inc.
c. Schluter Systems L.P.

D. Tile Cleaner: A neutral cleaner capable of removing soil and residue without harming tile and grout surfaces, specifically approved for materials and installations indicated by tile and grout manufacturers.

E. Floor Sealer: Manufacturer's standard product for sealing grout joints and that does not change color or appearance of grout.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Bonsal American, an Oldcastle company.
b. Custom Building Products.
c. Jamo Inc.
d. Southern Grouts & Mortars, Inc.
e. Summitville Tiles, Inc.

2.10 MIXING MORTARS AND GROUT

A. Mix mortars and grouts to comply with referenced standards and mortar and grout manufacturers' written instructions.

B. Add materials, water, and additives in accurate proportions.

C. Obtain and use type of mixing equipment, mixer speeds, mixing containers, mixing time, and other procedures to produce mortars and grouts of uniform quality with optimum performance characteristics for installations indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions where tile will be installed, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that substrates for setting tile are firm; dry; clean; free of coatings that are incompatible with tile-setting materials, including curing compounds and other substances that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone; and comply with flatness tolerances required by ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.
2. Verify that concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar comply with surface finish requirements in ANSI A108.01 for installations indicated.

    a. Verify that surfaces that received a steel trowel finish have been mechanically scarified.
    b. Verify that protrusions, bumps, and ridges have been removed by sanding or grinding.

3. Verify that installation of grounds, anchors, recessed frames, electrical and mechanical units of work, and similar items located in or behind tile has been completed.
4. Verify that joints and cracks in tile substrates are coordinated with tile joint locations; if not coordinated, adjust joint locations in consultation with Architect.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in concrete substrates for tile floors installed with thinset mortar with trowelable leveling and patching compound specifically recommended by tile-setting material manufacturer.

B. Where indicated, prepare substrates to receive waterproof membrane by applying a reinforced mortar bed that complies with ANSI A108.1A and is sloped 1/4 inch per foot toward drains.

C. Blending: For tile exhibiting color variations, verify that tile has been factory blended and packaged so tile units taken from one package show same range of colors as those taken from other packages and match approved Samples. If not factory blended, either return to manufacturer or blend tiles at Project site before installing.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CERAMIC TILE

A. Comply with TCNA's "Handbook for Ceramic, Glass, and Stone Tile Installation" for TCNA installation methods specified in tile installation schedules. Comply with parts of the ANSI A108 series "Specifications for Installation of Ceramic Tile" that are referenced in TCNA installation methods, specified in tile installation schedules, and apply to types of setting and grouting materials used.

1. For the following installations, follow procedures in the ANSI A108 series of tile installation standards for providing 95 percent mortar coverage:
    a. Tile floors in wet areas.
    b. Tile floors consisting of tiles 8 by 8 inches or larger.
    c. Tile floors consisting of rib-backed tiles.

B. Extend tile work into recesses and under or behind equipment and fixtures to form complete covering without interruptions unless otherwise indicated. Terminate work neatly at obstructions, edges, and corners without disrupting pattern or joint alignments.

C. Accurately form intersections and returns. Perform cutting and drilling of tile without marring visible surfaces. Carefully grind cut edges of tile abutting trim, finish, or built-in items for straight aligned joints. Fit tile closely to electrical outlets, piping, fixtures, and other penetrations so plates, collars, or covers overlap tile.

D. Provide manufacturer's standard trim shapes where necessary to eliminate exposed tile edges.

E. Where accent tile differs in thickness from field tile, vary setting-bed thickness so that tiles are flush.

F. Jointing Pattern: Lay tile in grid pattern unless otherwise indicated. Lay out tile work and center tile fields in both directions in each space or on each wall area. Lay out tile work to minimize the use of pieces that are less than half of a tile. Provide uniform joint widths unless otherwise indicated.

1. For tile mounted in sheets, make joints between tile sheets same width as joints within tile sheets so joints between sheets are not apparent in finished work.
2. Where adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim are specified or indicated to be same size, align joints.
3. Where tiles are specified or indicated to be whole integer multiples of adjoining tiles on floor, base, walls, or trim, align joints unless otherwise indicated.

G. Joint Widths: Unless otherwise indicated, install tile with the following joint widths:
1. Porcelain Tile: 1/8 inch.

H. Lay out tile wainscots to dimensions indicated or to next full tile beyond dimensions indicated.

I. Expansion Joints: Provide expansion joints and other sealant-filled joints, including control, contraction, and isolation joints, where indicated. Form joints during installation of setting materials, mortar beds, and tile. Do not saw-cut joints after installing tiles.

1. Where joints occur in concrete substrates, locate joints in tile surfaces directly above them.

J. Stone Thresholds: Install stone thresholds in same type of setting bed as adjacent floor unless otherwise indicated.

1. At locations where mortar bed (thickset) would otherwise be exposed above adjacent floor finishes, set thresholds in modified dry-set or improved modified dry-set mortar (thinset).
2. Do not extend waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane under thresholds set in standard dry-set, modified dry-set or improved modified dry-set mortar. Fill joints between such thresholds and adjoining tile set on cleavage membrane waterproof membrane or crack isolation membrane with elastomeric sealant.

K. Metal Edge Strips: Install [at locations indicated] [where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with top of tile] [where exposed edge of tile flooring meets carpet, wood, or other flooring that finishes flush with or below top of tile and no threshold is indicated].

3.4 INSTALLATION OF WATERPROOF MEMBRANES

A. Install waterproof membrane to comply with ANSI A108.13 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce waterproof membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.

B. Allow waterproof membrane to cure and verify by testing that it is watertight before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF CRACK ISOLATION MEMBRANES

A. Install crack isolation membrane to comply with ANSI A108.17 and manufacturer's written instructions to produce membrane of uniform thickness that is bonded securely to substrate.

B. Allow crack isolation membrane to cure before installing tile or setting materials over it.

3.6 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove and replace tile that is damaged or that does not match adjoining tile. Provide new matching units, installed as specified and in a manner to eliminate evidence of replacement.

B. Cleaning: On completion of placement and grouting, clean all ceramic tile surfaces so they are free of foreign matter.

1. Remove grout residue from tile as soon as possible.
2. Clean grout smears and haze from tile according to tile and grout manufacturer's written instructions but no sooner than 10 days after installation. Use only cleaners recommended by tile and grout manufacturers and only after determining that cleaners are safe to use by testing on samples of tile and other surfaces to be cleaned. Protect metal surfaces and plumbing fixtures from effects of cleaning. Flush surfaces with clean water before and after cleaning.

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed tile work with kraft paper or other heavy covering during construction period to prevent staining, damage, and wear. If recommended by tile manufacturer, apply coat of neutral protective cleaner to completed tile walls and floors.

B. Prohibit foot and wheel traffic from tiled floors for at least seven days after grouting is completed.

C. Before final inspection, remove protective coverings and rinse neutral protective cleaner from tile surfaces.

END OF SECTION 09 30 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 51 23 – ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Acoustical tiles for ceilings.
2. Concealed suspension systems.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 09 26 16 Non-Structural Metal Framing

C. Products furnished, but not installed under this Section, include anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices to be cast in concrete.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified, 6-inches-in size.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For components with factory-applied color finishes.

D. Samples for Verification: For each component indicated and for each exposed finish required, prepared on Samples of size indicated below.

1. Acoustical Tile: Set of full-size Samples of each type, color, pattern, and texture.
2. Concealed Suspension-System Members: 6-inch- long Sample of each type.
3. Exposed Moldings and Trim: Set of 6-inch- long Samples of each type and color.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Ceiling suspension-system members.
2. Method of attaching hangers to building structure.

    a. Furnish layouts for cast-in-place anchors, clips, and other ceiling attachment devices whose installation is specified in other Sections.

3. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
4. Ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings.
5. Minimum Drawing Scale: 1/8 inch = 1 foot.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Product Test Reports: For each acoustical tile ceiling, for tests performed by a qualified testing agency.

D. Evaluation Reports: For each acoustical tile ceiling suspension system and anchor and fastener type, from ICC-ES.

E. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For finishes to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Acoustical Ceiling Units: Full-size tiles equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.
2. Suspension-System Components: Quantity of each concealed grid and exposed

component equal to 2 percent of quantity installed.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program (NVLAP) for testing indicated.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution. Build mockup of typical ceiling area as shown on Drawings.
   1. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver acoustical tiles, suspension-system components, and accessories to Project site in original, unopened packages and store them in a fully enclosed, conditioned space where they will be protected against damage from moisture, humidity, temperature extremes, direct sunlight, surface contamination, and other causes.

B. Before installing acoustical tiles, permit them to reach room temperature and a stabilized moisture content.

C. Handle acoustical tiles carefully to avoid chipping edges or damaging units in any way.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Do not install acoustical tile ceilings until spaces are enclosed and weatherproof, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above ceilings is complete, and ambient temperature and humidity conditions are maintained at the levels indicated for Project when occupied for its intended use.

   1. Pressurized Plenums: Operate ventilation system for not less than 48 hours before beginning acoustical tile ceiling installation.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing

agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: Comply with ASTM E 1264 for Class A materials.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

B. Fire-Resistance Ratings: Comply with ASTM E 119; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Indicate design designations from UL's "Fire Resistance Directory" or from the listings of another qualified testing agency.

2.2 ACOUSTICAL TILES, GENERAL

A. Low-Emitting Materials: Acoustical tile ceilings shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Source Limitations:

1. Acoustical Ceiling Tile: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.
2. Suspension System: Obtain each type from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Acoustical Tile Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard tiles of configuration indicated that comply with ASTM E 1264 classifications as designated by types, patterns, acoustical ratings, and light reflectances unless otherwise indicated.

1. Mounting Method for Measuring NRC: Type E-400; plenum mounting in which face of test specimen is 15-3/4 inches away from test surface according to ASTM E 795.

D. Acoustical Tile Colors and Patterns: Match appearance characteristics indicated for each product type.

1. Where appearance characteristics of acoustical tiles are indicated by referencing pattern designations in ASTM E 1264 and not manufacturers' proprietary product designations, provide products selected by Architect from each manufacturer's full range that comply with requirements indicated for type, pattern, color, light reflectance, acoustical performance, edge detail, and size.

2.3 ACOUSTICAL TILES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation.
3. United States Gypsum Company.

B. Classification: Provide tiles complying with ASTM E 1264 for type, form, and pattern as follows:

1. Pattern: See Finish Schedule on Drawings

C. Color: White

D. LR: Not less than 0.75.

E. NRC: Not less than 0.60.

F. CAC: Not less than 30.

G. AC: Not less than 190.

H. Edge/Joint Detail: Square, kerfed and rabbeted; tongue and grooved; or butt.

I. Thickness: 3/4 inch.

J. Modular Size: 24 by 24 inches.

2.4 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEMS, GENERAL

A. Metal Suspension-System Standard: Provide manufacturer's standard metal suspension systems of types, structural classifications, and finishes indicated that comply with applicable requirements in ASTM C 635/C 635M.

B. Attachment Devices: Size for five times the design load indicated in ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung," unless otherwise indicated. Comply with seismic design requirements.

1. Anchors in Concrete: Anchors of type and material indicated below, with holes or loops for attaching hangers of type indicated and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to five times that imposed by ceiling construction,

as determined by testing according to ASTM E 488 or ASTM E 1512 as applicable, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

a. Type: Postinstalled expansion anchors.
b. Corrosion Protection: Stainless-steel components complying with ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594, Group 1 Alloy 304 or 316 for bolts; Alloy 304 or 316 for anchors.

2. Power-Actuated Fasteners in Concrete: Fastener system of type suitable for application indicated, fabricated from corrosion-resistant materials, with clips or other accessory devices for attaching hangers of type indicated, and with capability to sustain, without failure, a load equal to **10** times that imposed by ceiling construction, as determined by testing according to ASTM E 1190, conducted by a qualified testing and inspecting agency.

C. Wire Hangers, Braces, and Ties: Provide wires complying with the following requirements:

1. Zinc-Coated, Carbon-Steel Wire: ASTM A 641/A 641M, Class 1 zinc coating, soft temper.
2. Size: Select wire diameter so its stress at three times hanger design load (ASTM C 635/C 635M, Table 1, "Direct Hung") will be less than yield stress of wire, but provide not less than 0.135-inch- diameter wire.

D. Hanger Rods: Mild steel, zinc coated or protected with rust-inhibitive paint.

E. Angle Hangers: Angles with legs not less than 7/8 inch wide; formed with 0.04-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet complying with ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating designation; with bolted connections and 5/16-inch- diameter bolts.

2.5 METAL SUSPENSION SYSTEM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. United States Gypsum Company.

B. Direct-Hung, Double-Web**,** Suspension System: Main and cross runners roll formed from and capped with cold-rolled steel sheet, prepainted, electrolytically zinc coated, or hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A 653/A 653M, G30 coating designation.

1. Structural Classification: Intermediate-duty system.

2. Access: Downward and with initial access openings of size indicated below and located throughout ceiling within each module formed by main and cross runners, with additional access available by progressively removing remaining acoustical tiles.

    a. Initial Access Opening: In each module, 24 by 24 inches.

2.6 METAL EDGE MOLDINGS AND TRIM

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.
2. CertainTeed Corporation.
3. Chicago Metallic Corporation.
4. United States Gypsum Company.

B. Roll-Formed, Sheet-Metal Edge Moldings and Trim: Type and profile indicated or, if not indicated, manufacturer's standard moldings for edges and penetrations complying with seismic design requirements; formed from sheet metal of same material, finish, and color as that used for exposed flanges of suspension-system runners.

1. Provide manufacturer's standard edge moldings that fit acoustical tile edge details and suspension systems indicated and that match width and configuration of exposed runners unless otherwise indicated.
2. For circular penetrations of ceiling, provide edge moldings fabricated to diameter required to fit penetration exactly.

C. Extruded-Aluminum Edge Moldings and Trim: Where indicated, provide manufacturer's extruded-aluminum edge moldings and trim of profile indicated or referenced by manufacturer's designations, including splice plates, corner pieces, and attachment and other clips and complying with seismic design requirements and the following:

1. Aluminum Alloy: Alloy and temper recommended by aluminum producer and finisher for type of use and finish indicated and with not less than the strength and durability properties of aluminum extrusions complying with ASTM B 221 for Alloy and Temper 6063-T5.
2. Clear Anodic Finish: AAMA 611, AA-M12C22A31, Class II, 0.010 mm or thicker.
3. Baked-Enamel or Powder-Coat Finish: Minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils. Comply with ASTM C 635/C 635M and coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying and baking finish.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Acoustical Tile Adhesive: Type recommended by acoustical tile manufacturer, bearing UL label for Class 0-25 flame spread.

1. Adhesive shall comply with the testing and product requirements of the California Department of Health Services' "Standard Practice for the Testing of Volatile Organic Emissions from Various Sources Using Small-Scale Environmental Chambers."

B. Staples: 5/16-inch- long, divergent-point staples.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, including structural framing and substrates to which acoustical tile ceilings attach or abut, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements specified in this and other Sections that affect ceiling installation and anchorage and for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine acoustical tiles before installation. Reject acoustical tiles that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Testing Substrates: Before installing adhesively applied tiles on wet-placed substrates such as cast-in-place concrete or plaster, test and verify that moisture level is below tile manufacturer's recommended limits.

B. Measure each ceiling area and establish layout of acoustical tiles to balance border widths at opposite edges of each ceiling. Avoid using less-than-half-width tiles at borders, and comply with layout shown on reflected ceiling plans.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF SUSPENDED ACOUSTICAL TILE CEILINGS

A. General: Install acoustical panel ceilings to comply with ASTM C 636/C 636M and seismic design requirements indicated, according to manufacturer's written instructions and CISCA's "Ceiling Systems Handbook."

1. Fire-Rated Assembly: Install fire-rated ceiling systems according to tested fire-rated design.

B. Suspend ceiling hangers from building's structural members and as follows:

1. Install hangers plumb and free from contact with insulation or other objects within ceiling plenum that are not part of supporting structure or of ceiling suspension system.
2. Splay hangers only where required and, if permitted with fire-resistance-rated ceilings, to miss obstructions; offset resulting horizontal forces by bracing, countersplaying, or other equally effective means.
3. Where width of ducts and other construction within ceiling plenum produces hanger spacings that interfere with location of hangers at spacings required to support standard suspension-system members, install supplemental suspension members and hangers in form of trapezes or equivalent devices.
4. Secure wire hangers to ceiling suspension members and to supports above with a minimum of three tight turns. Connect hangers directly either to structures or to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for substrate and that will not deteriorate or otherwise fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
5. Secure flat, angle, channel, and rod hangers to structure, including intermediate framing members, by attaching to inserts, eye screws, or other devices that are secure and appropriate for both the structure to which hangers are attached and the type of hanger involved. Install hangers in a manner that will not cause them to deteriorate or fail due to age, corrosion, or elevated temperatures.
6. Do not support ceilings directly from permanent metal forms or floor deck. Fasten hangers to cast-in-place hanger inserts, postinstalled mechanical or adhesive anchors, or power-actuated fasteners that extend through forms into concrete.
7. When steel framing does not permit installation of hanger wires at spacing required, install carrying channels or other supplemental support for attachment of hanger wires.
8. Do not attach hangers to steel deck tabs.
9. Do not attach hangers to steel roof deck. Attach hangers to structural members.
10. Space hangers not more than 48 inches o.c. along each member supported directly from hangers unless otherwise indicated; provide hangers not more than 8 inches from ends of each member.
11. Size supplemental suspension members and hangers to support ceiling loads within performance limits established by referenced standards and publications. Secure bracing wires to ceiling suspension members and to supports with a minimum of four tight turns. Suspend bracing from building's structural members as required for hangers without attaching to permanent metal forms, steel deck, or steel deck tabs. Fasten bracing wires into concrete with cast-in-

place or postinstalled anchors.

C. Install edge moldings and trim of type indicated at perimeter of acoustical tile ceiling area and where necessary to conceal edges of acoustical tiles.

1. Apply acoustical sealant in a continuous ribbon concealed on back of vertical legs of moldings before they are installed.
2. Screw attach moldings to substrate at intervals not more than 16 inches o.c. and not more than 3 inches from ends, leveling with ceiling suspension system to a tolerance of 1/8 inch in 12 feet. Miter corners accurately and connect securely.
3. Do not use exposed fasteners, including pop rivets, on moldings and trim.

D. Install suspension-system runners so they are square and securely interlocked with one another. Remove and replace dented, bent, or kinked members.

E. Arrange directionally patterned acoustical tiles as follows:

1. As indicated on reflected ceiling plans.
2. Install tiles with pattern running in one direction.

F. Install acoustical tiles in coordination with suspension system and exposed moldings and trim. Place splines or suspension-system flanges into kerfed edges so tile-to-tile joints are closed by double lap of material.

1. Fit adjoining tile to form flush, tight joints. Scribe and cut tile for accurate fit at borders and around penetrations through tile.
2. Hold tile field in compression by inserting leaf-type, spring-steel spacers between tile and moldings, spaced 12 inches o.c.
3. Protect lighting fixtures and air ducts to comply with requirements indicated for fire-resistance-rated assembly.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Compliance of seismic design.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections of completed installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners in successive stages and when installation

of ceiling suspension systems on each floor has reached 20 percent completion but no tiles have been installed. Do not proceed with installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers for the next area until test results for previously completed installations of acoustical tile ceiling hangers show compliance with requirements.

1. Within each test area, testing agency will select one of every 10 power-actuated fasteners and postinstalled anchors used to attach hangers to concrete and will test them for 200 lbf of tension; it will also select one of every two postinstalled anchors used to attach bracing wires to concrete and will test them for 440 lbf of tension.
2. When testing discovers fasteners and anchors that do not comply with requirements, testing agency will test those anchors not previously tested until 20 pass consecutively and then will resume initial testing frequency.

D. Acoustical tile ceiling hangers and anchors and fasteners will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean exposed surfaces of acoustical tile ceilings, including trim and edge moldings. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and touchup of minor finish damage. Remove and replace tiles and other ceiling components that cannot be successfully cleaned and repaired to permanently eliminate evidence of damage.

END OF SECTION 09 51 23

SECTION 09 65 13 - RESILIENT BASE AND ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Resilient Base.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Submit sample to architect for approval for each material and accessory proposed for use.

1. Include data substantiating that materials comply with requirements.
2. Care & maintenance document
3. Warranty

B. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of product indicated.

C. Samples for Verification: For each type of product indicated, in manufacturer's standard-size Samples but not less than 12 inches long, of each resilient product color, texture, and pattern required.

D. Product Schedule: For resilient products. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Plans: Submit complete as-built plans of all Work, including interface with other Work, in accordance with requirements as specified.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

B. Manufacturer Qualifications: Provide resilient wall base materials manufactured in the United States of America by a firm with a minimum of 10 years' experience with resilient rubber materials of type equivalent to those specified.

C. Provide resilient wall base, flooring materials, adhesives, accessories, and subfloor preparation products from one manufacturer to ensure color matching and compatibility.

D. The manufacturer shall be capable of providing technical training and technical field service representation.

E. Mockups: Provide resilient products with mockups specified in other Sections.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store resilient products and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within the range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive resilient products during the following time periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.

2. During installation.

3. 48 hours after installation.

B. Until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within the range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Install resilient products after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

1.8 CONSTRUCTION WASTE MANAGEMENT

A. Construction waste shall be managed in accordance with provisions of Section 017419 "Construction Waste Management and Disposal". Documentation shall be submitted to satisfy the requirements of that Section.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RESILIENT BASE: B1

A. Resilient Base:

1. Manufacturers: Provide Basis of Design products as listed in Finish Legend or approved equal in size, material, color, and pattern by one of the following:

a. Flexco, Inc.

b. Tarkett

c. Armstrong World Industries, Inc.

B. Resilient Base Standard: Meets the performance requirements for the following Industry Standards:

1. ASTM F1861, Standard Specification for Resilient Wall Base, Type TP (rubber, thermoplastic), Group 2 (layered), Style A&B (straight, cove)
2. ASTM E84, Standard Test Method for Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials, Class A
3. ASTM E648 (NFPA 253), Standard Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux, Class 1, >0.45 W/cm^2
    a. ASTM E662 (NFPA 258), Standard Test Method for Smoke Density, Passes, <450
    b. ASTM F137, Standard Test Method for Flexibility of Resilient Flooring Materials protocols, Passes
    c. ASTM F386, Standard Test Method for Thickness of Resilient Flooring Materials Having Flat Surfaces, Passes

d. ASTM F925, Standard Test Method for Resistance to Chemicals of Resilient Flooring, Excellent
e. ASTM F1515, Standard Test Method for Measuring Light Stability of Resilient Flooring protocols, Passes

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA):

f. NFPA 253, Test Method for Critical Radiant Flux of Floor Covering Systems Using a Radiant Energy Source
g. NFPA 255, Standard Method of Test of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials
h. NFPA 258, Test Method for Specific Density of Smoke Generated by Solid Materials

CAN/ULC-S102.2

i. FSR 10, SDS 60

C. Material Requirement: Type TP (thermoplastic rubber)].

1. Manufacturing Method: Group II (layered)].
2. Style: Resolute, Provide throughout.

D. Minimum Thickness: 0.375 inch.

1. 6 inches.
2. Profile: Resolute
3. Lengths: 40’ rolls.
4. Outside Corners: Rubber Corner Blocks
5. Inside Corners: Rubber Corner Blocks
6. Finish: Satin
7. Color: True White 046

E. Installation Materials

1. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, Portland cement based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by manufacturer for applications indicated.

2. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by manufacturer to suit resilient products and substrate conditions indicated.

3. Recommended Adhesive Products:

    a. Excelsior WB-600 Acrylic Wall Base Adhesive provided by Flexco
        i. Unit Size: 30 oz. cartridge, 1 Gallon & 4 Gallon
        ii. Coverage: 30 – 70 linear feet per cartridge, 180 – 340 linear feet per gallon
        iii. Standard installations over porous backgrounds
        iv. 100 % solids, solvent free and low VOCs
        v. Hard set adhesive adding to dimensionally stable materials
        vi. Excellent sheer strength

    b. Excelsior C-630 Contact Adhesive provided by Flexco
        i. Unit Size: 1 Quart
        ii. Coverage: 20 – 40 Square Feet per unit / 120 – 140 Linear Feet per unit
        iii. Standard installations over porous and non-porous substrates
        iv. Hard set adhesive adding to dimensionally stable materials
        v. Excellent sheer strength
        vi. Superior bond strength
        vii. Great for environments with topical moisture

4. Accessories: Items needed to complete the installation. Recommended accessory products:

    a. Rubber Corner Blocks (Inside and Outside corners)

    b. Maintenance Materials: Proper maintenance of the installation is critical to the long-term performance of the wall base products being specified. Using the appropriate chemicals to maintain the product according to the environment in which it is specified is critical. Recommend maintenance products:

        i. Excelsior NC-900, All-Purpose Neutral pH Cleaner provided by Flexco

            a. For initial maintenance

            b. For daily and routine maintenance

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3 GENERAL

3.1 General Contractor Responsibilities:

A. Supply a safe, climate controlled building as detailed by Manufacturer's Installation Instructions and Technical Data.

B. Ensure substrate/background meets the requirements of ASTM F1861, Flexco Installation Instructions and Technical Data and Excelsior Installation Instructions and Technical Data.

C. Provide a secure storage area that is maintained permanently or temporarily at normal operating temperature and humidity conditions between 65° F and 85° F and between 40% and 65% relative humidity, for at least 48-hours prior to and during the application of the wall base, so the contractor can acclimate the rubber base materials per manufacturer's instructions.

D. Provide an installation area that is weather tight and maintained either permanently or temporarily at ambient service temperature and humidity. Normal operating temperature and humidity conditions are between 65° F and 85° F and between 40% and 65% relative humidity, for at least 48-hours prior to and during the application of the wall base per the manufacturer's instructions.

E. Ensure areas with direct prolonged exposure to sunlight are protected with protective UVA/UVB restrictive coatings or films.

F. In areas where the walls are subject to direct sunlight through doors or windows, the doors and windows should be covered using blinds, curtains, cardboard or similar for the time of the installation and 72-hours after the installation to allow the adhesive to cure. Note: These areas should be installed using wet adhesives only.

G. Conduct initial maintenance prior to final usage per the manufacturer's Care & Maintenance Documents. Do not conduct initial maintenance until the adhesive has cured per the adhesive technical data.

H. Provide trained installers that are professional, licensed, insured and acceptable to the manufacturer of resilient rubber wall base materials.

I. Ensure installers or installation teams meet one of the following requirements:

1. Have completed INSTALL (International Standards & Training Alliance)
2. CFI (Certified Floorcovering Installers) training programs
3. Certified by INSTALL or CFI.
4. Are being supervised by Project Managers or Field Supervisors that are INSTALL (International Standards & Training Alliance) certified, CFI (Certified Floorcovering Installers) Certified and/or an FCICA (The Flooring Contractors Association) CIM (Certified Installation Manager).

J. Follow all requirements in the appropriate manufacturer's Installation Instructions and Technical Data, Care & Maintenance Documents, Warranties and other technical documents or instructions.

3.2 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of resilient products.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.3 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound and remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

C. Do not install resilient products until they are the same temperature as the space where they are to be installed.

1. Move resilient products and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed at least 48 hours in advance of installation.

D. Sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient products immediately before installation.

3.4 RESILIENT BASE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing resilient base.

B. Apply resilient base to walls, columns, pilasters, casework and cabinets in toe spaces, and other permanent fixtures in rooms and areas where base is required.

C. Install resilient base in lengths as long as practicable without gaps at seams and with tops of adjacent pieces aligned.

D. Tightly adhere resilient base to substrate throughout length of each piece, with base in continuous contact with horizontal and vertical substrates.

E. Do not stretch resilient base during installation.

F. On masonry surfaces or other similar irregular substrates, fill voids along the top edge of resilient base with manufacturer's recommended adhesive filler material.

G. Preformed Corners: Install preformed corners before installing straight pieces.

H. Job-Formed Corners:

1. Outside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible. Form without producing discoloration (whitening) at bends.
2. Inside Corners: Use straight pieces of maximum lengths possible.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protection of resilient products.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing resilient product installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from exposed surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect resilient products from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from

construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Cover resilient products until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 65 19 - RESILIENT TILE FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Vinyl composition floor tile.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of resilient floor tile.

   1. Include floor tile layouts, edges, columns, doorways, enclosing partitions, built-in furniture, cabinets, and cutouts.
   2. Show details of special patterns.

C. Samples: Full-size units of each color, texture, and pattern of floor tile required.

   1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of floor tile indicated.

E. Samples for Verification: Full-size units of each color and pattern of floor tile required.

   1. For heat-welding bead, manufacturer's standard-size Samples, but not less than 9 inches long, of each color required.

F. Welded-Seam Samples: For seamless-installation technique indicated and for each floor covering product, color, and pattern required; with seam running lengthwise and in center of 6- by-9-inch Sample applied to a rigid backing and prepared by Installer for this Project.

G. Product Schedule: For floor tile. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of floor tile to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Floor Tile: Furnish one box for every 50 boxes or fraction thereof, of each type, color, and pattern of floor tile installed.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An entity that employs installers and supervisors who are competent in techniques required by manufacturer for floor tile installation and seaming method indicated.

1. Engage an installer who employs workers for this Project who are trained or certified by floor tile manufacturer for installation techniques required.

B. Mockups: Build mockups to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Coordinate mockups in this Section with mockups specified in other Sections.

a. Size: Minimum 100 sq. ft. for each type, color, and pattern in locations directed by Architect.

2. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
3. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store floor tile and installation materials in dry spaces protected from the weather, with ambient temperatures maintained within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 50 deg F or more than 90 deg F. Store floor tiles on flat surfaces.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 70 deg F or more than 95 deg F, in spaces to receive floor tile during the following periods:

1. 48 hours before installation.
2. During installation.
3. 48 hours after installation.

B. After installation and until Substantial Completion, maintain ambient temperatures within range recommended by manufacturer, but not less than 55 deg F or more than 95 deg F.

C. Close spaces to traffic during floor tile installation.

D. Close spaces to traffic for 48 hours after floor tile installation.

E. Install floor tile after other finishing operations, including painting, have been completed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: For resilient floor tile, as determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E648 or NFPA 253 by a qualified testing agency.

1. Critical Radiant Flux Classification: Class I, not less than 0.45 W/sq. cm.

2. Class: As indicated by product designations.

2.2 VINYL TILE LVP 1

A. Basis of Design Product: Luxury Viny Composition Floor Tile subject to compliance with the requirements, provide product indicted on Drawings by Milliken or approved equal in size, pattern, pile, and color by one of the following:

1. J +J
2. Mohawk Flooring
3. Tarkett

B. Thickness: 0.78 inch.

C. Size: 7 by 48 inches.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Trowelable Leveling and Patching Compounds: Latex-modified, portland-cement-based or blended hydraulic-cement-based formulation provided or approved by floor tile manufacturer for applications indicated.

B. Adhesives: Water-resistant type recommended by floor tile and adhesive manufacturers to suit floor tile and substrate conditions indicated.

C. Seamless-Installation Accessories:

1. Heat-Welding Bead: Manufacturer's solid-strand product for heat welding seams.

   Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range to contrast with floor tile or to Match floor tile.

2. Chemical-Bonding Compound: Manufacturer's product for chemically bonding seams.

D. Floor Polish: Provide protective, liquid floor-polish products recommended by floor tile manufacturer.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

1. Verify that finishes of substrates comply with tolerances and other requirements specified in other Sections and that substrates are free of cracks, ridges, depressions, scale, and foreign deposits that might interfere with adhesion of floor tile.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare substrates according to floor tile manufacturer's written instructions to ensure adhesion of resilient products.

B. Concrete Substrates: Prepare according to ASTM F710.

1. Verify that substrates are dry and free of curing compounds, sealers, and hardeners.
2. Remove substrate coatings and other substances that are incompatible with adhesives and that contain soap, wax, oil, or silicone, using mechanical methods recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Do not use solvents.
3. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Perform tests recommended by floor tile manufacturer. Proceed with installation only after substrate alkalinity falls within range on pH scale recommended by manufacturer in writing, but not less than 5 or more than 9 pH.
4. Moisture Testing: Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 200 sq. ft., and perform no fewer than three tests in each installation area and with test areas evenly spaced in installation areas.

a. Anhydrous Calcium Chloride Test: ASTM F1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours.
b. Relative Humidity Test: Using in-situ probes, ASTM F2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative humidity level measurement.

C. Access Flooring Panels: Remove protective film of oil or other coating using method recommended by access flooring manufacturer.

D. Fill cracks, holes, and depressions in substrates with trowelable leveling and patching compound; remove bumps and ridges to produce a uniform and smooth substrate.

E. Do not install floor tiles until materials are the same temperature as space where they are to be installed.

1. At least 48 hours in advance of installation, move resilient floor tile and installation materials into spaces where they will be installed.

F. Immediately before installation, sweep and vacuum clean substrates to be covered by resilient floor tile.

3.3 FLOOR TILE INSTALLATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for installing floor tile.

B. Lay out floor tiles from center marks established with principal walls, discounting minor offsets, so tiles at opposite edges of room are of equal width. Adjust as necessary to avoid using cut widths that equal less than one-half tile at perimeter.

1. Lay tiles in pattern indicated.

C. Match floor tiles for color and pattern by selecting tiles from cartons in the same sequence as manufactured and packaged, if so numbered. Discard broken, cracked, chipped, or deformed tiles.

1. Lay tiles in pattern of colors and sizes indicated.

D. Scribe, cut, and fit floor tiles to butt neatly and tightly to vertical surfaces and permanent fixtures including built-in furniture, cabinets, pipes, outlets, and door frames.

E. Extend floor tiles into toe spaces, door reveals, closets, and similar openings. Extend floor tiles to center of door openings.

F. Maintain reference markers, holes, and openings that are in place or marked for future cutting by repeating on floor tiles as marked on substrates. Use chalk or other nonpermanent marking device.

G. Install floor tiles on covers for telephone and electrical ducts, building expansion-joint covers, and similar items in installation areas. Maintain overall continuity of color and pattern between pieces of tile installed on covers and adjoining tiles. Tightly adhere tile edges to substrates that abut covers and to cover perimeters.

H. Adhere floor tiles to substrates using a full spread of adhesive applied to substrate to

produce a completed installation without open cracks, voids, raising and puckering at joints, telegraphing of adhesive spreader marks, and other surface imperfections.

I. Seamless Installation:

1. Heat-Welded Seams: Comply with ASTM F1516. Rout joints and heat weld with welding bead to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare, weld, and finish seams to produce surfaces flush with adjoining flooring surfaces.
2. Chemically Bonded Seams: Bond seams with chemical-bonding compound to fuse sections permanently into a seamless flooring installation. Prepare seams and apply compound to produce tightly fitted seams without gaps, overlays, or excess bonding compound on flooring surfaces.

3.4 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning and protecting floor tile.

B. Perform the following operations immediately after completing floor tile installation:

1. Remove adhesive and other blemishes from surfaces.
2. Sweep and vacuum surfaces thoroughly.
3. Damp-mop surfaces to remove marks and soil.

C. Protect floor tile from mars, marks, indentations, and other damage from construction operations and placement of equipment and fixtures during remainder of construction period.

D. Floor Polish: Remove soil, adhesive, and blemishes from floor tile surfaces before applying liquid floor polish.

E. Cover floor tile until Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 65 19

PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 67 23 – RESINOUS FLOORING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes:
   1. High-performance resinous flooring systems.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.
B. Installer Certificates for Qualification: Signed by manufacturer stating that installers comply with specified requirements.
C. Material Certificates: For each resinous flooring component, from manufacturer.
D. Maintenance Data: For maintenance manuals.
E. Samples: Submit two 6" X 6" samples of each resinous flooring system applied to a rigid backing. Provide sample which is a true representation of proposed field applied finish. Provide sample color and texture for approval from Owner in writing or approved by General Contractor prior to installation.
F. Product Schedule: For resinous flooring.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of flooring systems required for this Project.
   1. Engage an installer who is approved in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer as qualified to apply resinous flooring systems indicated.
   2. Installer Letter of Qualification: Installer to provide letter stating that they have been in business for at least 5 years and listing 5 projects in the last 2 years of similar scope. For each project provide: project name, location, date of installation, contact information, size of project, and manufacturer of materials with system information.
B. Source Limitations: Obtain primary resinous flooring materials, including primers, resins, hardening agents, grouting coats, and topcoats, from single source from single manufacturer. Provide secondary materials, including patching and fill material, joint sealant, and repair materials, of type and from source recommended by manufacturer of primary materials.
C. Pre-installation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site before work and mockups begin.

D. Mockups: Apply mockups to verify selections made under sample submittals and to demonstrate aesthetic effects and set quality standards for materials and execution. Do not cover up mockup area.
   1. Apply full-thickness mockups on 16 square foot floor area selected by Architect.
   2. Finish surfaces for verification of products, color, texture, and sheen.
   3. Simulate finished lighting conditions for Architect's review of mockups.
   4. Approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.
   5. Mockup shall demonstrate desired slip resistance for review and approval by Owner's representative in writing.

1.4 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver materials in original packages and containers, with seals unbroken, bearing manufacturer's labels indicating brand name and directions for storage and mixing with other components.
   1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
   2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.5 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions for substrate temperature, ambient temperature, moisture, ventilation, and other conditions affecting resinous flooring application.
B. Lighting: Provide permanent lighting or, if permanent lighting is not in place, simulate permanent lighting conditions during resinous flooring application.
C. Close spaces to traffic during resinous flooring application and for not less than 24 hours after application unless manufacturer recommends a longer period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by:
   1. The Sherwin Williams Company, Cleveland, OH. swflooring@sherwin.com

B. Resuflor Topcoat Metallic, 0.75mm – 1.0mm nominal thickness.
   1. Primer: Resuflor MPE at 400-500 sq. ft. per gallon.
   2. Pigmented Basecoat: Resuflor MPE at 107 sq. ft. per gallon.
   3. Body Coat: Resuflor MPE Clear with 4-8 fluid oz. Metallic Pigment per gallon spread at 80-100 sq. ft. per gallon.
   4. Topcoat: Resutile HTS at 500 sq. ft. per gallon.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. VOC Content of Resinous Flooring: Provide resinous flooring systems, for use inside the weatherproofing system, that comply with the following limits for VOC content when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24)].
   1. Resinous Flooring: 100 g/L.

2.3 HIGH-PERFORMANCE RESINOUS FLOORING

A. Resinous Flooring: Abrasion-, impact- and chemical-resistant, high-performance, resin-based, monolithic floor surfacing designed to produce a seamless floor.
B. System Characteristics:
   1. Color and Pattern: As indicated from manufacturers listed above.
   2. Slip Resistance: Provide slip resistant finish.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Inspection: Prior to commencing Work, thoroughly examine all underlying and adjoining work, surfaces and conditions upon which Work is in any way dependent for perfect results. Report all conditions which affect Work. No "waiver of responsibility" for incomplete, inadequate or defective underlaying and adjoining work, surfaces and conditions will be considered, unless notice of such unsatisfactory conditions has been filed and agreed to in writing before Work begins. Commencement of Work constitutes acceptance of surfaces.
B. Surface Preparation: Remove all surface contamination, loose or weakly adherent particles, laitance, grease, oil, curing compounds, paint, dust and debris by blast track method or approved mechanical means (acid etch not allowed). If surface is questionable try a test patch. Create a minimum surface profile for the system specified in accordance with the methods described in ICRI No. 03732 to achieve profile numbers as follows:
C.

1.	**Thin film, to 10 mils**	**CSP-1 to CSP-3**
2.	Thin and medium films, 10 to 40 mils	CSP-3 to CSP-5
3.	Self-leveling mortars, to 3/16"	CSP-4 to CSP-6
4.	Mortars and laminates, to 1/4" or more	CSP-5 to CSP-10

D. Verify that concrete substrates are dry and moisture-vapor emissions are within acceptable levels according to manufacturer's written instructions.
   1. Moisture Testing: Perform tests indicated below.
      a. Calcium Chloride Test: Perform anhydrous calcium chloride test per ASTM F 1869. Proceed with installation only after substrates have maximum

moisture-vapor-emission rate of 3 lb of water/1000 sq. ft. in 24 hours. Perform tests so that each test area does not exceed 1000 sq. ft. and perform 3 tests for the first 1000 sq. ft. and one additional test for every additional 1000 sq ft.

b. In-Situ Probe Test: Perform relative-humidity test using in-situ probes per ASTM F 2170. Proceed with installation only after substrates have a maximum 75 percent relative-humidity-level measurement.

3.2 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

A. All applicators and all other personnel in the area of the RF installation shall take all required and necessary safety precautions. All manufacturers' installation instructions shall be implicitly instructions shall be implicitly followed.
B. Repair damaged and deteriorated concrete according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
C. Alkalinity and Adhesion Testing: Verify that concrete substrates have pH within acceptable range. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer. Proceed with application only after substrates pass testing.
D. Resinous Materials: Mix components and prepare materials according to resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.
E. Use patching and fill material to fill holes and depressions in substrates according to manufacturer's written instructions.
F. Treat control joints and other nonmoving substrate cracks to prevent cracks from reflecting through resinous flooring according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.3 APPLICATIONS

A. Install resinous floor over properly prepared concrete surface in strict accordance with the manufacturer's directions.
   1. Install the primer and/or base coats over thoroughly cleaned and prepared concrete.
   2. Install topcoat over flooring after excess aggregate has been removed.
   3. Maintain a slab temperature of 60°F to 80°F for 24 hours minimum before applying floor topping, or as instructed by manufacturer.
B. Apply components of resinous flooring system according to manufacturer's written instructions to produce a uniform, monolithic wearing surface of thickness indicated.
   1. Coordinate application of components to provide optimum adhesion of resinous flooring system to substrate, and optimum intercoat adhesion.
   2. Cure resinous flooring components according to manufacturer's written instructions. Prevent contamination during application and curing processes.
   3. At substrate expansion and isolation joints, comply with resinous flooring manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Sealant: Saw cut resinous floor topping at expansion joints in concrete slab. Fill sawcuts with sealant prior to final seal coat application. Follow manufacturer's written recommendations.
D. Apply primer over prepared substrate at manufacturer's recommended spreading rate.
E. Slip Resistant Finish: Provide grit for slip resistance.
F. Apply topcoats in number indicated for flooring system and at spreading rates recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.4 COMPLETED WORK

A. Cleaning: Upon completion of the Work, clean up and remove from the premises surplus materials, tools, appliances, empty cans, cartons and rubbish resulting from the Work. Clean off all spattering and drippings, and all resulting stains.
B. Protection: Protect Work in accordance with manufacturer's directions from damage and wear during the remainder of the construction period. Use protective methods and materials, including temporary covering, recommended in writing by resinous flooring manufacturer.
C. Contractor shall insure that coating is protected from any traffic until it is fully cured to the satisfaction of the coating manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 09 67 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 09 91 13 - EXTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Primers.
2. Finish coatings.
3. Floor sealers and paints.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 05 12 00 "Structural Steel Framing" for shop priming of metal substrates.
2. Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for shop priming metal fabrications.
3. Section 05 52 13 "Pipe and Tube Railings" for shop priming and painting pipe and tube railings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include preparation requirements and application instructions.
2. Indicate VOC content.

B. Samples for Verification: For each type of paint system and each color and gloss of topcoat.

1. Submit Samples on rigid backing, 8 inches (200 mm) square.
2. Apply coats on Samples in steps to show each coat required for system.
3. Label each coat of each Sample.
4. Label each Sample for location and application area.

C. Product Schedule: Use same designations indicated on Drawings and in the Exterior Painting Schedule to cross-reference paint systems specified in this Section. Include color designations.

1.4 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Paint Products: 5 percent, but not less than 1 gal. (3.8 L) of each material and color applied.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Mockups: Apply mockups of each paint system indicated and each color and finish selected to verify selections made under Sample submittals, to demonstrate aesthetic effects, and to set quality standards for materials and execution.

1. Architect will select one surface to represent surfaces and conditions for application of each paint system.

a. Vertical and Horizontal Surfaces: Provide samples of at least 100 sq. ft. (9 sq. m).
b. Other Items: Architect will designate items or areas required.

2. Final approval of color selections will be based on mockups.

a. If preliminary color selections are not approved, apply additional mockups of additional colors selected by Architect at no added cost to Owner.

3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store materials not in use in tightly covered containers in well-ventilated areas with ambient temperatures continuously maintained at not less than 45 deg F (7 deg C).

1. Maintain containers in clean condition, free of foreign materials and residue.
2. Remove rags and waste from storage areas daily.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Apply paints only when temperature of surfaces to be painted and ambient air

temperatures are between 50 and 95 deg F (10 and 35 deg C).

B. Do not apply paints in snow, rain, fog, or mist; when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent; at temperatures less than 5 deg F (3 deg C) above the dew point; or to damp or wet surfaces.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Sherwin Williams

2. Behr Process Corporation
3. Benjamin Moore & Co.
4. Dulux (formerly ICI Paints); a brand of AkzoNobel.
5. Glidden Professional.
6. Kwal Paint; Comex Group

B. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, available products that may be incorporated into the Work include but are not limited to products listed in the Exterior Painting Schedule for the paint category indicated.

2.2 PAINT, GENERAL

A. MPI Standards: Products shall comply with MPI standards indicated and shall be listed in its "MPI Approved Products Lists."

B. Material Compatibility:

1. Materials for use within each paint system shall be compatible with one another and substrates indicated, under conditions of service and application as demonstrated by manufacturer, based on testing and field experience.
2. For each coat in a paint system, products shall be recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturers for use in paint system and on substrate indicated.

C. VOC Content: Products shall comply with VOC limits of authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Colors: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions, with Applicator present, for compliance with requirements for maximum moisture content and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Maximum Moisture Content of Substrates: When measured with an electronic moisture meter as follows:

1. Concrete: 12 percent.
2. Fiber-Cement Board: 12 percent.
3. Masonry (Clay and Concrete Masonry Units): 12 percent.
4. Wood: 15 percent.
5. Portland Cement Plaster: 12 percent.
6. Gypsum Board: 12 percent.

C. Portland Cement Plaster Substrates: Verify that plaster is fully cured.

D. Exterior Gypsum Board Substrates: Verify that finishing compound is dry and sanded smooth.

E. Verify suitability of substrates, including surface conditions and compatibility, with finishes and primers.

F. Proceed with coating application only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

1. Application of coating indicates acceptance of surfaces and conditions.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions applicable to substrates and paint systems indicated.

B. Remove hardware, covers, plates, and similar items already in place that are removable and are not to be painted. If removal is impractical or impossible because of size or weight of item, provide surface-applied protection before surface preparation and painting.

1. After completing painting operations, use workers skilled in the trades involved to reinstall items that were removed. Remove surface-applied protection.

C. Clean substrates of substances that could impair bond of paints, including dust, dirt, oil, grease, and incompatible paints and encapsulants.

1. Remove incompatible primers and reprime substrate with compatible primers or apply tie coat as required to produce paint systems specified in this Section.

D. Concrete Substrates: Remove release agents, curing compounds, efflorescence, and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces to be painted exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Masonry Substrates: Remove efflorescence and chalk. Do not paint surfaces if moisture content or alkalinity of surfaces or mortar joints exceeds that permitted in manufacturer's written instructions.

F. Steel Substrates: Remove rust, loose mill scale, and shop primer if any. Clean using methods recommended in writing by paint manufacturer but not less than the following:

1. SSPC-SP 2.
2. SSPC-SP 3.
3. SSPC-SP 7/NACE No. 4.
4. SSPC-SP 11.

G. Shop-Primed Steel Substrates: Clean field welds, bolted connections, and areas where shop paint is abraded. Paint exposed areas with the same material as used for shop priming to comply with SSPC-PA 1 for touching up shop-primed surfaces.

H. Galvanized-Metal Substrates: Remove grease and oil residue from galvanized sheet metal by mechanical methods to produce clean, lightly etched surfaces that promote adhesion of subsequently applied paints.

I. Aluminum Substrates: Remove loose surface oxidation.

J. Wood Substrates:

1. Scrape and clean knots. Before applying primer, apply coat of knot sealer recommended in writing by topcoat manufacturer for exterior use in paint system indicated.
2. Sand surfaces that will be exposed to view, and remove sanding dust.
3. Prime edges, ends, faces, undersides, and backsides of wood.
4. After priming, fill holes and imperfections in the finish surfaces with putty or plastic wood filler. Sand smooth when dried.

K. Plastic Trim Fabrication Substrates: Remove dust, dirt, and other foreign material that might impair bond of paints to substrates.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Apply paints in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use applicators and techniques suited for paint and substrate indicated.
2. Paint surfaces behind movable items same as similar exposed surfaces. Before final installation, paint surfaces behind permanently fixed items with prime coat only.
3. Paint both sides and edges of exterior doors and entire exposed surface of exterior door frames.
4. Paint the entire exposed surface of window frames and sashes.
5. Do not paint over labels of independent testing agencies or equipment name, identification, performance rating, or nomenclature plates.
6. Primers specified in the Exterior Painting Schedule may be omitted on items that are factory primed or factory finished if compatible with intermediate and topcoat coatings and acceptable to intermediate and topcoat paint manufacturers.

B. Tint undercoats same color as topcoat but tint each undercoat a lighter shade to facilitate identification of each coat if multiple coats of same material are to be applied. Provide sufficient difference in shade of undercoats to distinguish each separate coat.

C. If undercoats or other conditions show through topcoat, apply additional coats until cured film has a uniform paint finish, color, and appearance.

D. Apply paints to produce surface films without cloudiness, spotting, holidays, laps, brush marks, roller tracking, runs, sags, ropiness, or other surface imperfections. Cut in sharp lines and color breaks.

E. Painting Fire Suppression, Plumbing, HVAC, Electrical, Communication, and Electronic Safety and Security Work:

1. Paint the following work where exposed to view:

a. Equipment, including panelboards and switch gear.
b. Uninsulated metal piping.
c. Uninsulated plastic piping.
d. Pipe hangers and supports.
e. Metal conduit.
f. Plastic conduit.
g. Tanks that do not have factory-applied final finishes.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Dry Film Thickness Testing: Owner may engage the services of a qualified testing and inspecting agency to inspect and test paint for dry film thickness.

1. Contractor shall touch up and restore painted surfaces damaged by testing.
2. If test results show that dry film thickness of applied paint does not comply with paint manufacturer's written instructions, Contractor shall pay for testing and apply additional coats as needed to provide dry film thickness that complies with paint manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. At end of each workday, remove rubbish, empty cans, rags, and other discarded materials from Project site.

1. Do not clean equipment with free-draining water and prevent solvents, thinners, cleaners, and other contaminants from entering into waterways, sanitary and storm drain systems, and ground.
2. Dispose of contaminants in accordance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Allow empty paint cans to dry before disposal.
4. Collect waste paint by type and deliver to recycling or collection facility.

B. After completing paint application, clean spattered surfaces. Remove spattered paints by washing, scraping, or other methods. Do not scratch or damage adjacent finished surfaces.

C. Protect work of other trades against damage from paint application. Correct damage to work of other trades by cleaning, repairing, replacing, and refinishing, as approved by Architect, and leave in an undamaged condition.

D. At completion of construction activities of other trades, touch up and restore damaged or defaced painted surfaces.

3.6 EXTERIOR PAINTING SCHEDULE

A. Steel and Iron Substrates:

1. Water-Based, Light Industrial Coating System:

a. Prime Coat: Shop primer specified in Section in which substrate is specified.
b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
c. Topcoat: Exterior, water-based, light industrial coating, semigloss.

B. Galvanized-Metal Substrates:

1. Latex System:

    a. Prime Coat: Water-based, galvanized-metal primer.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Exterior latex paint, semigloss.

C. Aluminum Substrates:

1. Latex System

    a. Prime Coat: Quick-drying aluminum primer.
    b. Intermediate Coat: Matching topcoat.
    c. Topcoat: Exterior latex paint, semigloss.

END OF SECTION 09 91 13

SECTION 09 91 23 - INTERIOR PAINTING

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Surface preparation.

B. Field application of paints.

C. Scope: Finish interior surfaces exposed to view, unless fully factory-finished and unless otherwise indicated, including the following:
   1. Gypsum wallboard partitions
   2. Both sides and edges of plywood backboards for electrical and telecom equipment before installing equipment.
   3. Hollow metal doors and frames
   4. Exposed structural steel
   5. CMU partitions
   6. Elevator pit ladders
   7. Prime surfaces to receive wall coverings.
   8. Mechanical and Electrical:
      a. In finished areas, paint insulated and exposed pipes, conduit, boxes, insulated and exposed ducts, hangers, brackets, collars and supports, mechanical equipment, and electrical equipment, unless otherwise indicated.
      b. In finished areas, paint shop-primed items.

D. Do Not Paint or Finish the Following Items:
   1. Items factory-finished unless otherwise indicated; materials and products having factory-applied primers are not considered factory finished.
   2. Items indicated to receive other finishes.
   3. Items indicated to remain unfinished.
   4. Fire rating labels, equipment serial number and capacity labels, bar code labels, and operating parts of equipment.
   5. Stainless steel, anodized aluminum, bronze, terne-coated stainless steel, and lead items.
   6. Floors, unless specifically indicated.
   7. Ceramic and other tiles.
   8. Glass.
   9. Concealed pipes, ducts, and conduits.

1.2 REFERENCE STANDARDS

A. MPI (APSM) - Master Painters Institute Architectural Painting Specification Manual Current Edition.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. See Section 013000 - Administrative Requirements, for submittal procedures.

B. Product Data: Provide complete list of products to be used, with the following

information for each:

1. Manufacturer's name, product name and/or catalog number, and general product category (e.g., "alkyd enamel").
2. MPI product number (e.g., MPI #47).
3. Cross-reference to specified paint system(s) product is to be used in; include description of each system.

C. Samples: Submit three paper "draw down" samples, 8-1/2 by 11 inches (216 by 279 mm) in size, illustrating range of colors available for each finishing product specified.
   1. Where sheen is specified, submit samples in only that sheen.
   2. Where sheen is not specified, discuss sheen options with Architect before preparing samples, to eliminate sheens not required.

D. Maintenance Data: Submit data including finish schedule showing where each product/color/finish was used, product technical data sheets, material safety data sheets (MSDS), care and cleaning instructions, touch-up procedures, repair of painted and finished surfaces, and color samples of each color and finish used.

E. Maintenance Materials: Furnish the following for Owner's use in maintenance of project.
   1. See Section 01 60 00 - Product Requirements, for additional provisions.
   2. Extra Paint and Finish Materials: 1 gallon (4 L) of each color; from the same product run, store where directed.
   3. Label each container with color, texture, and finish schedule product code in addition to the manufacturer's label.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Applicator Qualifications: Company specializing in performing the type of work specified with minimum 3 years experience.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver products to site in sealed and labeled containers; inspect to verify acceptability.

B. Container Label: Include manufacturer's name, type of paint, brand name, lot number, brand code, coverage, surface preparation, drying time, cleanup requirements, color designation, and instructions for mixing and reducing.

C. Paint Materials: Store at minimum ambient temperature of 45 degrees F (7 degrees C) and a maximum of 90 degrees F (32 degrees C), in ventilated area, and as required by manufacturer's instructions.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not apply materials when surface and ambient temperatures are outside the temperature ranges required by the paint product manufacturer.

B. Follow manufacturer's recommended procedures for producing best results,

including testing of substrates, moisture in substrates, and humidity and temperature limitations.

C. Do not apply materials when relative humidity exceeds 85 percent, at temperatures less than 5 degrees F (3 degrees C) above the dew point, or to damp or wet surfaces.

D. Provide lighting level of 80 ft candles (860 lx) measured mid-height at substrate surface.

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide paints and finishes from the same manufacturer to the greatest extent possible.
   1. If a single manufacturer cannot provide specified products; minor exceptions will be permitted provided approval by Architect is obtained using the specified procedures for substitutions.

B. Paints:
   1. Behr Process Corporation: www.behr.com/#sle.
   2. Diamond Vogel Paints: www.diamondvogel.com/#sle.
   3. PPG Paints: www.ppgpaints.com/#sle.
   4. Sherwin-Williams Company: www.sherwin-williams.com/#sle.
   5. Benjamin Moore.

C. Primer Sealers: Same manufacturer as top coats.

D. Substitutions: See Section 016000 - Product Requirements.

2.2 PAINTS AND FINISHES - GENERAL

A. Paints and Finishes: Ready-mixed, unless intended to be a field-catalyzed paint.
   1. Provide paints and finishes of a soft paste consistency, capable of being readily and uniformly dispersed to a homogeneous coating, with good flow and brushing properties, and capable of drying or curing free of streaks or sags.
   2. Supply each paint material in quantity required to complete entire project's work from a single production run.
   3. Do not reduce, thin, or dilute paint or finishes or add materials unless such procedure is specifically described in manufacturer's product instructions.

B. Flammability: Comply with applicable code for surface burning characteristics.

C. Sheens: Provide the sheens specified; where sheen is not specified, sheen will be selected later by Architect from the manufacturer's full line.

D. Colors: as indicated per finish specification schedule..
   1. Selection to be made by Architect after award of contract.
   2. In finished areas, finish pipes, ducts, conduit, and equipment the same color as the wall/ceiling under which they are mounted.

2.3 PAINT SYSTEMS - INTERIOR

A. Hollow Metal Doors, Frames and Lintels:
   1. Prime Coat: Diamond Vogel Cote-All Multi-Purpose Alkyd Primer.
   2. Intermediate Coat: Same as Top Coat.
   3. Top Coat: Diamond Vogel PermAcryl Interior Latex Semi-Gloss Enamel.

B. New Concrete Masonry Units:
   1. Prime Coat: Diamond Vogel Unifill Acrylic Block filler.
   2. Intermediate Coat: Same as Top Coat.
   3. Top Coat: Diamond Vogel PermAcryl Interior Latex Eggshell Enamel.

C. Existing Concrete Masonry Units:
   1. Preparation: Remove all loose or peeling paint with a pressure washer; using 2500 psi and 15 degree spray tip. Hold the tip 12 inches from the surface and work in a horizontal, back and forth, pattern.
   2. Prime Coat: Diamond Vogel Unifill Acrylic block filler.
   3. Intermediate Coat: Same as Top coat.
   4. Top Coat: Diamond Vogel PermAcryl Interior Latex Eggshell Enamel.

D. Gypsum Board:
   1. Prime Coat: Diamond Vogel Pro Max Interior Primer/Sealer (2 coats - 1 before texture is applied and 1 after).
   2. Intermediate Coat: Same as Top coat.
   3. Top Coat: Diamond Vogel PermAcryl Interior Latex Eggshell Enamel.

E. Dry Fall: Metals; exposed structure and overhead-mounted services, including shop primed steel deck, structural steel, metal fabrications, galvanized ducts, galvanized conduit, and galvanized piping.
   1. Shop primer by others.
   2. Primer Coat Vers-Acryl 200.
   3. Finish Coat Luminance 300 Latex Dri-Mist Flat.

2.4 ACCESSORY MATERIALS

A. Accessory Materials: Provide primers, sealers, cleaning agents, cleaning cloths, sanding materials, and clean-up materials as required for final completion of painted surfaces.

B. Patching Material: Latex filler.

C. Fastener Head Cover Material: Latex filler.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Do not begin application of paints and finishes until substrates have been adequately prepared.

B. Verify that surfaces are ready to receive work as instructed by the product manufacturer.

C. Examine surfaces scheduled to be finished prior to commencement of work.

Report any condition that may potentially affect proper application.

D. If substrate preparation is the responsibility of another installer, notify Architect of unsatisfactory preparation before proceeding.

E. Test shop-applied primer for compatibility with subsequent cover materials.

F. Measure moisture content of surfaces using an electronic moisture meter. Do not apply finishes unless moisture content of surfaces is below the following maximums:
   1. Gypsum Wallboard: 12 percent.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean surfaces thoroughly and correct defects prior to application.

B. Prepare surfaces using the methods recommended by the manufacturer for achieving the best result for the substrate under the project conditions.

C. Remove or mask surface appurtenances, including electrical plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings, prior to preparing surfaces or finishing.

D. Seal surfaces that might cause bleed through or staining of topcoat.

E. Gypsum Board: Fill minor defects with filler compound. Spot prime defects after repair.

F. Metal Doors to be Painted: Prime metal door top and bottom edge surfaces.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Remove unfinished louvers, grilles, covers, and access panels on mechanical and electrical components and paint separately.

B. Apply products in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions and recommendations in "MPI Architectural Painting Specification Manual".

C. Do not apply finishes to surfaces that are not dry. Allow applied coats to dry before next coat is applied.

D. Apply each coat to uniform appearance in thicknesses specified by manufacturer.

E. Dark Colors and Deep Clear Colors: Regardless of number of coats specified, apply as many coats as necessary for complete hide.

F. Sand wood and metal surfaces lightly between coats to achieve required finish.

G. Vacuum clean surfaces of loose particles. Use tack cloth to remove dust and particles just prior to applying next coat.

H. Wood to Receive Transparent Finishes: Tint fillers to match wood. Work fillers into the grain before set. Wipe excess from surface.

I. Reinstall electrical cover plates, hardware, light fixture trim, escutcheons, and fittings removed prior to finishing.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. See Section 01 40 00 - Quality Requirements, for general requirements for field

inspection.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Collect waste material that could constitute a fire hazard, place in closed metal containers, and remove daily from site.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect finishes until completion of project.

B. Touch-up damaged finishes after Substantial Completion.

END OF SECTION 09 91 23

SECTION 10 14 00 - SIGNAGE

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

Section includes the follow wayfinding, identification, informational and regulatory visual elements for this project:

1. Static Signage:
    a. Directional signs
    b. Identification signs
    c. Informational signs
    d. Regulatory signs
    e. Temporary signs

B. Related Work: Work as employed herein, includes any material, equipment, construction, labor, installation, service or maintenance and warranties required to complete the fabrication and installation prescribed in these contract documents.

1.2 RELATED DOCUMENTS AND SECTIONS

A. Related Documents: Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 1 Specification Sections, apply to this Section. "Related Documents" refers to the drawings, specifications, sign message schedules, including all addendum and modifications incorporated therein before their execution. When applicable, additional appendages provided by Owner, Owner's Representative, Architect or General Contractor shall also become part of the contract documents. Related drawing sheets include:

1. General Information - (A801 thru A820)

B. Related Sections:

1. Division 00 – Procurement Requirements
    a. Division 01 – General Requirements
    b. Division 02 – Existing Conditions
    c. Division 03 – Concrete
    d. Division 05 – Metals
    e. Division 06 – Wood, Plastics, and Composites
    f. Division 07 – Thermal and Moisture Protection
    g. Division 09 – Finishes
    h. Division 26 – Electrical
    i. Division 27 – Communications
    j. Division 28 – Electronic Safety and Security

1.3 DESIGN AND PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Final Design Liability: The Contractor shall assume the sole responsibility for the final design liability, engineering and internal construction of all signs. The Contractor shall also be responsible for all foundations or anchorages and shall submit shop drawings indicating details for review and approval of the Owner, Architect, Engineer or Graphic Designer.

B. Design Intent Drawings: The drawings provided in this guide are for design intent only. All signage provided shall be of the design, detail, sizes, types, materials and message content shown on the design intent drawings and shall conform to the requirements specified. Signs shall be provided and installed complete with lettering, framing as detailed and all related components for a complete installation.

C. Sign Location Plans: The location of each sign is indicated on the plans provided for informational purposes and coordination with other disciplines. These plans are intended to demonstrate the size of each sign and their proposed location in relation to other constructed elements. The Contractor shall verify each location and notify the Architect of any conflicts that may impact the exact location of each sign. Modifications to some locations may be required as a result of changes during the construction process and any revisions required will be documented by issuing appropriate addendums.

D. Sign Message Schedules: Message schedules are provided to facilitate bidding and verification of the quantities required for each sign type. These schedules provide information about the unique message content of each sign location. Due to the complexity of some signage messages, references are provided to the design intent drawings that better communicate the required message content, colors and graphic images. Revisions to the exact message content of each sign will be required during the construction process. Details such as door alarm hardware requirements will impact the required signage messages for some sign types. Notify the Architect as necessary regarding any discrepancies between the information indicated on the messages schedules and the documentation provided on the design and/or sign location drawings. Verify that the final message schedule information to be issued by addendums has been reviewed by the Project Team and approved by the Owner prior to fabrication.

E. Removal of Existing Signs: The contractor shall remove and dispose of all existing signs at their expense as needed to facilitate the work. Temporary signs shall be provided in all active public areas as needed. All existing sign materials shall be recycled as much as possible or otherwise disposed of in an environmentally responsible manner as required by code requirement of authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Room Identification Signs: Unless otherwise noted, room identification signs are to be mounted flush to the scheduled wall surface with foam tape and permanent adhesive on the strike side of door frame where possible or as indicated on the design intent drawings. Locate sign as indicated on the installation drawing provided and in

accordance with 2010 ADA standards for accessible room signs. Unless otherwise noted for signs mounted to glass, provide same size, color and shape vinyl film backer as sign, mounted to opposite side of glass, to conceal sign attachment.

G. Room and Asset Numbering: The Contractor is responsible for providing temporary number identification during all phases of construction and permanent room number identification at the completion of the project. These numbers shall be as indicated on the architectural floor plans and shall be the basis of identifying all assets, equipment and systems according to the Owner's requirements. Coordinate with the Owner regarding specific details and requirements for identification of all building systems, wiring and similar assets.

1.4 SIGNAGE STUCTURAL ENGINEERING

A. Stamped Engineering Drawings: The Contractor shall provide structural analysis calculations for all signs to comply with design loads. Signed and sealed drawings and calculations shall be provided by a qualified, professional Engineer licensed in North Carolina. This information shall be included on the shop drawings or submitted as supplemental information.

B. Structural Connections and Supports: The Contractor shall include engineered details for all connections to building or other structure as part if the engineering submittals. Include all bolts, screws and anchor sizes to be provide and base plate or connection layout details for coordination with other trades.

C. Structural Requirements: All signs shall be engineered by the Contractor to resist design loads and thermal movement resulting from severe temperature changes consistent with the local climate requirements without distortions, or excessive deflections, or failure of supports to backup construction. The Contractor is responsible for providing all required supports for sign attachments as required.

D. Structural Design Intent Drawings: All structural support element sizes, shapes, thicknesses and configurations shown on the signage drawings provide are for informational purposes only. The intent is to communicate the desired design aesthetic look and a buildable sign design. The final support structures, sign frame details and design parameters shall be provided by the Contractor and be included on the shop drawing and engineering calculation submittals. Identify all changes and substitutions required by final engineering on shop drawing submittals that are different from the design intent drawings.

E. Exterior Sign Design Loads: All exterior signs and support structures shall be engineered by the Contractor or an Engineer sub-contracted by them for this project to resist wind loads required by local jurisdiction or more according to special situation requirements. Design load requirements shall also include thermal movement resulting from 140-degrees F temperature change, without distortions, excessive deflections or failure of

supports to backup construction. The Contractor is responsible for the structural integrity of all sign components, structures and foundations required.

F. Weight Limitations: It is the Contractor's responsibility to ensure that all signs provided comply with the maximum weight limitation for each sign location. Refer to the structural drawings, specification and coordinate with the project team to ensure all final designs comply with all weight limitations.

1.5 TEMPORARY SIGNAGE AND PHASING

A. All temporary signage, if required, shall be provided by the Contractor at their expense as part of the construction project bid. The intent is to install permanent signage in all areas of completed construction as soon as possible. If temporary signs are required for inspections, temporary occupancy permits or other unforeseen requirements it shall be provided by the Contractor at their expense. All other temporary signage required to facilitate continuous airport operations shall be provided by the contractor as required. Consult with the Architect regarding and questions regarding signage phasing and installation. The Contractor shall deliver all temporary sign frames and sign panels to the owner when they are removed and no longer needed. Package and label all temporary signs for storage by the Owner.

1.6 REGULATORY AND CODE REQUIREMENTS

A. Code Compliance Responsibility: The Contractor is fully responsible for compliance with applicable requirements of the laws, codes, ordinances and regulations of Federal, State and Municipal authorities having jurisdiction in order to protect the Owner from liability. The Contractor shall endorse the design direction and work toward a goal to exceed code requirements where practicality and aesthetics allow.

B. 2020 International Building Code (IBC)

C. 2018 National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 1, Fire Code including:

1. 2018 NFPA 101, Life Safety Code

D. ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines: Signage and all other work for each project must comply with the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities; Architectural Barriers Act (ABA) Accessibility Guidelines.

E. International Building Code (IBC): The IBC has specific requirements for signs such as room identification, directional signs and other sign classifications. All signage provided must comply with these IBC requirements unless otherwise specified. Request clarification from the Owner, Architect or Graphic Designer as needed.

F. International Code Council (ICC A117.1 - 2009) Accessible and Useable Buildings and Facilities: In addition to compliance with the applicable provisions of the ADA-ABA

Accessibility Guidelines, additional requirements detailed in ICC A117.1 also apply. Where requirements differ, request clarification from the Owner, Architect or Graphic Designer.

G. National Electric Code (NEC): 2017 National Electric Code

1.7 TYPESTYLES

A. Fonts: The typestyles listed on the drawings are to be utilized as indicated on the appropriate sign types. If the Contractor does not already own these fonts, they shall be purchased by the Contractor as required for use on this project. The Architect cannot legally provide fonts for use by Contractors.

1.8 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Initial Submittals: Within 15 business days from the issuance of contract award the Contractor shall supply the following for approval:

1. A Gantt chart showing the timetable for the work outlining the time periods required for the execution of each phase of the work. The tasks and milestones to be addressed shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Time periods required to provide product data submittals.
    b. Time periods required to provide to produce shop drawings.
    c. Time periods required to secure permits.
    d. Lead times for specialty items and outsources materials
    e. Time periods required manufacturing, shipping and installation itemized separately.
    f. Any other specific details requested by the Owner and Architect.

2. As the construction schedule advances, revise and resubmit the chart to show rescheduled work and milestones achieved.

3. No shop drawing or submittals will be reviewed until a detail Gantt chart has been submitted and approved.

B. Preliminary Submittals: Within sixty (60) days of issuance of contract award, and before beginning work, the Contractor shall supply the following for approval:

1. A complete list of products to be supplied accompanied by manufacturers' data sheets and samples for each product.

2. Actual samples of all proposed materials and colors.

3. Preliminary shop drawings detailing all proposed materials, finishes, and colors for all exposed surfaces and custom items for approval.

C. Product Data Submittals: Provide manufacturer's product details relative to materials, dimensions of individual components, profiles and finishes.

1. Include manufacturer's data substantiating that materials comply with requirements indicated and document the product life expectancy of a minimum five years in continuous field use.
2. Provide documentation for any products like monitors, lighting elements, electronic or electrical items that may have a manufacturer's warranty of less than five years.
3. Certify in writing that materials for which data is submitted will be used throughout contract.
4. No substitutions of any materials or finish system will be allowed without prior written approval by the Architect.
5. Include manufacturer's cleaning and maintenance procedures documentation.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: As requested by the Architect, provide manufacturer's color charts consisting of actual units or sections of units showing the full range of colors available for the following:

1. Paint.
2. Aluminum. (finishes)
3. Acrylic sheet (opaque and translucent)
4. Vinyl (opaque, translucent, reflective, etc.)
5. Other products or materials as requested

E. Substitutions: Substitutions shall be limited to those items that contain in their description the qualifying phase "or approved equal".

1. Substitutions for materials and/or methods of construction/fabrication that have been specified herein and in the design intent drawings must be accompanied by the following documentation:
    a. Product data including drawings, specifications, fabrication and installation procedures.
    b. Samples of the new product in a similar configuration and/or with similar finishes.
    c. A written comparison of the important qualities of the two products such as size, weight, durability, and visual appearance.
    d. A written list of any changes that would be required to other components due to the substitution.
    e. A statement indicating the substitutions effect on schedule.
    f. A cost comparison between the two products.
    g. Certification by the contractor that the proposed substitution is equal to or better in every respect to the product specified in the contract documents.
2. The Contractor's request for a substitution will be considered by the A/E when the following conditions are satisfied:

a. Extensive revisions to the contract drawings are not required.
b. Proposed changes are in keeping with the design intent of the contract drawings.
c. The request is timely.
d. The material or product specified in the contract drawings cannot be obtained within the contract time or the material does not conform to necessary regulations, codes, or requirements.
e. The specified material cannot provide a warranty required by the contract documents.

F. Preliminary Shop Drawings: After receiving approval of product data sheets for products and materials to be utilized, submit preliminary shop drawings for fabrication and installation of all required sign prototypes prior to the initiation of production for prototypes and all other manufacturing.

1. Include details all proposed materials, finishes, and colors for all exposed surfaces and custom items for approval

2. Include all applicable fabrication and installation details for all prototype signs.

G. Engineering: All signs, foundations and connections shall be engineered by the Sign Engineer employed by or sub-contracted to the Contractor. All signs and structures shall be engineered to resist wind loads and thermal movement resulting from severe temperature changes consistent with the local climate requirements without distortions, or excessive deflections, or failure of supports to backup construction. Fabrication details and shop drawings shall be provided by the Contractor and shall include design calculations and the signed seal of a registered structural engineer licensed in North Carolina to ensure compliance with all design and load requirements. These shop drawings shall illustrate all means of mounting and attachment in elevation, plan and side views, and sections for proper coordination for connections with building structures

1. Internal Structural Framing: The internal structural framing system required shall be designed and engineered by the Contractor to withstand all design loads and maximum weight limitations.

H. Final Shop Drawings: After the approval of all product data submittals and prototypes required, submit final shop drawings for fabrication and installation of all signs. By the approval and submission of shop drawings and samples, the Contractor thereby represents that he has determined and verified all field measurements, field construction criteria, materials, catalogue numbers and similar data or will do so, and that he has checked and coordinated each shop drawing and sample with the requirements of the work and the contract documents. Include all comments made during prototype and/or mockup reviews and approvals. Provide detailing of all proposed materials, finishes, fabrication methods and colors for all exposed surfaces and custom items. Include all applicable fabrication and installation details for all signs.

1. Do not proceed with the fabrication of any final products until final shop drawings have been submitted and approved by the Architect.
2. The electronic files of the design intent drawings created by the Architect are not to be considered shop drawings and shall not be re-submitted as such back to the Architect. The electronic files provided are intended to facilitate the shop drawing process by providing a base line on information such as elevations, building sections and other useful information that may help the Contractor created complete drawings with accurate information.
3. Shop drawings submitted by the Contractor shall not contain any notes or language claiming that the Contractor owns the copyrights for the designs created by the A/E and provided to the contractor for their use on this project.
4. Provide only field verified dimensions and other details. No “field verify” or “to be determined” notes will be accepted. Any shop drawings submitted that do not include required information will be rejected and not reviewed.
5. Shop drawings shall clearly illustrate typical sign message layouts, means of mounting and attachments. At a minimum, shop drawings must show as much or more detail than provided in the design intent drawings. Any drawing submitted that do not include important information provided on the design intent drawings will be rejected and not reviewed.
6. Document all materials, including part numbers, product numbers and color references.
7. The exact identification of all paints and coatings shall be noted for each material of component.
8. All shop drawings must be to scale with the correct scale identified.
9. Submission of electronic files for shop drawings is required.
10. Include plans, elevations, fabrication details, typical message layouts and dimensions referenced to permanent project features.
11. Include details of all electrical and communications connections.
12. Show mounting details, locations of supplementary supports to be provided by others, and accessories. Show anchorage types, locations and accessory items.
13. Indicate gravity loads on supports for all signs that have mechanical attachment.
14. Stamped engineering drawings and structural analysis calculations as required shall be included on the shop drawings or submitted as supplement information.
15. Include wiring diagrams indicating power, signal and control wiring as appropriate. The design intent of the wiring is to inter-connect the equipment to utilize its capabilities to the fullest extent.
16. All shop drawings, schematic diagrams, and connection diagrams must be approved by the Architect prior to beginning work.

17. Indicate acknowledgement of all addenda issued by the Architect on the final shop drawings to ensure the most current information is reflected in the drawings approved for fabrication.

18. Include wiring diagrams for all electronic and electrical systems that show all required details regarding power, signal and controls.

I. Message Content Layout Drawings: In addition to shop drawings that provide sign fabrication details, the Contractor shall furnish scaled face layout drawings for each sign type and unique copy layouts as appropriate. Message content face layout drawings shall show type style, type size, type alignment and spacing, spelling, punctuation, word placement on sign face referenced to outline of sign face, line spacing, logos and other composition requirements. All require dimensions shall be provided and accurately detailed.

J. Submittal Format: All shop drawings must be produced at an appropriate scale and submitted in electronic format with a sheet size no smaller than A1.

K. Samples for Verification: Submit a minimum of four (4) complete sets of all required samples for approval. One set each will be retained by the Architect, the Owner, GC or CM and one reviewed set will be returned to the contractor for their records and use. Samples retained will be used to compare the finished work provided with the approved samples. Any finished products that do not match the approved samples will be rejected and replacement products will be required.

1. Provide four (4) 6″ x 6″ samples for each material (include all required color variations) and specialty products specified.

2. Provide four (4) 6″ x 6″ samples for each paint specified. Include separate samples for each material to be painted, since they may require separate paints for aluminum, plastic, steel, zinc, concrete, etc.

3. Provide four (4) 6″ x 6″ samples of required finishes, surface textures and other qualities of each material specified.

4. Provide four (4) 6″ x 6″ samples of each printed color specified on the exact substrate specified.

5. Include information printed on each sample indicating the name, product number or other details to clearly identify the nature of each sample. All paint samples shall be identified with Pantone Matching System (PMS) number or equivalent.

6. Provide four (4) 6″ long samples each for all aluminum extrusions specified.

7. Provide four (4) 1′-0″ x 2′-0″ samples for all printed sign face panels

L. Prototypes: Provide full-size prototypes of the requested sign types below after the approval of shop drawings and product data submittals. Deliver all prototypes to the project site according to the Owner's instructions. Working prototypes shall be installed on-site in an area designated by the Owner. Approved prototypes in a condition suitable

to the Owner may be incorporated into the final quantities required if approved by the Owner, Architect or Graphic Designer in advance. Obtain Owner and Graphic Designer's approval before fabricating signs for the Work. The required prototypes include the following sign types:

1. Flag sign
2. Ceiling cabinet sign
3. Wall mounted letter sign

M. Field Mock-Ups: Provide full size mock-ups and/or sample installations of signage and other elements as listed below. These mock-ups shall be provided for approval of the size, appearance and design compliance. Locate mock-ups on site in locations as directed. Retain mock-ups during construction as a standard for judging completed sign work. The Contractor shall be responsible for the removal and disposal of all mockups as directed by the Owner upon completion of the project or approvals required. Required mock-ups and samples include the following, however the Owner reserves the right to request additional mock-up and/or samples as desired.:

1. Provide a full size field mock-ups of gate identification signs. Acceptable materials include wood, plastic, metal or similar products. Provide digitally printed graphics and background colors.

N. Resubmission Requirements:

1. Make any requested corrections or changes in submittals, mock-ups and prototypes at no additional cost to the Owner.
2. Resubmit for review until no exceptions are taken.
3. Indicate any changes that have been made other than those requested.

1.9 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Single Source Accountability: Provide all signs required for each project under a single contract. Signs and related materials shall be fabricated by a Contractor regularly engaged in the manufacturing of such products. Signage shall be obtained from a single manufacturer with specific components (such as custom aluminum extrusions or other raw materials) outsourced as needed to subcontractors and manufacturers of specialty products as specified. Submit product data sheets regarding any outsourced components utilized.

B. Fabricator Qualifications: The Contractor shall be responsible for the quality of all materials and workmanship required for the execution of each contract including any firm or individual who may serve as the Contractor's sub-contractor. Submit contractor qualifications that demonstrate a minimum of three previous airport projects of similar scale and complexity. Provide client references for each project along with written details regarding the project scope and dollar value. The Contractor is reminded that a high level

of quality, professionalism, workmanship and materials is expected in all aspects of this project. The Contractor shall be responsible for providing all up-to-date drawings, schedules and any other required information to all sub-contractors and the Project Team. The manufacture's logo or information may not be located on any sign surface visible to the public. The signage contractor and installer must have experience in the fabrication and implementation of signage programs for multiple airport projects of comparable size and complexity to the current project. The signage contractor and installer must provide references for a minimum of three (3) previous airport projects of similar complexity

C. Installer Qualifications: Engage an experienced installer who is an authorized representative of the Contractor and has completed installations of signs similar in material, design, and extent to those indicated for the project. Provide references as requested regarding previous project experience and their record of successful in-service performance.

D. Graphic Content and Style: Provide sign message content to comply with requirements indicated for sizes, styles, spacing, content, positions, materials, finishes and colors of letters, numbers, symbols and other graphic devices. Verify sign and copy length for proper fit. Notify the Architect in writing of discrepancies prior to fabrication.

E. Correction of Defective Work: Work determined to be defective by the Owner or the Inspection Agency or both, regardless of all previous inspection, shall be corrected to the satisfaction of the Architect at no extra cost to the Owner.

1.10 PROCEDURES

A. Coordination: Modify or adjust affected work as necessary to integrate work of the approved products and substitutions. The Contractor must coordinate on-site work, access to site, and final sign placement with the Project Team for each installation.

1. Where additional structural supports for signage or modifications to existing conditions surrounding building elements are required, it shall be provided by the Contractor in close coordination with the Project Team unless otherwise specified.
2. Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.

B. Field Conditions: The Contractor shall inspect the existing field conditions and incorporate all necessary information on the shop drawings.

C. Field Measurements: Verify existing conditions and locations of all signs, anchorage devices and electrical service embedded in permanent construction by other installers. Obtain field measurements before fabrication and indicate all measurements on shop drawings. Verify the sizes and other details of any existing foundations or other signage components specified to be re-used.

1.11 ELECTRICAL SIGNS

A. Electrical Components, Devices and Accessories: All electrical signs shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and marked for intended use.

B. UL Listing Requirements: All illuminated signs shall be Underwriters Laboratories (UL) listed and labeled compliant with all UL and National Electric Code (NEC) requirements. All signs shall be inspected and each sign shall display the UL label according to their requirements. All electrical signs shall have external disconnect switches for maintenance and grounding precautions according to UL requirements.

C. Identification of Equipment: Legible and complete wiring and circuitry diagrams, LED details and wattage and any special operating or replacement instructions are to be provided on waterproof paper and firmly affixed to the interior of signage electrical access panels. Identify all applicable circuits in branch circuit panel boards with a typewritten directory mounted behind clear plastic and fastened to inside of the panel door.

D. Accessibility and Aesthetics: All junction boxes, power supplies, conduits, lamps, LEDs and electrical components are to be concealed, but accessible. LEDs and power supplies are to be easily accessible and replaceable.

E. Illumination: The Contractor is responsible for the proper illumination and electrical function of all sign units requiring power.

F. Provide all electrical components required for even illumination of all signs. Illumination shall be evenly bright on all portions of each sign with no “hot spots” or “dark areas”.

G. Adequate sign brightness should be provided but should not be overdone. High contrast shall be provided between the sign message and background panels according to the Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) recommendations. Provide sign luminance’s according to the LED or lamp manufacturer’s recommendations based upon the unique location of each sign type, such as indoor verses outdoor installations, unless customizations are required for even illumination.

H. Alternations of internal sign components may be required to achieve even illumination of all portions of each sign. Some areas of signs may require more lamps or LEDs at tighter spacing than the manufacturer’s standard recommendations.

I. All inside surfaces of internally illuminated signs shall be painted white with light enhancement paint (LEP) for optimum illumination output.

J. No light leaks will be acceptable through joints or gaps. All joints external joints shall be continuously sealed to avoid undesired light spillages and accumulation of dust and dirt.

K. Ventilation: Provisions for air circulation and ventilation of all electrical systems and components are critical to the long-term performance and durability of the sign program. The Contractor shall provide adequate ventilation systems for all sign components, including motorized ventilation systems where forced ventilation is required. Include ventilation system details on all shop drawing submittals and documentation as required to assure these systems will provide adequate ventilation according to the site conditions.

L. Electrical Loads for Signs: The Contractor is responsible for providing electrical load requirements for each sign type and location requiring power to the Project Team. Details to be provided include information about the voltages, amps, circuits and other electrical requirements. Coordinate with the Project Team as required.

M. Electrical Components: The Contractor to provide all remote transformers, power supplies, junction boxes, secondary conduit runs, electrical wiring, installation hardware, disconnect switches, insulators, boots and any other miscellaneous components required for a complete installation.

N. Performance: All electrical components utilized shall be selected for energy efficiency and long-term performance.

O. Final Electrical Connections: The Contractor shall be responsible for making the final electrical connections for all illuminated signs at the time of installation. Refer to the electrical drawings for specifications, power requirements, connection details and other information. Incorporate all pertinent information on shop drawings.

P. Installation and Mounting: Coordination of each building penetration location will be critical, and the Contractor shall install full size rigid templates (not paper) for approval. Coordinate all electrical penetrations and the installation of all secondary conduit runs during construction. This may require multiple site visits prior to final installation of the signs to install all secondary electrical penetrations and have these penetrations sealed and weather proofed prior to completion of the building wall panels. Installations shall utilize liquid-tight, flexible metal conduit to transformers. Seal building penetrations as required by the A/E.

Q. Inspections, Tests and Guarantees: All work shall be subject to inspection by the Owner, the Owner's Representative and the A/E always and in the event of questionable work. Their decision will be final.

1. After the electrical installation is completed and at such times as the Owner may direct, the Contractor shall conduct an operating test for approval.
2. The installation shall be demonstrated to be in accordance with the requirements of these specifications.
3. Any defects revealed shall be corrected promptly and the test re-conducted, at no additional cost to the Owner.

4. All electrical work, equipment and materials shall be guaranteed for a period of five years from the date of the final inspection and acceptance of the work.
5. The Contractor shall be notified in writing of any defective items and shall repair or replace such items promptly without cost to the Owner.

1.12 WARRANTY

A. Warranty Period: Five years from date of substantial completion. The beginning date for the warranty period shall be from final approval date of substantial completion. During the warranty period, the Contractor shall restore defective work to the standards set forth in this sign guide without any cost to the Owner.

B. Failures: Failures in materials and workmanship include operational failures, performance below required minimums, excessive deterioration or aging, abnormal wear considering intensity of use, unsafe conditions, excessive noise or vibration and similar unusual, unexpected, and unsatisfactory conditions. Failures also include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Deterioration of finishes beyond normal weathering.
2. Deterioration of embedded graphic images or colors.
3. Separation or delamination of sheet materials and components.
4. Fading, cracking, warping, peeling, delaminating, rusting, corroding and structural failure, including distortion.
5. Failures do not include defects caused by acts of God, abusive use, vandalism, failure of the structure or power supply and similar causes beyond control of the Contractor.

C. LED Modules and Power Supplies: These electrical components shall be warranted according to the manufacture's published warranties. If a unit becomes nonfunctional or defective within warranty period it shall be replaced without cost to the Owner.

D. Correction of Defective Work: Work determined to be defective by the Owner, Project Team or the inspection agency, regardless of all previous inspections, shall be corrected to the satisfaction of and at no extra cost to the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Retroreflective Signs

1. Signs to include full-coverage reflective vinyl background (Type XI per contract documents). The manufacturer warranty for the vinyl component must be at least five (5) years.

2. All non- non-vinyl surfaces to be painted with a coating system that meets the requirements listed in Paint Finishes.

B. Dynamic Signage

1. All dynamic signs installed in this phase are to integrate with dynamic signs and software infrastructure installed in previous phases of this project.
2. Dynamic displays procured for this project (Type I, Type II) are to match the vendor and model for displays installed in prior phases of this project.
3. The contractor is responsible for configuring the existing dynamic sign system software to accommodate the new signs. Signs installed in this phase shall have the same capabilities as signs installed in previous phases.
4. Each dynamic display to include a TVSS
    a. Single phase, 150VAC phase-to-ground, type 1 surge protection device.
    b. UL 1449 listed, ANSI/IEEE approved for category C locations.
    c. Installed downstream of disconnecting means.
    d. Operable within a minimum ambient temperature range of -20°F to +120°F.
    e. Enclosed within a NEMA 3R rated enclosure (if required).
5. Each sign with an LED display or displays to include a disconnect switch – Single pole, 20A, 120VAC non-fused disconnect device and operable from inside a NEMA 3R enclosure or similar protected environment.
6. Each LED display to support RJ-45 ethernet network input.
7. Media and Network Switch – Each sign to contain a communications media adapter to convert the communication type to CAT5/6 ethernet for input into the LED display if conversion is required. Signs with multiple LED displays to include a network switch to provide an ethernet link to every display included in the sign.
    a. Coordinate media converter types and hardware with electrical and communications drawings.
    b. Enclosed within a NEMA 3R rated enclosure.
    c. Operable within a minimum ambient temperature range of -20°F to +120°F.
8. LED Cabinet Enclosure / Environmental Protection
    a. NEMA 3R or greater exterior rated enclosure.
    b. Automatic thermal management with ventilation fans.
    c. Operable within a minimum ambient temperature range of -20°F to +120°F and 95% humidity.

d. Internal display components and hardware (nuts, bolts, rivets, fasteners, etc.) shall be fabricated from stainless steel, aluminum, nylon, or other durable corrosion-resistant materials suitable for exterior use.

e. The display housing shall provide safe and convenient access for all modular assemblies, components, wiring, and other equipment for maintenance and replacement.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. General: Provide materials selected for exceptional high qualities of surface flatness, smoothness and freedom from surface blemishes wherever exposed to view in the finished units. All installation hardware shall be stainless steel or approved equal.

B. Acrylic: Provide cast (not extruded or continuous cast) methacrylate plastic sheet with a minimum flexural strength of 16,000 psi, ASTM D 790, minimum allowable continuous service temperature of 180-degrees F (82-degrees C); in sizes and thicknesses indicated on the drawings.

C. Acrylic for Digital Printing: Utilize white non-glare "digital acrylic" specifically designed for direct digital printing to provide optimal adhesion of UV curing inks without adhesion promoters. Physical properties to include a total light transmittance of 92% with no more than 2% haze in accordance with ASTM D-1003. Thickness to be 1/8" unless otherwise specified. Print only on the side designated by the manufacturer to receive direct digital printing.

1. Basis of Design Product: Optix-DA #7328 as manufactured by Plaskolite, Inc, or approved equal.

D. Acrylic Sheet Colored Coatings: Provide colored coatings, including inks, dyes, and paints, that are recommended by acrylic manufacturers for optimum adherence to acrylic surface and that are UV and water resistant for 5 years for application intended.

E. Aluminum Castings: ASTM B 26/B 26M, of alloy and temper recommended by sign manufacturer for casting process used and for use and finish indicated.

F. Aluminum Extrusions: Provide aluminum extrusions of alloy and temper with adequate structural characteristics and suitable for finishing as recommended by the aluminum producer or finisher for the type of use and finish indicated. Minimum strength and durability properties shall be as specified in ASTM B 221 for 6063-T5. Utilize shapes and thicknesses as shown in the drawings and as required to fulfill requirements, but not less than 1/8" (3.2 mm) thick unless otherwise shown.

G. Aluminum Sheet and Plate: Provide aluminum sheet of alloy and temper recommended by the aluminum producer or finisher for the type of use and finish indicated. Minimum strength and durability properties shall be as specified in ASTM B 209 for 5005-H15,

thickness as shown on the drawings. Aluminum used for concealed framing of signage shall be 6063 T-5 alloy with mill finish.

H. Film Tape Adhesive: 4-mil (0.1 mm) thick, double faced pressure sensitive film tape.

I. Foam Tape: 4 mil (0.1 mm) thick, double-faced pressure sensitive film tape.

J. Paint: Acrylic polyurethane enamel paint has been selected by the Owner because it is manufactured specifically for signs and contains ultra violet inhibitors which are lightfast, weather, abrasion and wear resistant. Provide paint formulated to match each Pantone Matching System (PMS) color as specified in this guide. All paint finishes shall be satin or eggshell unless otherwise specified.

K. Steel:

1. Sheet for Cold Forming: ASTM A 569, hot rolled sheet steel of commercial quality, pickled and oiled, free of defects which would impair the work.
2. Hot-Rolled, Structural-Steel Shapes: ASTM A36/A 36M or ASTM A 529/A 529M.
3. Steel Members Fabricated from Plate or Bar Stock: ASTM A 529/A 529M or ASTM A 572/A 572M, 42,000-psi minimum yield strength.
4. Steel Tubing or Pipe: ASTM A 500, Grade B.
5. Bolts for Steel Framing: ASTM A 307 or ASTM A 325 as necessary for design loads and connection details.
6. For steel exposed to view on completion, provide materials having flat, smooth surfaces without blemishes. Do not use materials whose surfaces exhibit pitting, seam marks, roller marks, rolled trade names, or roughness.
7. Galvanized Steel Sheet: ASTM A 653/A 653M, G90 coating, either commercial or forming steel.
8. Steel Pipe: ASTM A53, Type EF, or G at fabricators option, Grade A, black finish, unless otherwise shown as galvanized standard weight, (Schedule 40).

L. Stainless-Steel Sheet: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304, Type 316(exterior), stretcher-leveled standard of flatness.

M. Thermoformed Acrylic: Provide .125" thick clear, non-glare acrylic monolithic thermally formed and bonded sign faces for all interior room identification signs that require tactile characters and Grade 2 Braille. These signs shall be fabricated utilizing a high-pressure thermoforming process that provides a fully homogenous plaque sign. The sign body, face, raised text and Braille shall be compression molded to form a single dimensional component with enough toughness to resist scratching, cracking, gouging and graffiti. Background colors and patterns shall be printed and/or painted on the 2nd surface with the colors specified on the drawings.

1. Tactile characters shall be painted on the 1st surface with a contrasting color from the background as specified on the drawings.
2. The Grade 2 Braille shall clear, domed and spaced per ADA requirements and shall show same color as the background on the second surface.
3. Comply with all ADA requirements for tactile and Braille signs.

N. Vinyl Sheeting (non-reflective): All opaque, translucent, light management, over laminates and other vinyl films. Provide the exact colors and product numbers provided on the drawings unless otherwise specified.

1. Thickness shall be 0.003 inch minimum and 0.006 inch maximum, or as specified.
2. The pigmented material shall be sufficiently opaque when applied to completely hide a contrasting black printed legend on a white surface.
3. Properly processed and applied material shall withstand 5 years vertical, south facing, unprotected, exterior exposure at the work site with no appreciable deterioration such as cracking, checking, blistering, delamination, or loss of adhesion. The material will show no appreciable discoloration after cleaning.
4. Vinyl legends shall be steel rule or die-cut in such a manner that edges and corners are true, clear and photographically precise. Legends with rounded positive or negative corners, cut or ragged edges or edge build-up will not be accepted.
5. Letterforms supplied that are specified to be installed by the Owner shall be pre-spaced on a carrier sheet with a cover sheet. The carrier sheet shall be capable of being removed intact by stripping without the use of water or other solvents at the time of use.
6. Acceptable manufactures include, but are not limited to the following:
    a. Minnesota Mining and Manufacturing Co. (3M)
    b. Avery Dennison
    c. Oracal
    d. Or Approved Equal

O. Vinyl sheeting (reflective): Provide exterior grade reflective vinyl film backing to all roadway signs; overhead, ground mounted, and column mounted. Product shall conform to ASTM D4946 for the following properties at a minimum:

1. Gloss level shall be no less than 50 when measured using a 60 degree glossmeter per ASTM D523.
2. Thickness Minimum 0.50mm or greater.
3. Adhesive Quality: Minimum 55 oz. per inch width, after curing for 24 hours, required to break adhesive bond.
4. Meet or exceed all MUTCD requirements for retroreflectivity and performance.
5. 3M DG^3 Diamond Grade reflective vinyl #4090 or approved equal.

P. Printed Sign Message Panels: The printing of all sign message panels shall be provided by a professional printer utilizing a high-quality printer and inks capable of reproducing the specified colors of the project requirements. The equipment used must be capable of printing six colors on a large format ink jet flatbed printer. The printing products and process used must be calibrated as required and capable of consistently reproducing matching printed output, color density and accurate graphic quality. All printed signage components must have an even visual appearance of all colors when both illuminated and not illuminated. No visible inconsistencies will be acceptable and all sign panels shall include a protective overcoat that does not impact the color quality or appearance if required to deliver acceptable finished and installed panels. Edge lighted sign message panels require a double strike of printing ink in order to achieve the desired color saturation.

Q. Polycarbonate Sheet: Provide factory finished white polycarbonate sheet stock for sign panels. Thickness shall be 0.125-inch (3mm) minimum and or as specified on the drawings.

R. Silicone Adhesive: Ready to use, high performance adhesive as recommended by the manufacturer for each bonding condition.

S. Zinc Signs with Photo-Engraving: Provide 1/8" thick engraver's quality, chemically deep-etched zinc alloy #Z450 for all signs as specified for behavioral health areas. Magnesium is not an acceptable substitute.

1. Zinc signs shall be mechanically photo-etched to produce raised tactile character and Grade 2 Braille.
2. Text and Braille to be integral with the zinc background. Individually applied and hand-spaced graphics are not acceptable.
3. Tactile characters shall be painted with a contrasting color from the background as specified on the drawings.
4. The Grade 2 Braille shall be the same color as the background.
5. Comply with all ADA requirements for tactile and Braille signs.
6. All edges to be smooth and free of sharp edges. The outside edges of signs shall have continuous bull nose edges.
7. Zinc signs shall be mounted with mechanical fasteners.

T. Type I LED Display

1. 14mm pixel pitch or smaller.
2. 16 x 112 full matrix display or larger.
3. Capable of amber & red color pixels (additional colors acceptable).
4. Capable of a minimum of 16 characters at a minimum of 6 inch character height.

5. 120VAC service input.
6. UL listed for wet conditions.
7. Vendor make and model to match Type I LED displays installed in previous phases.

U. Type II LED Display

1. 14mm pixel pitch or smaller.
2. 16 x 80 full matrix display or larger.
3. Capable of amber & red color pixels (additional colors acceptable).
4. Capable of a minimum of 8 characters at a minimum of 7 inch character height.
5. 120VAC service input.
6. UL listed for wet conditions.
7. Vendor make and model to match Type II LED displays installed in previous phases.

2.3 ACCESSORIES AND SPARE PARTS

A. Anchors and Inserts: Provide nonferrous-metal or hot-dip galvanized anchors and inserts for exterior installations and elsewhere as required for corrosion resistance. Use toothed steel or lead expansion-bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors. Furnish inserts, as required, to be set into concrete or masonry work.

B. Fasteners: Unless otherwise indicated, use concealed fasteners fabricated from metals that are non-corrosive to either the sign material or mounting surface. All bolts, washers and nuts shall be stainless steel of T-316 alloy.

C. Exposed Metal Fasteners: Fabricated from same basic metal and finish of fastened metal unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 GENERAL FINISHES

A. Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Appearance of Finished Work: Variations in appearance of abutting or adjacent pieces are acceptable if they are within one-half of the range of approved samples. Noticeable variations in the same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of other components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

D. Corrosion Protection: Coat concealed metal surfaces which will be in direct contact with concrete, masonry, wood or dissimilar metals, in exterior work, and work to be built into exterior and below grade walls and decks, with a heavy coat of bituminous paint. Do not extend coating onto exposed surfaces.

2.5 ALUMINUM FINISHES

A. Clear Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 clear anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, over a satin mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.

B. Color Anodic Finish: Manufacturer's standard Class 1 integrally colored or electrolytic deposited color anodic coating, 0.018 mm or thicker, in the color specified on the drawings applied over a satin mechanical finish, complying with AAMA 611.

C. Urethane Paint (On Aluminum): Paint shall be acrylic polyurethane, an ultraviolet inhibited aliphatic isocyanate/acrylic system. Applied in accordance with manufacturer's recommendations. The paint finish shall be eggshell or satin unless otherwise specified.

D. Aluminum Finishing: Aluminum finishes shall be acrylic polyurethane two-part catalyzed coating system. All coating applications shall be prepared and spray applied in the factory by skilled mechanics. All surfaces shall be mechanically sanded removing all grain lines, striations, and surface blemishes, cleaned with non-abrasive scouring pads, rinsed, and air-dried prior to receiving coatings.

E. Coatings shall be prepared as designated by manufacturer’s latest literature for surface preparation and application but in no case less than one (1) applicable primer coat and two (2) final full coats. All finished surfaces shall be uniform.

F. Colors shall match color designations as indicated on the drawings.

G. Anodizing: Exterior Applications - For a clear anodized (natural) finish use AA-M21C22A41 with a minimum 0.7 mil (0.02 mm). For a color anodized finish use AA-M21C22A42 with a minimum 0.7 mil (0.02mm) to match samples provided by Architect. Interior Applications - For a clear anodized (natural) finish use AAAA-M21C22A31 with a minimum 0.4 mil (0.01 mm). For a color anodized finish use AA-M21C22A32 with a minimum 0.4 mil (0.01 mm) to match samples provided by Architect.

2.6 STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1, "White Metal Blast Cleaning," or SSPC-SP 8, "Pickling."

B. Factory Priming for Painted Finish: Apply shop primer specified below immediately after surface preparation and pretreatment.

C. Shop Primer: Manufacturer's or fabricator's standard, fast-curing, lead- and chromate-free, universal primer, selected for resistance to normal atmospheric corrosion, for compatibility with substrate and field-applied finish paint system indicated, and for capability to provide a sound foundation for field-applied topcoats despite prolonged exposure.

2.7 STAINLESS-STEEL FINISHES

A. Surface Preparation: Remove tool and die marks and stretch lines, or blend into finish.

B. Polished Finishes: Grind and polish surfaces to produce uniform finish, free of cross scratches.

1. When polishing is completed, passivate and rinse surfaces. Remove embedded foreign matter and leave surfaces chemically clean.
2. Directional Satin Finish: No. 4.
3. Dull Satin Finish: No. 6.
4. Reflective, Directional Polish: No. 7.
5. Mirrorlike Reflective, Nondirectional Polish: No. 8.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SITE VISITS AND MEETINGS

A. Site Visits: The Contractor shall conduct site visits as required during all stages of the project. The Contractor is reminded that all personnel must first check-in with the airport administration office to obtain any necessary badges, passes or training required. Verify with the Owner any requirements for on-site visits, security access and escorts. Request clarifications and specific instructions from the Project Team as needed.

B. Pre-Construction Meetings: Meetings with representatives from the Project Team at the beginning of a project are highly encouraged. These meetings help the Contractor to establish procedures for communication and coordination with Project Team.

C. Pre-Installation Meetings on Site: Meetings at the project site with the sign installers are highly encouraged. These meetings should include a walk through the work area to identify any unanticipated site conditions and confirm the status of the construction.

3.2 FABRICATION

A. General: Shop fabrication and tolerances shall conform to the standards of the industry. All items shall be shop fabricated so far as practicable:

1. Signs structures shall have smooth, uniform surfaces; with message and characters having uniform faces, sharp corners, and precisely formed lines and profiles.
2. Mill joints to tight, hairline fit. Form joints exposed to weather to exclude water penetration. Accurately machine, file, fit and rigidly frame together sign joints, corners, miters, etc., at joint and contact points.
3. Attach materials with sufficient strength, number and spacing not to fail until materials joined are broken or permanently deformed.
4. Preassemble signs in the shop to greatest extent possible. Disassemble signs only as necessary for shipping and handling limitations. Clearly mark units for reassembly and installation, in location not exposed to view after final assembly.
5. Fabricate all work to be truly straight, plumb, level and square and to sizes, shapes and profiles indicated on the approved shop drawings.
6. Conceal fasteners if possible; otherwise, locate fasteners where they will be inconspicuous.
7. Edges and corners of finished letterforms and graphics true and clean.
8. Isolate any dissimilar metals.

B. Workmanship: Form materials to shapes with straight lines, sharp angles and smooth curves, and hairline joints. Close forming, cutting and joining will be necessary.
1. Secure members, components and elements by mechanical fasteners of proper size and spacing as detailed, or otherwise required to rigidly hold members in place without distortion or deflection.
2. Perform welding of the correct type to prevent distortions of flat surfaces and insure a sufficiently strong and safe installation. Isolate any dissimilar metals.
3. Provide finished signs with properly aligned clean cut and sharp messages and borders. Fabricated signs must be free of wrinkles, bubbles, foreign matter, scratches, free of patches, or other visually identifiable defects. Ensure that finished background panels are essentially a plane surface.
4. Secure members, components and elements by mechanical fasteners of proper size and spacing as detailed, or otherwise required to rigidly hold members in place without distortion or deflection.

C. Text and Graphics: All text and graphics must be reproduced accurately and free from distortion. Round positive or negative corners, nicked or ragged edges are not acceptable.
1. Arrows and symbols shall be reproduced exactly by photographic process and be submitted for approval prior to fabrication.
2. All letterforms shall be of the computer-generated type, free of any distortion. Hand cut letterforms are subject to rejection.

3. The Contractor is responsible for submitting and receiving approvals for any message layouts which must be altered from specifications because of size constraints.

D. Support Steel: Fabrication shall comply with requirements of the AISC specifications, unless otherwise specified.

1. Provide all support steel and connections necessary for complete erection. Unless otherwise indicated, shop connections shall be welded.
2. Welding shall be in accordance with the approved welding procedures and AWS Structural Welding Code.
3. Furnish leveling plates where required.
4. Furnish anchor bolts as indicated to be embedded in concrete, including nuts, lock washers and washers. Detail anchor bolts such that the projection above the nut after column is in place is equal to the diameter of the anchor bolt.
5. Notify Contractors for other trades so that holes in structural steel can be provided for attachment of their work where required. Provide necessary holes if information is received prior to fabrication.
6. Unless otherwise shown, holes for attachment of wood blocking shall be 1/2-inch diameter at 34 inch spacing.

E. Painting: In general, paint application shall be by airless spray.

1. Apply paint only when the relative humidity is below 85 percent and ambient temperature is above 55 degrees Fahrenheit.
2. Paint shall not be applied until the preceding coat has dried.
3. Clean and prepare surfaces according to the manufacturer's printed instructions.
4. Primer all surfaces according to the paint manufactures specifications.
5. Ferrous Metals:
    a. Prepare surface by removing loose mill scale, rust, accessible slag or flux deposit, dirt or any foreign matter by power brushing. Remove oil and grease deposits by solvent.
    b. After cleaning, give surface 1 shop coat of prime paint. Apply thoroughly and evenly to a dry surface. Surfaces inaccessible after assembly or erection shall be given an additional shop coat of a different color then the first coat. Each coat shall have a minimum dry film thickness of 2.5 mils.
6. Aluminum shall be pretreated as recommended by the paint manufacturer, including:
    a. Degreasing process and rinse.
    b. Chemical etching process and rinse.
    c. Deoxidizing process and rinse.

d. Chromate process ASTM B499, rinse and dry.
e. Prime surfaces with manufacturer's recommended primer.
f. Apply paint at the rate of 2.5 mils per coat by air or airless spray, brush or roller. Coating shall be even and free from any marks or streaks.

7. Before application of the finish paint, touch up all chipped or abraded areas within boundaries of graphic painting. Touch up paint shall be of same formulation and color as original paint.

8. Coatings applied by the approved method shall be thinned only to provide the required workability. Apply coats uniformly, free from runs and brush marks or streaking.

9. Comply with coating manufacturer's written instructions for cleaning, conversion coating, and applying.

F. Welded Connections: Comply with AWS standards for recommended practices in shop welding. Provide welds behind finished surfaces without distortion or discoloration of exposed side. Clean exposed welded surfaces of welding flux and dress exposed and contact surfaces.

3.3 DELIVERY AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Provide protective covering or crating as recommended by the manufacturer to protect sign components and surfaces against damage during transportation and delivery.

B. Inspection: Inspect sign components for damage upon delivery. Do not install damaged sign components. Repair minor damage to signs, provided the finished repair is equal in all respects to the original work and is acceptable to the Owner; otherwise remove and replace damaged sign components.

C. Coordination: Coordinate setting drawings, diagrams, templates, instructions and directions for the installation of items having integral anchors which are to be embedded in concrete or masonry construction. Coordinate delivery of such items to applicable trades for installation. Coordinate time of delivery so that signs can be installed within a timely manner once delivered to the project site.

D. Handling: Handle signs carefully to prevent breakage, surface abrasion, denting, soiling, and other defects. Comply with the manufacturer s handling instructions for unloading components subject to damage.

3.4 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of work.

B. Verify that items anchors and electrical power are sized and located to accommodate signs.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

D. The Contractor must coordinate on-site work, access to site, and final sign placement with the Project Team for each installation. Where structural supports for signage, or modifications to existing conditions surrounding building elements are required, it shall be provided by the Contractor.

3.5 INSTALLATION

A. General:

1. Field verify existing conditions prior to beginning installation activities. Notify the Project Team immediately to resolve potential conflicts or non-typical conditions.
2. Locate signs and accessories where indicated, using mounting methods of types described and in compliance with manufacturer's written instructions.
3. Layout and install the work sign units level, plumb and at height and margins indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion or other defects of appearance.
4. Install signs level, plumb, and at heights indicated, with sign surfaces free from distortion and other defects in appearance.
5. The installation of fixed material shall be under the general direction of the Architect in accordance with applicable specifications and layout drawings.

B. Preparation: Verify that substrates to receive signs are clean, free of deleterious substances that would detract from the neat appearance of high quality sign work, or that would interfere with the durable installation of sign work. Confirm that substrate finishes have been completed and cured sufficiently to receive sign materials.

C. Anchors and Inserts: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices which must be set in concrete or built into masonry for installation of this work. Provide setting drawings, templates, instructions and directions for installation of anchorage devices. Provide toothed steel or lead shield expansion bolt devices for drilled-in-place anchors and inserts for exterior installation. Provide units with exposed surfaces matching the texture and finish of metal item anchored.

D. Erection: All surfaces shall be covered with protective cover non-deleterious to finish for protection until final installation or erection. Complete all connections in proper alignment and tighten bolts securely. Leveling is to be done only by instruments; measuring equal distances from existing building surfaces will not be acceptable as a basis of level and/or plumb. After erection, all surfaces marred during erection and exposed bolts, bolt heads, etc., shall be retouched with the same paint used previously.

E. Room Identification Signs: Install signs on walls adjacent to latch side of door where applicable. Where not indicated or possible, such as double doors, install signs on nearest adjacent walls. Locate to allow approach within 3 inches (75 mm) of sign without encountering protruding objects or standing within swing of door.

F. Wall-Mounted Signs: Comply with sign manufacturer's written instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.

G. Standard Installation: Utilize two-faced adhesive tape and clear silicone adhesive to install wall mounted signs unless their size or weigh requires the use of mechanical fasteners. Do not use this method for vinyl-covered or rough surfaces.

H. Shim Plate Mounting: If required, provide concealed aluminum shim plates with predrilled and countersunk holes, at locations indicated, and where other mounting methods are not practicable. Attach plate with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate. Attach panel signs to plate using method specified above.

I. Mechanical Fasteners: Use non-removable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.

J. Signs Mounted on Glass: Provide matching opaque plate on opposite side of glass to conceal mounting materials.

K. Bracket-Mounted Signs: Provide manufacturer's standard brackets, fittings, and hardware for mounting signs that project at right angles from walls and ceilings. Attach brackets and fittings securely to walls and ceilings with concealed fasteners and anchoring devices to comply with manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Dimensional Characters: Mount characters using standard fastening methods to comply with manufacturer's written instructions for character form, type of mounting, wall construction, and condition of exposure indicated. Provide heavy paper template to establish character spacing and to locate holes for fasteners. Characters shall be shaded as a solid for easy legibility of Project Team approval prior to installation.

M. Flush Mounting: Mount characters with backs in contact with wall surface.

N. Projected Mounting: Mount characters at projection distance from wall surface as indicated on the drawings.

O. Packaging and Labeling: For permanent roadway signs, label the back of all finished panels at the bottom edge with “MLB”, the date of fabrication, sign sheeting system manufacturer, type, and the fabricator’s initials.

1. Make the labels unobtrusive, but legible enough to be easily read by an observer on the ground when the sign is in its final position.

2. Apply the label in a manner that is at least as durable as the sign face.

3. Properly package signs to protect them during storage, shipment and handling to prevent damage to the sign face and panel.

P. Vinyl Graphics: Comply with sign manufacturer's written installation instructions except where more stringent requirements apply.

Q. Mechanical Fasteners: Use non-removable mechanical fasteners placed through predrilled holes. Attach signs with fasteners and anchors suitable for secure attachment to substrate as recommended in writing by sign manufacturer.

R. Building Penetrations: Coordinate placement of anchorage devices with templates for installing signs.

S. Special Instructions: Halt all work when notified of a proposed change, or if unsatisfactory results are anticipated. Notify the Project Team immediately and proceed only after receiving additional instructions from the Owner, Architect or Graphic Designer. Do not proceed with installation of sign work until unacceptable conditions have been corrected and substrates are ready to receive sign work.

3.6 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Cleaning of Signs: After installation, clean soiled sign surfaces according to manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Cleaning of Premises: The Contractor shall use special care in the disposition of excess materials and rubbish. Rubbish shall not be allowed to accumulate but shall be consistently collected and removed at the completion of this work, on a daily basis. Under no circumstances will it be allowed to accumulate.

C. Protective Coverings: Provide protective coverings, barriers, devices, and other procedures to protect finished work. If, despite such protection, finished work becomes damaged, engage other trades as needed to restore damaged work so no evidence remains of correction work.

D. Ample protection by means of drop cloths or layers of paper must be provided for existing apparatus or parts of the building.

E. Restore protective coverings which have been damaged during shipment or installation of the work. Remove protection when requested for inspection of finishes and replace. Retain protective coverings intact and remove simultaneously from similar finished items to preclude non-uniform oxidation and discoloration.

F. Remove protective coverings only when there is no possibility of damage from other work yet to be performed at the same location.

G. Protect signs from damage until acceptance by Owner.

H. Repairs: Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the shop, make required repairs and refinish entire unit, or provide new units as required.

3.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. As Built Drawings: The Contractor shall submit "as built" drawings digital PDF format.

B. Braille Certification: Submit certified letter as to the accuracy of all Braille messages in this graphics program. Certification shall be from a Library of Congress Braille translator, the Lighthouse for the Blind, or other source acceptable to the Owner.

C. Maintenance Manuals and Instructions: Include written instructions for removal of signs attached to wall surfaces including recommended methods for removal of residual adhesives. Prior to final acceptance date, submit digital PDF files of operating and maintenance manuals with operating and maintenance instructions, parts listing, recommended parts inventory listing, purchase source listing, diagnostic and repair information available to manufacturer's and installer's maintenance personnel, emergency instructions and similar information organized behind labeled tabs.

END OF SECTION 10 14 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 26 00 - WALL AND DOOR PROTECTION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Corner guards
   2. Abuse-resistant wall coverings

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" for metal protective trim units, according to BHMA A156.6, used for armor, kick, mop, and push plates.

1.3 COUNTRY-OF-ORIGIN AND PRODUCT MARKING

A. Wall and door protection materials shall comply with the provisions outlined in FAR Subpart 25.2 – Buy American Act – Construction Materials.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, impact strength, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
   2. Include fire ratings of units recessed in fire-rated walls and listings for door-protection items attached to fire-rated doors.

B. Shop Drawings: For each type of wall and door protection showing locations and extent.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of impact-resistant wall-protection unit indicated, in each color and texture specified.

   1. Include Samples of accent strips and accessories to verify color selection.

D. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish on the following products, prepared on Samples of size indicated below:

   1. Corner Guards: 12 inches (300 mm) long. Include example top caps.

2. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: 12 by 12 inches (304 by 304 mm) square.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Material Certificates: For each type of exposed plastic material.

B. Sample Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For each type of wall and door protection product to include in maintenance manuals.

1. Include recommended methods and frequency of maintenance for maintaining best condition of plastic covers under anticipated traffic and use conditions. Include precautions against using cleaning materials and methods that may be detrimental to finishes and performance.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run,that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Mounting and Accessory Components: Amounts proportional to the quantities of extra materials. Package mounting and accessory components with each extra material.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store wall and door protection in original undamaged packages and containers inside well- ventilated area protected from weather, moisture, soiling, extreme temperatures, and humidity.

1. Maintain room temperature within storage area at not less than 70 deg F (21 deg C) during the period plastic materials are stored.
2. Keep plastic materials out of direct sunlight.
3. Store plastic wall- and door-protection components for a minimum of 72 hours, or until plastic material attains a minimum room temperature of 70 deg F (21 deg C).

a. Store corner-guard covers in a vertical position.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of wall- and door- protection units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures including detachment of components from each other or from the substrates, delamination, and permanent deformation beyond normal use.
b. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, plastics, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain wall- and door-protection products of each type from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84 or UL 723; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 450 or less.

Regulatory Requirements: Comply with applicable provisions in the U.S. Architectural & Transportation Barriers Compliance Board's ADA-ABA Accessibility Guidelines for Buildings and Facilities and
ICC A117.1

2.3 CORNER GUARDS

A. Surface-Mounted, Metal Corner Guards: Fabricated as one piece from formed or extruded metal with formed edges; with 90- or 135-degree turn to match wall condition.
1. Material: Stainless-steel sheet, Type 304.

a. Thickness: Minimum 0.0625 inch (1.6 mm).
b. Finish: Directional satin, No. 4.

2. Wing Size: Nominal 2-1/2 by 2-1/2 inches (65 by 65 mm)
3. Corner Radius: 1/8 inch (3 mm).
4. Mounting: Flat-head, countersunk screws through factory-drilled mounting holes.

2.4 ABUSE-RESISTANT WALL COVERINGS

A. Abuse-Resistant Sheet Wall Covering:

1. Aluminum tread plate
2. Semirigid, plastic sheet

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. American Floor Products Company, Inc.
b. Construction Specialties, Inc.
c. Koroseal Interior Products, LLC.
d. Kwalu, LLC.
e. Nystrom, Inc.
f. Pawling Corporation.
g. WallGuard.com.
h. inpro Corporation.

4. Size: 48 inches by 96 inches or 120" (1219 by 2438 mm) for sheet.
5. Sheet Thickness: Aluminum – 0.125"; Semirigid, plastic 0.060 inch (1.5 mm).
6. Color and Texture: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.
7. Height: As indicated.
8. Trim and Joint Moldings: Extruded aluminum/rigid plastic that matches wall-covering color.
9. Mounting: Aluminum – un-drilled for adhesive mounting, pre-drilled or pre-drilled and countersunk for use with mechanical fasteners; Semirigid, plastic sheet - Adhesive.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Materials: alloy 3003, bright finish, approximate weight 1.920 lbs/sq ft.

B. Plastic Materials: Chemical- and stain-resistant, high-impact-resistant plastic with integral color throughout; extruded and sheet material as required, thickness as indicated.

C. Polycarbonate Plastic Sheet: ASTM D6098, S-PC01, Class 1 or Class 2, abrasion resistant;

with a minimum impact-resistance rating of 15 ft.-lbf/in. (800 J/m) of notch when tested according to ASTM D256, Test Method A.

D. Fasteners: Aluminum, nonmagnetic stainless-steel, or other noncorrosive metal screws, bolts, and other fasteners compatible with items being fastened. Use security-type fasteners where exposed to view.

E. Adhesive: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

F. Mechanical Fasteners: As recommended by protection product manufacturer.

2.6 FABRICATION

A. Fabricate wall and door protection according to requirements indicated for design, performance, dimensions, and member sizes, including thicknesses of components.

B. Factory Assembly: Assemble components in factory to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly. Disassemble only as necessary for shipping and handling.

C. Quality: Fabricate components with uniformly tight seams and joints and with exposed edges rolled. Provide surfaces free of wrinkles, chips, dents, uneven coloration, and other imperfections. Fabricate members and fittings to produce flush, smooth, and rigid hairline joints.

2.7 FINISHES

A. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and wall areas, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances, fire rating, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine walls to which wall and door protection will be attached for blocking, grounds,

and other solid backing that have been installed in the locations required for secure attachment of support fasteners.

1. For wall and door protection attached with adhesive, verify compatibility with and suitability of substrates, including compatibility with existing finishes or primers.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Complete finishing operations, including painting, before installing wall and door protection.

B. Before installation, clean substrate to remove dust, debris, and loose particles.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Installation Quality: Install wall and door protection according to manufacturer's written instructions, level, plumb, and true to line without distortions. Do not use materials with chips, cracks, voids, stains, or other defects that might be visible in the finished Work.

B. Mounting Heights: Install wall and door protection in locations and at mounting heights indicated on Drawings.

C. Accessories: Provide splices, mounting hardware, anchors, trim, joint moldings, and other accessories required for a complete installation.

1. Provide anchoring devices and suitable locations to withstand imposed loads.
2. Where splices occur in horizontal runs of more than 20 feet (6.1 m), splice aluminum retainers and plastic covers at different locations along the run, but no closer than 12 inches (305 mm) apart.
3. Adjust end and top caps as required to ensure tight seams.

D. Abuse-Resistant Wall Covering: Install top and edge moldings, corners, and divider bars as required for a complete installation.

E. Door-Frame Protectors: Install on both door jams.

F. Fire Doors: Install protection according to the listing of each item.

G. Acclimate materials to building conditions for at least 24 hours prior to installation.

3.4 CLEANING

A. Immediately after completion of installation, clean aluminum/plastic covers and accessories using a standard cleaning agent as recommended by protection product manufacturer.

B. Remove excess adhesive using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 10 26 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 10 28 00 – TOILET ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following toilet and service accessory items for restroom areas, Contractor Furnished/Contractor Installed:

1. Paper Towel Dispenser / Trash Receptacle
2. LED Mirror
3. Bath Tissue Roll Dispenser
4. Sanitary Napkin Disposal
5. Horizontal Grab Bar - 36"
6. Horizontal Grab Bar - 42"
7. Vertical Grab Bar - 18"
8. Toilet Seat Cover Dispenser
9. Sharp Disposal (Recessed)
10. Coat Hook

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit the following in accordance with Conditions of the Contract and Division 1 Specifications Sections.

B. Product Data for each toilet accessory item specified, including details of construction relative to materials, dimensions, gages, profiles, method of mounting, specified options, and finishes.

C. Setting Drawings: Where cutouts are required in other work, provide templates, substrate preparation instructions, and directions for preparing cutouts and for installation of anchorage devices.

1. Provide mounting drawings for all surface-mounted locations in coordination with the contractors for underlying substrates to validate needed anchorages, framing supports, blocking and reinforcements needed. Failure to do so shall result in the re-work and removal and repair and re-installation of products and systems by this contractor.

2. Coordinate work in this Section with any Owner provide items whether Owner installed, or contractor installed prior to installation of items in this Section. Provide the Architect with the consolidated layout with all mounted items indicated. Notify the Architect if any conflicts exist, or any resulting locations are identified which

violate other requirements of the ADA, Authority Having Jurisdiction, or the local building code.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Inserts and Anchorages: Furnish inserts and anchoring devices that must be set in concrete or built into masonry; coordinate delivery with other work to avoid delay.

B. Single-Source Responsibility: Provide products of same manufacturer for each type of accessory unit and for units exposed to view in same areas, unless otherwise acceptable to the Architect.

1.4 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Coordination: Coordinate accessory locations, installation, and sequencing with other work to avoid interference and to assure proper installation, operation, adjustment, cleaning, and servicing of toilet accessory items.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TOILET ROOM ACCESSORIES

A. Accessory Items: Items of Work for NON-DETENTION AREAS covered under this Section shall be models and manufacturers as listed below:

1. Product and materials listing of accessories, all products and materials shall be accompanied by complete installation kits for intended materials substrates as indicated on the Drawings:

a. TA-01: Automatic Paper Towel Dispenser/Trash Receptable (Recessed). Bobrick B-3979, Satin Stainless Steel.

b. TA-02: Electric Mirror: Silhouette Lighted Mirror, 24” x 48” SIL3-24.00x48.00-LHED-30K

c. TA-03: Bath Tissue Roll Dispenser, Bobrick 35883

d. TA-04: Sanitary Napkin Disposal, Bobrick 254

e. TA-05: Grab bars - modern and clean line 1 1/2" cylinder tube bar pre-welded and perpendicular to 2 wall mounts. Pre-welded attached wall mounts are 1" cylinder tubes. The wall mounts attach to a 5/16" even

thickness disc shaped modern wall flange. Overhang depth from wall finish face to inside of edge of straight grab bar is 1 1/2", overhang width from outside edge of straight grab bar to centerline of wall mount/plate is 1", wall mounts and grab bar have a 90 degree straight connection with a modern, pure, and crisp aesthetic. Overall length of outside edge of wall flange to opposite outside edge of wall flange is 42"

- Basis of Design: Kohler; K-11896-BS
- TA-05.1: Horizontal grab bar. K-11896-BS, length 42 inches, 304 stainless steel, Kohler K-11896-BS.
- Horizontal grab bar. K-11895-BS, length 36 inches, 304 stainless steel, Kohler K-11896-BS .
- Vertical grab bar. K-11892-BS, length 18 inches, 304 stainless steel, Kohler K-11892-BS .

f. TA-06: Toilet Seat Cover Dispenser, Bobrick B-301

g. TA-07: Soap Dispenser: Sloan, ESD-501-BN, hardwired

h. TA-08: Faucet: Reference Drawings, provide holes for faucet and soap dispenser

i. TA-09: Floor Standing Waste Receptacle, Bobrick B-2260

j. TA-10: Coat Hook. Mockett CH53

k. TA-11: Surface Mounted Sharp Disposal. Bobrick B-350169, Keyed like other products, removable needle disposal.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install toilet accessory units in accordance with manufacturers' instructions, using fasteners appropriate to substrate and recommended by manufacturer of unit. Install units plumb and level, firmly anchored in locations and at heights indicated.

B. Provide needed blocking or supports for coordination of other trades.

C. Mount fixtures in accordance with loading, support and weight capacities indicated or required by the manufacturer or local building codes.

D. Comply with ADA requirements; Authority Having Jurisdiction and local building code for mounting heights, clearances and locations for all items in this Section.

E. Coordinate with the permanently mounted fixtures, toiles, partitions and other elements to fit each piece. Notify Architect of any conflicts prior to field mounting. Failure to do so shall result in the installer to-remove and replace items with repair to any damage to underlying surface.

F. Fit all electrically powered devices with batteries and perform initial testing and operation using properly sized paper products.

3.2 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Adjust toilet accessories for proper operation and verify that mechanisms function smoothly. Replace damaged or defective items.

B. Clean all stainless-steel surfaces of accessories in accordance with technical and performance requirements in a manner which maintains the non-rusting characteristics of the metal, preventing reduction of its capabilities.

C. Clean and polish all exposed surfaces in strict accordance with manufacturer's recommendations after removing temporary labels and protective coatings.

D. Fit each towel dispenser; both manual and electrically operated with initial loading of paper products provided by the Owner to validate proper operation and adjustment of device and accessories.

END OF SECTION 10 28 00

SECTION 10 44 13 - FIRE PROTECTION CABINETS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fire-protection cabinets for the following:

a. Portable fire extinguisher.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 10 44 16 "Fire Extinguishers" for portable, hand-carried fire extinguishers accommodated by fire-protection cabinets

1.2 PREINSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to fire-protection cabinets, including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Show door hardware, cabinet type, trim style, and panel style. Include roughing-in dimensions and details showing recessed-, semirecessed-, or surface-mounting method and relationships of box and trim to surrounding construction.
2. Show location of knockouts for hose valves.

B. Shop Drawings: For fire-protection cabinets.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

C. Samples: For each type of exposed finish required.

D. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of exposed finish required.

E. Samples for Verification: For each type of exposed finish required, prepared on samples 6 by 6 inches square.

F. Product Schedule: For fire-protection cabinets. Indicate whether recessed, semirecessed, or surface mounted. Coordinate final fire-protection cabinet schedule with fire-extinguisher schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For fire-protection cabinets to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size of fire-protection cabinets to ensure that type and capacity of fire extinguishers indicated are accommodated.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of fire-protection cabinets with wall depths.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fire-protection cabinets, accessories, and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire-Rated Fire-Protection Cabinets: Listed and labeled to comply with requirements in ASTM E814 for fire-resistance rating of walls where they are installed.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 FIRE-PROTECTION CABINET

A. Cabinet Type: Suitable for fire extinguisher.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Babcock-Davis.
b. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.

c. GMR International Equipment Corporation.
d. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
e. JL Industries, Inc.; a division of the Activar Construction Products Group.
f. Larsens Manufacturing Company.
g. Modern Metal Products, Division of Technico Inc.
h. MOON American.
i. Nystrom, Inc.
j. Potter Roemer LLC.
k. Strike First Corporation of America (The).

B. Cabinet Construction: Nonrated unless within a fire rated wall, if within a fire rated wall, provide the following:

1. Fire-Rated Cabinets: Construct fire-rated cabinets with double walls fabricated from 0.043-inch-thick cold-rolled steel sheet lined with minimum 5/8-inch-thick fire-barrier material. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.

C. Cabinet Material: Cold-rolled steel sheet.

D. Recessed Cabinet:

1. Trimless with Concealed Flange: Surface of surrounding wall finishes flush with exterior finished surface of cabinet frame and door, without overlapping trim attached to cabinet. Provide recessed flange, of same material as box, attached to box, to act as drywall bead.
2. Trimless with Hidden Flange: Flange of same metal and finish as box overlaps surrounding wall finish and is concealed from view by an overlapping door.
3. Exposed Flat Trim: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

E. Semirecessed Cabinet: One-piece combination trim and perimeter door frame overlapping surrounding wall surface, with exposed trim face and wall return at outer edge (backbend).

1. Square-Edge Trim: 1-1/4- to 1-1/2-inch backbend depth.
2. Rolled-Edge Trim: 2-1/2-inch backbend depth.

F. Surface-Mounted Cabinet: Cabinet box fully exposed and mounted directly on wall with no trim.

G. Cabinet Trim Material: Same material and finish as door.

H. Door Material: Stainless steel sheet.

I. Door Style: Fully glazed panel with frame.

J. Door Glazing: Tempered float glass (clear).

K. Door Hardware: Manufacturer's standard door-operating hardware of proper type for cabinet type, trim style, and door material and style indicated.

1. Provide projecting door pull and friction latch.
2. Provide continuous hinge, of same material and finish as trim,, permitting door to open 180 degrees.

L. Accessories:

1. Mounting Bracket: Manufacturer's standard steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to fire-protection cabinet, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or baked-enamel finish.
2. Lettered Door Handle: One-piece, cast-iron door handle with the word "FIRE" embossed into face.
3. Door Lock: Cam lock that allows door to be opened during emergency by pulling sharply on door handle.
4. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as directed by Architect.

a. Identify fire extinguisher in fire-protection cabinet with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER."

1) Location: Applied to cabinet door.
2) Application Process: Pressure-sensitive vinyl letters.
3) Lettering Color: Red.
4) Orientation: Vertical.

5. Alarm: Manufacturer's standard alarm that actuates when fire-protection cabinet door is opened and that is powered by low voltage, complete with transformer.

M. Materials:

1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M or ASTM A666, Type 304.

a. Finish: ASTM A480/A480M No. 4 directional satin finish,.

2. Tempered Float Glass: ASTM C1048, Kind FT, Condition A, Type I, Quality q3, 3 mm thick, Class 1 (clear).

2.4 FABRICATION

A. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Provide manufacturer's standard box (tub) with trim, frame, door, and hardware to suit cabinet type, trim style, and door style indicated.

1. Weld joints and grind smooth.
2. Miter corners and grind smooth.
3. Provide factory-drilled mounting holes.
4. Prepare doors and frames to receive locks.
5. Install door locks at factory.

B. Cabinet Doors: Fabricate doors according to manufacturer's standards, from materials indicated and coordinated with cabinet types and trim styles.

1. Fabricate door frames with tubular stiles and rails and hollow-metal design, minimum 1/2 inch thick.
2. Fabricate door frames of one-piece construction with edges flanged.
3. Miter and weld perimeter door frames and grind smooth.

C. Cabinet Trim: Fabricate cabinet trim in one piece with corners mitered, welded, and ground smooth.

2.5 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NAAMM's AMP 500, "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products," for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

B. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces of fire-protection cabinets from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

C. Finish fire-protection cabinets after assembly.

D. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine walls and partitions for suitable framing depth and blocking where recessed and semirecessed cabinets will be installed.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare recesses for recessed and semirecessed fire-protection cabinets as required by type and size of cabinet and trim style.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire-protection cabinets in locations and at mounting heights indicated or, if not indicated, at height indicated below:

1. Fire-Protection Cabinet Mounting Height: 42 inches above finished floor to top of fire extinguisher.

B. Fire-Protection Cabinets: Fasten cabinets to structure, square and plumb.

1. Unless otherwise indicated, provide recessed fire-protection cabinets. If wall thickness is inadequate for recessed cabinets, provide semi recessed fire-protection cabinets.
2. Provide inside latch and lock for break-glass panels.
3. Fasten mounting brackets to inside surface of fire-protection cabinets, square and plumb.

3.4 ADJUSTING AND CLEANING

A. Remove temporary protective coverings and strippable films, if any, as fire-protection cabinets are installed unless otherwise indicated in manufacturer's written installation instructions.

B. Adjust fire-protection cabinet doors to operate easily without binding. Verify that integral locking devices operate properly.

C. On completion of fire-protection cabinet installation, clean interior and exterior surfaces as recommended by manufacturer.

D. Touch up marred finishes, or replace fire-protection cabinets that cannot be restored to factory-finished appearance. Use only materials and procedures recommended or furnished by fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket manufacturers.

E. Replace fire-protection cabinets that have been damaged or have deteriorated beyond successful repair by finish touchup or similar minor repair procedures.

END OF SECTION 10 44 13

SECTION 10 44 16 - FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes portable, fire extinguishers and mounting brackets for fire extinguishers.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 10 44 13 "Fire Protection Cabinets."

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to fire extinguishers including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Schedules and coordination requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include rating and classification, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fire extinguisher and mounting brackets.

B. Product Schedule: For fire extinguishers. Coordinate final fire-extinguisher schedule with fire-protection cabinet schedule to ensure proper fit and function.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fire extinguishers to include in maintenance manuals.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate type and capacity of fire extinguishers with fire-protection cabinets to ensure fit and function.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace fire extinguishers that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Failure of hydrostatic test according to NFPA 10 when testing interval required by NFPA 10 is within the warranty period.
b. Faulty operation of valves or release levers.

2. Warranty Period: Six years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. NFPA Compliance: Fabricate and label fire extinguishers to comply with NFPA 10, "Portable Fire Extinguishers."

B. Fire Extinguishers: Listed and labeled for type, rating, and classification by an independent testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Provide fire extinguishers approved, listed, and labeled by FM Global.

2.2 PORTABLE, HAND-CARRIED FIRE EXTINGUISHERS

A. Fire Extinguishers: Type, size, and capacity for each fire-protection cabinet and mounting bracket indicated.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Amerex Corporation.
b. Ansul; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
c. Babcock-Davis.

d. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company.
e. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.
f. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
g. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
h. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
i. Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation.
j. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
k. MOON American, Inc.
l. Nystrom, Inc.
m. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
n. Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
o. Strike First Corporation of America.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain fire extinguishers, fire-protection cabinets, and accessories, from single source from single manufacturer.
3. Valves: Manufacturer's standard.
4. Handles and Levers: Manufacturer's standard.
5. Instruction Labels: Include pictorial marking system complying with NFPA 10, Appendix B, and bar coding for documenting fire-extinguisher location, inspections, maintenance, and recharging.

B. Multipurpose Dry-Chemical Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 5-lb nominal capacity, with monoammonium phosphate-based dry chemical in enameled-steel container.

C. Clean-Agent Type in Steel Container: UL-rated 2-A:10-B:C, 14-lb nominal capacity, with HFC blend agent and inert material in enameled-steel container; with pressure-indicating gage.

2.3 MOUNTING BRACKETS

A. Mounting Brackets: Manufacturer's standard galvanized steel, designed to secure fire extinguisher to wall or structure, of sizes required for types and capacities of fire extinguishers indicated, with plated or red baked-enamel finish.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Amerex Corporation.
b. Ansul; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
c. Babcock-Davis.
d. Badger Fire Protection; a Carrier company.
e. Buckeye Fire Equipment Company.

f. Fire-End & Croker Corporation.
g. Guardian Fire Equipment, Inc.
h. J. L. Industries, Inc.; Activar Construction Products Group, Inc.
i. Kidde; Carrier Global Corporation.
j. Larsen's Manufacturing Company.
k. Nystrom, Inc.
l. Potter Roemer LLC; a Division of Morris Group International.
m. Pyro-Chem; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
n. Strike First Corporation of America.

2. Source Limitations: Obtain mounting brackets and fire extinguishers from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Identification: Lettering complying with authorities having jurisdiction for letter style, size, spacing, and location. Locate as indicated by Architect.

1. Identify bracket-mounted fire extinguishers with the words "FIRE EXTINGUISHER" in red letter decals applied to mounting surface.

a. Orientation: Vertical.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fire extinguishers for proper charging and tagging.

1. Remove and replace damaged, defective, or undercharged fire extinguishers.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. General: Install fire extinguishers and mounting brackets in locations indicated and in compliance with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Mounting Brackets: Fasten mounting brackets to surfaces, square and plumb, at locations indicated.

1. Mounting Height: Top of fire extinguisher to be at 42 inches above finished floor.

END OF SECTION 10 44 16

SECTION 10 73 00 – PROTECTIVE COVERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes: Design, fabrication, and installation of welded extruded protective cover and aluminum walkway cover systems.

B. Products Furnished but not Installed Under this Section: Column sleeves (styrofoam blockouts) or anchor bolts (if required)

1.2 REFERENCES

A. The Aluminum Association (AA):
   1. The Aluminum Design Manual 2000, Specifications & Guidelines for Aluminum Structures.

B. American Architectural Manufacturers Association (AAMA):
   1. AAMA 611, Voluntary Specification for Anodized Architectural Aluminum.

C. American Society of Civil Engineers (ASCE):
   1. ASCE 7, Minimum Design Loads for Buildings and Other Structures.

D. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM):
   1. ASTM B 209, Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum- Alloy Sheet and Plate.
   2. ASTM B 221, Specification for Aluminum and Aluminum- Alloy Extruded Bars, Rods, Wire, Profiles, and Tubes.
   3. ASTM C 150, Specification for Portland Cement.
   4. ASTM C 404, Specification for Aggregates for Masonry Grout.

E. American Welding Society (AWS):
   1. ANSI/AWS D1.2, Structural Welding Code - Aluminum.

1.3 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Design Requirements:
   1. Design Protective Covers in accordance with The Aluminum Design Manual 2000.
   2. Comply with the wind requirements of ASCE 7.
   3. Provide an all welded extruded aluminum system complete with internal drainage. Non-welded systems are not acceptable.
   4. Provide expansion joints to accommodate temperature changes of 120 degrees F. Provide expansion joints with no metal-to-metal contact.

B. Performance Requirements:
   1. Grout: Compressive strength of 2000 psi, minimum.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Manufacturer's product information, specifications, and installation instructions for walkway cover components and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Include plan dimensions, elevations, and details.

C. Samples:
   1. Selection: Manufacturer's standard range of colors for the finishes selected.
   2. Verification: 2-inch-square samples of each finish selected on the substrate specified.

D. Delegated Design Data: Design calculations bearing the seal of a Registered Professional Engineer, licensed in the state where the project is located. Design calculations shall state that the protective cover system design complies with the wind requirements of ASCE 7, the stability criteria of applicable building code, and all other governing criteria. Reference structural contract drawings for design criteria and other additional requirements.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: At least ten years' experience in the design, fabrication, and erection of extruded aluminum protective cover systems.

B. Installer Qualifications: Have protective covers installed by manufacturer, third party installation is not acceptable.

PART 2 - PRODUCT

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. The basis of design are products fabricated by: Peachtree Protective Covers, Inc., 3255 South Sweetwater Rd., Lithia Springs, GA 30122, 770-439-2120, fax 770-439-2122. Locally represented by Logan T. Ashley.
   1. Comparable products by the following manufacturers also will be acceptable:
      a. Mitchell Metals
      b. Charlotte Tent and Awning
   2. Substitutions: Comparable products of other manufacturers will be considered under standard substitution procedures.

B. The basis of design for the Admin Building Canopy is based on products fabricated by: Mapes Architectural Canopies, 7748 North 56th Street, Lincoln, NE 68514. Finishes, fabrication, and installation are standard by manufacturer.
   1. Substitutions: Comparable products of other manufacturers will be considered under standard substitution procedures.

      a. Decking shall consist of an interlocking roll-formed 2 1/2 W style pan (minimum .032 aluminum.)
      b. Intermediate framing members shall be extruded aluminum, alloy 6063-T6, in profile and thickness as prescribed by manufacturer.
      c. Hanger rods and attachment hardware shall be powder coated.
      d. Fascia shall be standard 8" extruded J style (minimum .125 aluminum).
      e. All connections shall be mechanically assembled utilizing 3/16 fasteners with a minimum shear stress of 350 lb. Pre-welded or factory-welded connections are not acceptable.
      f. Decking shall be designed with interlocking roll-formed aluminum members.
      g. Concealed drainage. Water shall drain from covered surfaces into intermediate trough and be directed to either the front for front drainage or to the rear for ground level discharge via one or more designated downspouts.

C. The basis of design for the Interim Curbside Canopy is based on products fabricated by: Peachtree Protective Covers, Inc., 3255 South Sweetwater Rd., Lithia Springs, GA 30122, 770-439-2120, fax 770-439-2122. Locally represented by Logan T. Ashley.
   1. Comparable products by the following manufacturers also will be acceptable:
      a. Mitchell Metals
      b. Charlotte Tent and Awning
   2. Substitutions: Comparable products of other manufacturers will be considered under standard substitution procedures.

D. The basis of design for the Interim Enclosed Pedestrian Walkway is based on products fabricated by: VersaTube Building Systems, 50 Eastley Street, Collierville, TN 38017, 800-810-2993. Locally represented by Chris Black of Grey Interiors, LLC, 704-288-7770.
   1. Substitutions: Comparable products of other manufacturers will be considered under standard substitution procedures.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Members: Extruded aluminum, ASTM B 221, 6063 alloy, T6 temper.

B. Fasteners: Aluminum, 18-8 stainless steel, or 300 series stainless steel.

C. Protective Coating for Aluminum Columns Embedded in Concrete: Clear acrylic.

D. Grout:
   1. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150, Type I.
   2. Sand: ASTM C 404.
   3. Water: Potable.

E. Gaskets: Dry seal santoprene pressure type.

F. Aluminum Flashing: ASTM B 209, Type 3003 H14, 0.040-inch, minimum.

2.3 MIXES

A. Grout: 1-part portland cement to 3 parts sand, add water to produce a pouring consistency.

2.4 FABRICATION

A. General:
   1. Shop Assembly: Assemble components in shop to greatest extent possible to minimize field assembly.
   2. Welding: In accordance with ANSI/AWS D1.2.
   3. Bent Construction: Factory assemble beams to columns to form one-piece rigid bents. Where used make welds smooth and uniform using an inert gas shielded arc. Perform suitable edge preparation to assure 100% penetration. Grind welds only where interfering with adjoining structure to allow for flush connection. Field welding is not permitted. Rigid mechanical joints can be used if supported by engineering calculations and/or testing.
   4. Deck Construction: Fabricate from extruded modules that interlock in a self-flashing manner. Positively fasten interlocking joints creating a monolithic structural unit capable of developing the full strength of the sections. The fastenings must have minimum shear strength of 350 pounds each. Assemble deck with sufficient camber to offset dead load deflection.

B. Columns: Provide radius-cornered tubular extrusions with cutout and internal diverter for drainage where indicated. Circular downspout opening in column not acceptable.

C. Beams: Provide open-top tubular extrusion, top edges thickened for strength and designed to receive deck members in self-flashing manner.

D. Deck: Extruded self-flashing sections interlocking into a composite unit. Provide welded plate closures at deck ends.

E. Fascia: Manufacturer's standard shape. Provide fascia splices where continuous runs of fascia are jointed. Locate splices to be in line with bents and fasten in place on hidden or non-vertical surfaces.

F. Arches: For barrel vault protective covers, provide sharp-cornered tubular extrusions.

G. Factory Finishing: Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with system established by the AAMA for designating aluminum finishes.
   1. Class I, Clear Anodic Finish: AA-M12C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: nonspecular as fabricated; Chemical Finish: etched, medium matted, Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.7 mils or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verification of Conditions: Verify that all concrete, masonry, and roofing work in the vicinity is complete and cleaned.

3.2 ERECTION

A. Erect protective cover true to line, level, and plumb. Protect aluminum columns embedded in concrete with clear acrylic. Fill downspout columns with grout to the discharge level to prevent standing water. Install weep holes at top of concrete in non-draining columns to remove condensation.
B. Provide hairline miters and fitted joints.

3.3 CLEANING

A. Clean all protective cover components promptly after installation.

3.4 PROTECTION
A. Protect materials during and after installation.

END OF SECTION 10 73 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 14 21 23 - ELECTRIC TRACTION PASSENGER ELEVATORS

PART 1 – GENERAL

1.1 SECTION INCLUDES

A. Electric traction passenger elevators.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 01 50 00 – Temporary Facilities and Controls: Protection of floor openings and personnel barriers; temporary power and lighting.

B. Section 03 30 00 – Cast-in-Place Concrete: Elevator pits.

C. Section 03 60 00 – Grouts (Grouting): Grouting door frames and sills.

D. Section 04 20 00 – Masonry Units (Unit Masonry): Setting sleeves, inserts, and anchoring devices in masonry for guide-rail brackets.

E. Section 05 12 00 – Metal Stairs Structural Steel (Structural Steel Framing): Support steel, divider beams, and hoist beams.

F. Section 05 50 00 – Gypsum Metal Fabrications: Pit ladders, supports for entrances in drywall hoistways.

G. Section 06 10 53 – Miscellaneous Rough Carpentry: Temporary platform assembly.

H. Section 07 16 00 – Cementitious Waterproofing: Waterproofing of elevator pit.

I. Section 09 29 00 – Gypsum Board: Hoistway walls.

J. Section 09 90 00 – Paints and Coatings (Painting and Coating): Field painting of elevator entrances over primer.

K. Section 28 31 00 – Detection and Alarm (Fire Detection and Alarm): Heat, smoke, and products of combustion sensing devices, fire alarm signal lines to contacts in machine space.

L. Section 23 00 00 – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Equipment (Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)): Heating, cooling, and ventilation of control and machinery space.

M. Section 26 05 00 – Wiring Methods (Common Work Results for Electrical): Light outlets, convenience outlets, light switches, and conduits.

N. Section 26 24 00 – Switchboards, Panelboards, and Control Centers (Switchboards and Panelboards): Disconnect switches.

O. Section 26 50 00 – Lighting: Light fixtures.

P. Section 22 14 29 – Sump Pumps: For sump pumps, sumps, and sump covers in elevator pits.

Q. Section 27 15 00 – Communications Horizontal Cabling: For Telephone service for elevators and for Internet connection to elevator controllers for remote monitoring.

R. Section 27 30 00 – Telephone and Intercommunication Equipment (Voice Communications): Telephone outlets and elevator telephones.

S. Section 31 00 00 – Earthwork: Excavation of elevator pit.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44 – Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.

B. ADAAG – Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines.

C. ANSI/NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code.

D. ANSI/NFPA 80 – Fire Doors and Windows.

E. ANSI/UL 10B – Fire Tests of Door Assemblies.

F. CAN/CSA C22.1 – Canadian Electrical Code.

G. Model and Local Building CodesH. ISO 9001: 2000 - Quality Management Systems - Requirements.

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Arrange elevator components in control closet or machinery space so equipment can be removed for repairs or replaced with minimal disturbance to other equipment and components.

B. Where permitted by code, provide all elevator equipment including controls, drives, transformers, and rescue features within the elevator hoistway.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 01 33 00 – Submittal Procedures.

B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer/installer's product data, including,

a. Descriptive brochures or detail drawings of car and hall fixtures, cab ceilings, and product features.

b. Power Information: Horsepower, starting current, running current, machine and control heat release, and electrical requirements.

C. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer/installer's shop drawings, including plans, elevations, sections, and details, indicating location of equipment, loads, dimensions, tolerances, materials, components, fabrication, fasteners, hardware, finish, options, accessories, and other information to render totally functional elevators.

D. Samples: Submit manufacturer/installer's samples of standard colors and finishes of finish materials.

E. Operation and Maintenance Manual: Submit manufacturer/installer's operation and maintenance manual; including operation, maintenance, adjustment, and cleaning instructions; trouble shooting guide; renewal parts catalogs; and electrical wiring diagrams.

F. Warranty: Submit manufacturer/installer's standard warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer/Installer's Qualifications: Specialize in manufacturing and installing elevator equipment, with a minimum of 10 years successful experience.

B. Regulatory Requirements:

a. Elevator design, clearances, construction, workmanship, materials, and installation, unless specified otherwise, shall be in accordance with ANSI/ASME A17.1, handicap accessibility, Americans with Disabilities Act, and other codes having legal jurisdiction.

b. ANSI/ASME A17.1 shall govern, except where codes having legal jurisdiction include more rigid requirements or conflict with ANSI/ASME A17.1.

c. Elevator shall follow design and manufacturing procedures certified in accordance with ISO 9001-2000 to meet product and service requirements for quality assurance for new products.

d. Where product is in variance to the published ANSI/ASME A17.1 model code, provide a 3rd party AECO certification demonstrating equivalent function, safety, and performance.

C. Pre-installation Meeting:

a. Convene pre-installation meeting before start of installation of elevators.

b. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section, including Contractor, Architect, and elevator manufacturer/installer.

c. Review examination, installation, field quality control, adjusting, cleaning, protection, and coordination with other work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer/installer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer/installer.

B. Storage: Store materials in clean, dry area indoors in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.

C. Handling: Protect materials during handling and installation to prevent damage.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Electrical Power:

a. Owner will arrange for temporary 220 VAC, single-phase, 60 Hz., GFCI-protected electricity to be available for installation of elevator components.

b. Comply with Section 015100 – Temporary Utilities.

B. Installation of the Elevator:

a. General Contractor will provide permanent three-phase power prior to installation start.

b. General Contractor will provide clear, rollable access to a 20' x 10' secure and dry storage area prior to delivery.

c. General Contractor will provide a clean, dry, and complete hoistway along with temporary installation platform and all required OSHA-compliant barricades prior to delivery.

C. Temporary Use of Elevator:

a. Owner will negotiate with manufacturer/installer for temporary use of elevator, if required.

b. Temporary use of elevator shall be in accordance with terms and conditions of manufacturer/installer's temporary acceptance form.

1.9 SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate elevator work with work of other trades, for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer/installer shall guarantee materials and workmanship of equipment installed under these specifications and make good, defects not due to ordinary wear or to improper use, which may develop within 1 year after completion of installation or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier.

1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Elevator maintenance service shall be performed by elevator manufacturer/installer.

B. Elevators shall receive regular maintenance on each unit for period of 12 months after completion of work specified herein or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier.

C. Trained employees shall make periodic examinations and perform work including necessary adjusting, greasing, oiling, and replacing parts to keep elevators in operation, except parts that require replacement because of accidents, vandalism, misuse, or negligence by parties other than manufacturer/installer.

D. Manufacturer/installer shall perform all Work, except emergency minor adjustment call-back service, during regular working hours. Manufacturer/installer shall provide emergency minor adjustment call-back service, during regular working hours.

E. Should Owner request that examinations, cleaning, lubrication, adjustments, repairs, replacements, or emergency minor adjustment call-back service, unless specified herein, be performed on other than manufacturer/installer's regular working hours of regular working days, manufacturer/installer shall absorb straight-time labor charges and Owner will compensate manufacturer/installer for overtime premium, travel time, and expense at normal billing rates.

F. Elevator Control System:

a. Include built-in remote diagnostic module to relay constant status of elevators and control system to a 24-hour, 7-days-a-week central-monitoring facility.

b. Remote Monitoring Device: Transmit information on current status of elevators, including malfunctions, system errors, and shutdown.

G. Maintenance Options
Regular Maintenance: During Regular Working Hours
Callback Service: During Regular Working Hours
Maintenance Period: 12

PART 2 – PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER/INSTALLER

A. Elevator shall be installed by elevator manufacturer, subject to compliance with Technical Special Provision requirements, provide: Schindler Elevator Corporation

B. TK Elevator

C. Kone

D. Approved equal

2.2 ELEVATOR SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS

A. Electric Traction Passenger Elevators: Basis of design is the Schindler 3300 XL Gearless Traction Elevator.

B. Elevator Equipment Summary:

a. Application: Machine Room Less (MRL)

b. Counterweight Location: Side

c. Machine Location: Top of the hoistway mounted on car and counterweight guide rails

d. Control Space Location: Top landing entrance frame or entrance frame at one floor below the top landing

e. Service: Hospital/service

f. Quantity: 2 Units

g. Capacity: 4500 lbs

h. Speed: 200 fpm

h. Travel: 26' 6"

i. Landings: 3

j. Front Openings: 3

k. Rear Openings: 0

l. Rear Door Hand: N/A

m. Operation: Microprocessor Single Car Automatic Operation

n. Operation: Microprocessor Group Automatic Operation

o. Clear Inside Dimensions: 5' 4-1/4" Wide X 8' 2 1/2" Deep

p. Cab Height: 7' 9"

q. Guide Rails: Equivalent to 12 lb. per foot

r. Entrance Type and Width: Two Speed Side Opening 4′ 0" Wide X 7′ 0" High doors

s. Entrance Height: 7'-0"

t. Power Supply: 480 Volts 3 Phase 60 Hz

C. Performance:

a. Car Speed: -10% to +5% of contract speed under any loading condition or direction of travel.

b. Car Capacity: Safely lower, stop and hold up to 125% of rated load per code.

D. Ride Quality:

a. Vertical Vibration (maximum): 25 mg

b. Horizontal Vibration (maximum): 15 mg

c. Vertical Jerk (maximum): 2 ft/sec^3

d. Acceleration (maximum): 1.6 ft/sec^2

e. In Car Noise: 53-60 dB(A)

f. Stopping Accuracy: ±5mm

g. Starts per hour (maximum): 180

E. Elevator Operation:

a. Simplex Collective Operation: Using a microprocessor based controller, operation shall be automatic by means of the car and hall buttons. When all calls have been answered, the car shall park at the last landing served.

b. Group Automatic Operation with Demand-Based Dispatching: Provide reprogrammable group automatic system that assigns cars to hall calls based on a dispatching algorithm designed to minimize passenger waiting time.

F. Operating Features - Standard:

a. Door Light Curtain Protection

b. Static AC Drive

c. Phase Monitor Relay

d. Cab Overload with Indicator

e. Load-weighing

f. Central Alarm

g. Remote Monitoring

h. Firefighter's Operation

i. Automatic Evacuation

I. When the main line power is lost for longer than 5 seconds the emergency battery power supply provides power automatically to the elevator controller. If the car is at a floor when the power fails, it remains at that floor, opens its doors, and shuts down. If the car is between floors, it is raised or lowered to the first available landing, opens it doors, and shuts down.

j. Independent Service

G. Operating Features - Optional:

2.3 EQUIPMENT: CONTROL COMPONENTS AND CONTROL SPACE

A. Controller: Provide microprocessor based control system to perform all of the functions of safe elevator operation, as well as perform car and group operational control.

a. All high voltage (110v or above) contact points inside the inspection and test panel shall be protected from accidental contact in a situation where the access panels are open.

b. The controller shall be distributed throughout the elevator system located in the overhead, cab and inspection and test panel. The inverter will be mounted in the overhead adjacent to the hoist machine and an inspection and test panel will be

located in the door jamb at the top floor or one floor below the top floor. No elevator equipment mechanical rooms or closets are required.

c. Provide multi-bus control architecture to reduce cabling, material and waste.

B. Drive: Provide a Variable Voltage Variable Frequency AC Closed Loop drive system. Provide stable start without high peak current, quickly reaching a low energy consumption level.

C. Inspection and Test Panel: Integrated control equipment, main inspection and test panel in door frame at top level served or at one floor below the top level served.

2.4 EQUIPMENT: HOISTWAY COMPONENTS

A. Machine:

a. Gearless asynchronous AC motor with integral drive sheave, service and emergency brakes.

b. Design machine to enable direct power transfer, thereby avoiding loss of power.

c. Design machine to be compact, lightweight and durable to optimize material usage and save space.

d. Mount to structural support channels on top of guide rail system as applicable in hoistway overhead.

B. Governor:

a. Tension type over-speed governor with remote manual reset.

b. Mount to structural support channels as applicable in hoistway overhead.

C. Buffers, Car and Counterweight: Compression spring type buffers to meet code.

D. Hoistway Operating Devices:

a. Emergency Stop switch in the pit.

b. Terminal stopping switches.

c. Emergency stop switch on the machine.

E. Positioning System: System consisting of proximity sensors and door zone vanes. Guide Rails and Attachments: Provide Tee-section steel rails with brackets and fasteners. Side counterweight arrangements shall have a dual purpose bracket that combines both counterweight guide rails, and one of the car guide rails to building fastening.

F. Suspension System: Non circular Elastomeric coated suspension media with high tensile grade steel cords.

G. Governor rope: Steel wire rope with 6 mm diameter.

2.5 EQUIPMENT: HOISTWAY ENTRANCES

A. Hoistway Doors and Frames:

a. UL rated with required fire rating.

b. Doors: Rigid flush panel construction with reinforcement ribs.

c. Frames: Securely fasten at corners to form unit frame. Frames shall be bolted.

B. Finish:

a. Exposed Areas of Corridor Frames: Stainless Steel - All Floors

b. Exposed Areas of Corridor Frames: Stainless Steel - All Floors

c. Exposed Areas of Corridor Frames:

I. 1st Floor: Painted Primer

II. 2nd Floor: Painted Primer

III. Typical Floors: Painted Primer

d. Doors: Stainless Steel - All Floors

e. Doors: Stainless Steel - All Floors

f. Doors:

I. 1st Floor: Painted Primer

II. 2nd Floor: Painted Primer

III. Typical Floor: Painted Primer

g. Sills: Aluminum - All Floors

h. Sills: Aluminum - All Floors

i. Sills:

I. 1st Floor: Aluminum

II. 2nd Floor: Aluminum

III. Typical Floor: Aluminum

C. Entrance Markings and Jamb Plates: Provide standard entrance jamb tactile markings on both jambs, at all floors. Plate Mounting: Refer to manufacturer drawings.

2.6 EQUIPMENT: CAR COMPONENTS

A. Car Frame and Safety: Provide car frame with adequate bracing to support the platform and car enclosure. The safety shall be integral to the car frame and shall be flexible guide clamp type.

B. Platform: Provide platform of steel construction with plywood subfloor and aluminum threshold.

C. Car Guides: Provide sliding guide shoes mounted to top and bottom of both car and counterweight frame. Arrange each guide shoe assembly to maintain constant contact on the rail surfaces. Provide retainers in areas with Seismic design requirements.

D. Provide central guiding system to reduce mechanical friction and energy consumption.

E. Steel Cab:

a. Fire rating: Provide Class B fire rating for cab, or Class A fire rating where required by local Code.

b. Design cab to comply with LEED Indoor Environmental Quality requirements through use of Low-Emitting Materials on walls, ceiling and subflooring.

c. Car wall finish: Steel #4 Stainless Steel Finish selected from manufacturer's standard selections.

d. Base and frieze: Aluminum.

e. Car front finish: Brushed stainless steel.

f. Car door finish: Brushed stainless steel.

g. Ceiling: Canopy ceiling, finished in #4 Stainless Steel With Down Lit Led Lighting. Provide lighting consisting of four compact fluorescent energy saving lights located in two semi-oval lateral cutouts located on the center-sides of the cab ceiling, Lexan lens cover.

h. Handrail: Round Brushed Stainless Steel - Straight End. Locate on Rear & Side Walls.

i. Flooring: By others. Not to exceed 3/8" finished depth.

j. Ventilation: Provide one-speed fan in canopy.

k. Emergency Car Lighting: Provide an emergency power unit employing a 12 volt sealed rechargeable battery and static circuits to illuminate the elevator car and provide current to the alarm bell in the event of building power failure.

l. Emergency Siren: Provide siren mounted on top of the car that is activated when the Alarm button in the car operating panel is engaged.

m. Emergency Exit Switch: Provide an electrical contact to open the safety circuit when the emergency car top exit is opened. When the exit door is opened, the top exit switch shall signal the control and the car will be unable to move.

n. Emergency Exit Lock: Provide an emergency exit lock where required by local code.

o. Emergency Exit Guard: Provide emergency exit guard on top of car when required for hoistway wall to platform clearance exceeds 12″ or for multiple cars in hoistway.

2.7 DOOR OPERATOR AND REOPENING DEVICES

A. Door Operator: Provide a closed loop VVVF high performance door operator with frequency controlled drive for fast and reliable operation to open and close the car and hoistway doors simultaneously.

B. In case of interruption or failure of electric power, the doors can be readily opened by hand from within the car, in accordance with applicable code. Provide emergency devices and keys for opening doors from the landing as required by local code.

C. Doors shall open automatically when the car has arrived at or is leveling at the respective landings. Doors shall close after a predetermined time interval or immediately upon pressing of a car button. Provide door open button in the car operating panel. Momentary pressing of this button shall reopen the doors and reset the time interval.

D. Provide door hangers and tracks for each car and hoistway door. Contour tracks to match the hanger sheaves. Design hangers for power operation with provisions for vertical and lateral adjustment. Hanger sheaves shall have polyurethane tires and pre-lubricated sealed for life bearings.

E. Electronic Door Safety Device: Equip car doors with concealed transmitter and receiver infrared beam devices to detect presence of object in process of passing through hoistway entrance and car doorway (light curtain device).

a. Use multi-beam scanning without moving parts to detect obstructions in door opening.

b. Detector Device: Prevent doors from closing, or if they have already started closing, cause doors to reopen and remain open while object is within detection zone.

c. Horizontal Beams: Minimum of 33 infra red beams to fill doorway from ground level to a height of 6 feet.

2.8 EQUIPMENT: SIGNAL DEVICES AND FIXTURES

A. Car Operating Panel: Provide a car operating panel with all push buttons, key switches and message indicators for elevator operation.

a. Full height car operating panel shall be surface-mounted on front return.

b. Comply with handicap requirements.

c. Push Buttons: Mechanical, illuminating using long-lasting LEDs for each floor served.

d. Emergency Buttons: Provide in accordance with code. Emergency alarm button, door open and door close buttons.

B. Features of the Car Operating Panel Shall Include:

a. Audible chime to signal that the car is either stopping at or passing a floor served by the elevator.

b. Raised markings and Braille provided to the left hand side of each push button.

c. Car Lantern: Provide LED illuminated car lantern with direction arrows to comply with local code when hall lanterns are not provided.

d. Door open and close push buttons.

e. Firefighter's hat and Phase 2 Key-switch

f. Inspection key-switch.

g. Key-switch for optional Independent Service Operation

h. Illuminated alarm button with raised marking.

i. Elevator Data Plate marked with elevator capacity and car number.

j. Help Button: Activation of help button will initiate two-way communication between car and a location inside the building, switching over to alternate location if call is unanswered, where personnel are available to take the appropriate action. Visual indicators are provided for call initiation and call acknowledgement.

C. Hall Fixtures: Provide hall fixtures with necessary push buttons and key switches for elevator operation.

a. Push buttons: Metallic tactile push buttons, up button and down button at intermediate floors, single button at each terminal floor.

b. Height: Comply with handicap requirements.

c. Illumination: Illuminating using long-lasting low power LEDs.

D. Hall Lanterns and Position Indicators.

a. LED illuminated direction arrows with audible and visible call acknowledgement.

E. Hoistway access switches: Provide key-switch at top and/or bottom floor in entrance jamb as required by local code.

F. Firefighter's Phase 1 Service: Key switch in brushed stainless steel cover plate.

G. Fixture Cover Plates: For push buttons, hall lanterns and position indicators, resistant white back-printed glass, no screws required for mounting. Provide stainless steel cover plates for Firefighter's Phase I switch and hoistway access switches, with tamper resistant screws in same finish.

H. Mounting: Mount hall fixtures in entrance frames.

PART 3 – EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine hoistways, hoistway openings, and pits before starting elevator installation.

B. Verify hoistway, pit, overhead, and openings are of correct size, within tolerances, and are ready for work of this section.

C. Verify walls are plumb where openings occur and ready for entrance sill installation. Traditional sill angle or concrete sill support shall not be required.

D. Verify hoistway is clear and plumb, with variations not to exceed -0 to +1 inch at any point. Verify projections greater than 4" must be beveled not less than 75 degrees from horizontal. No negative tolerance is permitted for minimum hoistway dimensions.

E. Verify minimum 2-hour fire-resistance rating of hatch walls.

F. Notify Architect in writing of dimensional discrepancies or other conditions detrimental to proper installation or performance of elevators.

G. Do not proceed with elevator installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to manufacturer/installer.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install elevators in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions and ANSI/ASME A17.1.

B. Set entrances in vertical alignment with car openings, and aligned with plumb hoistway lines.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests of elevator as required by ANSI/ASME A17.1 and governing codes.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust elevators for proper operation in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.

B. Adjust elevators for smooth acceleration and deceleration of car so not to cause passenger discomfort.

C. Adjust doors to prevent opening of doors at landing on corridor side, unless car is at rest at that landing, or is in leveling zone and stopping at that landing.

D. Adjust automatic floor leveling feature at each floor to within 1/4 inch of landing.

E. Repair minor damages to finish in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions and as approved by Architect.

F. Remove and replace damaged components that cannot be successfully repaired as determined by Architect.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean elevators promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.

B. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that could damage finish.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed elevators from damage during construction in accordance with the negotiated temporary use agreement between Owner and manufacturer's installer.

END OF SECTION 14 21 23

SECTION 14 31 00 - ESCALATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. SECTION INCLUDES

1. Escalators.

1.2 RELATED SECTIONS

A. Section 03300 (03 30 00) – Cast-in-Place Concrete: Escalator pits.

B. Section 03600 (03 60 00) – Grouts (Grouting): Grouting or filling gaps at floorplates.

C. Section 05120 (05 12 00) – Structural Steel (Structural Steel Framing): Intermediate support bearing structures, hoist beams, steel bracing members, truss bearing plates.

D. Section 09250 (09 29 00) – Gypsum Board: Truss cladding.

E. Section 13850 (28 31 00) – Detection and Alarm (Fire Detection and Alarm): Heat, smoke, and products of combustion sensing devices.

F. Section 15700 (Division 23) – Heating, Ventilating, and Air Conditioning Equipment (Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC)): Heating, cooling, and ventilation of machine room and machinery space.

G. Section 16100 (26 05 00) – Wiring Methods (Common Work Results for Electrical): Light outlets, convenience outlets, light switches, and conduits.

H. Section 16440 (26 24 00) – Switchboards, Panelboards, and Control Centers (Switchboards and Panelboards): Disconnect switches.

I. Section 16500 (26 50 00) – Lighting: Light fixtures.

J. Section 16720 (27 30 00) – Telephone and Intercommunication Equipment (Voice Communications): RJ11C – 1 pair analog telephone line to phone jack brought to either top or bottom landing of escalator.

1.3 REFERENCES

A. ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44 – Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.

B. ANSI/NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code.

C. ISO 9001:2000 – Quality Management Systems – Requirements.

1.4 DESIGN REQUIREMENTS

A. Arrange escalator components in machine room, control room, or machinery space so equipment can be removed for repairs or replaced with minimal disturbance to other equipment and components.

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 013300 (01 33 00) – Submittal Procedures.
B. Product Data: Submit manufacturer/installer's product data, including:
C. Descriptive brochures or detail drawings of escalators, including product features.
D. Power Information: Separate data sheets for horsepower, starting current, running current, machine and control heat release, and electrical requirements.
E. Shop Drawings: Submit manufacturer/installer's shop drawings, including plans, elevations, sections, and details, indicating location of equipment, loads, dimensions, tolerances, materials, components, fabrication, fasteners, hardware, finish, options, accessories, and other information to render totally functional escalators.
F. Samples: Submit manufacturer/installer's samples of standard colors and finishes of finish materials.
G. Operation and Maintenance Manual: Submit manufacturer/installer's operation and maintenance manual; including operation, maintenance, adjustment, and cleaning instructions; trouble shooting guide; renewal parts catalogs; and electrical wiring diagrams.
H. Warranty: Submit manufacturer/installer's standard warranty.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer/Installer's Qualifications: Specialize in manufacturing and installing escalator equipment, with a minimum of 5 years successful experience.
B. Regulatory Requirements:
    1. Escalator design, clearances, construction, workmanship, materials, and installation, unless specified otherwise, shall be in accordance with the following:
        a. ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44.
        b. Handicap accessibility.
        c. Americans with Disabilities Act.
        d. Other codes having legal jurisdiction.
    2. ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44 shall govern, except where codes having legal jurisdiction include more rigid requirements or conflict with ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44.

C. Escalator shall follow design and manufacturing procedures certified in accordance with ISO 9001:2000 to meet product and service requirements for quality assurance for new products.
D. Pre-installation Meeting:
    1. Convene pre-installation meeting before start of installation of escalators.
    2. Require attendance of parties directly affecting work of this section, including Contractor, Architect, and escalator manufacturer/installer.
    3. Review examination, installation, field quality control, adjusting, cleaning, protection, and coordination with other work.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Delivery: Deliver materials to site in manufacturer/installer's original, unopened containers and packaging, with labels clearly identifying product name and manufacturer/installer.
B. Storage: Store materials in clean, dry area indoors in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.
C. Handling: Protect materials during handling and installation to prevent damage.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Temporary Electrical Power:
    1. Owner will arrange for temporary 220-VAC, single-phase, 60-Hz, GFCI-protected electricity to be available for installation of escalator components. Permanent power required for adjusting and testing.
    2. Comply with Section 01510 (01 51 00) – Temporary Utilities.
B. Temporary Use of Escalator:
    1. Owner will negotiate with manufacturer/installer for temporary use of escalator, if required.
    2. Temporary use of escalator shall be in accordance with terms and conditions of manufacturer/installer's temporary acceptance form.

1.9 SCHEDULING

A. Coordinate escalator work with work of other trades, for proper time and sequence to avoid construction delays.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer/installer shall guarantee materials and workmanship of equipment installed under these specifications and make good, defects not due to ordinary

wear or to improper use, which may develop within 1 year after completion of installation or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier.

1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Escalators shall receive regular maintenance on each unit for period of 12 months after completion of work specified herein or acceptance thereof by beneficial use, whichever is earlier.
B. Trained employees shall make periodic examinations and perform work including necessary adjusting, greasing, oiling, and replacing parts to keep escalators in operation, except parts that require replacement because of accidents, vandalism, misuse, or negligence by parties other than manufacturer/installer.
C. Manufacturer/installer shall perform all Work, except emergency minor adjustment call-back service, during regular working hours. Manufacturer/installer shall provide emergency minor adjustment call-back service, during regular working hours.
D. Should Owner request that examinations, cleaning, lubrication, adjustments, repairs, replacements, or emergency minor adjustment call-back service, unless specified herein, be performed on other than manufacturer/installer's regular working hours of regular working days, manufacturer/installer shall absorb straight-time labor charges and Owner will compensate manufacturer/installer for overtime premium, travel time, and expense at normal billing rates.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURER/INSTALLER

A. Escalator shall be installed by escalator manufacturer, subject to compliance with Technical Special Provision requirements, provide: Schindler Elevator Corporation
B. TK Elevator
C. Kone
D. Approved equal

2.2 ESCALATOR SYSTEM AND COMPONENTS

A. Escalators: Model 9300 AE.
B. Escalator Equipment Summary:
    1. Quantity: 2 Units
    2. Application: Indoor
    3. Vertical Rise: 16' 0"

4. Escalator Width: 48"
5. Step Width: 40"
6. Step Run: 3 Flat Steps
7. Speed: 100 Fpm
8. Floors Served: From: Ramp Level To Ticket Level
9. Power Supply: 480 Volts, 3 Phase, 60 Hertz
10. Contract Maintenance: 12 months with emergency callback service, During Regular Working Hours

C. Additional Features:
1. Combplate Lighting
2. Truss Support
3. Direction Indicators

D. Escalators: Cleat-step reversible type, self-contained units, capable of operating under full-load conditions in either direction, for ascending or descending passenger service on an incline of 30 degrees from horizontal, complete with all equipment.

E. Exposed Metals:
1. Paint in accordance with manufacturer/installer's standard methods.
2. Do not paint non-ferrous metals; and finished, plated, and machined surfaces.

F. Conduit, Duct, Wiring, and Fittings Necessary for Proper Operation of Equipment:
a. Furnish and install in accordance with manufacturer/installer's standard methods.

G. Compliance: ANSI/NFPA 70.

H. Sound Level: Maximum of 58 dBA, measured 3 Feet above combplates.

2.3 TRUSS

A. Structural Steel Truss:
1. Designed and constructed to safely carry entire load of escalator, including:
a. All parts.
b. Full capacity load.
c. Weight of exterior balustrade.
d. Truss covering.
e. Weight of Exterior Covering Carried by Truss: Maximum of 10 Pounds Per Square Foot.

B. Top End of Truss: Carry drive machine and controller.

C. Load-Bearing Components of Structure: Composed of open steel shapes, as preventative against hidden corrosion damage.

D. Truss Factor of Safety: ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44 and other codes having jurisdiction.
E. Constructed to Withstand Maximum Deflection: 1/1000 per unit length.
F. Coating: Primed
G. Supports:
    1. Trusses: Include supports for truss cladding.
        a. Allow cladding to be easily attached to truss exterior.
    2. Design:
        a. Manufacturer/installer's standard.
        b. Capable of carrying a maximum load of 10 Pounds Per Square Foot.
        c. Material such as cladding carried by the truss must not exceed 10 LBS/FT^2. Attachment should be to the factory provided cladding brackets or by clamps only. Welding or drilling into any truss structural member is not acceptable.

2.4 DRIP PANS

A. Steel Drip Pans:
    1. Oil-tight construction.
    2. Entire length of escalator truss and from chord to chord in width.
    3. Capable of supporting workmen.

2.5 ISOLATION MOUNTING

A. Isolation Mounting:
    1. Flexible component, vertically adjustable, between escalator mounting structure and building support to reduce transmission of vibration.
B. Joints Between Escalator's Front and Sides and the Floor: Remain flexible.
C. Gap Between Escalator and Floor: Approximately 3/8 Inch.
    1. After installation, fill gap with elastic sealing material, such as silicone rubber.
    2. Do not cement-in these supports or have structural material butting against them.
D. Truss Support:
    1. For escalators spanning an expansion joint, provide sliding support equipment for the lower (bottom) end support.
    2. Fixed support equipment for the upper (top) end.

2.6 TRACKS

A. Track Assembly On Which Step Wheels Travel:
    1. Completely independent unit.

2. Factory aligned.
    a. Guaranteed accurate throughout escalator.
3. Individual track blocks, together with transition sections, step-chain tension carriage, main drive shaft, and handrail drive:
4. Form fully independent assembly.
    a. When placed into truss, remain unaffected by tolerances present in welded truss lattice framework.

B. Track System:
    1. Bolted to minimize down-time, if maintenance is required.
C. Tracks in Transition: Solid, bright flat steel.
D. Track Surface: Smooth.
E. Track System in Drive and Return Ends: Minimum of 5/16" thick.
F. Track in Inclined Portion of Escalator: Minimum of 1/8" thick.

2.7 STEP-DRIVE ASSEMBLIES

A. Top Sprocket Assembly of Step-Driving Unit:
    1. Carried on 2 brackets rigidly attached to truss to ensure and maintain proper alignment of unit.
    2. Removable intact from truss.

2.8 STEP-CHAIN SPROCKETS

A. Step-Chain Sprockets:
    1. Accurately machined to distribute load evenly on sprocket teeth and on chain rollers.
    2. Designed for smooth operation.

2.9 TENSION CARRIAGE

A. Lower Tension Assembly:
    1. Mounted on supporting pedestals that operate on tracks located on each side of truss.
    2. Maintain proper tension on step chains by compression springs.
    3. Roller supported.
B. Calibrated Tension Range: 9 Inches.
C. 180-Degree Reversing Station:
    1. Step Chain: Pass over flat track surface.
    2. Step Rollers: Guided through precision-formed steel guide.

2.10 BEARINGS

A. Bearings: Provide suitable bearings.
   1. Ball or roller type.
   2. Dust proof.
   3. Self-aligning.
   4. Provided with lifetime lubrication.

2.11 STEPS

A. Horizontal Tread Formation:
   1. Width: As specified.
   2. Vertical Rise Between Steps: Maximum of 8-1/2 Inches.
   3. Horizontal Distance Between Noses of Steps: Minimum of 15-3/4 Inches.
B. Construction: Single-piece cast aluminum, suitably reinforced to carry maximum load per step in accordance with ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44.
C. Step Wheels:
   1. Quiet operation.
D. Type: Ensure rotation and prevent flat spots.
E. Mounting: Prevent tilting and rocking of steps.
F. Bearings:
   1. Provide suitable bearings.
   2. Permanent retention of ample lubricant to ensure satisfactory operation.
   3. Design of Steps and Attachments: Permit steps to be readily removed.
G. Design of Escalators: Permit running chain without steps for convenience in cleaning and inspection.
H. Tread Portion of Step Casting:
   1. Type: Cleat.
   2. Ensure secure foothold and comfortable tread surface.
   3. Cleat Width: Maximum of 1/8 Inch.
   4. Groove Width: Maximum of 1/4 Inch.
   5. Groove Depth: Minimum of 7/16 Inch.
I. Treads:
   1. Square edges with chamfered or rounded nosing of 1/16 Inch or less radius at riser end of tread.
   2. Space cleats so ends mesh with vertical cleats of adjacent step riser.
   3. Riser Portion of Step Casting: Furnish with vertical cleats, arranged to pass between cleats of treads on adjacent steps, to form interlocking unit throughout their exposed travel with minimum clearances.
J. Guide Pads: To maintain step-skirt clearance at absolute minimum, steps shall be guided by guide pads directly along skirting.

K. Step Compliance: Step Fatigue Test, ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44, Rule 1105.1.
L. Step Color: Aluminum Natural Finish.
M. Step-Demarcation Inserts:
    1. Permanent, yellow, thermo-plastic inserts.
    2. Fit to side and rear of tread surface and to side of step riser.
    3. Identify recommended safe standing area.
    4. Contribute to reduce skirt-step gap to absolute minimum.

2.12 STEP CHAINS

A. Step Chains:
    1. Type: Endless roller, 1 located on each side of steps.
    2. Constructed from high-grade steel links with hardened pins and precision rollers, to accurately engage drive sprockets to ensure smooth operation.
    3. Factor of Safety: Not less than 10.

2.13 COMBPLATES

A. Combplates:
    1. Contain closely spaced comb teeth.
    2. Arranged so cleats of step treads pass between comb teeth with minimum clearance.
B. Comb Teeth:
    1. Constructed in sections so that damaged or worn sections can be readily replaced without disturbing balance of others.
    2. Formed to correspond to step treads to obtain uniform side clearance.

2.14 LANDING AND FLOOR PLATES

A. Landing and Floor Plates:
    1. Cover entire area of landings within outline of truss.
    2. Supported on truss.
B. Floor Plates:
    1. Extruded aluminum box sections, with natural aluminum finish.
    2. Non-slip surface to match comb and landing plates.
    3. Removable for access to drive machine.
    4. Separate removable floor cover sections from each other and from floorplate frames by rubber or other isolating material to reduce noise.

2.15 BALUSTRADES

A. Balustrades:
   1. Extended newel-type balustrades consisting of interior paneling, deck covers, skirt panels, and molding.
   2. Certain Portions of Balustrades: Removable to permit access to interior.
B. Inclined balustrade.
   1. Inner and Outer Decks: #4 Stainless Steel.
   2. Balustrade Profile Section: #4 Stainless Steel.
   3. Balustrade Panels: Clear Glass with joints Perpendicular To Escalator Incline.

2.16 SKIRT PANELS

A. Skirt Panels:
   1. Constructed from 14-gauge sheet steel, suitably reinforced with steel channels and rigidly fastened to supporting structure.
   2. Surface: #4 Stainless Steel.
B. Skirt Deflector Brushes: Applied and attached using hidden fasteners, when required.
C. Skirt Lighting:
   1. Skirt lighting to run the entire length of the skirting.
   2. Continuous Led

2.17 DRIVE UNIT

A. Drive Unit:
   1. Consist of basic frame, worm or helical gear reducer, motor, and brake.
   2. Specifically designed for escalator service.
   3. Located outside of step-chain assembly.
   4. Accessible for service without removing steps.
B. Transmission from Output Gear Sprocket to Escalator Main Drive Shaft: Quietly running, precision, duplex roller chain.
C. Motor:
   1. Powered by 6-pole, 3-phase, squirrel-cage, AC induction motor developed for escalator service.
   2. Motor Speed: Maximum of 1,200 rpm.
   3. Flange mounted to reduction gear unit.
   4. Connected via resilient coupling.
   5. Motor Windings: Equipped with sensor that causes escalator to stop if windings overheat.
D. Fly Wheel:

1. Motor End of Drive-Unit Assembly: Equipped with fly wheel sufficiently sized and individually calibrated to assist primary (service) brake in providing smooth "up" stop regardless of load on escalator.
2. Capacity:
3. Sufficient capacity to operate escalator at full load ascending without exceeding rated horsepower.
4. Motor Rating: 105 Degrees F ambient, Class F insulation.
5. Location:
    a. Located in upper escalator head, outside of step-chain assembly.
    b. Accessible for inspection and removal without dismantling steps.

2.18 HANDRAILS

A. Handrails:
    1. Continuous-band design constructed from vulcanized rubber, factory spliced, with multi-ply fabric core and steel-cord reinforcement.
    2. Gliding Surface: Nylon webbing.
    3. Rubber Composition: Ensure handrail surface remains smooth and intact throughout its entire service life.
    4. Handrail Color: Black
B. Handrail Guides:
    1. Designed so handrails cannot easily be thrown off or out of alignment.
C. Construction: Galvanized steel profiles with even and smooth surface.
D. Handrail Guides for Outdoor Escalators: Stainless steel.
    1. Handrail Drive:
E. Type: Traction drive.
    1. Receive motion from main drive of escalator to which it is connected, so that handrail movement is synchronous in same direction as escalator steps.
F. Handrail Traction: Obtained from rubber-rimmed friction wheel with assistance of pressure belt that holds handrail firmly against friction wheel.
G. Handrail Wheels: Provide with suitable bearings, with provisions made for retention of ample permanent lubricant.

2.19 CONTROLLER

A. Controller:
    1. Micro-processor based, full magnetic, continuous duty, and reversing type.
    2. Designed to protect motor against overload and phase failure.
B. Location: Machine space.

C. Fused Disconnect Switch or Circuit Breaker: Included in escalator controller and located in machine space.
D. Flexible Multi-Core Cable: Permit removal of controller to floor level for servicing.

2.20 PENDANT STATION

A. Pendant Station:
   1. Portable Pendant Controls: For each escalator.
   2. Permit control of escalator by service personnel during routine maintenance.
B. Receptacles for Pendant Station Connection: Located in lower and upper machinery pits.
   1. During pendant control, only 1 receptacle shall remain operative.

2.21 SERVICE-HOUR METER

A. Each Escalator: Equipped with meter that indicates number of hours escalator has been operating.

2.22 FAULT-FINDING PANEL

A. Fault-Finding Panel:
   1. Located in lower machine pit.
   2. Contains digital numerical signal.
B. Signal:
   1. Indicates when malfunction has occurred.
   2. Indicates location of malfunction, through a code.
C. Capable of Monitoring: 40 functions.
D. Memory Capability: Retains last 16 faults.

2.23 START SWITCHES

A. Start Switches:
   1. Each Escalator: Provided with key-operated, directional, start switch.
   2. Location: Right-hand inner deck or in balustrade end sections at lower landing.

2.24 DIRECTION INDICATORS

A. Direction Indicators:

1. Provided at the upper and lower landings.
2. LED displays with red and green signals.

2.25 SAFETY REQUIREMENTS

A. Ceiling Intersection Guards, if applicable: ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44, Rule 802.3g.
B. Anti-Slide Devices, if applicable: ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44, Rule 802.3h.
C. Deck Barriers, if applicable: ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44, Rule 802.3i.
D. Primary Brake:
    1. Provide approximately 2/3 greater braking horsepower in "down" direction.
    2. Primary Brake Working in Conjunction with Motor Fly Wheel: Provide smooth stop in both directions of travel, regardless of load.
    3. Stop escalator whenever power is interrupted from any cause or by any of the safety devices.
    4. Hold escalator stationary under full-load condition.
E. Secondary Brake:
    1. Provided integral with main step-chain sprocket assembly.
    2. Arranged to operate should drive unit become disconnected from main step-chain sprocket assembly.
F. Emergency Red Stop Button:
    1. Visibly located at top and bottom landings, on right side, facing escalator.
G. Operation of Either Button: Stop escalator.
    1. Buttons: Covered with transparent cover that can be readily lifted or pushed aside.
    2. Activate audible warning signal when cover is moved.
    3. Sound Intensity of Signal: 80 dBA minimum, at button location.
    4. Size, Location, Notices, and Installation: ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44.
H. Key-Operated Switch: In right-hand inner deck to shut down escalator at close of business or other appropriate times.
I. Speed Monitor:
    1. Speed monitor with anti-reversal device.
J. Electronic Detector: Constantly monitors escalator speed.
    1. If escalator speed drops to 50 percent of nominal speed or exceeds nominal speed by 20 percent, a stop shall be initiated.
K. Broken Step-Chain Device:
    1. Electric contacts.
    2. Cause brake to be applied, should either or both of step chains break or should tension on chains drop below or exceed predetermined value.
L. Broken Main-Drive-Chain Safety Device:

1. Electric contacts.
2. Cause secondary brake to be applied, should main drive chain slacken or break.

M. Stop Switches: Located in upper and lower machine spaces for use by service personnel during maintenance.

N. Skirt Panel Electric Switches:

O. Skirt Panels at Upper and Lower Sections of Escalator: Equipped with electrical switches.
1. Switches sense object being wedged between skirt panel and adjacent step.
2. Resulting Deflection of Skirt Panel: Activate electrical switch and cause escalator to stop.
3. Located to ensure escalator stopping before wedged object reaches comb.

P. Green Step Demarcation Lights:
1. Provided at lower and upper ends, immediately outboard of combplate.
2. Minimum of 2 fluorescent fixtures, located within step loop, to define periphery of step.
3. Mounted perpendicular to escalator travel, providing strobe effect.

Q. Step-Upthrust Device:
1. Provided in lower transition radius.
2. Detect upward step displacement, should it occur as steps travel through lower transition radius.
3. Bring escalator to smooth stop, if activated.
4. Handrail Speed Monitor/Stopped Handrail Device:
5. Ensure synchronous speed with step speed.
6. Sound emergency alarm if deviation greater than 20 percent or less than 50 percent.

R. Alarm:
1. Controlled by adjustable timer.
2. Continue to sound for a maximum of 15 seconds.
3. Cause escalator to come to smooth stop.

S. Handrail Entry Device:
1. Newel Base Where Handrail Enters Escalator: Equipped with handrail entry device to free objects in danger of becoming wedged between handrail and entry point.

T. Safety Switch: Cause escalator to come to smooth stop, when activated.

U. Step-Level Devices:
1. Located at top and bottom of escalator.
2. Detect downward displacement of 1/8 Inch or greater at riser end of step.

3. Cause escalator to stop before detected step enters comb, when downward displacement detected.

V. Type: Manual reset.

W. Combplate Impact Devices:
1. Detect obstructions that wedge and press severely against combplate.
2. Cause escalator to come to smooth stop, when devices activated.

X. Escalator Electrical Starting Circuits: Prevent starting circuit and safety circuit from being energized at same time.

Y. 3 Flat Steps: Entrance and exit ends of escalator.

Z. Missing Step Device:
1. Detect missing step.
2. Bring escalator to stop before gap resulting from missing step emerges from comb.

AA. Electrical Contact:
1. Sense phase failure or phase reversal and bring escalator to smooth stop.
2. Prevent escalator from being started under prevailing conditions.

BB. Counter Tracks (Catching Arms):
1. Located at lower end of escalator.
2. Retain step chain in case of breakage.

CC. Turnaround Guards and Sheet Metal Aprons: Located at each end of escalator to prevent accidental contact by service technicians with rotating equipment.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine wellway openings, pits, and structural support points before starting escalator installation.

B. Verify wellway openings, pits, and structural support points are of correct size, within tolerances, and are ready for work of this section.

C. Notify Architect in writing of dimensional discrepancies or other conditions detrimental to proper installation or performance of escalators.

D. Do not proceed with escalator installation until unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected in a manner acceptable to Architect.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install escalators in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions and ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests of escalators as required by ANSI/ASME A17.1/CAN/CSA B44 and governing codes.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust escalators for proper operation in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.
B. Repair minor damages to finish in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions and as approved by Architect.
C. Remove and replace damaged components that cannot be successfully repaired as determined by Architect.

3.5 CLEANING

A. Clean escalators promptly after installation in accordance with manufacturer/installer's instructions.
B. Do not use harsh cleaning materials or methods that could damage finish.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed escalators from damage during construction.

END OF SECTION 14 31 00

SECTION 21 10 00 - SPRINKLER AND STANDPIPE SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipes, fittings, and specialties.
2. Specialty valves.
3. Sprinklers.
4. Alarm devices.
5. Pressure gages.
6. Seismic Restraints.
7. General Duty Valves.
8. Escutcheons.
9. Sleeves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Standard-Pressure Sprinkler Piping: Wet-pipe sprinkler system piping designed to operate at working pressure of 175-psig maximum.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For sprinkler systems.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For sprinkler systems indicated to comply with requirements and design criteria.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Provide combined coordination drawings using input from installers of the other building services in accordance with the Division 23 requirements.

B. Qualification Data: For qualified Installer and Designer.

C. Approved Sprinkler Piping Drawings: Working plans, prepared according to NFPA 13, that have been approved by authorities having jurisdiction, including hydraulic calculations if applicable.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Seismic Restraint Calculations

F. Field Test Reports and Certificates: Indicate and interpret test results for compliance with performance requirements and as described in NFPA 13. Include "Contractor's Material and Test Certificate for Aboveground Piping."

G. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For sprinkler systems and specialties to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Sprinkler Cabinets: Finished, wall-mounted, steel cabinet with hinged cover, and with space for minimum of six spare sprinklers plus sprinkler wrench. Include number of sprinklers required by NFPA 13 and sprinkler wrench.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications:

1. Installer's responsibilities include designing, fabricating, and installing sprinkler systems. Where necessary, base calculations on the most recent facility fire pump test.

    a. Designer Responsibility: Preparation of working plans, calculations, and field test reports by a qualified designer meeting the minimum state requirements.

B. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Sprinkler Service: Do not interrupt sprinkler service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary sprinkler service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Owner no fewer than two days in advance of proposed interruption of sprinkler service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of sprinkler service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTIONS

A. Wet Pipe Sprinkler System: System with automatic sprinklers attached to piping system containing water and connected to water supply so that water discharges immediately from sprinklers when they are opened by fire.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Sprinkler system equipment, specialties, accessories, installation, and testing shall comply with NFPA 13.

B. Standard-Pressure Piping System Component: All system components shall be listed for 175-psig minimum working pressure.

C. Design: provide working drawings meeting the requirements of NFPA 13. The drawings shall be developed from the contract drawings and specifications. Provide general configuration, routing, and sizing as indicated and shall be coordinated with all trades and building components. Pipe sizes shall not be reduced from those indicated.

1. Where hydraulic calculations are performed, they shall be based on the most recent facility fire pump test results.

2. Sprinkler system design shall be approved by authorities having jurisdiction. Provide density, design areas and hazard classifications, as indicated.

3. A maximum of two sprinklers shall be supplied by 1" pipe.

4. Maximum Protection Area per Sprinkler:
   a. Light Hazard Areas: 225 sq. ft.
   b. Ordinary Hazard Areas: 130 sq. ft.
   c. Other Areas: According to NFPA 13.

D. Seismic Performance: Sprinkler piping shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to NFPA 13. Refer to structural for design criteria for seismic systems. All components shall be designed and installed per NFPA 13 and/or their listing.

E. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following, except where otherwise indicated:
   a. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation
   b. Reliable Automatic Sprinkler Co., Inc.
   c. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   d. Victaulic Company.
   e. Viking Corporation.

2.3 STEEL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Schedule 40, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 53, A 135, or A 795, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 40. Pipe ends may be factory or field formed to match joining method. Joints shall be threaded, welded, or grooved.

B. Schedule 10, Black-Steel Pipe: ASTM A 135 or A 795, with wall thickness not less than Schedule 10 for welded and rolled-groove fittings only.

C. Black-Steel Pipe Nipples: ASTM A 733, made of ASTM A 53, standard-weight, seamless steel pipe with threaded ends.

D. Uncoated- Steel Couplings: ASTM A 865, threaded.

E. Uncoated, Gray-Iron Threaded Fittings: ASME B16.4, Class 125, standard pattern.

F. Malleable- or Ductile-Iron Unions: UL 860.

G. Cast-Iron Flanges: ASME 16.1, Class 125.

H. Steel Flanges and Flanged Fittings: ASME B16.5, Class 150.

1. Pipe-Flange Gasket Materials: AWWA C110, rubber, flat face, 1/8 inch thick, ASME B16.21, nonmetallic and asbestos free or EPDM rubber gasket.

a. Class 125 and Class 250, Cast-Iron, Flat-Face Flanges: Full-face gaskets.
b. Class 150 and Class 300, Ductile-Iron or -Steel, Raised-Face Flanges: Ring-type gaskets.

2. Metal, Pipe-Flange Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

I. Steel Welding Fittings: ASTM A 234 and ASME B16.9.

1. Welding Filler Metals: Comply with AWS D10.12M/D10.12 for welding materials appropriate for wall thickness and chemical analysis of steel pipe being welded.

J. Grooved-Joint, Steel-Pipe Appurtenances:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

a. Anvil International, Inc.
b. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
c. Victaulic Company

2. Painted Grooved-End Fittings for Steel Piping: ASTM A 47, malleable-iron casting or ASTM A 536, ductile-iron casting, with dimensions matching steel pipe.
3. Grooved-End-Pipe Couplings for Steel Piping: AWWA C606 and UL 213 rigid pattern, unless otherwise indicated, for steel-pipe dimensions. Include ferrous housing sections, EPDM-rubber gasket, and bolts and nuts.

2.4 VALVES

A. Listed in UL's "Fire Protection Equipment Directory" and FM Global's "Approval Guide."

B. Body Material: Cast or ductile iron, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Size: Same as connected piping.

D. End Connections: Flanged, threaded or grooved to match piping system.

E. Check Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Clow Valve Company; a division of McWane, Inc.

b. Globe Fire Sprinkler Corporation.
c. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
d. Milwaukee Valve Company.
e. NIBCO INC.
f. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
g. Victaulic Company.
h. Viking Corporation.

2. Standard: UL 312.
3. Type: Swing Check.

F. Indicating-Type Butterfly Valves:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Global Safety Products, Inc.
   b. Kennedy Valve; a division of McWane, Inc.
   c. Milwaukee Valve Company.
   d. NIBCO INC.
   e. Tyco Fire & Building Products LP.
   f. Victaulic Company.

2. Standard: UL 1091.

3. Valves NPS 2 and Smaller:
   a. Valve Type: Ball or butterfly.
   b. Body Material: Bronze.

4. Valves NPS 2-1/2 and Larger:
   a. Valve Type: Butterfly.

5. Valve Operation: Integral electrical, 115-V ac, prewired, two-circuit, supervisory switch and visual indicating device.

G. OS&Y GATE VALVES

1. Standard: UL 262 and FM Global standard for fire-service water control valves (OS&Y-type gate valves).
2. Body and Bonnet Material: Cast or ductile iron.
3. Wedge: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
4. Wedge Seat: Cast or ductile iron, or bronze with elastomeric coating.
5. Stem: Brass or bronze.
6. Packing: Non-asbestos PTFE.
7. Supervisory Switch: External.

H. General Duty Valves:

1. UL Listed: Valves shall be listed in UL's "Online Certifications Directory" under the headings listed below and shall bear UL mark:
    a. Main Level: HAMV - Fire Main Equipment.
        1) Level 1: HLOT - Valves.
            a) Level 3: HLUG - Ball Valves, System Control.
            b) Level 3: HLXS - Butterfly Valves.
            c) Level 3: HMER - Check Valves.
            d) Level 3: HMRZ - Gate Valves.
    b. Main Level: VDGT - Sprinkler System & Water Spray System Devices.
        1) Level 1: VQGU - Valves, Trim and Drain.
2. FM Global Approved: Valves shall be listed in its "Approval Guide," under the headings listed below:
    a. Automated Sprinkler Systems:
        1) Valves.
            a) Gate valves.
            b) Check valves.

        2) Miscellaneous valves.
3. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain valves for each valve type from single manufacturer.
4. ASME Compliance:
    a. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
    b. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
    c. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.
5. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.
6. Valve Actuator Types:
    a. Handwheel: For other than quarter-turn trim and drain valves.
    b. Handlever: For quarter-turn trim and drain valves NPS 2 and smaller.

2.5 TRIM AND DRAIN VALVES

A. Ball Valves:
    1. Description:
        a. Body Design: Two piece.
        b. Body Material: Forged brass or bronze.
        c. Port size: Full or standard.
        d. Seats: PTFE.
        e. Stem: Bronze or stainless steel.
        f. Ball: Chrome-plated brass.
        g. Actuator: Handlever.

B. Angle Valves:
    1. Description:
        a. Body Material: Brass or bronze.

b. Ends: Threaded.
c. Stem: Bronze.
d. Disc: Bronze.
e. Packing: Asbestos free.
f. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

C. Globe Valves:
1. Description:
a. Body Material: Bronze with integral seat and screw-in bonnet.
b. Ends: Threaded.
c. Stem: Bronze.
d. Disc Holder and Nut: Bronze.
e. Disc Seat: Nitrile.
f. Packing: Asbestos free.
g. Handwheel: Malleable iron, bronze, or aluminum.

2.6 SPRINKLER PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Branch Outlet Fittings for connecting to existing piping only:
1. New Piping: Mechanical-tees shall not be used for connects to new piping installed under this contract.
2. Standard: UL 213.
3. Body Material: Ductile-iron housing with EPDM seals and bolts and nuts.
4. Type: Mechanical-tee with 360 degree fastening system (i.e., U-bolts).
5. Configurations: Snap-on and strapless, ductile-iron housing with branch outlets.
6. Size: Of dimension to fit onto sprinkler main and with outlet connections as required to match connected branch piping.
7. Branch Outlets: Grooved or threaded.

B. Sprinkler Inspector's Test Fittings:

1. Combination Test and Drain Valves
2. Body Material: Brass or Cast- or ductile-iron housing with sight glass.
3. Size: Same as connected piping.
4. Inlet and Outlet: Threaded.

C. Flexible Sprinkler Hose Fittings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Tyco.
b. Viking.
c. FlexHead Industries.
d. Victaulic.

2. Standard: UL 1474.
3. Type: Flexible braided hose for connection to sprinkler, and with listed bracket for connection to ceiling grid or ceiling system.
4. Size: Same as connected piping, for sprinkler.

2.7 SPRINKLERS

A. Automatic Sprinklers with Heat-Responsive Element:
1. Nonresidential Applications: UL 199
2. Characteristics: Nominal 1/2-inch orifice with minimum Discharge Coefficient K of 5.6, and for "Ordinary" temperature classification rating unless otherwise indicated or required by application.

B. Sprinkler Finishes: Chrome plated, bronze, and painted.

C. Sprinkler Escutcheons: Materials, types, and finishes for the following sprinkler mounting applications. Escutcheons for concealed, flush, and recessed-type sprinklers are specified with sprinklers.

1. Ceiling Mounting: Chrome-plated steel, two piece, with 1-inch vertical adjustment.

D. Sprinkler Guards:
1. Standard: UL 199.
2. Type: Wire cage with fastening device for attaching to sprinkler.

2.8 ALARM DEVICES

A. Alarm-device types shall match piping and equipment connections.

B. Water-Flow Indicators:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Tyco Fire & Building Products.
b. Potter Electric Signal Company.
c. System Sensor.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Water-Flow Detector: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Two single-pole, double-throw circuit switches for isolated alarm and auxiliary contacts, 7 A, 125-V ac and 0.25 A, 24-V dc; complete with factory-

set, field-adjustable retard element to prevent false signals and tamperproof cover that sends signal if removed.

5. Type: Paddle operated.
6. Design Installation: Horizontal or vertical.

C. Valve Supervisory Switches:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Tyco Fire & Building Products.
   b. Potter Electric Signal Company.
   c. System Sensor.
   d. Kennedy Valve Company
   e. Fire-Lite Alarms, Inc.

2. Standard: UL 346.
3. Type: Electrically supervised.
4. Components: Single-pole, double-throw switch with normally closed contacts.
5. Design: Signals that controlled valve is in other than fully open position.
6. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application

2.9 ESCUTCHEONS

A. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated (where exposed) and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

2.10 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Wall Pipes: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Galvanized-Steel Wall Pipes: ASTM A53, Schedule 40, with plain ends and welded steel collar; zinc coated.

2.11 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Standard: UL 393.

B. Dial Size: 3-1/2- to 4-1/2-inch diameter.

C. Pressure Gage Range: 0- to 250-psig.

D. Label: Include "WATER" or "AIR/WATER" label on dial face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Locations and Arrangements: Drawing plans and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping. Install piping as indicated.
   1. Coordinate layout and installation of sprinklers with other construction that penetrates ceilings, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, and partition assemblies.

B. Piping Standard: Comply with the NFPA 13 requirements for installation of sprinkler piping.

C. Install seismic restraints on piping. Comply with NFPA 13 requirements for seismic-restraint device materials and installation.

D. Use listed fittings to make changes in direction, branch takeoffs from mains, and reductions in pipe sizes.

E. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

F. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

G. Install combination inspector's test and drain valves in wet-pipe sprinkler system piping, complete with shutoff valve, and sized and located according to NFPA 13. Wet-pipe inspector's test shall be located remotely from the riser. All test connections shall discharge to the exterior with appropriate splash protection.

H. Install sprinkler piping with drains for complete system drainage. All drains serving more than 5 gallons shall discharge directly to the exterior.

I. Install alarm devices in piping systems.

J. Install hangers and supports for sprinkler system piping according to NFPA 13. Comply with requirements for hanger materials in NFPA 13.

K. Install pressure gages on riser or feed main and at each sprinkler test connection. Include pressure gages with connection not less than NPS 1/4 and with soft-metal seated globe valve, arranged for draining pipe between gage and valve. Install gages to permit removal, and install where they are not subject to freezing.

L. Fill sprinkler system piping with water.

M. Ground piping as required by NFPA 70.

N. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves.

O. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

P. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons.

3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Install couplings, flanges, flanged fittings, unions, nipples, and transition and special fittings that have finish and pressure ratings same as or higher than system's pressure rating for aboveground applications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Install unions adjacent to each valve in pipes NPS 2 and smaller.

C. Install flanges, flange adapters, or couplings for grooved-end piping on valves, apparatus, and equipment having NPS 2-1/2 and larger end connections.

D. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

E. Mechanical-tees are only permitted for connections to piping existing prior to this contract. Permanently attach cutout plug to the fitting.

F. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

G. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

H. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:

1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

I. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12, using qualified processes and welding operators according to "Quality Assurance" Article.

1. Shop weld pipe joints where welded piping is indicated. Do not use welded joints for galvanized-steel pipe.

J. Steel-Piping, Cut-Grooved Joints: Cut square-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe joints.

K. Steel-Piping, Roll-Grooved Joints: Roll rounded-edge groove in end of pipe according to AWWA C606. Assemble coupling with housing, gasket, lubricant, and bolts. Join steel pipe and grooved-end fittings according to AWWA C606 for steel-pipe grooved joints.

L. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.3 VALVE AND SPECIALTIES INSTALLATION

A. Install listed fire-protection valves, trim and drain valves, specialty valves and trim, controls, and specialties according to NFPA 13 and authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Install listed fire-protection shutoff valves supervised open, located to control sources of water supply except from fire-department connections. Install permanent identification signs indicating portion of system controlled by each valve.

3.4 SPRINKLER INSTALLATION

A. Install sprinklers in suspended ceilings in center of acoustical ceiling panels.

B. Install sprinklers into flexible, sprinkler hose fittings, and install hose into bracket on ceiling grid.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labeling and pipe markers on equipment and piping according to requirements in NFPA 13.

B. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Leak Test: After installation, charge systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3. Flush, test, and inspect sprinkler systems according to NFPA 13, "Systems Acceptance" Chapter.
4. Energize circuits to electrical equipment and devices.
5. Coordinate with fire-alarm tests. Operate as required.

B. Sprinkler piping system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean dirt and debris from sprinklers.

B. Only sprinklers with their original factory finish are acceptable. Remove and replace any sprinklers that are painted or have any other finish than their original factory finish.

3.8 SPRINKLER SCHEDULE

A. Use sprinkler types in subparagraphs below for the following applications:

1. Rooms without Ceilings: Upright sprinklers.
2. Rooms with Suspended Ceilings: Recessed sprinklers.
3. Rooms with hard or specialty ceilings: Concealed sprinklers.

B. Provide sprinkler types in subparagraphs below with finishes indicated.

1. Concealed Sprinklers: Rough brass, with factory-painted white cover plate.
2. Recessed Sprinklers: Bright chrome, with bright chrome escutcheon.
3. Sprinklers: Chrome plated and painted in finished spaces exposed to view; rough bronze in unfinished spaces not exposed to view.

END OF SECTION 21 10 00

SECTION 22 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.
4. Silicone sealants

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.

B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, anticorrosion coated or galvanized, with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description:
1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20 psig minimum.

3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or Nitrile (Buna N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
4. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink, for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.

B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.

B. For sleeves that will have sleeve-seal system installed, select sleeves of size large enough to provide 1-inch annular clear space between piping and concrete slabs and walls.

C. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls as new slabs and walls are constructed.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.
   2. Using grout, seal the space outside of sleeves in slabs and walls without sleeve-seal system.

D. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at service piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications:
   1. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
      a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6 : Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.

1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
b. Piping NPS 6 and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3. Interior Partitions
a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 22 05 17

SECTION 22 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Escutcheons.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated and rough-brass finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of insulated piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
    a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
    b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or exposed-rivet hinge.
    d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    e. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
    f. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces and Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated or rough-brass finish.
    g. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces and Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or exposed-rivet hinge.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 22 05 18

SECTION 22 05 19 - METERS AND GAGES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Liquid-in-glass thermometers.
2. Thermowells.
3. Dial-type pressure gages.
4. Gage attachments.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates: For each type of meter and gage.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For meters and gages to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIQUID-IN-GLASS THERMOMETERS

A. Metal-Case, Compact-Style, Liquid-in-Glass Thermometers:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:

    a. Ashcroft Inc.
    b. Marshaton.
    c. Trerice, H. O. Co.

2. Standard: ASME B40.200.
3. Case: Cast aluminum; 7-inch nominal size.
4. Case Form: adjustable angle unless otherwise indicated.
5. Tube: Glass with magnifying lens and blue or red organic liquid.
6. Tube Background: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in deg F.
7. Window: Glass or plastic.
8. Stem: Aluminum or brass and of length to suit installation.
    a. Design for Thermowell Installation: Bare stem.
9. Connector: 1- 1/4 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
10. Accuracy: Plus or minus 1 percent of scale range or one scale division, to a maximum of 1.5 percent of scale range.

2.2 THERMOWELLS

A. Thermowells:
    1. Standard: ASME B40.200.
    2. Description: Pressure-tight, socket-type fitting made for insertion into piping tee fitting.
    3. Type: Stepped shank unless straight or tapered shank is indicated.
    4. External Threads: NPS 1/2, NPS 3/4, or NPS 1, ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.
    5. Internal Threads: 1/2, 3/4, and 1 inch, with ASME B1.1 screw threads.
    6. Bore: Diameter required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    7. Insertion Length: Length required to match thermometer bulb or stem.
    8. Lagging Extension: Include on thermowells for insulated piping and tubing.
    9. Bushings: For converting size of thermowell's internal screw thread to size of thermometer connection.

B. Heat-Transfer Medium: Mixture of graphite and glycerin.

2.3 PRESSURE GAGES

A. Direct-Mounted, Metal-Case, Dial-Type Pressure Gages:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Ashcroft Inc.
    b. Marsh Bellofram.
    c. Trerice, H. O. Co.
    d. Weiss Instruments, Inc.

2. Standard: ASME B40.100.
3. Case: Liquid-filled Sealed type(s); cast aluminum or drawn steel; 4-1/2-inch nominal diameter.
4. Pressure-Element Assembly: Bourdon tube unless otherwise indicated.
5. Pressure Connection: Brass, with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and bottom-outlet type unless back-outlet type is indicated.
6. Movement: Mechanical, with link to pressure element and connection to pointer.
7. Dial: Nonreflective aluminum with permanently etched scale markings graduated in psi.
8. Pointer: Dark-colored metal.
9. Window: Glass.
10. Ring: Metal.
11. Accuracy: Grade A, plus or minus 1 percent of middle half of scale range.

2.4 GAGE ATTACHMENTS

A. Snubbers: ASME B40.100, brass; with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads and piston or porous-metal-type surge-dampening device. Include extension for use on insulated piping.

B. Valves: Brass or stainless-steel needle, with ASME B1.20.1 pipe threads.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install thermowells with socket extending one-third of pipe diameter and in vertical position in piping tees.

B. Install thermowells of sizes required to match thermometer connectors. Include bushings if required to match sizes.

C. Install thermowells with extension on insulated piping.

D. Fill thermowells with heat-transfer medium.

E. Install direct-mounted thermometers in thermowells and adjust vertical and tilted positions.

F. Install direct-mounted pressure gages in piping tees with pressure gage located on pipe at the most readable position.

G. Install valve and snubber in piping for each pressure gage for fluids.

H. Install thermometers in the following locations:
   1. Inlet and outlet of each water heater.
   2. Outlet of each thermostatic mixing valve which does not have an integral thermometer.

I. Install pressure gages in the following locations:
   1. Building water service entrance into building.
   2. Upstream and downstream of NG gas regulator.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Install meters and gages adjacent to machines and equipment to allow service and maintenance of meters, gages, machines, and equipment.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust faces of meters and gages to proper angle for best visibility.

3.4 THERMOMETER SCHEDULE

A. Thermometers at inlet and outlet of each domestic water heater shall be the following:
   1. Metal case, industrial-style, liquid-in-glass type.

B. Thermometer stems shall be of length to match thermowell insertion length.

3.5 THERMOMETER SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Domestic Hot-Water Piping: 30 to 240 deg F.

3.6 PRESSURE-GAGE SCHEDULE

A. Pressure gages at discharge of each water service into building, and upstream and downstream of NG regulator shall be the following:
   1. Liquid-filled Sealed, direct-mounted, metal case.

3.7 PRESSURE-GAGE SCALE-RANGE SCHEDULE

A. Scale Range for Water Service Piping: 0 to 160 psi.

B. Scale Range for natural gas Piping: 0 to 100 psi.

END OF SECTION 22 05 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 23.12 - BALL VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Brass ball valves.
2. Bronze ball valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1. Certification that products comply with NSF 61 Annex G.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:

1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
2. Protect threads, flange faces, and soldered ends.
3. Set ball valves open to minimize exposure of functional surfaces.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:

1. Maintain valve end protection.
2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher-than-ambient-dew-point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:

1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded end valves.
2. ASME B16.1 for flanges on iron valves.
3. ASME B16.5 for flanges on steel valves.
4. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
5. ASME B16.18 for solder-joint connections.
6. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. NSF Compliance: NSF 61 Annex G for valve materials for potable-water service.

D. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

E. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

F. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

G. Valve Actuator Types:
1. Handlever: For quarter-turn valves.

H. Valves in Insulated Piping:

1. Include 2-inch stem extensions.
2. Extended operating handles of nonthermal-conductive material and protective sleeves that allow operation of valves without breaking vapor seals or disturbing insulation.
3. Memory stops that are fully adjustable after insulation is applied.

2.2 BRASS BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Brass Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig.

c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Forged brass.
e. Ends: Threaded and soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

2.3 BRONZE BALL VALVES

A. Two-Piece, Bronze Ball Valves with Full Port and Stainless-Steel Trim:

1. Description:

a. Standard: MSS SP-110.
b. CWP Rating: 600 psig .
c. Body Design: Two piece.
d. Body Material: Bronze.
e. Ends: Threaded or soldered.
f. Seats: PTFE.
g. Stem: Stainless steel.
h. Ball: Stainless steel, vented.
i. Port: Full.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for valve tags and schedules.

3.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valves with specified CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher CWP ratings may be substituted.

B. Select valves with the following end connections:

1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller: Threaded ends except where solder-joint valve-end option is indicated in valve schedules below.

3.4 DOMESTIC HOT- AND COLD-WATER VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Pipe NPS 2-1/2 and Smaller:

1. Bronze and Brass Valves: May be provided with solder-joint ends instead of threaded ends.
2. Two-piece, brass ball valves with full port and stainless-steel trim.
3. Two-piece, bronze ball valves with full port and stainless-steel trim.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23.12

SECTION 22 05 23.14 - CHECK VALVES FOR PLUMBING PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Bronze swing check valves.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CWP: Cold working pressure.

B. EPDM: Ethylene propylene copolymer rubber.

C. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene, Buna-N, or nitrile rubber.

D. SWP: Steam working pressure.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Prepare valves for shipping as follows:
   1. Protect internal parts against rust and corrosion.
   2. Protect threads, flange faces, grooves, and weld ends.
   3. Block check valves in either closed or open position.

B. Use the following precautions during storage:
   1. Maintain valve end protection.

2. Store valves indoors and maintain at higher than ambient dew point temperature. If outdoor storage is necessary, store valves off the ground in watertight enclosures.

C. Use sling to handle large valves; rig sling to avoid damage to exposed parts. Do not use handwheels or stems as lifting or rigging points.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVES

A. Source Limitations for Valves: Obtain each type of valve from single source from single manufacturer.

B. ASME Compliance:
1. ASME B1.20.1 for threads for threaded-end valves.
2. ASME B16.10 and ASME B16.34 for ferrous valve dimensions and design criteria.
3. ASME B16.18 for solder joint.
4. ASME B31.9 for building services piping valves.

C. AWWA Compliance: Comply with AWWA C606 for grooved-end connections.

D. Drinking Water system Components - Health Effects and Drinking Water System Components - Lead Content Compliance: NSF 61 and NSF 372.

E. Bronze valves shall be made with dezincification-resistant materials. Bronze valves made with copper alloy (brass) containing more than 15 percent zinc are not permitted.

F. Valve Pressure-Temperature Ratings: Not less than indicated and as required for system pressures and temperatures.

G. Valve Sizes: Same as upstream piping unless otherwise indicated.

H. Valve Bypass and Drain Connections: MSS SP-45.

2.2 BRONZE SWING CHECK VALVES

A. Bronze Swing Check Valves with Nonmetalic Disc, Class 125:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
    b. Crane Valves; a Crane Co. brand.
    c. Stockham; a Crane Co. brand.
    d. NIBCO INC.

2. Description:
    a. Standard: MSS SP-80, Type 4.
    b. CWP Rating: 200 psig.
    c. Body Design: Horizontal flow.
    d. Body Material: ASTM B62, bronze.
    e. Ends: Threaded or Soldered.
    f. Disc: PTFE.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine valve interior for cleanliness, freedom from foreign matter, and corrosion. Remove special packing materials, such as blocks, used to prevent disc movement during shipping and handling.

B. Operate valves in positions from fully open to fully closed. Examine guides and seats made accessible by such operations.

C. Examine threads on valve and mating pipe for form and cleanliness.

D. Examine mating flange faces for conditions that might cause leakage. Check bolting for proper size, length, and material. Verify that gasket is of proper size, that its material composition is suitable for service, and that it is free from defects and damage.

E. Do not attempt to repair defective valves; replace with new valves.

3.2 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install valves with unions or flanges at each piece of equipment arranged to allow service, maintenance, and equipment removal without system shutdown.

B. Locate valves for easy access and provide separate support where necessary.

C. Install valves in horizontal piping with stem at or above center of pipe.

D. Install valves in position to allow full stem movement.

E. Install check valves for proper direction of flow and as follows:
   1. Swing Check Valves: In horizontal position with hinge pin level.

F. Install valve tags. Comply with requirements for valve tags and schedules in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust or replace valve packing after piping systems have been tested and put into service but before final adjusting and balancing. Replace valves if persistent leaking occurs.

3.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR VALVE APPLICATIONS

A. If valve applications are not indicated, use the following:
   1. Check Valves: NPS 2 and Smaller: Bronze swing check valves with PTFE disc.

B. If valves with specified SWP classes or CWP ratings are unavailable, the same types of valves with higher SWP classes or CWP ratings may be substituted.

C. Select valves, except wafer types, with the following end connections:
   1. For Copper Tubing, NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded, ends.

END OF SECTION 22 05 23.14

SECTION 22 05 29 – HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
4. Fastener systems.
5. Pipe positioning systems.
6. Equipment supports.

1.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer, using performance requirements and design criteria indicated.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for plumbing piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASME B31.9.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

D. Welding certificates.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized or hot dipped.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coating, jacket, or liner.
4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

2.2 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-69, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U- bolts.

2.3 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Insulation-Insert Material for Cold Piping: ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength and vapor barrier.

B. Insulation-Insert Material for Hot Piping: Water-repellent treated, ASTM C 533, Type I calcium silicate with 100-psig ASTM C 552, Type II cellular glass with 100-psig or ASTM C 591, Type VI, Grade 1 polyisocyanurate with 125-psig minimum compressive strength.

C. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

D. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

E. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.4 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Powder-Actuated Fasteners: Threaded-steel stud, for use in hardened portland cement concrete with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

B. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel anchors, for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

2.5 PIPE POSITIONING SYSTEMS

A. Description: IAPMO PS 42, positioning system of metal brackets, clips, and straps for positioning piping in pipe spaces; for plumbing fixtures in commercial applications.

2.6 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon- steel shapes.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS MATERIALS

A. Structural Steel: ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

B. Grout: ASTM C 1107, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping

from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-69 and MSS SP-89. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
   1. Pipes of Various Sizes: Support together and space trapezes for smallest pipe size or install intermediate supports for smaller diameter pipes as specified for individual pipe hangers.
   2. Field fabricate from ASTM A 36/A 36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Fastener System Installation:
   1. Install powder-actuated fasteners for use in lightweight concrete or concrete slabs less than 4 inches thick in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Use operators that are licensed by powder-actuated tool manufacturer. Install fasteners according to powder-actuated tool manufacturer's operating manual.
   2. Install mechanical-expansion anchors in concrete after concrete is placed and completely cured. Install fasteners according to manufacturer's written instructions.

E. Pipe Positioning-System Installation: Install support devices to make rigid supply and waste piping connections to each plumbing fixture. See Division 15 plumbing fixture Sections for requirements for pipe positioning systems for plumbing fixtures.

F. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

G. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

H. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal and seismic movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

I. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

J. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel framing or supports. Do not attach directly to roof decking material. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings

at top of inserts.

K. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

L. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

M. Insulated Piping:
1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
   a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
   b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
   c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.
2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
   a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
   a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
   b. NPS 4: 12 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   c. NPS 5 and NPS 6: 18 inches long and 0.06 inch thick.
   d. NPS 8 to NPS 14: 24 inches long and 0.075 inch thick.
   e. NPS 16 to NPS 24: 24 inches long and 0.105 inch thick.
5. Pipes NPS 8 and Larger: Include wood or reinforced calcium-silicate-insulation inserts of length at least as long as protective shield.
6. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.2 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment above floor.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.3 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
   1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
   2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
   3. Remove welding flux immediately.
   4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.4 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
   1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Touchup: Cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal are specified in Division 9 painting Sections.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

3.6 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems

and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-69 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal trapeze pipe hangers and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use stainless-steel pipe hangers and stainless-steel or corrosion-resistant attachments for hostile environment applications.

G. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper or stainless-steel attachments for copper piping and tubing.

H. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

I. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

J. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   2. Yoke-Type Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 2): For suspension of up to 1050 deg F, pipes NPS 4 to NPS 24, requiring up to 4 inches of insulation.
   3. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel, Double-Bolt Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 3): For suspension of pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 36, requiring clamp flexibility and up to 4 inches of insulation.
   4. Adjustable, Steel Band Hangers (MSS Type 7): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 8.
   5. U-Bolts (MSS Type 24): For support of heavy pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   6. Pipe Saddle Supports (MSS Type 36): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel- pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate.
   7. Pipe Stanchion Saddles (MSS Type 37): For support of pipes NPS 4 to NPS 36, with steel-pipe base stanchion support and cast-iron floor flange or carbon-steel plate, and with U-bolt to retain pipe.
   8. Single-Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 41): For suspension of pipes NPS 1 to NPS 30, from two rods if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur.

9. Complete Pipe Rolls (MSS Type 44): For support of pipes NPS 2 to NPS 42 if longitudinal movement caused by expansion and contraction might occur but vertical adjustment is not necessary.

K. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

L. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

M. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.
3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. Welded Beam Attachments (MSS Type 22): For attaching to bottom of beams if loads are considerable and rod sizes are large.
6. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
7. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below, or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
8. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
9. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
10. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
11. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
12. Plate Lugs (MSS Type 57): For attaching to steel beams if flexibility at beam is required.

N. Saddles and Shields:Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.

3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

O. Comply with MSS SP-69 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

Q. Use pipe positioning systems in pipe spaces behind plumbing fixtures to support supply and waste piping for plumbing fixtures.

END OF SECTION 22 05 29

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR PLUMBING PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Equipment labels.
2. Warning signs and labels.
3. Pipe labels.
4. Valve Tags

1.2 SUBMITTAL

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
2. Letter Color: Black.
3. Background Color: White.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number and identify Drawing

numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), plus the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 WARNING SIGNS AND LABELS

A. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/16 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.

B. Letter Color: White.

C. Background Color: Red.

D. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.

E. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.

F. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-fourths the size of principal lettering.

G. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.

H. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

I. Label Content: Include caution and warning information, plus emergency notification instructions.

2.3 PIPE LABELS

A. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction. Use care in installation of labels in exposed structural/ceiling areas. Install in consistent manner and location.

B. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to cover full circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

C. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

D. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations or abbreviations as used on Drawings, pipe size, and an arrow indicating flow direction.

1. Flow-Direction Arrows: Integral with piping system service lettering to accommodate both directions, or as separate unit on each pipe label to indicate flow direction.
2. Lettering Size: At least 1-1/2 inches high.

2.4 VALVE TAGS

A. Description Stamped or engraved with 1/4-inch letters for piping system abbreviation and 1/2-inch numbers.
   1. Tag Material: Brass, 0.04-inch minimum thickness, with predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
   2. Fasteners: Brass chain, wire or S-hook.

B. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

C. Valve Schedules: For each piping system, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate valve number, piping system, system abbreviation (as shown on valve tag), location of valve (room or space), normal-operating position (open, closed, or modulating), and variations for identification. Mark valves for emergency shutoff and similar special uses.
   1. Include valve-tag schedule in operation and maintenance data.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.3 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Piping Color-Coding: Painting of piping is specified in Division 9 Section "Interior Painting."

B. Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished

spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:

1. Near each valve and control device.
2. Near each branch connection, excluding short takeoffs for fixtures and terminal units. Where flow pattern is not obvious, mark each pipe at branch.
3. Near penetrations through walls, floors, ceilings, and inaccessible enclosures.
4. At access doors, manholes, and similar access points that permit view of concealed piping.
5. Near major equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
6. Spaced at maximum intervals of 50 feet along each run. Reduce intervals to 25 feet in areas of congested piping and equipment.
7. On piping above removable acoustical ceilings. Omit intermediately spaced labels.

C. Pipe Label Color Schedule:

1. Domestic Water Piping:
   a. Background Color: Blue.
   b. Letter Color: White.

3.4 PIPE TAGS INSTALLATION

A. Valve-Tag Application Schedule: Tag valves according to size, shape, and color scheme and with captions similar to those indicated in "Valve-Tag Size and Shape" Subparagraph below.

1. Valve-Tag Size and Shape
   a. Domestic Water Piping: 1-1/2 inches, round.
2. Valve-Tag Colors:
   a. For each piping system, use the same lettering and background coloring system on valve tags as used for the Pipe Label Schedule text and background.

END OF SECTION 22 05 53

SECTION 22 07 19 – PLUMBING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Insulation Materials:
2. Adhesives.
3. Mastics.
4. Sealants.
5. Factory-applied jackets.
6. Field-applied jackets.
7. Tapes.
8. Securements.
9. Corner angles.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Shop Drawings:
1. Detail application of protective shields, saddles, and inserts at hangers for each type of insulation and hanger.
2. Detail attachment and covering of heat tracing inside insulation.
3. Detail insulation application at pipe expansion joints for each type of insulation.
4. Detail insulation application at elbows, fittings, flanges, valves, and specialties for each type of insulation.
5. Detail removable insulation at piping specialties, equipment connections, and access panels.
6. Detail application of field-applied jackets.
7. Detail application at linkages of control devices.
8. Detail field application for each equipment type.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Fire-Test-Response Characteristics: Insulation and related materials shall have fire-test- response characteristics indicated, as determined by testing identical products per ASTM E 84, by a testing and inspecting agency acceptable to authorities having

jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing and inspecting agency.

1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in Part 3 schedule articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Products that come in contact with stainless steel shall have a leachable chloride content of less than 50 ppm when tested according to ASTM C 871.

D. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

E. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials.

F. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation:
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Fibrex Insulations Inc.; Coreplus 1200.
      b. Johns Manville; Micro-Lok.
      c. Knauf Insulation; 1000 Pipe Insulation.
      d. Manson Insulation Inc.; Alley-K.
      e. Owens Corning; Fiberglas Pipe Insulation.
   2. Type I, 850 deg F Materials: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Comply with ASTM C 547, Type I, Grade A, without factory-applied jacket. Factory- applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.
   3. Mineral-Fiber, Pipe and Tank Insulation: Mineral or glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin. Semirigid board material with factory-applied ASJ complying with ASTM C 1393, Type II or Type IIIA Category 2, or with properties similar to ASTM C 612, Type IB. Nominal density is 2.5 lb/cu. ft. or more. Thermal conductivity (k-value) at 100 deg F is 0.29 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F or less.

Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated, unless otherwise indicated.

B. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK and PVDC Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-82.
      b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 85-20.
      c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; S-90/80.
      d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 225.
      e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 22-25.
   2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. PVC Jacket Adhesive: Compatible with PVC jacket.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Dow Chemical Company (The); 739, Dow Silicone.
      b. Johns-Manville; Zeston Perma-Weld, CEEL-TITE Solvent Welding Adhesive.
      c. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; Welding Adhesive.
      d. Speedline Corporation; Speedline Vinyl Adhesive.
   2. For indoor applications, use adhesive that has a VOC content of 50 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

D. Flexible Elastomeric: Solvent-based adhesive.
      a. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
      b. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
      c. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F. Color Black
      d. Color Black

2.3 MASTICS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates; comply with MIL-C- 19565C, Type II.

B. Vapor-Barrier Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on below ambient services.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

   a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-35.
   b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-90.
   c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-50.
   d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 590.
   e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-40.
   f. Vimasco Corporation; 749.

2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM E 96, Procedure B, 0.013 perm at 43-mil dry film thickness.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Solids Content: ASTM D 1644, 59 percent by volume and 71 percent by weight.
5. Color: White.

C. Breather Mastic: Water based; suitable for indoor and outdoor use on above ambient services.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

      a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-10.
      b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 35-00.
      c. ITW TACC, Division of Illinois Tool Works; CB-05/15.
      d. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 550.
      e. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 55-50.
      f. Vimasco Corporation; WC-1/WC-5.

   2. Water-Vapor Permeance: ASTM F 1249, 3 perms at 0.0625-inch dry film thickness.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 200 deg F.
   4. Solids Content: 63 percent by volume and 73 percent by weight.
   5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. Joint Sealants:
   1. Joint Sealants for Cellular-Glass Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76.
      b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 30-45.
      c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
      d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
      e. Pittsburgh Corning Corporation; Pittseal 444.
      f. Vimasco Corporation; 750.

   2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   3. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.

4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
5. Color: White or gray.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

B. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Childers Products, Division of ITW; CP-76-8.
b. Foster Products Corporation, H. B. Fuller Company; 95-44.
c. Marathon Industries, Inc.; 405.
d. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.; 44-05.
e. Vimasco Corporation; 750.

2. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
3. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
4. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
5. Color: Aluminum.
6. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl, PVDC, and PVC Jacket Flashing Sealants:
1. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Color: White.
5. For indoor applications, use sealants that have a VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.5 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
2. ASJ-SSL: ASJ with self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type I.
3. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C 1136, Type II.
4. PVDC Jacket for Indoor Applications: 4-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.02 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 20 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

5. PVDC Jacket for Outdoor Applications: 6-mil- thick, white PVDC biaxially oriented barrier film with a permeance at 0.01 perms when tested according to ASTM E 96 and with a flame-spread index of 5 and a smoke-developed index of 25 when tested according to ASTM E 84.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.
6. PVDC-SSL Jacket: PVDC jacket with a self-sealing, pressure-sensitive, acrylic-based adhesive covered by a removable protective strip.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Film and Saran 560 Vapor Retarder Film.

2.6 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C 921, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. PVC Jacket: High-impact-resistant, UV-resistant PVC complying with ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C; thickness as scheduled; roll stock ready for shop or field cutting and forming. Thickness is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.
   1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      a. Johns Manville; Zeston.
      b. P.I.C. Plastics, Inc.; FG Series.
      c. Proto PVC Corporation; LoSmoke.
      d. Speedline Corporation; SmokeSafe.
   2. Adhesive: As recommended by jacket material manufacturer.
   3. Color: White.
   4. Factory-fabricated fitting covers to match jacket if available; otherwise, field fabricate.
   5. Shapes: 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows, tees, valves, flanges, unions, reducers, end caps, soil-pipe hubs, traps, mechanical joints, and P-trap and supply covers for lavatories.
   6. Factory-fabricated tank heads and tank side panels.

2.7 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C 1136.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

    a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0835.
    b. Compac Corp.; 104 and 105.
    c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 428 AWF ASJ.
    d. Venture Tape; 1540 CW Plus, 1542 CW Plus, and 1542 CW Plus/SQ.

2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C 1136.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0827.
        b. Compac Corp.; 110 and 111.
        c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 491 AWF FSK.
        d. Venture Tape; 1525 CW, 1528 CW, and 1528 CW/SQ.

    2. Width: 3 inches.
    3. Thickness: 6.5 mils Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
    4. Elongation: 2 percent.
    5. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
    6. FSK Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of FSK tape.

C. PVC Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching field-applied PVC jacket with acrylic adhesive. Suitable for indoor and outdoor applications.
    1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

        a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0555.
        b. Compac Corp.; 130.
        c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 370 White PVC tape.
        d. Venture Tape; 1506 CW NS.

    2. Width: 2 inches.
    3. Thickness: 6 mils.
    4. Adhesion: 64 ounces force/inch in width.
    5. Elongation: 500 percent.
    6. Tensile Strength: 18 lbf/inch in width.

D. Aluminum-Foil Tape: Vapor-retarder tape with acrylic adhesive.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division; Fasson 0800.
   b. Compac Corp.; 120.
   c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company; 488 AWF.
   d. Venture Tape; 3520 CW.
2. Width: 2 inches.
3. Thickness: 3.7 mils.
4. Adhesion: 100 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 5 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 34 lbf/inch in width.

E. PVDC Tape: White vapor-retarder PVDC tape with acrylic adhesive.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Dow Chemical Company (The); Saran 540 Vapor Retarder Tape.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Film Thickness: 4 mils.
4. Adhesive Thickness: 1.5 mils.
5. Elongation at Break: 145 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 55 lbf/inch in width.

2.8 SECUREMENTS

A. Aluminum Bands: ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005; Temper H-14, 0.020 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing or closed seal.
1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   a. Childers Products; Bands.
   b. PABCO Metals Corporation; Bands.
   c. RPR Products, Inc.; Bands.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
1. Metal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series T.
      2) GEMCO; Perforated Base.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Spindle.
   b. Baseplate: Perforated, galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.

d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.

2. Nonmetal, Adhesively Attached, Perforated-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate fastened to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) GEMCO; Nylon Hangers.
      2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Nylon Insulation Hangers.
   b. Baseplate: Perforated, nylon sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   c. Spindle: Nylon, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated, up to 2-1/2 inches.
   d. Adhesive: Recommended by hanger manufacturer. Product with demonstrated capability to bond insulation hanger securely to substrates indicated without damaging insulation, hangers, and substrates.
3. Self-Sticking-Base Insulation Hangers: Baseplate welded to projecting spindle that is capable of holding insulation, of thickness indicated, securely in position indicated when self-locking washer is in place. Comply with the following requirements:
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; Tactoo Insul-Hangers, Series TSA.
      2) GEMCO; Press and Peel.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; Self Stick.
   b. Baseplate: Galvanized carbon-steel sheet, 0.030 inch thick by 2 inches square.
   c. Spindle: Copper- or zinc-coated, low carbon steel, fully annealed, 0.106-inch- diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   d. Adhesive-backed base with a peel-off protective cover.
4. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch-thick, galvanized-steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.
   a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
      1) AGM Industries, Inc.; RC-150.
      2) GEMCO; R-150.
      3) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.; WA-150.
      4) Nelson Stud Welding; Speed Clips.
   b. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.
5. Nonmetal Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick nylon sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold

insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

a. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:
   1) GEMCO.
   2) Midwest Fasteners, Inc.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- wide, stainless steel or Monel.

D. Wire: 0.080-inch nickel-copper alloy.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      a. C & F Wire.
      b. Childers Products.
      c. PABCO Metals Corporation.
      d. RPR Products, Inc.

2.9 CORNER ANGLES

A. PVC Corner Angles: 30 mils thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, PVC according to ASTM D 1784, Class 16354-C. White or color-coded to match adjacent surface.

B. Aluminum Corner Angles: 0.040 inch thick, minimum 1 by 1 inch, aluminum according to ASTM B 209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105 or 5005; Temper H-14.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Coordinate insulation installation with the trade installing heat tracing. Comply with requirements for heat tracing that apply to insulation.

C. Mix insulating cements with clean potable water; if insulating cements are to be in contact with stainless-steel surfaces, use demineralized water.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of equipment and piping including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of equipment and pipe system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.
   4. Cover inserts with jacket material matching adjacent pipe insulation. Install shields over jacket, arranged to protect jacket from tear or puncture by hanger, support, and shield.

K. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

L. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth.

2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch- wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at bottom of pipe. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 2 inches o.c.
   a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
4. Cover joints and seams with tape as recommended by insulation material manufacturer to maintain vapor seal.
5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to pipe flanges and fittings.

M. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 75 percent of its nominal thickness.

N. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

O. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

P. For above ambient services, do not install insulation to the following:
1. Vibration-control devices.
2. Testing agency labels and stamps.
3. Nameplates and data plates.
4. Manholes.
5. Handholes.
6. Cleanouts.

3.3 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Roof Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through roof penetrations.
1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation above roof surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside roof flashing at least 2 inches below top of roof flashing.
4. Seal jacket to roof flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Underground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Terminate insulation flush with sleeve seal. Seal terminations with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
   4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

D. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

E. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through penetrations of fire-rated walls and partitions.
   1. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems" for firestopping and fire-resistive joint sealers.

F. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Pipe: Install insulation continuously through floor penetrations.
   2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 7 Section "Through-Penetration Firestop Systems."

3.4 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulation Installation on Fittings, Valves, Strainers, Flanges, and Unions:
   1. Install insulation over fittings, valves, strainers, flanges, unions, and other specialties with continuous thermal and vapor-retarder integrity, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Insulate pipe elbows using preformed fitting insulation or mitered fittings made from same material and density as adjacent pipe insulation. Each piece shall be butted tightly against adjoining piece and bonded with adhesive. Fill joints, seams, voids, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement finished to a smooth, hard, and uniform contour that is uniform with adjoining pipe insulation.

3. Insulate tee fittings with preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Cut sectional pipe insulation to fit. Butt each section closely to the next and hold in place with tie wire. Bond pieces with adhesive.
4. Insulate valves using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. For valves, insulate up to and including the bonnets, valve stuffing-box studs, bolts, and nuts. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement.
5. Insulate strainers using preformed fitting insulation or sectional pipe insulation of same material, density, and thickness as used for adjacent pipe. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker. Fill joints, seams, and irregular surfaces with insulating cement. Insulate strainers so strainer basket flange or plug can be easily removed and replaced without damaging the insulation and jacket. Provide a removable reusable insulation cover. For below ambient services, provide a design that maintains vapor barrier.
6. Insulate flanges and unions using a section of oversized preformed pipe insulation. Overlap adjoining pipe insulation by not less than two times the thickness of pipe insulation, or one pipe diameter, whichever is thicker.
7. Cover segmented insulated surfaces with a layer of finishing cement and coat with a mastic. Install vapor-barrier mastic for below ambient services and a breather mastic for above ambient services. Reinforce the mastic with fabric-reinforcing mesh. Trowel the mastic to a smooth and well-shaped contour.
8. For services not specified to receive a field-applied jacket except for flexible elastomeric and polyolefin, install fitted PVC cover over elbows, tees, strainers, valves, flanges, and unions. Terminate ends with PVC end caps. Tape PVC covers to adjoining insulation facing using PVC tape.
9. Stencil or label the outside insulation jacket of each union with the word "UNION." Match size and color of pipe labels.

C. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes, vessels, and equipment. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

D. Install removable insulation covers at locations indicated. Installation shall conform to the following:
   1. Make removable flange and union insulation from sectional pipe insulation of same thickness as that on adjoining pipe. Install same insulation jacket as adjoining pipe insulation.

2. When flange and union covers are made from sectional pipe insulation, extend insulation from flanges or union long at least two times the insulation thickness over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of flange or union. Secure flange cover in place with stainless- steel or aluminum bands. Select band material compatible with insulation and jacket.
3. Construct removable valve insulation covers in same manner as for flanges except divide the two-part section on the vertical center line of valve body.
4. When covers are made from block insulation, make two halves, each consisting of mitered blocks wired to stainless-steel fabric. Secure this wire frame, with its attached insulation, to flanges with tie wire. Extend insulation at least 2 inches over adjacent pipe insulation on each side of valve. Fill space between flange or union cover and pipe insulation with insulating cement. Finish cover assembly with insulating cement applied in two coats. After first coat is dry, apply and trowel second coat to a smooth finish.
5. Unless a PVC jacket is indicated in field-applied jacket schedules, finish exposed surfaces with a metal jacket.

3.5 MINERAL-FIBER INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Insulation Installation on Straight Pipes and Tubes:
1. Secure each layer of preformed pipe insulation to pipe with wire or bands and tighten bands without deforming insulation materials.
2. Where vapor barriers are indicated, seal longitudinal seams, end joints, and protrusions with vapor-barrier mastic and joint sealant.
3. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on above ambient surfaces, secure laps with outward clinched staples at 6 inches o.c.
4. For insulation with factory-applied jackets on below ambient surfaces, do not staple longitudinal tabs but secure tabs with additional adhesive as recommended by insulation material manufacturer and seal with vapor-barrier mastic and flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
1. Install preformed pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with mineral-fiber blanket insulation.
4. Install jacket material with manufacturer's recommended adhesive, overlap seams at least 1 inch, and seal joints with flashing sealant.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation

when available.

2. When preformed insulation elbows and fittings are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation, to a thickness equal to adjoining pipe insulation. Secure insulation materials with wire
or bands.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
1. Install preformed sections of same material as straight segments of pipe insulation when available.
2. When preformed sections are not available, install mitered sections of pipe insulation to valve
3. body.
4. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without
5. disturbing insulation.
6. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
7. Surface being insulated.

3.6 INSULATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe and Fittings
1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 FIELD-APPLIED JACKET INSTALLATION

A. Where FSK jackets are indicated, install as follows:
1. Draw jacket material smooth and tight.
2. Install lap or joint strips with same material as jacket.
3. Secure jacket to insulation with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
4. Install jacket with 1-1/2-inch laps at longitudinal seams and 3-inch- wide joint strips at end joints.
5. Seal openings, punctures, and breaks in vapor-retarder jackets and exposed insulation with vapor-barrier mastic.

B. Where PVC jackets are indicated, install with 1-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints; for horizontal applications, install with longitudinal seams along top and bottom of tanks and vessels. Seal with manufacturer's recommended adhesive.
   1. Apply two continuous beads of adhesive to seams and joints, one bead under lap and the finish bead along seam and joint edge.

C. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless-steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

D. Where PVDC jackets are indicated, install as follows:
   1. Apply three separate wraps of filament tape per insulation section to secure pipe insulation to pipe prior to installation of PVDC jacket.
   2. Wrap factory-presized jackets around individual pipe insulation sections with one end overlapping the previously installed sheet. Install presized jacket with an approximate overlap at butt joint of 2 inches over the previous section. Adhere lap seal using adhesive or SSL, and then apply 1-1/4 circumferences of appropriate PVDC tape around overlapped butt joint.
   3. Continuous jacket can be spiral wrapped around a length of pipe insulation. Apply adhesive or PVDC tape at overlapped spiral edge. When electing to use adhesives, refer to manufacturer's written instructions for application of adhesives along this spiral edge to maintain a permanent bond.
   4. Jacket can be wrapped in cigarette fashion along length of roll for insulation systems with an outer circumference of 33-1/2 inches or less. The 33-1/2-inch-circumference limit allows for 2-inch- overlap seal. Using the length of roll allows for longer sections of jacket to be installed at one time. Use adhesive on the lap seal. Visually inspect lap seal for "fishmouthing," and use PVDC tape along lap seal to secure joint.
   5. Repair holes or tears in PVDC jacket by placing PVDC tape over the hole or tear and wrapping a minimum of 1-1/4 circumferences to avoid damage to tape edges.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Equipment and Pipe Insulation with ASJ or Other Paintable Jacket Material: Paint jacket with paint system identified below and as specified in Division 9 painting Sections.
   1. Flat Acrylic Finish: Two finish coats over a primer that is compatible with jacket material and finish coat paint. Add fungicidal agent to render fabric mildew proof.
      a. Finish Coat Material: Interior, flat, latex-emulsion size.

B. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

C. Color:Final color as selected by Architect. Vary first and second coats to allow visual inspection of the completed Work.

D. Do not field paint aluminum or stainless-steel jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Inspect pipe, fittings, strainers, and valves, randomly selected by Architect, by removing field-applied jacket and insulation in layers in reverse order of their installation. Extent of inspection shall be limited to three locations of straight pipe, three locations of threaded fittings, three locations of welded fittings, two locations of threaded strainers, two locations of welded strainers, three locations of threaded valves, and three locations of flanged valves for each pipe service defined in the "Piping Insulation Schedule, General" Article.

C. All insulation applications will be considered defective Work if sample inspection reveals noncompliance with requirements.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

B. Items Not Insulated: Unless otherwise indicated, do not install insulation on the following:
   1. Drainage piping located in crawl spaces.
   2. Underground piping.
   3. Chrome-plated pipes and fittings unless there is a potential for personnel injury.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Hot, and Recirculated Hot Water: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, white ASJ jacket, Type I: 1 inch thick.

B. Domestic Cold Water: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, white ASJ jacket, Type I: 1 inch thick.

C. Condensate Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

D. Storm Drain Piping and Drain Bodies:
   1. All pipe sizes: Insulation shall be one of the following
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.
      b. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1 inch thick

E. Exposed Sanitary Drains, Domestic Water, Domestic Hot Water, and Stops for Plumbing Fixtures for People with Disabilities: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, Type I: 1/2 inch thick.
   2. Soft-wrap, hook & loop fastening system undersink protection system.

3.12 INDOOR AND OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. If more than one material is listed, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

C. Piping, Concealed:
   1. None.

D. Piping, Exposed:
   1. PVC: 20 mils thick.
   2. Aluminum, Smooth: 0.016 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Domestic Water Piping Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Mineral-Fiber, Preformed Pipe Insulation, white ASJ jacket, Type I: 2 inch thick.

B. Condensate Piping: Insulation shall be one of the following:
   1. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

END OF SECTION 22 07 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 11 16 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1. 1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Under-building slab and aboveground domestic water pipes, tubes, fittings, and specialties inside the building.
   2. Specialty valves.
   3. Flexible connectors.

1. 2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1. 3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 61 for potable domestic water piping and components.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Hard Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type L water tube, drawn temper.

1. Cast-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.18, pressure fittings.
2. Wrought-Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
3. Bronze Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, with solder-joint ends.
4. Copper Unions: MSS SP-123, cast-copper-alloy, hexagonal-stock body, with ball-and- socket, metal-to-metal seating surfaces, and solder-joint or threaded ends.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
        2) NIBCO INC.
        3) Mueller Streamline Industries.
    b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting.
    c. NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting.

B. Soft Copper Tube: ASTM B 88, Type K water tube, annealed temper.

1. Copper Solder-Joint Fittings: ASME B16.22, wrought-copper pressure fittings.
    a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        1) Elkhart Products Corporation; Industrial Division.
        2) NIBCO INC.
        3) Mueller Streamline Industries.
    b. NPS 2 and Smaller: Wrought-copper fitting
    c. NPS 3 and NPS 4: Cast-bronze or wrought-copper fitting.

2.3 PIPING JOINING MATERIALS

A. Solder Filler Metals: ASTM B 32, lead-free alloys. Include water-flushable flux according to ASTM B 813.

B. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/A5.8M, BCuP Series, copper-phosphorus alloys for general- duty brazing unless otherwise indicated.

2.4 DIELECTRIC FITTINGS

A. General Requirements: Assembly of copper alloy and ferrous materials or ferrous material body with separating nonconductive insulating material suitable for system

fluid, pressure, and temperature.

B. Dielectric Unions:
   1. Description:
      a. Pressure Rating: 150 psig at 180 deg F.
      b. End Connections: Solder-joint copper alloy and threaded ferrous.

C. Dielectric Couplings:
   1. Description:
      a. Galvanized-steel coupling.
      b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      c. End Connections: Female threaded.
      d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, thermoplastic.

D. Dielectric Nipples:
   1. Description:
      a. Electroplated steel nipple complying with ASTM F 1545.
      b. Pressure Rating: 300 psig at 225 deg F.
      c. End Connections: Male threaded or grooved.
      d. Lining: Inert and noncorrosive, propylene.

2.5 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Bronze-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-bronze tubing with bronze wire-braid covering and ends brazed to inner tubing.
   1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
   2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded copper pipe or plain-end copper tube.
   3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged copper alloy.

B. Stainless-Steel-Hose Flexible Connectors: Corrugated-stainless-steel tubing with stainless-steel wire-braid covering and ends welded to inner tubing.
   1. Working-Pressure Rating: Minimum 200 psig.
   2. End Connections NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded steel-pipe nipple.
   3. End Connections NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged steel nipple.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement

of domestic water piping. Indicated locations and arrangements are used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Coordination Drawings.

B. Install copper tubing under building slab according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

C. Install shutoff valve, hose-end drain valve, strainer, pressure gage, and test tee with valve, inside the building at each domestic water service entrance.

D. Install shutoff valve immediately upstream of each dielectric fitting.

E. Install water-pressure-reducing valves downstream from shutoff valves.

F. Install domestic water piping level without pitch and plumb.

G. Rough-in domestic water piping for water-meter installation according to utility company's requirements.

H. Install piping concealed from view and protected from physical contact by building occupants unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

I. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

J. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal, and coordinate with other services occupying that space.

K. Install piping adjacent to equipment and specialties to allow service and maintenance.

L. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

M. Install nipples, unions, special fittings, and valves with pressure ratings the same as or higher than system pressure rating used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

N. Install piping free of sags and bends.

O. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

P. Install unions in copper tubing at final connection to each piece of equipment, machine, and specialty.

Q. Install pressure gages on suction and discharge piping from each plumbing pump and packaged booster pump.

R. Install thermostats in hot-water circulation piping.

S. Install thermometers on outlet piping from each water heater.

T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors

3.2 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipes, tubes, and fittings before assembly.

C. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.

D. Brazed Joints: Join copper tube and fittings according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook," "Brazed Joints" Chapter.

E. Soldered Joints: Apply ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux to end of tube. Join copper tube and fittings according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

F. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate asbestos-free, nonmetallic gasket material in size, type, and thickness suitable for domestic water service. Join flanges with gasket and bolts according to ASME B31.9.

G. Dissimilar-Material Piping Joints: Make joints using adapters compatible with materials of both piping systems.

3.3 VALVE INSTALLATION

A. Install shutoff valve close to water main on each branch and riser serving plumbing fixtures or equipment, on each water supply to equipment, and on each water supply to plumbing fixtures that do not have supply stops. Use ball or gate valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or gate valves for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

B. Install drain valves for equipment at base of each water riser, at low points in horizontal piping, and where required to drain water piping.
   1. Hose-End Drain Valves: At low points in water mains, risers, and branches.
   2. Stop-and-Waste Drain Valves: Instead of hose-end drain valves where indicated.

C. Install balancing valve in each hot-water circulation return branch and discharge side of each pump and circulator. Set balancing valves partly open to restrict but not stop flow. Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller.

3.4 TRANSITION FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install transition couplings at joints of dissimilar piping.

B. Transition Fittings in Underground Domestic Water Piping:
   1. NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller: Fitting-type coupling.
   2. NPS 2 and Larger: Sleeve-type coupling.

3.5 DIELECTRIC FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install dielectric fittings in piping at connections of dissimilar metal piping and tubing.

B. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2 and Smaller: Use dielectric couplings or nipples.

C. Dielectric Fittings for NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4: Use dielectric flange kits.

3.6 FLEXIBLE CONNECTOR INSTALLATION

A. Install flexible connectors in suction and discharge piping connections to each domestic water pump.

B. Install bronze-hose flexible connectors in copper domestic water tubing.

C. Install stainless-steel-hose flexible connectors in steel domestic water piping.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for pipe hanger and support products and installation.
   1. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or 42, clamps.
   2. Individual, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs:
      a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
      b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
   3. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

C. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, to a minimum of 3/8 inch.

D. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:
   1. NPS 3/4 and Smaller: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   2. NPS 1 and NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   3. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
   4. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
   5. NPS 3 to NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.

E. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

F. Support piping and tubing not listed in this article according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Install piping adjacent to equipment and machines to allow service and maintenance.

C. Connect domestic water piping to exterior water-service piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

D. Connect domestic water piping to water-service piping with shutoff valve; extend and connect to the following:
   1. Water Heaters: Cold-water inlet and hot-water outlet piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than sizes of water heater connections.
   2. Plumbing Fixtures: Cold- and hot-water supply piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.

3. Equipment: Cold- and hot-water supply piping as indicated, but not smaller than equipment connections. Provide shutoff valve and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

3.9 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment" for identification materials and installation.

B. Label pressure piping with system operating pressure.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Piping Inspections:
1. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it has been inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.
2. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least one day before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction:
   a. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
   b. Final Inspection: Arrange final inspection for authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.
3. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass tests or inspections, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.
4. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Piping Tests:
1. Fill domestic water piping. Check components to determine that they are not air bound and that piping is full of water.
2. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit a separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
3. Leave new, altered, extended, or replaced domestic water piping uncovered and unconcealed until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.

4. Cap and subject piping to static water pressure of 50 psig above operating pressure, without exceeding pressure rating of piping system materials. Isolate test source and allow to stand for four hours. Leaks and loss in test pressure constitute defects that must be repaired.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping or portion thereof until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and for corrective action required.

D. Domestic water piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.11 CLEANING

A. Clean and disinfect potable domestic water piping as follows:
1. Purge new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired before using.
2. Use purging and disinfecting procedures prescribed by authorities having jurisdiction; if methods are not prescribed, use procedures described in either AWWA C651 or AWWA C652 or follow procedures described below:
a. Flush piping system with clean, potable water until dirty water does not appear at outlets.
b. Fill and isolate system according to either of the following:
1) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 50 ppm of chlorine. Isolate with valves and allow to stand for 24 hours.
2) Fill system or part thereof with water/chlorine solution with at least 200 ppm of chlorine. Isolate and allow to stand for three hours.
c. Flush system with clean, potable water until no chlorine is in water coming from system after the standing time.
d. Submit water samples in sterile bottles to authorities having jurisdiction. Repeat procedures if biological examination shows contamination.

B. Prepare and submit reports of purging and disinfecting activities.

C. Clean interior of domestic water piping system. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

3.12 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Transition and special fittings with pressure ratings at least equal to piping rating

may be used in applications below unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flanges and unions may be used for aboveground piping joints unless otherwise indicated.

C. Under-building-slab, domestic water, building service piping, NPS 3 and smaller, shall be:
   1. Soft copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type K; wrought-copper solder-joint fittings; and brazed joints.

D. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2 and smaller, shall be:
   1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

E. Aboveground domestic water piping, NPS 2-1/2 to NPS 4, shall be one of the following:
   1. Hard copper tube, ASTM B 88, Type L; cast- or wrought- copper solder-joint fittings; and soldered joints.

3.13 VALVE SCHEDULE

A. Drawings indicate valve types to be used. Where specific valve types are not indicated, the following requirements apply:
   1. Shutoff Duty: Use ball valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly, or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   2. Throttling Duty: Use ball or globe valves for piping NPS 2 and smaller. Use butterfly or ball valves with flanged ends for piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   3. Hot-Water Circulation Piping, Balancing Duty: Memory-stop balancing valves.
   4. Drain Duty: Hose-end drain valves.

B. Use check valves to maintain correct direction of domestic water flow to and from equipment.

END OF SECTION 22 11 16

SECTION 22 11 19 - DOMESTIC WATER PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Vacuum breakers.
   2. Temperature-actuated, water mixing valves
   3. Strainers.
   4. Hose bibbs.
   5. Water Hammer Arrestors
   6. Trap-seal primer devices

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 22 11 16 "Domestic Water Piping"

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For domestic water piping specialties.
   1. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Potable-water piping and components shall comply with NSF 61.

B. Comply with NSF 372 for low lead.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Minimum Working Pressure for Domestic Water Piping Specialties: 125 psig unless otherwise indicated.

2.3 VACUUM BREAKERS

A. Hose-Connection Vacuum Breakers
   1. Standard: ASSE 1011.
   2. Body: Bronze, nonremovable, with manual drain.
   3. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose threaded complying with ASME B1.20.7.
   4. Finish: [Chrome or nickel plated] [Rough bronze].

2.4 TEMPERATURE-ACTUATED, WATER MIXING VALVES

A. Water-Temperature Limiting Devices
   1. Standard: ASSE 1070.
   2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
   3. Type: Thermostatically controlled, water mixing valve.
   4. Material: Bronze body with corrosion-resistant interior components.
   5. Connections: Threaded inlets and outlets
   6. Accessories: Check stops on hot- and cold-water supplies, and adjustable, temperature-control handle

2.5 STRAINERS

A. Y-Pattern Strainers
   1. Body: ASTM A126, Class B, cast iron with bolted cover and bottom drain connection.
   2. End Connections: Threaded ends for NPS 2 and smaller; flanged ends for NPS 2-1/2 and larger.
   3. Strainer Screen: Stainless steel, 40 mesh strainer, or perforated stainless steel basket.
   4. CWP Rating: 125 psig.

2.6 NON-FREEZE HOSE BIBBS

A. Hose Bibbs:
   1. Standard: ASME A112.18.1 for sediment faucets.
   2. Body Material: Bronze.
   3. Seat: Bronze, replaceable.
   4. Supply Connections: NPS 3/4 threaded or solder-joint inlet.

5. Outlet Connection: Garden-hose thread complying with ASME B1.20.7.
6. Pressure Rating: 125 psig.
7. Vacuum Breaker: Integral nonremovable, drainable, hose-connection vacuum breaker complying with ASSE 1011.
8. Finish: Stainless steel non-freeze enclosure.
9. Quarter turn handle.

2.7 WATER HAMMER ARRESTORS

A. Water Hammer Arrestors
1. Standard: ASSE 1010 or PDI-WH 201.
2. Type: Copper tube with piston.
3. Size: ASSE 1010 Sizes A through D or PDI-WH 201, Sizes A through D

2.8 TRAP-SEAL PRIMER DEVICE

A. Seal -Type Device
1. Standard: ASSE 1018
2. Pressure Rating: 125 psig minimum.
3. Body: Bronze
4. Inlet and Outlet Connections NPS 1/2 inch threaded, union, or solder joint.
5. Finish: Chrome plated, or rough bronze.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate piping installations and specialty arrangements with Drawings and with requirements specified in piping systems. If Drawings are explicit enough, these requirements may be reduced or omitted.

B. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

C. When installing piping specialties adjacent to equipment and machines, allow space for service and maintenance.

D. Comply with requirements for grounding equipment in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

END OF SECTION 22 11 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 16 - SANITARY WASTE AND VENT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pipe, tube, and fittings.
2. Specialty pipe fittings.

B. Related Section:

1. Division 2 Section "Sanitary Sewerage" for sanitary sewerage piping and structures outside the building.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PIPING MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Schedule" Article for applications of pipe, tube, fitting materials, and joining methods for specific services, service locations, and pipe sizes.

2.2 HUB-AND-SPIGOT, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 74, Service class.

B. Gaskets: ASTM C 564, rubber.

2.3 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. CISPI, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ANACO-Husky.
    b. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    c. Fernco Inc.
    d. Matco-Norca, Inc.
    e. MIFAB, Inc.
    f. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    g. Stant.
    h. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and CISPI 310.
3. Description: Stainless-steel corrugated shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

C. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. ANACO-Husky.
    b. Clamp-All Corp.
    c. Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
    d. MIFAB, Inc.
    e. Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.
    f. Stant.
    g. Tyler Pipe.

2. Standards: ASTM C 1277 and ASTM C 1540.
3. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening

devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.4 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper DWV Tube: ASTM B 306, drainage tube, drawn temper.

B. Copper Drainage Fittings: ASME B16.23, cast copper or ASME B16.29, wrought copper, solder-joint fittings.

C. Copper Flanges: ASME B16.24, Class 150, cast copper with solder-joint end.

1. Flange Gasket Materials: ASME B16.21, full-face, flat, nonmetallic, asbestos-free, 1/8- inch maximum thickness unless thickness or specific material is indicated.
2. Flange Bolts and Nuts: ASME B18.2.1, carbon steel unless otherwise indicated.

D. Solder: ASTM B 32, lead free with ASTM B 813, water-flushable flux.

2.5 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-DWV" for plastic drain, waste, and vent piping and "NSF-sewer" for plastic sewer piping.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665, drain, waste, and vent.

C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
1. Verify adhesive primer has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less

E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564
1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less

2.6 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:

1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in OD’s or of different materials. Include end connections same size

as and compatible with pipes to be joined.

2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified piping system fitting.
3. Unshielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      1) Dallas Specialty & Mfg. Co.
      2) Fernco Inc.
      3) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

   b. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
   c. Description: Elastomeric, sleeve-type, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
   d. Sleeve Materials:
      1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
      2) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

4. Shielded, Nonpressure Transition Couplings:
   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      1) Cascade Waterworks Mfg. Co.
      2) Mission Rubber Company; a division of MCP Industries, Inc.

   b. Standard: ASTM C 1460.
   c. Description: Elastomeric or rubber sleeve with full-length, corrosion-resistant outer shield and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Division 31 Section "Earthwork" and the civil design drawings.

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping at indicated slopes.

F. Install piping free of sags and bends.

G. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

H. Make changes in direction for soil and waste drainage and vent piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends. Sanitary tees and short-sweep 1/4 bends may be used on vertical stacks if change in direction of flow is from horizontal to vertical. Use long-turn, double Y-branch and 1/8-bend fittings if two fixtures are installed back to back or side by side with common drain pipe. Straight tees, elbows, and crosses may be used on vent lines. Do not change direction of flow more than 90 degrees. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected. Reducing size of drainage piping in direction of flow is prohibited.

I. Lay buried building drainage piping beginning at low point of each system. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

J. Install soil and waste drainage and vent piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:

1. Horizontal Building Sanitary Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2-1/2 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 4 and larger.

2. Vent Piping: 1 percent down toward vertical fixture vent or toward vent stack.

K. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."

L. Install aboveground copper tubing according to CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

M. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building sanitary drains connect to building sanitary sewers in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping.
2. Install drains in sanitary drainage gravity-flow piping.

N. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

O. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

P. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.

Q. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Join hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil piping with gasket joints according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Join hubless, cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

C. Join copper tube and fittings with soldered joints according to ASTM B 828.
Use ASTM B 813, water-flushable, lead-free flux and ASTM B 32, lead-free-alloy solder.

D. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in cross pattern.

E. Plastic Non-pressure-Piping, Solvent-Cement Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendixes.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:

1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in OD's.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

3.5 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements for pipe hanger and support devices and installation specified in Division 22 Section "Hangers and Supports for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

1. Install carbon-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in noncorrosive environments.
2. Install stainless-steel pipe hangers for horizontal piping in corrosive environments.
3. Install carbon-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in noncorrosive environments.
4. Install stainless-steel pipe support clamps for vertical piping in corrosive environments.
5. Vertical Piping: MSS Type 8 or Type 42, clamps.
6. Install individual, straight, horizontal piping runs:

    a. 100 Feet and Less: MSS Type 1, adjustable, steel clevis hangers.
    b. Longer Than 100 Feet: MSS Type 43, adjustable roller hangers.
    c. Longer Than 100 Feet if Indicated: MSS Type 49, spring cushion rolls.

7. Multiple, Straight, Horizontal Piping Runs 100 Feet or Longer: MSS Type 44, pipe rolls. Support pipe rolls on trapeze.
8. Base of Vertical Piping: MSS Type 52, spring hangers.

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting, valve, and coupling.

C. Support vertical piping and tubing at base and at each floor.

D. Rod diameter may be reduced one size for double-rod hangers, with 3/8-inch minimum rods.

E. Install hangers for cast-iron soil piping with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 60 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 3: 60 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
3. NPS 4 and NPS 5: 60 inches with 5/8-inch rod.
4. NPS 6 and NPS 8: 60 inches with 3/4-inch rod.
5. Spacing for 10-foot lengths may be increased to 10 feet. Spacing for fittings is limited to 60 inches.

F. Install supports for vertical cast-iron soil piping every 15 feet.

G. Install hangers for copper tubing with the following maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters:

1. NPS 1-1/4: 72 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
2. NPS 1-1/2 and NPS 2: 96 inches with 3/8-inch rod.
3. NPS 2-1/2: 108 inches with 1/2-inch rod.
4. NPS 3 and NPS 5: 10 feet with 1/2-inch rod.
5. NPS 6: 10 feet with 5/8-inch rod.
6. NPS 8: 10 feet with 3/4-inch rod.

H. Install supports for vertical copper tubing every 10 feet.

I. Support piping and tubing not listed above according to MSS SP-69 and manufacturer's written instructions.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect soil and waste piping to exterior sanitary sewerage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect drainage and vent piping to the following:

1. Plumbing Fixtures: Connect drainage piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
2. Plumbing Fixtures and Equipment: Connect atmospheric vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Plumbing Specialties: Connect drainage and vent piping in sizes indicated, but not smaller than required by plumbing code.
4. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
5. Install horizontal backwater valves with cleanout cover flush with floor.

6. Equipment: Connect drainage piping as indicated. Provide shutoff valve if indicated and union for each connection. Use flanges instead of unions for connections NPS 2-1/2 and larger.

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment, allow space for service and maintenance of equipment.

E. Connect Force-main piping to elevator and escalator sump pumps and discharge to floor sink with air gap.

F. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:

1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed sanitary waste and vent piping. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Division 22 Section "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in and before setting fixtures.
2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Reinspection: If authorities having jurisdiction find that piping will not pass test or inspection, make required corrections and arrange for reinspection.

C. Reports: Prepare inspection reports and have them signed by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Test sanitary drainage and vent piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:

1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced drainage and vent piping until it has been tested and approved. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
3. Roughing-in Plumbing Test Procedure: Test drainage and vent piping except outside leaders on completion of roughing-in. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes

   before inspection starts to completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
4. Finished Plumbing Test Procedure: After plumbing fixtures have been set and traps filled with water, test connections and prove they are gastight and watertight. Plug vent- stack openings on roof and building drains where they leave building. Introduce air into piping system equal to pressure of 1-inch wg. Use U-tube or manometer inserted in trap of water closet to measure this pressure. Air pressure must remain constant without introducing additional air throughout period of inspection. Inspect plumbing fixture connections for gas and water leaks.
5. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
6. Prepare reports for tests and required corrective action.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground, soil and waste piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

C. Aboveground, vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Copper DWV tube, copper drainage fittings, and soldered joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

D. Underground, soil, waste, and vent piping NPS 4 and smaller shall be any of the following:

1. Service class, cast-iron soil piping; gaskets; and gasketed joints.
2. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; CISPI cast-iron hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
3. Solid wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.
4. Dissimilar Pipe-Material Couplings: Unshielded, nonpressure transition couplings.

END OF SECTION 22 13 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 13 19 - SANITARY WASTE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Cleanouts.
   2. Miscellaneous sanitary drainage piping specialties.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 22 14 23 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties" for trench drains for storm water, channel drainage systems for storm water, roof drains, and catch basins.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product data: Manufacturers standard product data and submittal information.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and maintenance data.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTIONS

A. Sanitary waste piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

B. Comply with NSF 14 for plastic sanitary waste piping specialty components.

2.2 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Exposed Floor Cleanouts:
   1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M for heavy-duty, adjustable housing cleanout.

2. Size: Same as connected branch.
3. Type: Adjustable housing.
4. Body or Ferrule: Cast iron.
5. Clamping Device: Required.
6. Outlet Connection: Inside calk or Spigot.
7. Closure: Brass plug with tapered threads.
8. Adjustable Housing Material: Cast iron with threads.
9. Frame and Cover Material and Finish: Nickel-bronze, copper alloy.
10. Frame and Cover Shape: Round.
11. Top Loading Classification: Extra Heavy Duty rated for aircraft loading.
12. Riser: ASTM A 74, Extra-Heavy class, cast-iron drainage pipe fitting and riser to cleanout.

2.3 MISCELLANEOUS SANITARY DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Deep-Seal Traps:
   1. Description: Cast-iron or bronze casting, with inlet and outlet matching connected piping and cleanout trap-seal primer valve connection.
   2. Size: Same as connected waste piping.
      a. NPS 2: 4-inch minimum water seal.
      b. NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: 5-inch minimum water seal.

B. Floor-Drain, Trap-Seal Primer Fittings:
   1. Description: Cast iron, with threaded inlet and threaded or spigot outlet, and trap-seal primer valve connection.
   2. Size: Same as floor drain outlet with NPS 1/2 side inlet.
   3. Type & Size: See plumbing plans.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

B. Install deep-seal traps on floor drains and other waste outlets, if indicated.

C. Install floor-drain, trap-seal primer fittings on inlet to floor drains that require trap-seal primer connection.
   1. Exception: Fitting may be omitted if trap has trap-seal primer connection.
   2. Size: Same as floor drain inlet.

D. Install sleeve and sleeve seals with each riser and stack passing through floors with waterproof membrane.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping" for piping installation requirements. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 13 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 14 13 - FACILITY STORM DRAINAGE PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings.
   2. PVC pipe and fittings.
   3. Specialty pipe and fittings.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For controlled-flow roof drainage system. Include calculations, plans, and details.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Detail storm drainage piping. Show support locations, type of support, weight on each support, required clearances, and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:
   1. Structural members to which drainage piping will be attached or suspended from.

B. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Piping materials shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Storm Drainage Service: Do not interrupt service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary service according to requirements indicated:
   1. Notify Owner at least two days in advance of proposed interruption of storm drainage service.
   2. Do not proceed with interruption of storm drainage service without Owner's written permission.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Components and installation shall be capable of withstanding the following minimum working pressure unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Storm Drainage Piping: 10-foot head of water.

2.2 HUBLESS, CAST-IRON SOIL PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. Pipe and Fittings:
   1. Marked with CISPI collective trademark and NSF certification mark.
   2. Standard: ASTM A 888 or CISPI 301.

B. Heavy-Duty, Hubless-Piping Couplings:
   1. Standard: ASTM C 1540..
   2. Description: Stainless-steel shield with stainless-steel bands and tightening devices; and ASTM C 564, rubber sleeve with integral, center pipe stop.

2.3 PVC PIPE AND FITTINGS

A. NSF Marking: Comply with NSF 14, "Plastics Piping Systems Components and Related Materials," for plastic piping components. Include marking with "NSF-drain" for plastic storm drain and "NSF-sewer" for plastic storm sewer piping.

B. Solid-Wall PVC Pipe: ASTM D 2665; drain, waste, and vent.

C. PVC Socket Fittings: ASTM D 2665, made to ASTM D 3311, drain, waste, and vent patterns and to fit Schedule 40 pipe.

D. Adhesive Primer: ASTM F 656.
   1. Verify adhesive primer has a VOC content of 550 g/L or less.

E. Solvent Cement: ASTM D 2564.
   1. Verify solvent cement has a VOC content of 510 g/L or less.

2.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTINGS

A. Transition Couplings:
   1. General Requirements: Fitting or device for joining piping with small differences in ODs or of different materials. Include end connections same size as and compatible with pipes to be joined.
   2. Fitting-Type Transition Couplings: Manufactured piping coupling or specified-piping-system fitting.
   3. Unshielded, Non-pressure Transition Couplings:
      a. Standard: ASTM C 1173.
      b. Description: Elastomeric sleeve, reducing or transition pattern. Include shear ring and corrosion-resistant-metal tension band and tightening mechanism on each end.
      c. Sleeve Materials:
         1) For Cast-Iron Soil Pipes: ASTM C 564, rubber.
         2) For Plastic Pipes: ASTM F 477, elastomeric seal or ASTM D 5926, PVC.
         3) For Dissimilar Pipes: ASTM D 5926, PVC or other material compatible with pipe materials being joined.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EARTH MOVING

A. Comply with requirements for excavating, trenching, and backfilling specified in Section 31 20 00 "Earth Moving."

3.2 PIPING INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems.
   1. Indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipes and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations.
   2. Install piping as indicated unless deviations from layout are approved on coordination drawings.

B. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

C. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

D. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

E. Install piping to permit valve servicing.

F. Install piping at indicated slopes.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Install piping to allow application of insulation.

J. Make changes in direction for piping using appropriate branches, bends, and long-sweep bends.
   1. Do not change the direction of flow more than 90 degrees.
   2. Use proper size of standard increasers and reducers if pipes of different sizes are connected.

a. Reducing the size of drainage piping in the direction of flow is prohibited.

K. Lay buried building piping beginning at low point of each system.
1. Install true to grades and alignment indicated, with unbroken continuity of invert. Place hub ends of piping upstream.
2. Install required gaskets according to manufacturer's written instructions for use of lubricants, cements, and other installation requirements.
3. Maintain swab in piping and pull past each joint as completed.

L. Install piping at the following minimum slopes unless otherwise indicated:
1. Horizontal Building Storm Drain Piping: 2 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 2-1/2 and smaller; 1 percent downward in direction of flow for piping NPS 3 and larger.

M. Install cast-iron soil piping according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook," Chapter IV, "Installation of Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings."
1. Install encasement on underground piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

N. Install steel piping according to applicable plumbing code.

O. Install underground PVC piping according to ASTM D 2321.

P. Install engineered controlled-flow drain specialties and storm drainage piping in locations indicated.

Q. Install underground, ductile-iron, force-main piping according to AWWA C600.
1. Install buried piping inside building between wall and floor penetrations and connection to storm sewer piping outside building with restrained joints.
2. Anchor pipe to wall or floor. Install thrust-block supports at vertical and horizontal offsets.
3. Install encasement on piping according to ASTM A 674 or AWWA C105/A 21.5.

R. Plumbing Specialties:
1. Install cleanouts at grade and extend to where building storm drains connect to building storm sewers in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
a. Install cleanout fitting with closure plug inside the building in storm drainage force-main piping.
b. Comply with requirements for cleanouts specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

2. Install drains in storm drainage gravity-flow piping.
   a. Comply with requirements for drains specified in Section 221423 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

S. Do not enclose, cover, or put piping into operation until it is inspected and approved by authorities having jurisdiction.

T. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

U. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs.
1. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 22 05 17 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Plumbing Piping."

V. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors.
1. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 22 05 18 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

3.3 JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Gasketed Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for compression joints.

B. Hub-and-Spigot, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Caulked Joints: Join according to CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for lead-and-oakum caulked joints.

C. Hubless, Cast-Iron Soil Piping Coupled Joints:
1. Join according to CISPI 310 and CISPI's "Cast Iron Soil Pipe and Fittings Handbook" for hubless-piping coupling joints.

D. Threaded Joints: Thread pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1.
1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies.
2. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   a. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry seal threading is specified.
   b. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged.
   c. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

E. Flanged Joints: Align bolt holes. Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads. Torque bolts in a cross pattern.

F. Plastic, Non-pressure-Piping, Solvent-Cemented Joints: Clean and dry joining surfaces. Join pipe and fittings according to the following:
1. Comply with ASTM F 402 for safe-handling practice of cleaners, primers, and solvent cements.
2. ABS Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2235 and ASTM D 2661 appendices.
3. PVC Piping: Join according to ASTM D 2855 and ASTM D 2665 appendices.

G. Joint Restraints and Sway Bracing:
1. Provide joint restraints and sway bracing for storm drainage piping joints to comply with the following conditions:
a. Provide axial restraint for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction, branches, and changes in diameter greater than two pipe sizes.
b. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 4 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction 45 degrees and greater.
c. Provide rigid sway bracing for pipe and fittings 5 inches and larger, upstream and downstream of all changes in direction and branch openings.

3.4 SPECIALTY PIPE FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Transition Couplings:
1. Install transition couplings at joints of piping with small differences in ODs.
2. In Drainage Piping: Unshielded, non-pressure transition couplings.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with requirements for seismic-restraint devices specified in Section 22 05 29 "Hangers and Support for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

B. Support horizontal piping and tubing within 12 inches of each fitting and coupling.

C. Support vertical tubing and piping to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent, but as a minimum at base and on each floor.

D. Support vertical PVC piping with manufacturer's written instructions, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Connect interior storm drainage piping to exterior storm drainage piping. Use transition fitting to join dissimilar piping materials.

C. Connect storm drainage piping to roof drains and storm drainage specialties.
   1. Install test tees (wall cleanouts) in conductors near floor, and floor cleanouts with cover flush with floor.
   2. Comply with requirements for cleanouts and drains specified in Section 22 14 23 "Storm Drainage Piping Specialties."

D. Where installing piping adjacent to equipment allow space for service and maintenance.

E. Make connections according to the following unless otherwise indicated:
   1. Install unions, in piping NPS 2 and smaller, adjacent to each valve and at final connection to each piece of equipment.
   2. Install flanges, in piping NPS 2-1/2 and larger, adjacent to flanged valves and at final connection to each piece of equipment.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify exposed storm drainage piping.

B. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. During installation, notify authorities having jurisdiction at least 24 hours before inspection must be made. Perform tests specified below in presence of authorities having jurisdiction.
   1. Roughing-in Inspection: Arrange for inspection of piping before concealing or closing-in after roughing-in.
   2. Final Inspection: Arrange for final inspection by authorities having jurisdiction to observe tests specified below and to ensure compliance with requirements.

B. Test storm drainage piping according to procedures of authorities having jurisdiction or, in absence of published procedures, as follows:
   1. Test for leaks and defects in new piping and parts of existing piping that have been altered, extended, or repaired.
      a. If testing is performed in segments, submit separate report for each test, complete with diagram of portion of piping tested.
   2. Leave uncovered and unconcealed new, altered, extended, or replaced storm drainage piping until it has been tested and approved.
      a. Expose work that was covered or concealed before it was tested.
   3. Test Procedure:
      a. Test storm drainage piping on completion of roughing-in.
      b. Close openings in piping system and fill with water to point of overflow, but not less than 10-foot head of water. From 15 minutes before inspection starts until completion of inspection, water level must not drop. Inspect joints for leaks.
   4. Repair leaks and defects with new materials and retest piping, or portion thereof, until satisfactory results are obtained.
   5. Prepare reports for tests and require corrective action.

C. Piping will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 CLEANING AND PROTECTION

A. Clean interior of piping. Remove dirt and debris as work progresses.

B. Protect drains during the remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt and debris and to prevent damage from traffic and construction work.

C. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of day and when work stops.

3.10 PIPING SCHEDULE

A. Flanges and unions may be used on aboveground pressure piping unless otherwise indicated.

B. Aboveground storm drainage piping shall be the following:
   1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.

C. Underground storm drainage piping shall be the following:
   1. Hubless, cast-iron soil pipe and fittings; heavy-duty, hubless-piping couplings; and coupled joints.
   2. Solid-wall PVC pipe, PVC socket fittings, and solvent-cemented joints.

END OF SECTION 22 14 13

SECTION 22 14 23 - STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal roof drains.
2. Miscellaneous storm drainage piping specialties.
3. Cleanouts.
4. Trench Drains.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 076200 "Sheet Metal Flashing and Trim" for penetrations of roofs.
2. Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping" for firestopping roof penetrations.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Drainage piping specialties shall bear label, stamp, or other markings of specified testing agency.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL ROOF DRAINS

A. Cast-Iron, Large-Sump, General-Purpose Roof Drains:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

    a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co; a division of Morris Group International.
    b. MIFAB, Inc.
    c. Zurn Industries, LLC.

2. Standard: ASME A112.6.4.
3. Body Material: Cast iron.
4. Dimension of Body: See Plumbing schedules for diameter
5. Flow-Control Weirs: Required.
6. Outlet: Bottom.
7. Extension Collars: Not required unless otherwise noted.
8. Underdeck Clamp: Not required unless otherwise noted.
9. Expansion Joint: Not required unless otherwise noted.
10. Sump Receiver Plate: Not required unless otherwise noted.
11. Dome Material: Cast Iron.
12. Perforated Gravel Guard: Stainless steel.
13. Water Dam: 2 inches high on ED only.
14. Parking deck area drains to be heavy traffic rated

2.2 MISCELLANEOUS STORM DRAINAGE PIPING SPECIALTIES

A. Metal Downspout Nozzles:
    1. Description: Nozzle with wall flange and mounting holes to cover rough opening and serve as anchor..
    2. Size: Same as connected downspout.
    3. Material: Cast bronze or nickel bronze nozzle and flange.
    4. Opening Protection: Birdscreen.

2.3 CLEANOUTS

A. Cast-Iron Wall Cleanouts:
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
        a. Jay R. Smith Mfg. Co; a division of Morris Group International.
        b. Josam Company.
        c. Tyler Pipe; a subsidiary of McWane Inc.
        d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
    2. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M. Include wall access.
    3. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.

4. Body: No-hub, cast-iron soil pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
5. Closure Plug:
   a. Brass.
   b. Countersunk head.
   c. Drilled and threaded for cover attachment screw.
   d. Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.
6. Wall Access, Cover Plate: Round, flat, chrome-plated brass or stainless steel cover plate with screw.

B. Test Tees:
1. Standard: ASME A112.36.2M and ASTM A74, ASTM A888, or CISPI 301.
2. Size: Same as connected drainage piping.
3. Body Material: Hub-and-spigot, cast-iron soil-pipe T-branch or no-hub, cast-iron soil-pipe test tee as required to match connected piping.
4. Closure Plug: raised head, brass.
5. Closure Plug Size: Same as, or not more than, one size smaller than cleanout size.

2.4 TRENCH DRAINS

A. Pre-sloped Trench Drain System:
1. Trench drain system will easy connect drain sections.
2. Pre-sloped system with integral drainage grate.
3. Heavy duty traffic rated grate.
4. See plans for basis of design manufacturer, model number and sizing.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install roof drains at low points of roof areas in accordance with roof membrane manufacturer's written installation instructions.
1. Install flashing collar or flange of roof drain to prevent leakage between drain and adjoining roofing. Maintain integrity of waterproof membranes where penetrated.
2. Install expansion joints, if indicated, in roof drain outlets.
3. Position roof drains for easy access and maintenance.

B. Install downspout adapters on outlet of back-outlet parapet roof drains and connect to sheet metal downspouts.

C. Install downspout boots at grade with top 12 inches above grade. Secure to building wall.

D. Install downspout nozzles at exposed bottom of conductors where they spill onto grade.

E. Install cleanouts in aboveground piping and building drain piping in accordance with the following instructions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Use cleanouts the same size as drainage piping up to NPS 4. Use NPS 4 for larger drainage piping unless larger cleanout is indicated.
2. Locate cleanouts at each change in direction of piping greater than 45 degrees.
3. Locate cleanouts at minimum intervals of 50 feet for piping NPS 4 and smaller and 100 feet for larger piping.
4. Locate cleanouts at base of each vertical storm piping conductor.

F. For floor cleanouts for piping below floors, install cleanout deck plates with top flush with finished floor.

G. For cleanouts located in concealed piping, install cleanout wall access covers, of types indicated, with frame and cover flush with finished wall.

H. Install test tees in vertical conductors and near floor.

I. Install wall cleanouts in vertical conductors. Install access door in wall if indicated.

J. Install trench drains at low points of surface areas to be drained. Set grates of drains flush with finished surface unless otherwise indicated.

K. Assemble channel drainage system components in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Install on support devices so that the top will be flush with adjacent surface.

L. Install through-penetration firestop assemblies for penetration of fire- and smoke-rated assemblies.
1. Comply with requirements in Section 078413 "Penetration Firestopping."

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221413 "Facility Storm Drainage Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FLASHING

A. Fabricate flashing from single piece of metal unless large pans, sumps, or other drainage shapes are required.

B. Install sheet flashing on pipes, sleeves, and specialties passing through or embedded in floors and roofs with waterproof membrane.

C. Set flashing on floors and roofs in solid coating of bituminous cement.

D. Secure flashing into sleeve and specialty clamping ring or device.

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect drains during the remainder of construction period to avoid clogging with dirt or debris and to prevent damage from traffic or construction work.

B. Place plugs in ends of uncompleted piping at end of each day or when work stops.

END OF SECTION 22 14 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 22 33 00 - ELECTRICAL DOMESTIC WATER HEATERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Commercial, electric, storage, domestic-water heaters.
   2. Domestic-water heater accessories.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type and size of domestic-water heater indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

   1. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Seismic Qualification Certificates: For commercial domestic-water heaters, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of commercial electric, domestic-water heater, from manufacturer.

C. Domestic-Water Heater Labeling: Certified and labeled by testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field quality-control reports.

F. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For electric, domestic-water heaters to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE/IESNA Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.

C. ASME Compliance: Where ASME-code construction is indicated, fabricate and label commercial, domestic-water heater storage tanks to comply with ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section VIII, Division 1.

D. NSF Compliance: Fabricate and label equipment components that will be in contact with potable water to comply with NSF 61 Annex G, "Drinking Water System Components - Health Effects."

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of wall support brackets for hanging water heater from wall. Bracket and method of supporting water heater elevated above floor slab shall be delegated design.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of electric, domestic-water heaters that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

    a. Structural failures including storage tank and supports.
    b. Faulty operation of controls.
    c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal use.

2. Warranty Periods: From date of Substantial Completion.

    a. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

        1) Storage Tank: Five years.
        2) Controls and Other Components: Five years.

    b. Compression Tanks: Five years.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COMMERCIAL, ELECTRIC, DOMESTIC-WATER HEATERS

A. Commercial, Electric, Storage, Domestic-Water Heaters:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the work include, but not limited to the following:

    a. Smith, A. O. Water Products Co.
    b. Lochinvar
    c. Rheem
    d. General Electric (GE)

2. Standard: UL 1453.
3. Storage-Tank Construction: ASME-code, steel vertical arrangement.

    a. Tappings: Factory fabricated of materials compatible with tank and piping connections. Attach tappings to tank before testing.

        1) NPS 2 and Smaller: Threaded ends according to ASME B1.20.1.
        2) NPS 2-1/2 and Larger: Flanged ends according to ASME B16.5 for steel and stainless-steel flanges, and according to ASME B16.24 for copper and copper-alloy flanges.

    b. Pressure Rating: 150 psig.

c. Interior Finish: Comply with NSF 61 Annex G barrier materials for potable-water tank linings, including extending lining material into tappings.

4. Factory-Installed Storage-Tank Appurtenances:

a. Anode Rod: Replaceable magnesium.
b. Drain Valve: Corrosion-resistant metal complying with ASSE 1005.
c. Insulation: Comply with ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
d. Jacket: Steel with enameled finish.
e. Heating Elements: Electric, screw-in or bolt-on immersion type arranged in multiples of three.
f. Temperature Control: Adjustable thermostat.
g. Safety Controls: High-temperature-limit and low-water cutoff devices or systems.
h. Relief Valves: ASME rated and stamped for combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves. Include one or more relief valves with total relieving capacity at least as great as heat input, and include pressure setting less than domestic-water heater working-pressure rating. Select one relief valve with sensing element that extends into storage tank.

5. Special Requirements: NSF 5 construction.

2.2 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect domestic-water heaters specified to be ASME-code construction, according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code.

B. Hydrostatically test commercial domestic-water heaters to minimum of one and one-half times pressure rating before shipment.

C. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DOMESTIC-WATER HEATER INSTALLATION

A. Commercial, Electric, Domestic-Water Heater Mounting: Install commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters on elevated wall mounted bracket/frame.

1. Commercial, electric, domestic-water heaters shall be installed onto wall mounted bracket, provided by the manufacturer or custom fabricated. Bracket shall be submitted for prior approval.
2. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances.
3. Arrange unit so controls and devices that require servicing are accessible.
4. Install Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings. Templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be supported

B. Install electric, domestic-water heaters level and plumb, according to layout drawings, original design, and referenced standards. Maintain manufacturer's recommended clearances. Arrange units so controls and devices needing service are accessible.

1. Install shutoff valves on domestic-water-supply piping to domestic-water heaters and on domestic-hot-water outlet piping. Comply with requirements for shutoff valves specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping,

C. Install combination temperature-and-pressure relief valves in top portion of storage tanks. Use relief valves with sensing elements that extend into tanks. Extend commercial-water-heater relief-valve outlet, with drain piping same as domestic-water piping in continuous downward pitch, and discharge by positive air gap onto closest floor drain.

D. Install water-heater drain piping as indirect waste to spill by positive air gap into open drains or over floor drains. Install hose-end drain valves at low points in water piping for electric, domestic-water heaters that do not have tank drains. Comply with requirements for hose-end drain valves specified in Section 221119 "Domestic Water Piping Specialties."

E. Install thermometers on outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

F. Install thermometers on inlet and outlet piping of residential, solar, electric, domestic-water heaters. Comply with requirements for thermometers specified in Section 220519 "Meters and Gages for Plumbing Piping."

G. Install piping-type heat traps on inlet and outlet piping of electric, domestic-water heater storage tanks without integral or fitting-type heat traps.

H. Fill electric, domestic-water heaters with water.

I. Charge domestic-water compression tanks with air.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for piping specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping." Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where installing piping adjacent to electric, domestic-water heaters, allow space for service and maintenance of water heaters. Arrange piping for easy removal of domestic-water heaters.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 220553 "Identification for Plumbing Piping and Equipment."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.
2. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
3. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper operation.
4. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

B. Electric, domestic-water heaters will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections. Comply with requirements in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 017300 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 22 33 00

SECTION 22 47 13 - DRINKING FOUNTAINS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Refrigerated drinking fountains.
   2. Bottle filling stations.
   3. Supports.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of drinking fountain and bottle filling station.
   1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
   2. Include operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Include diagrams for power wiring.

1.3 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For drinking fountains and bottle filling stations to include in maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Standards:
   1. Drinking fountains and bottle filling stations intended to convey or dispense water for human consumption are to comply with the U.S. Safe Drinking Water Act (SDWA), requirements of the Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ), and with NSF 61 or NSF 372, or be certified in compliance with NSF 61 or NSF 372 by an ANSI-accredited third-party

certification body, that the weighted average lead content at wetted surfaces is less than or equal to 0.25 percent.

2. Comply with ASME A112.19.3/CSA B45.4 for stainless steel drinking fountains and bottle filling stations.
3. Comply with NSF 42 and NSF 53 for water filters for drinking fountains and bottle filling stations.
4. Comply with ICC A117.1 for accessible drinking fountains and bottle filling stations.

2.2 DRINKING FOUNTAINS

A. Drinking Fountains - Wall-Mounted, Stainless Steel: dual height, wheelchair accessible with integral bottle filler.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
   a. Elkay.
   b. Filtrine Manufacturing Company.
   c. Halsey Taylor.
   d. Oasis International.
2. Source Limitations: Obtain wall-mounted, stainless steel drinking fountains from single source from single manufacturer.
3. Cabinet: Bi-level with two attached cabinets, vinyl-covered steel with stainless steel top.
4. Receptor Shape: Concave with projecting bowl.
5. Bubbler: One, with adjustable stream regulator, located on deck.
6. Maximum Water Flow: 0.5 gpm.
7. Control: Push button or Push bar.
8. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
9. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
10. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
11. Filter: One or more water filters with capacity sized for unit peak flow rate.
12. Support: Manufacturer-provided support frame for attaching to substrate.
13. Drinking Fountain Mounting Height: Accessible in accordance with ICC A117.1.

B. Bottle Filling Station – Mounted integral to bi-level water cooler.

1. Type: Vandal resistant and freeze resistant.
2. Cabinet: Stainless steel.
3. Bottle Filler: Sensor activation, with 20-second automatic shutoff timer. Fill rate 0.5 to 1.5 gpm.

4. Water Dispenser: Anti-microbial plastic
5. Drain: Grid type with NPS 1-1/4 tailpiece.
6. Supply: NPS 3/8 with shutoff valve.
7. Waste Fitting: ASME A112.18.2/CSA B125.2, NPS 1-1/4 brass P-trap.
8. Filter: One or more water filters complying with NSF 42 and NSF 53 and with capacity sized for peak flow rate.
9. Bottle Filling Station Mounting Height: Accessible in accordance with ICC A117.1.
10. Electrical Characteristics:
    a. Volts: 120 V ac.
    b. Phase: Single.
    c. Hertz: 60 Hz.

2.3 SUPPORTS

A. Drinking Fountain Carrier:
    1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

        a. MIFAB, Inc.
        b. Wade Drains.
        c. WATTS.
        d. Zurn Industries, LLC.
    2. Standard: ASME A112.6.1M.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for water-supply and sanitary drainage and vent piping systems to verify actual locations of piping connections before fixture installation.

B. Examine walls and floors for suitable conditions where fixtures will be installed.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install fixtures level and plumb according to roughing-in drawings. For fixtures indicated for children, install at height required by authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Set pedestal drinking fountains and bottle filling stations on flat surface in accordance with manufacturer's written installation instructions.

C. Install recessed, drinking fountains and bottle filling stations secured to wood blocking in wall construction.

D. Install off-the-floor carrier supports, affixed to building substrate, for wall-mounted fixtures.

E. Install water-supply piping with shutoff valve on supply to each fixture to be connected to domestic-water distribution piping. Use ball valve. Install valves in locations where they can be easily reached for operation. Valves are specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

F. Install trap and waste piping on drain outlet of each fixture to be connected to sanitary drainage system.

G. Install wall flanges or escutcheons at piping wall penetrations in exposed, finished locations. Use deep-pattern escutcheons where required to conceal protruding fittings. Comply with escutcheon requirements specified in Section 220518 "Escutcheons for Plumbing Piping."

H. Seal joints between fixtures and walls using sanitary-type, one-part, mildew-resistant, silicone sealant. Match sealant color to fixture color. Comply with sealant requirements specified in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."

3.3 PIPING CONNECTIONS

A. Connect fixtures with water supplies, stops, and risers, and with traps, soil, waste, and vent piping. Use size fittings required to match fixtures.

B. Comply with water piping requirements specified in Section 221116 "Domestic Water Piping."

C. Install ball shutoff valve on water supply to each fixture. Comply with valve requirements specified in Section 220523.12 "Ball Valves for Plumbing Piping."

D. Comply with soil and waste piping requirements specified in Section 221316 "Sanitary Waste and Vent Piping."

3.4 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.

C. Install nameplate for each electrical connection, indicating electrical equipment designation and circuit number feeding connection.
   1. Nameplates to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs, as specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."
   2. Nameplates to be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust fixture flow regulators for proper flow and stream height.

3.6 CLEANING

A. After installing fixtures, inspect the unit. Remove paint splatters and other spots, dirt, and debris. Repair damaged finish to match original finish.

B. Clean fixtures, on completion of installation, according to manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Provide protective covering for installed fixtures.

D. Do not allow use of fixtures for temporary facilities unless approved in writing by Owner.

END OF SECTION 22 47 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 13 - COMMON MOTOR REQUIREMENTS FOR HVAC EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes general requirements for single-phase and polyphase, general-purpose, horizontal, small and medium, squirrel-cage induction motors for use on alternating-current power systems up to 600 V and installed at equipment manufacturer's factory or shipped separately by equipment manufacturer for field installation.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of motors, installed units, and accessory devices to be compatible with the following:
   1. Motor controllers.
   2. Torque, speed, and horsepower requirements of the load.
   3. Ratings and characteristics of supply circuit and required control sequence.
   4. Ambient and environmental conditions of installation location.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL MOTOR REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1 unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with IEEE 841 for severe-duty motors.

2.2 MOTOR CHARACTERISTICS

A. Duty: Continuous duty at ambient temperature of 40 deg C and at altitude of 3300 feet above sea level.

B. Capacity and Torque Characteristics: Sufficient to start, accelerate, and operate connected loads at designated speeds, at installed altitude and environment, with indicated operating sequence, and without exceeding nameplate ratings or considering service factor.

2.3 POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium induction motor.

B. Efficiency: Premium efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Multispeed Motors: Variable torque.
   1. For motors with 2:1 speed ratio, consequent pole, single winding.
   2. For motors with other than 2:1 speed ratio, separate winding for each speed.

E. Multispeed Motors: Separate winding for each speed.

F. Rotor: Random-wound, squirrel cage.

G. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

H. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

I. Insulation: Class F.

J. Code Letter Designation:
   1. Motors 15 HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
   2. Motors Smaller Than 15 HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

K. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

2.3 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR POLYPHASE MOTORS

A. Motors Used with Reduced-Voltage and Multispeed Controllers: Match wiring connection requirements for controller with required motor leads. Provide terminals in motor terminal box, suited to control method.

B. Motors Used with Variable-Frequency Controllers: Ratings, characteristics, and features coordinated with and approved by controller manufacturer.

1. Windings: Copper magnet wire with moisture-resistant insulation varnish, designed and tested to resist transient spikes, high frequencies, and short time rise pulses produced by pulse-width-modulated inverters.
2. Premium-Efficient Motors: Class B temperature rise; Class F insulation.
3. Inverter-Duty Motors: Class F temperature rise; Class H insulation.
4. Thermal Protection: Comply with NEMA MG 1 requirements for thermally protected motors.

C. Severe-Duty Motors: Comply with IEEE 841, with 1.15 minimum service factor.

2.4 SINGLE-PHASE MOTORS

A. Motors larger than 1/20 hp shall be one of the following, to suit starting torque and requirements of specific motor application:
   1. Permanent-split capacitor.
   2. Split phase.
   3. Capacitor start, inductor run.
   4. Capacitor start, capacitor run.

B. Multispeed Motors: Variable-torque, permanent-split-capacitor type.

C. Bearings: Pre-lubricated, antifriction ball bearings or sleeve bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

D. Motors 1/20 HP and Smaller: Shaded-pole type.

E. Thermal Protection: Internal protection to automatically open power supply circuit to motor when winding temperature exceeds a safe value calibrated to temperature rating of motor insulation. Thermal-protection device shall automatically reset when motor temperature returns to normal range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION (Not Applicable)

END OF SECTION 23 05 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 17 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Sleeves.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Grout.
4. Silicone sealants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated of cast or ductile iron and equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop collar.

B. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40 with plain ends and integral welded waterstop collar.

C. Galvanized-Steel Sheet Sleeves: 0.0239-inch minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint.

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description:
   1. Modular sealing-element unit, designed for field assembly, for filling annular space between piping and sleeve.
   2. Designed to form a hydrostatic seal of 20-psig.
   3. Sealing Elements: EPDM-rubber or Nitrile (Buna N) interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size.
   4. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel or Stainless steel.
   5. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, ASTM B633 of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 GROUT

A. Description: Nonshrink, recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in nonfire-rated walls.

B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.4 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone, S, NS, 25, NT: Single-component, nonsag, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant, ASTM C920, Type S, Grade NS, Class 25, use NT.

B. Silicone, S, P, 25, T, NT: Single-component, pourable, plus 25 percent and minus 25 percent movement capability, traffic- and nontraffic-use, neutral-curing silicone joint sealant; ASTM C920, Type S, Grade P, Class 25, Uses T and NT. Grade P Pourable (self-leveling) formulation is for opening in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

C. Silicone Foam: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeves for piping passing through penetrations in floors, partitions, roofs, and walls.
   1. Sleeves are not required for core-drilled holes

B. Install sleeves in concrete floors, concrete roof slabs, and concrete walls.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
      a. Exception: Extend sleeves installed in floors of mechanical equipment areas or other wet areas 2 inches above finished floor level.

C. Install sleeves for pipes passing through interior partitions.
   1. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces.
   2. Seal annular space between sleeve and piping or piping insulation; use sealants appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior walls at piping entries into building.

B. Select type, size, and number of sealing elements required for piping material and size and for sleeve ID or hole size. Position piping in center of sleeve. Center piping in penetration, assemble sleeve-seal-system components, and install in annular space between piping and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make a watertight seal.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After allowing for a full cure, test sleeves and sleeve seals for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

B. Sleeves and sleeve seals will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL SCHEDULE

A. Use sleeves and sleeve seals for the following piping-penetration applications for individual pipes and refrigerant linesets:
   1. Exterior Concrete Walls below Grade:
      a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
         1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inchannular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
      b. Piping NPS 6and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
         1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inchannular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   2. Concrete Slabs-on-Grade:
      a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
         1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch annular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
      b. Piping NPS 6and Larger: Steel pipe sleeves with sleeve-seal system.
         1) Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inchannular clear space between piping and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.
   3. Interior Partitions
      a. Piping Smaller Than NPS 6: Galvanized-steel sheet sleeves.

END OF SECTION 23 05 17

SECTION 23 05 18 - ESCUTCHEONS FOR HVAC PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Escutcheons.
   2. Floor plates.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ESCUTCHEONS

A. One-Piece, Cast-Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and setscrew fastener.

B. One-Piece, Deep-Pattern Type: Deep-drawn, box-shaped brass with chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

C. One-Piece, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish and spring-clip fasteners.

D. Split-Casting Brass Type: With polished, chrome-plated finish and with concealed hinge and setscrew.

E. Split-Plate, Stamped-Steel Type: With chrome-plated finish, concealed and [exposed-rivet hinge, and spring-clip fasteners.

2.2 FLOOR PLATES

A. One-Piece Floor Plates: Cast-iron flange with holes for fasteners.

B. Split-Casting Floor Plates: Cast brass with concealed hinge.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and finished floors.

B. Install escutcheons with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.
   1. Escutcheons for New Piping:
      a. Piping with Fitting or Sleeve Protruding from Wall: One-piece, deep-pattern type.
      b. Chrome-Plated Piping: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      c. Insulated Piping: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      d. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      e. Bare Piping at Wall and Floor Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      f. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with polished, chrome-plated finish.
      g. Bare Piping at Ceiling Penetrations in Finished Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      h. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass type with rough-brass finish.
      i. Bare Piping in Unfinished Service Spaces: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.
      j. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, cast-brass or split-casting brass with rough-brass finish.
      k. Bare Piping in Equipment Rooms: One-piece, stamped-steel type or split-plate, stamped-steel type with concealed hinge or split-plate, stamped-steel type with exposed-rivet hinge.

C. Install floor plates for piping penetrations of equipment-room floors.

D. Install floor plates with ID to closely fit around pipe, tube, and insulation of piping and with OD that completely covers opening.

1. New Piping: One-piece, floor-plate type.
2. Existing Piping: Split-casting, floor-plate type.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Replace broken and damaged escutcheons and floor plates using new materials.

END OF SECTION 23 05 18

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Metal pipe hangers and supports.
2. Trapeze pipe hangers.
3. Metal framing systems.
4. Thermal-hanger shield inserts.
5. Fastener systems.
6. Equipment supports.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 23 05 48.13 "Vibration Controls for HVAC" for vibration isolation devices.
2. Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" for duct hangers and supports.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Show fabrication and installation details and include calculations for the following; include Product Data for components:
1. Trapeze pipe hangers.
2. Metal framing systems.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For trapeze hangers indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.
1. Detail fabrication and assembly of trapeze hangers.

2. Include design calculations for designing trapeze hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Structural-Steel Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Pipe Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and operators according to ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code, Section IX.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design trapeze pipe hangers and equipment supports.

B. Structural Performance: Hangers and supports for HVAC piping and equipment shall withstand the effects of gravity loads and stresses within limits and under conditions indicated according to ASCE/SEI 7.
1. Design supports for multiple pipes, including pipe stands, capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems, system contents, and test water.
2. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

2.2 METAL PIPE HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Carbon-Steel Pipe Hangers and Supports:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, factory-fabricated components.
2. Galvanized Metallic Coatings: Pregalvanized, hot-dip galvanized, or electro-galvanized.
3. Nonmetallic Coatings: Plastic coated, or epoxy powder-coated.

4. Padded Hangers: Hanger with fiberglass or other pipe insulation pad or cushion to support bearing surface of piping.
5. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of carbon steel.

B. Copper Pipe and Tube Hangers:
1. Description: MSS SP-58, Types 1 through 58, copper-plated steel, factory-fabricated components.
2. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of copper-plated steel.

2.3 TRAPEZE PIPE HANGERS

A. Description: MSS SP-58, Type 59, shop- or field-fabricated pipe-support assembly made from structural carbon-steel shapes with MSS SP-58 carbon-steel hanger rods, nuts, saddles, and U-bolts.

2.4 METAL FRAMING SYSTEMS

A. MFMA Manufacturer Metal Framing Systems:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
a. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
b. Flex-Strut Inc.
c. G-Strut.
d. Unistrut; Atkore International.
e. Wesanco, Inc.
2. Description: Shop- or field-fabricated, pipe-support assembly made of steel channels, accessories, fittings, and other components for supporting multiple parallel pipes.
3. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
4. Channels: Continuous slotted carbon-steel channel with inturned lips.
5. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria.
6. Channel Nuts: Formed or stamped nuts or other devices designed to fit into channel slot and, when tightened, prevent slipping along channel.
7. Hanger Rods: Continuous-thread rod, nuts, and washer made of galvanized steel .
8. Metallic Coating: Hot-dip galvanized.

2.5 THERMAL-HANGER SHIELD INSERTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
   1. Carpenter & Paterson, Inc.
   2. KB Enterprise.
   3. Pipe Shields Inc.
   4. Piping Technology & Products, Inc.
   5. Rilco Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   6. Value Engineered Products, Inc.

B. For Trapeze or Clamped Systems: Insert and shield shall cover entire circumference of pipe.

C. For Clevis or Band Hangers: Insert and shield shall cover lower 180 degrees of pipe.

D. Insert Length: Extend 2 inches beyond sheet metal shield for piping operating below ambient air temperature.

2.6 FASTENER SYSTEMS

A. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type anchors for use in hardened portland cement concrete; with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:
      a. B-line; Eaton, Electrical Sector.
      b. Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      c. Hilti, Inc.
      d. ITW Ramset/Red Head; Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      e. MKT Fastening, LLC.

   2. Indoor Applications: Zinc-coated steel.
   3. Outdoor Applications: Stainless steel.

2.7 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Description: Welded, shop- or field-fabricated equipment support made from structural carbon-steel shapes.

2.8 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum: ASTM B221.

B. Carbon Steel: ASTM A1011/A1011M.

C. Structural Steel: ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel plates, shapes, and bars; galvanized.

D. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M.

E. Threaded Rods: Continuously threaded. Zinc-plated or galvanized steel for indoor applications and stainless steel for outdoor applications. Mating nuts and washers of similar materials as rods.

F. Grout: ASTM C1107/C1107M, factory-mixed and -packaged, dry, hydraulic-cement, nonshrink and nonmetallic grout; suitable for interior and exterior applications.
   1. Properties: Nonstaining, noncorrosive, and nongaseous.
   2. Design Mix: 5000-psi, 28-day compressive strength.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb.

3.2 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Metal Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Install hangers, supports, clamps, and attachments as required to properly support piping from the building structure.

B. Metal Trapeze Pipe-Hanger Installation: Comply with MSS SP-58. Arrange for grouping of parallel runs of horizontal piping, and support together on field-fabricated trapeze pipe hangers.
   1. Field fabricate from ASTM A36/A36M, carbon-steel shapes selected for loads being supported. Weld steel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

C. Thermal-Hanger Shield Installation: Install in pipe hanger or shield for insulated piping.

D. Install hangers and supports complete with necessary attachments, inserts, bolts, rods, nuts, washers, and other accessories.

E. Equipment Support Installation: Fabricate from welded-structural-steel shapes.

F. Install hangers and supports to allow controlled thermal movement of piping systems, to permit freedom of movement between pipe anchors, and to facilitate action of expansion joints, expansion loops, expansion bends, and similar units.

G. Install lateral bracing with pipe hangers and supports to prevent swaying.

H. Install building attachments within concrete slabs or attach to structural steel. Install additional attachments at concentrated loads, including valves, flanges, and strainers, NPS 2-1/2 and larger and at changes in direction of piping. Install concrete inserts before concrete is placed; fasten inserts to forms and install reinforcing bars through openings at top of inserts.

I. Load Distribution: Install hangers and supports so that piping live and dead loads and stresses from movement will not be transmitted to connected equipment.

J. Pipe Slopes: Install hangers and supports to provide indicated pipe slopes and to not exceed maximum pipe deflections allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

K. Insulated Piping:
   1. Attach clamps and spacers to piping.
      a. Piping Operating above Ambient Air Temperature: Clamp may project through insulation.
      b. Piping Operating below Ambient Air Temperature: Use thermal-hanger shield insert with clamp sized to match OD of insert.
      c. Do not exceed pipe stress limits allowed by ASME B31.9 for building services piping.

2. Install MSS SP-58, Type 39, protection saddles if insulation without vapor barrier is indicated. Fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
3. Install MSS SP-58, Type 40, protective shields on cold piping with vapor barrier. Shields shall span an arc of 180 degrees.
    a. Option: Thermal-hanger shield inserts may be used. Include steel weight-distribution plate for pipe NPS 4 and larger if pipe is installed on rollers.
4. Shield Dimensions for Pipe: Not less than the following:
    a. NPS 1/4 to NPS 3-1/2: 12 inches long and 0.048 inch thick.
5. Thermal-Hanger Shields: Install with insulation same thickness as piping insulation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT SUPPORTS

A. Fabricate structural-steel stands to suspend equipment from structure overhead or to support equipment from wall, or to concrete pad.

B. Grouting: Place grout under supports for equipment and make bearing surface smooth.

C. Provide lateral bracing, to prevent swaying, for equipment supports.

3.4 METAL FABRICATIONS

A. Cut, drill, and fit miscellaneous metal fabrications for equipment supports.

B. Fit exposed connections together to form hairline joints. Field weld connections that cannot be shop welded because of shipping size limitations.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M procedures for shielded, metal arc welding; appearance and quality of welds; and methods used in correcting welding work; and with the following:
1. Use materials and methods that minimize distortion and develop strength and corrosion resistance of base metals.
2. Obtain fusion without undercut or overlap.
3. Remove welding flux immediately.

4. Finish welds at exposed connections so no roughness shows after finishing and so contours of welded surfaces match adjacent contours.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Hanger Adjustments: Adjust hangers to distribute loads equally on attachments and to achieve indicated slope of pipe.

B. Trim excess length of continuous-thread hanger and support rods to 1-1/2 inches.

3.6 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.
   1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide a minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780/A780M.

3.7 HANGER AND SUPPORT SCHEDULE

A. Specific hanger and support requirements are in Sections specifying piping systems and equipment.

B. Comply with MSS SP-58 for pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

C. Use hangers and supports with galvanized metallic coatings for piping and equipment that will not have field-applied finish.

D. Use nonmetallic coatings on attachments for electrolytic protection where attachments are in direct contact with copper tubing.

E. Use carbon-steel pipe hangers and supports and metal framing systems and attachments for general service applications.

F. Use copper-plated pipe hangers and copper attachments for copper piping and tubing.

G. Use padded hangers for piping that is subject to scratching.

H. Use thermal-hanger shield inserts for insulated piping and tubing.

I. Horizontal-Piping Hangers and Supports: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Adjustable, Steel Clevis Hangers (MSS Type 1): For suspension of noninsulated or insulated, stationary pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 30.
   2. Steel Pipe Clamps (MSS Type 4): For suspension of cold and hot pipes NPS 1/2 to NPS 24 if little or no insulation is required.
   3. Adjustable, Swivel Split- or Solid-Ring Hangers (MSS Type 6): For suspension of noninsulated, stationary pipes NPS 3/4 to NPS 8.

J. Vertical-Piping Clamps: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Extension Pipe or Riser Clamps (MSS Type 8): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24.
   2. Carbon- or Alloy-Steel Riser Clamps (MSS Type 42): For support of pipe risers NPS 3/4 to NPS 24 if longer ends are required for riser clamps.

K. Hanger-Rod Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 13): For adjustment up to 6 inches for heavy loads.
   2. Steel Clevises (MSS Type 14): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.
   3. Swivel Turnbuckles (MSS Type 15): For use with MSS Type 11, split pipe rings.
   4. Malleable-Iron Sockets (MSS Type 16): For attaching hanger rods to various types of building attachments.
   5. Steel Weldless Eye Nuts (MSS Type 17): For 120 to 450 deg F piping installations.

L. Building Attachments: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
   1. Steel or Malleable Concrete Inserts (MSS Type 18): For upper attachment to suspend pipe hangers from concrete ceiling.
   2. Top-Beam C-Clamps (MSS Type 19): For use under roof installations with bar-joist construction, to attach to top flange of structural shape.

3. Side-Beam or Channel Clamps (MSS Type 20): For attaching to bottom flange of beams, channels, or angles.
4. Center-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 21): For attaching to center of bottom flange of beams.
5. C-Clamps (MSS Type 23): For structural shapes.
6. Top-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 25): For top of beams if hanger rod is required tangent to flange edge.
7. Side-Beam Clamps (MSS Type 27): For bottom of steel I-beams.
8. Steel-Beam Clamps with Eye Nuts (MSS Type 28): For attaching to bottom of steel I-beams for heavy loads.
9. Malleable-Beam Clamps with Extension Pieces (MSS Type 30): For attaching to structural steel.
10. Welded-Steel Brackets: For support of pipes from below or for suspending from above by using clip and rod. Use one of the following for indicated loads:
    a. Light (MSS Type 31): 750 lb.
    b. Medium (MSS Type 32): 1500 lb.
    c. Heavy (MSS Type 33): 3000 lb.
11. Side-Beam Brackets (MSS Type 34): For sides of steel or wooden beams.
12. Horizontal Travelers (MSS Type 58): For supporting piping systems subject to linear horizontal movement where headroom is limited.

M. Saddles and Shields: Unless otherwise indicated and except as specified in piping system Sections, install the following types:
1. Steel-Pipe-Covering Protection Saddles (MSS Type 39): To fill interior voids with insulation that matches adjoining insulation.
2. Protection Shields (MSS Type 40): Of length recommended in writing by manufacturer to prevent crushing insulation.
3. Thermal-Hanger Shield Inserts: For supporting insulated pipe.

N. Comply with MSS SP-58 for trapeze pipe-hanger selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

O. Comply with MFMA-103 for metal framing system selections and applications that are not specified in piping system Sections.

P. Use powder-actuated fasteners or mechanical-expansion anchors instead of building attachments where required in concrete construction.

END OF SECTION 23 05 29

SECTION 23 05 48.13 - VIBRATION CONTROLS FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Elastomeric Isolation Pads.
   2. Elastomeric hangers.
   3. Spring hangers.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. IBC: International Building Code.

B. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development (for the State of California owned and regulated medical facilities).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
   2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of vibration isolation device component.
   3. Annotate to indicate application of each product submitted and compliance with requirements.
   4. Interlocking Snubbers: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Shop Drawings:
   1. Detail fabrication and assembly of equipment bases.
   2. Product Listing, Preapproval, and Evaluation Documentation: By UL, showing maximum ratings of restraint items and basis for approval (tests or calculations).

3. Design Calculations for Vibration Isolation Devices: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operating forces required to select proper vibration isolators, and to design vibration isolation bases.
4. Riser Supports: Include riser diagrams and calculations showing anticipated expansion and contraction at each support point, initial and final loads on building structure, and spring deflection changes. Include certification that riser system was examined for excessive stress and that none exists.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Fire/Smoke Resistance: All components that are not constructed of ferrous metals must have a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested by an NRTL in accordance with ASTM E84 or UL 723, and be so labeled.

B. Component Supports:
1. Load ratings, features, and applications of all reinforcement components must be based on testing standards of a nationally recognized testing agency.

2.2 ELASTOMERIC ISOLATION PADS

A. Elastomeric Isolation Pads:
1. Fabrication: Single or multiple layers of sufficient durometer stiffness for uniform loading over pad area.
2. Size: Factory or field cut to match requirements of supported equipment.
3. Minimum Deflection: 1 inch.
4. Pad Material: Oil- and water-resistant rubber.

2.3 ELASTOMERIC HANGERS

A. Elastomeric Mount in a Steel Frame with Upper and Lower Steel Hanger Rods:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated with a connection for an upper threaded hanger rod and an opening on the underside to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular lower hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.

2. Damping Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber, neoprene, or other elastomeric material with a projecting bushing for the underside opening preventing steel-to-steel contact.
3. Minimum deflection as indicated on Drawings.

2.4 SPRING HANGERS

A. Combination Coil-Spring and Elastomeric-Insert Hanger with Spring and Insert in Compression:
1. Frame: Steel, fabricated for connection to threaded hanger rods and to allow for a maximum of 30 degrees of angular hanger-rod misalignment without binding or reducing isolation efficiency.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Minimum deflection: 1 inch.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
7. Elastomeric Element: Molded, oil-resistant rubber or neoprene. Steel-washer-reinforced cup to support spring and bushing projecting through bottom of frame.
8. Self-centering hanger rod cap to ensure concentricity between hanger rod and support spring coil.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Pipe Supports: Secure pipes to trapeze member with clamps approved for application by an evaluation service member of ICC-ES.

B. Hanger-Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger-rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to wind-load forces.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength is adequate to carry static and wind force loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF VIBRATION CONTROL DEVICES

A. Provide vibration control devices for systems and equipment where indicated in Equipment Schedules or Vibration-Control Device Schedules on Drawings, where Specifications indicate they are to be installed on specific equipment and systems, and where required by applicable codes.

B. Coordinate location of embedded connection hardware with supported equipment attachment and mounting points.

C. Installation of vibration isolators must not cause any change of position of equipment, piping, or ductwork resulting in stresses or misalignment.

D. Install bushing assemblies for anchor bolts for floor-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media between anchor bolt and mounting hole in concrete base.

E. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL MOTION

A. Provide flexible connections in piping systems where they cross structural joints and other point where differential movement may occur. Provide adequate flexibility to accommodate differential movement as determined in accordance with ASCE/SEI 7.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after system is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained-spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

END OF SECTION 23 05 48.13

SECTION 23 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR HVAC PIPING AND EQUIPMENT

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Equipment labels.
   2. Pipe labels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Samples: For color, letter style, and graphic representation required for each identification material and device.

C. Equipment Label Schedule: Include a listing of all equipment to be labeled with the proposed content for each label.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 EQUIPMENT LABELS

A. Metal Labels for Equipment:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

      a. Brady Corporation.
      b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
      c. Carlton Industries, LP.

d. Champion America.
e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
f. emedco.
g. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
h. LEM Products Inc.
i. Marking Services, Inc.
j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Material and Thickness: anodized aluminum, 0.032-inch minimum thickness, and having predrilled or stamped holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
4. Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

B. Plastic Labels for Equipment:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

a. Brady Corporation.
b. Brimar Industries, Inc.
c. Carlton Industries, LP.
d. Champion America.
e. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
f. emedco.
g. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
h. LEM Products Inc.
i. Marking Services, Inc.
j. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

2. Material and Thickness: Multilayer, multicolor, plastic labels for mechanical engraving, 1/8 inch thick, and having predrilled holes for attachment hardware.
3. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.
4. Maximum Temperature: Able to withstand temperatures up to 160 deg F.
5. Minimum Label Size: Length and width vary for required label content, but not less than 2-1/2 by 3/4 inch.
6. Minimum Letter Size: 1/4 inch for name of units if viewing distance is less than 24 inches, 1/2 inch for viewing distances up to 72 inches, and proportionately larger lettering for greater viewing distances. Include secondary lettering two-thirds to three-quarters the size of principal lettering.
7. Fasteners: Stainless-steel rivets or self-tapping screws.
8. Adhesive: Contact-type permanent adhesive, compatible with label and with substrate.

C. Label Content: Include equipment's Drawing designation or unique equipment number, Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules), and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified.

D. Equipment Label Schedule: For each item of equipment to be labeled, on 8-1/2-by-11-inch bond paper. Tabulate equipment identification number, and identify Drawing numbers where equipment is indicated (plans, details, and schedules) and the Specification Section number and title where equipment is specified. Equipment schedule shall be included in operation and maintenance data.

2.2 PIPE LABELS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to the following:

1. Actioncraft Products, Inc.; a division of Industrial Test Equipment Co., Inc.
2. Brady Corporation.
3. Brimar Industries, Inc.
4. Carlton Industries, LP.
5. Champion America.
6. Craftmark Pipe Markers.
7. emedco.

8. Kolbi Pipe Marker Co.
9. LEM Products Inc.
10. Marking Services Inc.
11. Seton Identification Products; a Brady Corporation company.

B. General Requirements for Manufactured Pipe Labels: Preprinted, color-coded, with lettering indicating service, and showing flow direction according to ASME A13.1.

C. Letter and Background Color: As indicated for specific application under Part 3.

D. Pretensioned Pipe Labels: Precoiled, semirigid plastic formed to partially cover circumference of pipe and to attach to pipe without fasteners or adhesive.

E. Self-Adhesive Pipe Labels: Printed plastic with contact-type, permanent-adhesive backing.

F. Pipe Label Contents: Include identification of piping service using same designations.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Clean piping and equipment surfaces of substances that could impair bond of identification devices, including dirt, oil, grease, release agents, and incompatible primers, paints, and encapsulants.

3.2 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

3.3 EQUIPMENT LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Install or permanently fasten labels on each major item of mechanical equipment.

B. Locate equipment labels where accessible and visible.

3.4 PIPE LABEL INSTALLATION

A. Pipe Label Locations: Locate pipe labels where piping is exposed or above accessible ceilings in finished spaces; machine rooms; accessible maintenance spaces such as shafts, tunnels, and plenums; and exterior exposed locations as follows:
   1. Within 3 ft of equipment items and other points of origination and termination.
   2. Spaced at maximum intervals of 25 feet along each run.

B. Pipe Label Color Schedule:
   1. Refrigerant Piping: White letters on an ANSI Z595.1 safety-blue background.

END OF SECTION 23 05 53

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 05 93 - TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING FOR HVAC

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Air Systems:

a. Fans and ventilators. (Constant-volume air systems)
b. Split-system air conditioners

2. Testing, adjusting, and balancing of equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. AABC: Associated Air Balance Council.

B. NEBB: National Environmental Balancing Bureau.

C. TAB: Testing, adjusting, and balancing.

D. TABB: Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing Bureau.

E. TAB Specialist: An independent entity meeting qualifications to perform TAB work.

F. TDH: Total dynamic head.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. TAB Conference: Conduct a TAB conference at Project site after approval of the TAB strategies and procedures plan, to develop a mutual understanding of the details. Provide a minimum of 14 days' advance notice of scheduled meeting time and location.

1. Minimum Agenda Items:

a. The Contract Documents examination report.

b. The TAB plan.

c. Needs for coordination and cooperation of trades and subcontractors.

d. Proposed procedures for documentation and communication flow.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: Within 60 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit documentation that the TAB specialist and this Project's TAB team members meet the qualifications specified in "Quality Assurance" Article.

B. Contract Documents Examination Report: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit the Contract Documents review report, as specified in Part 3.

C. Strategies and Procedures Plan: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit TAB strategies and step-by-step procedures, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

D. System Readiness Checklists: Within 90 days of Contractor's Notice to Proceed, submit system readiness checklists, as specified in "Preparation" Article.

E. Examination Report: Submit a summary report of the examination review required in "Examination" Article.

F. Certified TAB reports.

G. Sample report forms.

H. Instrument calibration reports, to include the following:

1. Instrument type and make.

2. Serial number.

3. Application.

4. Dates of use.

5. Dates of calibration.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by AABC:

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by AABC.

B. TAB Specialists Qualifications, Certified by NEBB or TABB:

1. TAB Field Supervisor: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.

2. TAB Technician: Employee of the TAB specialist and certified by NEBB or TABB.

C. Instrumentation Type, Quantity, Accuracy, and Calibration: Comply with requirements in ASHRAE 111, Section 4, "Instrumentation."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.7.2.3 - "System Balancing."

E. Code and AHJ Compliance: TAB is required to comply with governing codes and requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS (Not Applicable)

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the Contract Documents to become familiar with Project requirements and to discover conditions in systems designs that may preclude proper TAB of systems and equipment.

B. Examine installed systems for balancing devices, such as test ports, gauge cocks, thermometer wells, flow-control devices, balancing valves and fittings, and manual volume dampers. Verify that locations of these balancing devices are applicable for intended purpose and are accessible.

C. Examine the approved submittals for HVAC systems and equipment.

D. Examine design data, including HVAC system descriptions, statements of design assumptions for environmental conditions and systems output, and statements of philosophies and assumptions about HVAC system and equipment controls.

E. Examine equipment performance data, including fan curves.

1. Relate performance data to Project conditions and requirements, including system effects that can create undesired or unpredicted conditions that cause reduced capacities in all or part of a system.

2. Calculate system-effect factors to reduce performance ratings of HVAC equipment when installed under conditions different from the conditions used to rate equipment performance. To calculate system effects for air systems, use tables and charts found in AMCA 201, "Fans and Systems," or in SMACNA's "HVAC Systems - Duct Design." Compare results with the design data and installed conditions.

F. Examine system and equipment installations and verify that field quality-control testing, cleaning, and adjusting specified in individual Sections have been performed.

G. Examine test reports specified in individual system and equipment Sections.

H. Examine HVAC equipment and verify that bearings are greased, belts are aligned and tight, filters are clean, and equipment with functioning controls is ready for operation.

I. Examine heat-transfer coils for correct piping connections and for clean and straight fins.

J. Examine operating safety interlocks and controls on HVAC equipment.

K. Report deficiencies discovered before and during performance of TAB procedures. Observe and record system reactions to changes in conditions. Record default set points if different from indicated values.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Prepare a TAB plan that includes the following:

1. Equipment and systems to be tested.

2. Strategies and step-by-step procedures for balancing the systems.

3. Instrumentation to be used.

4. Sample forms with specific identification for all equipment.

B. Perform system-readiness checks of HVAC systems and equipment to verify system readiness for TAB work. Include, at a minimum, the following:

1. Airside:

a. Verify that leakage and pressure tests on air distribution systems have been satisfactorily completed.

b. Duct systems are complete with terminals installed.

c. Clean filters are installed.

d. Fans are operating, free of vibration, and rotating in correct direction.

e. Automatic temperature-control systems are operational.

f. Windows and doors are installed.

g. Suitable access to balancing devices and equipment is provided.

3.3 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR TESTING AND BALANCING

A. Perform testing and balancing procedures on each system in accordance with the procedures contained in AABC's "National Standards for Total System Balance" ASHRAE 111 NEBB's "Procedural Standards for Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing of Environmental Systems" and in this Section.

B. Take and report testing and balancing measurements in inch-pound (IP) units.

3.4 TESTING, ADJUSTING, AND BALANCING OF HVAC EQUIPMENT

A. Test, adjust, and balance HVAC equipment indicated on Drawings, including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Fans and Ventilators

2. Motors

3. Split-system air conditioners.

3.5 GENERAL PROCEDURES FOR BALANCING AIR SYSTEMS

A. Prepare test reports for both fans and outlets. Obtain manufacturer's outlet factors and recommended testing procedures. Crosscheck the summation of required outlet volumes with required fan volumes.

B. Prepare schematic diagrams of systems' Record drawings duct layouts.

C. Determine the best locations in main and branch ducts for accurate duct-airflow measurements.

D. Check airflow patterns from the outdoor-air louvers and dampers and the exhaust-air dampers.

E. Locate start-stop and disconnect switches.

F. Check dampers for proper position to achieve desired airflow path.

G. Check for airflow blockages.

H. Check condensate drains for proper connections and functioning.

I. Check for proper sealing of air-handling-unit components.

3.6 PROCEDURES FOR FANS AND VENTILATORS

A. Adjust fans to deliver total indicated airflows within the maximum allowable fan speed listed by fan manufacturer.

1. Measure total airflow.

a. Where duct conditions allow, measure airflow by main Pitot-tube traverse. If necessary, perform multiple Pitot-tube traverses close to the fan and prior to any outlets, to obtain total airflow.

b. Where duct conditions are unsuitable for Pitot-tube traverse measurements, a coil traverse may be acceptable.

2. Measure fan static pressures as follows:

a. Measure static pressure directly at the fan outlet or through the flexible connection.

b. Measure static pressure directly at the fan inlet or through the flexible connection.

3. Review Contractor-prepared shop drawings and Record drawings to determine variations in design static pressures versus actual static pressures. Calculate actual system-effect factors. Recommend adjustments to accommodate actual conditions.

B. Verify final system conditions.

1. Re-measure and confirm that total airflow is within design.

2. Re-measure all final fan operating data, speed, volts, amps, and static profile.

3. Mark all final settings.

4. Measure and record all operating data.

5. Record final fan-performance data.

3.7 PROCEDURES FOR MOTORS

A. Motors: Test at final balanced conditions and record the following data:

1. Manufacturer's name, model number, and serial number.

2. Motor horsepower rating.

3. Motor rpm.

4. Phase and hertz.

5. Nameplate and measured voltage.

6. Nameplate and measured amperage.

7. Starter size and thermal-protection-element rating.

8. Service factor and frame size.

3.8 PROCEDURES FOR SPLIT SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

A. Verify proper rotation of fan(s).

B. Verify proper operation and communication of temperature control devices.

C. Measure and record entering- and leaving-air temperatures for indoor and outdoor units.

D. Measure and record entering and leaving refrigerant pressures.

E. Measure and record operating data of compressor(s), fan(s), and motors.

3.9 TOLERANCES

A. Set HVAC system's airflow rates and water flow rates within the following tolerances:

1. Exhaust Fans and Equipment with Fans: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.

2. Air Outlets and Inlets: Plus or minus 10 percent. If design value is less than 100 cfm, within 10 cfm.

B. Maintaining pressure relationships as designed shall have priority over the tolerances specified above.

3.10 FINAL REPORT

A. General: Prepare a certified written report; tabulate and divide the report into separate sections for tested systems and balanced systems.

1. Include a certification sheet at the front of the report's binder, signed and sealed by the certified testing and balancing engineer.

2. Include a list of instruments used for procedures, along with proof of calibration.

3. Certify validity and accuracy of field data.

B. Final Report Contents: In addition to certified field-report data, include the following:

1. Fan curves.

2. Manufacturers' test data.

3. Field test reports prepared by system and equipment installers.

4. Other information relative to equipment performance; do not include Shop Drawings and Product Data.

C. General Report Data: In addition to form titles and entries, include the following data:

1. Title page.
2. Name and address of the TAB specialist.
3. Project name.
4. Project location.
5. Architect's name and address.
6. Engineer's name and address.
7. Contractor's name and address.
8. Report date.
9. Signature of TAB supervisor who certifies the report.
10. Table of Contents with the total number of pages defined for each section of the report. Number each page in the report.
11. Summary of contents, including the following:
    a. Indicated versus final performance.
    b. Notable characteristics of systems.
    c. Description of system operation sequence if it varies from the Contract Documents.
12. Nomenclature sheets for each item of equipment.
13. Notes to explain why certain final data in the body of reports vary from indicated values.
14. Test conditions for fans performance forms, including the following:
    a. Conditions of filters.
    b. Cooling coil, wet- and dry-bulb conditions.
    c. Other system operating conditions that affect performance.
15. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.

b. Horsepower and speed.

c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

d. Full-load amperage and service factor.

e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

16. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.

b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.

c. Fan speed.

d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.

D. Fan Test Reports: For exhaust fans, include the following:

1. Fan Data:

a. System identification.

b. Location.

c. Make and type.

d. Model number and size.

e. Manufacturer's serial number.

f. Arrangement and class.

g. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

h. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

2. Motor Data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.

b. Horsepower and speed.

c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

d. Full-load amperage and service factor.

e. Sheave make, size in inches, and bore.

f. Center-to-center dimensions of sheave and amount of adjustments in inches.

g. Number, make, and size of belts.

3. Test Data (Indicated and Actual Values):

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.

b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.

c. Fan speed.

d. Discharge static pressure in inches wg.

e. Suction static pressure in inches wg.

E. Fan Coil Unit Test Reports: For fan coil units, include the following:

1. Unit data:

a. Unit identification.

b. Location.

c. Make and type.

d. Model number and unit size.

e. Manufacturer's serial number.

f. Number, make, and size of belts.

g. Number, type, and size of filters.

2. Motor data:

a. Motor make, and frame type and size.

b. Horsepower and speed.

c. Volts, phase, and hertz.

d. Full-load amperage and service factor.

3. Test Data:

a. Total airflow rate in cfm.

b. Total system static pressure in inches wg.

c. Fan speed.

d. Inlet and discharge static pressure in inches wg.

e. Cooling-coil static-pressure differential in inches wg.

f. Outdoor airflow in cfm.

g. Return airflow in cfm.

h. Outdoor-air damper position.

i. Return-air damper position.

F. Instrument Calibration Reports:

1. Report Data:

a. Instrument type and make.

b. Serial number.

c. Application.

d. Dates of use.

e. Dates of calibration.

3.11 VERIFICATION OF TAB REPORT

A. The TAB specialist's test and balance engineer shall conduct the inspection in the presence of the owner and owner representative.

B. A/E shall randomly select measurements, documented in the final report, to be rechecked. Rechecking shall be limited to the lesser of either 10 percent of the total measurements recorded or the extent of measurements that can be accomplished in a normal 8-hour business day.

C. If rechecks yield measurements that differ from the measurements documented in the final report by more than the tolerances allowed, the measurements shall be noted as "FAILED."

D. If the number of "FAILED" measurements is greater than 10 percent of the total measurements checked during the final inspection, the TAB shall be considered incomplete and shall be rejected.

E. If recheck measurements find the number of failed measurements noncompliant with requirements indicated, proceed as follows:

1. TAB specialists shall recheck all measurements and make adjustments. Revise the final report and balancing device settings to include all changes; resubmit the final report and request a second final inspection. All changes shall be tracked to show changes made to previous report.

2. If the second final inspection also fails, Owner may pursue others Contract options to complete TAB work.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

END OF SECTION 23 05 93

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 07 13 - DUCT INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulating the following duct services:
   1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
   2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
   3. Indoor, exposed return air located in unconditioned space.

B. Related Requirements:
   1. Section 23 07 19 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
   2. Section 23 31 13 "Metal Ducts" for duct liners.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor permeance thickness, and jackets (both factory- and field-applied if any).

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 23 05 29 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with duct Installer for duct insulation application. Before preparing ductwork Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.4 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems and, where required, after installing and testing heat tracing. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation, jacket materials, adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. All Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.

2.2 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Duct Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule," and "Aboveground, Outdoor Duct and Plenum Insulation Schedule" articles for where insulating materials are to be applied.

B. Products do not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Glass-Fiber Blanket: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature up to 450 deg F in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C553, Type II, and ASTM C1290, Type III with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

D. Glass-Fiber Board Insulation: Glass fibers bonded with a thermosetting resin; suitable for maximum use temperature between 35 deg F and 250 deg F for jacketed in accordance with ASTM C411. Comply with ASTM C612, Type IA or Type IB. For duct and plenum applications, provide insulation with factory-applied FSK jacket. Factory-applied jacket requirements are specified in "Factory-Applied Jackets" Article.

2.3 ADHESIVES

A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Glass-Fiber and Mineral Wool Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A.

C. ASJ Adhesive, and FSK Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.

2.4 MASTICS AND COATINGS

A. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
   2. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F

C. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Solvent Based, Interior Use: Suitable for indoor use on below ambient services.
   1. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM C755, Section 7.2.2, Table 2, for insulation type and service conditions.
   2. Service Temperature Range: 0 to 180 deg F (Minus 18 to plus 82 deg C).
   3. Color: White.

2.5 SEALANTS

A. FSK and Metal Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
   4. Color: Aluminum.

B. ASJ Flashing Sealants, and Vinyl Jacket Flashing Sealants:
   1. Materials are compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.
   2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
   3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
   4. Color: White.

2.6 FACTORY-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Insulation system schedules indicate factory-applied jackets on various applications. When factory-applied jackets are indicated, comply with the following:
   1. ASJ: White, kraft-paper, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with aluminum-foil backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type I.
   2. FSK Jacket: Aluminum-foil, fiberglass-reinforced scrim with kraft-paper backing; complying with ASTM C1136, Type II.

2.7 FIELD-APPLIED FABRIC-REINFORCING MESH

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Mesh: Approximately 6 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 5 strands by 5 strands/sq. in. for covering ducts.

B. Woven Polyester Mesh: Approximately 1 oz./sq. yd. with a thread count of 10 strands by 10 strands/sq. in., in a Leno weave, for ducts.

2.8 FIELD-APPLIED CLOTHS

A. Woven Glass-Fiber Cloth: Comply with MIL-C-20079H, Type I, plain weave, and presized a minimum of 8 oz./sq. yd.

2.9 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.

B. FSK Tape: Foil-face, vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive; complying with ASTM C1136.

2.10 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
   1. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.

B. Insulation Pins and Hangers:
   1. Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated.
   2. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.
   3. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch thick, galvanized or stainless steel sheet, with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

      a. Protect ends with capped self-locking washers incorporating a spring steel insert to ensure permanent retention of cap in exposed locations.

C. Staples: Outward-clinching insulation staples, nominal 3/4-inch- (19-mm-) wide, stainless steel or Monel.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
   1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
   2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Surface Preparation: Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of ducts and fittings.

B. Install insulation materials, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and thicknesses required for each item of duct system as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, compress, or otherwise damage insulation or jacket.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Keep insulation materials dry during application and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet during storage or in the installation process before being properly covered and sealed in accordance with Contract Documents.

G. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

H. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

I. Where vapor barrier is indicated, seal joints, seams, and penetrations in insulation at hangers, supports, anchors, and other projections with vapor-barrier mastic.
   1. Install insulation continuously through hangers and around anchor attachments.
   2. For insulation application where vapor barriers are indicated, extend insulation on anchor legs from point of attachment to supported item to point of attachment to structure. Taper and seal ends at attachment to structure with vapor-barrier mastic.
   3. Install insert materials and install insulation to tightly join the insert. Seal insulation to insulation inserts with adhesive or sealing compound recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Install insulation with factory-applied jackets as follows:
   1. Draw jacket tight and smooth, but not to the extent of creating wrinkles or areas of compression in the insulation.
   2. Cover circumferential joints with 3-inch wide strips, of same material as insulation jacket. Secure strips with adhesive and outward clinching staples along both edges of strip, spaced 4 inches o.c.
   3. Overlap jacket longitudinal seams at least 1-1/2 inches. Clean and dry surface to receive self-sealing lap. Staple laps with outward clinching staples along edge at 4 inches o.c.
      a. For below ambient services, apply vapor-barrier mastic over staples.
   4. Cover joints and seams with tape, according to insulation material manufacturer's written instructions, to maintain vapor seal.
   5. Where vapor barriers are indicated, apply vapor-barrier mastic on seams and joints and at ends adjacent to duct flanges and fittings.

L. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation.

M. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

N. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches similar to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations (That Are Not Fire Rated): Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

B. Insulation Installation at Fire-Rated Wall and Partition Penetrations: Terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves for fire-rated wall and partition penetrations.

Externally insulate damper sleeves to match adjacent insulation and overlap duct insulation at least 2 inches.

C. Insulation Installation at Floor Penetrations:
   1. Duct: For penetrations through fire-rated assemblies, terminate insulation at fire damper sleeves and externally insulate damper sleeve beyond floor to match adjacent duct insulation. Overlap damper sleeve and duct insulation at least 2 inches.
   2. Seal penetrations through fire-rated assemblies.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF GLASS-FIBER AND MINERAL-WOOL INSULATION

A. Blanket Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written installation instructions.
   1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
   2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
   3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
      a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
      b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, place pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
      c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
      d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
      e. Impale insulation over pins and attach speed washers.
      f. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.
   4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

C. Board Insulation Installation on Ducts and Plenums: Secure with adhesive and insulation pins.
1. Apply adhesives according to manufacturer's recommended coverage rates per unit area, for 100 percent coverage of duct and plenum surfaces.
2. Apply adhesive to entire circumference of ducts and to all surfaces of fittings and transitions.
3. Install either capacitor-discharge-weld pins and speed washers or cupped-head, capacitor-discharge-weld pins on sides and bottom of horizontal ducts and sides of vertical ducts as follows:
a. On duct sides with dimensions 18 inches and smaller, place pins along longitudinal centerline of duct. Space 3 inches maximum from insulation end joints, and 16 inches o.c.
b. On duct sides with dimensions larger than 18 inches, space pins 16 inches o.c. each way, and 3 inches maximum from insulation joints. Install additional pins to hold insulation tightly against surface at cross bracing.
c. Pins may be omitted from top surface of horizontal, rectangular ducts and plenums.
d. Do not overcompress insulation during installation.
e. Cut excess portion of pins extending beyond speed washers or bend parallel with insulation surface. Cover exposed pins and washers with tape matching insulation facing.

4. For ducts and plenums with surface temperatures below ambient, install a continuous unbroken vapor barrier. Create a facing lap for longitudinal seams and end joints with insulation by removing 2 inches from one edge and one end of insulation segment. Secure laps to adjacent insulation section with 1/2-inch outward-clinching staples, 1 inch o.c. Install vapor barrier consisting of factory- or field-applied jacket, adhesive, vapor-barrier mastic, and sealant at joints, seams, and protrusions.

a. Repair punctures, tears, and penetrations with tape or mastic to maintain vapor-barrier seal.
b. Install vapor stops for ductwork and plenums operating below 50 deg F at 18-foot intervals. Vapor stops consist of vapor-barrier mastic applied in a Z-shaped pattern over insulation face, along butt end of insulation, and over the surface. Cover insulation face and surface to be insulated a width equal to two times the insulation thickness, but not less than 3 inches.

5. Install insulation on rectangular duct elbows and transitions with a full insulation section for each surface. Groove and score insulation to fit as closely as possible to outside and inside radius of elbows. Install insulation on round and flat-oval duct elbows with individually mitered gores cut to fit the elbow.
6. Insulate duct stiffeners, hangers, and flanges that protrude beyond insulation surface with 6-inch wide strips of same material used to insulate duct. Secure on alternating sides of stiffener, hanger, and flange with pins spaced 6 inches o.c.

3.6 DUCT INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Plenums and Ducts Requiring Insulation:
1. Indoor, concealed supply and outdoor air.
2. Indoor, exposed supply and outdoor air.
3. Indoor, exposed return located in unconditioned spaces.

B. Items Not Insulated:
1. Fibrous-glass ducts.
2. Metal ducts with duct liner of sufficient thickness to comply with energy code and ASHRAE/IESNA 90.1.
3. Factory-insulated flexible ducts.
4. Factory-insulated plenums and casings.
5. Flexible connectors.
6. Vibration-control devices.
7. Factory-insulated access panels and doors.

3.7 INDOOR DUCT AND PLENUM INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Concealed, round, supply-air and outside air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

B. Concealed, rectangular, supply and outside air duct insulation is one of the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
2. Glass-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

C. Exposed, round, supply-air and outside air duct insulation is the following:
1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

2. Exposed duct within occupied spaces shall be internally lined.

D. Exposed, rectangular, supply-air and outside air duct insulation is one of the following:
   1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
   2. Glass-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
   3. Exposed duct within occupied spaces shall be internally lined.

E. Exposed, rectangular, return air duct in unconditioned spaces, insulation is one of the following:
   1. Glass-Fiber Blanket: 2 inches thick and 1.5 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.
   2. Glass-Fiber Board: 2 inches thick and 2 lb/cu. ft. nominal density.

END OF SECTION 23 07 13

SECTION 23 07 19 - HVAC PIPING INSULATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. Section 23 07 13 “Duct Insulation” for duct insulation.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes insulation for HVAC piping systems.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include thermal conductivity, water-vapor and permeance thickness.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Skilled mechanics who have successfully completed an apprenticeship program or another craft training program certified by the Department of Labor, Bureau of Apprenticeship and Training.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: For insulation and related materials, as determined by testing identical products in accordance with ASTM E84, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction. Factory label insulation and jacket materials and adhesive, mastic, tapes, and cement material containers, with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Insulation Installed Indoors: Flame-spread index of 25 or less, and smoke-developed index of 50 or less.
   2. Insulation Installed Outdoors: Flame-spread index of 75 or less, and smoke-developed index of 150 or less.

1.5 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Packaging: Insulation material containers shall be marked by manufacturer with appropriate ASTM standard designation, type and grade, and maximum use temperature.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of supports, hangers, and insulation shields specified in Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

B. Coordinate clearance requirements with piping Installer for piping insulation application. Before preparing piping Shop Drawings, establish and maintain clearance requirements for installation of insulation and field-applied jackets and finishes and for space required for maintenance.

1.7 SCHEDULING

A. Schedule insulation application after pressure testing systems. Insulation application may begin on segments that have satisfactory test results.

B. Complete installation and concealment of plastic materials as rapidly as possible in each area of construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 INSULATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with requirements in "Piping Insulation Schedule, General," "Indoor Piping Insulation Schedule," and "Outdoor, Aboveground Piping Insulation Schedule," articles for where insulating materials shall be applied.

B. Products shall not contain asbestos, lead, mercury, or mercury compounds.

C. Foam insulation materials shall not use CFC or HCFC blowing agents in the manufacturing process.

D. Flexible Elastomeric: Closed-cell, sponge- or expanded-rubber materials. Comply with ASTM C534/C534M, Type I for tubular materials, Type II for sheet materials.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Aeroflex USA.
      b. Armacell LLC.

c. K-Flex USA.

2.2 ADHESIVES

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates and for bonding insulation to itself and to surfaces to be insulated unless otherwise indicated.

B. Flexible Elastomeric and Polyolefin Adhesive: Solvent-based adhesive.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Aeroflex USA.
b. Armacell LLC.
c. K-Flex USA.

2. Adhesive: As recommended by flexible elastomeric and polyolefin manufacturer and with a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.
3. Flame-spread index shall be 25 or less and smoke-developed index shall be 50 or less as tested in accordance with ASTM E84.
4. Wet Flash Point: Below 0 deg F.
5. Service Temperature Range: 40 to 200 deg F.
6. Color: Black.

C. ASJ Adhesive Jacket Adhesive: Comply with MIL-A-3316C, Class 2, Grade A, for bonding insulation jacket lap seams and joints.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Verify adhesives have a VOC content of 80 g/L or less.

2.3 MASTICS AND COATINGS

A. Materials shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

1. Mastics: As recommended by insulation manufacturer and with a VOC content of 300 g/L or less.

B. Vapor-Retarder Mastic, Water Based: Suitable for indoor use on below-ambient services.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
c. Knauf Insulation.

d. Vimasco Corporation.
2. Water-Vapor Permeance: Comply with ASTM E96/E96M or ASTM F1249.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 180 deg F.
4. Comply with MIL-PRF-19565C, Type II, for permeance requirements.
5. Color: White.

2.4 SEALANTS

A. Materials shall be as recommended by the insulation manufacturer and shall be compatible with insulation materials, jackets, and substrates.

B. Joint Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
b. Foster Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
c. Mon-Eco Industries, Inc.
2. Permanently flexible, elastomeric sealant.
a. Service Temperature Range: Minus 100 to plus 300 deg F.
b. Color: Black or gray.
3. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

C. ASJ Flashing Sealants:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
a. Childers Brand; H. B. Fuller Construction Products.
2. Fire- and water-resistant, flexible, elastomeric sealant.
3. Service Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 250 deg F.
4. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

2.5 FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Field-applied jackets shall comply with ASTM C1136, Type I, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Metal Jacket:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
a. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Aluminum Jacket: Comply with ASTM B209, Alloy 3003, 3005, 3105, or 5005, Temper H-14.
a. Factory cut and rolled to size.
b. Finish and thickness are indicated in field-applied jacket schedules.

c. Moisture Barrier for Indoor Applications: 1-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
d. Moisture Barrier for Outdoor Applications: 3-mil-thick, heat-bonded polyethylene and kraft paper.
e. Factory-Fabricated Fitting Covers:
1) Same material, finish, and thickness as jacket.
2) Preformed two-piece or gore, 45- and 90-degree, short- and long-radius elbows.
3) Tee covers.
4) Flange and union covers.
5) End caps.
6) Beveled collars.
7) Valve covers.
8) Field fabricate fitting covers only if factory-fabricated fitting covers are not available.

C. Self-Adhesive Outdoor Jacket: 60-mil-thick, laminated vapor barrier and waterproofing membrane for installation over insulation located aboveground outdoors; consisting of a rubberized bituminous resin on a cross-laminated polyethylene film covered with stucco-embossed aluminum-foil facing.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
a. Polyguard Products, Inc.

2.6 TAPES

A. ASJ Tape: White vapor-retarder tape matching factory-applied jacket with acrylic adhesive, complying with ASTM C1136.
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
a. 3M Industrial Adhesives and Tapes Division.
b. Avery Dennison Corporation, Specialty Tapes Division.
c. Ideal Tape Co., Inc., an American Biltrite Company.
d. Knauf Insulation.
2. Width: 3 inches.
3. Thickness: 11.5 mils.
4. Adhesion: 90 ounces force/inch in width.
5. Elongation: 2 percent.
6. Tensile Strength: 40 lbf/inch in width.
7. ASJ Tape Disks and Squares: Precut disks or squares of ASJ tape.

2.7 SECUREMENTS

A. Bands:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following:
a. RPR Products, Inc.
2. Stainless Steel: ASTM A240/A240M, Type 304 or Type 316; 0.015 inch thick, 1/2 inch wide with wing seal or closed seal.
3. Springs: Twin spring set constructed of stainless steel, with ends flat and slotted to accept metal bands. Spring size is determined by manufacturer for application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of insulation application.
1. Verify that systems to be insulated have been tested and are free of defects.
2. Verify that surfaces to be insulated are clean and dry.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Clean and dry surfaces to receive insulation. Remove materials that will adversely affect insulation application.

B. Clean and prepare surfaces to be insulated.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install insulation materials, accessories, and finishes with smooth, straight, and even surfaces; free of voids throughout the length of piping, including fittings, valves, and specialties.

B. Install insulation materials, forms, vapor barriers or retarders, jackets, and of thicknesses required for each item of pipe system, as specified in insulation system schedules.

C. Install accessories compatible with insulation materials and suitable for the service. Install accessories that do not corrode, soften, or otherwise attack insulation or jacket in either wet or dry state.

D. Install insulation with longitudinal seams at top and bottom of horizontal runs.

E. Install multiple layers of insulation with longitudinal and end seams staggered.

F. Do not weld brackets, clips, or other attachment devices to piping, fittings, and specialties.

G. Keep insulation materials dry during storage, application, and finishing. Replace insulation materials that get wet.

H. Install insulation with tight longitudinal seams and end joints. Bond seams and joints with adhesive recommended by insulation material manufacturer.

I. Install insulation with least number of joints practical.

J. Apply adhesives, mastics, and sealants at manufacturer's recommended coverage rate and wet and dry film thicknesses.

K. Cut insulation in a manner to avoid compressing insulation more than 25 percent of its nominal thickness.

L. Finish installation with systems at operating conditions. Repair joint separations and cracking due to thermal movement.

M. Repair damaged insulation facings by applying same facing material over damaged areas. Extend patches at least 4 inches beyond damaged areas. Adhere, staple, and seal patches in similar fashion to butt joints.

3.4 PENETRATIONS

A. Insulation Installation at Aboveground Exterior Wall Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through wall penetrations.
   1. Seal penetrations with flashing sealant.
   2. For applications requiring only indoor insulation, terminate insulation inside wall surface and seal with joint sealant. For applications requiring indoor and outdoor insulation, install insulation for outdoor applications tightly joined to indoor insulation ends. Seal joint with joint sealant.
   3. Extend jacket of outdoor insulation outside wall flashing and overlap wall flashing at least 2 inches.
   4. Seal jacket to wall flashing with flashing sealant.

B. Insulation Installation at Interior Wall and Partition Penetrations: Install insulation continuously through walls and partitions.

3.5 GENERAL PIPE INSULATION INSTALLATION

A. Requirements in this article generally apply to all insulation materials, except where more specific requirements are specified in various pipe insulation material installation articles.

B. Insulate instrument connections for thermometers, pressure gages, pressure temperature taps, test connections, flow meters, sensors, switches, and transmitters on insulated pipes. Shape insulation at these connections by tapering it to and around the connection with insulating cement and finish with finishing cement, mastic, and flashing sealant.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF FLEXIBLE ELASTOMERIC INSULATION

A. Seal longitudinal seams and end joints with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

B. Insulation Installation on Pipe Flanges:
   1. Install pipe insulation to outer diameter of pipe flange.
   2. Make width of insulation section same as overall width of flange and bolts, plus twice the thickness of pipe insulation.
   3. Fill voids between inner circumference of flange insulation and outer circumference of adjacent straight pipe segments with cut sections of sheet insulation of same thickness as that of pipe insulation.
   4. Secure insulation to flanges and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

C. Insulation Installation on Pipe Fittings and Elbows:
   1. Install mitered sections of pipe insulation.
   2. Secure insulation materials and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

D. Insulation Installation on Valves and Pipe Specialties:
   1. Install preformed valve covers manufactured of same material as that of pipe insulation when available.
   2. When preformed valve covers are not available, install cut sections of pipe and sheet insulation to valve body. Arrange insulation to permit access to packing and to allow valve operation without disturbing insulation.
   3. Install insulation to flanges as specified for flange insulation application.
   4. Secure insulation to valves and specialties, and seal seams with manufacturer's recommended adhesive to eliminate openings in insulation that allow passage of air to surface being insulated.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF FIELD-APPLIED JACKETS

A. Where metal jackets are indicated, install with 2-inch overlap at longitudinal seams and end joints. Overlap longitudinal seams arranged to shed water. Seal end joints with weatherproof sealant recommended by insulation manufacturer. Secure jacket with stainless steel bands 12 inches o.c. and at end joints.

3.8 FINISHES

A. Flexible Elastomeric Thermal Insulation: After adhesive has fully cured, apply two coats of insulation manufacturer's recommended protective coating.

B. Do not field paint aluminum jackets.

3.9 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. All insulation applications will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.10 PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE, GENERAL

A. Insulation conductivity and thickness per pipe size shall comply with schedules in this Section or with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, whichever is more stringent.

B. Acceptable preformed pipe and tubular insulation materials and thicknesses are identified for each piping system and pipe size range. If more than one material is listed for a piping system, selection from materials listed is Contractor's option.

3.11 INDOOR PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Condensate and Equipment Drain Water below 60 Deg F:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

B. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

C. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.12 OUTDOOR, ABOVEGROUND PIPING INSULATION SCHEDULE

A. Refrigerant Suction and Hot-Gas Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 2 inches thick.

B. Refrigerant Liquid Piping:
   1. All Pipe Sizes: Insulation shall be the following:
      a. Flexible Elastomeric: 1 inch thick.

3.13 OUTDOOR, FIELD-APPLIED JACKET SCHEDULE

A. Install jacket over insulation material. For insulation with factory-applied jacket, install the field-applied jacket over the factory-applied jacket.

B. Piping, Exposed:
   1. Aluminum jacket

END OF SECTION 23 07 19

SECTION 23 09 00 - HVAC INSTRUMENTATION AND CONTROLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Direct digital control (DDC) system equipment and components for monitoring and controlling of HVAC, exclusive of instrumentation and control devices.

1.2 DEFINITIONS

A. Algorithm: A logical procedure for solving a recurrent mathematical problem. A prescribed set of well-defined rules or processes for solving a problem in a finite number of steps.

B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.

C. BACnet Specific Definitions:
1. BACnet: Building Automation Control Network Protocol, ASHRAE 135. A communications protocol allowing devices to communicate data and services over a network.
2. BACnet Interoperability Building Blocks (BIBBs): BIBB defines a small portion of BACnet functionality that is needed to perform a particular task. BIBBs are combined to build the BACnet functional requirements for a device.
3. BACnet/IP: Defines and allows using a reserved UDP socket to transmit BACnet messages over IP networks. A BACnet/IP network is a collection of one or more IP subnetworks that share the same BACnet network number.
4. BACnet Testing Laboratories (BTL): Organization responsible for testing products for compliance with ASHRAE 135, operated under direction of BACnet International.

D. Binary: Two-state signal where a high signal level represents "ON" or "OPEN" condition and a low signal level represents "OFF" or "CLOSED" condition. "Digital" is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary" to indicate a two-state signal.

E. Controller: Generic term for any standalone, microprocessor-based, digital controller residing on a network, used for local or global control. Three types of controllers are indicated: network controllers, programmable application controllers, and application-specific controllers.

F. Control System Integrator: An entity that assists in expansion of existing enterprise system and support of additional operator interfaces to I/O being added to existing enterprise system.

G. COV: Changes of value.

H. DDC System Provider: Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer and responsible for execution of DDC system Work indicated.

I. Distributed Control: Processing of system data is decentralized and control decisions are made at subsystem level. System operational programs and information are provided to remote subsystems and status is reported back. On loss of communication, subsystems to be capable of operating in a standalone mode using the last best available data.

J. Gateway: Bidirectional protocol translator that connects control systems that use different communication protocols.

K. I/O: System through which information is received and transmitted. I/O refers to analog input (AI), binary input (BI), analog output (AO) and binary output (BO). Analog signals are continuous and represent control influences such as flow, level, moisture, pressure, and temperature. Binary signals convert electronic signals to digital pulses (values) and generally represent two-position operating and alarm status. "Digital," (DI) and (DO), is sometimes used interchangeably with "Binary," (BI) and (BO), respectively.

L. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control, signaling power-limited circuits.

M. MS/TP: Master-slave/token-passing, ISO/IEC/IEEE 8802-3. Datalink protocol LAN option that uses twisted-pair wire for low-speed communication.

N. MTBF: Mean time between failures.

O. RF: Radio frequency.

P. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet protocol.

Q. USB: Universal Serial Bus.

R. User Datagram Protocol (UDP): This protocol assumes that the IP is used as the underlying protocol.

S. VAV: Variable air volume.

T. WLED: White light emitting diode.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data:

1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes.
2. Operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished accessories indicating process operating range, accuracy over range, control signal over range, default control signal with loss of power, calibration data specific to each unique application, electrical power requirements, and limitations of ambient operating environment, including temperature and humidity.
3. Product description with complete technical data, performance curves, and product specification sheets.
4. Installation, operation, and maintenance instructions including factors effecting performance.
5. Bill of materials of indicating quantity, manufacturer, and extended model number for each unique product.

    a. DDC controllers.
    b. Enclosures.
    c. Accessories.
    d. Instruments.
    e. Control dampers and actuators.
    f. Control valves and actuators.
6. When manufacturer's product datasheets apply to a product series rather than a specific product model, clearly indicate and highlight only applicable information.
7. Each submitted piece of product literature to clearly cross reference specification and drawings that submittal is to cover.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. General Requirements:
    a. Include cover drawing with Project name, location, Owner, Architect, Contractor, and issue date with each Shop Drawings submission.
    b. Include a drawing index sheet listing each drawing number and title that matches information in each title block.
    c. Drawings Size: Minimum 11”x17”.

2. Include details of product assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Schematic drawings for each controlled HVAC system indicating the following:
    a. I/O points labeled with point names shown. Indicate instrument range, normal operating set points, and alarm set points. Indicate fail position of each damper and valve, if included in Project.
    b. I/O listed in table format showing point name, type of device, manufacturer, model number, and cross-reference to product data sheet number.

c. A graphic showing location of control I/O in proper relationship to HVAC system.
d. Wiring diagram with each I/O point having a unique identification and indicating labels for all wiring terminals.
e. Unique identification of each I/O that to be consistently used between different drawings showing same point.
f. Elementary wiring diagrams of controls for HVAC equipment motor circuits including interlocks, switches, relays, and interface to DDC controllers.
g. Narrative sequence of operation.
h. Graphic sequence of operation, showing all inputs and output logical blocks.

4. Control panel drawings indicating the following:
   a. Panel dimensions, materials, size, and location of field cable, raceways, and tubing connections.
   b. Interior subpanel layout, drawn to scale and showing all internal components, cabling and wiring raceways, nameplates, and allocated spare space.
   c. Front, rear, and side elevations and nameplate legend.
   d. Unique drawing for each panel.
5. DDC system network riser diagram indicating the following:
   a. Each device connected to network with unique identification for each.
   b. Interconnection of each different network in DDC system.
   c. For each network, indicate communication protocol, speed and physical means of interconnecting network devices, such as copper cable type, or optical fiber cable type. Indicate raceway type and size for each.
   d. Each network port for connection of an operator workstation or other type of operator interface with unique identification for each.
6. DDC system electrical power riser diagram indicating the following:
   a. Each point of connection to field power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
   b. Each control power supply including, as applicable, transformers, power-line conditioners, transient voltage suppression and high filter noise units, DC power supplies, and UPS units with unique identification for each.
   c. Each product requiring power with requirements (volts/phase//hertz/amperes/connection type) listed for each.
   d. Power wiring type and size, race type, and size for each.
7. Monitoring and control signal diagrams indicating the following:
   a. Control signal cable and wiring between controllers and I/O.
   b. Point-to-point schematic wiring diagrams for each product.
   c. Control signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.
   d. Process signal tubing to sensors, switches, and transmitters.

C. System Description:
   1. Full description of DDC system architecture, network configuration, operator interfaces and peripherals, servers, controller types and applications, gateways, routers and other network devices, and power supplies.

2. Complete bibliography of documentation and media to be delivered to Owner.
3. Description of testing plans and procedures.
4. Description of Owner training.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product Certificates:
   1. Data Communications Protocol Certificates: Certifying that each proposed DDC system component complies with ASHRAE 135.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For DDC system.
   1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:
      a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format.
      b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
      c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
      d. Names, addresses, email addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for DDC system and products.
      e. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
      f. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and databases on electronic media.
      g. List of recommended spare parts with part numbers and suppliers.
      h. Owner training materials.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. DDC System Manufacturer Qualifications:
   1. Nationally recognized manufacturer of DDC systems and products.
   2. DDC systems with similar requirements to those indicated for a continuous period of 10 years within time of bid.
   3. Having complete published catalog literature, installation, operation, and maintenance manuals for all products intended for use.

B. DDC System Provider Qualifications:
   1. Authorized representative of, and trained by, DDC system manufacturer.
   2. In-place facility located within 400 miles of Project.
   3. Demonstrate past experience with installation of DDC system products being installed for period within five consecutive years before time of bid.

4. Staffing resources of competent and experienced full-time employees that are assigned to execute work according to schedule.
5. Service and maintenance staff assigned to support Project during warranty period.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace products that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.
   1. Adjust, repair, or replace failures at no additional cost or reduction in service to Owner.
   2. Include updates or upgrades to software and firmware if necessary to resolve deficiencies.
      a. Install updates only after receiving Owner's written authorization.
   3. Perform warranty service during normal business hours and commence within 24hours of Owner's warranty service request.
   4. Warranty Period: Two year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.
      a. For Gateway: Two year parts and labor warranty for each.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DDC SYSTEM SCOPE OF WORK

A. The DDC system scope of work for this project includes updating existing DDC control systems head end programming and graphics to reflect the replacement the addition of the new HVAC equipment, components and accessories.

B. The scope of work includes new DDC system controllers, dampers and actuators, control sensors etc, for the connection of new VAV Split System Air Handlers, Ductless Split units, ,Exhaust Fan and accessories.

C. The new DDC system controllers shall be BACnet compliant,and be connected to the existing DDC system. Controls contractor shall provide all protocol converters, gateways, etc as required to maintain communication capability between new BACnet compatible equipment and controllers, sensors, etc, and the existing system.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. ASME Compliance:
   1. DDC system for monitoring and controlling of HVAC systems.

B. Delivery of selected control devices to equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to HVAC systems installers for field installation.

C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Products installed in ducts, equipment, and return-air paths complying with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.
   1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
   2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

D. DDC System Speed:
   1. Response Time of Connected I/O:
      a. Update AI point values connected to DDC system at least every two seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally to also comply with this requirement.
      b. Update BI point values connected to DDC system at least every two seconds for use by DDC controllers. Points used globally to also comply with this requirement.
      c. AO points connected to DDC system to begin to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands to also comply with this requirement.
      d. BO point values connected to DDC system to respond to controller output commands within two second(s). Global commands to also comply with this requirement.

E. Environmental Conditions for Controllers, Gateways, and Routers:
   1. Products to operate without performance degradation under ambient environmental temperature, pressure, and humidity conditions encountered for installed location.
      a. If product alone cannot comply with requirement, install product in a protective enclosure that is isolated and protected from conditions impacting performance. Enclosure to be internally insulated, electrically heated, cooled, and ventilated as required by product and application.
   2. Protect products with enclosures satisfying the following minimum requirements unless more stringent requirements are indicated. House products not available with integral enclosures complying with requirements indicated in protective secondary enclosures. Installed location dictates the following NEMA 250 enclosure requirements:
      a. Indoors, Heated with Filtered Ventilation: Type 1
      b. Indoors, Heated and Air-Conditioned: Type 1.
      c. Mechanical Equipment Rooms:
         1) Air-Moving Equipment Rooms: Type 1.

F. Environmental Conditions for Instruments and Actuators:

   1. Instruments and actuators to operate without performance degradation under the ambient environmental temperature, pressure, humidity, and vibration conditions specified and encountered for installed location.

2.3 NETWORK COMMUNICATION PROTOCOL

A. Use network communication protocol(s) that are open to Owner and available to other companies for use in making future modifications to DDC system.

B. ASHRAE 135 Protocol:
   1. Use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol as sole and native protocol used throughout entire DDC system.
   2. DDC system to not require use of gateways except to integrate HVAC equipment and other building systems and equipment; not required to use ASHRAE 135 communication protocol.
   3. If used, gateways to connect to DDC system using ASHRAE 135 communication protocol and Project object properties and read/write services indicated by interoperability schedule.
   4. Use operator workstations, controllers, and other network devices that are tested and listed by BTL.

C. Graphic Interface Software:
   1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator. Include at least five levels with the penetration path operator assignable (for example, site, building, floor, air-handling unit, and supply temperature loop). Native language descriptors assigned to menu items are to be operator defined and modifiable under password control.
   2. Include a hierarchical-linked dynamic graphic operator interface for accessing and displaying system data and commanding and modifying equipment operation. Interface is to use a pointing device with pull-down or penetrating menus, color, and animation to facilitate operator understanding of system.
   3. Include at least 10 levels of graphic penetration with the hierarchy operator assignable.
   4. Make descriptors for graphics, points, alarms, and such modifiable through operator's workstation under password control.
   5. Make graphic displays online user definable and modifiable using the hardware and software provided.
   6. Make data displayed within a graphic assignable regardless of physical hardware address, communication, or point type.
   7. Make graphics online programmable and under password control.
   8. Make points assignable to multiple graphics where necessary to facilitate operator understanding of system operation.
   9. Graphics to also contain software points.
   10. Penetration within a graphic hierarchy is to display each graphic name as graphics are selected to facilitate operator understanding.
   11. Provide a back-trace feature to permit operator to move upward in the hierarchy using a pointing device. Back trace to show all previous penetration levels. Include

operator with option of showing each graphic full-screen size with back trace as horizontal header or by showing a "stack" of graphics, each with a back trace.

12. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
13. Provide operator with ability to select further penetration using pointing device to click on a site, building, floor, area, equipment, and so on. Display defined and linked graphic below that selection.
14. Include operator with means to directly access graphics without going through penetration path.
15. Make dynamic data assignable to graphics.
16. Display points (physical and software) with dynamic data provided by DDC system with appropriate text descriptors, status or value, and engineering unit.
17. Use color, rotation, or other highly visible means, to denote status and alarm states. Make colors variable for each class of points, as chosen by operator.
18. Provide dynamic points with operator adjustable update rates on a per point basis from one second to over a minute.

D. Project-Specific Graphics: Update existing Systems Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:
    a. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled HVAC equipment and other equipment being monitored and controlled by DDC system.
    b. Location and identification of each hardware point being controlled or monitored by DDC system.
    2. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to DDC system through a data communications link. Include dynamic indication of all points associated with equipment.

2.4 ASHRAE 135 GATEWAYS

A. Include BACnet communication ports, whenever available as an equipment OEM standard option, for integration via a single communication cable.

B. Include gateways to connect BACnet to legacy systems where indicated, existing non-BACnet devices, and existing non-BACnet DDC-controlled equipment.

C. Include with each gateway an interoperability schedule showing each point or event on legacy side that BACnet "client" will read, and each parameter that BACnet network will write to. Describe this interoperability of BACnet services, or BIBBs, defined in ASHRAE 135, Annex K.

D. Gateway Minimum Requirements:
    1. Read and view all readable object properties on non-BACnet network to BACnet network, and vice versa, where applicable.
    2. Write to all writable object properties on non-BACnet network from BACnet network, and vice versa, where applicable.

3. Include single-pass (only one protocol to BACnet without intermediary protocols) translation from non-BACnet protocol to BACnet, and vice versa.
4. Comply with requirements of Data Sharing Read Property, Data Sharing Write Property, Device Management Dynamic Device Binding-B, and Device Management Communication Control BIBBs in accordance with ASHRAE 135.
5. Hardware, software, software licenses, and configuration tools for operator-to-gateway communications.
6. Backup programming and parameters on CD media with ability to modify, download, backup, and restore gateway configuration.

2.5 DDC CONTROLLERS

A. DDC system consisting of a combination of network controllers, programmable application controllers, and application-specific controllers to satisfy performance requirements indicated.

B. DDC controllers to perform monitoring, control, energy optimization, and other requirements indicated.

C. DDC controllers are to use a multitasking, multiuser, real-time digital control microprocessor with a distributed network database and intelligence.

D. Each DDC controller is capable of full and complete operation as a completely independent unit and as a part of DDC system wide distributed network.

E. DDC Controller Spare Processing Capacity:
1. Include spare processing memory for each controller. RAM, PROM, or EEPROM will implement requirements indicated with the following spare memory:

    a. Programmable Application Controllers: Not less than 60 percent.
    b. Application-Specific Controllers: Not less than 70 percent.
2. Memory for DDC controller's operating system and database are to include the following:
    a. Monitoring and control.
    b. Energy management, operation, and optimization applications.
    c. Alarm management.
    d. Historical trend data of all connected I/O points.
    e. Maintenance applications.
    f. Operator interfaces.
    g. Monitoring of manual overrides.

F. DDC Controller Spare I/O Point Capacity: Include spare I/O point capacity for each controller as follows:
1. Programmable Application Controllers:

a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
1) AIs: Two.
2) AOs: Two.
3) BIs: Three.
4) BOs: Three.
5) Option to provide universal I/O to meet spare requirements.

2. Application-Specific Controllers:
a. 10 percent of each AI, AO, BI, and BO point connected to controller.
b. Minimum Spare I/O Points per Controller:
1) AIs: Two.
2) AOs: Two.
3) BIs: Three.
4) BOs: Three.
5) Option to provide universal I/O to meet spare requirements.

G. Maintenance and Support: Include the following features to facilitate maintenance and support:
1. Mount microprocessor components on circuit cards for ease of removal and replacement.
2. Means to quickly and easily disconnect controller from network.
3. Means to quickly and easily access connect to field test equipment.
4. Visual indication that controller electric power is on, of communication fault or trouble, and that controller is receiving and sending signals to network.

H. I/O Point Interface:
1. Connect hardwired I/O points to network, programmable application, and application-specific controllers.
2. Protect I/O points so shorting of point to itself, to another point, or to ground will not damage controller.
3. Protect I/O points from voltage up to 24 V of any duration so that contact will not damage controller.

2.6 PROGRAMMABLE APPLICATION CONTROLLERS

A. General:
1. Include adequate number of controllers to achieve performance indicated.
2. Provide enough memory to support its operating system, database, and programming requirements with spare memory indicated.
3. Share data between networked controllers and other network devices.
4. Include controller with operating system to manage I/O communication signals to allow distributed controllers to share real and virtual object information and allow for central monitoring and alarms.
5. Include controllers that perform scheduling with a real-time clock.

6. Controller is to continually check status of its processor and memory circuits. If an abnormal operation is detected, controller assumes a predetermined failure mode and generates an alarm notification.
7. Fully programmable.

B. Communication:
1. Programmable application controllers are to communicate with other devices on network.

C. Operator Interface:
1. Equip controllers with a service communications port for connection to portable operator's workstation or portable operators terminal.

D. Serviceability:
1. Equip controller with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Connect wiring and cable connections to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Maintain BIOS and programming information in event of power loss for at least 72 hours.

2.7 APPLICATION-SPECIFIC CONTROLLERS

A. Description: Microprocessor-based controllers, which through hardware or firmware design are dedicated to control a specific piece of equipment or system. Controllers are not fully user-programmable but are configurable and customizable for operation of equipment they are designed to control.
1. Capable of standalone operation and continued control functions without being connected to network.
2. Share data between networked controllers and other network devices.

B. Communication: Application-specific controllers are to communicate with other application-specific controllers and devices on network, and to programmable application controllers and network controllers.
1. Operator Interface: Equip controllers with a service communications port for connection to portable operator's workstation or portable operators terminal.

C. Serviceability:
1. Equip controller with diagnostic LEDs or other form of local visual indication of power, communication, and processor.
2. Connect wiring and cable connections to field-removable, modular terminal strips or to a termination card connected by a ribbon cable.
3. Use nonvolatile memory and maintain all BIOS and programming information in event of power loss.

2.8 CONTROLLER SOFTWARE

A. General:
1. Software applications are to reside and operate in controllers. Edit applications through operator workstations.
2. Identify I/O points by up to 30 -character point name and up to 16 character point descriptor. Use same names throughout, including at operator workstations.
3. Execute control functions within controllers using DDC algorithms.
4. Configure controllers to use stored default values to ensure fail-safe operation. Use default values when there is a failure of a connected input instrument or loss of communication of a global point value.

B. Security:
1. Secure operator access using individual security passwords and user names.
2. Passwords restrict operator to points, applications, and system functions as assigned by system manager.
3. Record operator log-on and log-off attempts.
4. Protect from unauthorized use by automatically logging off after last keystroke. Make the delay time operator-definable.

C. Scheduling: Include capability to schedule each point or group of points in system. Each schedule is to consist of the following:
1. Weekly Schedule:
   a. Include separate schedules for each day of week.
   b. Each schedule should include capability for start, stop, optimal start, optimal stop, and night economizer.
   c. Each schedule may consist of up to 10 events.
   d. When a group of objects are scheduled together, include capability to adjust start and stop times for each member.
2. Exception Schedules:
   a. Include ability for operator to designate any day of the year as an exception schedule.
   b. Exception schedules may be defined up to a year in advance. Once an exception schedule is executed, it will be discarded and replaced by regular schedule for that day of week.
3. Holiday Schedules:
   a. Include capability for operator to define up to 99 special or holiday schedules.
   b. Place schedules on scheduling calendar with ability to repeated each year.
   c. Operator able to define length of each holiday period.

D. System Coordination:
1. Include standard application for proper coordination of equipment.
2. Include operator with a method of grouping together equipment based on function and location.

3. Include groups that may be for use in scheduling and other applications.

E. Binary Alarms:
1. Set each binary point to alarm based on operator-specified state.
2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.

F. Analog Alarms:
1. Provide each analog object with both high and low alarm limits.
2. Include capability to automatically and manually disable alarming.

G. Alarm Reporting:
1. Include ability for operators to determine action to be taken in event of an alarm.
2. Route alarms to appropriate operator workstations based on time and other conditions.
3. Include ability for alarms to start programs, print, be logged in event logs, generate custom messages, and display graphics.

H. Remote Communication:
1. Include ability for system to notify operators by phone message, text message, and email in event of an alarm.

I. Control Loops:
1. Support any of the following control loops, as applicable to control required:
a. Two-position (on/off, open/close, slow/fast) control.
b. Proportional control.
c. Proportional plus integral (PI) control.
d. Proportional plus integral plus derivative (PID) control.
1) Include PID algorithms with direct or reverse action and anti-windup.
2) Algorithm to calculate a time-varying analog value used to position an output or stage a series of outputs.
3) Make controlled variable, set point, and PID gains operator-selectable.
e. Adaptive (automatic tuning).

J. Staggered Start: Prevent all controlled equipment from simultaneously restarting after a power outage. Make the order which equipment (or groups of equipment) is started, along with the time delay between starts, operator-selectable.

K. Anti-Short Cycling:
1. Protect BO points from short cycling.
2. Feature to allow minimum on-time and off-time to be selected.

L. On and Off Control with Differential:
1. Include algorithm that allows BO to be cycled based on a controlled variable and set point.
2. Use direct- or reverse-acting algorithm and incorporate an adjustable differential.

M. Run-Time Totalization:
1. Include software to totalize run-times for all BI and BO points.
2. Assign a high run-time alarm, if required, by operator.

2.9 ENCLOSURES

A. General:
1. House each controller and associated control accessories in enclosure. Enclosure is to serve as central tie-in point for control devices such as switches, transmitters, transducers, power supplies, and transformers.
2. Do not house more than one controller in single enclosure.
3. Include enclosure door with key locking mechanism. Key locks alike for all enclosures and include one pair of keys per enclosure.

2.10 RELAYS

A. General-Purpose, Latching, or Time Delay Relays:
1. NRTL listed.
2. Heavy-duty, electromechanical type; rated for at least 10A at 250 V ac and 60 Hz.
3. SPDT, DPDT, or three-pole double-throw, as required by control application.
4. Construct contacts of silver, silver alloy, or gold.
5. Enclose relay in a polycarbonate dust-tight cover.
6. Include LED indication and push-to-test button to test manual operation of relay without power on coil.
7. Equip relays with coil transient suppression to limit transients to non-damaging levels.
8. Plug each relay into industry-standard, 35 mm DIN rail socket. Plug all relays located in control panels into sockets that are mounted on a DIN rail.
9. Include relay socket with screw terminals. Mold into socket the coincident screw terminal numbers.

2.11 ELECTRICAL POWER DEVICES

A. Control Transformers:
1. Sizing Criteria: Size control transformers for total connected load, plus additional 50 percent of connected load for future spare capacity.
2. Transformer Minimum Capacity: 100 VA.
3. Protection: Provide transformers with both primary and secondary fuses.
4. Enclosure: House control transformers in NEMA 250 enclosures.

B. DC Power Supplies:
1. Description: Linear or switched, regulated power supplies with ac input to one or multiple dc output(s).

a. Include both line and load regulation to ensure stable output.
b. To protect both power supply and load, include power supply with an automatic current limiting circuit.

2. Features:
a. Connection: Plug-in style suitable for mating with standard socket. Include power supply with mating mounting socket.
b. Housing: Enclose circuitry in a housing.
c. Local Adjustment: Include screw adjustment on exterior of housing for dc voltage output.
d. Mounting: DIN rail.
e. Visual status indicator.

2.12 CONTROL WIRE AND CABLE

A. Wire: Single conductor control wiring above 24 V.
1. Wire Size: Minimum 18 AWG.
2. Conductors: 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: 600 V, Type THWN or Type THHN, and 90 deg C in accordance with UL 83.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors: Black (hot), white (neutral), and green (ground).
5. Furnish on spools.

B. Single, Twisted-Shielded, Instrumentation Cable above 24 V:
1. Wire Size: Minimum 20 AWG.
2. Conductors: Twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper strand with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: Type THHN/THWN or Type TFN rating.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors:
a. Twisted Pair: Black and white.
b. Twisted Triad: Black, red, and white.
5. Shielding: 100 percent type, 0.35/0.5-mil aluminum/Mylar tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.
6. Outer Jacket Insulation: 600 V, 90 deg C rating, and Type TC cable.
7. Furnish on spools.

C. Single, Twisted-Shielded, Instrumentation Cable 24 V and Less:
1. Wire Size: Minimum 20 AWG.
2. Conductors: Twisted, 7/24 soft annealed copper stranding with a 2- to 2.5-inch lay.
3. Conductor Insulation: Nominal 15-mil thickness, constructed from flame-retardant PVC.
4. Conductor Insulation Colors:
a. Twisted Pair: Black and white.
b. Twisted Triad: Black, red, and white.
5. Shielding: 100 percent type, 1.35-mil aluminum/polymer tape, helically applied with 25 percent overlap, and aluminum side in with tinned copper drain wire.

6. Outer Jacket Insulation: 300 V, 105 deg C rating, and Type PLTC cable.
7. Furnish on spools.

2.13 ACCESSORIES

2.14 IDENTIFICATION

A. Control Equipment, Instruments, and Control Devices:
   1. Self-adhesive label bearing unique identification.
      a. Include instruments with unique identification identified by equipment being controlled or monitored, followed by point identification.
   2. Instruments, control devices, and actuators with Project-specific identification tags having unique identification numbers following requirements indicated and provided by original manufacturer do not require additional identification.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in piping to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for instruments installed in duct systems to verify actual locations of connections before installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where product will be installed.

3.2 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH OTHER SYSTEMS AND EQUIPMENT

A. Communication Interface to Equipment with Integral Controls:
   1. DDC system has communication interface with equipment having integral controls and having communication interface for remote monitoring or control.
   2. Equipment to Be Connected:
      a. VAV Split System Air-handling units and Ductless Split Systems as specified in Section 238126 "Split System Air Conditioners"

3.3 DDC SYSTEM INTERFACE WITH EXISTING SYSTEMS

A. Interface with Existing Systems:
   1. Interface DDC systems with existing systems to achieve integration indicated.
   2. Monitoring and Control of DDC System by Existing Control System:

a. Satisfy DDC system performance requirements when monitoring and controlling DDC system by existing control system.
b. Operator of existing system to upload, download, monitor, trend, control, and program every I/O point in DDC system from existing control system using existing control system software and operator workstations.
c. Make interface so operator of existing system is not required to learn new software for remote monitoring and control from existing control system.
d. Make interface of DDC system into existing control system transparent to operators of existing control system and allow operators to monitor and control DDC system from any operator workstation connected to existing control system.

3.4 CONTROL DEVICES FOR INSTALLATION BY INSTALLERS

A. Deliver selected control devices, specified in indicated HVAC instrumentation and control device Sections, to identified equipment and systems manufacturers for factory installation and to identified installers for field installation.

3.5 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Install products to satisfy more stringent of all requirements indicated.

B. Install products level, plumb, parallel, and perpendicular with building construction.

C. Support products, tubing, piping wiring, and raceways. Brace products to prevent lateral movement and sway or a break in attachment.

D. If codes and referenced standards are more stringent than requirements indicated, comply with requirements in codes and referenced standards.

E. Fabricate openings and install sleeves in ceilings, floors, roof, and walls required by installation of products. Before proceeding with drilling, punching, and cutting, check for concealed work to avoid damage. Patch, flash, grout, seal, and refinish openings to match adjacent condition.

F. Welding Requirements:
1. Restrict welding and burning to supports and bracing.
2. No equipment is cut or welded without approval. Welding or cutting will not be approved if there is risk of damage to adjacent Work.
3. Welding, where approved, is to be by inert-gas electric arc process and is to be performed by qualified welders in accordance with applicable welding codes.
4. If requested on-site, show satisfactory evidence of welder certificates indicating ability to perform welding work intended.

G. Fastening Hardware:
   1. Wrenches, pliers, and other tools that damage surfaces of rods, nuts, and other parts are prohibited for work of assembling and tightening fasteners.
   2. Tighten bolts and nuts firmly and uniformly. Do not overstress threads by excessive force or by oversized wrenches.
   3. Lubricate threads of bolts, nuts, and screws with graphite and oil before assembly.

H. If product locations are not indicated, install products in locations that are accessible and that will permit service and maintenance from floor, equipment platforms, or catwalks without removal of permanently installed furniture and equipment.

3.6 INSTALLATION OF GATEWAYS

A. Install gateways if required for DDC system communication interface requirements indicated.

B. Test gateways to verify that communication interface functions properly.

3.7 INSTALLATION OF CONTROLLERS

A. Install controllers in enclosures to comply with indicated requirements.

B. Connect controllers to field power supply.

C. Install controllers with latest version of applicable software and configure to execute requirements indicated.

D. Test and adjust controllers to verify operation of connected I/O to achieve performance indicated requirements while executing sequences of operation.

E. Installation of Programmable Application Controllers:
   1. DDC system provider and DDC system manufacturer to determine quantity and location of programmable application controllers to satisfy requirements indicated. Provide minimum quantity indicated.
   2. Install controllers in a protected location that is easily accessible by operators.
   3. Locate top of controller within 72 inches of finished floor, except where dedicated controllers are installed at terminal units.

F. Application-Specific Controllers:
   1. DDC system provider and DDC system manufacturer to determine quantity and location of application-specific controllers to satisfy requirements indicated.
   2. For controllers not mounted directly on equipment being controlled, install controllers in a location that is easily accessible by operators.

3.8 ELECTRIC POWER CONNECTIONS

A. Connect electrical power to DDC system products requiring electrical power connections.

B. Design of electrical power to products not indicated with electric power is delegated to DDC system provider and installing trade to provide a fully functioning DDC system. Work is to comply with NFPA 70 and other requirements indicated.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 262816 "Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers" for electrical power circuit breakers.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power conductors and cables.

E. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power raceways and boxes.

3.9 INSTALLATION OF CONTROL WIRE, CABLE, AND RACEWAY

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Coordinate with Low Voltage IT systems and electrical contractors for routing of control wiring from existing terminal building underground to the new parking garage facility. Controls contractor to verify pathway and requirements needed regarding location of BAS connection and control wiring requirements with airport personnel.

C. Wire and Cable Installation:
   1. Install cables with protective sheathing that is waterproof and capable of withstanding continuous temperatures of 90 deg C with no measurable effect on physical and electrical properties of cable.
      a. Provide shielding to prevent interference and distortion from adjacent cables and equipment.
   2. Terminate wiring in a junction box.
      a. Clamp cable over jacket in a junction box.
      b. Individual conductors in the stripped section of cable is to be slack between the clamping point and terminal block.
   3. Terminate field wiring and cable not directly connected to instruments and control devices having integral wiring terminals using terminal blocks.
   4. Install signal transmission components in accordance with IEEE C2, REA Form 511a, NFPA 70, and as indicated.
   5. Use shielded cable to transmitters.
   6. Use shielded cable to temperature sensors.
   7. Perform continuity and meager testing on wire and cable after installation.

3.10 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and installations, including connections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:
   1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

3.11 DDC SYSTEM I/O CHECKOUT PROCEDURES

A. Check installed products before continuity tests, leak tests, and calibration.

B. Check instruments for proper location and accessibility.

C. Check instruments for proper installation on direction of flow, elevation, orientation, insertion depth, or other applicable considerations that will impact performance.

D. Check instrument tubing for proper isolation, fittings, slope, dirt legs, drains, material, and support.

E. Control Damper Checkout:
   1. Verify that control dampers are installed correctly for flow direction.
   2. Verify that proper blade alignment, either parallel or opposed, has been provided.
   3. Verify that damper frame attachment is properly secured and sealed.
   4. Verify that damper actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
   5. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
   6. Verify that damper blade travel is unobstructed.

F. Control Valve Checkout:
   1. Verify that control valves are installed correctly for flow direction.
   2. Verify that valve body attachment is properly secured and sealed.
   3. Verify that valve actuator and linkage attachment are secure.
   4. Verify that actuator wiring is complete, enclosed, and connected to correct power source.
   5. Verify that valve ball, disc, or plug travel is unobstructed.
   6. After piping systems have been tested and put into service, but before insulating and balancing, inspect each valve for leaks. Adjust or replace packing to stop leaks. Replace valve if leaks persist.

G. Instrument Checkout:

1. Verify that instrument is correctly installed for location, orientation, direction, and operating clearances.
2. Verify that attachment is properly secured and sealed.
3. Verify that conduit connections are properly secured and sealed.
4. Verify that wiring is properly labeled with unique identification, correct type, and size and is securely attached to proper terminals.
5. Inspect instrument tag against approved submittal.
6. For instruments with tubing connections, verify that tubing attachment is secure and isolation valves have been provided.
7. For flow instruments, verify that recommended upstream and downstream distances have been maintained.
8. For temperature instruments, verify the following:
    a. Sensing element type and proper material.
    b. Length and insertion.

3.12 DDC SYSTEM I/O ADJUSTMENT, CALIBRATION, AND TESTING

A. Control Dampers:
1. Stroke and adjust control dampers following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with cycle time less than 30 seconds.
3. For control dampers equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

B. Control Valves:
1. Stroke and adjust control valves following manufacturer's recommended procedure, from 100 percent open to 100 percent closed and back to 100 percent open.
2. Check and document open and close cycle times for applications with cycle time less than 30 seconds.
3. For control valves equipped with positive position indication, check feedback signal at multiple positions to confirm proper position indication.

C. Sensors: Check sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of Project design values.

3.13 DDC SYSTEM CONTROLLER CHECKOUT

A. Verify power supply.
1. Verify voltage, phase, and hertz.
2. Verify that protection from power surges is installed and functioning.
3. Verify that ground fault protection is installed.

B. Verify that wire and cabling are properly secured to terminals and labeled with unique identification.

C. Verify that spare I/O capacity is provided.

3.14 DDC CONTROLLER I/O CONTROL LOOP TESTS

A. Testing:
1. Test every I/O point connected to new DDC controllers to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2. Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3. Test every control loop to verify that operation is stable and accurate.
4. Adjust control loop proportional, integral, and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5. Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6. Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation. Correct deficiencies.
7. Operate each analog point at the following:
   a. Upper quarter of range.
   b. Lower quarter of range.
   c. At midpoint of range.
8. Exercise each binary point.
9. For every I/O point in DDC system, read and record each value at operator workstation, at DDC controller, and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at operator workstation, at DDC controller, and at field instrument must match.
10. Prepare and submit report documenting results for each I/O point in DDC system and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desire results.

3.15 DDC SYSTEM VALIDATION TESTS

A. Perform validation tests before requesting final review of system.

3.16 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative with complete knowledge of Project-specific system installed to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain DDC system.

B. Extent of Training:

1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of DDC system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:
    a. Provide not less than two days of training total.
    b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training to occur before end of warranty period.
    c. Break down total days of training into not more than four separate training classes.

C. Training Schedule:
1. Schedule training with Owner 20 business days before expected Substantial Completion.
2. Schedule training to provide Owner with at least 15 business days of notice in advance of training.
3. Training to occur within normal business hours at mutually agreed on time. Unless otherwise agreed to, training to occur Monday through Friday, except on U.S. Federal holidays.
4. Provide staggered training schedule as requested by Owner.

D. Video of Training Sessions:
1. Provide digital video and audio recording of each training session. Create separate recording file for each session.
2. Stamp each recording file with training session number, session name, and date.
3. Provide Owner with two copies of digital files on cloud and flash drives for later reference and for use in future training.
4. Owner retains right to make additional copies for intended training purposes without having to pay royalties.

END OF SECTION 23 09 00

SECTION 23 23 00 - REFRIGERANT PIPING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Copper tube and fittings.
   2. Valves and specialties.
   3. Refrigerants.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of valve, refrigerant piping, and piping specialty.

   1. Include pressure drop, based on manufacturer's test data, for the following:
      a. Thermostatic expansion valves.
      b. Solenoid valves.
      c. Hot-gas bypass valves.
      d. Filter dryers.
      e. Strainers.
      f. Pressure-regulating valves.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For refrigerant valves and piping specialties to include in maintenance manuals.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code: Section IX, "Welding and Brazing Qualifications."

B. Comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Code for Refrigeration Systems."

C. Comply with ASME B31.5, "Refrigeration Piping and Heat Transfer Components."

1.6 PRODUCT STORAGE AND HANDLING

A. Store piping with end caps in place to ensure that piping interior and exterior are clean when installed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 COPPER TUBE AND FITTINGS

A. Copper Tube: ASTM B 280, Type ACR.

B. Wrought-Copper Fittings, Solder-Joint: ASME B16.22.

C. Wrought-Copper Fittings, Brazed-Joint: ASME B16.50.

D. Wrought-Copper Unions: ASME B16.22.

E. Brazing Filler Metals: AWS A5.8/BCu-3. Sil-Fos Silver Alloy.

F. Flexible Connectors:
1. Body: Tin-bronze bellows with woven, flexible, tinned-bronze-wire-reinforced protective jacket.
2. End Connections: Socket ends.
3. Offset Performance: Capable of minimum 3/4-inch misalignment in minimum 7-inch-long assembly.
4. Working Pressure Rating: Factory test at minimum 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 250 deg F.

2.2 VALVES AND SPECIALTIES

A. Check Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Apollo Valves; a part of Aalberts Integrated Piping Systems.
   b. Danfoss Inc.
2. Body: Ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; globe pattern.
3. Bonnet: Bolted ductile iron, forged brass, or cast bronze; or brass hex plug.

4. Piston: Removable polytetrafluoroethylene seat.
5. Closing Spring: Stainless steel.
6. Manual Opening Stem: Seal cap, plated-steel stem, and graphite seal.
7. End Connections: Socket, union, threaded, or flanged.
8. Maximum Opening Pressure: 0.50 psig.
9. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
10. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

B. Service Valves:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Danfoss Inc.
   b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
   c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group.
   d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
   e. Refrigeration Sales, Inc.
2. Body: Forged brass with brass cap including key end to remove core.
3. Core: Removable ball-type check valve with stainless-steel spring.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Copper spring.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.

C. Refrigerant Locking Caps:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. C & D Valve, LLC.
   b. JB Industries.
   c. RectorSeal HVAC; a CSW Industrials Company.
2. Description: Locking-type, tamper-resistant, threaded caps to protect refrigerant charging ports from unauthorized refrigerant access and leakage.
3. Material: Brass, with protective shroud or sleeve.
4. Refrigerant Identification: Color-coded, refrigerant specific or Universal design.
5. Special Tool: For installing and unlocking.

D. Solenoid Valves: Comply with AHRI 760 and UL 429; listed and labeled by a National Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL).
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Danfoss Inc.

b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group.
d. Parker Hannifin Corp.
e. Paul Mueller Company.

2. Body and Bonnet: Plated steel.
3. Solenoid Tube, Plunger, Closing Spring, and Seat Orifice: Stainless steel.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Electrical: Molded, watertight coil in NEMA 250 enclosure of type required by location with 1/2-inch conduit adapter, and 24-V ac coil.
7. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
8. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

E. Safety Relief Valves: Comply with 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code; listed and labeled by an NRTL.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Danfoss Inc.
   b. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group.
   c. Parker Hannifin Corp.
   d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body and Bonnet: Ductile iron and steel, with neoprene O-ring seal.
3. Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
4. Seat: Polytetrafluoroethylene.
5. End Connections: Threaded.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 400 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

F. Thermostatic Expansion Valves: Comply with AHRI 750.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. Danfoss Inc.
   b. Emerson Climate Technologies; Emerson Electric Co.
   c. Henry Technologies Inc.; The Henry Group.
   d. Paul Mueller Company.
2. Body, Bonnet, and Seal Cap: Forged brass or steel.
3. Diaphragm, Piston, Closing Spring, and Seat Insert: Stainless steel.
4. Packing and Gaskets: Non-asbestos.
5. Capillary and Bulb: Copper tubing filled with refrigerant charge.
6. Reverse-flow option (for heat-pump applications).
7. End Connections: Socket, flare, or threaded union.

8. Working Pressure Rating: 450 psig.

G. Straight-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. Screen: 100-mesh stainless steel.
3. End Connections: Socket or flare.
4. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
5. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

H. Angle-Type Strainers:
1. Body: Forged brass or cast bronze.
2. Drain Plug: Brass hex plug.
3. Screen: 100-mesh monel.
4. End Connections: Socket or flare.
5. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
6. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

I. Moisture/Liquid Indicators:
1. Body: Forged brass.
2. Window: Replaceable, clear, fused glass window with indicating element protected by filter screen.
3. Indicator: Color coded to show moisture content in parts per million (ppm).
4. Minimum Moisture Indicator Sensitivity: Indicate moisture above 60 ppm.
5. End Connections: Socket or flare.
6. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
7. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

J. Replaceable-Core Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.
1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell with ductile-iron cover, stainless-steel screws, and neoprene gaskets.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

K. Permanent Filter Dryers: Comply with AHRI 730.

1. Body and Cover: Painted-steel shell.
2. Filter Media: 10 micron, pleated with integral end rings; stainless-steel support.
3. Desiccant Media: Activated alumina.
4. Designed for reverse flow (for heat-pump applications).
5. End Connections: Socket.
6. Access Ports: NPS 1/4 connections at entering and leaving sides for pressure differential measurement.
7. Maximum Pressure Loss: 2 psig.
8. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
9. Maximum Operating Temperature: 240 deg F.

L. Liquid Accumulators: Comply with AHRI 495.
1. Body: Welded steel with corrosion-resistant coating.
2. End Connections: Socket or threaded.
3. Working Pressure Rating: 500 psig.
4. Maximum Operating Temperature: 275 deg F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PIPING APPLICATIONS

A. Suction Lines NPS 1-1/2 and Smaller for Conventional Air-Conditioning Applications: Copper, Type ACR, annealed-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

B. Hot-Gas and Liquid Lines, and Suction Lines for Heat-Pump Applications:
1. Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

C. Safety-Relief-Valve Discharge Piping:
1. Copper, Type ACR, annealed- or drawn-temper tubing and wrought-copper fittings with brazed joints.

3.2 VALVE AND SPECIALTY APPLICATIONS

A. Install diaphragm packless valves in suction and discharge lines of compressor.

B. Install service valves for gauge taps at inlet and outlet of hot-gas bypass valves and strainers if they are not an integral part of valves and strainers.

C. Install a check valve at the compressor discharge and a liquid accumulator at the compressor suction connection.

D. Except as otherwise indicated, install diaphragm packless valves on inlet and outlet side of filter dryers.

E. Install a full-size, three-valve bypass around filter dryers.

F. Install solenoid valves upstream from each expansion valve and hot-gas bypass valve. Install solenoid valves in horizontal lines with coil at top.

G. Install thermostatic expansion valves as close as possible to distributors on evaporators.
   1. Install valve so diaphragm case is warmer than bulb.
   2. Secure bulb to clean, straight, horizontal section of suction line using two bulb straps. Do not mount bulb in a trap or at bottom of the line.
   3. If external equalizer lines are required, make connection where it will reflect suction-line pressure at bulb location.

H. Install safety relief valves where required by 2010 ASME Boiler and Pressure Vessel Code. Pipe safety-relief-valve discharge line to outside according to ASHRAE 15.

I. Install moisture/liquid indicators in liquid line at the inlet of the thermostatic expansion valve or at the inlet of the evaporator coil capillary tube.

J. Install strainers upstream from and adjacent to the following unless they are furnished as an integral assembly for the device being protected:
   1. Solenoid valves.
   2. Thermostatic expansion valves.
   3. Hot-gas bypass valves.
   4. Compressor.

K. Install filter dryers in liquid line between compressor and thermostatic expansion valve, and in the suction line at the compressor.

L. Install receivers sized to accommodate pump-down charge.

M. Install flexible connectors at compressors.

N. Provide refrigerant locking caps on refrigerant charging ports that are located outdoors unless otherwise protected from unauthorized access by a means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF PIPING, GENERAL

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of piping systems; indicated locations and arrangements were used to size pipe and calculate friction loss, expansion, pump sizing, and other design considerations. Install piping as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings.

B. Install refrigerant piping according to ASHRAE 15.

C. Install piping in concealed locations unless otherwise indicated and except in equipment rooms and service areas.

D. Install piping indicated to be exposed and piping in equipment rooms and service areas at right angles or parallel to building walls. Diagonal runs are prohibited unless specifically indicated otherwise.

E. Install piping above accessible ceilings to allow sufficient space for ceiling panel removal.

F. Install piping adjacent to machines to allow service and maintenance.

G. Install piping free of sags and bends.

H. Install fittings for changes in direction and branch connections.

I. Select system components with pressure rating equal to or greater than system operating pressure.

J. Install piping as short and direct as possible, with a minimum number of joints, elbows, and fittings.

K. Install refrigerant piping in rigid or flexible conduit in locations where exposed to mechanical injury.

L. Slope refrigerant piping as follows:
   1. Install horizontal hot-gas discharge piping with a uniform slope downward away from compressor.
   2. Install horizontal suction lines with a uniform slope downward to compressor.
   3. Install traps and double risers to entrain oil in vertical runs.
   4. Liquid lines may be installed level.

M. When brazing or soldering, remove solenoid-valve coils and sight glasses; also remove valve stems, seats, and packing, and accessible internal parts of refrigerant specialties. Do not apply heat near expansion-valve bulb.

N. Install piping with adequate clearance between pipe and adjacent walls and hangers or between pipes for insulation installation.

O. Identify refrigerant piping and valves according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

P. Install sleeves for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for sleeves specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

Q. Install sleeve seals for piping penetrations of concrete walls and slabs. Comply with requirements for sleeve seals specified in Section 230517 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for HVAC Piping."

R. Install escutcheons for piping penetrations of walls, ceilings, and floors. Comply with requirements for escutcheons specified in Section 230518 "Escutcheons for HVAC Piping."

3.4 PIPE JOINT CONSTRUCTION

A. Ream ends of pipes and tubes and remove burrs. Bevel plain ends of steel pipe.

B. Remove scale, slag, dirt, and debris from inside and outside of pipe and fittings before assembly.

C. Fill pipe and fittings with an inert gas (nitrogen or carbon dioxide), during brazing or welding, to prevent scale formation.

D. Soldered Joints: Construct joints according to ASTM B 828 or CDA's "Copper Tube Handbook."

E. Brazed Joints: Construct joints according to AWS's "Brazing Handbook," Chapter "Pipe and Tube."
   1. Use Type BCuP (copper-phosphorus) alloy for joining copper socket fittings with copper pipe.
   2. Use Type BAg (cadmium-free silver) alloy for joining copper with bronze or steel.

F. Threaded Joints: Thread steel pipe with tapered pipe threads according to ASME B1.20.1. Cut threads full and clean using sharp dies. Ream threaded pipe ends to remove burrs and to restore full ID. Join pipe fittings and valves as follows:
   1. Apply appropriate tape or thread compound to external pipe threads unless dry-seal threading is specified.
   2. Damaged Threads: Do not use pipe or pipe fittings with threads that are corroded or damaged. Do not use pipe sections that have cracked or open welds.

G. Steel pipe can be threaded, but threaded joints must be seal brazed or seal welded.

H. Welded Joints: Construct joints according to AWS D10.12M/D10.12.

I. Flanged Joints: Select appropriate gasket material, size, type, and thickness for service application. Install gasket concentrically positioned. Use suitable lubricants on bolt threads.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Comply with Section 230529 "Hangers and Supports for HVAC Piping and Equipment" for hangers, supports, and anchor devices.

B. Install the following pipe attachments:
   1. Adjustable steel clevis hangers for individual horizontal runs less than 20 feet long.
   2. Roller hangers and spring hangers for individual horizontal runs 20 feet or longer.
   3. Pipe Roller: MSS SP-58, Type 44 for multiple horizontal piping 20 feet or longer, supported on a trapeze.
   4. Spring hangers to support vertical runs.
   5. Copper-clad hangers and supports for hangers and supports in direct contact with copper pipe.

C. Install hangers for copper tubing, with maximum horizontal spacing and minimum rod diameters, to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

D. Support horizontal piping within 12 inches of each fitting.

E. Support vertical runs of copper tubing to comply with MSS-58, locally enforced codes, and authorities having jurisdiction requirements, whichever are most stringent.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:
   1. Comply with ASME B31.5, Chapter VI.
   2. Test refrigerant piping, specialties, and receivers. Isolate compressor, condenser, evaporator, and safety devices from test pressure if they are not rated above the test pressure.
   3. Test high- and low-pressure side piping of each system separately at not less than the pressures indicated in "Performance Requirements" Article.
      a. Fill system with nitrogen to the required test pressure.
      b. System shall maintain test pressure at the manifold gage throughout duration of test.
      c. Test joints and fittings with electronic leak detector or by brushing a small amount of soap and glycerin solution over joints.
      d. Remake leaking joints using new materials, and retest until satisfactory results are achieved.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 SYSTEM CHARGING

A. Charge system using the following procedures:
   1. Install core in filter dryers after leak test but before evacuation.
   2. Evacuate entire refrigerant system with a vacuum pump to 500 micrometers. If vacuum holds for 12 hours, system is ready for charging.
   3. Break vacuum with refrigerant gas, allowing pressure to build up to 2 psig.
   4. Charge system with a new filter-dryer core in charging line.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust thermostatic expansion valve to obtain proper evaporator superheat.

B. Adjust high- and low-pressure switch settings to avoid short cycling in response to fluctuating suction pressure.

C. Adjust set-point temperature of air-conditioning or chilled-water controllers to the system design temperature.

D. Perform the following adjustments before operating the refrigeration system, according to manufacturer's written instructions:
   1. Open shutoff valves in condenser water circuit.
   2. Verify that compressor oil level is correct.

3. Open compressor suction and discharge valves.
4. Open refrigerant valves except bypass valves that are used for other purposes.
5. Check open compressor-motor alignment and verify lubrication for motors and bearings.

E. Replace core of replaceable filter dryer after system has been adjusted and after design flow rates and pressures are established.

END OF SECTION 23 23 00

SECTION 23 31 13 - METAL DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Single-wall rectangular ducts and fittings.
2. Single-wall round ducts and fittings.
3. Sheet metal materials.
4. Sealants and gaskets.
5. Hangers and supports.

B. Related Sections:
1. Section 230548 “Vibration Controls for HVAC” for vibration isolation devices and installation.
2. Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" for testing, adjusting, and balancing requirements for metal ducts.
3. Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for dampers, sound-control devices, duct-mounting access doors and panels, turning vanes, and flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following products:
1. Liners and adhesives
2. Sealants and gaskets.

1.4 SHOP DRAWINGS

A. Fabrication, assembly, and installation, including plans, elevations, sections, components, and attachments to other work.
B. Factory- and shop-fabricated ducts and fittings.

C. Duct layout indicating sizes, configuration, liner material, and static-pressure classes.
D. Elevation of top and bottom of ducts.
E. Dimensions of main duct runs from building grid lines.
F. Fittings.
G. Reinforcement and spacing.
H. Seam and joint construction.
I. Penetrations through fire-rated and other partitions.
J. Equipment installation based on equipment being used on Project.
K. Locations for duct accessories, including dampers, turning vanes, and access doors and panels.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: A single set of plans or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section, and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel in accordance with the following:
1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel," for hangers and supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

B. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Startup."

C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6.4.4 - "HVAC System Construction and Insulation."

D. Duct Dimensions: Unless otherwise indicated, all duct dimensions indicated on Drawings are inside clear dimensions and do not include insulation or duct wall thickness.

2.2 SINGLE-WALL RECTANGULAR DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.

B. Transverse Joints: Fabricate joints in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-1, "Rectangular Duct/Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
   1. For ducts with longest side less than 36 inches, select joint types in accordance with Figure 2-1.
   2. For ducts with longest side 36 inches or greater, use flange joint connector Type T-22, T-24, T-24A, T-25a, or T-25b. Factory-fabricated flanged duct connection system may be used if submitted and approved by engineer of record.
   3. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 2-2, "Rectangular Duct/Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible." All longitudinal seams shall be Pittsburgh lock seams unless otherwise specified for specific application.
   1. Where specified for specific applications, all joints shall be welded.

D. Elbows, Transitions, Offsets, Branch Connections, and Other Duct Construction: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 4, "Fittings and Other Construction," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials

involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

2.3 SINGLE-WALL ROUND DUCTS AND FITTINGS

A. General Fabrication Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Ch. 3, "Round, Oval, and Flexible Duct," based on indicated static-pressure class unless otherwise indicated.
   1. Construct ducts of galvanized sheet steel unless otherwise indicated.
   2. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Elgen Manufacturing.
      b. Linx Industries (formerly Lindab).
      c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
      d. SEMCO, LLC; part of FlaktGroup.
      e. Sheet Metal Connectors, Inc.
      f. Spiral Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      g. Stamped Fittings Inc.

B. Transverse Joints: Select joint types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-1, "Round Duct Transverse Joints," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

C. Longitudinal Seams: Select seam types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-2, "Round Duct Longitudinal Seams," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

D. Tees and Laterals: Select types and fabricate in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees," for static-pressure class, applicable sealing requirements, materials involved, duct-support intervals, and other provisions in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

E. Round ducts 8 inches and larger in diameter are to be spiral seam duct, regardless of pressure class indicated in Part 3, Execution.

2.4 SHEET METAL MATERIALS

A. General Material Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

B. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
   1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
   2. Finishes for Surfaces Exposed to View: Mill phosphatized.

C. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: ASTM A36/A36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.
   1. Where black- and galvanized-steel shapes and plates are used to reinforce aluminum ducts, isolate the different metals with butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM gasket materials.

D. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inch-minimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch-minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

2.5 DUCT LINER

A. Fibrous-Glass Duct Liner: Comply with ASTM C1071, NFPA 90A, or NFPA 90B; and with NAIMA AH124, "Fibrous Glass Duct Liner Standard."
   1. Source Limitations: Obtain fibrous-glass duct liner from single manufacturer.
   2. Maximum Thermal Conductivity:
      a. Type I, Flexible: 0.27 Btu x in./h x sq. ft. x deg F at 75 deg F mean temperature.
   3. Antimicrobial Erosion-Resistant Coating: Apply to the surface of the liner that will form the interior surface of the duct to act as a moisture repellent and erosion-resistant coating. Antimicrobial compound is to be tested for efficacy by an NRTL and registered by the EPA for use in HVAC systems.
   4. Water Based Liner Adhesive: Comply with NFPA 90A or NFPA 90B and with ASTM C916.

B. Insulation Pins and Washers:
   1. Cupped-Head, Capacitor-Discharge-Weld Pins: Copper- or zinc-coated steel pin, fully annealed for capacitor-discharge welding, 0.106-inch

diameter shank, length to suit depth of insulation indicated with integral 1-1/2-inch galvanized carbon-steel washer.

2. Insulation-Retaining Washers: Self-locking washers formed from 0.016-inch- thick galvanized steel; with beveled edge sized as required to hold insulation securely in place, but not less than 1-1/2 inches in diameter.

C. Shop Application of Duct Liner: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 7-11, "Flexible Duct Liner Installation."

1. Adhere a single layer of indicated thickness of duct liner with at least 90 percent adhesive coverage at liner contact surface area. Attaining indicated thickness with multiple layers of duct liner is prohibited.
2. Apply adhesive to transverse edges of liner facing upstream that do not receive metal nosing.
3. Butt transverse joints without gaps, and coat joint with adhesive.
4. Fold and compress liner in corners of rectangular ducts or cut and fit to ensure butted-edge overlapping.
5. Do not apply liner in rectangular ducts with longitudinal joints, except at corners of ducts, unless duct size and dimensions of standard liner make longitudinal joints necessary.
6. Secure liner with mechanical fasteners 4 inches from corners and at intervals not exceeding 12 inches transversely; at 3 inches from transverse joints and at intervals not exceeding 18 inches longitudinally.
7. Secure transversely oriented liner edges facing the airstream with metal nosings that have either channel or "Z" profiles or are integrally formed from duct wall. Fabricate edge facings at the following locations:
   a. Fan discharges.
   b. Intervals of lined duct preceding unlined duct.
   c. Upstream edges of transverse joints in ducts where air velocities are higher than 2500 fpm or where indicated.
8. Terminate inner ducts with buildouts attached to fire-damper sleeves, dampers, turning vane assemblies, or other devices. Fabricated buildouts (metal hat sections) or other buildout means are optional; when used, secure buildouts to duct walls with bolts, screws, rivets, or welds.

2.6 SEALANT AND GASKETS

A. General Sealant and Gasket Requirements: Surface-burning characteristics for sealants and gaskets shall be a maximum flame-spread index of 25 and a maximum smoke-developed index of 50 when tested in accordance with UL 723; certified by an NRTL.

B. Water-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
   1. Application Method: Brush on.
   2. Solids Content: Minimum 65 percent.
   3. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 20.
   4. Water resistant.
   5. Mold and mildew resistant.
   6. VOC: Maximum 75 g/L (less water).
   7. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10 inch wg, positive and negative.
   8. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
   9. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

C. Solvent-Based Joint and Seam Sealant:
   1. Application Method: Brush on.
   2. Base: Synthetic rubber resin.
   3. Solvent: Toluene and heptane.
   4. Solids Content: Minimum 60 percent.
   5. Shore A Hardness: Minimum 60.
   6. Water resistant.
   7. Mold and mildew resistant.
   8. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.
   9. Maximum Static-Pressure Class: 10-inch wg, positive or negative.
   10. Service: Indoor or outdoor.
   11. Substrate: Compatible with galvanized sheet steel (both PVC coated and bare), stainless steel, or aluminum sheets.

D. Flanged Joint Sealant: Comply with ASTM C920.
   1. General: Single-component, acid-curing, silicone, elastomeric.
   2. Type: S.
   3. Grade: NS.
   4. Class: 25.
   5. Use: O.
   6. Verify sealant has a VOC content of 420 g/L or less.

E. Flange Gaskets: Butyl rubber, neoprene, or EPDM polymer with polyisobutylene plasticizer.

F. Round Duct Joint O-Ring Seals:
   1. Seal shall provide maximum leakage class of 3 cfm/100 sq. ft. at 1-inch wg and shall be rated for10-inch wg static-pressure class, positive or negative.
   2. EPDM O-ring to seal in concave bead in coupling or fitting spigot.

3. Double-lipped, EPDM O-ring seal, mechanically fastened to factory-fabricated couplings and fitting spigots.

2.7 HANGERS AND SUPPORTS

A. Hanger Rods for Noncorrosive Environments: Galvanized-steel rods and nuts.

B. Hanger Rods for Corrosive Environments: Electrogalvanized, all-thread rods or galvanized rods with threads painted with zinc-chromate primer after installation.

C. Strap and Rod Sizes: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 5-1, "Rectangular Duct Hangers Minimum Size," and Table 5-2, "Minimum Hanger Sizes for Round Duct."

D. Steel Cables for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel complying with ASTM A603.

E. Steel Cables for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless steel complying with ASTM A492.

F. Steel Cable End Connections: Galvanized-steel assemblies with brackets, swivel, and bolts designed for duct hanger service; with an automatic-locking and clamping device.

G. Duct Attachments: Sheet metal screws, blind rivets, or self-tapping metal screws; compatible with duct materials.

H. Trapeze and Riser Supports:
   1. Supports for Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized-steel shapes and plates.
   2. Supports for Stainless-Steel Ducts: Stainless-steel shapes and plates.
   3. Supports for Aluminum Ducts: Aluminum or galvanized steel coated with zinc chromate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Drawing plans, schematics, and diagrams indicate general location and arrangement of duct system. Indicated duct locations, configurations, and arrangements were used to size ducts and calculate friction loss for air-handling equipment sizing and for other design considerations. Install duct systems as indicated unless deviations to layout are approved on Shop Drawings and coordination drawings.

B. Install ducts in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install ducts in maximum practical lengths with fewest possible joints.

D. Install factory- or shop-fabricated fittings for changes in direction, size, and shape and for branch connections.

E. Unless otherwise indicated, install ducts vertically and horizontally, and parallel and perpendicular to building lines.

F. Install ducts close to walls, overhead construction, columns, and other structural and permanent enclosure elements of building.

G. Install ducts with a clearance of 1 inch, plus allowance for insulation thickness.

H. Where ducts pass through non-fire-rated interior partitions and exterior walls and are exposed to view, cover the opening between the partition and duct or duct insulation with sheet metal flanges of same metal thickness as the duct. Overlap openings on four sides by at least 1-1/2 inches.

I. Protect duct interiors from moisture, construction debris and dust, and other foreign materials both before and after installation. Comply with SMACNA's "IAQ Guidelines for Occupied Buildings Under Construction," Appendix G, "Duct Cleanliness for New Construction Guidelines."

J. Elbows:
   1. Fabricate 90-degree rectangular mitered elbows to include turning vanes.
   2. Fabricate 90-degree round elbows with a minimum of three segments for 12 inches and smaller and a minimum of five segments for 14 inches and larger.

K. Branch Connections: Use lateral or conical branch connections.

3.2 DUCT SEALING

A. Seal ducts for duct static-pressure, seal classes, and leakage classes specified in "Duct Schedule" Article in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."

B. Seal ducts at a minimum to the following seal classes in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible":

1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible."
2. Outdoor, Supply-Air Ducts: Seal Class A.
3. Outdoor, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
4. Outdoor, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.
5. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class B.
6. Unconditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class A.
7. Unconditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class C.
8. Unconditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class B.
9. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes 2-Inch wg and Lower: Seal Class C.
10. Conditioned Space, Supply-Air Ducts in Pressure Classes Higher Than 2-Inch wg: Seal Class B.
11. Conditioned Space, Exhaust Ducts: Seal Class B.
12. Conditioned Space, Return-Air Ducts: Seal Class C.

3.3 HANGER AND SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Chapter 5, "Hangers and Supports."

B. Support vertical ducts with steel angles or channel secured to the sides of the duct with welds, bolts, sheet metal screws, or blind rivets.

C. Install upper attachments to structures. Select and size upper attachments with pull-out, tension, and shear capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials where used.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Make connections to equipment with flexible connectors complying with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for branch, outlet and inlet, and terminal unit connections.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

B. Leakage Tests:
   1. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Air Duct Leakage Test Manual." Submit a test report for each test.
   2. Conduct tests at static pressures equal to maximum design pressure of system or section being tested. If static-pressure classes are not indicated, test system at maximum system design pressure. Do not pressurize systems above maximum design operating pressure.
   3. Give seven days' advance notice for testing.

C. Duct System Cleanliness Tests:
   1. Visually inspect duct system to ensure that no visible contaminants are present.

D. Duct system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 DUCT CLEANING

A. Clean new duct system(s) before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

B. For cleaning of existing ductwork, see Section 230130.52 "Existing HVAC Air Distribution System Cleaning."

C. Use duct cleaning methodology as indicated in NADCA ACR.

D. Use service openings for entry and inspection.
   1. Provide openings with access panels appropriate for duct static-pressure and leakage class at dampers, coils, and any other locations where required for inspection and cleaning access. Provide insulated panels for insulated or lined duct. Patch insulation and liner as recommended by duct liner manufacturer. Comply with Section 233300 "Air Duct Accessories" for access panels and doors.
   2. Disconnect and reconnect flexible ducts as needed for cleaning and inspection.
   3. Remove and reinstall ceiling to gain access during the cleaning process.

E. Particulate Collection and Odor Control:

1. When venting vacuuming system inside the building, use HEPA filtration with 99.97 percent collection efficiency for 0.3-micron-size (or larger) particles.
2. When venting vacuuming system to outdoors, use filter to collect debris removed from HVAC system, and locate exhaust downwind and away from air intakes and other points of entry into building.

F. Clean the following components by removing surface contaminants and deposits:
1. Air outlets and inlets (registers, grilles, and diffusers).
2. Supply, return, and exhaust fans including fan housings, plenums (except ceiling supply and return plenums), scrolls, blades or vanes, shafts, baffles, dampers, and drive assemblies.
3. Air-handling unit internal surfaces and components including mixing box, coil section, air wash systems, spray eliminators, condensate drain pans, humidifiers and dehumidifiers, filters and filter sections, and condensate collectors and drains.
4. Coils and related components.
5. Return-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes except in ceiling plenums and mechanical equipment rooms.
6. Supply-air ducts, dampers, actuators, and turning vanes.
7. Dedicated exhaust and ventilation components and makeup air systems.

G. Mechanical Cleaning Methodology:
1. Clean metal duct systems using mechanical cleaning methods that extract contaminants from within duct systems and remove contaminants from building.
2. Use vacuum-collection devices that are operated continuously during cleaning. Connect vacuum device to downstream end of duct sections so areas being cleaned are under negative pressure.
3. Use mechanical agitation to dislodge debris adhered to interior duct surfaces without damaging integrity of metal ducts, duct liner, or duct accessories.
4. Clean coils and coil drain pans in accordance with NADCA ACR. Keep drain pan operational. Rinse coils with clean water to remove latent residues and cleaning materials; comb and straighten fins.
5. Provide drainage and cleanup for wash-down procedures.
6. Antimicrobial Agents and Coatings: Apply EPA-registered antimicrobial agents if fungus is present. Apply antimicrobial agents in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions after removal of surface deposits and debris.

3.7 STARTUP

A. Air Balance: Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC."

3.8 DUCT SCHEDULE

A. Fabricate ducts with galvanized sheet steel except as otherwise indicated and as follows:
   1. Fabricate all ducts to achieve SMACNA pressure class, seal class, and leakage class as indicated below.

B. Supply Ducts:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive 2 inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 8.

C. Return and Outside Air Ducts:
   a. Pressure Class: Positive or negative 2 inch wg.
   b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class: C.
   c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 8.
   d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 8.

D. Exhaust Ducts:
   1. Ducts Connected to Exhaust systems:
      a. Pressure Class: Negative 3 inch wg.
      b. Minimum SMACNA Seal Class B for negative pressure,
      c. SMACNA Leakage Class for Rectangular: 12
      d. SMACNA Leakage Class for Round: 8.

E. Intermediate Reinforcement:
   1. Galvanized-Steel Ducts: Galvanized steel or carbon steel coated with zinc-chromate primer.

F. Elbow Configuration:
   1. Rectangular Duct - Requirements for Different Velocities: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-2, "Rectangular Elbows."
      a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower:
         1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
         2) Mitered Type RE 4 without vanes.

b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm:
   1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio.
   2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
   3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher:
   1) Radius Type RE 1 with minimum 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio.
   2) Radius Type RE 3 with minimum 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and two vanes.
   3) Mitered Type RE 2 with vanes complying with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

2. Round Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-4, "Round Duct Elbows."
   a. Minimum Radius-to-Diameter Ratio and Elbow Segments: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Table 3-1, "Mitered Elbows." Elbows with less than 90-degree change of direction have proportionately fewer segments.
      1) Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 0.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and three segments for 90-degree elbow.
      2) Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: 1.0 radius-to-diameter ratio and four segments for 90-degree elbow.
      3) Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 1.5 radius-to-diameter ratio and five segments for 90-degree elbow.
      4) Radius-to Diameter Ratio: 1.5.
   b. Round Elbows, 12 Inches and Smaller in Diameter: Stamped or pleated.
   c. Round Elbows, 14 Inches and Larger in Diameter: Standing seam.

G. Branch Configuration:

1. Rectangular Duct: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 4-6, "Branch Connection."
   a. Rectangular Main to Rectangular Branch: 45-degree entry.
   b. Rectangular Main to Round Branch: Conical spin in.

2. Round and Flat Oval: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible," Figure 3-5, "90 Degree Tees and Laterals," and Figure 3-6, "Conical Tees." Saddle taps are permitted in existing duct.
   a. Velocity 1000 fpm or Lower: 90-degree tap.
   b. Velocity 1000 to 1500 fpm: Conical tap.
   c. Velocity 1500 fpm or Higher: 45-degree lateral.

END OF SECTION 23 31 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 33 00 - AIR DUCT ACCESSORIES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
1. Backdraft dampers.
2. Manual volume dampers.
3. Control dampers.
4. Flange connectors.
5. Turning vanes.
6. Duct-mounted access doors.
7. Flexible connectors.
8. Duct accessory hardware.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 233346 “Flexible Ducts” for insulated and non-insulated flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: For duct accessories. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.
1. Detail duct accessories' fabrication and installation in ducts and other construction. Include dimensions, weights, loads, and required clearances; and method of field assembly into duct systems and other construction. Include the following:
a. Special fittings.
b. Manual volume damper installations.
c. Control-damper installations.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, or BIM model, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted access panels and access doors required for access to duct accessories are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Source quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For air duct accessories to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

2.2 BACKDRAFT DAMPERS

A. Description: Gravity balanced.
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. Air Balance; a division of MESTEK, Inc.
      b. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
      c. McGill AirFlow LLC.
      d. Nailor Industries Inc.
      e. Pottorff.
      f. Ruskin Company.
   2. Performance:
      a. Maximum Air Velocity: 1250 fpm.
      b. Maximum System Pressure: 2 inches wg.
   3. Leakage

a. Class II" Leakage shall not exceed 10cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential statice pressure.

4. Construction:
   a. Frame: Hat-shaped, 16-gauge-thick, galvanized sheet steel, with welded or mechanically attached corners.
5. Blades:
   a. Multiple or single blade.
   b. Pivoted, Maximum 6-inch width.
   c. Sealed edges.
   d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge thick.
6. Blade Action: Parallel.
7. Blade Axles:
   a. Material: Galvanized steel
   b. Diameter: 0.20 inch.
8. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
9. Return Spring: Adjustable tension
10. Bearings: Steel ball, brass sleeve or synthetic pivot bushing.

2.3 MANUAL VOLUME DAMPERS

A. Standard, Steel, Manual Volume Dampers:
   1. Performance:
      a. Leakage Rating Class III: Leakage not exceeding 40 cfm/sq. ft.against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
   2. Construction:
      a. Linkage out of airstream.
      b. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
   3. Frames:
      a. Hat-shaped, 16-gauge thick, galvanized sheet steel.
      b. Mitered and welded corners.
      c. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
   4. Blades:
      a. Multiple or single blade.
      b. Parallel- or opposed-blade design.
      c. Stiffen damper blades for stability.
      d. Galvanized steel; 16 gauge thick.
   5. Blade Axles: Galvanized steel or Nonferrous metal.
   6. Bearings:
      a. Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic.

b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearing at each end of every blade.

7. Tie Bars and Brackets: Galvanized steel.
8. Locking device to hold damper blades in a fixed position without vibration.

B. Jackshaft:
1. Size: 0.5-inchdiameter.
2. Material: Galvanized-steel pipe rotating within pipe-bearing assembly mounted on supports at each mullion and at each end of multiple-damper assemblies.
3. Length and Number of Mountings: As required to connect linkage of each damper in multiple-damper assembly.

C. Damper Hardware:

1. Zinc-plated, die-cast core with dial and handle, made of 3/32-inch thick zinc-plated steel, and a 3/4-inchhexagon locking nut.
2. Include center hole to suit damper operating-rod size.
3. Include elevated platform for insulated duct mounting.

2.4 CONTROL DAMPERS

A. General Requirements:
1. Unless otherwise indicated, use parallel-blade configuration for two-position control, equipment isolation service, and when mixing two airstreams. For other applications, use opposed-blade configuration.
2. Factory or field assemble multiple damper sections to provide a single damper assembly of size required by the application.

B. Performance:
1. AMCA Certification: Test and rate in accordance with AMCA 511.
2. Leakage:
a. Class I: Leakage shall not exceed 4 cfm/sq. ft. against 1-inch wg differential static pressure.
3. Pressure Drop: 0.05 inch wg at 1500 fpm across a 24-by-24-inchdamper when tested in accordance with AMCA 500-D, Figure 5.3.
4. Velocity: Up to 3000 fpm
5. Temperature: Minus 25 to plus 180 deg F.
6. Pressure Rating: Damper close-off pressure equal to fan shutoff pressure with a maximum blade deflection of 1/200 of blade length.

C. Construction:
   1. Linkage out of airstream.
   2. Suitable for horizontal or vertical airflow applications.
   3. Frames:
      a. Hat, U, or angle shaped.
      b. 16-gauge thick, galvanized sheet steel.
      c. Mitered and welded corners.
      d. Flanges for attaching to walls and flangeless frames for installing in ducts.
   4. Blades:
      a. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 8 inches for duct installations.
      b. Multiple blade with maximum blade width of 36 inches for installations inside air handling units.
      c. Parallel blade design.
      d. Galvanized steel.
      e. 16-gauge thick single skin for duct installations.
      f. 14-gauge thick air foil dual skin for installations inside air handling units.
   5. Blade Edging Seals:
      a. Replaceable Closed-cell neoprene.
   6. Blade Jamb Seal: Flexible stainless steel, compression type.
   7. Blade Axles: 1/2-inch diameter; galvanized steel.
   8. Blade-Linkage Hardware: Zinc-plated steel and brass; ends sealed against blade bearings. Linkage mounted out of air stream.
   9. Bearings:
      a. Oil-impregnated bronze or Molded synthetic.
      b. Dampers mounted with vertical blades to have thrust bearings at each end of every blade.

D. Damper Actuator - Electric:
   1. Electric - 24 V ac.
   2. UL 873, plenum rated.
   3. Fully modulating with fail-safe spring return.
      a. Sufficient motor torque and spring torque to drive damper fully open and fully closed with adequate force to achieve required damper seal.
      b. Minimum 90-degree drive rotation.
   4. Clockwise or counterclockwise drive rotation as required for application.
   5. Environmental Operating Range:
      a. Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 130 deg F.

b. Humidity: 5 to 95 percent relative humidity noncondensing.

6. Environmental enclosure: NEMA 2.

7. Actuator to be factory mounted and provided with a single-point wiring connection.

E. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring:

1. Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in Section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls."

2. Electrical Connection: 24 V, 60 Hz.

2.5 FLANGE CONNECTORS

A. Description: Add-on or roll-formed, factory fabricated, slide-on transverse flange connectors, gaskets, and components.

B. Material: Galvanized steel.

C. Gauge and Shape: Match connecting ductwork.

2.6 TURNING VANES

A. Manufactured Turning Vanes for Metal Ducts: Fabricate curved blades of galvanized sheet steel; support with bars perpendicular to blades set; set into vane runners suitable for duct mounting.

B. General Requirements: Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 4-3, "Vanes and Vane Runners," and Figure 4-4, "Vane Support in Elbows."

C. Vane Construction:

1. Single wall for ducts up to 24 inches wide and double wall for larger dimensions.

2.7 DUCT-MOUNTED ACCESS DOORS

A. Duct-Mounted Access Doors: Fabricate access panels in accordance with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible"; Figure 7-2 (7-2M), "Duct Access Doors and Panels," and Figure 7-3, "Access Doors - Round Duct."

1. Door:

a. Double wall, rectangular.

b. Galvanized sheet metal with insulation fill and thickness as indicated for duct pressure class.

c. 24-gauge thick galvanized steel door panel.
d. Vision panel.
e. Hinges and Latches: 1-by-1-inchbutt or piano hinge and cam latches.
f. Fabricate doors airtight and suitable for duct pressure class.

2. Frame: Galvanized sheet steel, with bend-over tabs and foam gaskets.
   a. 24-gauge-thick galvanized steel frame.
3. Number of Hinges and Locks:
   a. Access Doors Less Than 12 Inches Square: No hinges and two sash locks.
   b. Access Doors up to 18 Inches Square: Two hinges and two sash locks.
   c. Access Doors up to 24 by 48 Inches: Continuous hinge and two compression latches.

2.8 FLEXIBLE CONNECTORS

A. Fire-Performance Characteristics: Adhesives, sealants, fabric materials, and accessory materials shall have flame-spread index not exceeding 25 and smoke-developed index not exceeding 50 when tested in accordance with ASTM E84.

B. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.

C. Materials: Flame-retardant or noncombustible fabrics.

D. Coatings and Adhesives: Comply with UL 181, Class 1.

E. Metal-Edged Connectors: Factory fabricated with a fabric strip 3-1/2 inches wide attached to two strips of 2-3/4-inch wide, 0.028-inch thick, galvanized sheet steel. Provide metal compatible with connected ducts.

F. Indoor System, Flexible Connector Fabric: Glass fabric double coated with neoprene.
   1. Minimum Weight: 26 oz./sq. yd.
   2. Tensile Strength: 480 lbf/inch in the warp and 360 lbf/inch in the filling.
   3. Service Temperature: Minus 40 to plus 200 deg F.

2.9 DUCT ACCESSORY HARDWARE

A. Instrument Test Holes: Cast iron or cast aluminum to suit duct material, including screw cap and gasket. Size to allow insertion of pitot tube and other testing instruments and of length to suit duct-insulation thickness.

B. Adhesives: High strength, quick setting, neoprene based, waterproof, and resistant to gasoline and grease.

2.10 MATERIALS

A. Galvanized Sheet Steel: Comply with ASTM A653/A653M.
   1. Galvanized Coating Designation: G90.
   2. Exposed-Surface Finish: Mill phosphatized.

B. Reinforcement Shapes and Plates: Galvanized-steel reinforcement where installed on galvanized sheet metal ducts; compatible materials for aluminum and stainless steel ducts.

C. Tie Rods: Galvanized steel, 1/4-inchminimum diameter for lengths 36 inches or less; 3/8-inch minimum diameter for lengths longer than 36 inches.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install duct accessories in accordance with applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116 for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install duct accessories of materials suited to duct materials; use galvanized-steel accessories in galvanized-steel and fibrous-glass ducts, stainless steel accessories in stainless steel ducts, and aluminum accessories in aluminum ducts.

C. Where multiple damper sections are necessary to achieve required dimensions, provide reinforcement to fully support damper assembly when fully closed at full system design static pressure.

D. Install volume dampers at points on supply, return, and exhaust systems where branches extend from larger ducts. Where dampers are installed in ducts having duct liner, install dampers with hat channels of same depth as liner, and terminate liner with nosing at hat channel.
   1. Install steel volume dampers in steel ducts.

E. Set dampers to fully open position before testing, adjusting, and balancing.

F. Install test holes at fan inlets and outlets and elsewhere as indicated and as needed for testing and balancing.

G. Install duct access doors on sides of ducts to allow for inspecting, adjusting, and maintaining accessories and equipment at the following locations:
   1. On both sides of duct coils.
   2. At drain pans and seals.
   3. Upstream from turning vanes.
   4. Control devices requiring inspection.

H. Install access doors with swing against duct static pressure.

I. Access Door Sizes:
   1. One-Hand or Inspection Access: 8 by 5 inches.
   2. Two-Hand Access: 12 by 6 inches.
   3. Head and Hand Access: 18 by 10 inches.
   4. Head and Shoulders Access: 21 by 14 inches.

J. Install flexible connectors to connect ducts to equipment.

K. For fans developing static pressures of 5 inches wg and more, cover flexible connectors with loaded vinyl sheet held in place with metal straps.

L. Install duct test holes where required for testing and balancing purposes.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Operate dampers to verify full range of movement.
   2. Inspect locations of access doors and verify that size and location of access doors are adequate to perform required operation.
   3. Inspect turning vanes for proper and secure installation and verify that vanes do not move or rattle.

END OF SECTION 23 33 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 33 46 - FLEXIBLE DUCTS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Insulated flexible ducts.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Comply with NFPA 90A, "Installation of Air Conditioning and Ventilating Systems," and with NFPA 90B, "Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air Conditioning Systems."

B. Comply with SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for acceptable materials, material thicknesses, and duct construction methods unless otherwise indicated. Sheet metal materials shall be free of pitting, seam marks, roller marks, stains, discolorations, and other imperfections.

C. Comply with the Air Diffusion Council's "ADC Flexible Air Duct Test Code FD 72-R1."

D. Comply with ASTM E96/E96M, "Test Methods for Water Vapor Transmission of Materials."

2.2 INSULATED FLEXIBLE DUCTS

A. Insulated, Flexible Duct for connection of terminal units to medium pressure supply air ducts: UL 181, Class 1, two-ply vinyl film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 10-inch wg positive and 1.0-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 10 to plus 160 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: R6.

B. Insulated, Flexible Duct for connection of diffusers to low pressure supply air ducts downstream of VAV terminal units: UL 181, Class 1, black polymer film supported by helically wound, spring-steel wire; fibrous-glass insulation; polyethylene or aluminized vapor-barrier film.

1. Pressure Rating: 4-inch wg positive and 0.5-inch wg negative.
2. Maximum Air Velocity: 4000 fpm.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 20 to plus 175 deg F.
4. Insulation R-Value: R6.

2.3 FLEXIBLE DUCT CONNECTORS

A. Clamps: Stainless-steel band with cadmium-plated hex screw to tighten band with a worm-gear action in sizes 3 through 18 inches, to suit duct size.

B. Non-Clamp Connectors: Adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install flexible ducts according to applicable details in SMACNA's "HVAC Duct Construction Standards - Metal and Flexible" for metal ducts and in NAIMA AH116, "Fibrous Glass Duct Construction Standards," for fibrous-glass ducts.

B. Install in indoor applications only. Flexible ductwork should not be exposed to UV lighting.

C. Connect terminal units to supply ducts directly or with maximum 12-inch lengths of flexible duct. Do not use flexible ducts to change directions.

D. Connect diffusers to ducts with maximum 72 inch lengths of flexible duct clamped or strapped in place.

E. Connect flexible ducts to metal ducts with draw bands and clamps or adhesive plus sheet metal screws.

F. Installation:

1. Install ducts fully extended.
2. Do not bend ducts across sharp corners.
3. Bends of flexible ducting shall not exceed a minimum of one duct diameter.
4. Avoid contact with metal fixtures, water lines, pipes, or conduits.
5. Install flexible ducts in a direct line, without sags, twists, or turns.

G. Supporting Flexible Ducts:

1. Suspend flexible ducts with bands 1-1/2 inches wide or wider and spaced a maximum of 48 inches apart. Maximum centerline sag between supports shall not exceed 1/2 inch per 12 inches.
2. Install extra supports at bends placed approximately one duct diameter from center line of the bend.
3. Ducts may rest on ceiling joists or truss supports. Spacing between supports shall not exceed the maximum spacing per manufacturer's written installation instructions.

END OF SECTION 23 33 46

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 34 23 - HVAC POWER VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Centrifugal ventilators - roof downblast.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.
   1. Construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for fans.
   2. Rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
   3. Certified fan performance curves with system operating conditions indicated.
   4. Certified fan sound-power ratings.
   5. Motor ratings and electrical characteristics, plus motor and electrical accessories.
   6. Material thickness and finishes, including color charts.
   7. Dampers, including housings, linkages, and operators.
   8. Prefabricated roof curbs.
   9. Fan speed controllers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans, reflected ceiling plans, and other details, or BIM model, drawn to scale, showing the items described in this Section and coordinated with all building trades.

B. Product Certificates: Submit certificates that specified equipment will withstand required wind forces, from manufacturer.
   1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculations.
   2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of wind force and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
   3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For HVAC power ventilators to include in normal and emergency operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials, from the same product run, that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NFPA Compliance: Comply with NFPA 90A for design, fabrication, and installation of unit components.

C. ASHRAE 62.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment" and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."

D. ASHRAE/IES 90.1 Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1, Section 6 - "Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning."

2.2 CENTRIFUGAL VENTILATORS - ROOF DOWNBLAST

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Greenheck Fan Corporation.
   2. Loren Cook Company.
   3. PennBarry.
   4. Aerovent; a division of Twin City Fan Companies, Ltd.
   5. Carnes Company.

B. Housing: Downblast; removable spun-aluminum dome top and outlet baffle; square, one-piece aluminum base with venturi inlet cone.

C. Fan Wheels: Aluminum hub and wheel with backward-inclined blades.

D. Accessories:
   1. Variable-Frequency Motor Controller: Variable Frequency Drive to reduce speed from 100 to less than 50 percent.
   2. Disconnect Switch: Nonfusible type, with thermal-overload protection mounted inside fan housing, factory wired through an internal aluminum conduit.
   3. Bird Screens: Removable, 1/2-inch mesh, aluminum or brass wire.
   4. Volume Control Damper: 24 V AC operated with quadrant lock, located in relief air ductwork. See plans.

E. Prefabricated Roof Curbs: Galvanized steel; mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch- thick, rigid, fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to suit roof opening and fan base.
   1. Configuration: Built-in cant and mounting flange.
   2. Overall Height: Minimum height to maintain 10” clear above roof surface.
   3. Pitch Mounting: Manufacture curb for roof slope.
   4. Metal Liner: Galvanized steel.

2.3 MOTORS

A. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, and efficiency requirements for motors specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
   1. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. AMCA Certification for Fan Sound Performance Rating: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 311.

B. AMCA Certification for Fan Aerodynamic Performance Ratings: Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.

C. AMCA Certification for Fan Energy Index (FEI): Test, rate, and label in accordance with AMCA 211.

D. UL Standards: Power ventilators shall comply with UL 705. Power ventilators for use for restaurant kitchen exhaust shall also comply with UL 762.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install power ventilators level and plumb.

B. Equipment Mounting:
1. Secure roof-mounted fans to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. See Section 077200 "Roof Accessories" for installation of roof curbs.

C. Install units with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Label units according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

3.2 DUCTWORK CONNECTIONS

A. Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.3 ELECTRICAL CONNECTIONS

A. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

B. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

C. Install electrical devices furnished by manufacturer, but not factory mounted, according to NFPA 70 and NECA 1.
   1. Nameplate shall be laminated acrylic or melamine plastic signs with a black background and engraved white letters at least 1/2 inch high.

3.4 CONTROL CONNECTIONS

A. Install control and electrical power wiring to field-mounted control devices.

B. Connect control wiring according to Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE:

A. Perform startup service.
   1. Complete installation and startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.
   2. Verify that shipping, blocking, and bracing are removed.
   3. Verify that unit is secure on mountings and supporting devices and that connections to ducts and electrical components are complete. Verify that proper thermal-overload protection is installed in motors, starters, and disconnect switches.
   4. Verify that cleaning and adjusting are complete.
   5. For direct-drive fans, verify proper motor rotation direction and verify fan wheel free rotation and smooth bearing operation.
   6. Verify lubrication for bearings and other moving parts.
   7. Disable automatic temperature-control operators, energize motor and confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation, adjust fan to indicated rpm, and measure and record motor voltage and amperage.
   8. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

B. Adjust belt tension.

C. Lubricate bearings.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 230593 "Testing, Adjusting, and Balancing for HVAC" and section 230900 "HVAC Instrumentation and Controls".

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing and after completing startup service, clean fans internally to remove foreign material and construction dirt and dust.

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Fan Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.
   2. Test and adjust controls and safeties.
   3. Fans and components will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.
   4. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain centrifugal fans.

END OF SECTION 23 34 23

SECTION 23 37 13 - DIFFUSERS, REGISTERS, AND GRILLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Rectangular and square ceiling diffusers.
   2. Linear slot diffusers
   3. Adjustable blade face registers and grilles.
   4. Fixed face registers and grilles.

B. Related Sections:
   1. Division 23 Section "Duct Accessories" for fire and smoke dampers and volume-control dampers not integral to diffusers, registers, and grilles.

1.2 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated, include the following:
   1. Data Sheet: Indicate materials of construction, finish, and mounting details; and performance data including throw and drop, static-pressure drop, and noise ratings.
   2. Diffuser, Register, and Grille Schedule: Indicate drawing designation, room location, quantity, model number, size, and accessories furnished.

B. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 DIFFUSERS

A. Rectangular and Square Ceiling Diffusers:
   1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
      a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
      c. Carnes.

d. Hart & Cooley Inc.
e. Krueger.
f. METALAIRE, Inc.
g. Nailor Industries Inc.
h. Price Industries.
i. Titus.
j. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material: Aluminum
4. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect
5. Face Style: Plauque

B. Linear Slot Diffusers

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. METALAIRE, Inc.
   e. Nailor Industries Inc.
   f. Price Industries.
   g. Titus.
   h. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Devices shall be specifically designed for variable-air-volume flows.
3. Material - Shell: Aluminum
4. Pattern Controller and Tees: Aluminum
5. Finish – Face, Shell and Pattern Controller: Baked enamel, black
6. Finish – Tees: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect
7. Slot Width: See Plans
8. Number of slots: One (1)
9. Length: See Plans

2.2 REGISTERS AND GRILLES

A. Adjustable Blade Face Register/Grille:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
   e. Hart & Cooley Inc.

f. Krueger.
g. METALAIRE, Inc.
h. Nailor Industries Inc.
i. Price Industries.
j. Titus.
k. Tuttle & Bailey.

2. Material: Aluminum
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced ¾ inch apart
5. Core Construction: Integral
6. Rear Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced ¾ inch apart
7. Frame: 1 inch wide
8. Mounting Frame: 1 inch wide
9. Mounting Style: See plans
10. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade

B. Fixed Face Register/Grille

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   a. A-J Manufacturing Co., Inc.
   b. Anemostat Products; a Mestek company.
   c. Carnes.
   d. Dayus Register & Grille Inc.
   e. Hart & Cooley Inc.
   f. Krueger.
   g. METALAIRE, Inc.
   h. Nailor Industries Inc.
   i. Price Industries.
   j. Titus.
   k. Tuttle & Bailey.
2. Material: Aluminum
3. Finish: Baked enamel, color selected by Architect
4. Face Blade Arrangement: Horizontal spaced ¾ inch apart
5. Face Arrangement: Perforated Core
6. Core Construction: Integral
7. Frame: 1 inch wide
8. Mounting Frame: 1 inch wide
9. Mounting Style: See plans
10. Damper Type: Adjustable opposed blade

2.3 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Verification of Performance: Rate diffusers, registers, and grilles according to ASHRAE 70, "Method of Testing for Rating the Performance of Air Outlets and Inlets."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles level and plumb.

B. Ceiling-Mounted Outlets and Inlets: Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts, fittings, and accessories. Air outlet and inlet locations have been indicated to achieve design requirements for air volume, noise criteria, airflow pattern, throw, and pressure drop. Make final locations where indicated, as much as practical. For units installed in lay-in ceiling panels, locate units in the center of panel. Where architectural features or other items conflict with installation, notify Architect for a determination of final location.

C. Install diffusers, registers, and grilles with airtight connections to ducts and to allow service and maintenance of dampers, air extractors, and fire dampers.

3.2 ADJUSTING

A. After installation, adjust diffusers, registers, and grilles to air patterns indicated, or as directed, before starting air balancing.

END OF SECTION 23 37 13

SECTION 23 37 23 - HVAC GRAVITY VENTILATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Hooded ventilators.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product

B. Shop Drawings: For gravity ventilators.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, ventilator attachments to curbs, and curb attachments to roof structure.
2. Show weep paths, gaskets, flashing, sealant, and other means of preventing water intrusion.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.2/D1.2M, "Structural Welding Code - Aluminum."
2. AWS D1.3/D1.3M, "Structural Welding Code - Sheet Steel."

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 HOODED VENTILATORS

A. Description: Hooded rectangular penthouse for relief and intake air.

B. Subject to compliance with these specifications and performance requirements indicated on the schedules in the plans, provide products from one of the following manufacturers:

1. Greenheck
2. Loren Cook
3. ACME Fan Corp
4. Penn Ventilator Corp..

C. Construction:
1. Material, Aluminum: Thickness required to comply with structural performance requirements, but not less than 0.063-inch-thick base and 0.050-inch-thick hood; suitably reinforced.
2. Insulation: Mineral-fiber insulation and vapor barrier.
3. Bird Screening: Aluminum, 1/2-inch-square mesh or flattened, expanded aluminum, 3/4-inch diamond mesh wire.

D. Dampers:

1. Location: Associated ductwork
2. Control: Motorized or backdraft. See plans.

E. Roof Curbs: Galvanized-steel sheet; with mitered and welded corners; 1-1/2-inch-thick, rigid fiberglass insulation adhered to inside walls; and 1-1/2-inch wood nailer. Size as required to fit roof opening and ventilator base.

1. Configuration: Built in can't and mounting flange.
2. Overall Height: Minimum height to maintain 10" clear above roof surface.

2.2 MATERIALS

A. Aluminum Extrusions: ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T5 or T-52.

B. Aluminum Sheet: ASTM B209, Alloy 3003 or 5005, with temper as required for forming or as otherwise recommended by metal producer for required finish.

C. Fasteners: Same basic metal and alloy as fastened metal or 300 Series stainless steel unless otherwise indicated. Do not use metals that are incompatible with joined materials.

1. Use types and sizes to suit unit installation conditions.
2. Use hex-head or Phillips pan head screws for exposed fasteners unless otherwise indicated.
3. Follow manufacturers installation guidelines for high wind application.

D. Post-Installed Fasteners for Concrete and Masonry: Torque-controlled expansion anchors made from stainless-steel components, with capability to sustain without failure a load equal to 4 times the loads imposed for concrete, or 6 times the load imposed for masonry, as determined by testing according to ASTM E488/E488M, conducted by a qualified independent testing agency.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION, GENERAL

A. Install gravity ventilators level, plumb, and at indicated alignment with adjacent work.

B. Secure gravity ventilators to roof curbs with zinc-plated hardware. Use concealed anchorages where possible.

C. Install gravity ventilators with clearances for service and maintenance.

D. Install perimeter reveals and openings of uniform width for sealants and joint fillers, as indicated.

E. Install concealed gaskets, flashings, joint fillers, and insulation as installation progresses.

F. Label gravity ventilators according to requirements specified in Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment."

G. Protect galvanized and nonferrous-metal surfaces from corrosion or galvanic action by applying a heavy coating of bituminous paint on surfaces that will be in contact with concrete, masonry, or dissimilar metals.

H. Repair finishes damaged by cutting, welding, soldering, and grinding. Restore finishes, so no evidence remains of corrective work. Return items that cannot be refinished in the field to the factory, make required alterations, and refinish entire unit or provide new units.

3.2 DUCT CONNECTIONS

A. Duct installation and connection requirements are specified in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts". Drawings indicate general arrangement of ducts and duct accessories.

3.3 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust damper linkages for proper damper operation.

END OF SECTION 23 37 23

SECTION 23 41 00 – PARTICULATE AIR FILTRATION

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:
   1. Pleated panel filters.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include dimensions; operating characteristics; required clearances and access; rated flow capacity, including initial and final pressure drop at rated airflow; efficiency and test method; fire classification; furnished specialties; and accessories for each model indicated.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of filter and rack to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Provide one complete set of filters for each filter bank. If system includes prefilters, provide only prefilters.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver and store products in a clean, dry place.

B. Comply with manufacturer's written rigging and installation instructions for unloading and moving to final installed location.

C. Handle products carefully to prevent damage, breaking, denting, and scoring. Do not install damaged products.

D. Protect products from weather, dirt, dust, water, construction debris, and physical damage.
   1. Retain factory-applied coverings on equipment to protect finishes during construction and remove just prior to operating unit.
   2. Cover unit openings before installation to prevent dirt and dust from entering inside of units. If required to remover coverings during unit installation, reapply coverings over openings after unit installation and remove just prior to operating unit.
   3. Replace installed products damaged during construction.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. ASHRAE Compliance:
   1. Comply with applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality"; Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment"; and Section 7 - "Construction and Startup."
   2. Comply with ASHRAE 52.2 for MERV for methods of testing and rating air-filter units.

B. Comply with NFPA 90A and NFPA 90B.

2.2 PLEATED PANEL FILTERS

A. Description: Factory-fabricated, self-supported, extended-surface, pleated, panel-type, disposable air filters with holding frames.
   1. Subject to compliance with these specifications, provide filters from one of the following manufacturers:
      a. American Air Filter
      b. Camfil / Farr
      c. Tri-Dim
      d. APC filters

B. Source Limitations: Obtain from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Capacities and Characteristics:
   1. Face Size: See Drawings
   2. Depth: 2 inches nominal.
   3. Initial Resistance: 0.25-inch wg at 500 fpm.

4. Minimum Efficiency Reporting Value: MERV 13, with "Composite Average Particle Size Efficiency, Percent in Size Range, Micrometers" according to ASHRAE 52.2.

D. Media: Cotton and synthetic fibers coated with nonflammable adhesive.
1. Separators shall be bonded to the media to maintain pleat configuration.
2. Welded-wire grid shall be on downstream side to maintain pleat.
3. Media shall be bonded to frame to prevent air bypass.
4. Support members on upstream and downstream sides to maintain pleat spacing.

E. Filter-Media Frame: Cardboard frame with metal grid on outlet and inlet side sealed or bonded to the media.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine ducts, air-handling units, and conditions for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF FILTERS

A. Position each filter unit with clearance for normal service and maintenance. Anchor filter holding frames to substrate.

B. Install filters in position to prevent passage of unfiltered air.

C. Do not operate fan system until filters (temporary or permanent) are in place. Replace temporary filters used during construction and testing with new, clean filters.

D. Coordinate filter installations with duct and air-handling-unit installations.

3.3 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation and testing, adjusting, and balancing of air-handling and air-distribution systems, clean filter housings and install new filter media.

END OF SECTION 23 41 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 23 81 26 - SPLIT-SYSTEM AIR-CONDITIONERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes split-system air-conditioning and heat-pump units consisting of separate evaporator-fan and compressor-condenser components.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Include performance data in terms of capacities, outlet velocities, static pressures, sound power characteristics, motor requirements, and electrical characteristics.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Warranty: Sample of special warranty.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For split-system air-conditioning units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.
   1. Filters: One set for each air-handling unit.

2. Gaskets: One set for each access door.
3. Fan Belts: One set for each air-handling unit fan.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. ASHRAE Compliance:
1. Fabricate and label refrigeration system to comply with ASHRAE 15, "Safety Standard for Refrigeration Systems."
2. ASHRAE Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE 62.1, Section 4 - "Outdoor Air Quality," Section 5 - "Systems and Equipment," Section 6 - " Procedures," and Section 7 - "Construction and System Start-up."

C. ASHRAE/IES Compliance: Applicable requirements in ASHRAE/IES 90.1.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations with actual equipment provided.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of split-system air-conditioning units that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period:
a. For Compressor: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.
b. For Parts: Five year from date of Substantial Completion.
c. For Labor: One year from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Mitsubishi Electric & Electronics USA, Inc.
   2. Trane.
   3. Carrier Global Corporation.
   4. Samsung HVAC.
   5. YORK; brand of Johnson Controls International plc, Building Solutions North America.
   6. Daikin/McQuay
   7. LG

2.2 INDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Wall-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
   1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends in color selected by Architect, and discharge drain pans with drain connection.
   2. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
   3. Electric Coil: Helical, nickel-chrome, resistance-wire heating elements; with refractory ceramic support bushings, automatic-reset thermal cutout, built-in magnetic contactors, manual-reset thermal cutout, airflow proving device, and one-time fuses in terminal box for overcurrent protection.
   4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
   5. Fan Motors:
      a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230513 "Common Motor Requirements for HVAC Equipment."
      b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
      c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
      d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
      e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
      f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.

6. Airstream Surfaces: Surfaces in contact with the airstream shall comply with requirements in ASHRAE 62.1.
7. Condensate Drain Pans:
    a. Fabricated with up to two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
        1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
        2) Depth: A minimum of 1 inch deep.
    b. Single-wall, stainless-steel sheet.
    c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
    d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.

2.3 INDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

A. Floor-Mounted, Evaporator-Fan Components:
1. Cabinet: Enameled steel with removable panels on front and ends for access to fans, compressors, coils, filters, etc.
    a. Discharge: Ducted supply and return.
    b. Insulation: Faced, glass-fiber duct liner.
2. Condensate Drain Pans:
    a. Fabricated with up to two percent slope in at least two planes to collect condensate from cooling coils (including coil piping connections, coil headers, and return bends) and humidifiers, and to direct water toward drain connection.
        1) Length: Extend drain pan downstream from leaving face to comply with ASHRAE 62.1.
        2) Depth: A minimum of 2 inches deep.
    b. Double-wall, stainless-steel sheet with space between walls filled with foam insulation and moisture-tight seal.
    c. Drain Connection: Located at lowest point of pan and sized to prevent overflow. Terminate with threaded nipple on one end of pan.
        1) Minimum Connection Size provided by manufacturer shall not be down sized to place of discharge.

d. Pan-Top Surface Coating: Asphaltic waterproofing compound.
e. Units with stacked coils shall have an intermediate drain pan to collect condensate from top coil.

3. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and thermal-expansion valve. Comply with ARI 206/110.
4. Fan: Direct drive, centrifugal.
5. Fan Motors:
   a. Comply with NEMA designation, temperature rating, service factor, enclosure type, and efficiency requirements specified in Section 230500 "Common Work Results for HVAC."
   b. Multitapped, multispeed with internal thermal protection and permanent lubrication.
   c. Enclosure Type: Totally enclosed, fan cooled.
   d. NEMA Premium (TM) efficient motors as defined in NEMA MG 1.
   e. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Comply with requirements for electrical devices and connections specified in electrical Sections.
   f. Mount unit-mounted disconnect switches on exterior of unit.
6. Air Filtration Section:
   a. General Requirements for Air Filtration Section:
      1) Comply with NFPA 90A.
      2) Minimum MERV according to ASHRAE 52.2.
      3) Filter-Holding Frames: Arranged for flat or angular orientation, with access doors on both sides of unit. Filters shall be removable from one side or lifted out from access plenum.
      4) Minimum 2" MERV 13 filters.

B. Variable-Frequency Controllers:
1. Description: NEMA ICS 2, IGBT, PWM, VFC; listed and labeled as a complete unit and arranged to provide variable speed of an NEMA MG 1, Design B, three-phase induction motor by adjusting output voltage and frequency.
2. Output Rating: Three-phase; 6 to 60 Hz, with voltage proportional to frequency throughout voltage range.
3. Unit Operating Requirements:
   a. Input-frequency tolerance of 06/11 Hz, plus or minus 6 percent.
   b. Minimum Efficiency: 96 percent at 60 Hz, full load.
   c. Minimum Displacement Primary-Side Power Factor: 96 percent.
   d. Overload Capability: 1.1 times the base load current for 60 seconds; 2.0 times the base load current for 3 seconds.

e. Starting Torque: 100 percent of rated torque or as indicated.
f. Speed Regulation: Plus or minus 1 percent.

4. Isolated control interface to allow controller to follow control signal over an 11:1 speed range.
5. Internal Adjustability Capabilities:
   a. Minimum Speed: 5 to 25 percent of maximum rpm.
   b. Maximum Speed: 80 to 100 percent of maximum rpm.
   c. Acceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
   d. Deceleration: 2 seconds to a minimum of 22 seconds.
   e. Current Limit: 50 percent to a minimum of 110 percent of maximum rating.
6. Self-Protection and Reliability Features:
   a. Input transient protection by means of surge protection devices (SPDs).
   b. Undervoltage and overvoltage trips; inverter overtemperature, overload, and overcurrent trips.
   c. Adjustable motor overload relays capable of NEMA ICS 2, Class 10, Class 20 or Class 30 performance.
   d. Notch filter to prevent operation of the controller-motor-load combination at a natural frequency of the combination.
   e. Instantaneous line-to-line and line-to-ground overcurrent trips.
   f. Loss-of-phase protection.
   g. Reverse-phase protection.
   h. Short-circuit protection.
   i. Motor overtemperature fault.
7. Automatic Reset/Restart: Attempts three restarts after controller fault or on return of power after an interruption and before shutting down for manual reset or fault correction. Bidirectional autospeed search shall be capable of starting into rotating loads, spinning in either direction and returning motor to set speed in proper direction, without damage to controller, motor, or load.
8. Power-Interruption Protection: Prevents motor from re-energizing after a power interruption until motor has stopped.
9. Torque Boost: Automatically varies starting and continuous torque to at least 1.5 times the minimum torque to ensure high-starting torque and increased torque at slow speeds.
10. Motor Temperature Compensation at Slow Speeds: Adjustable current fall-back, based on output frequency for temperature protection of self-cooled, fan-ventilated motors at slow speeds.
11. Door-mounted, digital status lights shall indicate the following minimum conditions:

a. Power on.
b. Run.
c. Overvoltage.
d. Line fault.
e. Overcurrent.
f. External fault.

12. Panel-Mounted Operator Station: Start-stop and auto-manual selector switches with manual-speed-control potentiometer and elapsed-time meter.
13. Meters or digital readout devices and selector switch, mounted flush in controller door and connected, to indicate the following minimum controller parameters:
    a. Output frequency (Hertz).
    b. Motor speed (rpm).
    c. Motor status (running, stop, fault).
    d. Motor current (amperes).
    e. Motor torque (percent).
    f. Fault or alarming status (code).
    g. Proportional-integral-derivative feedback signal (percent).
    h. DC-link voltage (volts dc).
    i. Set-point frequency (Hertz).
    j. Motor output voltage (volts).
14. Control Signal Interface:
    a. Electric Input Signal Interface: A minimum of two analog inputs (0 to 10 V or 0/4-20 mA) and six programmable digital inputs.
    b. Remote signal inputs capable of accepting any of the following speed-setting input signals from the control system:
        1) 0 to 10-V dc.
        2) 0-20 or 4-20 mA.
        3) Potentiometer using up/down digital inputs.
        4) Fixed frequencies using digital inputs.
        5) RS485.
        6) Keypad display for local hand operation.
    c. Output signal interface with a minimum of one analog output signal (0/4-20 mA), which can be programmed to any of the following:
        1) Output frequency (Hertz).
        2) Output current (load).
        3) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
        4) Motor torque (percent).
        5) Motor speed (rpm).

6) Set-point frequency (Hertz).

d. Remote indication interface with a minimum of two dry circuit relay outputs (120-V ac, 1 A) for remote indication of the following:
   1) Motor running.
   2) Set-point speed reached.
   3) Fault and warning indication (overtemperature or overcurrent).
   4) High- or low-speed limits reached.

15. Accessories:
   a. Devices shall be factory installed in controller enclosure unless otherwise indicated.
   b. Push-Button Stations, Pilot Lights, and Selector Switches: NEMA ICS 2, heavy-duty type.
   c. Standard Displays:
      1) Output frequency (Hertz).
      2) Set-point frequency (Hertz).
      3) Motor current (amperes).
      4) DC-link voltage (volts dc).
      5) Motor torque (percent).
      6) Motor speed (rpm).
      7) Motor output voltage (volts).

2.4 OUTDOOR UNITS (5 TONS OR LESS)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
   1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
   2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
      a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
      b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
      c. Refrigerant: Refer to manufacturer data sheet.
      d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
   3. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.

4. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
5. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
6. Mounting Base: Polyethylene.

2.5 OUTDOOR UNITS (6 TONS OR MORE)

A. Air-Cooled, Compressor-Condenser Components:
1. Casing: Steel, finished with baked enamel in color selected by Architect, with removable panels for access to controls, weep holes for water drainage, and mounting holes in base. Provide brass service valves, fittings, and gage ports on exterior of casing.
2. Compressor: Hermetically sealed with crankcase heater and mounted on vibration isolation device. Compressor motor shall have thermal- and current-sensitive overload devices, start capacitor, relay, and contactor.
a. Compressor Type: Scroll.
b. Two-speed compressor motor with manual-reset high-pressure switch and automatic-reset low-pressure switch.
c. LEED 2009 EA Prerequisite 3 and LEED v4 EA Prerequisite: Fundamental Refrigerant Management require zero use of CFC-based refrigerants. LEED 2009 Credit EA 4 awards two points and LEED v4 EA Credit: Enhanced Refrigerant Management awards one point for using refrigerants that minimize or eliminate ozone depletion. R-407C and R-410A are HCFC-free refrigerants.
d. Refrigerant Coil: Copper tube, with mechanically bonded aluminum fins and liquid subcooler. Comply with ARI 206/110.
3. Retain first subparagraph below for heat-pump units.
4. Heat-Pump Components: Reversing valve and low-temperature-air cutoff thermostat.
5. Fan: Aluminum-propeller type, directly connected to motor.
6. Motor: Permanently lubricated, with integral thermal-overload protection.
7. Low Ambient Kit: Permits operation down to 45 deg F.
8. Mounting Base: Polyethylene

2.6 ACCESSORIES

A. Thermostat: Low voltage with subbase to control compressor and evaporator fan.

B. Automatic-reset timer to prevent rapid cycling of compressor.

C. Refrigerant Line Kits: Soft-annealed copper suction and liquid lines factory cleaned, dried, pressurized, and sealed; factory-insulated suction line with flared fittings at both ends.

D. Drain Hose: For condensate.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Install units level and plumb.

B. Install evaporator-fan components using manufacturer's standard mounting devices securely fastened to building structure.

C. Install and connect precharged refrigerant tubing to component's quick-connect fittings. Install tubing to allow access to unit.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping, fittings, and specialties.

B. Where piping is installed adjacent to unit, allow space for service and maintenance of unit.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.
   1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:
   1. Leak Test: After installation, charge system and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.
   2. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation.

3. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.4 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain units.

END OF SECTION 23 81 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRICAL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Electrical equipment coordination and installation.
B. Common electrical installation requirements.

1.3 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate arrangement, mounting, and support of electrical equipment:

1. To allow maximum possible headroom unless specific mounting heights that reduce headroom are indicated.
2. To provide for ease of disconnecting the equipment with minimum interference to other installations.
3. To allow right of way for piping and conduit installed at required slope.
4. Connecting raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways will be clear of obstructions and of the working and access space of other equipment.

B. Coordinate installation of required supporting devices and set sleeves in cast-in-place concrete, masonry walls, and other structural components as they are constructed.

C. Coordinate location of access panels and doors for electrical items that are behind finished surfaces or otherwise concealed. Access doors and panels are specified in Division 08 Section "Access Doors and Frames."

D. Coordinate with Duke Energy for utility connection requirements.

PART 2 - EXECUTION

2.1 COMMON REQUIREMENTS FOR ELECTRICAL INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, NFPA 70, IEEE C2 and North Carolina Building Code.

B. All electrical equipment, including switchboards, switchgear, transformers, drives and panelboards, shall be stored in such a fashion to avoid moisture accumulation. Storage conditions and measures shall conform to NEMA and manufacturers requirements for protection of equipment prior to installation and/or energization.

C. Measure indicated mounting heights to bottom of unit for suspended items and to center of unit for wall-mounting items.

D. All electrical work shall be supervised by a journeyman electrician minimum.

E. Phase rotation shall be verified at each 3-phase panel, safety switch, and receptacle upon installation.

F. Treat ends of cut galvanized strut and other cut edges of galvanized material with a zinc based protective coating.

G. Bond neutrals of transformers and other separately derived sources at the transformer or source. Do not bond the neutral at any panelboard, MCC, disconnect, or other non-source location.

H. Headroom Maintenance: If mounting heights or other location criteria are not indicated, arrange and install components and equipment to provide maximum possible headroom consistent with these requirements.

I. Equipment: Install to facilitate service, maintenance, and repair or replacement of components of both electrical equipment and other nearby installations. Connect in such a way as to facilitate future disconnecting with minimum interference with other items in the vicinity.

J. Right of Way: Give to piping systems installed at a required slope.

2.2 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies for electrical installations to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly. Firestopping materials and installation requirements are specified in Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

END OF SECTION 26 05 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 19 - LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Building wires and cables rated 600 V and less.
B. Connectors, splices, and terminations rated 600 V and less.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPDM: Ethylene-propylene-diene terpolymer rubber.

B. NBR: Acrylonitrile-butadiene rubber.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

C. Field quality-control test reports.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers listed but not limited to the following:

1. General Cable Corporation.
2. Southwire Company.

B. Copper Conductors: Comply with NEMA WC 70.

1. Solid for No. 10 AWG and smaller: Stranded for No. 8 AWG and larger.

C. Conductor Insulation: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Types THHN-THWN, XHHW and SO.

D. Multi-conductor Cable: Comply with NEMA WC 70 for Type SO with ground wire.

2.2 CONNECTORS AND SPLICES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers listed but not limited to the following:

1. Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
2. O-Z/Gedney; EGS Electrical Group LLC.
3. 3M; Electrical Products Division.

B. Description: Factory-fabricated connectors and splices of size, ampacity rating, material, type, and class for application and service indicated.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONDUCTOR MATERIAL APPLICATIONS

A. All conductors shall be copper. All conductors shall be stranded.

3.2 CONDUCTOR INSULATION AND MULTICONDUCTOR CABLE APPLICATIONS AND WIRING METHODS

A. Service Entrance: Type XHHW, single conductors in raceway.

B. Feeders: Type THHN/THWN dual rated, single conductors in raceway unless otherwise noted.

C. Branch Circuits: Type THHN /THWN dual rated, single conductors in raceway.

D. Cord Drops and Portable Appliance Connections: Type SO, hard service cord with stainless-steel, wire-mesh, and strain relief device at terminations to suit application.

E. Class 1 Control Circuits: Type THHN /THWN dual rated, in raceway.

F. Class 2 Control Circuits: Type THHN /THWN dual rated, in raceway.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Conceal cables in finished walls, ceilings, and floors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Use manufacturer-approved pulling compound or lubricant where necessary; compound used must not deteriorate conductor or insulation. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended maximum pulling tensions and sidewall pressure values.

C. Use pulling means, including fish tape, cable, rope, and basket-weave wire/cable grips, which will not damage cables or raceway.

D. Support cables according to Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."

E. Identify and color-code conductors and cables according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A and UL 486B.

B. Make splices and taps that are compatible with conductor material and that possess equivalent or better mechanical strength and insulation ratings than unspliced conductors.

C. Wiring at Outlets: Install conductor at each outlet, with at least 6 inches of slack.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Apply firestopping to electrical penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies to restore original fire-resistance rating of assembly according to Division 07 Section "Penetration Firestopping."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections and prepare test reports.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. After installing conductors and cables and before electrical circuitry has been energized, test service entrance and feeder conductors, for compliance with requirements.

2. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.

C. Test Reports: Prepare a written report to record the following:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Test results that do not comply with requirements and corrective action taken to achieve compliance with requirements.

D. Remove and replace malfunctioning conductors and connections then retest as specified above.

1. All testing results must be approved prior to energizing of circuits, especially all exterior service entry, exterior circuits, and feeders over 30 amps.

END OF SECTION 26 05 19

SECTION 26 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Methods and materials for grounding systems and equipment, plus the following special applications:

1. Underground distribution grounding.
2. Common ground bonding with lightning protection system.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Other Informational Submittals: Plans showing dimensioned as-built locations of grounding features specified in Part 3 "Field Quality Control" Article, including the following:

1. Test wells.
2. Ground rods.
3. Ground rings.
4. Grounding arrangements and connections for separately derived systems.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control test reports.

E. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include the following in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals:

1. Instructions for periodic testing and inspection of grounding features at test wells ground rings and grounding connections for separately derived systems based on NETA ATS.

a. Tests shall be to determine if ground resistance or impedance values remain within specified maximums, and instructions shall recommend corrective action if they do not.
b. Include recommended testing intervals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is a member company of the International Electrical Testing Association and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

C. Comply with UL 467 for grounding and bonding materials and equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUCTORS

A. Insulated Conductors: Copper wire or cable insulated for 600 V unless otherwise required by applicable Code or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable Lightning Protection: 28 kcmil, 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, 1/4 inch in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductors: As indicated, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.
7. Tinned Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors, terminated with copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches wide and 1/16 inch thick.

C. Grounding Bar: Rectangular bars of annealed copper, with insulators, refer to drawings for size.

D. CONNECTORS

1. Listed and labeled by a nationally recognized testing laboratory acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction for applications in which used, and for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected.

2. Bolted Connectors for Conductors and Pipes: Copper or copper alloy, bolted pressure-type, with at least two bolts.

   a. Pipe Connectors: Clamp type, sized for pipe.

3. Exothermic Welded Connectors: Heavy duty exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

E. GROUNDING ELECTRODES

1. Ground Rods: Copper-clad segmental; 10-foot sections 3/4 inch in diameter.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATIONS

A. Conductors: Install stranded conductors, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Grounding Conductors: Install bare tinned-copper conductor, No. 3/0 AWG minimum.
1. Bury at least 24 inches (600 mm) below grade.
2. Duct-Bank Grounding Conductor: Bury 12 inches (300 mm) above duct bank when indicated as part of duct-bank installation.

C. Grounding Bar: Install in electrical telephone and communication equipment rooms, in rooms housing service equipment, and elsewhere as indicated.

1. Install bus on insulated spacers 1 inch (25 mm), minimum, from wall 6 inches (150 mm) above finished floor, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Exothermic Welded connectors, except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Exothermic Welded connectors.

5. Ground rod segments: Exothermic Welded connectors.

3.2 GROUNDING UNDERGROUND DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with IEEE C2 grounding requirements.

B. Grounding Handholes: Install a driven ground rod in handhole, close to wall, and set rod depth so 4 inches (100 mm) will extend above gravel fill.

C. Pad-Mounted Transformers: Install two ground rods and ground ring around the pad. Ground pad-mounted equipment and non-current-carrying metal items associated with substations by connecting them to underground cable and grounding electrodes. Install tinned-copper conductor not less than No. 2 AWG for ground ring and for taps to equipment grounding terminals. Bury ground ring not less than 6 inches (150 mm) from the foundation.

3.3 EQUIPMENT GROUNDING

A. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with all feeders and branch circuits.

B. Install insulated equipment grounding conductors with the following items, in addition to those required by NFPA 70:

1. Feeders and branch circuits.
2. Lighting circuits.
3. Receptacle circuits.
4. Single-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
5. Three-phase motor and appliance branch circuits.
6. Flexible raceway runs.
7. Computer and Rack-Mounted Electronic Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor in branch-circuit runs from equipment-area power panels and power-distribution units.

C. Air-Duct Equipment Circuits: Install insulated equipment grounding conductor to duct-mounted electrical devices operating at 120 V and more, including air cleaners, heaters, dampers, humidifiers, and other duct electrical equipment. Bond conductor to each unit and to air duct and connected metallic piping.

D. Signal and Communication Equipment: For telephone, alarm, voice and data, and other communication equipment, provide No. 4 AWG minimum insulated grounding conductor in raceway from grounding electrode system to each service location, terminal cabinet, wiring closet, and central equipment location.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Grounding Conductors: Route along shortest and straightest paths possible, unless otherwise indicated or required by Code. Avoid obstructing access or placing conductors where they may be subjected to strain, impact, or damage.

B. Common Ground Bonding with Lightning Protection System: Comply with NFPA 780 and UL 96 when interconnecting with lightning protection system. Bond electrical power system ground directly to lightning protection system grounding conductor at closest point to electrical service grounding electrode. Use bonding conductor sized same as system grounding electrode conductor and install in conduit.

C. Ground Rods: Drive rods until tops are 24 inches (50 mm) below final grade or 2 inches below finished floor, unless otherwise indicated. Add segments to ground rods as required to meet ground resistance, 20-foot minimum rod length.

1. Interconnect ground rods with grounding electrode conductor below grade and as otherwise indicated. Make connections without exposing steel or damaging coating, if any.

D. Test Wells: Ground rod driven through drilled hole in bottom of handhole. Handholes are specified in Division 26 Section "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems," and shall be at least 12 inches deep, with cover.

1. Test Wells: Install at least one test well for each service, unless otherwise indicated. Install at the ground rod electrically closest to service entrance. Set top of test well flush with finished grade or floor.

E. Bonding Straps and Jumpers: Install in locations accessible for inspection and maintenance, except where routed through short lengths of conduit.
1. Bonding to Structure: Bond straps directly to basic structure, taking care not to penetrate any adjacent parts.
2. Bonding to Equipment Mounted on Vibration Isolation Hangers and Supports: Install so vibration is not transmitted to rigidly mounted equipment.
3. Use exothermic-welded connectors for outdoor locations, but if a disconnect-type connection is required, use a bolted clamp.

F. Grounding and Bonding for Piping:

3. Metal Water Service Pipe: Install insulated copper grounding conductors, in conduit, from building's main service equipment, or grounding bus, to main metal water service entrances to building. Connect grounding conductors to main metal water service pipes, using a bolted clamp connector or by bolting a lug-type connector to a pipe flange, using one of the lug bolts of the flange.

Where a dielectric main water fitting is installed, connect grounding conductor on street side of fitting. Bond metal grounding conductor conduit or sleeve to conductor at each end.

4. Water Meter Piping: Use braided-type bonding jumpers to electrically bypass water meters. Connect to pipe with a bolted connector.
5. Bond each aboveground portion of gas piping system downstream from equipment shutoff valve.

G. Bonding Interior Metal Ducts: Bond metal air ducts to equipment grounding conductors of associated fans, blowers, electric heaters, and air cleaners. Install tinned bonding jumper to bond across flexible duct connections to achieve continuity.

1. Ground Ring: Install a grounding conductor, electrically connected to each building structure ground rod and to each steel column, extending around the perimeter of building.

a. Install copper conductor not less than No. 3/0 AWG for ground ring and for taps to building steel.
b. Bury ground ring not less than 24 inches (600 mm) from building foundation.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing and inspecting agency to perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

B. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing grounding system but before permanent electrical circuits have been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
2. Test completed grounding system at each location where a maximum ground-resistance level is specified, at service disconnect enclosure grounding terminal, at ground test wells, and at individual ground rods. Make tests at ground rods before any conductors are connected.

a. Measure ground resistance not less than two full days after last trace of precipitation and without soil being moistened by any means other than natural drainage or seepage and without chemical treatment or other artificial means of reducing natural ground resistance.
b. Perform tests by fall-of-potential method according to IEEE 81.

3. Prepare dimensioned drawings locating each test well, ground rod and ground rod assembly, and other grounding electrodes. Identify each by letter in alphabetical order, and key to the record of tests and observations. Include the number of rods driven and their depth at each location and include observations

of weather and other phenomena that may affect test results. Describe measures taken to improve test results.

C. Report measured ground resistances that exceed the following values:

1. Power and Lighting Equipment: 5 ohms.
2. Pad-Mounted Equipment: 5 ohms.

D. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground exceeds specified values with 3 rod segments, notify Engineer promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

END OF SECTION 26 05 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems.
B. Construction requirements for concrete bases.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING:

A. Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. RMC: Rigid metal conduit.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Design supports for multiple raceways capable of supporting combined weight of supported systems and its contents.

B. Design equipment supports capable of supporting combined operating weight of supported equipment and connected systems and components.

C. Rated Strength: Adequate in tension, shear, and pullout force to resist maximum loads calculated or imposed for this Project, with a minimum structural safety factor of five times the applied force.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Steel slotted support systems.

B. Welding certificates.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified in Division 03.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Comply with MFMA-4, factory-fabricated components for field assembly.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers listed but not limited to the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit.
b. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
c. ERICO International Corporation.
d. GS Metals Corp.
e. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
f. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

2. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
3. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
4. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

B. Raceway and Cable Supports: As described in NECA 1 and NECA 101.

C. Conduit and Cable Support Devices: Steel hangers, clamps, and associated fittings, designed for types and sizes of raceway or cable to be supported.

D. Support for Conductors in Vertical Conduit: Factory-fabricated assembly consisting of threaded body and insulating wedging plug or plugs for non-armored electrical conductors or cables in riser conduits. Plugs shall have number, size, and shape of conductor gripping pieces as required to suit individual conductors or cables supported. Body shall be malleable iron.

E. Structural Steel for Fabricated Supports and Restraints: ASTM A 36/A 36M, steel plates, shapes, and bars; black and galvanized.

F. Mounting, Anchoring, and Attachment Components: Items for fastening electrical items or their supports to building surfaces include the following:

1. Mechanical-Expansion Anchors: Insert-wedge-type, zinc-coated steel, for use in hardened Portland cement concrete with tension, shear, and pullout capacities appropriate for supported loads and building materials in which used.

   a. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

      (i) Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
      (ii) Empire Tool and Manufacturing Co., Inc.
      (iii) Hilti Inc.
      (iv) ITW Ramset/Red Head; a division of Illinois Tool Works, Inc.
      (v) MKT Fastening, LLC.

2. Concrete Inserts: Steel or malleable-iron, slotted support system units similar to MSS Type 18; complying with MFMA-4 or MSS SP-58.
3. Clamps for Attachment to Steel Structural Elements: MSS SP-58, type suitable for attached structural element.
4. Through Bolts: Structural type, hex head, and high strength. Comply with ASTM A 325.
5. Toggle Bolts: All-steel springhead type.
6. Hanger Rods: Threaded steel.

2.2 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted, structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for application of hangers and supports for electrical equipment and systems except if requirements in this Section are stricter.

B. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMT, and RMC as scheduled in NECA 1, where it's Table 1 lists maximum spacings less than stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

C. Multiple Raceways: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways to the supports with two-bolt conduit clamps.

D. Spring-steel clamps designed for supporting single conduits without bolts may be used for 1-1/2-inch (38-mm) and smaller raceways serving branch circuits and communication systems above suspended ceilings and for fastening raceways to trapeze supports.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except as specified in this Article.

B. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, as permitted in NFPA 70.

C. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

D. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten electrical items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
2. To Masonry: Approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.

3. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27) complying with MSS SP-69.
4. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
5. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate by means that meet seismic-restraint strength and anchorage requirements.

E. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Division 05 Section "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.

B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor electrical materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 CONCRETE BASES

A. Construct concrete bases of dimensions indicated but not less than 4 inches larger in both directions than supported unit, and so anchors will be a minimum of 10 bolt diameters from edge of the base.

B. Use 3000-psi, 28-day compressive-strength concrete. Concrete materials, reinforcement, and placement requirements are specified in Division 03 Section "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Anchor equipment to concrete base.

1. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use supported equipment manufacturer's setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
2. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to supported equipment.
3. Install anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt manufacturer's written instructions.

3.5 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

   1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils.

B. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A 780.

END OF SECTION 26 05 29

SECTION 26 05 33 - RACEWAYS AND BOXES FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
5. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 7 ″Firestopping" for firestopping at conduit and box entrances.
2. Section 260543 "Underground Ducts and Raceways for Electrical Systems" for exterior duct banks, manholes, and underground utility construction.
3. Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, wireways, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, faceplate adapters, enclosures, cabinets, and handholes serving communications systems.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

B. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

B. Shop Drawings: For custom enclosures and cabinets. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Conduit routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of conduit groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for enclosures, cabinets, and conduit racks and their mounting provisions, including those for internal components from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Detailed description of conduit support devices and interconnections on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Metal Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:

a. Allied Tube & Conduit
b. Wheatland Tube Company
c. O/Z Gedney

2. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.
4. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.
5. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit.

    a. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
    b. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

6. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.
7. FMC: Comply with UL 1; zinc-coated steel.
8. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

B. Metal Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
    a. Allied Tube & Conduit
    b. Wheatland Tube Company
    c. O/Z Gedney
2. Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.
3. Listing and Labeling: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
4. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
5. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 1203 and NFPA 70.
6. Fittings for EMT:

    a. Material: Steel
    b. Type: Compression.

7. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL 651, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
8. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

C. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.2 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Nonmetallic Conduit:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
    a. AFC Cable Systems
    b. ARNCO Corporation
    c. Kraloy
2. Listing and Labeling: Nonmetallic conduit shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
3. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.
4. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

B. Nonmetallic Fittings:
1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
    a. AFC Cable Systems
    b. ARNCO Corporation
    c. Kraloy
2. Fittings, General: Listed and labeled for type of conduit, location, and use.
3. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

    a. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

4. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by conduit manufacturer.

2.3 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide product from the following:
    a. Cooper B-Line Inc.
    b. Hoffman
    c. Mono-Systems Inc.

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.4 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
   a. Hoffman
   b. FSR Inc.
   c. Cooper Crouse-Hinds

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures, and Cabinets: Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy aluminum, Type FD, with gasketed cover.

E. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

F. Metal Floor Boxes:

   1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
   2. Type: Fully adjustable.
   3. Shape: Rectangular.
   4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Luminaire Outlet Boxes: Nonadjustable, designed for attachment of luminaire weighing 50 lb (23 kg). Outlet boxes designed for attachment of luminaires weighing more than 50 lb (23 kg) shall be listed and marked for the maximum allowable weight.

H. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

I. Cast-Metal Access, Pull, and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773 galvanized, cast iron with gasketed cover.

J. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

K. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep).

L. Gangable boxes are allowed.

M. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R as indicated with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

N. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, Type 1 or Type 3R or as indicated galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.

2.5 HANDHOLES AND BOXES FOR EXTERIOR UNDERGROUND WIRING

A. General Requirements for Handholes and Boxes:

1. Boxes and handholes for use in underground systems shall be designed and identified as defined in NFPA 70, for intended location and application.
2. Boxes installed in wet areas shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

3. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
   a. Armorcast Products
   b. Oldcastle Infrastructure
   c. Jensen Precast
4. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77.
5. Configuration: Designed for flush burial with closed bottom unless otherwise indicated.
6. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure and handhole location.
7. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.
8. Cover Legend: Molded lettering," ELECTRIC."
9. Handholes 12 Inches Wide by 24 Inches Long (300 mm Wide by 600 mm Long) and Larger: Have inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons installed before concrete is poured.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL FOR UNDERGROUND ENCLOSURES

A. Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of handholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.
   1. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
   2. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012 and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 RACEWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

   1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
   2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: IMC and EMT.
   3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
   4. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): LFMC.
   5. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

B. Indoors: Apply raceway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

   1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT.
   2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT.
   3. Exposed and Subject to Severe Physical Damage: GRC. Raceway locations include the following:

      a. Loading dock.
      b. Corridors used for traffic of mechanized carts, forklifts, and pallet-handling units.
      c. Mechanical rooms.
      d. Maintenance sites.

   4. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
   5. Connection to Vibrating Equipment (Including Transformers and Hydraulic, Pneumatic, Electric Solenoid, or Motor-Driven Equipment): FMC, except use LFMC in damp or wet locations.
   6. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
   7. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1, except use NEMA 250, Type 4 stainless steel in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Raceway Size: 3/4-inch trade size.

D. Raceway Fittings: Compatible with raceways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use compression or steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
4. Flexible Conduit: Use only fittings listed for use with flexible conduit. Comply with NEMA FB 2.20.

E. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120 deg F (49 deg C).

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for hangers and supports.

B. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 101 for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of raceways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

C. Do not install raceways or electrical items on any "explosion-relief" walls or rotating equipment.

D. Do not fasten conduits onto the bottom side of a metal deck roof.

E. Keep raceways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal raceway runs above water and steam piping.

F. Complete raceway installation before starting conductor installation.

G. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

H. Make bends in raceway using large-radius preformed ells. Field bending shall be according to NFPA 70 minimum radii requirements. Use only equipment specifically designed for material and size involved.

I. Conceal conduit within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

J. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which attached.

K. Raceways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure raceways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.
2. Arrange raceways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange raceways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved by Architect for each specific location.
5. Change from RNC to GRC before rising above floor.

L. Stub-Ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for raceways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

M. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated raceway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

N. Raceway Terminations at Locations Subject to Moisture or Vibration: Use insulating bushings to protect conductors including conductors smaller than No. 4 AWG.

O. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install bushings on conduits up to 1-1/4-inch (35mm) trade size and insulated throat metal bushings on 1-1/2-inch (41-mm) trade size and larger conduits terminated with locknuts. Install insulated throat metal grounding bushings on service conduits.

P. Install raceways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

Q. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

R. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to make cut straight and perpendicular to the length.

S. Install pull wires in empty raceways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of

slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground raceways designated as spare above grade alongside raceways in use.

T. Install raceway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed raceways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to the adjacent plates or surfaces. Install raceway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

U. Install devices to seal raceway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all raceways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service raceway enters a building or structure.
3. Conduit extending from interior to exterior of building.
4. Conduit extending into pressurized duct and equipment.
5. Conduit extending into pressurized zones that are automatically controlled to maintain different pressure set points.
6. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

V. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding RNC and fittings.

W. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30 deg F (17 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100 deg F (55 deg C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

    a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155 deg F (86 deg C) temperature change.
    c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125 deg F (70 deg C) temperature change.
    d. Attics: 135 deg F (75 deg C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s)

that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per deg F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per deg C) of temperature change for metal conduits.

4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

X. Flexible Conduit Connections: Comply with NEMA RV 3. Use a maximum of 72 inches (1830 mm) of flexible conduit for recessed and semi recessed luminaires, equipment subject to vibration, noise transmission, or movement; and for transformers and motors.

1. Use LFMC in damp or wet locations subject to severe physical damage.
2. Use LFMC or LFNC in damp or wet locations not subject to severe physical damage.

Y. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Z. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surfaces to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

AA. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls, so they are not in the same vertical channel.

BB. Locate boxes so that cover or plate will not span different building finishes.

CC. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

DD. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

EE. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

FF. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Direct-Buried Conduit:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for conduit. Prepare trench bottom as specified in Division 31 "Building Earthwork" for pipe less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 “Building Earthwork.”
3. After installing conduit, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point, and work toward end of conduit run, leaving conduit at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Firmly hand tamp backfill around conduit to provide maximum supporting strength. After placing controlled backfill to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade, make final conduit connection at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 “Building Earthwork.”
4. Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through floor unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-up ducts throughout length of elbow.

    a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete for a minimum of 12 inches (300 mm) on each side of the coupling.
    b. For stub-ups at equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases and where conduits penetrate building foundations, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of foundation or equipment base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.
5. Underground Warning Tape: Comply with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND HANDHOLES AND BOXES

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting conduits to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas, set so cover surface will be flush with finished grade. Set covers of other enclosures 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install handholes with bottom below frost line.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field-cut openings for conduits according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

3.5 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 260544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electrical Raceways and Cabling."

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Install firestopping at penetrations of fire-rated floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Division 07 “Firestopping."

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 05 33

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 43 - UNDERGROUND DUCTS AND RACEWAYS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Conduit, ducts, and duct accessories for direct-buried and concrete-encased duct banks.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:
   1. Duct-bank materials, including separators and miscellaneous components.
   2. Ducts and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, and solvent cement.
   3. Warning tape.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver ducts to Project site with ends capped. Store nonmetallic ducts with supports to prevent bending, warping, and deforming.

1.7 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ducts, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field.

B. Coordinate elevations of ducts and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of ducts and duct banks as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations from those indicated as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Engineer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 CONDUIT

A. Rigid Steel Conduit: Galvanized. Comply with ANSI C80.1.

B. RNC: NEMA TC 2, Type EPC-40-PVC, UL 651, with matching fittings by same manufacturer as the conduit, complying with NEMA TC 3 and UL 514B.

2.2 NONMETALLIC DUCTS AND DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers listed but not limited to the following:

1.
    1. Cantex, Inc.
    2. CertainTeed Corp.; Pipe & Plastics Group.
    3. Condux International, Inc.
    4. ElecSys, Inc.
    5. IPEX Inc.
    6. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
    7. Manhattan/CDT; a division of Cable Design Technologies.
    8. Spiraduct/AFC Cable Systems, Inc.

B. Duct Accessories:
    1. Duct Separators: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and sizes of ducts with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacings indicated while supporting ducts during concreting or backfilling.
    2. Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

A. Ducts for Electrical Feeders and branch circuits 600 V and Less: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, in direct-buried duct bank, unless EPC-80 is specified on drawings.

B. Underground Ducts for Telephone, Communications, or Data Utility Service Cables: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, installed in direct-buried duct bank, unless otherwise indicated.

C. Underground Ducts Crossing Paved Paths, Walks, Driveways and Roadways: RNC, NEMA Type EPC-40-PVC, encased in reinforced concrete.

3.2 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Division 31 Section "Building Earthwork," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

B. Restore surface features at areas disturbed by excavation and reestablish original grades, unless otherwise indicated. Replace removed sod immediately after backfilling is completed.

C. Restore areas disturbed by trenching, storing of dirt, cable laying, and other work. Restore vegetation and include necessary topsoiling, fertilizing, liming, seeding, sodding, sprigging, and mulching. Comply with Division 32 Sections "Exterior Improvements."

D. Cut and patch existing pavement in the path of underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 01 .

3.3 DUCT INSTALLATION

A. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches (1220 mm), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations, unless otherwise indicated.

B. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in ducts and fittings and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.

C. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to rigid steel conduit at least 5 feet (3 m) outside the building wall without reducing duct line

slope away from the building, and without forming a trap in the line. Use fittings manufactured for duct-to-conduit transition. Install conduit penetrations of building walls as specified in Division 26 Section "Common Work Results for Electrical."

D. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of ducts that have cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.

E. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf- (445-N-) test nylon cord in ducts, including spares.

F. Direct-Buried Duct Banks:
   1. Support ducts on duct separators coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
   2. Space separators close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of ducts, with not less than 5 spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Secure separators to earth and to ducts to prevent displacement during backfill and yet permit linear duct movement due to expansion and contraction as temperature changes. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers.
   3. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Division 31 Section "Building Earthwork" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
   4. Install backfill as specified in Division 31 Section "Building Earthwork."
   5. After installing first tier of ducts, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving ducts at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand-place backfill to 4 inches (100 mm) over ducts and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around ducts to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction as specified in Division 31 Section "Building Earthwork."
   6. Install ducts with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) between ducts for like services and 6 inches (150 mm) between power and signal ducts.
   7. Depth: Install top of duct bank at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade, unless otherwise indicated.
   8. Install manufactured rigid steel conduit elbows for stub-ups at poles and equipment and at building entrances through the floor.
      a. Couple steel conduits to ducts with adapters designed for this purpose and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
      b. For equipment mounted on outdoor concrete bases, extend steel conduit horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Ground underground ducts and utility structures according to Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:
2.
   1. Pull aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and test for out-of-round duct. Provide mandrel equal to 80 percent fill of duct. If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
   2. Test handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Division 26 Section "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.6 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of ducts. Follow with rubber duct swab for final cleaning and to assist in spreading lubricant throughout ducts.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 26 05 43

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRICAL RACEWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for raceway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Division 07 “Firestopping” for penetration firestopping installed in fire-resistance-rated walls, horizontal assemblies, and smoke barriers, with and without penetrating items.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A53/A53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D1785, Schedule 40.

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized sheet steel.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

    a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
    b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.2 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products from the following:
    a. Pipe Seal and Insulator Inc.
    b. Advanced Products and Systems Inc.
    c. Metra Flex Company

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Carbon steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Carbon steel, with corrosion-resistant coating, of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match piping OD.

1. Presealed Systems

2.4 GROUT

A. Description: Non shrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C1107/C1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.5 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

B. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, nonshrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and raceway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 079200 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and raceway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed or unless seismic criteria require different clearance.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual raceways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between raceway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at raceway entries into building.

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for raceway or cable material and size. Position raceway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between raceway or

cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall.

C. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

D. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

END OF SECTION 26 05 44

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 05 48 - VIBRATION AND SEISMIC CONTROLS FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Isolation pads.
B. Spring isolators.
C. Restrained spring isolators.
D. Channel support systems.
E. Restraint cables.
F. Hanger rod stiffeners.
G. Anchorage bushings and washers.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS INCLUDE:

A. Division 26 Section "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for commonly used electrical supports and installation requirements.

1.4 DEFINITIONS

A. The IBC: International Building Code.

B. ICC-ES: ICC-Evaluation Service.

C. OSHPD: Office of Statewide Health Planning and Development for the State of California.

1.5 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic-Restraint Loading:

1. Site Class as Defined in the IBC: D.
2. Assigned Seismic Use Group or Building Category as Defined in the IBC: III.

a. Component Importance Factor: 1.25.

3. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at Short Periods (0.2 Second): .367.
4. Design Spectral Response Acceleration at 1.0-Second Period: .179.

1.6 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For the following:

1. Include rated load, rated deflection, and overload capacity for each vibration isolation device.
2. Illustrate and indicate style, material, strength, fastening provision, and finish for each type and size of seismic-restraint component used.
3. Restrained-Isolation Devices: Include ratings for horizontal, vertical, and combined loads.

B. Delegated-Design Submittal: For seismic-restraint details indicated to comply with performance requirements and design criteria, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1. Design Calculations: Calculate static and dynamic loading due to equipment weight and operation, seismic forces required to select vibration isolators and seismic restraints.

    a. Coordinate design calculations with wind-load calculations required for equipment mounted outdoors. Comply with requirements in other Division 26 Sections for equipment mounted outdoors.

2. Indicate materials and dimensions and identify hardware, including attachment and anchorage devices.
3. Field-fabricated supports.
4. Seismic-Restraint Details:

    a. Design Analysis: To support selection and arrangement of seismic restraints. Include calculations of combined tensile and shear loads.
    b. Details: Indicate fabrication and arrangement. Detail attachments of restraints to the restrained items and to the structure. Show attachment locations, methods, and spacings. Identify components, list their strengths, and indicate directions and values of forces transmitted to the structure during seismic events.

C. Coordination Drawings: Show coordination of seismic bracing for electrical components with other systems and equipment in the vicinity, including other supports and seismic restraints.

D. Welding certificates.

E. Field quality-control test reports.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: An independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, and that is acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Comply with seismic-restraint requirements in the IBC unless requirements in this Section are more stringent.

C. Welding: Qualify procedures and personnel according to AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."

D. Seismic-restraint devices shall have horizontal and vertical load testing and analysis and shall bear anchorage preapproval OPA number from OSHPD, preapproval by ICC-ES, or preapproval by another agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, showing maximum seismic-restraint ratings. Ratings based on independent testing are preferred to ratings based on calculations. If preapproved ratings are not available, submittals based on independent testing are preferred. Calculations (including combining shear and tensile loads) to support seismic-restraint designs must be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 VIBRATION ISOLATORS

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Ace Mountings Co., Inc.
b. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
c. California Dynamics Corporation.
d. Isolation Technology, Inc.
e. Kinetics Noise Control.
f. Mason Industries.
g. Vibration Eliminator Co., Inc.
h. Vibration Isolation.
i. Vibration Mountings & Controls, Inc.

B. Pads: Arrange in single or multiple layers of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

C. Spring Isolators: Freestanding, laterally stable, open-spring isolators.

1. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
2. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
3. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
4. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
5. Baseplates: Factory drilled for bolting to structure and bonded to 1/4-inch-thick, rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside. Baseplates shall limit floor load to 500 psig.
6. Top Plate and Adjustment Bolt: Threaded top plate with adjustment bolt and cap screw to fasten and level equipment.

D. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic or limit-stop restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to weight being removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- thick, neoprene or rubber isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment mounting and leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Restraint: Seismic or limit-stop as required for equipment and authorities having jurisdiction.
3. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of the compressed height of the spring at rated load.
4. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of the required deflection at rated load.
5. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
6. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.

2.2 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICES

A. Available Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

1. Amber/Booth Company, Inc.
2. California Dynamics Corporation.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.; a division of Cooper Industries.
4. Hilti Inc.

5. Loos & Co.; Seismic Earthquake Division.
6. Mason Industries.
7. TOLCO Incorporated; a brand of NIBCO INC.
8. Unistrut; Tyco International, Ltd.

B. Channel Support System: MFMA-3, shop- or field-fabricated support assembly made of slotted steel channels with accessories for attachment to braced component at one end and to building structure at the other end and other matching components and with corrosion-resistant coating; and rated in tension, compression, and torsion forces.

C. Hanger Rod Stiffener: Steel tube or steel slotted-support-system sleeve with internally bolted connections to hanger rod. Do not weld stiffeners to rods.

D. Bushings for Floor-Mounted Equipment Anchor: Neoprene bushings designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of anchors and studs.

E. Bushing Assemblies for Wall-Mounted Equipment Anchorage: Assemblies of neoprene elements and steel sleeves designed for rigid equipment mountings and matched to type and size of attachment devices.

F. Resilient Isolation Washers and Bushings: One-piece, molded, oil- and water-resistant neoprene, with a flat washer face.

G. Mechanical Anchor: HILTI KWIK BOLT II zinc-coated steel for interior applications and stainless steel for exterior applications. Select anchors with strength required for anchor and as tested according to ASTM E 488. Minimum length of eight times diameter.

H. Adhesive Anchor: HILTI HVA System, minimum embedment length 6” inches.

2.3 FACTORY FINISHES

A. Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime coat finish ready for field painting.

B. Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested equipment before shipping.

1. Powder coating on springs and housings.
2. All hardware shall be galvanized. Hotdip galvanize metal components for exterior use.
3. Baked enamel or powder coat for metal components on isolators for interior use.
4. Color-code or otherwise mark vibration isolation and seismic-control devices to indicate capacity range.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and equipment to receive vibration isolation and seismic-control devices for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance.

B. Examine roughing-in of reinforcement and cast-in-place anchors to verify actual locations before installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 APPLICATIONS

A. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Secure raceways and cables to trapeze member with clamps approved for application.

B. Hanger Rod Stiffeners: Install hanger rod stiffeners where indicated or scheduled on Drawings to receive them and where required to prevent buckling of hanger rods due to seismic forces.

C. Strength of Support and Seismic-Restraint Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static and seismic loads within specified loading limits.

3.3 SEISMIC-RESTRAINT DEVICE INSTALLATION

A. Equipment and Hanger Restraints:

1. Install restrained isolators on electrical equipment.
2. Install resilient, bolt-isolation washers on equipment anchor bolts where clearance between anchor and adjacent surface exceeds 0.125 inch.
3. Install seismic-restraint devices using methods approved.

B. Install bushing assemblies for mounting bolts for wall-mounted equipment, arranged to provide resilient media where equipment or equipment-mounting channels are attached to wall.

C. Attachment to Structure: If specific attachment is not indicated, anchor bracing to structure at flanges of beams, at upper truss chords of bar joists, or at concrete members.

D. Drilled-in Anchors:

1. Identify position of reinforcing steel and other embedded items prior to drilling holes for anchors. Do not damage existing reinforcing or embedded items during coring or drilling. Notify the structural engineer if reinforcing steel or other embedded items are encountered during drilling. Locate and avoid electrical and telecommunications conduit, and gas lines.
2. Do not drill holes in concrete or masonry until concrete, mortar, or grout has achieved full design strength.
3. Wedge Anchors: Protect threads from damage during anchor installation. Heavy-duty sleeve anchors shall be installed with sleeve fully engaged in the structural element to which anchor is to be fastened.
4. Adhesive Anchors: Clean holes to remove loose material and drilling dust prior to installation of adhesive. Place adhesive in holes proceeding from the bottom of the hole and progressing toward the surface in such a manner as to avoid introduction of air pockets in the adhesive.
5. Set anchors to manufacturer's recommended torque.
6. Install zinc-coated steel anchors for interior and stainless-steel anchors for exterior applications.

3.4 ACCOMMODATION OF DIFFERENTIAL SEISMIC MOTION

A. Install flexible connections in runs of raceways, cables, wireways, cable trays, and busways where they cross seismic joints, where adjacent sections or branches are supported by different structural elements, and where they terminate with connection to equipment that is anchored to a different structural element from the one supporting them as they approach equipment.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust isolators after isolated equipment is at operating weight.

B. Adjust limit stops on restrained spring isolators to mount equipment at normal operating height. After equipment installation is complete, adjust limit stops so they are out of contact during normal operation.

C. Adjust active height of spring isolators.

D. Adjust restraints to permit free movement of equipment within normal mode of operation.

END OF SECTION 26 05 48

SECTION 26 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR ELECTRICAL SYSTEMS

PART 1 GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Identification for raceway and metal-clad cable.
B. Identification for conductors and communication and control cable.
C. Underground-line warning tape.
D. Warning labels and signs.
E. Instruction signs.
F. Equipment identification labels.
G. Miscellaneous identification products.

1.3 RELATED SECTIONS INCLUDE THE FOLLOWING:

A. Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" for products and installation requirements necessary for compliance with seismic criteria.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each electrical identification product indicated.

B. Identification Schedule: An index of nomenclature of electrical equipment and system components used in identification signs and labels.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 and ANSI C2.

B. Comply with NFPA 70.

C. Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in the Contract Documents, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and the Operation and Maintenance Manual, and with those required by codes, standards, and 29 CFR 1910.145. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with completion of covering and painting of surfaces where devices are to be applied.

C. Coordinate installation of identifying devices with location of access panels and doors.

D. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 RACEWAY AND METAL-CLAD CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Comply with ANSI A13.1 for minimum size of letters for legend and for minimum length of color field for each raceway and cable size.

B. Color for Printed Legend:

1. Emergency Power Circuits: Black letters on an orange field.
2. Normal Power Circuits: White letters on a black field.
3. Legend: Indicate system or service and voltage, if applicable.

C. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Labels: Preprinted, flexible label laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound adhesive tape for securing ends of legend label.

D. Self-Adhesive Vinyl Tape: Colored, heavy duty, waterproof, fade resistant; 2 inches wide; compounded for outdoor use.

2.2 CONDUCTOR, COMMUNICATION CABLE AND CONTROL CABLE IDENTIFICATION MATERIALS

A. Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Colored, self-adhesive vinyl tape not less than 3 mils thick by 1 to 2 inches wide.

B. Marker Tapes: Vinyl or vinyl-cloth, self-adhesive wraparound type, with circuit identification legend machine printed by thermal transfer or equivalent process.

2.3 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Description: Permanent, red-color, continuous-printed, polyethylene tape.

1. 3 inches wide by 4 mils thick.
2. Compounded for permanent direct-burial service.
3. Embedded continuous metallic strip or core.
4. Printed legend shall indicate type of underground line.

2.4 WARNING LABELS AND SIGNS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and 29 CFR 1910.145.

B. Baked-Enamel Warning Signs: Preprinted aluminum signs, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application. 1/4-inch grommets in corners for mounting. Nominal size, 7 by 10 inches.

C. Warning label and sign shall include, but are not limited to, the following legends:

1. Multiple Power Source Warning: "DANGER - ELECTRICAL SHOCK HAZARD - EQUIPMENT HAS MULTIPLE POWER SOURCES."
2. Workspace Clearance Warning: "WARNING - OSHA REGULATION - AREA IN FRONT OF ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT MUST BE KEPT CLEAR FOR 36 INCHES."
3. Comply with Gulfstream Aerospace Corporation Facilities Standard No. 16-001 and 16-003.

2.5 INSTRUCTION SIGNS

A. Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine plastic, minimum 1/16-inch-thick for signs up to 20 sq. in. and 1/8 inch thick for larger sizes.

1. Engraved legend with white letters on black face and white letters on red face for emergency power.
2. Punched or drilled for mechanical fasteners.

2.6 EQUIPMENT IDENTIFICATION LABELS

A. Engraved, Laminated Acrylic or Melamine Label: Punched or drilled for screw mounting. White letters on a dark-gray background. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch.

2.7 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Cable Ties: Fungus-inert, self-extinguishing, 1-piece, self-locking, Type 6/6 nylon cable ties.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch.
2. Tensile Strength: 50 lb, minimum.
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F.
4. Color: Black, except where used for color-coding.

B. Paint: Paint materials and application requirements are specified in Division 09 painting Sections.

C. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Raceways and Duct Banks More Than 600 V Concealed within Buildings: 4-inch-wide black stripes on 10-inch centers over red background that extends full length of raceway or duct and is 12 inches wide. Stencil legend "DANGER CONCEALED HIGH VOLTAGE WIRING" with 3-inch- high black letters on 20-inch centers. Stop stripes at legends. Apply to the following finished surfaces:

1. Floor surface directly above conduits running beneath and within 12 inches of a floor that is in contact with earth or is framed above unexcavated space.
2. Wall surfaces directly external to raceways concealed within wall.
3. Accessible surfaces of concrete envelope around raceways in vertical shafts, exposed in the building, or concealed above suspended ceilings.

B. Accessible Raceways more than 600 V: Identify with "DANGER-HIGH VOLTAGE" in black letters at least 2 inches high on red background with self-adhesive vinyl labels. Repeat legend at 10-foot maximum intervals.

C. Conductors of special systems, such as emergency power shall be clearly labeled at all outlets, devices, and boxes to clearly distinguish them from normal building 60 HZ wiring.

D. Accessible Raceways, 600 V or less, for Service and Feeder, Circuits more than 90 A: Identify with white letters on black background with self-adhesive vinyl label.

E. Accessible Raceways and Cables of Auxiliary Systems: Identify the following systems with color-coded, self-adhesive vinyl tape applied in bands:

1. Fire Alarm System: Red.
2. Fire-Suppression Supervisory and Control System: Red and yellow.
3. Combined Fire Alarm and Security System: Red and blue.
4. Security System: Blue and yellow.
5. Mechanical and Electrical Supervisory System: Green and blue.
6. Telecommunication System: Green and yellow.
7. Control Wiring: Green and red.

F. Power-Circuit Conductor Identification: For primary and secondary conductors No. 1/0 AWG and larger in vaults, pull and junction boxes, and handholes use color-coding conductor tape.

G. Conductors of special systems, such as emergency power, DC, and 400 HZ power, shall be clearly labeled at all outlets, devices, and boxes to clearly distinguish them from normal building 60 HZ wiring. Conductors of special systems shall be run in separate conduit or raceway.

H. Branch-Circuit Conductor Identification: Where there are conductors for more than three branch circuits in same junction or pull box, use color-coding conductor tape.

I. Conductors to Be Extended in the Future: Attach write-on tags to conductors and list source and circuit number.

J. Auxiliary Electrical Systems Conductor Identification: Identify field-installed alarm, control, signal, sound, intercommunications, voice, and data connections.

1. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, and pull points. Identify by system and circuit designation.
2. Use system of marker tape designations that is uniform and consistent with system used by manufacturer for factory-installed connections.
3. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and Operation and Maintenance Manual.

K. Locations of Underground Lines: Identify with underground-line warning tape for power, lighting, communication, and control wiring and optical fiber cable. Install underground-line warning tape for both direct-buried cables and cables in raceway.

L. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures for Power and Lighting: Comply with 29 CFR 1910.145 and apply baked-enamel warning signs. Identify system voltage with black letters on an orange background. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access. Provide arc flash labeling per NFPA 70E for all equipment enclosures.

1. Equipment with Multiple Power or Control Sources: Apply to door or cover of equipment including, but not limited to, the following:

    a. Power transfer switches.
    b. Controls with external control power connections.
    c. Substations.
    d. Switchboards.

2. Equipment Requiring Workspace Clearance According to NFPA 70: Unless otherwise indicated, apply to door or cover of equipment but not on flush panelboards and similar equipment in finished spaces.

M. Instruction Signs:

1. Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs to facilitate proper operation and maintenance of electrical systems and items to which they connect. Install instruction signs with approved legend where instructions are needed for system or equipment operation.
2. Emergency Operating Instructions: Install instruction signs with white legend on a red background with minimum 3/8-inch- high letters for emergency instructions at equipment used for power transfer.

N. Equipment Identification Labels: On each unit of equipment, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, Operation and Maintenance Manual and Gulfstream Aerospace Corporation Facilities Standard No. 16-001. Apply labels to disconnect switches and protection equipment, central or master units, control panels, control stations, terminal cabinets, and racks of each system. Systems include power, lighting, control, communication, signal, monitoring, and alarm systems unless equipment is provided with its own identification.

1. Labeling Instructions:

    a. Indoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- high letters on 1-1/2-inch- high label; where 2 lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches high.
    b. Outdoor Equipment: Engraved, laminated acrylic or melamine label.
    c. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

2. Equipment to Be Labeled:

    a. Panelboards, electrical cabinets, and enclosures.
    b. Access doors and panels for concealed electrical items.

c. Electrical switchgear and switchboards.
d. Transformers.
e. Electrical substations.
f. Power outlets
g. Light switches
h. Emergency system boxes and enclosures.
i. Motor-control centers.
j. Disconnect switches.
k. Enclosed circuit breakers.
l. Motor starters.
m. Push-button stations.
n. Power transfer equipment.
o. Contactors.
p. Remote-controlled switches, dimmer modules, and control devices.
q. Power-generating units.
r. Voice and data cable terminal equipment.
s. Fire-alarm control panel and annunciators.
t. Security and intrusion-detection control stations, control panels, terminal cabinets, and racks.
u. Monitoring and control equipment.
v. Uninterruptible power supply equipment.
w. Terminals, racks, and patch panels for voice and data communication and for signal and control functions.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

B. Location: Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment.

C. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

D. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Clean surfaces before application, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification device.

E. Attach nonadhesive signs and plastic labels with screws and auxiliary hardware appropriate to the location and substrate.

F. System Identification Color Banding for Raceways and Cables: Each color band shall completely encircle cable or conduit. Place adjacent bands of two-color markings in contact, side by side. Locate bands at changes in direction, at penetrations of walls

and floors, at 50-foot maximum intervals in straight runs, and at 25-foot maximum intervals in congested areas.

G. Color-Coding for Phase Identification, 600 V and Less: Use the colors listed below for ungrounded service, feeder, and branch-circuit conductors.

1. Color shall be factory applied or, for sizes larger than No. 6 AWG if authorities having jurisdiction permit, field applied.

2. Colors for 208/120-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Black.
b. Phase B: Red.
c. Phase C: Blue.
d. Neutral: White
e. Ground: Green

3. Colors for 480/277-V Circuits:

a. Phase A: Brown.
b. Phase B: Orange.
c. Phase C: Yellow.
d. Neutral: Gray
e. Ground: Green

4. Field-Applied, Color-Coding Conductor Tape: Apply in half-lapped turns for a minimum distance of 6 inches from terminal points and in boxes where splices or taps are made. Apply last two turns of tape with no tension to prevent possible unwinding. Locate bands to avoid obscuring factory cable markings.

H. Underground-Line Warning Tape: During backfilling of trenches install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above line at 6 to 8 inches below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches overall.

I. Painted Identification: Prepare surface and apply paint according to Division 09 painting Sections.

END OF SECTION 26 05 53

SECTION 26 09 13 - ELECTRICAL POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes equipment and systems used to monitor and control electrical consumption:

1. Multifunction meters.
2. Power meters.
3. Circuit meters and monitors.
4. Circuit meters and explorer instruments.
5. Electrical power monitoring system software.
6. Electrical power monitoring and control software.
7. Network configuration software.
8. Monitoring and control of power distribution equipment.
9. System operator interfaces.
10. Desktop workstations.
11. Portable workstations.
12. Raceways and boxes.
13. Wires and cables.
14. Identification.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 230923.13 "Energy Meters" for electricity meters for HVAC equipment.
2. Section 262713 "Electricity Metering" for equipment to meter electricity consumption and demand for tenant submetering.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Active Power: The average power consumed by a unit. Also known as "real power."

B. Analog: A continuously varying signal value, such as current, flow, pressure, or temperature.

C. Apparent (Phasor) Power: "S = VI" where "S" is the apparent power, "V" is the rms value of the voltage, and "I" is the rms value of the current.

D. Firmware: Software (programs or data) that has been written onto read-only memory (ROM). Firmware is a combination of software and hardware. Storage media with ROMs that have data or programs recorded on them are firmware.

E. KY Pulse: A method of measuring consumption of electricity that is based on a relay operating like a SPST switch.

F. KYZ Pulse: A method of measuring consumption of electricity based on a relay operating like a SPDT switch.

G. LAN: Local area network.

H. L-G: Line to ground.

I. L-L: Line to line.

J. L-N: Line to neutral.

K. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or remote-control, signaling and power-limited circuits.

L. Modbus TCP/IP: An open protocol for exchange of process data.

M. Monitoring: Acquisition, processing, communication, and display of equipment status data, metered electrical parameter values, power quality evaluation data, event and alarm signals, tabulated reports, and event logs.

N. N-G: Neutral to ground.

O. Power Factor: The ratio of active power to apparent power, sometimes expressed in percentage.

P. rms: Root-mean-square value of alternating voltage, which is the square root of the mean value of the square of the voltage values during a complete cycle.

Q. TCP/IP: Transport control protocol/Internet.

R. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply; used both in singular and plural context.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for power monitoring and control.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals: N/A

C. Shop Drawings: For power monitoring and control equipment.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.

    a. Attach copies of approved Product Data submittals for products (such as switchboards, switchgear, and motor-control centers) that describe the following:

        1) Location of the meters and gateways, and routing of the connecting wiring.
        2) Details of power monitoring and control features to illustrate coordination among related equipment and power monitoring and control.

3. Block Diagram: Show interconnections between components specified in this Section and devices furnished with power distribution system components. Indicate data communication paths and identify networks, data buses, data gateways, concentrators, and other devices to be used. Describe characteristics of network and other data communication lines.
4. Network naming and numbering scheme.
5. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Coordinate nomenclature and presentation with a block diagram.
6. Specifications for workstations.
7. UPS sizing calculations for workstation.
8. Surge Suppressors: Data for each device used and where applied.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Design Data:

1. Manufacturer's system installation and setup guides, with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.

a. Project Record Drawings of as-built versions of submittal Shop Drawings provided in electronic PDF format on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
b. Testing and commissioning reports and checklists of completed final versions of reports, checklists, and trend logs.
c. As-built versions of submittal Product Data.
d. Names, addresses, e-mail addresses, and 24-hour telephone numbers of Installer and service representatives for the system and products.
e. Operator's manual with procedures for operating control systems including logging on and off, handling alarms, producing point reports, trending data, overriding computer control, and changing set points and variables.
f. Programming manuals with description of programming language and syntax, of statements for algorithms and calculations used, of point database creation and modification, of program creation and modification, and of editor use.
g. Engineering, installation, and maintenance manuals that explain how to do the following:

    1) Design and install new points, panels, and other hardware.
    2) Perform preventive maintenance and calibration.
    3) Debug hardware problems.
    4) Repair or replace hardware.

h. Documentation of all programs created using custom programming language including set points, tuning parameters, and object database.
i. Backup copy of graphic files, programs, and database on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
j. Complete original-issue documentation, installation, and maintenance information for furnished third-party hardware including computer equipment and sensors.
k. Complete original-issue copies of furnished software, including operating systems, custom programming language, workstation software, and graphics software on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface.
l. Recommended preventive maintenance procedures for system components, including schedule of tasks such as inspection, cleaning, and calibration; time between tasks; and task descriptions.
m. Owner training materials.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For power monitoring and control units to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

B. Software and Firmware Operational Documentation:

1. Software operating and upgrade manuals.
2. Software licenses.
3. Software service agreement.
4. PC installation and operating documentation, manuals, and software for the PC and all installed peripherals. Provide separately for each PC.
5. Hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and PDF files on compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface of the hard-copy submittal.
6. Program Software Backup: On compact disk or portable storage device with a USB interface, complete with data files.
7. Device address list.
8. Printout of software application and graphic screens.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Addressable Relays: One for every **10** installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Data Line Surge Suppressors: One for every **10** of each type installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

1.9 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate features of distribution equipment and power monitoring and control components to form an integrated interconnection of compatible components.

1. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

B. Coordinate Work of this Section with those in Sections specifying distribution components that are monitored or controlled by power monitoring and control equipment.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Microprocessor-based monitoring and control of electrical power distribution system(s) that includes the following:

1. Electrical meters that monitor, control, and connect to the data transmission network.
2. LAN: High-speed, multi-access, open, nonproprietary, industry-standard communication protocols.
3. Include **PC-based workstation with web access**, with its operating system and application software, connected to data transmission network.

B. The electrical power monitoring and control system shall be Internet based.

1. System software shall be based on server thin-client architecture, designed around open standards of internet technology.
2. Intent of thin-client architecture is to provide operators complete access to power monitoring and control system via an Internet browser. No special software other than an Internet browser shall be required to access graphics, point displays, and trends; to configure trends, points, and controllers; and to edit programming.
3. Internet access shall be password-protected.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. UL Compliance: Listed and labeled as complying with UL 61010-1.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surge Protection: For external wiring of each conductor entry connection to components to protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Lines 120 V and More: **SPDs complying with UL 1449, listed and labeled for intended use by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction and Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 264313 "Surge Protection for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."**

2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Lines: Comply with requirements as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

B. Addressable Devices: All transmitters and receivers shall communicate unique device identification and status reports to monitoring and control clients.

C. Interface with DDC System for HVAC: Provide factory-installed hardware and software to enable the DDC system for HVAC to monitor, display, and record data for use in processing reports.

1. Hardwired Monitoring Points: Electrical power demand (kilowatts), electrical power consumption (kilowatt-hours)**, power factor monitored at the main circuit breaker within the main service switchboard**.
2. **ASHRAE 135 (BACnet) or Modbus** communication interface with the DDC system for HVAC shall enable the DDC system for HVAC operator to remotely monitor meter information from a DDC system for HVAC workstation. Control features and monitoring points displayed locally at the metering panel shall be available through the DDC system for HVAC.

D. Backup Power Source:

1. Electrical power distribution equipment served by a backup power source for controls shall have associated power monitoring and control system products that monitor and control such systems and equipment also served from a backup power source.

2.3 MULTIFUNCTION ENERGY METERS – PER ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

A. Multifunction Energy Meter: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power and energy metering and monitoring; complying with UL 61010-1.

1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.
2. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

B. Environment: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in **air-conditioned and temperature-controlled** spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of **60 deg F to 80 deg F,** and 40 to 60 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

2. Comply with IEC 60529 degree of protection code of IP65 for the front of the meter, and code of IP30 for the body.

C. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

D. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. Neutral Current Measurement: Not more than 0.65 percent.
3. Power Factor: 1.0 percent.
4. Frequency: 0.1 percent.
5. THD: 1.0 percent.
6. Waveform Sampling: 64 per cycle.

E. Data Link:

1. RS-485 Modbus RTU protocol, **4**-wire connection to host devices with a compatible port.

F. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values:

a. One screen to show at least **three** user-selected values displayed at the same time. Selections available to display shall include the following:

1) All meters.
2) Measurements.
3) THD.
4) Energy.
5) Demand.
6) Minimum and maximum values.
7) Power demand.

G. Sampling Rate: Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than **64** samples per cycle, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

H. Meters:

1. Instantaneous, rms:

a. Current: Each phase, **neutral** and three-phase average.
b. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.

c. Active Power (kW): **Each phase and** three-phase total.
d. Reactive Power (kVAR): **Each phase and** three-phase total.
e. Apparent Power (kVA): **Each phase and** three-phase total.
f. Power Factor: **Each phase and** three-phase total.

2. Energy:

a. Active Energy (kWh): Three-phase total.

3. Demand, Derived from Instantaneous rms Meters:

a. Current: Present and maximum.
b. Active: Present and maximum.
c. Reactive: Present and maximum.
d. Apparent: Present and maximum.

4. Power Quality Measurements:

a. THD: Current and voltage from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, as can be calculated from the specified sampling rate.

I. I/O: Two optically isolated digital outputs for KY pulsing or control. Output signal characteristics shall be 150 mA at 200 V.

1. KY Pulse: Generate standard KY pulses for a user-defined increment of metered active energy as follows:

a. User-defined pulse output, associated with kWh.
b. User-defined pulse output, associated with kVARh.

J. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: **480Y/277VAC, 3-PHASE, 4-WIRE, 60 Hz**.
2. Circuit Connections:

a. Voltage: Measurement auto-ranging, 60-V ac to 600-V ac L-L. **Connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V.** Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.

d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

2.4 POWER METERS – PER THE ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

A. Description: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power monitoring and control; complying with UL 61010-1.

1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.
2. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

B. Environment: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in **air-conditioned and temperature-controlled** spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of **60 deg F to 80 deg F** and 40 to 60 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Comply with IEC 60529 degree of protection code of IP51 for the front of the meter, and code of IP30 for the body.

C. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

D. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. Neutral Current Measurement: Not more than 0.65 percent.
3. Power: 0.6 percent.
4. Power Factor: 0.5 percent.
5. Active Energy: 0.6 percent.
6. Reactive Energy: 2.5 percent.
7. Frequency: 0.05 percent.
8. THD: 1.0 percent.
9. Waveform Sampling: 32 per cycle.

E. Data Link:

1. RS-485 Modbus RTU protocol, **4**-wire connection.

a. Provide for firmware and software updates through the communications port.

F. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least **four** lines of user-selected values on one screen at the same time. Provide graphical representation of user-selected values. The screen selections available at the display shall include the following:

    a. All meters, including those listed under the following:

        1) Measurements.
        2) THD.
        3) Energy.
        4) Demand.
        5) Minimum and maximum values.
        6) Power demand.

G. Sampling Rate: Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than **32 samples per cycle**, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

H. Meters:

1. Measurements: Instantaneous, in real time, RMS to the 15th harmonic.

    a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-N each phase, and three-phase average.
    b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.
    c. Unbalanced current, L-L V ac and L-N V ac.
    d. Active Power (+/- kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
    e. Reactive Power (+/- kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
    f. Apparent Power (+/- kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
    g. Displacement Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
    h. Distortion Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
    i. Frequency.

2. THD from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, through **15th** harmonic.

    a. Voltage THD: L-L each phase, L-N each phase, and three-phase average.
    b. Current THD: Each phase and three-phase average.
    c. Total demand distortion.

3. Energy: Accumulated, indicate whether in-flow or out-flow, net and absolute values. Store the values in instrument's nonvolatile memory.

    a. Active kWh.

b. Reactive kVARh.
c. Apparent kVAh.

4. Demand: Present, last, predicted, peak.

a. Three-phase average current.
b. Three-phase total active power (kW).
c. Reactive power (kVAR).
d. Apparent power (kVA).

5. Minimum and Maximum Values:

a. L-L and L-N voltages.
b. Current in each phase.
c. Power factor.
d. Active power total.
e. Reactive power total.
f. Apparent power total.
g. THD L-L and L-N voltages.
h. THD current in each phase.
i. Frequency.

I. Power Demand, User Selectable:

1. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
2. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:

a. Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
b. Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
c. Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.

3. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:

a. Signal is a pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
b. Signal is a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
c. Provide for synchronizing the demand with the internal of this instrument.

J. Data Recording: Store the listed values in instrument's nonvolatile memory, indicate which of the three phases relates to the value. Attach a date and time stamp to the peak values and the alarms.

1. Minimum and maximum of real-time rms measurement.
2. Energy.
3. Demand values.
4. Alarms, store the last 40 events.

K. Alarms: Transmit a digital output and show on display when alarmed. Provide for no fewer than **15** metered items. Each alarm shall be user-configured, by using the following options:

1. Date and time stamp.
2. Enable-disable (default) or enable.
3. Pickup magnitude.
4. Pickup time delay.
5. Dropout magnitude.
6. Dropout time delay.
7. Alarm type.
8. Alarm label.

L. Output Signals: Provide two mechanical relays, rated not less than 250-V ac, 2-A resistive, and rated for 200-k cycles or more. The relays shall be user configurable in one of the following listed modes:

1. Normal contact closure where the contacts change state for as long as the signal exists.
2. Latched mode when the contacts change state when a pickup signal is received and are held until a dropout signal is received.
3. Timed mode when the contacts change state when a pickup signal is received and are held for a preprogrammed duration.

M. Meter Face:

1. Display: Backlit LCD display, six lines, with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least **four** user-selected values on one screen at the same time.
3. Provide for the reset of metered peak values.

N. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: **120-V ac, 60 Hz**.
2. Circuit Connections:

a. Voltage: Measurements auto-ranging, 60- to 400-V ac L-N. **Connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V.** Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.
d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

2.5 CIRCUIT METERS AND MONITORS – PER THE ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

A. Description: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power monitoring and control; complying with UL 61010-1. Capable of metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, 3-wire delta, and single-phase power systems.

1. Equipped with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

B. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in **air-conditioned and temperature-controlled** spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of **60 deg F to 80 deg F** and 40 to 60 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Comply with IEC 60529 degree of protection code of IP52 for the front of the meter, and code of IP30 for the back.

C. Overvoltage: Comply with UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating for CAT III.

D. Accuracy:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.5.
2. For Voltage and Current: 0.5 percent of reading.
3. For Active Power: 0.2 percent.
4. For Active and Reactive Energy: ANSI 12.20, Class 0.2.
5. For Frequency: 0.01 Hz in the range of 45 to 65 Hz.
6. For Power Factor: 0.2 percent from 0.5 leading to 0.5 lagging.

E. Data Links:

1. RS-485 Modbus RTU protocol, **4**-wire connection.
2. RS-232/RS-485 Modbus RTU/ASCII protocol, **4**-wire connection.
3. Modbus TCP:

    a. 10/100BaseTX balanced twisted pair cabling. RJ-45 connector, 100-m link.
    b. Optical fiber 100BaseFX, LC duplex connector, 1300-m link. Multimode 62.5/125-microsecond, 2000-m link.

4. Provide for firmware and software updates through the communications port.
5. Ethernet 10/100BaseTX balanced twisted pair cabling and RS-485 Modbus serial master port.
6. Ethernet 10/100BaseTX balanced twisted pair cabling and RS-485 Modbus serial master port, Ethernet to serial line gateway, and embedded web server.

F. Meter Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD screen with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least **four** lines of user-selected values on one screen at the same time. Provide graphical representation of user-selected values.
3. Allow user to select a date/time format and the ability to create additional screens for user-specified views and custom quantities without overwriting existing standard screens.

G. Sampling Rate:

1. Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than **128 samples per cycle**, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

H. Meters shall measure, record with time stamp, calculate, and on request display the following:

1. Measurements: Instantaneous, in real time, RMS to the **31st** harmonic:

    a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
    b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.
    c. Active Power (kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
    d. Reactive Power (kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
    e. Apparent Power (kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
    f. Displacement Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
    g. Distortion Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
    h. Frequency.

2. THD from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, through **31st** harmonic:

    a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
    b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.

3. Energy: Accumulated, indicate in-flow or out-flow, net and absolute values. Store the values in instrument's nonvolatile memory. Provide for storing accumulated energy at user-defined intervals, up to three intervals per day.

    a. Active kWh.
    b. Reactive kVARh.
    c. Apparent kVAh.

4. Demand: Three-phase totals, present, predicted, peak.

    a. Average current.
    b. Active power (kW).
    c. Reactive power (kVAR).
    d. Apparent power (kVA).

5. Average, Minimum and Maximum Values:

    a. Record, date and time stamp, and save the minimum and maximum values of all rms metered values since the last reset.

I. Power Demand, User Selectable:

1. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
2. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:

    a. Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes.
    b. Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
    c. Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.

3. Demand Calculation Initiated by a Synchronization Signal:

a. Synchronize demand with receipt of a signal pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
b. Synchronize demand with receipt of a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
c. Provide for synchronization to the clock in the instrument.

J. Trend Curves: Provide for recording four trend curves at intervals of one minute, one hour, one day, or one month; and forecast values for the trended parameters.

1. Record minimum, maximum, and average values of eight user-selected parameters as follows:

a. Every second for one minute for the one-minute curve.
b. Every minute for one hour for the one-hour curve.
c. Every hour for one day for the one-day curve.
d. Every day for one month for the one-month curve.

2. Forecast the trended parameters for the following:

a. The next four hours.
b. The next four days.

K. Waveform Capture:

1. Steady State Waveform Capture: Manually initiated.

a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store voltage and current waveforms for two cycles.
b. Capture, record with time stamp, and store 128 digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. The number of waveform captures stored onboard shall be user configurable.
c. Harmonic analysis performed on the captured waveforms shall resolve harmonics through the 63rd.
d. Captured waveforms shall be recorded from actual circuit performance.

2. Disturbance Waveform Capture:

a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store 128 digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. Disturbance waveform capture may be initiated manually, by an external contact closure, or by an alarm. The waveform captures shall be user configurable from 185 cycles on 1 channel at 16 points per cycle, to 3 cycles on 6 channels at 128 points per cycle.

L. Disturbance Detection and Alarm:

1. Detect and initiate alarm when detecting voltage or current sag and swell.

    a. Detect disturbance events of less than half-cycle in length, by monitoring and calculating rms magnitude of each half-cycle.
    b. Event detection shall be with user-defined parameters of threshold and delay. The threshold shall be user defined as a fixed or relative set point. With relative set point, the instrument will alarm based on the nominal current or voltage equal to its present average value. The instrument shall automatically adjust the nominal current and voltage values to avoid nuisance alarms caused by gradual daily variations of currents and voltages.
    c. When detecting an alarm condition:

        1) Initiate disturbance waveform capture.
        2) Record the disturbance parameters into an onboard alarm log with a date and time stamp to the millisecond.
        3) Alarm on shall be visible on the display and be transmitted over the data link.
        4) Display the voltage sag/swell events on ITIC or SEMI graphs to quantify the event for accepted industry standards.

M. Harmonics Information:

1. Calculate the harmonic magnitudes and angles for each phase voltage and current through the 63rd harmonic. Provide harmonic power flows up to the 41st harmonic for active, reactive, and apparent power.
2. The current and voltage information for all phases shall be obtained simultaneously from the same cycle.
3. Report harmonic information as a percentage of the fundamental or as a percentage of the rms values, as selected by the user.

N. Alarms: Alarm events shall be user definable. Provide a minimum of 40 user-defined alarm conditions.

1. User Configuration Options:

    a. Date and time stamp.
    b. Enable-disable (default) or enable.
    c. Pickup magnitude.
    d. Pickup time delay.
    e. Dropout magnitude.
    f. Dropout time delay.
    g. Alarm type.
    h. Alarm label.

2. The following classes of events shall be available to be programmed as alarm events:

    a. Over/under current.
    b. Over/undervoltage.
    c. Current imbalance.
    d. Phase loss, current.
    e. Phase loss, voltage.
    f. Voltage imbalance.
    g. Over kVA.
    h. Over kW or kVAR into/out of load.
    i. Over/under frequency.
    j. Under power factor, true or displacement.
    k. Over THD.
    l. Over demand, current or power.
    m. Reverse power.
    n. Phase reversal.
    o. Status input change.
    p. End of incremental energy interval.
    q. End of demand interval.
    r. Over/under analog inputs.
    s. Current sag/swell.
    t. Voltage sag/swell.

3. For each over/under metered alarm value, provide for the user to define a pickup, dropout, and delay.
4. The circuit meter and monitor alarms response time shall be not less than one second.
5. Provide for up to four alarms to be combined to give a single result using Boolean algebra operations.

O. EN 50160 Evaluation: Report EN 50160 evaluation data in the following formats: summary of active evaluations, summary of evaluation status, detailed information for each evaluated parameter, and detailed information for each abnormal event.

P. I/O Module: Modular, with multiple I/O options to accomplish specified performance and one or more spare positions for future.

1. KY Pulse: Generate a standard KY pulses for a user-defined increment of metered active energy as follows:

    a. User-defined pulse output, associated with kWh.
    b. Alarm pulse output, which turns on the pulsing at user-defined point.

2. Digital Inputs: As follows:

a. One input connection rated 24- to 125-V ac or -V dc, +/- 10 percent, less than 5-mA burden, 1350-V rms isolation.
b. Six input connections rated 19- to 30-V dc, 5 mA maximum at 24-V dc. Provide an onboard 24-V dc power supply.
c. Two input connections rated 20- to 150-V dc or -V ac, 2 mA maximum.

3. Analog inputs, no fewer than two, adjustable from 0- to 5-V dc or 4 to 20 mA.
4. Outputs to operate field-installed relays, no fewer than two, providing 6- to 240-V ac or 6- to 30-V dc, 2 A rms. 5 A maximum for 10 seconds per hour.
5. Analog outputs, no fewer than two, 4- to 20-mA dc into 600 ohms maximum.

Q. Data Recording: Store the listed values in instrument's nonvolatile memory, indicate which of the three phases relates to the value. Attach a date and time stamp to the peak values and the alarms.

1. Data Logs, General: User configurable. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.

a. Each log entry shall hold data of up to 96 parameters each.
b. Each log shall be user configurable to log data at a different user-defined schedule interval.
c. Provide each log with user-defined event or a minimum/maximum condition that will trigger log file entries.
d. Configure log entries to be recorded as Fill & Hold or Circular (First in, First out, or FIFO), as defined by the user.

2. Minimum/Maximum Logs:

a. Minimum/Maximum/Average interval log also logs minimum/maximum/average of selected parameters on a selected interval from a user-selected interval length from 1 to 1440 seconds.
b. Minimum/Maximum log shall include the time, date, and value for the minimum and maximum of each of the real-time metered values.

3. Alarm Log: Record time, date, event information, and coincident information for each user-defined and automatically initiated alarm or event. Record selected parameters at 100-ms intervals during events and alarms. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.
4. Waveform Logs: Capture and store waveforms, from 185 cycles on one channel at 16 samples per cycle, up to 3 cycles on six channels at 128 samples per cycle as defined by the user. Waveform log entries shall be externally triggered or forced in response to a user-defined event. Configure log entries to be recorded as Fill & Hold or Circular (FIFO), as defined by the user.

R. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: **120-V ac, 60 Hz**.
2. Circuit Connections:

    a. Voltage: Measurement auto-ranging, 0- to 600-V ac L-L, 0- to 347-V ac L-N. **Connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V.** Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater. Overload Tolerance: 1500-V ac, rms, continuously.
    b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 10 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
    c. Frequency: 45 to 65 Hz.
    d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

2.6 CIRCUIT METER AND EXPLORER – PER THE ELECTRICAL DRAWINGS

A. Description: Separately mounted, modular, permanently installed, solid-state, digital I/O instrument for power monitoring, control, and power quality explorer; complying with UL 61010-1.

1. Provide for metering 4-wire Y, 3-wire Y, and 3-wire delta power systems.
2. Equip the instrument with security lock to protect revenue related metering from unauthorized and accidental changes.

B. Environmental Conditions: System components shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Indoor installation in **air-conditioned and temperature-controlled** spaces that have environmental controls to maintain ambient conditions of **60 deg F to 80 deg F** and 40 to 60 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.
2. Comply with IEC 60529 degree of protection code of IP52.
3. The circuit meter and monitor shall meet UL 61010-1 overvoltage withstand rating of CAT IV.

C. Accuracy to the following plus/minus values:

1. Voltage and Current Meter: 0.04 percent of reading plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
2. Power and Energy Meter: 0.075 percent of reading plus 0.025 percent of full scale.
3. Energy Meter: Comply with ANSI C12.20, Class 0.20.

4. Frequency Meter: 0.01 Hz in the range of 45 to 67 Hz and accurate to 0.1 Hz in the range of 350 to 450 Hz.
5. Power Factor: 0.002 from 0.5 leading to 0.5 lagging.

D. Data Links:

1. RS-232 port.
2. RS-485 Modbus RTU protocol, **4**-wire connection.
3. Ethernet Modbus/TCP/IP protocol:

    a. 10/100BaseTX balanced twisted pair cabling. RJ-45 connector, 100-m link.
    b. Optical fiber 100BaseFX, LC duplex connector, 1300-m link. Multimode 62.5/125-microsecond, 2000-m link.
    c. HTML server, with standard home page and five customizable pages.

4. Firmware and software updates shall be accessible through the communications port.

E. Physical Characteristics:

1. Display: Backlit LCD screen with antiglare and scratch-resistant lens.
2. Display of Metered Values: One screen to show at least **four** lines of user-selected values on one screen at the same time. Provide graphical representation of user-selected values.
3. Allow user to select a date/time format and the ability to create additional screens for user-specified views and custom quantities without overwriting existing standard screens.

F. Sampling Rate:

1. Sample current and voltage to provide rms accuracy to 255th harmonic of the fundamental frequency of 60 Hz.
2. Continuously sample and record voltage and current at a rate not less than **512 samples per cycle**, simultaneously on all voltage and current channels of the meter.

G. Measure, record with time stamp, and calculate; and, on request, display the following:

1. Measurements: Instantaneous, in real time, rms to the 63rd harmonic:

    a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, L-N three-phase average, and percent unbalanced.
    b. Current: Each phase, neutral, ground, three-phase average, apparent rms, and percent unbalanced.
    c. Active Power (kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
    d. Reactive Power (kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.

e. Apparent Power (kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
f. Displacement Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
g. Distortion Power Factor: Each phase and three-phase total.
h. Frequency.
i. K-factor for each phase.

2. THD from measurements simultaneously from the same cycle, through **255th** harmonic:

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.
c. Power: Active, reactive, and apparent power including power of up to **41st**.

3. Energy: Accumulated, indicate whether in-flow or out-flow, net and absolute values. Store the values in instrument's nonvolatile memory. Provide for storing accumulated energy at user-defined intervals, up to three intervals per day.

a. Active kWh.
b. Reactive kVARh.
c. Apparent kVAh.

4. Demand:

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.

1) Present.
2) Running average.
3) Last completed interval.
4) Peak.

b. Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral.

1) Present.
2) Last completed interval.
3) Minimum.
4) Peak.

c. Active Power (kW): Three-phase totals.

1) Last completed interval.
2) Predicted.
3) Peak.
4) Coincident with peak kVA demand.
5) Coincident with peal kVAR demand.

d. Reactive Power (kVAR): Three-phase totals.

1) Last completed interval.
2) Predicted.
3) Peak.
4) Coincident with peak kW demand.
5) Coincident with peal kVA demand.

e. Apparent Power (kVA): Three-phase totals.

1) Last completed interval.
2) Predicted.
3) Peak.
4) Coincident with peak kW demand.
5) Coincident with peak kVA demand.

f. Distortion Power Factor: Three-phase totals.

1) Last completed interval.
2) Predicted.
3) Peak.
4) Coincident with peak kVA demand.
5) Coincident with peal kVAR demand.

H. Average, Minimum and Maximum Values:

1. Record, date and time stamp, and save the minimum and maximum values of all rms metered values since the last reset.
2. Record, date and time stamp, and save maximum, minimum and average over a user-defined interval for the following metered values:

a. Voltage: L-L each phase, L-L three-phase average, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
b. Voltage Unbalance: L-L each phase and L-N each phase.
c. Current: rms each phase, three-phase average, and calculated neutral current.
d. Demand Current: rms each phase and three-phase average.
e. Current: Apparent, rms average.
f. Active Power (kW): Each phase and three-phase total.
g. Reactive Power (kVAR): Each phase and three-phase total.
h. Apparent Power (kVA): Each phase and three-phase total.
i. Demand Active Power: Each phase and three-phase total.
j. Demand Reactive Power: Each phase and three-phase total.
k. Demand Apparent Power: Each phase and three-phase total.
l. Accumulated Energy: MWh, MVAh, and MVARh.

m. Reactive energy (MVARh) by quadrant.
n. Power Factor: Three-phase displacement and distortion power factors.
o. K-factor for each phase.
p. THD L-L and L-N voltages.
q. THD current in each phase and neutral.
r. Frequency.

I. Power Demand, User Selectable:

1. Thermal Demand: Sliding window updated every second for the present demand and at end of the interval for the last interval. Adjustable window that can be set in 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes.
2. Block Interval with Optional Subintervals: Adjustable for 1-minute intervals, from 1 to 60 minutes. User-defined parameters for the following block intervals:

    a. Sliding block that calculates demand every second, with intervals less than 15 minutes, and every 15 seconds with an interval between 15 and 60 minutes. The default setting shall be the 15-minute continuous sliding block.
    b. Fixed block that calculates demand at end of the interval.
    c. Rolling block subinterval that calculates demand at end of each subinterval and displays it at end of the interval.

3. Demand Calculation Initiated by a synchronization signal. Synchronize demand with clock in the circuit meter and monitor.

    a. Synchronize demand with receipt of a signal pulse from an external source. Demand period begins with every pulse. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
    b. Synchronize demand with receipt of a communication signal. Calculation shall be configurable as either a block or rolling block calculation.
    c. Provide for synchronization to the clock in the instrument.

4. Record, date and time stamp, and save the following demand values of all rms metered values since the last reset, including the following:

    a. Average demand current, per phase.
    b. Peak demand current, per phase.
    c. Average demand for active power, reactive power, and apparent power.
    d. Predicted demand for active power, reactive power, and apparent power.
    e. Peak demand for active power, reactive power, and apparent power.

J. Trend Curves: Provide for recording four trend curves at intervals of one minute, one hour, one day, or one month; and forecast values for the trended parameters:

1. Record minimum, maximum, and average values of eight user-selected parameters as follows:

    a. Every second for one minute for the one-minute curve.
    b. Every minute for one hour for the one-hour curve.
    c. Every hour for one day for the one-day curve.
    d. Every day for one month for the one-month curve.

2. Forecast the trended parameters for the following:

    a. The next four hours.
    b. The next four days.

K. Power Analysis Values:

1. THD Voltage: L-L each phase, L-N each phase, and L-N three-phase average.
2. THD Current: Each phase, three-phase average, and neutral current.
3. Total demand distortion.
4. K-factor for each phase.
5. Crest factor, each phase.
6. Displacement power factor.
7. Fundamental voltage, magnitude and angle, each phase.
8. Fundamental currents, magnitude and angle, each phase.
9. Fundamental active power, each phase and three-phase total.
10. Fundamental reactive power, each phase and three-phase total.
11. Harmonic power, each phase and three-phase total.
12. Phase rotation.
13. Voltage and current unbalances.
14. Harmonic magnitudes and angles, each phase.
15. Distortion power.
16. Distortion power factor.

L. Waveform Capture:

1. Steady State Waveform Capture: Manually initiated over the communications network.

    a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store voltage and current waveforms at a user-defined resolution of 16 to 512 samples/cycle for up to 30 seconds.
    b. Capture, record with time stamp, and store 512 digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. The number of waveform captures stored onboard shall be user configurable.
    c. Harmonic analysis performed on the captured waveforms shall resolve harmonics through the 255th for the following:

1) Voltage: L-N and L-G each phase.
2) Current: Of each phase and neutral current.

d. Captured waveforms shall be recorded from actual circuit performance.

2. Disturbance Waveform Capture:

a. Capture, record with time stamp, and store digitally sampled data points for each cycle of each phase voltage. Disturbance waveform capture may be initiated manually, by an external contact closure, or by an alarm. The captured waveform shall be at a user-defined resolution of 16 to 512 samples/cycle per second. The number of pre-alarm cycles shall be adjustable.

3. Waveform samples shall be available for transmission over the communications network, for display, archival, and analysis at computer workstations.

M. Transient Detection.

1. Detect and capture transient voltage surge events up to 10 kV L-L with a duration as short as 200 ns.

N. Flicker Detection.

1. Detect and capture flicker events, defined by IEEE 1453, at three levels: instantaneous, short term, and long term.
2. Display the flicker event as plots of magnitude versus time on semi-log graph background.

O. Sag and Swell Detection and Alarm:

1. Detect and initiate alarm when detecting voltage or current sag and swell.

a. Detect disturbance events of less than half-cycle in length, by monitoring and calculating rms magnitude of each half-cycle.
b. Event detection shall be with user-defined parameters of threshold and delay. The threshold shall be user defined as a fixed or relative set point. With relative set point, the instrument will alarm based on the nominal current or voltage equal to its present average value. The instrument shall automatically adjust the nominal current and voltage values to avoid nuisance alarms caused by gradual daily variations of currents and voltages.
c. When detecting an alarm condition:

1) Initiate disturbance waveform capture.
2) Initiate 100-ms event recording.

3) Recording the disturbance parameters into an onboard alarm log with a date and time stamp to the millisecond.
4) Causing an alarm on the display and transmit the alarm over the data link.
5) The user shall have the ability to display the voltage sag/swell events on ITIC or SEMI graphs to quantify the event for accepted industry standards.

P. 100-ms Event Recording: Capture, record with time stamp, and store.

1. Initiate recording by an alarm or external contact closure.
2. User-configured recording, to record for the duration of the alarm up to 300 seconds and can be delayed for 1 to 10 seconds.
3. Records current per-phase and neutral, voltage L-L each phase and L-N each phase, active power per-phase and three-phase total, reactive power each phase and three-phase total, apparent power each phase and three-phase total, and true power factor three-phase total.
4. Operate an output relay in the I/O module of the instrument.

Q. Harmonics Information:

1. Calculate the harmonic magnitudes and angles for each phase voltage and current in each phase and neutral, through the 255th harmonic. Provide harmonic power flows up to the 41st harmonic for active, reactive, and apparent power.
2. The current and voltage information for all phases shall be obtained simultaneously from the same cycle.
3. Report harmonic information as a percentage of the fundamental or as a percentage of the rms values, as selected by the user.

R. Alarms:

1. Alarm events may be either user defined or preconfigured by manufacturer from the applicable standards. Provide for multiple levels for each alarm that is based on metered data.
2. The instrument shall calculate the listed key electrical parameters at not less than 100-ms intervals to initiate and record an alarm event. Provide for user-selected range of 1 to 10 seconds of pre-event and up to five minutes of post-event data recording.
3. The following classes of events shall be available to be programmed as alarm events:

    a. Over/under current.
    b. Over/undervoltage.
    c. Current imbalance.
    d. Phase loss, current.

e. Phase loss, voltage.
f. Voltage imbalance.
g. Wave shape alarm.
h. Over kVA.
i. Over kW or kVAR into/out of load.
j. Over/under frequency.
k. Under power factor, true or displacement.
l. Over THD.
m. Over K-factor.
n. Over demand, current or power.
o. Reverse power.
p. Phase reversal.
q. Status input change.
r. End of incremental energy interval.
s. End of demand interval.
t. Over/under analog inputs.
u. Current sag/swell.
v. Voltage sag/swell.
w. Transient events.

4. For each over/under metered alarm value, the user shall define a pickup, dropout, and delay.
5. Waveform Alarms:

a. The instrument shall detect anomalous waveform events that are less than half-cycle in length.
b. Provide for the user to set a threshold value and an upper limit to determine whether the waveform triggers an alarm. The threshold value and upper limit shall be a value between 1 and 100. The threshold value is the limit at which a waveform triggers the alarm. The upper limit defines the highest waveform value that triggers a waveform alarm. The settable values are as follows:

1) Phase voltages.
2) N-G voltages.
3) Phase currents.
4) Neutral currents.

c. In response to a waveform alarm, the instrument shall:

1) Log the event and record phase currents and voltages as defined in the 100-ms event recording.
2) Determine the source of the disturbance (upstream or downstream from the meter) and a statistical level of confidence (low, medium, or high) of the accuracy of the source location.

6. Provide four alarm severity levels to allow the user to respond to the most important events first.
7. Indicate an alarm condition on the front panel of the instrument, as well as reported over the data link to designated workstations.
8. The circuit meter and monitor alarms response time shall be not less than the following:

    a. Standard, one second.
    b. High speed, 100 ms.
    c. Disturbance, half-cycle.

9. Up to four alarms may be combined to give a single result using Boolean algebra operations.
10. Provide e-mail notification of alarm conditions.
11. Automatic Alarm Set-Point Adjustment:

    a. The instrument software shall provide for recognizing and learning the characteristics of the normal operation of the electrical power system it is connected to, and to select and adjust alarm set points based on that recognition.
    b. The metered data to be recognized and learned, and the period of time for learning for alarms, disturbances, and waveform alarms, shall be set by the user by selection one of the following two modes:

        1) Fixed Learning: Initially configured user set points are used during the entire learning period.
        2) Dynamic Learning: Initially configured user set points are temporarily replaced by learned set points at the interval specified by the user in the learning setup. The set points continue to be updated at the specified interval until the learning period expires.

    c. The learning period shall be user configurable. If the learned set points do not change over a predefined period, the learning process can be stopped and the set points either installed or held for review.

S. EN 50160 Evaluation: Report EN 50160 evaluation data in the following formats: summary of active evaluations, summary of evaluation status, detailed information for each evaluated parameter, and detailed information for each abnormal event.

T. I/O Module: Modular, with multiple I/O options, programmable to accomplish specified performance and one or more spare positions for future. At minimum, the instrument shall provide the following:

1. KYZ Pulse: Solid-state output relay, programmed to generate a standard KYZ pulses for a user-defined increment of metered active energy as follows:

a. User-defined pulse output, associated with kWh.
b. Alarm pulse output, which turns on the pulsing at user-defined point.

2. Digital inputs, each having the following operating modes:

a. Normal: Simple on/off digital inputs.
b. Demand Interval Synch Pulse Accept a demand synch pulse from a utility demand meter.
c. Conditional Energy Control input to control conditional energy accumulation.

3. Output Relays and Control: Output relays shall have normally open and normally closed contacts and shall operate in response to a user sent command over the data link, or automatically responding to an alarm event. The relays shall be user configured in one of the following listed modes:

a. Normal contact closure where the contacts change state for as long as the signal exists.
b. Latched mode when the contacts change state when a pickup signal is received and are held until a dropout signal is received.
c. Timed mode when the contacts change state when a pickup signal is received and are held for a preprogrammed duration.
d. End of Power Demand Interval: When the relay operates as a synch pulse for other devices.
e. Energy Pulse Output: Relay will pulse quantities used for Absolute kWh, Absolute kVARh, kVAh, kWh In, kVARh In, kWh Out, and kVARh Out.
f. Programmed Output: Relay will operate in response to multiple alarms that are arranged to give a single result using Boolean algebra operations.

U. Onboard Data Logs:

1. Log data, alarms and events, and waveforms in onboard solid-state nonvolatile memory.
2. Onboard data logs shall be available for transmission over the communications network for display, archival, and analysis at computer workstations on demand.
3. Data Logs, General: User configurable. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.

a. Each log entry shall hold data of up to 96 parameters each.
b. Each log shall be user configurable to log data at a different user-defined schedule interval.
c. Provide each log with user-defined event or a minimum/maximum condition that will trigger log file entries.
d. Configure log entries to be recorded as Fill & Hold or Circular (FIFO), as defined by the user.

4. Minimum/Maximum Logs:

    a. Minimum/Maximum/Average interval log also logs minimum/maximum/average of selected parameters on a selected interval from a user-selected interval length from 1 to 1440 seconds.
    b. Minimum/Maximum log shall include the time, date, and value for the minimum and maximum of each of the active-time metered values.

5. Alarm Log: Record time, date, event information, and coincident information for each user-defined and automatically initiated alarm or event. The log capacity shall be not less than 1000 events. Record selected parameters at 100-ms intervals during events and alarms. Automatically stamp each entry to the millisecond with date and time.
6. Waveform Logs: Capture and store waveforms as follows:

    a. One cycle, 512 samples, to the 255th harmonic. Manually triggered.
    b. Adjustable from 8 seconds at 18 samples per cycle, to 264 seconds at 16 samples per cycle. Triggered manually or by a user set alarm.
    c. Voltage sampling at 5 MHz (83,333 samples per cycle) more than 2 ms to capture transient peaks of less than 1 microsecond.

V. Programming: Programming of instrument functions shall be similar to BASIC syntax. Provide for initial programming and changes to programs through the communications links.

1. Programming language shall include the following capabilities:

    a. Scheduled tasks.
    b. Event tasks.
    c. Math functions including add, subtract, multiple, divide, sine, cosine, and square root.
    d. Logical functions including: AND, OR, XOR, NOT, shift, and so forth.
    e. Loop commands.
    f. Compare statements.
    g. Counters and timers.

2. Manufacturer shall provide custom programs to meet Project requirements that are described in the "Capacities and Characteristics" Paragraph.
3. Metering of specialized utility rate structures, including real-time pricing and curtailable rates.
4. Data reduction using smart data logging.
5. Automatic monthly logging/reset of kWh and peak demand.
6. Statistical profile analysis of metered quantities.
7. ITIC/SEMI power quality analysis.
8. Calculations for IEEE 519 verification.

9. Metering of combined utilities: gas, water, steam, and electric.
10. Non-critical control schemes, such as load control or power factor correction, based on multiple conditions, for example, time of day and input status.

W. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Supply: **120-V ac, 60 Hz**.
2. Circuit Connections:

    a. Voltage: Measurements auto-ranging, 0- to 600-V ac L-L, 0- to 347-V ac L-N. **Connect to instrument grade potential transformers secondary at 120 V.** Meter impedance shall be 2-megohm L-L or greater.
    b. Current: Connect to instrument grade current transformer with a metering range of 5 mA to 6 A. Overcurrent tolerance of the instrument shall be 15 A continuous, 50 A for 10 seconds once per hour, and 120 A for one second per hour.
    c. Frequency: 45 to 67 Hz, and 350 to 450 Hz.
    d. Time: Input from a GPS receiver to synchronize the internal clock of the instrument and to time-synchronize this instrument with the network to a deviation of not greater than 1 ms.

3. Onboard, Field-Upgradeable, Solid-State Nonvolatile Memory: **8** MB.
4. Number of Onboard Data Logs: **14**.
5. Number of Minimum/Maximum Log Files: **Two**.
6. Alarm Log Capacity: Not less than 1000 events.
7. Custom Programs: Provide the following programs with the instrument:

    a. Metering of specialized utility rate structures, including real-time pricing and curtailable rates.
    b. Data reduction using smart data logging.
    c. Automatic monthly logging/reset of kWh and peak demand.
    d. Statistical profile analysis of metered quantities.
    e. Calculations for IEEE 519 verification.
    f. Metering of combined utilities: gas, water, steam, and electric.
    g. Non-critical control schemes, such as load control or power factor correction, based on multiple conditions such as time of day and input status.

2.7 PC OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. Description: System software shall monitor, analyze, display, control, and save all the parameters and features available at the connected meter.

B. Software: Configured to run on a portable laptop computer, a single PC, or a tablet computer, with capability for accessing a single meter at a time, at the location of the meter. System is not connected to LAN.

C. Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser **32- or 64-**bit operating system that allows execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development. Operating system shall be compatible with or similar to existing operating systems that existing on site.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.
4. Operating system shall be compatible with or match the existing operating systems on-site. Coordinate with end user for existing operating system specifications.

2.8 NETWORKED PC OPERATING SYSTEM SOFTWARE

A. Description: System software shall monitor, analyze, display, control, and save parameters and features available at each of the connected meters.

B. Software: Configured to run on a single PC, with capability for accessing multiple devices simultaneously. Software shall include interactive graphics client and shall be web enabled.

C. System Software Minimum Requirements:

1. Real-time multitasking and multiuser **32- or 64-**bit operating system that allows concurrent multiple workstations operating and concurrent execution of multiple real-time programs and custom program development.
2. Operating system shall be capable of operating Microsoft Windows applications.
3. Database management software shall manage all data on an integrated and non-redundant basis. Additions and deletions to database shall be without detriment to existing data. Include cross linkages so no data required by a program can be deleted by an operator until that data have been deleted from respective programs.
4. Scheduling software shall schedule centrally based time and event, temporary, and exception day programs.

D. Operator Interface Software:

1. Minimize operator training through use of English language prorating and English language point identification.

2. Minimize use of a typewriter-style keyboard through use of a pointing device, touchscreen, or mouse.
3. Operator sign-off shall be a manual operation or, if no keyboard or mouse activity takes place, an automatic sign-off.
4. Automatic sign-off period shall be programmable from 1 to 60 minutes in 1-minute increments on a per operator basis.
5. Record operator sign-on and sign-off activity.
6. Security Access:

    a. Operator access to electrical monitoring and control system shall be under password control.
    b. An alphanumeric password shall be user assignable to each operator.
    c. Software shall have at least five access levels.

        1) View - View information. No change privileges allowed.
        2) User - Same as View, but is able to initiate control functions.
        3) Controller - Same as User, but is able to initiate communications.
        4) Operator - Same as Controller, but is able to modify configurations.
        5) Supervisor - Same as Operator, but is able to administer security privileges.

    d. Each menu item shall be assigned an access level so that a one-for-one correspondence between operator-assigned access level(s) and menu-item access level(s) is required to gain access to menu item.
    e. Display menu items to operator with those menu items capable of access highlighted. Menu and operator access level assignments shall be online programmable and under password control.

E. Graphic Interface Software:

1. Include a full interactive graphical selection means of accessing and displaying system data to operator.
2. Descriptors for graphics, points, alarms, and such shall be modified through workstation under password control.
3. Display operator accessed data on the monitor.
4. Help Features: On-line context-sensitive help utility to facilitate operator training and understanding.

2.9 POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL SOFTWARE

A. Data Storage and Data Sharing:

1. Query and download logs of interval data stored on metering devices.
2. Query and download logs of alarm and event data stored on metering devices.

3. Query and download logs of waveform capture data stored on metering devices.
4. Query and download logs of interval data generated by the software and calculated by the meters.
5. Query and download logs of alarm and event data generated by the software and calculated by the meters.
6. Automatically re-arm the waveform recorders, on upload of information.
7. Provide a facility to archive, trim, and back up the database on demand, or on a schedule.
8. Provide a facility to view historical data from archived databases.
9. Support user changes to the database.

    a. Support on-line changes while the data storage/retrieval application is running.
    b. Suffer no interruption to its operation while changes are being made.
    c. Require no restart once the configuration has been performed.

B. Project-Specific Graphics: Graphics documentation including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Site plan showing each building, and additional site elements, which are being controlled or monitored by the electrical power monitoring and control system.
2. Plan for each building floor, showing the following:

    a. Locations and identification of all monitored and controlled electrical equipment.

3. Control schematic for each device that is controlled by the meters of this Section, including a graphic system schematic representation**, similar to that indicated on Drawings,** with device identification.
4. Graphic display for each piece of equipment connected to the electrical monitoring and control system through a data link.
5. Electrical power monitoring and control system network riser diagram that shows schematic layout for entire system including meters, **gateways, and other network devices**.

2.10 NETWORK CONFIGURATION SOFTWARE

A. Network Management Graphical Interface Features:

1. Add and remove devices in the power monitoring and control network.
2. Application for naming devices based on a user-defined naming scheme.
3. Add and remove I/O servers in the power monitoring and control network.
4. Edit communication properties for devices including timeouts and delays.
5. Display mandatory fields when adding a new device.

6. Allow to manually connect and disconnect serial, Ethernet, modem, and Ethernet gateway sites.
7. Enable and disable devices and sites in the power monitoring and control network without interruption to other devices or sites.
8. Pool modem resources so that the software uses any available modem.
9. Monitor the following diagnostics:

    a. Communication request/response and error rates, and timeouts.
    b. Log acquisition services.

B. Database Maintenance Features:

1. Backup, archive, and trim data, event, and waveform logs.

    a. Record start and end date for operation.
    b. Allow copying data to another database.
    c. Be capable of selecting any or all of the logs specified for the meters that are Work of this Section.

        1) Data logs.
        2) Event logs.
        3) Waveform logs.

C. Web Reporter: Allow viewing historical data in preformatted report templates via a web browser.

1. Features:

    a. User-configurable report generator to trigger on event, based on a schedule, or manual initiation.
    b. Format reports in HTML, PDF, TIF, Excel, XML, or user-selected printer, or network folder.
    c. Distribution of reports via email.

2. Report on power and demand profiles.
3. Power quality report with CBEMA evaluation.
4. EN 50160 compliance report.
5. 100-ms PQ report.
6. Energy over Period Report:

    a. User-defined rollup interval by day, week, month, or year.
    b. Compare daily energy to the following:

        1) Previous day.
        2) Same day, previous week.
        3) Same day, previous month.

4) User-defined specific day.

c. Compare weekly energy to the following:

1) Previous week.
2) Same week from previous month.
3) Same week from previous year.
4) User-defined specific week.

d. Compare monthly energy to the following:

1) Previous month.
2) Same month from previous year.
3) User-defined specific month.

e. Compare annual energy to the following:

1) Previous year.
2) User-defined specific year.

7. Energy by daily period report for the user-defined periods. Aggregate consumption of the periods by the day, week, and year.
8. Tabular Report: Show values for multiple measurements and measurements from multiple devices in tabular format.
9. Trend Report:

a. Show values for multiple measurements and measurements from multiple devices in any of the following graphical formats:

1) Line chart.
2) Pie graph.
3) Bar chart.
4) Column chart.
5) Smooth line chart.
6) Stacked column chart.
7) Stacked bar chart.

10. Alarm and Event History: User formatted, based on the meters and priority; and with user-defined alarm and event reports.
11. System Configuration Report:

a. Device name.
b. Device type.
c. Device address.
d. Connection status.
e. Device protocol.

f. Device description.

12. Each default report shall include the following:

a. Summary aggregation of data from the selected devices.
b. Individual device information.
c. Raw data.

13. The reporting tool shall provide a graphical interface to create and manage multiple Time of Use schedules:

a. Tariffs including energy cost rates per kWh, kVARh, and kVAh, and demand charges per kW, kVAR, and kVA.
b. Off-peak and on-peak times.

2.11 MONITORING AND CONTROL OF POWER DISTRIBUTION EQUIPMENT

A. Power Distribution Equipment: Web-enabled, direct connected to the LAN or intranet.

B. Instrument Transformers: Comply with IEEE C57.13.

1. Potential Transformers: Secondary voltage rating of 120 V and NEMA C12.11 accuracy class of 0.3 with burdens of W, X, and Y.
2. Current Transformers: Burden and accuracy class suitable for connected relays, meters, and instruments.

C. Ethernet Connectivity:

1. A multipoint, RS-485 Modbus serial communications network shall be included within the equipment to interconnect breaker trip units, protective relays, drives, and metering devices equipped with communications.
2. Serial communications network shall be wired to an Ethernet server in the incoming section of the equipment. Hardware and cabling required for the connection to the network shall be included within the power distribution equipment.
3. Serial communications devices within the equipment shall be factory addressed and tested to verify reliable communications to the equipment's Ethernet Server.

D. Ethernet Gateways:

1. User configurable; complying with UL 60950-1, and IEEE 802.3, Class 3 PoE.
2. Include provisions to set initial Ethernet parameters via a local operator interface, or standard (RJ-45) Ethernet port, that is accessible from the front of the equipment. Initial setup shall be limited to basic Ethernet addressing parameters, as assigned by Owner.

3. Common Gateway Features:

    a. User configurable, with secure password-protected login process.
    b. Include communications diagnostic information for serial and Ethernet ports as well as internal health status and memory management information through embedded HTML web pages for viewing using a standard web browser.
    c. Include embedded HTML pages providing real-time information from devices connected to the Ethernet gateway's RS-485 port(s) through a standard web browser.
    d. Allow firmware upgrades through the communications port.

4. Include a "Quick-Start" guide with the equipment to describe the commissioning process for setting the equipment's Ethernet network address and for ensuring trouble-free data access from any PC on the network, using a standard web browser.
5. Implement a common user interface ("look and feel") across all styles of power equipment.

E. Distribution Equipment Monitoring:

1. Main menu and summary pages, factory configured, to display data for each communicating device within the power equipment lineup.
2. Display Data:

    a. Circuit summary page to display circuit name, three-phase average rms current, real power (kW), power factor, and breaker status (if applicable).
    b. Load current summary page to display circuit name, and phase a, b, and c rms current values.
    c. Demand current summary page to display circuit name, and phase a, b, and c average demand current values.
    d. Power summary page to display circuit name, present demand power (kW), peak demand power (kW), and recorded time and date.
    e. Energy summary page to display circuit name, real energy (kWh), reactive energy (kVARh), and time/date of last reset.
    f. For unit substations equipped with dry-type transformer(s) and microbased temperature controller(s), the circuit summary web page listed above shall be augmented with transformer coil temperatures, phase a, b and c current values, and cooling fan status (on/off).
    g. For motor-control centers, the circuit summary web page shall be tailored specifically for this application, to display circuit name, three-phase average rms current, thermal capacity (percentage), drive output frequency (in Hertz, where applicable), and contactor status.

2.12 SYSTEM OPERATOR INTERFACES

A. Operator means of system access shall be through the following:

1. Desktop workstation with hardwired connection through LAN port.
2. Portable terminal with hardwired connection through LAN port at each meter.
3. Remote connection using outside of system PC, tablet, or phone using an internet portal.

2.13 DESKTOP WORKSTATIONS

A. Performance Requirements:

1. Performance requirements may dictate equipment exceeding minimum requirements indicated.
2. Capable of running **Microsoft Windows**.
3. ENERGY STAR compliant.

B. Personal Computer:

1. Minimum Processor Speed: **Core i7**.
2. RAM:

    a. Capacity: **250 GB**.
    b. Speed and Type: **1333** MHz.

3. Primary Hard Drive:

    a. Media: **Solid state**.
    b. Number of Hard Drives: **One**.
    c. Capacity: 700 GB.
    d. Minimum Average Seek Time: minimum seek time required by the operating system manufacturer.
    e. Cache Buffer Size: minimum Cashe size required by the operating system manufacturer.

4. Second Hard Drive:

    a. Media: **Solid state**.
    b. Capacity: 700 GB.
    c. Minimum Average Seek Time: minimum seek time required by the operating system manufacturer.

d. Cache Buffer Size: minimum Cashe size required by the operating system manufacturer.

5. Optical Drive:

a. Include with at least 2 MB of data buffer.
b. Type: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
c. Minimum Average Access Time: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
d. Data Transfer Speed: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
e. Reading Formats: Data, audio, recordable, and rewritable.

6. Optical Read and Write Drive:

a. Include with at least 2 MB of data buffer.
b. Type: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
c. Minimum Data Buffer Capacity: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
d. Minimum Average Access Time: as required by the operating system manufacturer.
e. Nominal Data Transfer Rates: as required by the operating system manufacturer.

f. Average access time of 150 ms or less.
g. MTBF of at least 100,000 power-on hours.

7. Expansion Slots: Minimum of 4, **64** bit.
8. Video Card:

a. Capable of supporting **three** monitors.
b. Resolution: **1920 by 1200** pixels minimum for each monitor.
c. RAM: 250 **TB**.
d. Controller Speed: 700 **GHz**.
e. On-Board Memory Speed: 700 **GHz**].
f. On-Board Memory Data Width: 64 bit.

9. Sound Card:

a. At least 128 voice wavetable synthesis.
b. Capable of delivering three-dimensional sound effects.
c. High-resolution 16-bit stereo digital audio recording and playback with user-selectable sample rates up to 48,000 Hz.

10. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as applicable.

a. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.

b. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.

11. Wireless Ethernet, 802.11 a/b/g/n.
12. Optical Modem: Full duplex link for connection to optical fiber cable provided.
13. I/O Ports:

    a. Two USB 3.0 ports on front panel, six on back panel, and three internal on motherboard.
    b. One serial port.
    c. One parallel port.
    d. Two PS/2 ports.
    e. One RJ-45.
    f. One stereo line-in and line-out on back panel.
    g. One microphone and headphone connector on front panel.
    h. One IEEE 1394 on front and back panel with PCI-e card.
    i. One ESATA port on back panel.

14. Battery: Life of at least three years to maintain system clock/calendar and ROM, as a minimum.

C. Keyboard:

1. 101-key enhanced keyboard.
2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset, numeric keypad, dedicated cursor control keypad, and 12 programmable function keys.
3. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches (1800 mm) in front of workstation.

D. Pointing Device:

1. Either a two- or three-button mouse.
2. Wireless operation within up to 72 inches (1800 mm) in front of workstation.

E. Flat Panel Display Monitor:

1. Number of Displays: **Two**.

    a. Display Support: **Individual tilt adjustable base, Desk mounted, adjustable bracket capable of supporting number of monitors specified above with integral power and display cable organization, or Wall mounted, adjustable bracket capable of supporting number of monitors specified above with integral power and display cable organization.**

2. Color display with minimum 36 **Insert inches** diagonal viewable area.
3. Aspect Ratio: **16 to 9**.
4. Resolution: **1920 by 1080** pixels at 60 Hz with pixel size of **0.277** mm or smaller.

5. **Digital and analog** input signal.
6. Response Time: 160 ms.
7. Dynamic Contrast Ratio: **50000 to 1**.
8. Brightness: **250 cd/sq. m**.
9. ENERGY STAR compliant.
10. Antiglare display.

F. Speakers:

1. Two, with individual controls for volume, bass, and treble.
2. Signal to Noise Ratio: At least 65 dB.
3. Power: At least 4 W per speaker/channel.
4. Magnetic shielding to prevent distortion on the video monitor.

G. I/O Cabling: Include applicable cabling to connect I/O devices.

H. Software:

1. Factory-installed operating system.

2.14 PORTABLE WORKSTATIONS

A. Processor:

1. Minimum Processor Speed: **Core i7**.
2. RAM:

   a. Capacity: **250 GB**.
   b. Speed and Type: **1333** MHz.

3. Hard Drive:

   a. Media: **Solid state**.
   b. Number of Hard Drives: **Two**.
   c. Capacity: minimum capacity required by the operating system manufacturer.
   d. Minimum Average Seek Time: minimum seek time required by the operating system manufacturer.
   e. Cache Buffer Size: minimum Cashe size required by the operating system manufacturer.

4. Video Card: 250 TB of RAM.

B. Input and Output Ports:

1. Serial port.
2. Shared port for external keyboard or mouse.
3. Four USB 3.0 ports.
4. Ethernet port.
5. HDMI port.
6. IEEE 1394 port.

C. Battery:

1. Capable of supporting operation of portable workstation for a minimum of **8** hours.
2. Battery life of at least three years.
3. Battery charge time of less than three hours.
4. Spare Batteries: **One**.

D. Keyboard:

1. 85-key keyboard.
2. Full upper- and lowercase ASCII keyset.

E. Integral Pointing Device: Touchpad with two buttons. Gesture enabled.

F. Display:

1. Minimum 36 **inches** diagonal or larger high-definition WLED color display.
2. Antiglare screen.
3. **1920 by 1080** pixel resolution.
4. Brightness: 300 nits.

G. Network Interfaces

1. Network Interface Card: Include card with connection, as application.

    a. 10-100-1000 base TX Ethernet with RJ45 connector port.
    b. 100 base FX Ethernet with SC or ST port.

2. Wireless:

    a. Internal with integrated antenna, capable of supporting 802.11 a/b/g/n.

H. Digital Video Disc Rewrite Recorder (DVD+/-RW):

1. Compatible with DVD disks and data, audio, recordable and rewritable compact disks.

2. Nominal Data Transfer Rates: minimum required by manufacturer

3. 160-ms access time.

I. Accessories:

1. Nylon carrying case.
2. Docking station.
3. Mobile broadband card.
4. Wireless optical mouse.
5. 8 **TB** portable hard drive.
6. Light-sensitive web cam and noise-cancelling digital array microphone.
7. Category 6a patch cable. Minimum cable length shall be 15 feet.
8. HDMI cable. Minimum cable length shall be 15 feet.

2.15 RACEWAYS AND BOXES

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power wiring and NFPA 70 Class 1 remote-control and signaling circuits.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for control wiring, RS-232 cable, and NFPA 70 Class 2 remote-control and signaling circuits.

2.16 WIRES AND CABLES

A. Electrical Power Wiring: Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Copper conductors are Type THHN/THWN-2.

B. Control Wiring: Comply with requirements in Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables."

1. Optical-Fiber Cable: Multimode, 50/125-micrometer OM3, six-fiber, **nonconductive,** tight-buffer, optical-fiber cable, with aqua jacket.
2. Balanced Twisted Pair Cable: 100-ohm, four-pair **Category 6**.
3. Workstation Outlets: Four-port-connector assemblies mounted in single or multi-gang faceplate. Coordinate color and labels with Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."
4. RS-485 Cable: Paired, **two pairs**, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned-copper conductors.

5. Low-Voltage Control Cable: Multiple conductor, color-coded, No. 20 AWG copper, minimum.

    a. Sheath: PVC; except in plenum-type spaces, use sheath listed for plenums.
    b. Ordinary Switching Circuits: Three conductors unless otherwise indicated.
    c. Switching Circuits with Pilot Lights or Locator Feature: Five conductors unless otherwise indicated.

C. RS-232 Cable:

1. PVC-Jacketed, RS-232 Cable: Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, polypropylene insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; PVC jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

    a. Type CM.
    b. Flame Resistance: UL 1581, vertical tray.

2. Plenum-Type, RS-232 Cable: Paired, two pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors, plastic insulation, and individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage; plastic jacket. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.

    a. Type CMP.
    b. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, flame test.

2.17 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, **Type 2**.

1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Include Form-C contacts rated at 5 A and 250-V ac, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. **Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.**

B. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than **100 kA**. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual metal-oxide varistors in a given mode.

C. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Protection modes and UL 1449 SPD for grounded wye circuits with **208Y/120 V**, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. L-N: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
2. L-G: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
3. N-G: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
4. L-L: **2000 V for 480Y/277 V**, **1200 V for 208Y/120 V**.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 SPD for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. L-N: 700 V.
2. L-G: 700 V.
3. N-G: 700 V.
4. L-L: 1200 V.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed **100** kA.

G. Nominal Rating: **20** kA.

H. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

I. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways, cable trays, and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POWER MONITORING AND CONTROL SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Wiring and Cabling Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power wiring.
2. Comply with Section 260523 "Control-Voltage Electrical Power Cables" for control wiring.

E. Raceways Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for electrical power wiring and NFPA 70 Class 1 remote-control and signaling circuits.
2. Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for control wiring, RS-232 cable, and NFPA 70 Class 2 remote-control and signaling circuits.

F. Identification Installation:

1. Comply with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for electrical power wiring.
2. Comply with Section 271513 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling" for identification products and cable management system requirements for twisted pair cable, RS-485 cable, low-voltage control cable, and RS-232 cable.
3. Comply with Section 271523 "Communications Optical Fiber Horizontal Cabling" for identification products and cable management system requirements for optical-fiber cable.

3.3 WORKSTATION INSTALLATION

A. Desktop Workstations Installation:

1. Install workstation(s) at location(s) directed by Owner.
2. Install multiple-receptacle power strip with cord for use in connecting multiple workstation components to a single, duplex electrical power receptacle.
3. Install software on workstation(s) and verify that software functions properly.
4. Develop Project-specific graphics, trends, reports, logs, and historical database.
5. Power workstation through a UPS unit. Locate UPS adjacent to workstation.

B. Portable Workstations Installation:

1. Turn over portable workstations to Owner at Substantial Completion.
2. Install software on workstation(s) and verify that software functions properly.

C. Graphics Application:

1. Use system schematics indicated as starting point to create graphics.
2. Develop Project-specific library of symbols for representing system equipment and products.
3. Incorporate digital images of Project-completed installation into graphics where beneficial to enhance effect.
4. Submit sketch of graphic layout with description of all text for each graphic for Owner's **and Architect's** review before creating graphic using graphics software.
5. Seek Owner input in graphics development once using graphics software.
6. Final editing shall be done on-site with Owner's review and feedback.
7. Refine graphics as necessary for Owner acceptance.
8. On receiving Owner acceptance, print a hard copy to include in operation and maintenance manual. Prepare a scanned copy PDF file of each graphic and include with softcopy of the system operation and maintenance manual.

3.4 NETWORK NAMING AND NUMBERING

A. Coordinate with Owner and provide unique naming and addressing for networks and devices.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. For data communication wiring, comply with NECA/BICSI 568.

B. For low-voltage control wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**:

1. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.
2. Visually inspect balanced twisted pair cabling and optical-fiber cable jacket materials for UL or third-party certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations

to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with TIA-568-C.1.

3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test balanced twisted pair cabling for direct-current loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination, but not after cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.2. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in its "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in its "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

5. Optical-Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in TIA-568-C.0. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.
    b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

        1) Multimode Link Measurements: Test at 850 or 1300 nm in one direction according to IEC 61280-4-1.
        2) Attenuation test results for links shall be less than **2.0 dB or that calculated according to equation in TIA-568-C.0, whichever value is more stringent**.

    c. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

6. Power Monitoring and Control System Tests.

    a. Test Analog Signals:

        1) Check analog voltage signals using a precision voltage meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.

2) Check analog current signals using a precision current meter at zero, 50, and 100 percent.
3) Check resistance signals for temperature sensors at zero, 50, and 100 percent of operating span using a precision-resistant source.

b. Test Digital Signals:

1) Check digital signals using a jumper wire.
2) Check digital signals using an ohmmeter to test for contact making or breaking.

c. I/O Control Loop Tests:

1) Test every I/O point to verify that safety and operating control set points are as indicated and as required to operate controlled system safely and at optimum performance.
2) Test every I/O point throughout its full operating range.
3) Test every control loop to verify that operation is stable and accurate.
4) Adjust control loop proportional, integral, and derivative settings to achieve optimum performance while complying with performance requirements indicated. Document testing of each control loop's precision and stability via trend logs.
5) Test and adjust every control loop for proper operation according to sequence of operation.
6) Test software and hardware interlocks for proper operation.
7) Operate each analog point at the following:

a) Upper quarter of range.
b) Lower quarter of range.
c) At midpoint of range.

8) Exercise each binary point.
9) For every I/O point in the system, read and record each value at workstation, at controller, and at field instrument simultaneously. Value displayed at workstation and at field instrument shall match.
10) Prepare and submit a report documenting results for each I/O point in the system, and include in each I/O point a description of corrective measures and adjustments made to achieve desired results.

D. Wiring and cabling will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.7 FINAL REVIEW

A. Submit written request to Architect **and Construction Manager** when the power monitoring and control system is ready for final review. Written request shall state the following:

1. The system has been thoroughly inspected for compliance with Contract Documents and found to be in full compliance.
2. The system has been calibrated, adjusted, and tested and found to comply with requirements of operational stability, accuracy, speed, and other performance requirements indicated.
3. The system monitoring and control of electrical distribution systems results in operation according to sequences of operation indicated.
4. The system is complete and ready for final review.

B. Review by **Architect and Construction Manager** will be made after receipt of written request. A field report shall be issued to document observations and deficiencies.

C. Take prompt action to remedy deficiencies indicated in field report and submit a second written request when all deficiencies have been corrected. Repeat process until no deficiencies are reported.

D. Final review shall include a demonstration to parties participating in final review.

3.8 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include **12** months' full maintenance by manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include **semiannual** preventive maintenance, repair or replacement of defective components, cleaning, and adjusting as required for proper system operation. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.9 SOFTWARE SERVICE AGREEMENT

A. Technical Support: Beginning at Substantial Completion, service agreement shall include software support for **two** years.

B. Upgrade Service: At Substantial Completion, update software to latest version. Install and program software upgrades that become available within **two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Upgrading software shall include operating system and new or revised licenses for using software.

1. Upgrade Notice: At least **30** days to allow Owner to schedule and access the system and to upgrade computer equipment if necessary.

3.10 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain the power monitoring and control system.

B. Extent of Training:

1. Base extent of training on scope and complexity of power monitoring and control system indicated and training requirements indicated. Provide extent of training required to satisfy requirements indicated even if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
2. Inform Owner of anticipated training requirements if more than minimum training requirements are indicated.
3. Minimum Training Requirements:

    a. Provide no fewer than **two** days of training total.
    b. Stagger training over multiple training classes to accommodate Owner's requirements. All training shall occur before end of warranty period.
    c. Total days of training shall be broken into not more than **four** separate training classes.
    d. Each training class shall be no fewer than **two** consecutive day(s).

C. Attendee Training Manuals:

1. Provide each attendee with a hard-colored copy of all training materials and visual presentations.
2. Hard-copy materials shall be organized in a three-ring binder with table of contents and individual divider tabs marked for each logical grouping of subject matter. Organize material to provide space for attendees to take handwritten notes within training manuals.
3. In addition to hard-copy materials included in training manual, provide each binder with a sleeve or pocket that includes a DVD or flash drive with PDF copy of all hard-copy materials.

D. Instructor Requirements:

1. One or multiple qualified instructors, as required, to provide training.
2. Instructors shall have no fewer than **five** years of providing instructional training on no fewer than **five** past projects with similar electrical monitoring and control system scope and complexity.

E. Training Outline: Submit training outline for Owner review at least **10** business days before scheduling training. Outline shall include a detailed agenda for each training day that is broken down into each training session that day, training objectives for each training session, and synopses for each lesson planned.

F. On-Site Training:

1. Owner will provide conditioned classroom or workspace with ample desks or tables, chairs, power, and data connectivity for instructor and each attendee.
2. Instructor shall provide training materials, projector, and other audiovisual equipment used in training.
3. Provide as much of training located on-site as deemed feasible and practical by Owner.
4. On-site training shall include regular walk-through tours, as required, to observe each unique product type installed with hands-on review of operation, calibration, and service requirements.
5. The workstation provided with the system shall be used in training. If workstation is not indicated, provide a temporary workstation to convey training content.

G. Off-Site Training:

1. Provide conditioned training rooms and workspace with ample tables, chairs, power, and data connectivity for each attendee.
2. Provide capability to remotely access to Project monitoring and control system for use in training.
3. Provide a workstation for use by each attendee.

3.11 At Completion of Training:

A. Staff familiar with the system installed are capable of demonstrating operation of the system during final review.

B. Demonstration shall include, but not be limited to, the following:

1. Accuracy and calibration of **10** I/O points randomly selected by reviewers. If review finds that some I/O points are not properly calibrated and not satisfying performance requirements indicated, additional I/O points may be selected by reviewers until total I/O points being reviewed that satisfy requirements equals quantity indicated.
2. Reporting of alarm conditions for randomly selected alarms, including different classes of alarms, to ensure that alarms are properly received by operators and workstations.
3. Trends, summaries, logs, and reports set-up for Project.
4. Software's ability to communicate with controllers, workstations, and uploading and downloading of control programs.
5. Software's ability to edit control programs off-line.
6. Data entry to show Project-specific customizing capability including parameter changes.

7. Step through penetration tree, display all graphics, demonstrate dynamic update, and direct access to graphics.
8. Execution of digital and analog commands in graphic mode.
9. Spreadsheet and curve plot software and its integration with database.
10. Online user guide and help functions.
11. For Each Meter:

    a. Memory: Programmed data, parameters, trend, and alarm history collected during normal operation is not lost during power failure.
    b. Operator Interface: Ability to connect directly to each meter with a portable workstation.
    c. Wiring Labels: Match control drawings.
    d. Network Communication: Ability to locate a meter on the network. Communication architecture matches Shop Drawings.
    e. Nameplates and Tags: Accurate and permanently attached to control panel doors, instrument, actuators, and devices.

12. For Each Workstation:

    a. I/O point lists agree with naming conventions.
    b. Graphics are complete.
    c. UPS unit, if applicable, operates.

END OF SECTION 26 09 13

SECTION 26 09 23 - LIGHTING CONTROL DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. This Section includes the following lighting control devices:

1. Lighting control system.
2. Outdoor photoelectric switches.
3. Lighting contactors.
4. Occupancy sensor

B. Related Sections include the following:

1. Division 26 Section "Wiring Devices" for manual light switches.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

B. Field quality-control test reports.

C. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use.

1.5 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of ceiling-mounted devices with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, smoke detectors, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 LIGHTING CONTROL

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Lutron.
2. LC&D.
3. Lithonia Synergy.

B. Controller: Electronic, solid-state programmable units with alphanumeric display

1. Contact inputs for photocell.
2. Programmable scheduling for each zone.
3. Astronomic Time: All zones.
4. Battery Backup: For schedules and time clock.
5. Provide dimming and standard controls for low voltage switches as required.
6. Interface motion sensor with lighting control system.

2.2 OCCUPANCY SENSORS

A. Wall-Switch Sensors:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; 6111 for 120 V, 6117 for 277 V.
b. Hubbell; WS1277.
c. Leviton; ODS 10-ID.
d. Pass & Seymour; WS3000.
e. Watt Stopper (The); WS-200.

2. Description: Passive-infrared type, 120/277 V, adjustable time delay up to 30 minutes, 180-degree field of view, with a minimum coverage area of 900 sq. ft..

2.3 OUTDOOR PHOTOELECTRIC SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Intermatic, Inc.
2. Paragon Electric Co.; Invensys Climate Controls.
3. TORK.

B. Description: Solid state, with SPST dry contacts rated for 1800-VA tungsten or 1000-VA inductive, to operate connected relay, contactor coils, or microprocessor input; complying with UL 773A.

1. Light-Level Monitoring Range: 1.5 to 10 fc, with an adjustment for turn-on and turn-off levels within that range, and a directional lens in front of photocell to prevent fixed light sources from causing turn-off.
2. Time Delay: 15-second minimum, to prevent false operation.
3. Surge Protection: Metal-oxide varistor, complying with IEEE C62.41.1, IEEE C62.41.2, and IEEE 62.45 for Category A1 locations.
4. Mounting: Twist lock complying with IEEE C136.10, with base-and-stem mounting or stem-and-swivel mounting accessories as required to direct sensor to the north sky exposure.

2.4 LIGHTING CONTACTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Allen-Bradley/Rockwell Automation.
2. ASCO Power Technologies, LP; a division of Emerson Electric Co.
3. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Products.
4. GE Industrial Systems; Total Lighting Control.
5. Square D; Schneider Electric.

B. Description: Electrically operated and electrically held, combination type with, complying with NEMA ICS 2 and UL 508.

1. Current Rating for Switching: Listing or rating consistent with type of load served, including tungsten filament, inductive, and high-inrush ballast (ballast with 15 percent or less total harmonic distortion of normal load current).
2. Fault Current Withstand Rating: Equal to or exceeding the available fault current at the point of installation.
3. Enclosure: Comply with NEMA 250.
4. Provide with control and pilot devices as indicated on Drawings, matching the NEMA type specified for the enclosure.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring to Supply Side of Remote-Control Power Sources: Not smaller than No. 12 AWG. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CONTACTOR INSTALLATION

A. Mount electrically held lighting contactors with elastomeric isolator pads, to eliminate structure-borne vibration, unless contactors are installed in an enclosure with factory-installed vibration isolators.

3.2 WIRING INSTALLATION

A. Wiring Method: Comply with Division 26 Section "Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables." Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Comply with NECA 1. Separate power-limited and nonpower-limited conductors according to conductor manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Size conductors according to lighting control device manufacturer's written instructions, unless otherwise indicated.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Make connections only on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures.

E. Per manufacturers requirements for system

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify components and power and control wiring according to Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify controlled circuits in lighting contactors.
2. Identify circuits or luminaries controlled by photoelectric and occupancy sensors at each sensor.

B. Label time switches and contactors with a unique designation.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following field tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. After installing time switches and sensors, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, adjust and test for compliance with requirements.
2. Operational Test: Verify operation of each lighting control device and adjust time delays.

B. Lighting control devices that fail tests and inspections are defective work.

END OF SECTION 26 09 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 13 - SWITCHBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Service and distribution switchboards rated 600 V and less.
2. Surge protection devices.
3. Disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.
4. Instrumentation.
5. Control power.
6. Accessory components and features.
7. Identification.
8. Mimic bus.

B. Related Requirements

1. Section 26 05 73.19 "Arc-Flash Hazard Analysis" for arc-flash analysis and arc-flash label requirements.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each switchboard, overcurrent protective device, surge protection device, ground-fault protector, accessory, and component.

1. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, accessories, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each switchboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details, including required clearances and service space around equipment. Show tabulations of installed devices, equipment features, and ratings.
2. Detail enclosure types for types other than NEMA 250, Type 1.
3. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.

4. Detail short-circuit current rating of switchboards and overcurrent protective devices.
5. Include descriptive documentation of optional barriers specified for electrical insulation and isolation.
6. Detail utility company's metering provisions with indication of approval by utility company.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.
10. Include diagram and details of proposed mimic bus.
11. Include schematic and wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Samples: Representative portion of mimic bus with specified material and finish, for color selection.

D. Delegated Design Submittal:

1. For arc-flash hazard analysis.
2. For arc-flash labels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For **Installer and testing agency**.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field Quality-Control Reports:

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For switchboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Routine maintenance requirements for switchboards and all installed components.
b. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
c. Time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in switchboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Potential Transformer Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than two of each size and type.
2. Control-Power Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.
3. Fuses and Fusible Devices for Fused Circuit Breakers: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
5. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no fewer than three of each size and type.
6. Indicating Lights: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type but no less than one of each size and type.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers qualified as defined in NEMA PB 2.1 and trained in electrical safety as required by NFPA 70E.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Deliver switchboards in sections or lengths that can be moved past obstructions in delivery path.

B. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside switchboards and **connect factory-installed space heaters to temporary electrical service** to prevent condensation. Coordinate temporary electric connections in field based on factory heater requirements.

C. Handle and prepare switchboards for installation according to **NECA 400 and NEMA PB 2.1**.

1.9 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Installation Pathway: Remove and replace access fencing, doors, lift-out panels, and structures to provide pathway for moving switchboards into place.

B. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install switchboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above switchboards is complete, and HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C).
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Unusual Service Conditions: NEMA PB 2, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

D. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify **Architect, Construction Manager, Owner** no fewer than **seven** days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Indicate method of providing temporary electric service.
3. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without **Architect's, Construction Manager's, Owner's** written permission.
4. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.10 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switchboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Coordinate sizes and locations of concrete bases with actual equipment provided. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace switchboard enclosures, buswork, overcurrent protective devices, accessories, and factory installed interconnection wiring that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Three** years from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer's agrees to repair or replace surge protection devices that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Switchboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.
2. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event**."

2.2 SWITCHBOARDS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for switchboards including clearances between switchboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 2.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Comply with UL 891.

G. Front-Connected, Front-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: **Panel Fixed, individually** mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Sections front and rear aligned.

H. Front- and Side-Accessible Switchboards:

1. Main Devices: Fixed, individually mounted.
2. Branch Devices: Panel mounted.
3. Section Alignment: **Front and Rear** aligned.

I. Nominal System Voltage: **480Y/277 V**.

J. Main-Bus Continuous: **2000A**.

K. Seismic Requirements: Fabricate and test switchboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156.

a. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."
b. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

L. Indoor Enclosures: Steel, NEMA 250, **Type 1**.

M. Enclosure Finish for Indoor Units: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's **standard gray** finish over a rust-inhibiting primer on treated metal surface.

1. Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), with integral thermostat and with capacity to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **40 deg F (5 deg C)** with outside design temperature of **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C).**
2. Power for Space Heaters: Include a control-power transformer, with spare capacity of 25 percent, within the switchboard.

N. Outdoor Enclosures: **Type 3R**.

1. Finish: Factory-applied finish in manufacturer's **standard** color; undersurfaces treated with corrosion-resistant undercoating.
2. Enclosure: **Flat** roof; **bolt-on rear covers** for each section, with provisions for padlocking.
3. Doors: Personnel door at each end of aisle, minimum width of **30 inches (762 mm)**; opening outwards; with panic hardware and provisions for **padlocking**. At least one door shall be sized to permit the largest single switchboard section to pass through without disassembling doors, hinges, or switchboard section.
4. Accessories: LED luminaires, ceiling mounted; wired to a three-way light switch at each end of aisle; ground-fault circuit interrupter (GFCI) duplex receptacle; emergency battery pack luminaire installed on wall of aisle midway between personnel doors.
5. Walk-in Aisle Heating and Ventilating:

    a. Factory-installed electric unit heater(s), wall or ceiling mounted, with integral thermostat and disconnect and with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **40 deg F (5 deg C)** with outside design temperature of **0 deg F (minus 18 deg C)**.
    b. Factory-installed exhaust fan with capacities to maintain switchboard interior temperature of **100 deg F (38 deg C)** with outside design temperature of **90 deg F (32 deg C)**.
    c. Ventilating openings **complete with replaceable fiberglass air filters**.
    d. Thermostat: Single stage; wired to control heat and exhaust fan.

6. Power for Space Heaters, Ventilation, Lighting, and Receptacle: Include a control-power transformer, with spare capacity of 25 percent, within the switchboard. Supply voltage shall be **120/208 V** ac.
7. Power for space heaters, ventilation, lighting, and receptacle provided by a remote source.

O. Barriers: Between adjacent switchboard sections.

P. Insulation and isolation for **main bus of main section and** main and vertical buses of feeder sections.

Q. Space Heaters: Factory-installed electric space heaters of sufficient wattage in each vertical section to maintain enclosure temperature above expected dew point.

1. Space-Heater Control: **Thermostats to maintain temperature of each section above expected dew point**.
2. Space-Heater Power Source: **Transformer, factory installed in switchboard**.

R. Service Entrance Rating: Switchboards intended for use as service entrance equipment shall contain from one to six service disconnecting means with overcurrent protection, a neutral bus with disconnecting link, a grounding electrode conductor terminal, and a main bonding jumper.

S. Utility Metering Compartment: Barrier compartment and section complying with utility company's requirements; hinged sealable door; buses provisioned for mounting utility company's current transformers and potential transformers or potential taps as required by utility company. If separate vertical section is required for utility metering, match and align with basic switchboard. Provide service entrance label and necessary applicable service entrance features.

T. Customer Metering Compartment: A separate customer metering compartment **and section with front hinged door,** and section with front hinged door, for indicated metering, and current transformers for each meter. Current transformer secondary wiring shall be terminated on shorting-type terminal blocks. **Include potential transformers having primary and secondary fuses with disconnecting means and secondary wiring terminated on terminal blocks.**

U. Bus Transition and Incoming Pull Sections: Matched and aligned with basic switchboard.

V. Removable, Hinged Rear Doors and Compartment Covers: Secured by **standard bolts**, for access to rear interior of switchboard.

W. Hinged Front Panels: Allow access to circuit breaker, metering, accessory, and blank compartments.

X. Pull Box on Top of Switchboard:

1. Adequate ventilation to maintain temperature in pull box within same limits as switchboard.
2. Set back from front to clear circuit-breaker removal mechanism.
3. Removable covers shall form top, front, and sides. Top covers at rear shall be easily removable for drilling and cutting.
4. Bottom shall be insulating, fire-resistive material with separate holes for cable drops into switchboard.
5. Cable supports shall be arranged to facilitate cabling and adequate to support cables indicated, including those for future installation.

Y. Buses and Connections: Three phase, four wire unless otherwise indicated.

1. Provide phase bus arrangement A, B, C from front to back, top to bottom, and left to right when viewed from the front of the switchboard.
2. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, **silver-plated**.
3. Phase- and Neutral-Bus Material: Tin-plated, high-strength, electrical-grade aluminum alloy with tin-plated aluminum circuit-breaker line connections.
4. Copper feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
5. Tin-plated aluminum feeder circuit-breaker line connections.
6. Load Terminals: Insulated, rigidly braced, runback bus extensions, of same material as through buses, equipped with **mechanical** connectors for outgoing circuit conductors. Provide load terminals for future circuit-breaker positions at full-ampere rating of circuit-breaker position.
7. Ground Bus: **1/4-by-2-inch** hard-drawn copper of 98 percent conductivity, equipped with **mechanical** connectors for feeder and branch-circuit ground conductors.
8. Main-Phase Buses and Equipment-Ground Buses: Uniform capacity for entire length of switchboard's main and distribution sections. Provide for future extensions from both ends.
9. Disconnect Links:

    a. Isolate neutral bus from incoming neutral conductors.
    b. Bond neutral bus to equipment-ground bus for switchboards utilized as service equipment or separately derived systems.
10. Neutral Buses: 100 percent of the ampacity of phase buses unless otherwise indicated, equipped with **mechanical** connectors for outgoing circuit neutral cables. Brace bus extensions for busway feeder neutral bus.
11. Isolation Barrier Access Provisions: Permit checking of bus-bolt tightness.

Z. Future Devices: Equip compartments with mounting brackets, supports, bus connections, and appurtenances at full rating of circuit-breaker compartment.

AA. Bus-Bar Insulation: Factory-applied, flame-retardant, tape wrapping of individual bus bars or flame-retardant, spray-applied insulation. Minimum insulation temperature rating of 105 deg C.

BB. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components including instruments and instrument transformers.

2.3 SURGE PROTECTION DEVICES

A. SPDs: Comply with UL 1449, **Type 2**.

B. SPDs: Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, **Type 2**.

C. Features and Accessories:

1. Integral disconnect switch.
2. Internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
3. Indicator light display for protection status.
4. Form-C contacts rated at **30 A and 600-V ac**, one normally open and one normally closed, for remote monitoring of protection status. **Contacts shall reverse on failure of any surge diversion module or on opening of any current-limiting device. Coordinate with building power monitoring and control system.**
5. Surge counter.

D. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than **200 kA**. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.

E. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with **480Y/277 V**, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

1. Line to Neutral: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
2. Line to Ground: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 1200 V for 208Y/120 V**.
3. Line to Line: **2000 V for 480Y/277 V, 1000 V for 208Y/120 V**.

F. SCCR: Equal or exceed **100 kA**.

G. Nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.4 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. Molded-Case Circuit Breaker (MCCB): Comply with UL 489, with **interrupting capacity** to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.
2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic trip circuit breakers with rms sensing; field-replaceable rating plug or field-replicable electronic trip; and the following field-adjustable settings:

a. Instantaneous trip.
b. Long- and short-time pickup levels.
c. Long and short time adjustments.
d. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. Integrally Fused Circuit Breakers: Thermal-magnetic trip element with integral limiter-style fuse listed for use with circuit breaker; trip activation on fuse opening or on opening of fuse compartment door.
6. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
7. Ground-Fault Equipment Protection (GFEP) Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
8. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Lugs: **Mechanical** style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
    c. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge (HID) lighting circuits.
    d. Ground-Fault Protection: **Integrally mounted** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
    e. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
    f. Communication Capability: **Universal-mounted** communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
    g. Shunt Trip: 120-V trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at **75** percent of rated voltage.
    h. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.
    i. Auxiliary Contacts: **Two SPDT switches** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts, "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
    j. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.

B. Insulated-Case Circuit Breaker (ICCB): **80** percent rated, sealed, insulated-case power circuit breaker with interrupting capacity rating to meet available fault current.

1. **Fixed** circuit-breaker mounting.
2. Two-step, stored-energy closing.
3. **Standard**-function, microprocessor-based trip units with interchangeable rating plug, trip indicators, and the following field-adjustable settings:

    a. Instantaneous trip.

b. Time adjustments for long- and short-time pickup.
c. Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared t response.

4. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function.
5. Remote trip indication and control.
6. Communication Capability: Web enabled integral Ethernet communication module and embedded Web server with factory-configured Web pages (HTML file format). Provide functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
7. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
8. Control Voltage: **120-V ac**.

C. Bolted-Pressure Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses rotary-mechanical-bolting action to produce and maintain high clamping pressure on the switch blade after it engages the stationary contacts.
1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

a. Configuration: **Integrally mounted** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

D. High-Pressure, Butt-Type Contact Switch: Operating mechanism uses butt-type contacts and a spring-charged mechanism to produce and maintain high-pressure contact when switch is closed.
   1. Main-Contact Interrupting Capability: Minimum of 12 times the switch current rating.
   2. Operating Mechanism: Manual handle operation to close switch; stores energy in mechanism for opening and closing.

      a. Electrical Trip: Operation of lever or push-button trip switch, or trip signal from ground-fault relay or remote-control device, causes switch to open.
      b. Mechanical Trip: Operation of mechanical lever, push button, or other device causes switch to open.

   3. Auxiliary Switches: Factory installed, SPDT, with leads connected to terminal block, and including one set more than quantity required for functional performance indicated.
   4. Service-Rated Switches: Labeled for use as service equipment.
   5. Ground-Fault Relay: Comply with UL 1053; self-powered type with mechanical ground-fault indicator, test function, tripping relay with internal memory, and three-phase current transformer/sensor.

      a. Configuration: **Integrally mounted** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
      b. Internal Memory: Integrates the cumulative value of intermittent arcing ground-fault currents and uses the effect to initiate tripping.
      c. No-Trip Relay Test: Permits ground-fault simulation test without tripping switch.
      d. Test Control: Simulates ground fault to test relay and switch (or relay only if "no-trip" mode is selected).

   6. Open-Fuse Trip Device: Arranged to trip switch open if a phase fuse opens.

E. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

F. Fuses are specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."

2.5 INSTRUMENTATION

A. Instrument Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1, and the following:

   1. Potential Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 120 V, 60 Hz, **double** secondary; disconnecting type with integral fuse mountings. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.

2. Current Transformers: NEMA EI 21.1; 5 A, 60 Hz, secondary; **wound** type; **double** secondary winding and secondary shorting device. Burden and accuracy shall be consistent with connected metering and relay devices.
3. Control-Power Transformers: Dry type, mounted in separate compartments for units larger than 3 kVA.
4. Current Transformers for Neutral and Ground-Fault Current Sensing: Connect secondary wiring to ground overcurrent relays, via shorting terminals, to provide selective tripping of main and tie circuit breaker. Coordinate with feeder circuit-breaker, ground-fault protection.

B. Multifunction Digital-Metering Monitor: Microprocessor-based unit suitable for three- or four-wire systems and with the following features:

1. Switch-selectable digital display of the following values with maximum accuracy tolerances as indicated:

a. Phase Currents, Each Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
b. Phase-to-Phase Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
c. Phase-to-Neutral Voltages, Three Phase: Plus or minus 0.5 percent.
d. Megawatts: Plus or minus 1 percent.
e. Megavars: Plus or minus 1 percent.
f. Power Factor: Plus or minus 1 percent.
g. Frequency: Plus or minus 0.1 percent.
h. Accumulated Energy, Megawatt Hours: Plus or minus 1 percent; accumulated values unaffected by power outages up to 72 hours.
i. Megawatt Demand: Plus or minus 1 percent; demand interval programmable from five to 60 minutes.
j. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.

2. Mounting: Display and control unit flush or semiflush mounted in instrument compartment door.

C. Analog Meters:

1. Meters: 4-inch (100-mm) diameter or 6 inches (150 mm) square, flush or semiflush, with anti-parallax 250-degree scales and external zero adjustment.

D. Voltmeters: Cover an expanded-scale range of nominal voltage plus 10 percent.

E. Instrument Switches: Rotary type with off position.

1. Voltmeter Switches: Permit reading of all phase-to-phase voltages and, where a neutral is indicated, phase-to-neutral voltages.
2. Ammeter Switches: Permit reading of current in each phase and maintain current-transformer secondaries in a closed-circuit condition at all times.

F. Ammeters: 2-1/2-inch (64-mm) minimum size with 90- or 120-degree scale. Meter and transfer device with off position, located on overcurrent device door for indicated feeder circuits only.

G. Watt-Hour Meters and Wattmeters:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Three-phase induction type with two stators, each with current and potential coil, rated 5 A, 120 V, 60 Hz.
3. Suitable for connection to three- and four-wire circuits.
4. Potential indicating lamps.
5. Adjustments for light and full load, phase balance, and power factor.
6. Four-dial clock register.
7. Integral demand indicator.
8. Contact devices to operate remote impulse-totalizing demand meter.
9. Ratchets to prevent reverse rotation.
10. Removable meter with drawout test plug.
11. Semiflush mounted case with matching cover.
12. Appropriate multiplier tag.

H. Impulse-Totalizing Demand Meter:

1. Comply with ANSI C12.1.
2. Suitable for use with switchboard watt-hour meter, including two-circuit totalizing relay.
3. Cyclometer.
4. Four-dial, totalizing kilowatt-hour register.
5. Positive chart drive mechanism.
6. Capillary pen holding a minimum of one month's ink supply.
7. Roll chart with minimum 31-day capacity; appropriate multiplier tag.
8. Capable of indicating and recording **15**-minute integrated demand of totalized system.

2.6 CONTROL POWER

A. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied through secondary disconnecting devices from control-power transformer.

B. Control Circuits: 120-V ac, supplied from remote branch circuit.

C. Control Circuits: 24-V dc.

D. Electrically Interlocked Main and Tie Circuit Breakers: Two control-power transformers in separate compartments, with interlocking relays, connected to the primary side of each

control-power transformer at the line side of the associated main circuit breaker. 120-V secondaries connected through automatic transfer relays to ensure a fail-safe automatic transfer scheme.

E. Control-Power Fuses: Primary and secondary fuses for current-limiting and overload protection of transformer and fuses for protection of control circuits.

F. Control Wiring: Factory installed, with bundling, lacing, and protection included. Provide flexible conductors for No. 8 AWG and smaller, for conductors across hinges, and for conductors for interconnections between shipping units.

2.7 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing from switchboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing switchboard meters and switchboard class relays.

C. Portable Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Floor-supported, roller-based, elevating carriage arranged for movement of circuit breakers in and out of compartments for present and future circuit breakers.

D. Overhead Circuit-Breaker Lifting Device: Mounted at top front of switchboard, with hoist and lifting yokes matching each drawout circuit breaker.

E. Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Suitably identified, wall-mounted, lockable, compartmented steel box or cabinet. Arrange for wall mounting.

F. Mounting Accessories: For anchors, mounting channels, bolts, washers, and other mounting accessories, comply with requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems" or manufacturer's instructions.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on a photoengraved nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.032-inch- (0.813-mm-) thick anodized aluminum, located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

B. Mimic Bus: Entire single-line switchboard bus work, as depicted on factory record drawing, on an engraved laminated-plastic (Gravoply) nameplate.

1. Nameplate: At least 0.0625-inch- (1.588 mm-) thick laminated plastic (Gravoply), located at eye level on front cover of the switchboard incoming service section.

C. Mimic Bus: Continuously integrated mimic bus factory applied to front of switchboard. Arrange in single-line diagram format, using symbols and letter designations consistent with final mimic-bus diagram.

D. Coordinate mimic-bus segments with devices in switchboard sections to which they are applied. Produce a concise visual presentation of principal switchboard components and connections.

E. Presentation Media: Painted graphics in color contrasting with background color to represent bus and components, complete with lettered designations.

F. Service Equipment Label: NRTL labeled for use as service equipment for switchboards with one or more service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Receive, inspect, handle, and store switchboards according to **NECA 400 and NEMA PB 2.1**.

1. Lift or move panelboards with spreader bars and manufacturer-supplied lifting straps following manufacturer's instructions.
2. Use rollers, slings, or other manufacturer-approved methods if lifting straps are not furnished.
3. Protect from moisture, dust, dirt, and debris during storage and installation.
4. Install temporary heating during storage per manufacturer's instructions.

B. Examine switchboards before installation. Reject switchboards that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

C. Examine elements and surfaces to receive switchboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work or that affect the performance of the equipment.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install switchboards and accessories according to **NECA 400 and NEMA PB 2.1**.

B. Equipment Mounting: Install switchboards on concrete base, 4-inch (100-mm) nominal thickness. Comply with requirements for concrete base specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

1. Install conduits entering underneath the switchboard, entering under the vertical section where the conductors will terminate. Install with couplings flush with the concrete base. Extend 2 inches (50-mm) above concrete base after switchboard is anchored in place.
2. Install dowel rods to connect concrete base to concrete floor. Unless otherwise indicated, install dowel rods on 18-inch (450-mm) centers around the full perimeter of concrete base.
3. For supported equipment, install epoxy-coated anchor bolts that extend through concrete base and anchor into structural concrete floor.
4. Place and secure anchorage devices. Use setting drawings, templates, diagrams, instructions, and directions furnished with items to be embedded.
5. Install anchor bolts to elevations required for proper attachment to switchboards.
6. Anchor switchboard to building structure at the top of the switchboard if required or recommended by the manufacturer.

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, straps and brackets, and temporary blocking of moving parts from switchboard units and components.

D. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Operating Instructions: Frame and mount the printed basic operating instructions for switchboards, including control and key interlocking sequences and emergency procedures. Fabricate frame of finished wood or metal and cover instructions with clear acrylic plastic. Mount on front of switchboards.

F. Install filler plates in unused spaces of panel-mounted sections.

G. Install overcurrent protective devices, surge protection devices, and instrumentation.

1. Set field-adjustable switches and circuit-breaker trip ranges.

H. Install spare-fuse cabinet.

I. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements for terminating feeder bus specified in Section 262500 "Enclosed Bus Assemblies." Drawings indicate general arrangement of bus, fittings, and specialties.

B. Comply with requirements for terminating cable trays specified in Section 260536 "Cable Trays for Electrical Systems." Drawings indicate general arrangement of cable trays, fittings, and specialties.

C. Bond conduits entering underneath the switchboard to the equipment ground bus with a bonding conductor sized per NFPA 70.

D. Support and secure conductors within the switchboard according to NFPA 70.

E. Extend insulated equipment grounding cable to busway ground connection and support cable at intervals in vertical run.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Switchboard Nameplates: Label each switchboard compartment with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

C. Device Nameplates: Label each disconnecting and overcurrent protective device and each meter and control device mounted in compartment doors with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Acceptance Testing:

a. Test insulation resistance for each switchboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit. Open control and metering circuits within the switchboard and remove neutral connection to surge protection and other electronic devices prior to insulation test. Reconnect after test.
b. Test continuity of each circuit.

2. Test ground-fault protection of equipment for service equipment per NFPA 70.
3. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
4. Correct malfunctioning units on-site where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
5. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections, and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switchboard. Remove **front** panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switchboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

6. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

F. Switchboard will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

G. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies switchboards included and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly, and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges **as indicated.**

3.7 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Apply temporary heat, to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions, until switchboard is ready to be energized and placed into service.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain switchboards, overcurrent protective devices, instrumentation, and accessories**, and to use and reprogram microprocessor-based trip, monitoring, and communication units**.

END OF SECTION 26 24 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 24 16 - PANELBOARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Distribution panelboards.
2. Lighting and appliance branch-circuit panelboards.
3. Load centers.
4. Electronic-grade panelboards.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ATS: Acceptance testing specification.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. GFEP: Ground-fault equipment protection.

D. HID: High-intensity discharge.

E. MCCB: Molded-case circuit breaker.

F. SPD: Surge protective device.

G. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of panelboard.

1. Include materials, switching and overcurrent protective devices, SPDs, accessories, and components indicated.
2. Include dimensions and manufacturers' technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, ratings, and finishes.

B. Shop Drawings: For each panelboard and related equipment.

1. Include dimensioned plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show tabulations of installed devices with nameplates, conductor termination sizes, equipment features, and ratings.
3. Detail enclosure types including mounting and anchorage, environmental protection, knockouts, corner treatments, covers and doors, gaskets, hinges, and locks.
4. Detail bus configuration, current, and voltage ratings.
5. Short-circuit current rating of panelboards and overcurrent protective devices.
6. Include evidence of NRTL listing for series rating of installed devices.
7. Include evidence of NRTL listing for SPD as installed in panelboard.
8. Detail features, characteristics, ratings, and factory settings of individual overcurrent protective devices and auxiliary components.
9. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
10. Key interlock scheme drawing and sequence of operations.
11. Include time-current coordination curves for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device included in panelboards. Submit on translucent log-log graft paper; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device. Include an Internet link for electronic access to downloadable PDF of the coordination curves.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Panelboard Schedules: For installation in panelboards. **Submit final versions after load balancing.**

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For panelboards and components to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting overcurrent protective devices.
2. Time-current curves, including selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device that allows adjustments.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Keys: **Two** spares for each type of panelboard cabinet lock.
2. Circuit Breakers Including GFCI and GFEP Types: **Two** spares for each panelboard.
3. Fuses for Fused Switches: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
4. Fuses for Fused Power-Circuit Devices: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Manufacturer Qualifications: ISO 9001 or ISO 9002 certified.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Remove loose packing and flammable materials from inside panelboards; install temporary electric heating (250 W per panelboard) to prevent condensation.

B. Handle and prepare panelboards for installation according to **NEMA PB 1**.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations:

1. Do not deliver or install panelboards until spaces are enclosed and weathertight, wet work in spaces is complete and dry, work above panelboards is complete, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.
2. Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Not exceeding **23 deg F (minus 5 deg C)** to plus 104 deg F (plus 40 deg C).
    b. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

B. Service Conditions: NEMA PB 1, usual service conditions, as follows:

1. Ambient temperatures within limits specified.
2. Altitude not exceeding 6600 feet (2000 m).

C. Interruption of Existing Electric Service: Do not interrupt electric service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electric service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify **Architect, Construction Manager**, **Owner** no fewer than **two** days in advance of proposed interruption of electric service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electric service without **Architect's, Construction Manager's, Owner's** written permission.
3. Comply with NFPA 70E.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace panelboards that fail in materials or workmanship within the specified warranty period.

1. Panelboard Warranty Period: **18** months from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPD that fails in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. SPD Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PANELBOARDS AND LOAD CENTERS COMMON REQUIREMENTS

A. Fabricate and test panelboards according to IEEE 344 to withstand seismic forces defined in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

B. Product Selection for Restricted Space: Drawings indicate maximum dimensions for panelboards including clearances between panelboards and adjacent surfaces and other items. Comply with indicated maximum dimensions.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NEMA PB 1.

E. Comply with NFPA 70.

F. Enclosures: **Surface**-mounted, dead-front cabinets.

1. Rated for environmental conditions at installed location.

a. Indoor Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 1**.
b. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 3R**.
c. **Kitchen or Wash-Down** Areas: NEMA 250, **Type 4X**, **stainless steel**.
d. Other Wet or Damp Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, **Type 4**.

e. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, **Type 5**.

2. Height: 84 inches (2.13 m) maximum.
3. Front: Secured to box with concealed trim clamps. For surface-mounted fronts, match box dimensions; for flush-mounted fronts, overlap box. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
4. Hinged Front Cover: Entire front trim hinged to box and with standard door within hinged trim cover. Trims shall cover all live parts and shall have no exposed hardware.
5. Skirt for Surface-Mounted Panelboards: Same gage and finish as panelboard front with flanges for attachment to panelboard, wall, and ceiling or floor.
6. Gutter Extension and Barrier: Same gage and finish as panelboard enclosure; integral with enclosure body. Arrange to isolate individual panel sections.
7. Finishes:

a. Panels and Trim: **Steel**, factory finished immediately after cleaning and pretreating with manufacturer's standard two-coat, baked-on finish consisting of prime coat and thermosetting topcoat.
b. Back Boxes: **Same finish as panels and trim**.
c. Fungus Proofing: Permanent fungicidal treatment for overcurrent protective devices and other components.

G. Incoming Mains:

1. Location: **Convertible between top and bottom**.
2. Main Breaker: Main lug interiors up to 400 amperes shall be field convertible to main breaker.

H. Phase, Neutral, and Ground Buses:

1. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity**.

a. Plating shall run entire length of bus.
b. Bus shall be fully rated the entire length.

2. Interiors shall be factory assembled into a unit. Replacing switching and protective devices shall not disturb adjacent units or require removing the main bus connectors.
3. Equipment Ground Bus: Adequate for feeder and branch-circuit equipment grounding conductors; bonded to box.
4. Isolated Ground Bus: Adequate for branch-circuit isolated ground conductors; insulated from box.
5. Full-Sized Neutral: Equipped with full-capacity bonding strap for service entrance applications. Mount electrically isolated from enclosure. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.

6. Extra-Capacity Neutral Bus: Neutral bus rated 200 percent of phase bus and listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction, as suitable for nonlinear loads in electronic-grade panelboards and others designated on Drawings. Connectors shall be sized for double-sized or parallel conductors as indicated on Drawings. Do not mount neutral bus in gutter.
7. Split Bus: Vertical buses divided into individual vertical sections.

I. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.

1. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity**.
2. Terminations shall allow use of 75 deg C rated conductors without derating.
3. Size: Lugs suitable for indicated conductor sizes, with additional gutter space, if required, for larger conductors.
4. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type, with a lug on the neutral bar for each pole in the panelboard.
5. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type, with a lug on the bar for each pole in the panelboard.
6. Feed-Through Lugs: **Mechanical** type, suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at opposite end of bus from incoming lugs or main device.
7. Subfeed (Double) Lugs: **Mechanical** type suitable for use with conductor material. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
8. Gutter-Tap Lugs: **Mechanical** type suitable for use with conductor material and with matching insulating covers. Locate at same end of bus as incoming lugs or main device.
9. Extra-Capacity Neutral Lugs: Rated 200 percent of phase lugs mounted on extra-capacity neutral bus.

J. NRTL Label: Panelboards or load centers shall be labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authority having jurisdiction for use as service equipment with one or more main service disconnecting and overcurrent protective devices. Panelboards or load centers shall have meter enclosures, wiring, connections, and other provisions for utility metering. Coordinate with utility company for exact requirements.

K. Future Devices: Panelboards or load centers shall have mounting brackets, bus connections, filler plates, and necessary appurtenances required for future installation of devices.

1. Percentage of Future Space Capacity: **20** percent.

L. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Rated for series-connected system with integral or remote upstream overcurrent protective devices and labeled by an NRTL. Include label or manual with size and type of allowable upstream and branch devices listed and labeled by an NRTL for series-connected short-circuit rating.

1. Panelboards rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.

2. Panelboards rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

M. Panelboard Short-Circuit Current Rating: Fully rated to interrupt symmetrical short-circuit current available at terminals. Assembly listed by an NRTL for 100 percent interrupting capacity.

1. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated 240 V or less shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 10,000 A rms symmetrical.
2. Panelboards and overcurrent protective devices rated above 240 V and less than 600 V shall have short-circuit ratings as shown on Drawings, but not less than 14,000 A rms symmetrical.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Panelboards shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified."

B. Surge Suppression: Factory installed as an integral part of indicated panelboards, complying with UL 1449 SPD **Type 2**.

2.3 POWER PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, distribution type.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

1. For doors more than **36 inches (914 mm)** high, provide two latches, keyed alike.

C. Mains: **Circuit breaker**.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes 125 A and Smaller: **Bolt-on circuit breakers**. **Plug-in circuit breakers are not allowed**.

E. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices for Circuit-Breaker Frame Sizes Larger Than 125 A: **Bolt-on circuit breakers. Plug-in circuit breakers are not allowed**.

F. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Fused switches.

G. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, **electrically** held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: **24-V control circuit**.

2.4 LIGHTING AND APPLIANCE BRANCH-CIRCUIT PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1, lighting and appliance branch-circuit type.

B. Mains: **Circuit breaker**.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: **Bolt-on** circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units. Snap-on breakers are not allowed.

D. Contactors in Main Bus: NEMA ICS 2, Class A, **electrically** held, general-purpose controller, with same short-circuit interrupting rating as panelboard.

1. Internal Control-Power Source: Control-power transformer, with fused primary and secondary terminals, connected to main bus ahead of contactor connection.
2. External Control-Power Source: **24-V control circuit**.

E. Doors: Concealed hinges; secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

F. Doors: Door-in-door construction with concealed hinges; secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike. Outer door shall permit full access to the panel interior. Inner door shall permit access to breaker operating handles and labeling, but current carrying terminals and bus shall remain concealed.

G. Column-Type Panelboards: Single row of overcurrent devices **with narrow gutter extension and overhead junction box equipped with ground and neutral terminal buses**.

1. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with multipoint latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

2.5 LOAD CENTERS

A. Load Centers: Comply with UL 67.

B. Mains: **Circuit breaker**.

C. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on circuit breakers, replaceable without disturbing adjacent units.

D. Doors: Concealed hinges secured with flush latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

E. Conductor Connectors: Mechanical type for main, neutral, and ground lugs and buses.

2.6 ELECTRONIC-GRADE PANELBOARDS

A. Panelboards: NEMA PB 1; with factory-installed, integral SPD; labeled by an NRTL for compliance with UL 67 and UL 1449 after installing SPD.

B. Doors: Secured with vault-type latch with tumbler lock; keyed alike.

C. Main Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

D. Branch Overcurrent Protective Devices: Bolt-on thermal-magnetic circuit breakers.

E. SPD.

1. Peak Surge Current Rating: The minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase shall not be less than **100 kA**. The peak surge current rating shall be the arithmetic sum of the ratings of the individual MOVs in a given mode.
2. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with **480Y/277 V** and **208Y/120 V**, three-phase, four-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
    b. Line to Ground: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V**, **700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
    c. Neutral to Ground: **1200 V for 480Y/277 V**, **700 V for 208Y/120 V**.
    d. Line to Line: **2000 V for 480Y/277 V, 1200 V for 208Y/120 V**.

3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120-V, single-phase, three-wire circuits shall not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
    d. Line to Line: 1200 V.

4. SCCR: Equal to **the SCCR of the panelboard in which installed**.
5. Nominal Rating: **20 kA**.

F. Buses:

1. Copper phase and neutral buses; 200 percent capacity neutral bus and lugs.
2. Copper equipment and isolated ground buses.

2.7 DISCONNECTING AND OVERCURRENT PROTECTIVE DEVICES

A. MCCB: Comply with UL 489, with **interrupting capacity** to meet available fault currents.

1. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers:

    a. Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads.
    b. Instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits.
    c. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

2. Adjustable Instantaneous-Trip Circuit Breakers: Magnetic trip element with front-mounted, field-adjustable trip setting.
3. Electronic Trip Circuit Breakers:

    a. RMS sensing.
    b. Field-replaceable rating plug or electronic trip.
    c. Digital display of settings, trip targets, and indicated metering displays.
    d. Multi-button keypad to access programmable functions and monitored data.
    e. Ten-event, trip-history log. Each trip event shall be recorded with type, phase, and magnitude of fault that caused the trip.
    f. Integral test jack for connection to portable test set or laptop computer.
    g. Field-Adjustable Settings:

        1) Instantaneous trip.
        2) Long- and short-time pickup levels.
        3) Long and short time adjustments.
        4) Ground-fault pickup level, time delay, and I squared T response.

4. Current-Limiting Circuit Breakers: Frame sizes 400 A and smaller; let-through ratings less than NEMA FU 1, RK-5.
5. GFCI Circuit Breakers: Single- and double-pole configurations with Class A ground-fault protection (6-mA trip).
6. GFEP Circuit Breakers: Class B ground-fault protection (30-mA trip).
7. Arc-Fault Circuit Interrupter Circuit Breakers: Comply with UL 1699; 120/240-V, single-pole configuration.
8. Sub-feed Circuit Breakers: Vertically mounted.
9. MCCB Features and Accessories:

    a. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
    b. Breaker handle indicates tripped status.
    c. UL listed for reverse connection without restrictive line or load ratings.
    d. Lugs: **Mechanical** style, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor materials.
    e. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and HID lighting circuits.

f. Ground-Fault Protection: **Integrally mounted** relay and trip unit with adjustable pickup and time-delay settings, push-to-test feature, and ground-fault indicator.
g. Communication Capability: **Integral** communication module with functions and features compatible with power monitoring and control system specified in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."
h. Shunt Trip: **120-V** trip coil energized from separate circuit, set to trip at **75** percent of rated voltage.
i. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage **with field-adjustable 0.1- to 0.6-second** time delay.
j. Rating Plugs: Three-pole breakers with ampere ratings greater than **150** amperes shall have electronic adjustable trip units.
k. Auxiliary Contacts: **Two, SPDT switches** with "a" and "b" contacts; "a" contacts mimic circuit-breaker contacts and "b" contacts operate in reverse of circuit-breaker contacts.
l. Alarm Switch: Single-pole, normally open contact that actuates only when circuit breaker trips.
m. Key Interlock Kit: Externally mounted to prohibit circuit-breaker operation; key shall be removable only when circuit breaker is in off position.
n. Zone-Selective Interlocking: Integral with electronic trip unit; for interlocking ground-fault protection function with other upstream or downstream devices.
o. Multipole units enclosed in a **single housing with a single handle or factory assembled to operate as a single unit**.
p. Handle Padlocking Device: Fixed attachment, for locking circuit-breaker handle in **ON or OFF** position.
q. Handle Clamp: Loose attachment, for holding circuit-breaker handle in the 'ON' position.

B. Fused Switch: NEMA KS 1, Type HD; clips to accommodate specified fuses; lockable handle.

1. Fuses and Spare-Fuse Cabinet: Comply with requirements specified in Section 262813 "Fuses."
2. Fused Switch Features and Accessories:

a. Standard ampere ratings and number of poles.
b. Mechanical cover interlock with a manual interlock override, to prevent the opening of the cover when the switch is in the on position. The interlock shall prevent the switch from being turned on with the cover open. The operating handle shall have lock-off means with provisions for three padlocks.
c. Auxiliary Contacts: **Two** normally open and normally closed contact(s) that operate with switch handle operation.

2.8 IDENTIFICATION

A. Panelboard Label: Manufacturer's name and trademark, voltage, amperage, number of phases, and number of poles shall be located on the interior of the panelboard door.

B. Breaker Labels: Faceplate shall list current rating, UL and IEC certification standards, and AIC rating.

C. Circuit Directory: Directory card inside panelboard door, mounted in **transparent card holder**.

1. All Circuit directories shall identify specific purpose with detail that is sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

D. Circuit Directory: Computer-generated circuit directory mounted inside panelboard door with transparent plastic protective cover.

1. All Circuit directories shall identify specific purpose with detail that is sufficient to distinguish it from all other circuits.

2.9 ACCESSORY COMPONENTS AND FEATURES

A. Accessory Set: Include tools and miscellaneous items required for overcurrent protective device test, inspection, maintenance, and operation.

B. Portable Test Set: For testing functions of solid-state trip devices without removing the device from the panelboard. Include relay and meter test plugs suitable for testing panelboard meters and switchboard class relays.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify actual conditions with field measurements prior to ordering panelboards to verify that equipment fits in allocated space in, and comply with, minimum required clearances specified in NFPA 70.

B. Receive, inspect, handle, and store panelboards according to **NEMA PB 1.1**.

C. Examine panelboards before installation. Reject panelboards that are damaged, rusted, or have been subjected to water saturation.

D. Examine elements and surfaces to receive panelboards for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of panelboards and components with other construction that penetrates walls or is supported by them, including electrical and other types of equipment, raceways, piping, encumbrances to workspace clearance requirements, and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Install panelboards and accessories according to **NEMA PB 1.1**.

D. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install panelboards on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Attach panelboard to the vertical finished or structural surface behind the panelboard.
3. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from panelboards.

F. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

G. Mount top of trim **90 inches (2286 mm)** above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

H. Mount panelboard cabinet plumb and rigid without distortion of box.

I. Mount recessed panelboards with fronts uniformly flush with wall finish and mating with back box.

J. Mount surface-mounted panelboards to steel slotted supports **1-1/4 inch (32 mm)** in depth. Orient steel slotted supports vertically.

K. Install overcurrent protective devices and controllers not already factory installed.

1. Set field-adjustable, circuit-breaker trip ranges.
2. Tighten bolted connections and circuit breaker connections using calibrated torque wrench or torque screwdriver per manufacturer's written instructions.

L. Make grounding connections and bond neutral for services and separately derived systems to ground. Make connections to grounding electrodes, separate grounds for isolated ground bars, and connections to separate ground bars.

M. Install filler plates in unused spaces.

N. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits from panelboard into accessible ceiling space or space designated to be ceiling space in the future. Stub four 1-inch (25 mm) empty conduits into raised floor space or below slab not on grade.

O. Arrange conductors in gutters into groups and bundle and wrap with wire ties **after completing load balancing**.

P. Mount spare fuse cabinet in an accessible location.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Create a directory to indicate installed circuit loads **after balancing panelboard loads**; incorporate Owner's final room designations. Obtain approval before installing final directories. Handwritten directories are not acceptable. Install directory inside the panelboard door.

C. Panelboard Nameplates: Label each panelboard with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Device Nameplates: Label each branch circuit device in power panelboards with a nameplate complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

E. Install warning signs complying with requirements in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems" identifying source of remote circuit.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each panelboard bus, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

D. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test for low-voltage air circuit breakers **and low-voltage surge arrestors** stated in NETA ATS, Paragraph 7.6 Circuit Breakers **and Paragraph 7.19.1 Surge Arrestors, Low-Voltage**. **Perform** optional tests only when directed by the Engineer or Construction Manager. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each panelboard. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each panelboard 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
c. Instruments and Equipment:

1) Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

E. Panelboards will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies panelboards included and that describes scanning results, with comparisons of the two scans. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricated as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Set field-adjustable circuit-breaker trip ranges **as indicated on drawings and as specified in Section 260573.16 "Coordination Studies."**

C. Load Balancing: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, measure load balancing and make circuit changes. Prior to making circuit changes to achieve load balancing, inform Architect of effect on phase color coding.

1. Measure loads during the period of normal facility operations.
2. Perform circuit changes to achieve load balancing outside normal facility operation schedule or at times directed by the Architect. Avoid disrupting services such as fax machines and on-line data processing, computing, transmitting, and receiving equipment.
3. After changing circuits to achieve load balancing, recheck loads during normal facility operations. Record load readings before and after changing circuits to achieve load balancing.
4. Tolerance: Maximum difference between phase loads, within a panelboard, shall not exceed 20 percent.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Temporary Heating: Prior to energizing panelboards, apply temporary heat to maintain temperature according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 26 24 16

SECTION 26 27 26 - WIRING DEVICES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SECTION INCLUDES:

A. Receptacles, receptacles with integral GFCI, and associated device plates.

B. Twist-locking receptacles.

C. Snap switches.

D. Pendant cord-connector devices.

E. Cord and plug sets.

F. Floor service outlets, , and multi-outlet assemblies.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

B. GFCI: Ground-fault circuit interrupter.

C. Pigtail: Short lead used to connect a device to a branch-circuit conductor.

D. RFI: Radio-frequency interference.

E. SPD: Surge Protective Device.

F. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For wiring devices to include in all manufacturers' packing label warnings and instruction manuals that include labeling conditions.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain each type of wiring device and associated wall plate through one source from a single manufacturer. Insofar as they are available, obtain all wiring devices and associated wall plates from a single manufacturer and one source.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, Article 100, by a testing agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended use. All devices shall be UL listed as compatible with stranded wire.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.6 COORDINATION

A. Receptacles for Owner-Furnished Equipment: Match plug configurations.

1. Cord and Plug Sets: Match equipment requirements.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers' Names: Shortened versions (shown in parentheses) of the following manufacturers' names are used in other Part 2 articles:

1. Cooper Wiring Devices; a division of Cooper Industries, Inc. (Cooper).
2. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems (Hubbell).
3. Leviton Mfg. Company Inc. (Leviton).
4. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories (Pass & Seymour).

2.2 STRAIGHT BLADE RECEPTACLES

A. Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; 5351 (single), 5352 (duplex).
b. Hubbell; HBL5351 (single), CR5352 (duplex).
c. Leviton; 5891 (single), 5352 (duplex).
d. Pass & Seymour; 5381 (single), 5352 (duplex).

B. Description: Straight blade; equipment grounding contacts shall be connected only to the green grounding screw terminal of the device and with inherent electrical isolation from mounting strap. Isolation shall be integral to receptacle construction and not dependent on removable parts.

2.3 GFCI RECEPTACLES

A. General Description: Straight blade, non-feed-through type. Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6, UL 498, and UL 943, Class A, and include indicator light that is lighted when device is tripped.

B. Duplex GFCI Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; GF20.
b. Pass & Seymour; 2084.
c. Leviton; GFNL1
d. Hubbell; GFRST83

2.4 TWIST-LOCKING RECEPTACLES

A. Single Convenience Receptacles, 125 V, 20 A: Comply with NEMA WD 1, NEMA WD 6 configuration L5-20R, and UL 498.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; L520R.
b. Hubbell; HBL2310.
c. Leviton; 2310.
d. Pass & Seymour; L520-R.

2.5 CORD AND PLUG SETS

A. Description: Match voltage and current ratings and number of conductors to requirements of equipment being connected.

1. Cord: Rubber-insulated, stranded-copper conductors, with Type SOW-A jacket; with green-insulated grounding conductor and equipment-rating ampacity plus a minimum of 30 percent.

2. Plug: Nylon body and integral cable-clamping jaws. Match cord and receptacle type for connection.

2.6 SNAP SWITCHES

A. Comply with NEMA WD 1 and UL 20.

B. Switches, 120/277 V, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; 2221 (single pole), 2222 (two pole), 2223 (three way), 2224 (four way).
b. Hubbell; CS1221 (single pole), CS1222 (two pole), CS1223 (three way), CS1224 (four way).
c. Leviton; 1221-2 (single pole), 1222-2 (two pole), 1223-2 (three way), 1224-2 (four way).
d. Pass & Seymour; 20AC1 (single pole), 20AC2 (two pole), 20AC3 (three way), 20AC4 (four way).

C. Pilot Light Switches, 20 A:

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. Cooper; 2221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
b. Hubbell; HPL1221PL for 120 V and 277 V.
c. Leviton; 1221-PLR for 120 V, 1221-7PLR for 277 V.
d. Pass & Seymour; PS20AC1-PLR for 120 V.

2. Description: Single pole, with neon-lighted handle, illuminated when switch is "ON."

2.7 WALL PLATES

A. Single and combination types to match corresponding wiring devices.

1. Plate-Securing Screws: Metal with head color to match plate finish.
2. Material for Finished Spaces: 0.035-inch- thick, satin-finished stainless steel.
3. Material for Unfinished Spaces: Galvanized steel.
4. Material for Damp Locations: Cast aluminum with spring-loaded lift cover and listed and labeled for use in "wet locations."

B. Wet-Location, Weatherproof in use Cover Plates: NEMA 250, complying with type 3R weather-resistant, die-cast aluminum with lockable cover.

2.8 FLOOR SERVICE FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Hubbell Incorporated; Wiring Device-Kellems.
2. Pass & Seymour/Legrand; Wiring Devices & Accessories.
3. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
4. FRS
5. Wiremold Company (The).

B. Type: Modular, flush-type, dual-service units suitable for wiring method used.

C. Compartments: Barrier separates power from voice and data communication cabling.

D. Service Plate: Rectangular solid brass with satin finish.

E. Power Receptacle: NEMA WD 6 configuration 5-20R, gray finish, unless otherwise indicated.

F. Voice and Data Communication Outlet: Two modular, keyed, color-coded, RJ-45 Category 6A jacks for FTP cable per Division 27.

2.9 FINISHES

A. Color: Wiring device catalog numbers in Section Text do not designate device color.

1. Wiring Devices Connected to Normal Power System: Gray, unless otherwise indicated or required by NFPA 70 or device listing.
2. Wiring Devices Connected to Emergency Power System: Red.
3. Isolated-Ground Receptacles: As specified above, with orange triangle on face.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, including the mounting heights listed in that standard, unless otherwise noted.

B. Coordination with Other Trades:

1. Take steps to ensure that devices and their boxes are protected. Do not place wall finish materials over device boxes and do not cut holes for boxes with routers that are guided by riding against outside of the boxes.
2. Keep outlet boxes free of plaster, drywall joint compound, mortar, cement, concrete, dust, paint, and other material that may contaminate the raceway system, conductors, and cables.
3. Install device boxes in brick or block walls so that the cover plate does not cross a joint unless the joint is troweled flush with the face of the wall.
4. Install wiring devices after all wall preparation, including painting, is complete.

C. Conductors:

1. Do not strip insulation from conductors until just before they are spliced or terminated on devices.
2. Strip insulation evenly around the conductor using tools designed for the purpose. Avoid scoring or nicking of solid wire or cutting strands from stranded wire.
3. The length of free conductors at outlets for devices shall meet provisions of NFPA 70, Article 300, without pigtails.
4. Existing Conductors:

    a. Cut back and pigtail or replace all damaged conductors.
    b. Straighten conductors that remain and remove corrosion and foreign matter.
    c. Pig-tailing existing conductors is permitted provided the outlet box is large enough.

D. Device Installation:

1. Replace all devices that have been in temporary use during construction or that show signs that they were installed before building finishing operations were complete.
2. Keep each wiring device in its package or otherwise protected until it is time to connect conductors.
3. Do not remove surface protection, such as plastic film and smudge covers, until the last possible moment.
4. Connect devices to branch circuits using pigtails that are not less than 6 inches in length.
5. When there is a choice, use side wiring with binding-head screw terminals. Wrap solid conductor tightly clockwise, 2/3 to 3/4 of the way around terminal screw.
6. Use a torque screwdriver when a torque is recommended or required by the manufacturer.

7. When conductors larger than No. 12 AWG are installed on 15- or 20-A circuits, splice No. 12 AWG pigtails for device connections.
8. Tighten unused terminal screws on the device.
9. When mounting into metal boxes, remove the fiber or plastic washers used to hold device mounting screws in yokes, allowing metal-to-metal contact.
10. Make terminations at devices with Crimp on Fork Tongue Terminal.

E. Receptacle Orientation:

1. Install ground pin of vertically mounted receptacles up, and on horizontally mounted receptacles to the left.

F. Device Plates: Do not use oversized or extra-deep plates. Repair wall finishes and remount outlet boxes when standard device plates do not fit flush or do not cover rough wall opening.

G. Dimmers:

1. Install dimmers within terms of their listing.
2. Verify that dimmers used for fan speed control are listed for that application.
3. Install unshared neutral conductors online and load side of dimmers according to manufacturers' device listing conditions in the written instructions.

H. Arrangement of Devices: Unless otherwise indicated, mount flush, with long dimension vertical and with grounding terminal of receptacles on top. Group adjacent switches under single, multi-gang wall plates.

I. Adjust locations of floor service outlets and service poles to suit arrangement of partitions and furnishings.

3.2 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Receptacles: Identify panelboard and circuit number from which served. Use hot, stamped or engraved machine printing with black-filled lettering on face of plate, and durable wire markers or tags inside outlet boxes.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests for Convenience Receptacles:

1. Line Voltage: Acceptable range is 105 to 132 V.
2. Ground Impedance: Values of up to 2 ohms are acceptable.
3. GFCI Trip: Test for tripping values specified in UL 1436 and UL 943.

4. The tests shall be diagnostic, indicating damaged conductors, high resistance at the circuit breaker, poor connections, inadequate fault current path, defective devices, or similar problems. Correct circuit conditions remove malfunctioning units and replace with new ones, and retest as specified above.

END OF SECTION 26 27 26

SECTION 26 28 13 - FUSES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Cartridge fuses rated 600-V ac and less for use in control circuits, enclosed switches and enclosed controllers.

1.3 SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include construction details, material, dimensions, descriptions of individual components, and finishes for spare-fuse cabinets. Include the following for each fuse type indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature Adjustment Information: If ratings of fuses have been adjusted to accommodate ambient temperatures, provide list of fuses with adjusted ratings.

    a. For each fuse having adjusted ratings, include location of fuse, original fuse rating, local ambient temperature, and adjusted fuse rating.
    b. Provide manufacturer's technical data on which ambient temperature-adjustment calculations are based.

2. Dimensions and manufacturer's technical data on features, performance, electrical characteristics, and ratings.
3. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
4. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse-coordination charts and tables and related data.
5. Fuse sizes for elevator feeders and elevator disconnect switches.

1.4 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For fuses to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Ambient temperature adjustment information.
2. Current-limitation curves for fuses with current-limiting characteristics.
3. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) and current-limitation curves (instantaneous peak let-through current) for each type and rating of fuse-coordination charts and tables and related data.

1.5 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than two of each size and type.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain fuses, for use within a specific product or circuit, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NEMA FU 1 for cartridge fuses.

D. Comply with NFPA 70.

E. Comply with UL 248-11 for plug fuses.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Where ambient temperature to which fuses are directly exposed is less than 40 deg F or more than 100 deg F apply manufacturer's ambient temperature adjustment factors to fuse ratings.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate fuse ratings with utilization equipment nameplate limitations of maximum fuse size and with system short-circuit current levels.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
2. Edison Fuse, Inc.
3. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
4. Littelfuse, Inc.

2.2 CARTRIDGE FUSES

A. Characteristics: NEMA FU 1, nonrenewable cartridge fuses with voltage ratings consistent with circuit voltages.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine fuses before installation. Reject fuses that are moisture damaged or physically damaged.

B. Examine holders to receive fuses for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance, such as rejection features.

C. Examine utilization equipment nameplates and installation instructions. Install fuses of sizes and with characteristics appropriate for each piece of equipment.

D. Evaluate ambient temperatures to determine if fuse rating adjustment factors must be applied to fuse ratings.

E. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 FUSE APPLICATIONS

A. Cartridge Fuses:

1. Motor Branch Circuits: Class RK1, time delay.
2. Other Branch Circuits: Class J, time delay.

3. Control Circuits: Class CC, fast acting.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Install fuses in fusible devices. Arrange fuses so rating information is readable without removing fuse.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Install labels complying with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems" and indicating fuse replacement information on inside door of each fused switch and adjacent to each fuse block, socket, and holder.

END OF SECTION 26 28 13

SECTION 26 28 16 - ENCLOSED SWITCHES AND CIRCUIT BREAKERS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and other Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Fusible switches.
2. Nonfusible switches.
3. Shunt trip switches.
4. Molded-case circuit breakers (MCCBs).
5. Enclosures.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. NC: Normally closed.

B. NO: Normally open.

C. SPDT: Single pole, double throw.

1.4 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Enclosed switches and circuit breakers shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts from the device when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event."

1.5 SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1. Test procedures used.
2. Test results that comply with requirements.
3. Results of failed tests and corrective action taken to achieve test results that comply with requirements.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For enclosed switches and circuit breakers to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals. In addition to items specified in Division 01 Section "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

1. Manufacturer's written instructions for testing and adjusting enclosed switches and circuit breakers.
2. Time-current coordination curves (average melt) for each type and rating of overcurrent protective device; include selectable ranges for each type of overcurrent protective device.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Source Limitations: Obtain enclosed switches and circuit breakers, overcurrent protective devices, components, and accessories, within same product category, from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

1.7 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

1. Ambient Temperature: Not less than minus 22 deg F and not exceeding 104 deg F.
2. Altitude: Not exceeding 6600 feet.

1.8 COORDINATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of switches, circuit breakers, and components with equipment served and adjacent surfaces. Maintain required workspace clearances and required clearances for equipment access doors and panels.

1.9 EXTRA MATERIALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: Equal to 10 percent of quantity installed for each size and type, but no fewer than three of each size and type.
2. Fuse Pullers: Two for each size and type.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 NONFUSIBLE SWITCHES

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Square D or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

B. Type HD, Heavy Duty, Single Throw, 240 or 600-V ac, 1200 A and Smaller: UL 98 and NEMA KS 1, horsepower rated, lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks, and interlocked with cover in closed position.

C. Accessories:

1. Equipment Ground Kit: Internally mounted and labeled for copper and aluminum ground conductors.
2. Neutral Kit: Internally mounted; insulated, capable of being grounded and bonded; labeled for copper and aluminum neutral conductors.
3. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, and conductor material.

2.2 SHUNT TRIP SWITCHES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Cooper Bussmann, Inc.
2. Ferraz Shawmut, Inc.
3. Littelfuse, Inc.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 50, and UL 98, with 200-kA interrupting and short-circuit current rating when fitted with Class J fuses.

C. Switches: Three-pole, horsepower rated, with integral shunt trip mechanism and Class J fuse block; lockable handle with capability to accept three padlocks; interlocked with cover in closed position.

D. Control Circuit: 120-V ac; obtained from integral control power transformer, with primary and secondary fuses, with a control power transformer of enough capacity to operate shunt trip, connected pilot, and indicating and control devices.

E. Accessories:

1. Oiltight key switch for key-to-test function.
2. Oiltight yellow ON pilot light.
3. Isolated neutral lug; 100 percent rating.
4. Mechanically interlocked auxiliary contacts that change state when switch is opened and closed.
5. Form C alarm contacts that change state when switch is tripped.
6. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-safety and alarm relay; 120-V ac coil voltage.
7. Three-pole, double-throw, fire-alarm voltage monitoring relay complying with NFPA 72.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE CIRCUIT BREAKERS

A. Basis-of-Design Product: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide Square D or comparable product by one of the following:

1. Eaton Electrical Inc.; Cutler-Hammer Business Unit.
2. General Electric Company; GE Consumer & Industrial - Electrical Distribution.
3. Siemens Energy & Automation, Inc.

B. General Requirements: Comply with UL 489, NEMA AB 1, and NEMA AB 3, with interrupting capacity to comply with available fault currents.

C. Thermal-Magnetic Circuit Breakers: Inverse time-current element for low-level overloads and instantaneous magnetic trip element for short circuits. Adjustable magnetic trip setting for circuit-breaker frame sizes 250 A and larger.

D. Features and Accessories:

1. Standard frame sizes, trip ratings, and number of poles.
2. Lugs: Mechanical type, suitable for number, size, trip ratings, and conductor material.
3. Application Listing: Appropriate for application; Type SWD for switching fluorescent lighting loads; Type HID for feeding fluorescent and high-intensity discharge lighting circuits.
4. Shunt Trip: Trip coil energized from separate circuit, with coil-clearing contact.

5. Undervoltage Trip: Set to operate at 35 to 75 percent of rated voltage without intentional time delay.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Enclosed Switches and Circuit Breakers: NEMA AB 1, NEMA KS 1, NEMA 250, and UL 50, to comply with environmental conditions at installed location.

1. Indoor, Dry and Clean Locations: NEMA 250, Type 1.
2. Outdoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 3R.
3. Other Wet or Damp, Indoor Locations: NEMA 250, Type 4.
4. Indoor Locations Subject to Dust, Falling Dirt, and Dripping Noncorrosive Liquids: NEMA 250, Type 12.
5. Hazardous Areas Indicated on Drawings: NEMA 250, Type 7.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine elements and surfaces to receive enclosed switches and circuit breakers for compliance with installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install individual wall-mounted switches and circuit breakers with tops at uniform height unless otherwise indicated.

B. Comply with mounting and anchoring requirements specified in Division 26 Section "Vibration and Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

C. Temporary Lifting Provisions: Remove temporary lifting eyes, channels, and brackets and temporary blocking of moving parts from enclosures and components.

D. Install fuses in fusible devices.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Division 26 Section "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Identify field-installed conductors, interconnecting wiring, and components; provide warning signs.
2. Label each enclosure with engraved metal or laminated-plastic nameplate.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

B. Acceptance Testing Preparation:

1. Test insulation resistance for each enclosed switch and circuit breaker, component, connecting supply, feeder, and control circuit.
2. Test continuity of each circuit.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform each visual and mechanical inspection and electrical test stated in NETA Acceptance Testing Specification. Certify compliance with test parameters.
2. Correct malfunctioning units on-site, where possible, and retest to demonstrate compliance; otherwise, replace units with new units and retest.
3. Perform the following infrared scan tests and inspections and prepare reports:

    a. Initial Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker. Remove front panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.
    b. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each enclosed switch and circuit breaker 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
    c. Instruments and Equipment: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.

4. Test and adjust controls, remote monitoring, and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

D. Enclosed switches and circuit breakers will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports, including a certified report that identifies enclosed switches and circuit breakers and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.5 ADJUSTING

A. Adjust moving parts and operable components to function smoothly and lubricate as recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 26 28 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 32 13.13 - DIESEL EMERGENCY ENGINE GENERATORS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes packaged diesel engine generators for emergency use with the following features:

1. Diesel engine.
2. Diesel fuel-oil system.
3. Control and monitoring.
4. Generator overcurrent and fault protection.
5. Generator, exciter, and voltage regulator.
6. Load banks.
7. Outdoor engine generator enclosure.
8. Remote radiator motors.
9. Vibration isolation devices.
10. Finishes.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 262313 "Paralleling Low-Voltage Switchgear" for controls and paralleling equipment for large or multiple parallel engine generators.
2. Section 263600 "Transfer Switches" for transfer switches, including sensors and relays to initiate automatic-starting and -stopping signals for engine generators.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPS: Emergency power supply.

B. EPSS: Emergency power supply system.

C. Operational Bandwidth: The total variation, from the lowest to highest value of a parameter over the range of conditions indicated, expressed as a percentage of the nominal value of the parameter.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.
2. Include thermal damage curve for generator.
3. Include time-current characteristic curves for generator protective device.
4. Include fuel consumption in gallons per hour (liters per hour) at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
5. Include generator efficiency at 0.8 power factor at 0.5, 0.75, and 1.0 times generator capacity.
6. Include airflow requirements for cooling and combustion air in cubic feet per minute (cubic meters per minute) at 0.8 power factor, with air-supply temperature of 95, 80, 70, and 50 deg F (35, 27, 21, and 10 deg C). Provide Drawings indicating requirements and limitations for location of air intake and exhausts.
7. Include generator characteristics, including, but not limited to, kilowatt rating, efficiency, reactances, and short-circuit current capability.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans and elevations for engine generator and other components specified. Indicate access requirements affected by height of subbase fuel tank.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Identify fluid drain ports and clearance requirements for proper fluid drain.
4. Design calculations for selecting vibration isolators and seismic restraints and for designing vibration isolation bases.
5. Vibration Isolation Base Details: Detail fabrication, including anchorages and attachments to structure and supported equipment. Include base weights.
6. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring. Complete schematic, wiring, and interconnection diagrams showing terminal markings for EPS equipment and functional relationship between all electrical components.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For **Installer, manufacturer, and testing agency**.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates for engine generator, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.

2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: With engine and generator mounted on rails, identify center of gravity and total weight**, including full fuel tank**, **supplied enclosure, external silencer, subbase-mounted fuel tank, skid-mounted load bank,** and each piece of equipment not integral to the engine generator, and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Source Quality-Control Reports: Including, but not limited to, the following:

1. Certified summary of prototype-unit test report.
2. Certified Test Reports: For components and accessories that are equivalent, but not identical, to those tested on prototype unit.
3. Certified Summary of Performance Tests: Certify compliance with specified requirement to meet performance criteria for sensitive loads.
4. Report of factory test on units to be shipped for this Project, showing evidence of compliance with specified requirements.
5. Report of sound generation.
6. Report of exhaust emissions showing compliance with applicable regulations.
7. Certified Torsional Vibration Compatibility: Comply with NFPA 110.

D. Field quality-control reports.

E. Warranty: For special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For engine generators to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
b. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to generator location.
c. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Fuses: One for every 10 of each type and rating, but no fewer than one of each.
2. Indicator Lamps: Two for every six of each type used, but no fewer than two of each.
3. Filters: One set each of lubricating oil, fuel, and combustion-air filters.
4. Tools: Each tool listed by part number in operations and maintenance manual.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by the manufacturer.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications: Accredited by NETA.

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of packaged engine generators and associated auxiliary components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: 5 years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain packaged engine generators and auxiliary components from single source from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Engine generator housing, **subbase fuel tank, day tank,** engine generator, batteries, battery racks, silencers, **load banks,** sound attenuating equipment, accessories, and components shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. The term "withstand" means "the unit will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the unit will be fully operational after the seismic event**."

2. Shake-table testing shall comply with ICC-ES AC156. Testing shall be performed with all fluids at worst-case normal levels. **Water shall be substituted for diesel fuel in fuel tank during test.**
3. Component Importance Factor: **1.5**.

B. B11 Compliance: Comply with B11.19.

C. NFPA Compliance:

1. Comply with NFPA 37.
2. Comply with NFPA 70.
3. Comply with NFPA 99.
4. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level **2** EPSS.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 2200.

E. Engine Exhaust Emissions: Comply with EPA Tier **3** requirements and applicable state and local government requirements.

F. Noise Emission: Comply with **applicable state and local government requirements** for maximum noise level at **adjacent property boundaries** due to sound emitted by engine generator, including engine, engine exhaust, engine cooling-air intake and discharge, and other components of installation.

G. Environmental Conditions: Engine generator system shall withstand the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of performance capability:

1. Ambient Temperature: **5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C)**.
2. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.
3. Altitude: Sea level to **1000 feet (300 m)**.

H. Unusual Service Conditions: Engine generator equipment and installation are required to operate under the following conditions:

1. **High salt-dust content in the air due to sea-spray evaporation**.

2.3 ENGINE GENERATOR ASSEMBLY DESCRIPTION

A. Factory-assembled and -tested, water-cooled engine, with brushless generator and accessories.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. EPSS Class: Engine generator shall be classified as a **Class 48** according to NFPA 110.

D. Service Load: 500 kVA.

E. Power Factor: **0.8**, lagging.

F. Frequency: 60 Hz

G. Voltage: **480** V ac.

H. Phase: Three-phase, **four**-wire **wye**.

I. Induction Method: **Naturally aspirated**.

J. Governor: Adjustable isochronous, with speed sensing.

K. Mounting Frame: Structural steel framework to maintain alignment of mounted components without depending on concrete foundation. Provide lifting attachments sized and spaced to prevent deflection of base during lifting and moving.

1. Rigging Diagram: Inscribed on metal plate permanently attached to mounting frame to indicate location and lifting capacity of each lifting attachment and engine generator center of gravity.

L. Capacities and Characteristics:

1. Power Output Ratings: Nominal ratings as indicated at 0.8 power factor excluding power required for the continued and repeated operation of the unit and auxiliaries**, with capacity as required to operate as a unit as evidenced by records of prototype testing**.
2. Nameplates: For each major system component to identify manufacturer's name and address, and model and serial number of components.

M. Engine Generator Performance:

1. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 3 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
2. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 20 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
3. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: 0.5 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
4. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.

5. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 5 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within five seconds.
6. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content measured line to line or line to neutral shall not exceed 5 percent total and 3 percent for single harmonics. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
7. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 250 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to generator system components.
8. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, **Type 10** system requirements.

N. Engine Generator Performance for Sensitive Loads:

1. Oversizing generator compared with the rated power output of the engine is permissible to meet specified performance.

    a. Nameplate Data for Oversized Generator: Show ratings required by the Contract Documents rather than ratings that would normally be applied to generator size installed.

2. Steady-State Voltage Operational Bandwidth: 1 percent of rated output voltage, from no load to full load.
3. Transient Voltage Performance: Not more than 10 percent variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Voltage shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within 0.5 second.
4. Steady-State Frequency Operational Bandwidth: Plus or minus 0.25 percent of rated frequency, from no load to full load.
5. Steady-State Frequency Stability: When system is operating at any constant load within the rated load, there shall be no random speed variations outside the steady-state operational band and no hunting or surging of speed.
6. Transient Frequency Performance: Less than 2-Hz variation for 50 percent step-load increase or decrease. Frequency shall recover and remain within the steady-state operating band within three seconds.
7. Output Waveform: At no load, harmonic content, measured line to neutral, shall not exceed 2 percent total with no slot ripple. Telephone influence factor, determined according to NEMA MG 1, shall not exceed 50 percent.
8. Sustained Short-Circuit Current: For a three-phase, bolted short circuit at system output terminals, system shall supply a minimum of 300 percent of rated full-load current for not less than 10 seconds and then clear the fault automatically, without damage to winding insulation or other generator system components.
9. Excitation System: Performance shall be unaffected by voltage distortion caused by nonlinear load.

a. Provide permanent magnet excitation for power source to voltage regulator.

10. Start Time: Comply with NFPA 110, **Type 10**, system requirements.

O. Parallel Engine Generators:

1. Automatic reactive output power control and load sharing between engine generators operated in parallel.
2. Automatic regulation, automatic connection to a common bus, and automatic synchronization, with manual controls and instruments to monitor and control paralleling functions.
3. Protective relays required for equipment and personnel safety.
4. Paralleling suppressors to protect excitation systems.
5. Reverse power protection.
6. Loss of field protection.

2.4 DIESEL ENGINE

A. Fuel: ASTM D975 diesel fuel oil, Grade 2-D S15.

B. Rated Engine Speed: 1800 rpm.

C. Lubrication System: Engine or skid mounted.

1. Filter and Strainer: Rated to remove 90 percent of particles 5 micrometers and smaller while passing full flow.
2. Thermostatic Control Valve: Control flow in system to maintain optimum oil temperature. Unit shall be capable of full flow and is designed to be fail-safe.
3. Crankcase Drain: Arranged for complete gravity drainage to an easily removable container with no disassembly and without use of pumps, siphons, special tools, or appliances.

D. Jacket Coolant Heater: Electric-immersion type, factory installed in coolant jacket system. Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level 1 equipment for heater capacity and with UL 499.

E. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with radiator factory mounted on engine generator mounting frame and integral engine-driven coolant pump.

1. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
2. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant, from cold start to 110 percent load condition.

3. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
4. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.
5. Coolant Hose: Flexible assembly with inside surface of nonporous rubber and outer covering of aging-, UV-, and abrasion-resistant fabric.

    a. Rating: 50-psig (345-kPa) maximum working pressure with coolant at 180 deg F (82 deg C), and non-collapsible under vacuum.
    b. End Fittings: Flanges or steel pipe nipples with clamps to suit piping and equipment connections.

F. Cooling System: Closed loop, liquid cooled, with remote radiator and **integral engine-driven** coolant pump. Comply with requirements in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping" for coolant piping.

1. Configuration: **Horizontal** air discharge.
2. Radiator Core Tubes: **Nonferrous-metal construction other than aluminum**.
3. Size of Radiator: Adequate to contain expansion of total system coolant from cold start to 110 percent load condition.
4. Expansion Tank: Constructed of welded steel plate and rated to withstand maximum closed-loop coolant-system pressure for engine used. Equip with gage glass and petcock.
5. Fan: Driven by **multiple belts from engine shaft**.
6. Coolant: Solution of 50 percent ethylene-glycol-based antifreeze and 50 percent water, with anticorrosion additives as recommended by engine manufacturer.
7. Temperature Control: Self-contained, thermostatic-control valve modulates coolant flow automatically to maintain optimum constant coolant temperature as recommended by engine manufacturer.

G. Muffler/Silencer: Critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 25 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be **78** dBA or less.

H. Muffler/Silencer: Semi-critical type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 18 dB at 500 Hz.

2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be **85** dBA or less.

I. Muffler/Silencer: Commercial type, sized as recommended by engine manufacturer and selected with exhaust piping system to not exceed engine manufacturer's engine backpressure requirements.

1. Minimum sound attenuation of 12 dB at 500 Hz.
2. Sound level measured at a distance of 25 feet (8 m) from exhaust discharge after installation is complete shall be **90** dBA or less.

J. Air-Intake Filter: **Standard**-duty, engine-mounted air cleaner with replaceable dry-filter element and "blocked filter" indicator.

K. Starting System: **24** V electric, with negative ground.

1. Components: Sized so they are not damaged during a full engine-cranking cycle, with ambient temperature at maximum specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.
2. Cranking Motor: Heavy-duty unit that automatically engages and releases from engine flywheel without binding.
3. Cranking Cycle: **As required by NFPA 110 for system level specified**.
4. Battery: **Lead acid**, with capacity within ambient temperature range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article to provide specified cranking cycle at least **twice** without recharging.
5. Battery Cable: Size as recommended by engine manufacturer for cable length indicated. Include required interconnecting conductors and connection accessories.
6. Battery Compartment: Factory fabricated of metal with acid-resistant finish and thermal insulation. Thermostatically controlled heater shall be arranged to maintain battery above 50 deg F (10 deg C) regardless of external ambient temperature within range specified in "Performance Requirements" Article. Include accessories required to support and fasten batteries in place. Provide ventilation to exhaust battery gases.
7. Battery Stand: Factory-fabricated, two-tier metal with acid-resistant finish designed to hold the quantity of battery cells required and to maintain the arrangement to minimize lengths of battery interconnections.
8. Battery-Charging Alternator: Factory mounted on engine with solid-state voltage regulation and 35-A minimum continuous rating.
9. Battery Charger: Current-limiting, automatic-equalizing, and float-charging type designed for **lead-acid** batteries. Unit shall comply with UL 1236 and include the following features:

    a. Operation: Equalizing-charging rate of 10 A shall be initiated automatically after battery has lost charge until an adjustable equalizing voltage is achieved at battery terminals. Unit shall then be automatically switched to a lower float-charging mode and shall continue to operate in that mode until battery is discharged again.

b. Automatic Temperature Compensation: Adjust float and equalize voltages for variations in ambient temperature from minus 40 deg F (minus 40 deg C) to 140 deg F (plus 60 deg C) to prevent overcharging at high temperatures and undercharging at low temperatures.
c. Automatic Voltage Regulation: Maintain constant output voltage regardless of input voltage variations up to plus or minus 10 percent.
d. Ammeter and Voltmeter: Flush mounted in door. Meters shall indicate charging rates.
e. Safety Functions: Sense abnormally low battery voltage and close contacts providing low battery voltage indication on control and monitoring panel. Sense high battery voltage and loss of ac input or dc output of battery charger. Either condition shall close contacts that provide a battery-charger malfunction indication at system control and monitoring panel.
f. Enclosure and Mounting: NEMA 250, Type 1 wall-mounted cabinet.

2.5 DIESEL FUEL-OIL SYSTEM

A. Comply with NFPA 30.

B. Piping: Fuel-oil piping shall be Schedule 40 black steel, complying with requirements in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping." Cast iron, aluminum, copper, and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil system.

C. Main Fuel Pump: Mounted on engine to provide primary fuel flow under starting and load conditions.

D. Fuel Filtering: Remove water and contaminants larger than 1 micron.

E. Relief-Bypass Valve: Automatically regulates pressure in fuel line and returns excess fuel to source.

F. Fuel-Oil Storage Tank: Comply with requirements in **Section 231323 "Facility Aboveground Fuel-Oil Storage Tanks"**.

1. Fuel Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation required for the indicated EPSS Class.
2. Duplex Fuel-Oil Transfer Pump: Comply with requirements in Section 231213 "Facility Fuel-Oil Pumps."

G. Day Tank: Comply with UL 142, freestanding, factory-fabricated fuel tank assembly, with integral, float-controlled transfer pump and the following features:

1. Containment: Integral rupture basin with a capacity of 150 percent of nominal capacity of day tank.

a. Leak Detector: Locate in rupture basin and connect to provide audible and visual alarm in the event of day-tank leak.

2. Tank Capacity: **As recommended by engine manufacturer for an uninterrupted period of forty-eight hours' operation at 100 percent of rated power output of engine generator system without being refilled**.
3. Pump Capacity: Exceeds maximum flow of fuel drawn by engine-mounted fuel-supply pump at 110 percent of rated capacity, including fuel returned from engine.
4. Low-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm contacts at 25 percent of normal fuel level.
5. High-Level Alarm Sensor: Liquid-level device operates alarm and redundant fuel-shutoff contacts at midpoint between overflow level and 100 percent of normal fuel level.
6. Piping Connections: Factory-installed fuel-supply and return lines, from tank to engine; local fuel fill; vent line; overflow line; and tank drain line with shutoff valve.
7. Redundant High-Level Fuel Shutoff: Actuated by high-level alarm sensor in day tank to operate a separate motor control device that disconnects day-tank pump motor. Sensor shall signal solenoid valve, located in fuel suction line between fuel storage tank and day tank, to close. Both actions shall remain in shutoff state until manually reset. Shutoff action shall initiate an alarm signal to control panel but shall not shut down engine generator.

H. Subbase-Mounted, Double-Wall, Fuel-Oil Tank: Factory installed and piped, complying with UL 142 fuel-oil tank. Features include the following:

1. Tank level indicator.
2. Fuel-Tank Capacity: Minimum 133 percent of total fuel required for periodic maintenance operations between fuel refills, plus fuel for the hours of continuous operation for indicated EPSS class.
3. Leak detection in interstitial space.
4. Vandal-resistant fill cap.
5. Containment Provisions: Comply with requirements of authorities having jurisdiction.

2.6 CONTROL AND MONITORING

A. Automatic-Starting System Sequence of Operation: When mode-selector switch on the control and monitoring panel is in the automatic position, remote-control contacts in one or more separate automatic transfer switches initiate starting and stopping of engine generator. When mode-selector switch is switched to the on position, engine generator starts. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When the engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

B. Manual-Starting System Sequence of Operation: Switching on-off switch on the generator control panel to the on position starts engine generator. The off position of same switch initiates engine generator shutdown. When the engine generator is running, specified system or equipment failures or derangements automatically shut down engine generator and initiate alarms.

C. Provide minimum run time control set for **30** minutes, with override only by operation of a remote emergency-stop switch.

D. Comply with UL 508A.

E. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common control and monitoring panel mounted on the engine generator. The mounting method shall isolate the control panel from engine generator vibration. The panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

F. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, and engine gages shall be grouped in a common wall-mounted control and monitoring panel. Panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

G. Configuration: Operating and safety indications, protective devices, basic system controls, engine gages, instrument transformers, generator-disconnect switch or circuit breaker, and other indicated components shall be grouped in a combination control and power panel. The control and monitoring section of panel shall be isolated from power sections by steel barriers. The panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery. Panel features shall include the following:

1. Wall-Mounting Cabinet Construction: Rigid, self-supporting steel unit complying with NEMA ICS 6.
2. Switchboard Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Section 262413 "Switchboards." Power bus shall be copper. Bus, bus supports, control wiring, and temperature rise shall comply with UL 891.
3. Switchgear Construction: Freestanding unit complying with Section 262300 "Low-Voltage Switchgear."

H. Control and Monitoring Panel:

1. Digital controller with integrated LCD display, controls, and microprocessor, capable of local and remote control, monitoring, and programming, with battery backup.
2. Analog control panel with dedicated gages and indicator lights for the instruments and alarms indicated below.
3. Instruments: Located on the control and monitoring panel and viewable during operation.

    a. Engine lubricating-oil pressure gage.

b. Engine-coolant temperature gage.
c. DC voltmeter (alternator battery charging).
d. Running-time meter.
e. AC voltmeter, **connected to a phase selector switch**.
f. AC ammeter, **connected to a phase selector switch**.
g. AC frequency meter.
h. Generator-voltage-adjusting rheostat.

4. Controls and Protective Devices: Controls, shutdown devices, and common visual alarm indication as required by NFPA 110 for Level **1** system, including the following:

a. Cranking control equipment.
b. Run-Off-Auto switch.
c. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
d. Overcrank alarm.
e. Overcrank shutdown device.
f. Low water temperature alarm.
g. High engine temperature pre-alarm.
h. High engine temperature.
i. High engine temperature shutdown device.
j. Overspeed alarm.
k. Overspeed shutdown device.
l. Low-fuel main tank.

1) Low-fuel-level alarm shall be initiated when the level falls below that required for operation for the duration required for the indicated EPSS class.

m. Coolant low-level alarm.
n. Coolant low-level shutdown device.
o. Coolant high-temperature prealarm.
p. Coolant high-temperature alarm.
q. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
r. Coolant high-temperature shutdown device.
s. EPS load indicator.
t. Battery high-voltage alarm.
u. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
v. Battery-charger malfunction alarm.
w. Battery low-voltage alarm.
x. Lamp test.
y. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
z. Low-starting air pressure alarm.
aa. Low-starting hydraulic pressure alarm.
bb. Remote manual-stop shutdown device.

cc. Air shutdown damper alarm when used.
dd. Air shutdown damper shutdown device when used.
ee. Generator overcurrent-protective-device not-closed alarm.
ff. Hours of operation.
gg. Engine generator metering, including voltage, current, hertz, kilowatt, kilovolt ampere, and power factor.

I. Connection to Datalink:

1. A separate terminal block, factory wired to Form C dry contacts, for each alarm and status indication.
2. Provide connections for datalink transmission of indications to remote data terminals via **ModBus and Ethernet**. Data system connections to terminals are covered in Section 260913 "Electrical Power Monitoring and Control."

J. Common Remote Panel with Common Audible Alarm: Comply with NFPA 110 requirements for Level **1** systems. Include necessary contacts and terminals in control and monitoring panel. Remote panel shall be powered from the engine generator battery.

K. Remote Alarm Annunciator: Comply with NFPA 99. An LED indicator light labeled with proper alarm conditions shall identify each alarm event, and a common audible signal shall sound for each alarm condition. The silencing switch in face of panel shall silence signal without altering visual indication. Connect so that after an alarm is silenced, clearing of initiating condition will reactivate alarm until silencing switch is reset. Cabinet and faceplate are surface- or flush-mounting type to suit mounting conditions indicated.

1. Overcrank alarm.
2. Coolant low-temperature alarm.
3. High engine temperature prealarm.
4. High engine temperature alarm.
5. Low lube oil pressure alarm.
6. Overspeed alarm.
7. Low-fuel main tank alarm.
8. Low coolant level alarm.
9. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
10. Contacts for local and remote common alarm.
11. Audible-alarm silencing switch.
12. Air shutdown damper when used.
13. Run-Off-Auto switch.
14. Control switch not in automatic position alarm.
15. Fuel tank derangement alarm.
16. Fuel tank high-level shutdown of fuel-supply alarm.
17. Lamp test.
18. Low-cranking voltage alarm.
19. Generator overcurrent protective device not closed.

L. Supporting Items: Include sensors, transducers, terminals, relays, and other devices and include wiring required to support specified items. Locate sensors and other supporting items on engine or generator unless otherwise indicated.

M. Remote Emergency-Stop Switch: Flush; wall mounted, unless otherwise indicated; and labeled. Push button shall be protected from accidental operation.

2.7 GENERATOR OVERCURRENT AND FAULT PROTECTION

A. Overcurrent protective devices for the entire EPSS shall be coordinated to optimize selective tripping when a short circuit occurs. Coordination of protective devices shall consider both utility and EPSS as the voltage source.

1. Overcurrent protective devices for the EPSS shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

B. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, thermal-magnetic type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristic: Designed specifically for generator protection.
2. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

C. Generator Circuit Breaker: Molded-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

D. Generator Circuit Breaker: Insulated-case, electronic-trip type; 100 percent rated; complying with UL 489.

1. Tripping Characteristics: Adjustable long-time and short-time delay and instantaneous.
2. Trip Settings: Selected to coordinate with generator thermal damage curve.
3. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip breaker when engine generator is shut down by other protective devices.
4. Mounting: Adjacent to or integrated with control and monitoring panel.

E. Generator Disconnect Switch: Molded-case type, 100 percent rated.

1. Trip Rating: Matched to generator output rating.
2. Shunt Trip: Connected to trip switch when signaled by generator protector or by other protective devices.

F. Generator Protector: Microprocessor-based unit shall continuously monitor current level in each phase of generator output, integrate generator heating effect over time, and predict when thermal damage of alternator will occur. When signaled by generator protector or other engine generator protective devices, a shunt-trip device in the generator disconnect switch shall open the switch to disconnect the generator from load circuits. Protector performs the following functions:

1. Initiates a generator overload alarm when generator has operated at an overload equivalent to 110 percent of full-rated load for 60 seconds. Indication for this alarm is integrated with other engine generator malfunction alarms. Contacts shall be available for load shed functions.
2. Under single- or three-phase fault conditions, regulates generator to 300 percent of rated full-load current for up to 10 seconds.
3. As overcurrent heating effect on the generator approaches the thermal damage point of the unit, protector switches the excitation system off, opens the generator disconnect device, and shuts down the engine generator.
4. Senses clearing of a fault by other overcurrent devices and controls recovery of rated voltage to avoid overshoot.

G. Ground-Fault Indication: Comply with NFPA 70, "Emergency System" signals for ground fault.

1. Indicate ground fault with other engine generator alarm indications.
2. Trip generator protective device on ground fault.

2.8 GENERATOR, EXCITER, AND VOLTAGE REGULATOR

A. Comply with NEMA MG 1.

B. Drive: Generator shaft shall be directly connected to engine shaft. Exciter shall be rotated integrally with generator rotor.

C. Electrical Insulation: Class H or Class F.

D. Stator-Winding Leads: Brought out to terminal box to permit future reconnection for other voltages if required. Provide **6**-lead alternator.

E. Range: Provide **limited** range of output voltage by adjusting the excitation level.

F. Construction shall prevent mechanical, electrical, and thermal damage due to vibration, overspeed up to 125 percent of rating, and heat during operation at 110 percent of rated capacity.

G. Enclosure: Dripproof.

H. Instrument Transformers: Mounted within generator enclosure.

I. Voltage Regulator: Solid-state type, separate from exciter, providing performance as specified and as required by NFPA 110.

1. Adjusting Rheostat on Control and Monitoring Panel: Provide plus or minus 5 percent adjustment of output-voltage operating band.
2. Maintain voltage within **15** percent on one step, full load.
3. Provide anti-hunt provision to stabilize voltage.
4. Maintain frequency within **5** percent and stabilize at rated frequency within **two** seconds.

J. Strip Heater: Thermostatically controlled unit arranged to maintain stator windings above dew point.

K. Windings: Two-thirds pitch stator winding and fully linked amortisseur winding.

L. Subtransient Reactance: **12** percent, maximum.

2.9 LOAD BANK

A. Description: Permanent, outdoor, weatherproof, remote-controlled, forced-air-cooled, **resistive and reactive** unit capable of providing a balanced three-phase, delta-connected load to engine generator at **100** percent rated-system capacity, at **80** percent power factor, lagging. **Unit may contain separate resistive and reactive load banks controlled by a common control panel.** Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.

B. Description: Permanent, radiator-mounted**, resistive** unit capable of providing a balanced three-phase, delta-connected load to engine generator at **50** percent rated-system capacity. Unit shall be capable of selective control of load in 25 percent steps of load-bank rating and with minimum step changes of approximately 5 and 10 percent available.

C. Resistive Load Elements: Corrosion-resistant chromium alloy with ceramic and stainless-steel supports. Elements shall be double insulated and designed for repetitive on-off cycling. Elements shall be mounted in removable aluminized-steel heater cases. Galvanized steel is prohibited. Element's maximum resistance shall be between 100 and 105 percent of rated resistance.

D. Reactive Load Elements: Epoxy-encapsulated reactor coils.

E. Load-Bank Heat Dissipation: Integral fan with totally enclosed motor shall provide uniform cooling airflow through load elements. Airflow and coil operating current shall be such that, at maximum load, with ambient temperature at the upper end of specified range, load-bank elements operate at not more than 50 percent of maximum continuous temperature rating of resistance elements.

F. Load-Element Switching: Remote-controlled contactors switch groups of load elements. Contactor coils are rated 120 V. Contactors shall be located in a separate NEMA 250, Type 3R enclosure within load-bank enclosure, accessible from exterior through hinged doors with tumbler locks.

G. Contactor Enclosures: Heated by thermostatically controlled strip heaters to prevent condensation.

H. Load-Bank Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R aluminized steel complying with NEMA ICS 6. Louvers at cooling-air intake and discharge openings shall prevent entry of rain and snow. Openings for airflow shall be screened with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) square, galvanized-steel mesh. Reactive load bank shall include automatic shutters at air intake and discharge. Components other than resistive elements shall receive exterior epoxy coating with compatible primer. Comply with requirements in Section 099600 "High-Performance Coatings."

I. Protective Devices: Power input circuits to load banks shall be fused, and fuses shall be selected to coordinate with generator circuit breaker. Fuse blocks shall be located in contactor enclosure. Cooling airflow and overtemperature sensors shall automatically shut down and lock out load bank until manually reset. Safety interlocks on access panels and doors shall disconnect load power, control, and heater circuits. Fan motor shall be separately protected by overload and short-circuit devices. Short-circuit devices shall be noninterchangeable fuses with 200,000-A interrupting capacity.

J. Load-Bank Remote-Control Panel: Separate from load bank in NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure with a control power switch and pilot light, and switches controlling groups of load elements.

K. Control Sequence: Control panel may be preset for adjustable single-step loading of generator during automatic exercising.

2.10 OUTDOOR ENGINE GENERATOR ENCLOSURE

A. Description: Vandal-resistant, sound-attenuating, weatherproof steel housing, wind resistant up to 100 mph (160 km/h). Multiple panels shall be lockable and provide adequate

access to components requiring maintenance. Panels shall be removable by one person without tools. Instruments and control shall be mounted within enclosure.

1. Sound Attenuation Level: 2.

B. Description: Prefabricated or pre-engineered, galvanized-steel-clad, integral structural-steel-framed, walk-in enclosure, erected on concrete foundation.

C. Structural Design and Anchorage: Comply with ASCE/SEI 7 for wind loads of up to 100 mph (160 km/h).

D. Seismic Design: Comply with seismic requirements in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

E. Fire Protection: Provide fire protection according to **Section 211313 "Wet-Pipe Sprinkler Systems."** Provide smoke detector in enclosure; mounted according to NFPA 72.

F. Hinged Doors: With padlocking provisions.

G. Space Heater: Thermostatically controlled and sized to prevent condensation.

H. Lighting: Provide weather-resistant **LED** lighting with **30-fc (330-lx)** average maintained.

I. Thermal Insulation: Manufacturer's standard materials and thickness selected in coordination with space heater to maintain winter interior temperature within operating limits required by engine generator components.

J. Muffler Location: **Within** enclosure.

K. Engine-Cooling Airflow through Enclosure: Maintain temperature rise of system components within required limits when unit operates at 110 percent of rated load for two hours with ambient temperature at top of range specified in system service conditions.

1. Louvers: Fixed-engine, cooling-air inlet and discharge. Storm-proof and drainable louvers prevent entry of rain and snow.
2. Automatic Dampers: At engine cooling-air inlet and discharge. Dampers shall be closed to reduce enclosure heat loss in cold weather when unit is not operating.
3. Ventilation: Provide temperature-controlled exhaust fan interlocked to prevent operation when engine is running.

L. Interior Lights with Switch: Factory-wired, vapor-proof luminaires within housing; arranged to illuminate controls and accessible interior. Arrange for external electrical connection.

1. AC lighting system and connection point for operation when remote source is available.

2. DC lighting system for operation when remote source and generator are both unavailable.

M. Convenience Outlets: Factory-wired GFCI. Arrange for external electrical connection.

2.11 REMOTE RADIATOR MOTORS

A. Description: NEMA MG 1, Design B, medium-induction random-wound, squirrel-cage motor.

B. Efficiency: Energy efficient, as defined in NEMA MG 1.

C. Service Factor: 1.15.

D. Bearings: Regreasable, shielded, antifriction ball bearings suitable for radial and thrust loading.

E. Motor Sizes: Minimum size as indicated. If not indicated, large enough so driven load will not require motor to operate in service factor range above 1.0.

F. Temperature Rise: Match insulation rating.

G. Code Letter Designation:

1. Motors **15** HP and Larger: NEMA starting Code F or Code G.
2. Motors Smaller Than **15** HP: Manufacturer's standard starting characteristic.

H. Enclosure Material: Cast iron for motor frame sizes 324T and larger; rolled steel for motor frame sizes smaller than 324T.

I. Controllers, Electrical Devices, and Wiring: Electrical devices and connections are specified in electrical Sections.

2.12 VIBRATION ISOLATION DEVICES

A. Elastomeric Isolator Pads: Oil- and water-resistant elastomer or natural rubber, arranged in single or multiple layers, molded with a nonslip pattern and galvanized-steel baseplates of sufficient stiffness for uniform loading over pad area, and factory cut to sizes that match requirements of supported equipment.

1. Material: **Standard neoprene, complying with AASHTO M 251** separated by steel shims.
2. Shore A Scale Durometer Rating: **50**.
3. Number of Layers: **Two**.
4. Minimum Deflection: **1 inch (25 mm)**.

B. Restrained Spring Isolators: Freestanding, steel, open-spring isolators with seismic restraint.

1. Housing: Steel with resilient, vertical-limit stops to prevent spring extension due to wind loads or if weight is removed; factory-drilled baseplate bonded to 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) thick, elastomeric isolator pad attached to baseplate underside; and adjustable equipment-mounting and -leveling bolt that acts as blocking during installation.
2. Outside Spring Diameter: Not less than 80 percent of compressed height of the spring at rated load.
3. Minimum Additional Travel: 50 percent of required deflection at rated load.
4. Lateral Stiffness: More than 80 percent of rated vertical stiffness.
5. Overload Capacity: Support 200 percent of rated load, fully compressed, without deformation or failure.
6. Minimum Deflection: **1 inch (25 mm)**.

C. Comply with requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for steel piping.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 233113 "Metal Ducts" for vibration isolation and flexible connector materials for exhaust shroud and ductwork.

E. Vibration isolation devices shall not be used to accommodate misalignments or to make bends.

2.13 FINISHES

A. Indoor and Outdoor Enclosures and Components: Manufacturer's standard finish over corrosion-resistant pretreatment and compatible primer.

2.14 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Prototype Testing: Factory test engine generator using same engine model, constructed of identical or equivalent components and equipped with identical or equivalent accessories.

1. Tests: Comply with NFPA 110, Level 1 Energy Converters and with IEEE 115.

B. Project-Specific Equipment Tests: Before shipment, factory test engine generator and other system components and accessories manufactured specifically for this Project. Perform tests at rated load and power factor. Include the following tests:

1. Test components and accessories furnished with installed unit that are not identical to those on tested prototype to demonstrate compatibility and reliability.
2. Test generator, exciter, and voltage regulator as a unit.
3. Full-load run.

4. Maximum power.
5. Voltage regulation.
6. Transient and steady-state governing.
7. Single-step load pickup.
8. Safety shutdown.
9. Provide 14 days' advance notice of tests and opportunity for observation of tests by Owner's representative.
10. Report factory test results within 10 days of completion of test.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas, equipment bases, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation and other conditions affecting packaged engine generator performance.

B. Examine roughing-in for piping systems and electrical connections. Verify actual locations of connections before packaged engine generator installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify **Owner** no fewer than **two** working days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of electrical service without **Owner's** written permission.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1 and NECA 404.

B. Comply with packaged engine generator manufacturers' written installation and alignment instructions and with NFPA 110.

C. Equipment Mounting:

1. Install packaged engine generators on cast-in-place concrete equipment bases. Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases for packaged engine generators. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork requirements are specified with concrete.
3. Install **packaged engine generator** with **restrained spring isolators** having a minimum deflection of **1 inch (25 mm)** on 4-inch- (100-mm-) high concrete base. Secure **enclosure** to anchor bolts installed in concrete bases. Concrete base construction is specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."
4. Remote Radiators:

    a. Coordinate size and location of roof curbs, equipment supports, and roof penetrations for remote radiators. These items are specified in Section 077200 "Roof Accessories."

D. Install packaged engine generator to provide access, without removing connections or accessories, for periodic maintenance.

E. Cooling System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints for cooling water piping between engine generator and **heat exchanger**. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."

1. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces. Provide a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) of clearance from combustibles.
2. Insulate cooling-system piping and components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."

F. Exhaust System: Install Schedule 40 black steel piping with welded joints and connect to engine muffler. Install thimble at wall. Piping shall be same diameter as muffler outlet.

1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Install flexible connectors and steel piping materials according to requirements in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."
3. Insulate muffler/silencer and exhaust system components according to requirements in Section 230719 "HVAC Piping Insulation."
4. Install isolating thimbles where exhaust piping penetrates combustible surfaces with a minimum of 9 inches (225 mm) of clearance from combustibles.

G. Drain Piping: Install condensate drain piping to muffler drain outlet with a shutoff valve, stainless-steel flexible connector, and Schedule 40 black steel pipe with welded joints.

1. Piping materials and installation requirements are specified in Section 232113 "Hydronic Piping."
2. Drain piping valves, connectors, and installation requirements are specified in Section 232116 "Hydronic Piping Specialties."

H. Fuel Piping:

1. Diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."
2. Copper and galvanized steel shall not be used in the fuel-oil piping system.

I. Electrical Wiring: Install electrical devices furnished by equipment manufacturers but not specified to be factory mounted.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Piping installation requirements are specified in other Sections. Drawings indicate general arrangement of piping and specialties.

B. Connect fuel, cooling-system, and exhaust-system piping adjacent to packaged engine generator to allow space for service and maintenance.

C. Connect cooling-system water piping to engine generator and **heat exchanger** with flexible connectors.

D. Connect engine exhaust pipe to engine with flexible connector.

E. Connect fuel piping to engines with a gate valve and union and flexible connector.

1. Additional requirements for diesel storage tanks, tank accessories, piping, valves, and specialties for fuel systems are specified in Section 231113 "Facility Fuel-Oil Piping."

F. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

G. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables." Provide a minimum of one 90-degree bend in flexible conduit routed to the engine generator from a stationary element.

H. Balance single-phase loads to obtain a maximum of 10 percent unbalance between any two phases.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components according to Section 230553 "Identification for HVAC Piping and Equipment" and Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

B. Install a sign indicating the generator neutral is bonded to the main service neutral at the main service location.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Testing Agency: Contractor will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

D. Perform tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**.

E. Tests and Inspections:

1. Perform tests recommended by manufacturer and in "Visual and Mechanical Inspection" and "Electrical and Mechanical Tests" subparagraphs below, as specified in the NETA ATS. Certify compliance with test parameters.

    a. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

        1) Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and the Specifications.
        2) Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
        3) Inspect anchorage, alignment, and grounding.
        4) Verify that the unit is clean.

    b. Electrical and Mechanical Tests:

        1) Perform insulation-resistance tests according to IEEE 43.

            a) Machines Larger Than 200 hp (150 kW): Test duration shall be 10 minutes. Calculate polarization index.
            b) Machines 200 hp (150 kW) or Less: Test duration shall be one minute. Calculate the dielectric-absorption ratio.

        2) Test protective relay devices.

3) Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation as required by the application.
4) Functionally test engine shutdown for low oil pressure, overtemperature, overspeed, and other protection features as applicable.
5) Perform vibration test for each main bearing cap.
6) Conduct performance test according to NFPA 110.
7) Verify correct functioning of the governor and regulator.

2. NFPA 110 Acceptance Tests: Perform tests required by NFPA 110 that are additional to those specified here, including, but not limited to, single-step full-load pickup test.
3. Battery Tests: Equalize charging of battery cells according to manufacturer's written instructions. Record individual cell voltages.

    a. Measure charging voltage and voltages between available battery terminals for full-charging and float-charging conditions. Check electrolyte level and specific gravity under both conditions.
    b. Test for contact integrity of all connectors. Perform an integrity load test and a capacity load test for the battery.
    c. Verify acceptance of charge for each element of the battery after discharge.
    d. Verify that measurements are within manufacturer's specifications.

4. Battery-Charger Tests: Verify specified rates of charge for both equalizing and float-charging conditions.
5. System Integrity Tests: Methodically verify proper installation, connection, and integrity of each element of engine generator system before and during system operation. Check for air, exhaust, and fluid leaks.
6. Exhaust-System Back-Pressure Test: Use a manometer with a scale exceeding 40-inch wg (120 kPa). Connect to exhaust line close to engine exhaust manifold. Verify that back pressure at full-rated load is within manufacturer's written allowable limits for the engine.
7. Exhaust Emissions Test: Comply with applicable government test criteria.
8. Voltage and Frequency Transient Stability Tests: Use recording oscilloscope to measure voltage and frequency transients for 50 and 100 percent step-load increases and decreases, and verify that performance is as specified.
9. Harmonic-Content Tests: Measure harmonic content of output voltage at 25 percent and 100 percent of rated linear load. Verify that harmonic content is within specified limits.
10. Noise-Level Tests: Measure A-weighted level of noise emanating from engine generator installation, including engine exhaust and cooling-air intake and discharge, at **four** locations **25 feet (8 m) from edge of the generator enclosure**, and compare measured levels with required values.

F. Coordinate tests with tests for transfer switches and run them concurrently.

G. Test instruments shall have been calibrated within the past 12 months, traceable to NIST Calibration Services, and adequate for making positive observation of test results. Make calibration records available for examination on request.

H. Leak Test: After installation, charge exhaust, coolant, and fuel systems and test for leaks. Repair leaks and retest until no leaks exist.

I. Operational Test: After electrical circuitry has been energized, start units to confirm proper motor rotation and unit operation for generator and associated equipment.

J. Test and adjust controls and safeties. Replace damaged and malfunctioning controls and equipment.

K. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and **retest** as specified above.

L. Retest: Correct deficiencies identified by tests and observations, and retest until specified requirements are met.

M. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation resistances, time delays, and other values and observations. Attach a label or tag to each tested component, indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

N. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after final acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each power wiring termination and each bus connection while running with maximum load. Remove all access panels, so terminations and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.
2. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
3. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies terminations and connections checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.

3.7 MAINTENANCE SERVICE

A. Initial Maintenance Service: Beginning at Substantial Completion, maintenance service shall include **12** months' full maintenance by skilled employees of manufacturer's authorized service representative. Include quarterly preventive maintenance and exercising to check for proper starting, load transfer, and running under load. Include routine preventive maintenance as recommended by manufacturer and adjusting as required for proper operation. Parts shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain packaged engine generators.

END OF SECTION 26 32 13.13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 36 00 - TRANSFER SWITCHES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes **automatic** transfer switches rated 600 V and less, including the following:

1. Bypass/isolation switches.
2. Remote annunciator system.
3. Remote annunciator and control system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for transfer switches.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, details showing minimum clearances, conductor entry provisions, gutter space, and installed features and devices.
2. Include material lists for each switch specified.
3. Single-Line Diagram: Show connections between transfer switch, **bypass/isolation switch,** power sources, and load; and show interlocking provisions for each combined transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch.
4. Riser Diagram: Show interconnection wiring between transfer switches, bypass/isolation switches, annunciators, and control panels.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For **manufacturer-authorized service representative** or **testing agency**.

B. Seismic Qualification Data: Certificates, for transfer switches, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.5 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For each type of product to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Features and operating sequences, both automatic and manual.
b. List of all factory settings of relays; provide relay-setting and calibration instructions, including software, where applicable.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Member company of NETA.

a. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Certified by NETA to supervise on-site testing.

1.7 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Electrical Service: Do not interrupt electrical service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions and then only after arranging to provide temporary electrical service:

1. Notify **Architect**, **Construction Manager, Owner** no fewer than **two** days in advance of proposed interruption of electrical service.
2. Do not proceed with the interruption of the electrical service without **Architect's, Construction Manager's, Owner's** written permission.

1.8 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of transfer switch or transfer switch components that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Two years** from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NEMA ICS 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 99.

D. Comply with NFPA 110.

E. Comply with UL 1008 unless the requirements of these Specifications are stricter.

F. Indicated Current Ratings: Apply as defined in UL 1008 for continuous loading and total system transfer, including tungsten filament lamp loads not exceeding 30 percent of switch ampere rating, unless otherwise indicated.

G. Tested Fault-Current Closing and Short-Circuit Ratings: Adequate for duty imposed by protective devices at installation locations in Project under the fault conditions indicated, based on testing according to UL 1008.

1. Where transfer switch includes internal fault-current protection, rating of switch and trip unit combination shall exceed indicated fault-current value at installation location.
2. Short-time withstand capability for **three** cycles.

H. Repetitive Accuracy of Solid-State Controls: All settings shall be plus or minus 2 percent or better over an operating temperature range of minus 20 to plus 70 deg C.

I. Resistance to Damage by Voltage Transients: Components shall meet or exceed voltage-surge withstand capability requirements when tested according to IEEE C62.62. Components shall meet or exceed voltage-impulse withstand test of NEMA ICS 1.

J. Electrical Operation: Accomplish by a non-fused, momentarily energized solenoid or electric-motor-operated mechanism. Switches for emergency or standby purposes shall be

mechanically and electrically interlocked in both directions to prevent simultaneous connection to both power sources unless closed transition.

K. Service-Rated Transfer Switch:

1. Comply with UL 869A and UL 489.
2. Provide terminals for bonding the grounding electrode conductor to the grounded service conductor.
3. In systems with a neutral, the bonding connection shall be on the neutral bus.
4. Provide removable link for temporary separation of the service and load grounded conductors.
5. Surge Protective Device: Service rated.
6. Ground-Fault Protection: Comply with UL 1008 for **normal bus**.
7. Service Disconnecting Means: Externally operated, manual **mechanically** actuated.

L. Neutral Switching: Where four-pole switches are indicated, provide **neutral pole switched simultaneously with phase poles**.

M. Neutral Terminal: Solid and fully rated unless otherwise indicated.

N. Oversize Neutral: Ampacity and switch rating of neutral path through units indicated for oversize neutral shall be double the nominal rating of circuit in which switch is installed.

O. Heater: Equip switches exposed to outdoor temperatures and humidity, and other units indicated, with an internal heater. Provide thermostat within enclosure to control heater.

P. Battery Charger: For generator starting batteries.

1. Float type, rated 10 A.
2. Ammeter to display charging current.
3. Fused ac inputs and dc outputs.

Q. Annunciation, Control, and Programming Interface Components: Devices at transfer switches for communicating with remote programming devices, annunciators, or annunciator and control panels shall have communication capability matched with remote devices.

R. Factory Wiring: Train and bundle factory wiring and label, consistent with Shop Drawings, by color-code or by numbered or lettered wire and cable **with printed** and **shrinkable sleeve** markers at terminations. Color-coding and wire and cable markers are specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

1. Designated Terminals: Pressure type, suitable for types and sizes of field wiring indicated.
2. Power-Terminal Arrangement and Field-Wiring Space: Suitable for top, side, or bottom entrance of feeder conductors as indicated.

3. Control Wiring: Equipped with mechanical lugs suitable for connection to terminal strips.
4. Accessible via **front** access.

S. Enclosures: General-purpose NEMA 250, **Type 3R or Type 4X**, complying with NEMA ICS 6 and UL 508, unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 CONTACTOR-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

B. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using molded-case switches or circuit breakers or insulated-case circuit-breaker components are unacceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching. Contactor-style automatic transfer-switch units, rated 600 A and higher, shall have separate arcing contacts.
4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
5. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity**.
6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
8. Ground bar.
9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

C. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

D. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.

4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.

E. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Connect both sources to load momentarily. Transition is controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller.

1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation when transferring between two available power sources.
2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.

a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
b. Automatic transfer-switch controller takes active control of the generator to match frequency, phase angle, and voltage.
c. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the two sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.

4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.

F. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is the same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

G. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

H. Electric A**utomatic** Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

I. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

J. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

K. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:

1. The controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternate** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98

percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.

3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.
9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exercise features include the following:

    a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.

c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

L. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.3 MOLDED-CASE-TYPE AUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Comply with Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.

B. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Limitation: Switches using contactor-based components are unacceptable.
2. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
3. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching.
4. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
5. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity**.
6. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
7. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
8. Ground bar.
9. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

C. Automatic Open-Transition Transfer Switches: Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.

D. Automatic Delayed-Transition Transfer Switches: Pauses or stops in intermediate position to momentarily disconnect both sources, with transition controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller. Interlocked to prevent the load from being closed on both sources at the same time.

1. Adjustable Time Delay: For override of normal-source voltage sensing to delay transfer and engine start signals for alternative source. Adjustable from zero to six seconds, and factory set for one second.
2. Sources shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked to prevent closing both sources on the load at the same time.
3. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with center off position.
4. Fully automatic break-before-make operation with transfer when two sources have near zero phase difference.

E. Automatic Closed-Transition Transfer Switches: Connect both sources to load momentarily. Transition is controlled by programming in the automatic transfer-switch controller.

1. Fully automatic make-before-break operation when transferring between two available power sources.
2. Load transfer without interruption, through momentary interconnection of both power sources not exceeding 100 ms.
3. Initiation of No-Interruption Transfer: Controlled by in-phase monitor and sensors confirming both sources are present and acceptable.

    a. Initiation occurs without active control of generator.
    b. Automatic transfer-switch controller takes active control of the generator to match frequency, phase angle, and voltage.
    c. Controls ensure that closed-transition load transfer closure occurs only when the two sources are within plus or minus 5 electrical degrees maximum, and plus or minus 5 percent maximum voltage difference.

4. Failure of power source serving load initiates automatic break-before-make transfer.

F. Manual Switch Operation: Under load, with door closed and with either or both sources energized. Transfer time is the same as for electrical operation. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

G. Manual Switch Operation: Unloaded. Control circuit automatically disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

H. Electric A**utomatic** Switch Operation: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

I. Signal-Before-Transfer Contacts: A set of normally open/normally closed dry contacts operates in advance of retransfer to normal source. Interval shall be adjustable from 1 to 30 seconds.

J. Digital Communication Interface: Matched to capability of remote annunciator or annunciator and control panel.

K. Transfer Switches Based on Molded-Case-Switch Components: Comply with UL 489 and UL 869A.

L. Automatic Transfer-Switch Controller Features:

1. The controller operates through a period of loss of control power.
2. Undervoltage Sensing for Each Phase of Normal **and Alternative** Source: Sense low phase-to-ground voltage on each phase. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal, and dropout voltage shall be adjustable from 75 to 98 percent of pickup value. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent and dropout at 85 percent.
3. Voltage/Frequency Lockout Relay: Prevent premature transfer to generator. Pickup voltage shall be adjustable from 85 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 90 percent. Pickup frequency shall be adjustable from 90 to 100 percent of nominal. Factory set for pickup at 95 percent.
4. Time Delay for Retransfer to Normal Source: Adjustable from zero to 30 minutes, and factory set for 10 minutes. Override shall automatically defeat delay on loss of voltage or sustained undervoltage of emergency source, provided normal supply has been restored.
5. Test Switch: Simulate normal-source failure.
6. Switch-Position Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.
7. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and emergency-source sensing circuits.

    a. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
    b. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Emergency Source Available."

8. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Two normally open, single-pole, double-throw contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.

9. Transfer Override Switch: Overrides automatic retransfer control so automatic transfer switch will remain connected to emergency power source regardless of condition of normal source. Pilot light indicates override status.
10. Engine Starting Contacts: One isolated and normally closed, and one isolated and normally open; rated 10 A at 32-V dc minimum.
11. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Instantaneous; shall initiate shutdown sequence at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
12. Engine Shutdown Contacts: Time delay adjustable from zero to five minutes, and factory set for five minutes. Contacts shall initiate shutdown at remote engine-generator controls after retransfer of load to normal source.
13. Engine-Generator Exerciser: Solid-state, programmable-time switch starts engine generator and transfers load to it from normal source for a preset time, then retransfers and shuts down engine after a preset cool-down period. Initiates exercise cycle at preset intervals adjustable from 7 to 30 days. Running periods shall be adjustable from 10 to 30 minutes. Factory settings shall be for 7-day exercise cycle, 20-minute running period, and 5-minute cool-down period. Exercise features include the following:

    a. Exerciser Transfer Selector Switch: Permits selection of exercise with and without load transfer.
    b. Push-button programming control with digital display of settings.
    c. Integral battery operation of time switch when normal control power is unavailable.

M. Large-Motor-Load Power Transfer:

1. In-Phase Monitor: Factory-wired, internal relay controls transfer so contacts close only when the two sources are synchronized in phase and frequency. Relay shall compare phase relationship and frequency difference between normal and emergency sources and initiate transfer when both sources are within 15 electrical degrees, and only if transfer can be completed within 60 electrical degrees. Transfer shall be initiated only if both sources are within 2 Hz of nominal frequency and 70 percent or more of nominal voltage.
2. Motor Disconnect and Timing Relay Controls: Designated starters in loss of power scenario shall disconnect motors before transfer and reconnect them selectively at an adjustable time interval after transfer. Control connection to motor starters shall be through wiring external to automatic transfer switch. Provide adjustable time delay between 1 and 60 seconds for reconnecting individual motor loads. Provide relay contacts rated for motor-control circuit inrush and for actual seal currents to be encountered.
3. Programmed Neutral Switch Position: Switch operator with programmed neutral position arranged to provide a midpoint between the two working switch positions, with an intentional, time-controlled pause at midpoint during transfer. Adjustable pause from 0.5 to 30 seconds minimum, and factory set for 0.5 second unless

otherwise indicated. Time delay occurs for both transfer directions. Disable pause unless both sources are live.

2.4 NONAUTOMATIC TRANSFER SWITCHES

A. Electrically Operated: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Switch shall be capable of transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized.

B. Manual and Electrically Operated: Electrically actuated by push buttons designated "Normal Source" and "Alternative Source." Manual handle provides quick-make, quick-break manual-switching action. Switch shall be capable of electrically or manually transferring load in either direction with either or both sources energized. Control circuit disconnects from electrical operator during manual operation.

C. Double-Throw Switching Arrangement: Incapable of pauses or intermediate position stops during switching sequence.

D. Pilot Lights: Indicate source to which load is connected.

E. Source-Available Indicating Lights: Supervise sources via transfer-switch normal- and alternative-source sensing circuits.

1. Normal Power Supervision: Green light with nameplate engraved "Normal Source Available."
2. Emergency Power Supervision: Red light with nameplate engraved "Alternative Source Available."

F. Unassigned Auxiliary Contacts: Switch shall have one set of normally closed contacts for each switch position, rated 10 A at 240-V ac.

G. Switch Characteristics: Designed for continuous-duty repetitive transfer of full-rated current between active power sources.

1. Switch Action: Double throw; mechanically held in both directions.
2. Contacts: Silver composition or silver alloy for load-current switching.
3. Conductor Connectors: Suitable for use with conductor material and sizes.
4. Material: **Hard-drawn copper, 98 percent conductivity**.
5. Main and Neutral Lugs: **Mechanical** type.
6. Ground Lugs and Bus-Configured Terminators: **Mechanical** type.
7. Ground bar.
8. Connectors shall be marked for conductor size and type according to UL 1008.

2.5 TRANSFER SWITCH ACESSORIES

A. Bypass/Isolation Switches:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Comply with requirements for Level 1 equipment according to NFPA 110.
3. Description: Manual type, arranged to select and connect either source of power directly to load, isolating transfer switch from load and from both power sources. Include the following features for each combined automatic transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch:

    a. Means to lock bypass/isolation switch in the position that isolates transfer switch with an arrangement that permits complete electrical testing of transfer switch while isolated. Interlocks shall prevent transfer-switch operation, except for testing or maintenance, while automatic transfer switch is isolated.
    b. Provide means to make power available to transfer-switch control circuits for testing and maintenance purposes.
    c. Drawout Arrangement for Transfer Switch: Provide physical separation from live parts and accessibility for testing and maintenance operations. Transfer switch and bypass/isolation switch shall be in isolated compartments.
    d. Transition: Provide closed-transition operation when transferring from main transfer switch to bypass/isolation switch on the same power source.
    e. Transition: Provide **closed**-transition operation when transferring between power sources.
    f. Bypass/Isolation Switch Current, Voltage, Closing, and Short-Circuit Withstand Ratings: Equal to or greater than those of associated automatic transfer switch, and with same phase arrangement and number of poles.
    g. Contact temperatures of bypass/isolation switches shall not exceed those of automatic transfer-switch contacts when they are carrying rated load.
    h. Manual Control: Constructed so load bypass and transfer-switch isolation can be performed by one person in no more than two operations in 15 seconds or less. Operating handles shall be externally operated.
    i. Automatic and Nonautomatic Control: Automatic transfer-switch controller shall also control the bypass/isolation switch.
    j. Legend: Manufacturer's standard legend for control labels and instruction signs shall describe operating instructions.
    k. Maintainability: Fabricate to allow convenient removal of major components from front without removing other parts or main power conductors.

4. Interconnection of Bypass/Isolation Switches with Automatic Transfer Switches: Factory-installed copper bus bars; plated at connection points and braced for the indicated available short-circuit current.

B. Remote Annunciator System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Functional Description: Remote annunciator panel shall annunciate conditions for indicated transfer switches.
3. Annunciation panel display shall include the following indicators:

    a. Sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
    b. Switch position.
    c. Switch in test mode.
    d. Failure of communication link.

4. Annunciator Panel: LED-lamp type with audible signal and silencing switch.

    a. Indicating Lights: Grouped for each transfer switch monitored.
    b. Label each group, indicating transfer switch it monitors, location of switch, and identity of load it serves.
    c. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.
    d. Lamp Test: Push-to-test or lamp-test switch on front panel.

C. Remote Annunciator and Control System:

1. Source Limitations: Same manufacturer as transfer switch in which installed.
2. Include the following functions for indicated transfer switches:

    a. Indication of sources available, as defined by actual pickup and dropout settings of transfer-switch controls.
    b. Indication of switch position.
    c. Indication of switch in test mode.
    d. Indication of failure of digital communication link.
    e. Key-switch or user-code access to control functions of panel.
    f. Control of switch-test initiation.
    g. Control of switch operation in either direction.
    h. Control of time-delay bypass for transfer to normal source.

3. Malfunction of annunciator, annunciation and control panel, or communication link shall not affect functions of automatic transfer switch. In the event of failure of communication link, automatic transfer switch automatically shall revert to standalone, self-contained operation. Automatic transfer-switch sensing, controlling, or operating function shall not depend on remote panel for proper operation.
4. Remote Annunciation and Control Panel: Solid-state components. Include the following features:

    a. Controls and indicating lights grouped together for each transfer switch.
    b. Label each indicating light control group. Indicate transfer switch it controls, location of switch, and load it serves.

c. Digital Communication Capability: Matched to that of transfer switches supervised.
d. Mounting: Flush, modular, steel cabinet unless otherwise indicated.

2.6 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory Tests: Test and inspect components, assembled switches, and associated equipment according to UL 1008. Ensure proper operation. Check transfer time and voltage, frequency, and time-delay settings for compliance with specified requirements. Perform dielectric strength test complying with NEMA ICS 1.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. For each of the tests required by UL 1008, performed on representative devices, for **emergency and legally required** systems. Include results of test for the following conditions:

a. Overvoltage.
b. Undervoltage.
c. Loss of supply voltage.
d. Reduction of supply voltage.
e. Alternative supply voltage or frequency is at minimum acceptable values.
f. Temperature rise.
g. Dielectric voltage-withstand; before and after short-circuit test.
h. Overload.
i. Contact opening.
j. Endurance.
k. Short circuit.
l. Short-time current capability.
m. Receptacle withstand capability.
n. Insulating base and supports damage.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Floor-Mounting Switch: Anchor to floor by bolting.

1. Install transfer switches on cast-in-place concrete equipment base(s). Comply with requirements for equipment bases and foundations specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."
2. Comply with requirements for seismic control devices specified in Section 260548.16 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

3. Coordinate size and location of concrete bases. Cast anchor-bolt inserts into bases.
4. Provide workspace and clearances required by NFPA 70.

B. Annunciator and Control Panel Mounting: Flush in wall unless otherwise indicated.

C. Identify components according to Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

D. Set field-adjustable intervals and delays, relays, and engine exerciser clock.

E. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 CONNECTIONS

A. Wiring to Remote Components: Match type and number of cables and conductors to generator sets, **motor controls,** control, and communication requirements of transfer switches as recommended by manufacturer. Increase raceway sizes at no additional cost to Owner if necessary to accommodate required wiring.

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within electrical enclosures. Conceal raceways and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.

D. Ground equipment according to Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

E. Connect wiring according to Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

F. Connect twisted pair cable according to Section 271500 "Communications Copper Horizontal Cabling."

G. Route and brace conductors according to manufacturer's written instructions **and Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems."** Do not obscure manufacturer's markings and labels.

H. Brace and support equipment according to Section 260548 "Seismic Controls for Electrical Systems."

I. Final connections to equipment shall be made with liquid-tight, flexible metallic conduit no more than 18 inches (457 mm) in length.

3.3 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: **Engage** a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**:

1. After installing equipment, test for compliance with requirements according to NETA ATS.
2. Visual and Mechanical Inspection:

a. Compare equipment nameplate data with Drawings and Specifications.
b. Inspect physical and mechanical condition.
c. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and required clearances.
d. Verify that the unit is clean.
e. Verify appropriate lubrication on moving current-carrying parts and on moving and sliding surfaces.
f. Verify that manual transfer warnings are attached and visible.
g. Verify tightness of all control connections.
h. Inspect bolted electrical connections for high resistance using one of the following methods, or both:

1) Use of low-resistance ohmmeter.
2) Verify tightness of accessible bolted electrical connections by calibrated torque-wrench method according to manufacturer's published data.

i. Perform manual transfer operation.
j. Verify positive mechanical interlocking between normal and alternate sources.
k. Perform visual and mechanical inspection of surge arresters.
l. Inspect control power transformers.

1) Inspect for physical damage, cracked insulation, broken leads, tightness of connections, defective wiring, and overall general condition.
2) Verify that primary and secondary fuse or circuit-breaker ratings match Drawings.
3) Verify correct functioning of draw-out disconnecting contacts, grounding contacts, and interlocks.

3. Electrical Tests:

a. Perform insulation-resistance tests on all control wiring with respect to ground.

b. Perform a contact/pole-resistance test. Compare measured values with manufacturer's acceptable values.
c. Verify settings and operation of control devices.
d. Calibrate and set all relays and timers.
e. Verify phase rotation, phasing, and synchronized operation.
f. Perform automatic transfer tests.
g. Verify correct operation and timing of the following functions:

1) Normal source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
2) Engine start sequence.
3) Time delay on transfer.
4) Alternative source voltage-sensing and frequency-sensing relays.
5) Automatic transfer operation.
6) Interlocks and limit switch function.
7) Time delay and retransfer on normal power restoration.
8) Engine cool-down and shutdown feature.

4. Measure insulation resistance phase-to-phase and phase-to-ground with insulation-resistance tester. Include external annunciation and control circuits. Use test voltages and procedure recommended by manufacturer. Comply with manufacturer's specified minimum resistance.

a. Check for electrical continuity of circuits and for short circuits.
b. Inspect for physical damage, proper installation and connection, and integrity of barriers, covers, and safety features.
c. Verify that manual transfer warnings are properly placed.
d. Perform manual transfer operation.

5. After energizing circuits, perform each electrical test for transfer switches stated in NETA ATS and demonstrate interlocking sequence and operational function for each switch at least three times.

a. Simulate power failures of normal source to automatic transfer switches and retransfer from emergency source with normal source available.
b. Simulate loss of phase-to-ground voltage for each phase of normal source.
c. Verify time-delay settings.
d. Verify pickup and dropout voltages by data readout or inspection of control settings.
e. Test bypass/isolation unit functional modes and related automatic transfer-switch operations.
f. Perform contact-resistance test across main contacts and correct values exceeding 500 microhms and values for one pole deviating by more than 50 percent from other poles.

g. Verify proper sequence and correct timing of automatic engine starting, transfer time delay, retransfer time delay on restoration of normal power, and engine cool-down and shutdown.

6. Ground-Fault Tests: Coordinate with testing of ground-fault protective devices for power delivery from both sources.

a. Verify grounding connections and locations and ratings of sensors.

D. Coordinate tests with commissioning tests of generator and run them concurrently.

E. Report results of tests and inspections in writing. Record adjustable relay settings and measured insulation and contact resistances and time delays. Attach a label or tag to each tested component indicating satisfactory completion of tests.

F. Transfer switches will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

G. Remove and replace malfunctioning units and retest as specified above.

H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

I. Infrared Scanning: After Substantial Completion, but not more than 60 days after Final Acceptance, perform an infrared scan of each switch. Remove all access panels so joints and connections are accessible to portable scanner.

1. Instrument: Use an infrared scanning device designed to measure temperature or to detect significant deviations from normal values. Provide calibration record for device.
2. Record of Infrared Scanning: Prepare a certified report that identifies switches checked and that describes scanning results. Include notation of deficiencies detected, remedial action taken, and observations after remedial action.
3. Follow-up Infrared Scanning: Perform an additional follow-up infrared scan of each switch 11 months after date of Substantial Completion.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain transfer switches and related equipment.

B. Training shall include testing ground-fault protective devices and instructions to determine when the ground-fault system shall be retested. Include instructions on where ground-fault sensors are located and how to avoid negating the ground-fault protection scheme during testing and circuit modifications.

C. Coordinate this training with that for generator equipment.

END OF SECTION 26 36 00

SECTION 26 43 13 - SURGE PROTECTION FOR LOW-VOLTAGE ELECTRICAL POWER CIRCUITS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Type 1 surge protective devices.
2. Type 2 surge protective devices.
3. Enclosures.
4. Conductors and cables.

B. Related Requirements:
1. Section 262416 "Panelboards" for integral SPDs installed by panelboard manufacturer.
2. Section 262726 "Wiring Devices" for integral SPDs installed by receptacle manufacturer.
3. Division 27 and Division 28.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. I nominal: Nominal discharge current.

B. MCOV: Maximum continuous operating voltage.

C. Mode(s), also Modes of Protection: air of electrical connections where the VPR applies.

D. MOV: Metal-oxide varistor; an electronic component with a significant non-ohmic current-voltage characteristic.

E. NRTL: Nationally recognized testing laboratory.

F. OCPD: Overcurrent protective device.

G. SCCR: Short-circuit current rating.

H. SPD: Surge protective device.

I. Type 1 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation between the secondary of the service transformer and the line side of the service disconnect overcurrent device.

J. Type 2 SPDs: Permanently connected SPDs intended for installation on the load side of the service disconnect overcurrent device, including SPDs located at the branch panel.

K. Type 3 SPDs: Point of utilization SPDs.

L. Type 4 SPDs: Component SPDs, including discrete components, as well as assemblies.

M. Type 5 SPDs: Discrete component surge suppressors, such as MOVs that may be mounted on a printed wiring board, connected by its leads or provided within an enclosure with mounting means and wiring terminations.

N. VPR: Voltage protection rating.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include electrical characteristics, specialties, and accessories for SPDs.
2. NRTL certification of compliance with UL 1449.

a. Tested values for VPRs.
b. I nominal ratings.
c. MCOV, type designations.
d. OCPD requirements.
e. Manufacturer's model number.
f. System voltage.
g. Modes of protection.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's special warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Maintenance Data: For SPDs to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 WARRANTY

A. Manufacturer's Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace SPDs that fail in materials or workmanship within five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 TYPE 1 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products by on of the following:
   1. Eaton Inc.
   2. RTEC Corporation
   3. Schneider Electric
   4. Transtector

B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Standards:

   1. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 1.

D. Product Options:

   1. Include integral disconnect switch.
   2. Include internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
   3. Include indicator light display for protection status.
   4. Include audible alarm.
   5. Include NEMA ICS 5, dry Form C contacts rated at 2 A and 24 V ac for remote monitoring of protection status.
   6. Include surge counter.

E. Performance Criteria:

   1. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V and 120/240 V power systems, and not less than 115 percent of nominal system voltage for 480Y/277 V power systems.

2. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase must not be less than 160 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V, 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    b. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V, 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
    b. Line to Line: 1200 V.

5. SCCR: Not less than 100 kA.
6. I nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.2 TYPE 2 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements. Provide products by on of the following:
    1. Eaton Inc.
    2. RTEC Corporation
    3. Schneider Electric
    4. Transtector

B. Source Limitations: Obtain devices from single source from single manufacturer.

C. Standards:

    1. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 1449, Type 2.
    2. Comply with UL 1283.

D. Product Options:

    1. Include LED indicator lights for power and protection status.
    2. Include internal thermal protection that disconnects the SPD before damaging internal suppressor components.
    3. Include NEMA ICS 5, dry Form C contacts rated at 2 A and 24 V ac for remote monitoring of protection status.
    4. Include surge counter.

E. Performance Criteria:

1. MCOV: Not less than 125 percent of nominal system voltage for 208Y/120 V and 120/240 V power systems, and not less than 115 percent of nominal system voltage for 480Y/277 V power systems.
2. Peak Surge Current Rating: Minimum single-pulse surge current withstand rating per phase must not be less than 100 kA. Peak surge current rating must be arithmetic sum of the ratings of individual MOVs in a given mode.
3. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for grounded wye circuits with 480Y/277 V, 208Y/120 V, three-phase, four-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 1200 V for 480Y/277 V, 700 V for 208Y/120 V.
    d. Line to Line: 2000 V for 480Y/277 V, 1200 V for 208Y/120 V.

4. Protection modes and UL 1449 VPR for 240/120 V, single-phase, three-wire circuits must not exceed the following:

    a. Line to Neutral: 700 V.
    b. Line to Ground: 700 V.
    c. Neutral to Ground: 700 V.
    d. Line to Line: 1200 V.

5. SCCR: Equal or exceed 100 kA.
6. I nominal Rating: 20 kA.

2.3 TYPE 3, TYPE 4, AND TYPE 5 SURGE PROTECTIVE DEVICES (SPDs)

A. Type 3, Type 4, and Type 5 SPDs are not approved for field installation.

2.4 ENCLOSURES

A. Indoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 1.

B. Outdoor Enclosures: NEMA 250, Type 3R.

2.5 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Power Wiring: Same size as SPD leads, complying with Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Conductors and Cables."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Provide OCPD and disconnect for installation of SPD in accordance with UL 1449 and manufacturer's written instructions.

C. Install leads between disconnects and SPDs short, straight, twisted, and in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions. Comply with wiring methods in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables."

1. Do not splice and extend SPD leads unless specifically permitted by manufacturer.
2. Do not exceed manufacturer's recommended lead length.
3. Do not bond neutral and ground.

D. Use crimped connectors and splices only. Wire nuts are unacceptable.

3.2 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative:

1. Compare equipment nameplate data for compliance with Drawings and the Specifications.
2. Inspect anchorage, alignment, grounding, and clearances.
3. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's written installation requirements.

B. SPDs that do not pass tests and inspections will be considered defective.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.3 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Complete startup checks in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Do not perform insulation-resistance tests of the distribution wiring equipment with SPDs installed. Disconnect SPDs before conducting insulation-resistance tests; reconnect them immediately after the testing is over.

C. Energize SPDs after power system has been energized, stabilized, and tested.

3.4 DEMONSTRATION

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train Owner's maintenance personnel to operate and maintain SPDs.

END OF SECTION 26 43 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 51 19 - LED INTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

B. This section applies to work in all of Division 26.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes the following types of LED luminaires:
   1. Downlight.
   2. Linear industrial.
   3. Lowbay.
   4. Recessed, linear.
   5. Strip light.
   6. Surface mount, linear.
   7. Suspended, linear.

B. Related Requirements:

   1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. LED: Light-emitting diode.

F. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

G. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaires.
4. Include emergency lighting units, including batteries and chargers.
5. Include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
6. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests**,** complying with IES "Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides" for each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project.

    a. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps. Use same designations indicated on Drawings.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment, and/or luminaires will be attached.
5. Initial access modules for acoustical tile, including size and locations.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.

c. Speakers.
d. Sprinklers.
e. Access panels.
f. Ceiling-mounted projectors.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

E. Product Test Reports: For each type of luminaire, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

F. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. LED Arrays: Ten for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Diffusers and Lenses: One for every 100 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Globes and Guards: One for every 20 of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

C. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

B. Warranty Period: Five year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to ASCE/SEI 7.

1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event."

B. Ambient Temperature: 5 to 104 deg F (Minus 15 to plus 40 deg C).

1. Relative Humidity: Zero to 95 percent.

C. Altitude: Sea level to 1000 feet (300 m).

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Locate labels where they will be readily visible to service personnel, but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage, and coating.
c. CCT and CRI.

C. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

D. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

E. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

F. California Title 24 compliant.

2.3 DOWNLIGHT

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.

2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.
3. Universal mounting bracket.
4. Integral junction box with conduit fittings.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Fixed lens.
2. Light distribution: as indicated.
3. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
5. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. Recessed luminaires shall comply with NEMA LE 4.

2.4 LINEAR INDUSTRIAL

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

C. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.

D. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

E. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

F. With integral mounting provisions.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

2.5 LOWBAY

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.

3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.6 RECESSED, LINEAR

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.
4. NEMA LE 4.

2.7 STRIP LIGHT

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping of luminaire without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic

2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.8 SURFACE MOUNT, LINEAR

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule.

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.9 SUSPENDED, LINEAR

A. Refer to Luminaire schedule:

B. Nominal Operating Voltage: 277 V ac.

C. Lamp:

1. Minimum (lm): as indicated.
2. Minimum allowable efficacy of (lm/W): as indicated.
3. CRI: as indicated. CCT: as indicated.
4. Rated lamp life of 35,000 hours to L70.
5. Dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.
6. Internal driver.
7. User-Replaceable Lamps:

    a. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C78.79.
    b. Lamp base complying with ANSI C81.61.

8. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Extruded-aluminum housing and heat sink.
2. Powder-coat finish.
3. With integral mounting provisions.

E. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit re-lamping without use of tools.

Components are designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during re-lamping and when secured in operating position.

F. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Prismatic acrylic.
2. Acrylic Diffusers: One hundred percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
3. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125-inch (3.175-mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

G. Standards:

1. ENERGY STAR certified.
2. RoHS compliant.
3. UL Listing: Listed for damp location.

2.10 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Steel:

1. ASTM A36/A36M for carbon structural steel.
2. ASTM A568/A568M for sheet steel.

C. Stainless Steel:

1. 1. Manufacturer's standard grade.
2. 2. Manufacturer's standard type, ASTM A240/240M.

D. Galvanized Steel: ASTM A653/A653M.

E. Aluminum: ASTM B209.

2.11 METAL FINISHES

A. Variations in finishes are unacceptable in the same piece. Variations in finishes of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and if they can be and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.12 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Single-Stem Hangers: 1/2-inch (13-mm) steel tubing with swivel ball fittings and ceiling canopy. Finish same as luminaire.

C. Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, 12 gage (2.68 mm).

D. Rod Hangers: 3/16-inch (5-mm) minimum diameter, cadmium-plated, threaded steel rod.

E. Hook Hangers: Integrated assembly matched to luminaire, line voltage, and equipment with threaded attachment, cord, and locking-type plug.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is sufficiently complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Provide support for luminaire without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Flush-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secured to outlet box.
2. Attached to ceiling structural members at four points equally spaced around circumference of luminaire.
3. Trim ring flush with finished surface.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Attached to structural members in walls.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

G. Suspended Luminaires:

1. Ceiling Mount:
   a. Pendant mount with 5/32-inch- (4-mm-) diameter aircraft cable supports.
2. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
3. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
4. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and wire support for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
5. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

H. Ceiling-Grid-Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure luminaire to the luminaire opening using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

I. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" for wiring connections.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Comply with requirements for startup specified in Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices."

3.7 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.
3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 51 19

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 52 13 - EMERGENCY AND EXIT LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Emergency lighting units.
2. Exit signs.
3. Luminaire supports.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color Rendering Index.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit: A lighting unit with internal or external emergency battery powered supply and the means for controlling and charging the battery and unit operation.

D. Fixture: See "Luminaire" Paragraph.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of emergency lighting unit, exit sign, and emergency lighting support.

1. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
2. Include physical description of the unit and dimensions.
3. Battery and charger for light units.
4. Include life, output of luminaire (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.

5. Include photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with IES LM-45, for each luminaire type.

    a. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated **luminaires and signs**, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining **luminaires and signs** shall be certified by manufacturer.
    b. Manufacturers' Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the National Voluntary Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

D. Samples: For each product and for each color and texture specified.

E. Samples for Initial Selection: For each type of luminaire with factory-applied finishes.

F. Samples for Verification: For each type of luminaire.

1. Include Samples of luminaires and accessories to verify finish selection.

G. Product Schedule:

1. For emergency lighting units u**se the same designations indicated on Drawings.**
2. For exit signs u**se the same designations indicated on Drawings**.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Suspended ceiling components.
3. Partitions and millwork that penetrate the ceiling or extend to within 12 inches (300 mm) of the plane of the luminaires.
4. Structural members to which equipment will be attached.

5. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustic tiles.
6. Items penetrating finished ceiling including the following:

    a. Other luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Ceiling-mounted projectors.
    e. Sprinklers.
    f. Access panels.

7. Moldings.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Product Certificates: For each type of luminaire.

D. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from the manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.
4. Provide seismic qualification certificate for each piece of equipment.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire for tests performed by **manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency**.

F. Sample Warranty: For manufacturer's warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires and lighting systems to include in an emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project; use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: **10 for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Luminaire-mounted, emergency battery pack: One for every **20** emergency lighting units. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: **One for every 20** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturer's laboratory that is accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the National Volunteer Laboratory Accreditation Program for Energy Efficient Lighting Products, and complying with the applicable IES testing standards.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. Mockups: For interior luminaires in room or module mockups, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires and signs in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed Work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.
4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Two** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

B. Special Warranty for Emergency Lighting Batteries: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer of battery-powered emergency lighting unit agrees to repair or replace components of rechargeable batteries that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period for Emergency Power Unit Batteries: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for **the first year and prorated warranty for the remaining two years**.
2. Warranty Period for Self-Powered Exit Sign Batteries: **Two** years from date of Substantial Completion. Full warranty shall apply for **first year and prorated warranty for the remaining six years**.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**. **Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.**

1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event**."

2.2 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Fabricate and label emergency lighting units, exit signs, and batteries to comply with UL 924.

C. Comply with NFPA 70 and NFPA 101.

D. Comply with NEMA LE 4 for recessed luminaires.

E. Comply with UL 1598 for fluorescent luminaires.

F. Lamp Base: Comply with **ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1**.

G. Bulb Shape: Complying with ANSI C79.1.

H. Internal Type Emergency Power Unit: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, factory mounted within luminaire body.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate **one** lamp(s) continuously at an output of **1100** lumens each upon loss of normal power. Connect the unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire ballast.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
3. Environmental Limitations: Rate equipment for continuous operation under the following conditions unless otherwise indicated:

    a. Ambient Temperature: Less than 0 deg F (minus 18 deg C) or exceeding 104 deg F (40 deg C), with an average value exceeding 95 deg F (35 deg C) over a 24-hour period.
    b. Ambient Storage Temperature: Not less than minus 4 deg F (minus 20 deg C) and not exceeding 140 deg F (60 deg C).
    c. Humidity: More than 95 percent (condensing).
    d. Altitude: Exceeding 3300 feet (1000 m).

4. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp continuously at **40** percent of rated light output.
5. Test Push-Button and Indicator Light: Visible and accessible without opening luminaire or entering ceiling space.

    a. Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
    b. Indicator Light: LED indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.

6. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, **lead-acid** type.
7. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type with sealed power transfer relay.
8. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.

9. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

I. External Type: Self-contained, modular, battery-inverter unit, suitable for powering one or more lamps, remote mounted from luminaire.

1. Emergency Connection: Operate **one LED** lamp continuously. Connect unswitched circuit to battery-inverter unit and switched circuit to luminaire.
2. Operation: Relay automatically turns lamp on when power-supply circuit voltage drops to 80 percent of nominal voltage or below. Lamp automatically disconnects from battery when voltage approaches deep-discharge level. When normal voltage is restored, relay disconnects lamps from battery, and battery is automatically recharged and floated on charger.
3. Nightlight Connection: Operate lamp in a remote luminaire continuously.
4. Battery: Sealed, maintenance-free, **lead-acid** type.
5. Charger: Fully automatic, solid-state, constant-current type.
6. Housing: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure listed for installation inside, on top of, or remote from luminaire. Remote assembly shall be located no less than half the distance recommended by the **emergency power unit** manufacturer, whichever is less.
7. Test Push Button: Push-to-test type, in unit housing, simulates loss of normal power and demonstrates unit operability.
8. LED Indicator Light: Indicates normal power on. Normal glow indicates trickle charge; bright glow indicates charging at end of discharge cycle.
9. Remote Test: Switch in handheld remote device aimed in direction of tested unit initiates coded infrared signal. Signal reception by factory-installed infrared receiver in tested unit triggers simulation of loss of its normal power supply, providing visual confirmation of either proper or failed emergency response.
10. Integral Self-Test: Factory-installed electronic device automatically initiates code-required test of unit emergency operation at required intervals. Test failure is annunciated by an integral audible alarm and a flashing red LED.

2.3 EMERGENCY LIGHTING

A. General Requirements for Emergency Lighting Units: Self-contained units.

B. Emergency Luminaires:
1. Emergency Luminaires: as indicated on the **Luminaire Schedule and Drawings**, with the following additional features:

a. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac or 277 V ac**.
b. **Internal** emergency power unit.

c. Rated for installation in damp locations, and for sealed and gasketed luminaires in wet locations.
d. UL 94 **5VA** flame rating.

C. Emergency Lighting Unit:
1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on the **Luminaire Schedule and Drawings**.
2. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac or 277 V ac**.
3. **Wall** with universal junction box adaptor.
4. UV stable thermoplastic housing.
5. Two **LED** lamp heads.
6. **Internal** emergency power unit.

D. Remote Emergency Lighting Units:
1. Emergency Lighting Unit: as indicated on the **Luminaire Schedule or Drawings**.
2. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac or 277 V ac** with universal junction box adaptor.
3. UV stable thermoplastic housing.
4. **Two LED** lamp heads.
5. External emergency power unit.

2.4 EXIT SIGNS

A. General Requirements for Exit Signs: Comply with UL 924; for sign colors, visibility, luminance, and lettering size, comply with authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Internally Lighted Signs:
1. Operating at nominal voltage of **120 V ac or 277 V ac**.
2. Lamps for AC Operation: Fluorescent, two for each luminaire; 20,000 hours of rated lamp life.
3. Lamps for AC Operation: LEDs; 50,000 hours minimum rated lamp life.
4. Self-Powered Exit Signs (Battery Type): Internal emergency power unit.
5. Master/Remote Sign Configurations:

a. Master Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, and provide additional capacity in **LED power supply** for power connection to remote unit.
b. Remote Unit: Comply with requirements above for self-powered exit signs, except omit power supply, battery, and test features. Arrange to receive full power requirements from master unit. Connect for testing concurrently with master unit as a unified system.

C. Self-Luminous Signs:

1. Powered by tritium gas, with universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting. Signs shall be guaranteed by the manufacturer to maintain the minimum brightness requirements in UL 924 for [**10**] [**15**] [**20**] years.
2. Use strontium oxide aluminate compound to store ambient light and release the stored energy when the light is removed. Include universal bracket for flush-ceiling, wall, or end mounting.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts:

1. Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.
2. Sheet metal components shall be steel unless otherwise indicated.
3. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

B. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access:

1. Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions.
2. Designed to permit relamping without use of tools.
3. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position.

C. Diffusers and Globes:

1. **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass, Diffuse glass, Prismatic acrylic**.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Acrylic: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
4. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

D. Housings:

1. Thermoplastic or clear panel housing.
2. **Clear panel or painted** finish.

E. Conduit: **Electrical metallic tubing and Flexible metallic conduit**, minimum 3/4 inch (21 mm) in diameter.

2.6 METAL FINISHES

A. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are not acceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

B. Support Wires: ASTM A641/A641M, Class 3, soft temper, zinc-coated steel, **12 gage (2.68 mm)**.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for conditions affecting performance of luminaires.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire to verify actual locations of luminaire and electrical connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, floors, roofs, and ceilings for suitable conditions where emergency lighting luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with ceilings and walls unless otherwise indicated.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire **and emergency power unit** weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position when testing emergency power unit.
3. Provide support for luminaire and emergency power units without causing deflection of ceiling or wall.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire and emergency power unit weight and vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

E. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. **Attached to structural members in walls or attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall**.
2. Do not attach luminaires directly to gypsum board.

F. Suspended Luminaire Support:

1. Pendants and Rods: Where longer than 48 inches (1200 mm), brace to limit swinging.
2. Stem-Mounted, Single-Unit Luminaires: Suspend with twin-stem hangers. Support with approved outlet box and accessories that hold stem and provide damping of luminaire oscillations. Support outlet box vertically to building structure using approved devices.
3. Continuous Rows of Luminaires: Use tubing or stem for wiring at one point and **tubing or rod or wire support** for suspension for each unit length of luminaire chassis, including one at each end.
4. Do not use ceiling grid as support for pendant luminaires. Connect support wires or rods to building structure.

G. Ceiling Grid Mounted Luminaires:

1. Secure to any required outlet box.
2. Secure emergency power unit using approved fasteners in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of emergency power unit.
3. Use approved devices and support components to connect luminaire to ceiling grid and building structure in a minimum of four locations, spaced near corners of luminaire.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Test for Emergency Lighting: Interrupt power supply to demonstrate proper operation. Verify transfer from normal power to battery power and retransfer to normal.

B. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass operation tests and inspections.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.5 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Perform startup service:

1. Charge **emergency power units and batteries** minimum of one hour and depress switch to conduct short-duration test.
2. Charge **emergency power units and batteries** minimum of 24 hours and conduct one-hour discharge test.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Adjustments: Within **12** months of the date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site visit to do the following:

1. Inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps, **emergency power units , batteries, signs,** or luminaires that are defective.

    a. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

2. Conduct short-duration tests on all emergency lighting.

END OF SECTION 26 52 13

SECTION 26 56 13 - LIGHTING POLES AND STANDARDS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Poles and accessories for support of luminaires.
2. Luminaire-lowering devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EPA: Equivalent projected area.

B. Luminaire: Complete luminaire.

C. Pole: Luminaire-supporting structure, including tower used for large-area illumination.

D. Standard: See "Pole."

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each pole, accessory, and luminaire-supporting and -lowering device, arranged as indicated.

1. Include data on construction details, profiles, EPA, cable entrances, materials, dimensions, weight, rated design load, and ultimate strength of individual components.
2. Include finishes for lighting poles and luminaire-supporting devices.
3. Anchor bolts.
4. Manufactured pole foundations.

B. Sustainable Design Submittals:

C. Shop Drawings:

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and **mounting and attachment** details.
2. Include details of equipment assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Detail fabrication and assembly of **poles and pole accessories**.
4. Foundation construction details, including material descriptions, dimensions, anchor bolts, support devices, and calculations, signed and sealed by a professional engineer licensed in the state of installation.
5. Anchor bolt templates keyed to specific poles and certified by manufacturer.
6. Method and procedure of pole installation. Include manufacturer's written installations.

D. Samples: For each exposed lighting pole, standard, and luminaire-supporting device and for each color and texture specified.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole and Support Component Certificates: Signed by manufacturers of poles, certifying that products are designed for indicated load requirements according to AASHTO LTS-6-M and that load imposed by luminaire and attachments has been included in design. The certification shall be based on design calculations signed and sealed by a professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For **Installer and testing agency**.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For all poles, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Material Test Reports:

1. For each foundation component, by a qualified testing agency.
2. For each pole, by a qualified testing agency.

E. Source quality-control reports.

F. Field quality-control reports.

G. Sample Warranty: Manufacturer's standard warranty.

H. Soil test reports

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For **poles and luminaire-lowering devices** to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 017823 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include pole inspection and repair procedures.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Pole repair materials.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C1093 for foundation testing.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Package aluminum poles for shipping according to ASTM B660.

B. Store poles on decay-resistant skids at least 12 inches (300 mm) above grade and vegetation. Support poles to prevent distortion and arrange to provide free air circulation.

C. Handle wood poles so they will not be damaged. Do not use pointed tools that can indent pole surface more than 1/4 inch (6 mm) deep. Do not apply tools to section of pole to be installed below finished grade.

D. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on fiberglass and laminated wood poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

E. Retain factory-applied pole wrappings on metal poles until right before pole installation. Handle poles with web fabric straps.

1.10 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of **pole(s) and luminaire-lowering device(s)** that fail in materials or workmanship; that corrode; or that fade, stain, perforate, erode, or chalk due to effects of weather or solar radiation within a specified warranty period. Manufacturer may exclude lightning damage, hail damage, vandalism, abuse, or unauthorized repairs from special warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.
2. Warranty Period for Corrosion Resistance: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.
3. Warranty Period for Color Retention: **Five** years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design pole foundation and pole power system.

B. Seismic Performance: Foundation and pole shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

1. The term "withstand" means "the system will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the system will be fully operational after the seismic event**."
2. Component Importance Factor: **1.5**.

C. Structural Characteristics: Comply with AASHTO LTS-6-M.

D. Dead Load: Weight of luminaire and its horizontal and vertical supports, lowering devices, and supporting structure, applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

E. Live Load: Single load of 500 lbf (2200 N) distributed according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

F. Ice Load: Load of 3 lbf/sq. ft. (145 Pa), applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M for applicable areas on the Ice Load Map.

G. Wind Load: Pressure of wind on pole and luminaire, calculated and applied according to AASHTO LTS-6-M.

1. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles exceeding 50 feet (15 m) in height is **100 mph (45 m/s) and minimum values from AASHTO LTS-6-M for this Project**.

a. Wind Importance Factor: **1.0**.
b. Minimum Design Life: **50 years**.
c. Velocity Conversion Factor: **1.0**.

2. Basic wind speed for calculating wind load for poles 50 feet (15 m) high or less is **100 mph (45 m/s) and minimum values from AASHTO LTS-6-M for this Project**.

a. Wind Importance Factor: **1.0**.
b. Minimum Design Life: **25 years**.
c. Velocity Conversion Factor: **1.0**.

H. Strength Analysis: For each pole, multiply the actual EPA of luminaires and brackets by a factor of **1.1** to obtain the EPA to be used in pole selection strength analysis.

I. Luminaire Attachment Provisions: Comply with luminaire manufacturers' mounting requirements. Use stainless-steel fasteners and mounting bolts unless otherwise indicated.

2.2 STEEL POLES

A. Source Limitations: Obtain poles from single manufacturer or producer.

B. Source Limitations: For poles, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of pole from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

C. Poles: Comply with ASTM A500/A500M, Grade B carbon steel with a minimum yield of 46,000 psig (317 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: **Round, tapered or Square, tapered**.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

D. Poles: Comply with **ASTM A666**, stainless steel with a minimum yield of 55,000 psig (379 MPa); one-piece construction up to 40 feet (12 m) in height with access handhole in pole wall.

1. Shape: **Round, tapered or Square, tapered**.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

E. Steel Mast Arms: **Single-arm, Truss,** or **Davit** type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish same as plate.

F. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adapter, then bolted together with **galvanized**-steel bolts.
2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.

G. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaires or luminaires and brackets indicated and securely fastened to pole top.

H. Fasteners: **Galvanized steel**, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

I. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Welded 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size indicated, and accessible through handhole.

J. Steps: Fixed steel, with nonslip treads.

1. For climbing positions, install at 15-inch (381-mm) vertical spacing, alternating on opposite sides of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other; first step shall be at an elevation 10 feet (3 m) above finished grade.
2. For working positions, install steps on opposite side of pole, oriented 180 degrees from each other at the same elevation.

K. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

L. Intermediate Handhole and Cable Support: Weatherproof, 3-by-5-inch (76-by-130-mm) handhole located at midpoint of pole, with cover for access to internal welded attachment lug for electric cable support grip.

M. Cable Support Grip: Wire-mesh type with rotating attachment eye, sized for diameter of cable and rated for a minimum load equal to weight of supported load multiplied by a 5.0 safety factor.

N. Platform for Lamp and Ballast Servicing: Factory fabricated of steel, with finish matching that of pole.

O. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

P. Galvanized Finish: After fabrication, hot-dip galvanize according to ASTM A123/A123M.

Q. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

    a. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations and Architect's sample**.

R. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces according to SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Powder Coat: Comply with AAMA 2604.

    a. Electrostatic-applied powder coating; single application and cured to a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils (64- to 89-um) dry film thickness. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
    b. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations or Architect's sample**.

2.3 ALUMINUM POLES

A. Poles: **Seamless**, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B221, Alloy 6063-T6, with access handhole in pole wall.

B. Poles: **Seamless**, extruded structural tube complying with ASTM B221, Alloy 6061-T6, with access handhole in in pole wall.

1. Shape: **Round, tapered or Square, tapered**.
2. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.

C. Mast Arms: **Aluminum** or **Steel Single-arm** type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish the same as plate.

D. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adaptor fitting welded to pole, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adapter, then bolted together with **galvanized**-steel bolts.

2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.

E. Pole-Top Tenons: Fabricated to support luminaires or luminaires and brackets indicated and securely fastened to pole top.

F. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Bolted 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

G. Fasteners: **Galvanized steel**, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items are compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as to substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

H. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

I. Prime-Coat Finish: Manufacturer's standard prime-coat finish ready for field painting.

J. Aluminum Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I clear coating of 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.

K. Factory-Painted Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Interior Surfaces of Pole: One coat of bituminous paint, or otherwise treat for equal corrosion protection.
3. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

    a. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations or Architect's sample**.

L. Powder-Coat Finish: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1 to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair powder coat bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, according to SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Powder coat shall comply with AAMA 2604.

    a. Electrostatic applied powder coating; single application with a minimum 2.5- to 3.5-mils (64- to 89-um) dry film thickness; cured according to manufacturer's instructions. Coat interior and exterior of pole for equal corrosion protection.
    b. Color: **As indicated by manufacturer's designations or Architect's sample**.

2.4 FIBERGLASS POLES

A. Poles:

1. Designed specifically for supporting luminaires, with factory-formed cable entrance and handhole.
2. Not less than 65 percent by weight of fiberglass roving, with resin and pigment making up the remainder.
3. Roving shall be continuously applied with uniform tension, with multiple layers placed to meet axial and compressive strength requirements.
4. Shape: **Round, tapered or Square, tapered**.
5. Mounting Provisions: Butt flange for bolted mounting on foundation or breakaway support.
6. Resin Color: **Black or Dark Bronze**; uniform coloration throughout entire wall thickness.
7. Surface Finish: Smooth and uniform along surface of pole.
8. Paint Finish: Pigmented polyurethane, with a minimum dry film thickness of 1.5 mils (0.04 mm). Polyurethane may be omitted if the surface layer of the pole is inherently UV inhibited.

B. Mast Arms: **Aluminum** or **Steel Single-arm** type, continuously welded to pole attachment plate. Material and finish the same as plate. Adaptor plate shall be steel hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153 or 6061-T6 aluminum encased within fiberglass roving, allowing the mast arm adaptor to be bolted to the pole.

C. Brackets for Luminaires: Detachable, cantilever, without underbrace.

1. Adaptor fitting: Steel, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, or 6061-T6 aluminum, permanently bonded within fiberglass roving, allowing the bracket to be bolted to the pole-mounted adapter. Bolt together with **galvanized**-steel bolts; use anti-seize compound when bolting dissimilar metals.
2. Cross Section: Tapered oval, with straight tubular end section to accommodate luminaire. Match pole material and finish.

D. Pole-Top Tenons: Steel, hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, or 6061-T6 aluminum, permanently bonded to the fiberglass shaft. Fabricated to support luminaires or luminaires and brackets indicated.

E. Fasteners: **Galvanized steel**, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Corrosion-resistant items are compatible with support components.

1. Materials: Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.
2. Anchor Bolts, Leveling Nuts, Bolt Caps, and Washers: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication unless otherwise indicated.

F. Handhole: Oval shaped, with minimum clear opening of 2-1/2 by 5 inches (65 by 130 mm), with cover secured by stainless-steel captive screws.

G. Grounding: Bare, stranded copper, #6 AWG, **suspended inside of pole**, connected to luminaire(s), ground lug near handhole and ground rod.

H. Grounding and Bonding Lugs: Bolted 1/2-inch (13-mm) threaded lug, complying with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems," listed for attaching grounding and bonding conductors of type and size listed in that Section, and accessible through handhole.

I. Anchor Base: Integral galvanized steel or aluminum casting, enclosing and permanently bonded to the exterior of the fiberglass shaft.

2.5 LAMINATED WOOD POLES – N/A

2.6 WOOD POLES – N/A

2.7 PRESTRESSED CONCRETE POLES

A. Poles: Comply with ASTM C1089 **and manufactured by centrifugal spin-casting process**.

1. Shape: **Round, tapered or Square, tapered**.
2. Mounting Provisions: **Steel butt flange for bolted mounting to foundation or breakaway support** or **Embedded**.
3. Finishing: Capped at top and plugged at bottom. Seat each reinforcing strand with epoxy adhesive.
4. Grounding: Continuous copper ground wire cast into pole. Terminate at top of pole **and attach to 24-inch (610-mm) lighting rod**.
5. Raceway: Smooth, internal, and not less than 3 inches (76 mm) in diameter.

B. Concrete: Minimum 28-day compressive strength of 7000 psi (48 265 kPa).

C. Cured with wet steam and aged for a minimum of 15 days prior to installation.

D. Reinforcement: **Reinforcing bars complying with ASTM A615/A615M, Cold drawn spiral wire complying with ASTM A82, Pre-stressing strand, 270 K, complying with ASTM A416/A416M**.

E. Surface Treatment: Hard, nonporous, and resistant to water, frost, and road and soil chemicals; and shall have a maximum water-absorption rate of 3 percent.

F. Finish Texture: **Standard form**.

G. Fasteners: **Galvanized steel**, size and type as determined by manufacturer. Compatible with poles and standards as well as the substrates to which poles and standards are fastened and shall not cause galvanic action at contact points.

H. Nameplate: Aluminum cast into pole wall at approximately 5 feet (1.5 m) above ground line, listing name of manufacturer, Project identifier, overall height, and approximate weight.

I. Pole Brackets: Comply with ANSI C136.31.

2.8 POLE ACCESSORIES

A. Duplex Receptacle: Ground-fault circuit interrupter type, 120 V ac, 20 A in a weatherproof assembly. Comply with requirements in Section 262726 "Wiring Devices."

1. **Surface mounted** 12 inches (300 mm) above finished grade.

    a. NEMA 250, **Type 3R**, nonmetallic polycarbonate plastic or reinforced fiberglass, enclosure with cover; color to match pole.
    b. Lockable hasp and latch complying with OSHA lockout and tag-out requirements.

B. Minimum 1800-W transformer, protected by replaceable fuses, mounted behind access cover.

C. Base Covers: Manufacturers' standard metal units, finished same as pole, and arranged to cover pole's mounting bolts and nuts.

D. Transformer-Type Base: Same material and color as pole. Coordinate dimensions to suit pole's base flange and to accept **indicated accessories**. Include removable flanged access cover secured with bolts or screws.

E. Decorative accessories, supplied by decorative pole manufacturer, include the following:

1. Banner Arms: see drawings for applicable accessories.
2. Flag Holders: see drawings for applicable accessories.
3. Ladder Rests: see drawings for applicable accessories.

2.9 LOWERING SYSTEM FOR LUMINAIRES

A. System Description: Capable of lowering luminaire to a service position within 36 inches (900 mm) of finished grade in winds up to 30 mph (49 km/h). Provide manual plug connection to electrical power accessible in lowered position. Assembled system of pole, luminaire, and lowering device shall be capable of loads specified in "Performance Requirements" Article.

B. Compatibility of Material: Materials for attachment and connection of luminaire-mounting assembly, lowering device, lowering cable, and portable winch shall be compatible to avoid corrosion and electrolysis.

C. Structural and Mechanical Design Safety Factor: 5.0, minimum, for static and dynamic loads of load-bearing components, including cable.

D. Luminaire-Mounting and Disconnect Arrangement: Multiple **carriage**-mounted luminaires, arranged for lowering and rising as a group.

1. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires shall manually disconnect inside pole base, using weatherproof multi-pin connector, and shall be arranged to move within the pole during lowering and rising of luminaire assembly.

2. Electrical cable for normal operating power to luminaires shall automatically disconnect at weatherproof multi-pin connector within the pole-top lowering head at the beginning of the lowering cycle and reconnect when luminaire or luminaire assembly is raised to the operating position.

E. Lowering Device: Weatherproof, cast-aluminum housing, and multiple mechanical latches. Moving parts of latching assembly shall be located in the portion of the unit that is lowered to servicing position. Positive latching in the operating position shall be indicated to the operator at the base of the pole by a clear visual signal or by other means acceptable to Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

F. Lowering Cable: **Zinc-electroplated- or stainless-** steel aircraft cable.

G. Portable Winch: **Manual or 120-V electric** type. **One** required.

1. Winch Power Connection: Cord and plug.
2. Winch Raise-Lower Control: Remote-control station with **15 feet (5 m)** of cable.

2.10 MOUNTING HARDWARE

A. Anchor Bolts: Manufactured to **ASTM F1554, Grade 55,** with a minimum yield strength of 55,000 psi (380 000 kPa).

1. Galvanizing: **Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C**.
2. **Bent or Headed** in diameters and lengths per manufacturer recommendations.
3. Threading: **Uniform National Coarse**, Class 2A.

B. Nuts: ASTM A563, Grade A, Heavy-Hex.

1. Galvanizing: **Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C**.
2. **Two** nuts provided per anchor bolt**, shipped with nuts pre-assembled to the anchor bolts**.

C. Washers: ASTM F436, Type 1.

1. Galvanizing: **Hot dip galvanized according to ASTM A153, Class C**.
2. **Two** washer(s) provided per anchor bolt.

2.11 GENERAL FINISH REQUIREMENTS

A. Protect mechanical finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.

B. Appearance of Finished Work: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine poles, luminaire-mounting devices, lowering devices, and pole accessories before installation. Components that are scratched, dented, marred, wet, moisture damaged, or visibly damaged are considered defective.

C. Examine roughing-in for foundation and conduit to verify actual locations of installation.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 POLE FOUNDATION

A. Concrete Pole Foundations: Cast in place, with anchor bolts to match pole-base flange. Structural steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

B. Pre-Cast Foundations: Factory fabricated, with structural steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories. Concrete, reinforcement, and formwork are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

C. Power-Installed Screw Foundations: Factory fabricated by pole manufacturer, with structural steel complying with ASTM A36/A36M and hot-dip galvanized according to ASTM A123/A123M; and with top-plate and mounting bolts to match pole-base flange and strength required to support pole, luminaire, and accessories.

1. Baseplate: Stamped with manufacturer's name, date of production, and cable entry.

D. Direct-Buried Foundations: Install to depth indicated on Drawings, but not less than **one-sixth of pole height**. Add backfill **in 6-inch (150-mm) to 9-inch (230-mm) layers,**

tamping each layer before adding the next. To ensure plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.

E. Direct-Buried Poles with Concrete Backfill: Set poles in augered holes to depth below finished grade indicated on Drawings, but not less than **one-sixth of pole height**. To ensure plumb installation, continuously check pole orientation with plumb bob while tamping.

1. Make holes 6 inches (150 mm) in diameter larger than pole diameter.
2. Fill augered hole around pole with air-entrained concrete having a minimum compressive strength of 3000 psi (20 MPa) at 28 days and finish in a dome above finished grade.
3. Use a short piece of 1/2-inch (13-mm) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from the interior of pole.
4. Cure concrete a minimum of 72 hours before performing work on pole.

F. Anchor Bolts: Install plumb using manufacturer-supplied **steel** template, uniformly spaced.

3.3 POLE INSTALLATION

A. Alignment: **Align pole foundations and poles for optimum directional alignment of luminaires and their mounting provisions on pole**.

B. Clearances: Maintain the following minimum horizontal distances of poles from surface and underground features unless otherwise indicated on drawing.

1. Fire Hydrants and Water Piping: **60 inches (1520 mm)**.
2. Water, Gas, Electric, Communications, and Sewer Lines: **10 feet (3 m)**.
3. Trees: 15 feet (5 m) from tree trunk.

C. Concrete Pole Foundations: Set anchor bolts according to anchor-bolt templates furnished by pole manufacturer. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing requirements are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Foundation-Mounted Poles: Mount pole with leveling nuts and tighten top nuts to torque level according to pole manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Use anchor bolts and nuts selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.
2. Grout void between pole base and foundation. Use nonshrink or expanding concrete grout firmly packed to fill space.
3. Install base covers unless otherwise indicated.
4. Use a short piece of 1/2 -inch (13-mm) diameter pipe to make a drain hole through grout. Arrange to drain condensation from the interior of pole.

E. Poles and Pole Foundations Set in Concrete-Paved Areas: Install poles with a minimum 6-inch- (150-mm-) wide, unpaved gap between the pole or pole foundation and the edge of the adjacent concrete slab. Fill unpaved ring with pea gravel. Insert material to a level 1 inch (25 mm) below top of concrete slab.

F. Raise and set pole using web fabric slings (not chain or cable) at locations indicated by manufacturer.

3.4 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum using insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with requirements in Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50-percent overlap.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Ground Metal Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole unless otherwise indicated.
2. Install grounding conductor pigtail in the base for connecting luminaire to grounding system.

B. Ground Nonmetallic Poles and Support Structures: Comply with requirements in Section 260526 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

1. Install grounding electrode for each pole.
2. Install grounding conductor and conductor protector.
3. Ground metallic components of pole accessories and foundation.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 26 05 53 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: **Engage** a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Inspect poles for nicks, mars, dents, scratches, and other damage.
2. System function tests.

END OF SECTION 26 56 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 26 56 19 – LED EXTERIOR LIGHTING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Exterior solid-state luminaires that are designed for and exclusively use LED lamp technology.
2. Luminaire supports.
3. Luminaire-mounted photoelectric relays.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 260923 "Lighting Control Devices" for automatic control of lighting, including time switches, photoelectric relays, occupancy sensors, and multipole lighting relays and contactors.
2. Section 265613 "Lighting Poles and Standards" for poles and standards used to support exterior lighting equipment.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. CCT: Correlated color temperature.

B. CRI: Color rendering index.

C. Fixture: See "Luminaire."

D. IP: International Protection or Ingress Protection Rating.

E. Lumen: Measured output of lamp and luminaire, or both.

F. Luminaire: Complete lighting unit, including lamp, reflector, and housing.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of luminaire.

1. Arrange in order of luminaire designation.
2. Include data on features, accessories, and finishes.
3. Include physical description and dimensions of luminaire.
4. Lamps, include life, output (lumens, CCT, and CRI), and energy-efficiency data.
5. Photometric data and adjustment factors based on laboratory tests, complying with **IES Lighting Measurements Testing and Calculation Guides, of each luminaire type. The adjustment factors shall be for lamps and accessories identical to those indicated for the luminaire as applied in this Project**.

    a. Manufacturer's Certified Data: Photometric data certified by manufacturer's laboratory with a current accreditation under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.
    b. Testing Agency Certified Data: For indicated luminaires, photometric data certified by a qualified independent testing agency. Photometric data for remaining luminaires shall be certified by manufacturer.

6. Wiring diagrams for power, control, and signal wiring.
7. Photoelectric relays.
8. Means of attaching luminaires to supports and indication that the attachment is suitable for components involved.

B. Shop Drawings: For nonstandard or custom luminaires.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and mounting and attachment details.
2. Include details of luminaire assemblies. Indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
3. Include diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.

C. Sustainable Design Submittals:

D. Samples: For each luminaire and for each color and texture indicated with factory-applied finish.

E. Product Schedule: For luminaires and lamps, **use same designations indicated on Drawings.**

F. Delegated-Design Submittal: For luminaire supports.

1. Include design calculations for luminaire supports **and seismic restraints**.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Luminaires.
2. Structural members to which **equipment and** luminaires will be attached.
3. Underground utilities and structures.
4. Existing underground utilities and structures.
5. Above-grade utilities and structures.
6. Existing above-grade utilities and structures.
7. Building features.
8. Vertical and horizontal information.

B. Qualification Data: For testing laboratory providing photometric data for luminaires.

C. Seismic Qualification Data: For luminaires, accessories, and components, from manufacturer.

1. Basis for Certification: Indicate whether withstand certification is based on actual test of assembled components or on calculation.
2. Dimensioned Outline Drawings of Equipment Unit: Identify center of gravity and locate and describe mounting and anchorage provisions.
3. Detailed description of equipment anchorage devices on which the certification is based and their installation requirements.

D. Product Certificates: For each type of the following:

1. Luminaire.
2. Photoelectric relay.

E. Product Test Reports: For each luminaire, for tests performed by **manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency**.

F. Source quality-control reports.

G. Sample warranty.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Operation and Maintenance Data: For luminaires **and photoelectric relays** to include in operation and maintenance manuals.

1. Provide a list of all lamp types used on Project. Use ANSI and manufacturers' codes.

2. Provide a list of all photoelectric relay types used on Project; use manufacturers' codes.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Lamps: **Ten for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
2. Glass, Acrylic, and Plastic Lenses, Covers, and Other Optical Parts: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
3. Diffusers and Lenses: **One for every 100** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.
4. Globes and Guards: **One for every 20** of each type and rating installed. Furnish at least one of each type.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Luminaire manufacturers' laboratory that is accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products.

B. Luminaire Photometric Data Testing Laboratory Qualifications: Provided by an independent agency, with the experience and capability to conduct the testing indicated, that is an NRTL as defined by OSHA in 29 CFR 1910.7, accredited under the NVLAP for Energy Efficient Lighting Products and complying with applicable IES testing standards.

C. Provide luminaires from a single manufacturer for each luminaire type.

D. Each luminaire type shall be binned within a three-step MacAdam Ellipse to ensure color consistency among luminaires.

E. Installer Qualifications: An authorized representative who is trained and approved by manufacturer.

F. Mockups: For exterior luminaires, complete with power and control connections.

1. Obtain Architect's approval of luminaires in mockups before starting installations.
2. Maintain mockups during construction in an undisturbed condition as a standard for judging the completed work.
3. Approval of mockups does not constitute approval of deviations from the Contract Documents contained in mockups unless Architect specifically approves such deviations in writing.

4. Subject to compliance with requirements, approved mockups may become part of the completed Work if undisturbed at time of Substantial Completion.

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Protect finishes of exposed surfaces by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering prior to shipping.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Verify existing and proposed utility structures prior to the start of work associated with luminaire installation.

B. Mark locations of exterior luminaires for approval by Architect prior to the start of luminaire installation.

1.11 WARRANTY

A. Warranty: Manufacturer and Installer agree to repair or replace components of luminaires that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Failures include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Structural failures, including luminaire support components.
b. Faulty operation of luminaires and accessories.
c. Deterioration of metals, metal finishes, and other materials beyond normal weathering.

2. Warranty Period: **2** year(s) from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Seismic Performance: Luminaires shall withstand the effects of earthquake motions determined according to **ASCE/SEI 7**.

B. Seismic Performance: Luminaires and lamps shall be labeled vibration and shock resistant.

1. The term "withstand" means "the luminaire will remain in place without separation of any parts when subjected to the seismic forces specified **and the luminaire will be fully operational during and after the seismic event**."

2.2 LUMINAIRE REQUIREMENTS

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. NRTL Compliance: Luminaires shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by an NRTL.

C. FM Global Compliance: Luminaires for hazardous locations shall be listed and labeled for indicated class and division of hazard by FM Global.

D. UL Compliance: Comply with UL 1598 **and listed for wet location**.

E. Lamp base complying with **ANSI C81.61 or IEC 60061-1**.

F. Bulb shape complying with ANSI C79.1.

G. CRI of **minimum 90**, CCT of **3500 K**.

H. L70 lamp life of **50,000** hours.

I. Lamps dimmable from 100 percent to 0 percent of maximum light output.

J. Internal driver.

K. Nominal Operating Voltage: **120 V ac or 277 V ac**.

L. In-line Fusing: **On the primary for each luminaire**.

M. Lamp Rating: Lamp marked for **outdoor use and in enclosed locations**.

N. Source Limitations: Obtain luminaires from single source from a single manufacturer.

O. Source Limitations: For luminaires, obtain each color, grade, finish, type, and variety of luminaire from single source with resources to provide products of consistent quality in appearance and physical properties.

2.3 LUMINAIRE-MOUNTED PHOTOELECTRIC RELAYS

A. Comply with UL 773 or UL 773A.

B. Contact Relays: Factory mounted, single throw, designed to fail in the on position, and factory set to turn light unit on at 1.5 to 3 fc (16 to 32 lx) and off at 4.5 to 10 fc (48 to 108 lx) with 15-second minimum time delay. **Relay shall have directional lens in front of photocell to prevent artificial light sources from causing false turnoff.**

1. Relay with locking-type receptacle shall comply with ANSI C136.10.
2. Adjustable window slide for adjusting on-off set points.

2.4 LUMINAIRE TYPES

A. Area and Site:
   1. Luminaire Shape: **Round or Square**.
   2. Mounting: **Pole** or **Building** with **extruded aluminum** or **stainless-steel rectangular** or **round** arm, **13 inches (330 mm)** in length.
   3. Luminaire-Mounting Height: **as indicated above finished grade**.
   4. Distribution: **Type as indicated.**
   5. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass and as indicated.**
   6. Housings:
      a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
      b. **Anodized** or **painted** finish.

B. Bollard:
   1. Shape: **Round or Square**.
   2. Height Above Finished Grade: **30 inches (762 mm)**.
   3. Overall Height: **36 inches (900 mm)**.
   4. Diameter: **6 inches (150 mm)**.
   5. Mounting: **3 point cast aluminum base**.
   6. Distribution: **Type III or Type V**.
   7. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass**, **Diffuse glass, Prismatic acrylic**.
   8. Housings:
      a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
      b. **Frosted** with **anodized or painted** finish.

C. Border:
   1. Shape: **Round or Square**.
   2. Dimensions: **12 inches (300 mm) square or in diameter**.
   3. **Flush** with grade.
   4. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass**, **Diffuse glass**, **Prismatic acrylic**.
   5. Housings:
      a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
      b. **Frosted** with **anodized or painted** finish.

D. Canopy:
   1. Shape: **Round** or **Square**.

2. Dimensions: **12 inches (300 mm) square or round in diameter**.
3. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass, Diffuse glass**, **Prismatic acrylic**.
4. Housings:

    a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
    b. **Frosted** with **anodized or painted** finish.

E. Decorative Post Top:
1. Luminaire-Mounting Height: **As indicated above finished grade**.
2. Mounting Type: **Arm or Tenon**.
3. Distribution: **Type as indicated**.
4. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass, Diffuse glass, Prismatic acrylic**.
5. Housings:

    a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
    b. **Frosted** with **anodized or painted** finish.

F. Roadway:
1. Luminaire-Mounting Height: **Height as specified above finished grade**.
2. Mounting Type: **Arm** or **Tenon.**
3. Distribution: **Type as indicated**.
4. Diffusers and Globes: **Tempered Fresnel glass, Prismatic glass, Diffuse glass, Prismatic acrylic**.
5. Housings:

    a. **Extruded aluminum** housing and heat sink.
    b. **Frosted** with **anodized or painted** finish.

2.5 MATERIALS

A. Metal Parts: Free of burrs and sharp corners and edges.

B. Sheet Metal Components: **Corrosion-resistant aluminum, Stainless steel, Epoxy-coated steel**. Form and support to prevent warping and sagging.

C. Doors, Frames, and Other Internal Access: Smooth operating, free of light leakage under operating conditions, and designed to permit relamping without use of tools. Designed to prevent doors, frames, lenses, diffusers, and other components from falling accidentally during relamping and when secured in operating position. Doors shall be removable for cleaning or replacing lenses.

D. Diffusers and Globes:

1. Acrylic Diffusers: 100 percent virgin acrylic plastic, with high resistance to yellowing and other changes due to aging, exposure to heat, and UV radiation.
2. Glass: Annealed crystal glass unless otherwise indicated.
3. Lens Thickness: At least 0.125 inch (3.175 mm) minimum unless otherwise indicated.

E. Lens and Refractor Gaskets: Use heat- and aging-resistant resilient gaskets to seal and cushion lenses and refractors in luminaire doors.

F. Reflecting surfaces shall have minimum reflectance as follows unless otherwise indicated:

1. White Surfaces: 85 percent.
2. Specular Surfaces: 83 percent.
3. Diffusing Specular Surfaces: 75 percent.

G. Housings:

1. Rigidly formed, weather- and light-tight enclosure that will not warp, sag, or deform in use.
2. Provide filter/breather for enclosed luminaires.

H. Factory-Applied Labels: Comply with UL 1598. Include recommended lamps. Labels shall be located where they will be readily visible to service personnel but not seen from normal viewing angles when lamps are in place.

1. Label shall include the following lamp characteristics:

a. "USE ONLY" and include specific lamp type.
b. Lamp diameter, shape, size, wattage and coating.
c. CCT and CRI for all luminaires.

2.6 FINISHES

A. Variations in Finishes: Noticeable variations in same piece are unacceptable. Variations in appearance of adjoining components are acceptable if they are within the range of approved Samples and are assembled or installed to minimize contrast.

B. Luminaire Finish: Manufacturer's standard paint applied to factory-assembled and -tested luminaire before shipping. Where indicated, match finish process and color of pole or support materials.

C. Factory-Applied Finish for Aluminum Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Finish designations prefixed by AA comply with the system established by the Aluminum Association for designating aluminum finishes.
2. Natural Satin Finish: Provide fine, directional, medium satin polish (AA-M32); buff complying with AA-M20 requirements; and seal aluminum surfaces with clear, hard-coat wax.
3. Class I, Clear-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A41 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, clear coating 0.018 mm or thicker) complying with AAMA 611.
4. Class I, Color-Anodic Finish: AA-M32C22A42/A44 (Mechanical Finish: Medium satin; Chemical Finish: Etched, medium matte; Anodic Coating: Architectural Class I, integrally colored or electrolytically deposited color coating 0.018 mm or thicker), complying with AAMA 611.

    a. Color: **Light bronze, Medium bronze, Dark bronze, or Black as directed by the Architect or Owner**.

D. Factory-Applied Finish for Steel Luminaires: Comply with NAAMM's "Metal Finishes Manual for Architectural and Metal Products" for recommendations for applying and designating finishes.

1. Surface Preparation: Clean surfaces to comply with SSPC-SP 1, to remove dirt, oil, grease, and other contaminants that could impair paint bond. Grind welds and polish surfaces to a smooth, even finish. Remove mill scale and rust, if present, from uncoated steel, complying with SSPC-SP 5/NACE No. 1 or SSPC-SP 8.
2. Exterior Surfaces: Manufacturer's standard finish consisting of one or more coats of primer and two finish coats of high-gloss, high-build polyurethane enamel.

    a. Color: As selected from manufacturer's standard catalog of colors.
    b. Color: Match Architect's sample of **manufacturer's standard or custom** color.
    c. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

2.7 LUMINAIRE SUPPORT COMPONENTS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 260529 "Hangers and Supports for Electrical Systems" for channel and angle iron supports and nonmetallic channel and angle supports.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine substrates, areas, and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for installation tolerances and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Examine roughing-in for luminaire electrical conduit to verify actual locations of conduit connections before luminaire installation.

C. Examine walls, roofs, **canopy ceilings and overhang ceilings** for suitable conditions where luminaires will be installed.

D. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 TEMPORARY LIGHTING

A. If approved by the Architect, use selected permanent luminaires for temporary lighting. When construction is substantially complete, clean luminaires used for temporary lighting and install new lamps.

3.3 GENERAL INSTALLATION REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Use fastening methods and materials selected to resist seismic forces defined for the application and approved by manufacturer.

C. Install lamps in each luminaire.

D. Fasten luminaire to structural support.

E. Supports:

1. Sized and rated for luminaire weight.
2. Able to maintain luminaire position after cleaning and relamping.
3. Support luminaires without causing deflection of finished surface.
4. Luminaire-mounting devices shall be capable of supporting a horizontal force of 100 percent of luminaire weight and a vertical force of 400 percent of luminaire weight.

F. Wall-Mounted Luminaire Support:

1. **Attached to structural members in walls, Attached to a minimum 1/8 inch (3 mm) backing plate attached to wall structural members, or Attached using through bolts and backing plates on either side of wall**.

G. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways. Conceal raceways and cables.

H. **Install luminaires level, plumb, and square with finished grade unless otherwise indicated. Install luminaires at height and aiming angle as indicated on Drawings.**

I. Coordinate layout and installation of luminaires with other construction.

J. Adjust luminaires that require field adjustment or aiming.

K. Comply with requirements in Section 260519 "Low-Voltage Electrical Power Conductors and Cables" and Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for wiring connections and wiring methods.

3.4 BOLLARD LUMINAIRE INSTALLATION:

A. Align units for optimum directional alignment of light distribution.

1. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and shape base to match shape of bollard base. Finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.5 INSTALLATION OF INDIVIDUAL GROUND-MOUNTED LUMINAIRES

A. Aim as indicated on Drawings.

B. Install on concrete base with top **4 inches (100 mm)** above finished grade or surface at luminaire location. Cast conduit into base, and finish by troweling and rubbing smooth. Concrete materials, installation, and finishing are specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

3.6 CORROSION PREVENTION

A. Aluminum: Do not use in contact with earth or concrete. When in direct contact with a dissimilar metal, protect aluminum by insulating fittings or treatment.

B. Steel Conduits: Comply with Section 260533 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems." In concrete foundations, wrap conduit with 0.010-inch- (0.254-mm-) thick, pipe-wrapping plastic tape applied with a 50 percent overlap.

3.7 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals. Comply with requirements for identification specified in Section 260553 "Identification for Electrical Systems."

3.8 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Inspect each installed luminaire for damage. Replace damaged luminaires and components.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections **with the assistance of a factory-authorized service representative**:

1. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.
2. Verify operation of photoelectric controls.

C. Illumination Tests:

1. Measure light intensities at night. Use photometers with calibration referenced to NIST standards. Comply with the following IES testing guide(s):

a. IES LM-5.
b. IES LM-50.
c. IES LM-52.
d. IES LM-64.
e. IES LM-72.

2. Operational Test: After installing luminaires, switches, and accessories, and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test units to confirm proper operation.

D. Luminaire will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

E. Prepare a written report of tests, inspections, observations, and verifications indicating and interpreting results. If adjustments are made to lighting system, retest to demonstrate compliance with standards.

3.9 DEMONSTRATION

A. **Engage a factory-authorized service representative to train the** Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain luminaires **and photocell relays**.

3.10 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within **12** months of the date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting the direction of aim of luminaires to suit occupied conditions. Make up to **two** visits to Project during other-than-normal hours for this purpose. Some of this work may be required during hours of darkness.

1. During adjustment visits, inspect all luminaires. Replace lamps or luminaires that are defective.
2. Parts and supplies shall be manufacturer's authorized replacement parts and supplies.

3. Adjust the aim of luminaires in the presence of the Architect.

END OF SECTION 26 56 19

SECTION 27 05 00 – COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. This section includes common work results for the following systems:

1. Structured cabling for data
2. Grounding and bonding
3. Cable pathways
4. Cable management

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED UNDER OTHER DIVISIONS

A. Foundations and pads required for equipment furnished under this Division.
B. Field painting, except such painting as is required to maintain shop coat painting and factory finish painting.
C. Flashing of conduits into roofing and outside walls.
D. Heating, ventilating, and air conditioning equipment.
E. Electrical service to equipment rooms.
F. Cutting and patching for low voltage systems work, except for errors and omissions under this Division.

1.3 RELATED WORK - OWNER FURNISHED EQUIPMENT AND SYSTEMS

A. Data network electronics.

1.4 DEFINITIONS AND TERMS

A. Trade association names and communications terminology are frequently abbreviated. The following acronyms or abbreviations may be referenced within this Section:

1. ANSI American National Standards Institute
2. ASTM American Society for Testing Materials
3. BICSI Building Industry Consulting Service International
4. BOD Basis of Design document
5. Designer Firm acquired by the Owner to design the Division 27 communications systems (synonymous with Consultant and Design Engineer).
6. FCC Federal Communications Commission

7. FM Factory Mutual
8. NEC National Electrical Code
9. NECA National Electrical Contractors Association
10. NEMA National Electric Manufacturers Association
11. NESC National Electrical Safety Code
12. NFPA National Fire Protection Association
13. OSHA Occupational Safety and Health Administration
14. RCDD Registered Communications Distribution Designer
15. RFP Request for Proposal
16. TDMM Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual
17. TIA Telecommunications Industries Association
18. TR Telecommunications Room
19. UL Underwriters Laboratories
20. UTP Unshielded twisted pair

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Contractor Experience: The Contractor or approved sub-contractor shall be a Certified Cable Installer, with the capability of providing a manufacturer's certification of not less than fifteen (15) years for the horizontal and backbone cabling and associated termination equipment. The Contractor shall offer proof of certification by submitting a copy of the certification with the Bid.

B. The Contractor shall have at least one (1) Registered Communications Distribution Designer (RCDD) on staff. The Contractor shall offer proof of RCDD certification by submitting a copy of the certification with the Bid. The Contractors RCDD shall be part of the Contractors team throughout the project to assist with shop drawings and other related technical issues.

C. All personnel performing the work of this Section shall be thoroughly familiar with the cabling methods outlined in the latest release of the BICSI TDMM (Building Industry Consulting Services International Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manuals).

D. The Contractor's RCDD shall review all required work before commencing. The Contractor's RCDD shall oversee the installation and will have the end responsibility for the quality of the installation work performed. All submitted designs and or changes to the design shall be approved and signed off by the Contractor's RCDD.

E. Installation and testing crews shall have completed all appropriate training in copper and fiber cabling installation as required by the manufacturer.

F. The Contractor shall provide all new UTP cable, optical fiber cable, innerduct, racks, cabinets, patch panels, cover plates, outlet boxes, related hardware, distribution, termination equipment, and any other appurtenances and equipment associated with this project.

G. The Contractor shall be responsible for the proper placement of all cabling, racks, cabinets, patch panels, cover plates, outlet boxes, and related hardware, as well as all distribution, and termination equipment.

H. The Contractor shall obtain the approval of the Design Consultant for the final layout of telecommunications rooms (TRs) and tenant wiring closets prior to the installation of any materials or equipment. Shop drawings showing proposed room layouts shall be submitted for approval before beginning installation.

I. The Contractor shall be responsible to the Owner for the acts and omissions of its employees, subcontractors and their agents and employees, and other persons performing any of the work under a contract with the Contractor.

J. The Contractor shall have an experienced Project Manager on-site at all times when work is in progress on any project. The individual who represents the Contractor shall be the single point of contact between the Contractor and the Owner, and shall be responsible for the entire project. This representative shall be able to communicate with the Owner or designated representative whenever requested throughout the life of the project.

K. The installed cabling systems shall not generate nor be susceptible to any harmful electromagnetic emission, radiation, or induction that degrades cabling systems.

L. Expansion Capability: Unless otherwise indicated, provide spare positions in-wall fields, cross-connects, and terminal strips, and space in cable pathways to accommodate fifty (50) percent future growth in campus distribution and riser.

M. Backward Compatibility: The provided solution shall be backward compatible with lower category ratings such that if higher category components are used with lower category components, the permanent link and channel measures shall meet or exceed the lower channel's specified parameters.

N. Component Compliance: The provided solution's components shall each meet the minimum transmission specifications listed herein such that no individual component will be less than specifications for permanent and channel, regardless of the fact that tests for permanent and channel ultimately meet required specifications.

O. Pre-installation inspection: Visually inspect all cables, cable reels, and shipping cartons to detect possible cable damage incurred during shipping and transport.

P. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time-domain reflectometer (OTDR) to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connectors, including the loss value of each.

Q. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits. Test results to be submitted to the Owner.

R. Visibly damaged goods are to be returned to the supplier and replaced at no additional cost to the Owner.

1.6 STANDARDS

A. The Contractor's performance of the Work shall comply with applicable federal, state, and local laws, rules, and regulations. The Contractor shall give required notices, shall procure necessary governmental licenses, permits, and inspections and shall pay without burden to the Owner, all fees and charges in connection therewith unless specifically provided otherwise. In the event of a violation, the Contractor shall pay all fines and penalties, including attorney's fees and other defense costs and expenses in connection therewith.

B. Federal Communications Commission

1. Equipment requiring FCC registration or approval shall have received such approval and shall be appropriately identified.

C. Codes, Standards, and Ordinances

1. Design, manufacture, test, and install telecommunications cabling networks per manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction, and particularly the following standards:

a. NECA 1 – Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction, 2015

b. ANSI/TIA Standards:

1) ANSI/TIA-568.0-E – Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises, 2020
2) ANSI/TIA-568.1-E – Commercial Building Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard, 2020
3) ANSI/TIA-568.2-D – Balanced Twisted Pair Telecommunications Cabling and Components Standard, 2018
4) ANSI/TIA-568.3-E – Optical Fiber Cabling and Components Standard, 20EE
5) ANSI/TIA-568.4-E - Broadband Coaxial Cabling and Components Standard, 2022
6) ANSI/TIA-569-E – Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces, 2019
7) ANSI/TIA-606-D – Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure, 2021
8) ANSI/TIA-607-E – Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding (Earthing) for Customer Premises, 2024

9) ANSI/TIA-526.7-A – Measurement of Optical Power Loss of Installed Single- Mode Fiber Cable Plant, 2015
10) ANSI/TIA-526.14-D – Optical Power Loss Measurement of Installed Multimode Fiber Cable Plant, 2020
11) ANSI/TIA-758-B – Customer-Owned Outside Plant Telecommunications Infrastructure Standard, 2012
12) ANSI C80.1 Rigid Steel Conduit, Zinc-Coated
13) ANSI C80-3 Electrical Metallic Tubing, Zinc-Coated

c. NFPA-70 – National Electrical Code
d. Install cabling in accordance with the most recent edition of BICSI® publications:

1) BICSI – Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual, 14th Edition
2) BICSI – Information Technology Systems Installation Methods Manual, 7th Edition

e. NEMA 250 Enclosures for Electrical Equipment (1000 V Maximum)
f. NEMA-VE-1 – Metal Cable Tray Systems, 2009
g. NEMA-VE-2 – Metal Cable Tray Installation Guidelines, 2006
h. FCC 47 Part 68 Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, Telecommunications
i. IEEE National Electrical Safety Code (NESC); 2007
j. ISO/IEC 11801 Information Technology - Generic Cabling for Customer Premises
k. UL 1459 Underwriters Laboratories Standard for Safety – Telephone Equipment
l. UL 1863 Underwriters Laboratories Standard for Safety – Communications Circuit Accessories
m. ASTM E. 814 – Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
n. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM): ASTM E. 814 – Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
o. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): UL 1479 – Tests of Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
p. Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines, 2010.
q. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Chapter XVII, Part 1910 (OSHA).
r. International Building Code (IBC).
s. Applicable codes and directives of authorities having jurisdiction.

1) References to codes and standards called for in the Specifications refer to the latest edition, amendments, and revisions to the codes and standards in effect on the date of these Specifications.

D. Federal, state, and local codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances governing the Work, are as fully part of the specifications as if herein repeated or hereto attached. If the Contractor should note items in the drawings or the specifications, construction of which would be code violations, promptly call them to the attention of the Owner's Representative in writing. Where the requirements of other sections of the specifications are more stringent than applicable codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances, the specifications shall apply.

1.7 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Arrange and schedule a pre-installation conference prior to beginning any work of this section.
B. Agenda: Clarify questions in writing related to work to be performed, scheduling, coordination, etc. with the Consultant and/or Project Manager/Owner Representative.
C. All individuals, who will be in an on-site supervisory capacity, shall be required to attend the pre-installation conference. This includes project managers, site supervisors and lead installers. Individuals who do not attend the conference will not be permitted to supervise the personnel that install, terminate, or test communications cables on the project. The Contractor's RCDD that will oversee the installation is required to attend the pre-installation conference.
D. The manufacturer that will be providing the extended warranty is required to have a representative attend the pre-installation conference.

1.8 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULING

A. The Contractor shall comply with all scheduling requests established by the Owner, both prior to commencing Work, and during construction. The Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule of work to be performed. This schedule shall be submitted with the bid and if accepted will be used to track work status.
B. Work should be scheduled not to interfere with day-to-day operations within the facility. Operations vary by area and should be given careful consideration in relation to the schedule.
C. The successful Contractor for all or any portion of the work will be responsible for achieving a complete and fully functional installation on or before the contract scheduled completion date.

D. Submit schedule for installation of equipment and cabling. Indicate delivery, installation, and testing for conformance to specific job completion dates. As a minimum, dates are to be provided for bid award, installation start date, completion of station cabling, completion of riser cabling, completion of testing and labeling, cutover, completion of the final punch list, the start of demolition, Owner acceptance, and demolition completion.

1.9 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with provisions of Division 01.
B. Before any work commences, submit the following items for approval by the Designer and Owner:

1. Detailed bill-of-materials listing all manufacturers, part numbers, and quantities that the Contractor proposes to use in this project
2. Letter of approval or other certification from the manufacturer indicating the Contractor is a manufacturer certified installer of the proposed cabling system(s) (submit with a list of materials).
3. Manufacturer datasheets for proposed products to be used on this project.
4. Manufacturer instructions for storage, handling, protection, examination, preparation, operation, and installation of all products. Include any application conditions or limitations of use stipulated by any product testing agency.
5. All applicable Material Safety Data Sheets.
6. All factory test information of cables prior to installation of the product.
7. All proposed labeling materials and nomenclature for approval.
8. Shop Drawings for other Division 27 sections.
9. Shop Drawings:

    a. Indicate locations where space is limited for installation and access.
    b. Submit floor plans, elevations, and details indicating major equipment and end device locations of equipment to be provided by this Contractor to interface to new and existing systems.

1.10 ALTERNATES, SUBSTITUTIONS AND CHANGE ORDERS

A. If a proposed alternate material is equal to or exceeds specified requirements, the Contractor shall provide the manufacturer's specifications in writing for written approval prior to the purchase and installation of proposed materials. The proposed material substitution shall not void or change the manufacturer's warranty.

B. Under no circumstances shall the Owner be required to prove that an item proposed for substitution is not equal to the specified item. It shall be mandatory that the Contractor submits to Designer all evidence to support the contention that the item proposed for substitution is equal to the specified item. The Owner's decision as to the equality of substitution shall be final and without further recourse.

C. In the event that the Design Consultant is required to provide additional design services as a result of a substitution of equivalent materials or equipment by the Contractor, or changes by the Contractor in dimension, weight, power requirements, etc., of the equipment and accessories, furnished, or if the Design Consultant is required to examine and evaluate any changes proposed by the Contractor for the convenience of the Contractor, then the Design Consultant's expenses in connection with such additional services shall be paid by the Contractor and may be deducted from any moneys owed to the Contractor.

D. The Contractor shall provide complete cabling infrastructure according to these written specifications and drawings. If the Owner changes the scope of work to be performed by the Contractor, it shall be in writing. The Contractor shall respond to these changes with a complete material list, labor, and taxes in writing presented to the Owner for approval. The Contractor shall not proceed with additional scope of work without a signed approval by the Owner.

E. Additional work performed by the Contractor will not be paid by Owner without signed approval of these changes prior to implementing changes. Submit a copy of signed change order upon billing.

1.11 USE OF THE SITE

A. Use of the site shall be at the Owner's direction in matters in which the Owner deems it necessary to place restrictions.

B. Access to building wherein the Work is performed shall be as directed by the Owner.

C. The Owner will occupy the premises during the entire period of construction for conducting his or her normal business operations. Cooperate with the Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate the Owner's operations.

D. Schedule necessary shutdowns of plant services with the Owner and obtain written permission from the Owner. Refer to article - CONTINUITY OF SERVICES herein.

E. Proceed with the Work without interfering with ordinary use of streets, aisles, passages, exits, and operations of the Owner.

F. All Contractor personnel must check in with the facilities engineering department and/or the General Contractor upon arrival and upon departure.

G. The Contractor shall furnish an adequate supply of technicians and materials at all times, and shall perform the work in the most appropriate, expeditious, and economical manner consistent with the interests of the Owner.

H. The Contractor shall not unreasonably encumber the site with any material or equipment. Operations shall be confined to areas permitted by law, permits, and contract documents.

I. While working at the facility, the Contractor shall not block any entrances, egresses, or other passageways that are necessary for normal, safe operation. It should be noted that the Contractor is responsible to provide any lifts, hand trucks, etc. that it will need to transport its materials and equipment throughout the site.

J. The Contractor shall protect all buildings, walls, floors, and property from damage resulting from the installation. Any and all damage to property shall be repaired by the Contractor at its expense. If the Contractor enters an area that has damage (not caused by the Contractor), the Contractor shall immediately bring this to the attention of the Owner's Representative so the area can be appropriately noted.

K. Following each day's work, the Contractor shall clean up the areas in which it has been working and dump all trash in the appropriate designated areas.

1.12 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Insofar as possible, deliver items in manufacturers' original unopened packaging. Where this is not practical, cover items with protective materials, to keep them from being damaged. Use care in loading, transporting, unloading, and storage to keep items from being damaged.

B. Store items in a clean dry place and protect from damage.

C. Storage space on project site may be limited. Contractor shall coordinate delivery and arrange storage of materials and equipment with the Owner.

D. Components sensitive to damage in a harsh environment shall be stored off-site and delivered as needed.

E. Provide protective covering during construction to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.

F. Contractor is responsible for on-site security of tools, test equipment and materials.

G. Replace at no expense to Owner, product damaged during storage, handling or the course of construction.

1.13 CONTRACTOR CLOSE OUT SUBMITTALS

A. Submit Closeout documentation in accordance with Division 1 of the Project Manual and any applicable supplements. The number of submittal sets required is the greater of either the requirements of Division 1 of the Project Manual, or a minimum of five (5) sets.

1. Segregate documents into separate binders containing data relevant to operational, maintenance, and warranty issues.
2. Test reports on all copper and optical fiber cables (electronic file format and hard copy).
3. As-built cable schedules with recorded cable routing and lengths of each designated run.
4. As built documentation of all cabling systems.
5. As built documentation of TR modifications and associated cabinet elevations.

B. Warranty and Maintenance:

1. Test Report Binder(s).
2. Record Drawings.

1.14 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Keep a hard copy set of project drawings at the job site exclusively for recording deviations from the Construction Drawings.
B. Project Record Documents required include:

1. Marked-up copies of Contract Drawings.

a. Record locations and depths of buried and concealed conduits from fixed, easily identifiable objects, such as building walls. Where conduits are concealed in walls, indicate distances off of building corners or other building features not likely to be disturbed by future alterations.
b. Mark deviations in a different color so that work of various systems can be easily identified.

2. Newly prepared Drawings.
3. Marked-up copies of Specifications, Addenda and Change Orders.
4. Marked-up Project Data submittals.
5. Record Samples.
6. Field records for variable and concealed conditions.
7. Record information on Work that is recorded only schematically.
8. As-built drawings.

C. Post changes and modifications to the Documents as they occur. Drawings will be updated electronically and submitted to the Owner in accordance with the schedule provided for this by the Owner. Do not wait until the end of the Project.

Design Consultant will periodically review Project Record Documents to assure compliance with this requirement.

D. At completion of as-built drawings, submit Project Record Documents to Design Consultant for the Owner's records.

1. Upon completion of the as built drawings, the Design Consultant will review the as built work with the Contractor.
2. If the as built work is not complete, the Contractor will be so advised and shall complete the work as required.

E. Submit a complete test plan (and subsequent test data) per ANSI/TIA-568 for all cabling.

1. Submit (1) hardbound copies of all cable test results and one electronic compact disc.
2. Submit calibration reports for all test equipment, the calibration shall be performed by a manufacturer certified calibration facility and be dated no more than sixty (60) days prior to the start of testing.

1.15 WARRANTY

A. Materials and workmanship shall meet or exceed industry standards and be fully guaranteed for a minimum of fifteen (15) years from Final Acceptance. Cable integrity and associated terminations shall be thoroughly inspected, fully tested and guaranteed as free from defects, transpositions, opens, shorts, tight kinks, damaged jacket insulation, etc.

1. All labor must be thoroughly competent and skilled, and all work shall be executed in strict accordance with the best practice of the trades.
2. The Contractor shall be responsible for and make good, without expense to the Owner, any and all defects arising during this warranty period that are due to imperfect materials, appliances, improper installation or poor workmanship.

B. The Contractor shall submit a copy of all manufacturer warranty information.

C. The structured cabling system manufacturer of the cable products to be submitted shall provide a minimum fifteen (15) year extended product warranty and application assurance (system performance warranty). The warranty shall provide the following:

1. Ensure against all product defects.
2. Ensure that all copper and fiber approved cabling and components meet or exceed the specifications of ANSI/TIA-568 and ISO/IEC IS 11801.

3. Ensure that the installation of copper and fiber components will meet or exceed the loss and bandwidth requirements of ANSI/TIA-568 and ISO/IEC IS 11801 for a fifteen-year period.
4. Cover the repair or replacement of defective products, and the labor for repair or replacement of such defective products.
5. Application assurance that shall cover the failure of the cabling system to support the application which it was designed to support, as well as additional applications introduced in the future by recognized standards or user forums that use the ANSI/TIA-568 or ISO/IEC IS 11801 component and link/channel specifications.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. All materials and equipment used in carrying out these specifications are to be new and have a UL or FM listing, or a listing by other recognized testing laboratory when such listings are available.

1. This listing requirement applies to the entire assembly.
2. Application and installation of all equipment and materials shall be in accordance with such labeling and listing. Any modifications to equipment to suit the intent of the specifications shall be performed in accordance with these requirements.

B. Equipment shall meet all applicable FCC Regulations.

C. Model numbers and manufacturers included in this specification are listed to establish as standard of product quality.

D. The listing of a manufacturer as "acceptable" does not indicate acceptance of a standard or catalogued item of equipment. All equipment and systems must conform to the Specifications.

E. Other qualified manufacturers may be substituted only with the Owner's written consent. To request a substitution, the Contractor shall submit complete technical data, samples, and if requested, results of independent testing laboratory tests of proposed equipment.

1. If proposed System includes equipment other than specified model numbers, submit a list of major items and their quantities, with a one-line schematic diagram for review.
2. Material not specifically identified within this document, but which is required for the successful implementation of the intended system(s), shall be of the same class and quality as the specified material and equipment.

3. Include a list of previously installed projects using proposed equipment that are similar in nature to specified system.

F. Manufacturers of equipment assemblies that include components made by others shall assume complete responsibility for the final assembled unit.

1. All components of an assembled unit need not be products of the same manufacturer.
2. Constituent parts, which are alike, shall be from a single manufacturer.
3. Components shall be compatible with each other and with the total assembly for intended service.
4. The Contractor shall guarantee for a minimum of fifteen (15) years, the performance of assemblies of components, and shall repair or replace elements of the assemblies as required to deliver specified performance of the complete assembly.

G. Components of equipment shall bear the manufacturer's name or trademark, model number and serial number on a nameplate securely affixed in a conspicuous place, or cast integral with, stamped or otherwise permanently marked upon the components of the equipment.

H. Major items of equipment that serve the same function must be the same make and model.

I. Equipment and materials installed shall be compatible in all respects with other items being furnished and with existing items so that a complete and fully operational system will result.

J. Maximum standardization of components shall be provided to reduce spare part requirements.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. System installation and construction methods shall conform to the Owner’s requirements, requirements of the State of Florida and all applicable building codes.

B. Before construction work commences, the Contractor shall visit the site and identify the exact routing for all horizontal and backbone pathways.

C. The maximum allowable Category 6 UTP cable distance (as measured by electronic UTP test equipment) between the wall outlet and the serving port on the Ethernet switch in the serving TR is 90 meters. Planned horizontal cable conduit runs that will result in a cable run that exceeds 90 meters shall be pointed out to Designer before they are installed for appropriate redesign or waiver.

D. All work shall be concealed above ceilings and in walls, below slabs, and elsewhere throughout building. If concealment is impossible or impractical, Designer shall be notified before starting that part of the work. In areas with no ceilings, install only after Design Consultant reviews and comments on arrangement and appearance.

E. Provide easy, safe, and code mandated clearances at equipment racks and enclosures, and other equipment requiring maintenance and operation. All TR cabinets and racks shall be mounted a minimum of 36-inches from the wall, any wall mounted equipment, other cabinets, equipment, or power panels (or per NEC for voltages exceeding 120VAC).

F. Where required, the Contractor shall be responsible for cutting, patching, coring, and associated work for the complete cabling system at no additional cost to the Owner. Cut and drill from both sides of walls to eliminate splaying. Patch adjacent existing work disturbed by installation of new work. Cut openings in prefabricated construction units in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

G. All conduit and sleeve openings used by the Contractor shall be waterproofed or fireproofed in compliance with state and local building and fire codes.

H. The Contractor shall patch all openings remaining around and inside all conduit, sleeves, and cable penetrations to maintain the integrity of any fire rated wall, ceiling, floor, etc. The firestop system shall consist of a dielectric, water resistant, non-hardening, permanently pliable/re- enterable putty along with the appropriate damming materials (where required). The sealant must be capable of being removed and reinstalled, must adhere to all penetrants and common construction materials, and shall be capable of allowing normal wire/cable movement without being displaced.

I. All building conduits and sleeves installed and/or used under these Specifications shall be firestopped, or re-firestopped, upon cable placement through such passageways.

J. The Contractor shall seal all foundation penetrating conduits and all service entrance conduits and sleeves to eliminate the intrusion of moisture and gases into the building. This requirement also includes spare conduits designated for telecommunications use.

    1. Spare conduits shall be plugged with expandable plugs.
    2. All service entrance conduits through building shall be sealed or resealed upon cable placement.

3.2 INSPECTION

A. The Contractor shall perform a detailed inspection of the site prior to submitting any technical data for approval.

B. The Contractor shall verify that the proposed equipment and methods of installation are compatible with the existing conditions and prepare a corresponding written report of their findings.

C. The Owner shall be notified in writing if modifications of the existing building are required in order to accommodate the new equipment. These modifications shall be made only upon receiving written approval from the Owner.

D. Submit installation drawings for review and approval.

3.3 COORDINATION

A. Insofar as it is possible to determine in advance, advise the General Contractor to leave proper chases and openings. Place all outlets, anchors, sleeves, and supports prior to pouring concrete or installation of masonry work. Should the Contractor neglect doing this, any cutting and/or patching required is to be done at this Contractor's expense. Visit the site and be informed of conditions under which work must be performed. No subsequent allowance will be made because of error or failure to obtain the necessary information to completely estimate and perform the work involved.

B. Carefully coordinate with other divisions to ensure proper power requirements, grounding, fireproofing, and interlocking controls between the fire alarm system, security system, and other Owner-furnished systems. Coordinate with all the Telecommunications, Mechanical, and Electrical Drawings. Verify with the Design Consultant the exact location and mounting height of all equipment in finished areas, such as equipment racks and telecommunications devices.

C. Where more than one trade is involved in an area, space, or chase, all shall cooperate and install their own work to utilize the space equally between them in proportion to their individual requirements. There will be no priority schedule for trades. If, after installation of any equipment, piping, ducts, conduit, and boxes, it is determined that ample maintenance and passage space has not been provided, rearrange work, and/or furnish other equipment as required for ample maintenance space. Any changes in the size or location of the material or equipment supplied or proposed that may be necessary in order to meet field conditions or in order to avoid conflicts between trades, shall be brought to the immediate attention of the Designer and approval received before such alterations are made.

D. Notify other tradesmen of any deviations or special conditions necessary for the installation of work. Interferences between works of various Contractors to be resolved prior to installation. Work installed not in compliance with specifications and drawings and without properly checking and coordinating as specified above shall, if necessary, be removed and properly reinstalled without additional cost to the Owner.

E. The Owner or the Owner's Representative shall be the mediating authority in all deviation and disputes arising on the project.

F. Coordinate with local telephone and cable service providers to assure that proper points of service, demarcation location and grounding requirements are in accordance with contract drawings. Duct bank is to be provided by Division 26 and/or Civil. This Contractor shall be involved regarding discussions about services to the building.

1. Coordinate with other trades to provide wall and ceiling access panels wherever required for access to communication equipment.

G. Intent:

1. These sections of specifications and drawings form a complete set of documents for communications systems for this project. Neither is complete without the other. Any item mentioned in one shall be as binding as though mentioned in both.
2. The intent of these specifications and drawings is to form a guide for a complete systems installation. Where an item is reasonably necessary for a complete system but not specifically mentioned, such as pull boxes, fittings, expansion fittings, support hangers, etc. provide same without additional cost to Owner.
3. Communication equipment room layouts indicated on drawings are diagrammatical only. Exact location of outlets and equipment to be coordinated and governed by project conditions. The Designer reserves the right to make any reasonable changes (approximately 6 feet) in location of junction boxes, or equipment prior to roughing in of such without additional cost to Owner.

H. Deviations:

1. No deviations from specifications and drawings to be made without full knowledge and consent of Designer.
2. Should the Contractor find during progress of work that existing conditions make desirable a modification of the requirements of any particular item, report such item promptly to Designer for their decision and instructions.

I. Main Horizontal Pathway/Raceway

1. Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all communications/low voltage systems cabling shall be routed above accessible corridor ceilings parallel to room walls and corridors via cable tray or J-hook supports. Cabling shall be segregated by function as follows:

a. Voice/data cabling.
b. All other systems.

3.4 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

A. The Contractor shall not take any action that will interfere with, or interrupt, existing building services unless previous arrangements have been made with the Owner's Representative. Arrange the Work to minimize shutdown time.
B. Owner's personnel will perform shutdown of operating systems. The Contractor shall give minimum seven (7) days' advance notice for systems shutdown.
C. Should services be inadvertently interrupted, immediately furnish labor, including overtime, material, and equipment, necessary for prompt restoration of interrupted service.

3.5 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING, AND REPAIRS

A. Trenching, excavation, and backfilling is the responsibility of the General Contractor. This Contractor is to coordinate all requirements with the GC. Failure to properly coordinate this effort resulting in additional trenching, excavation, backfilling, or repairs shall be performed without additional cost to Owner.

3.6 FIRESTOPPING

A. Select appropriate type or types of through penetration firestop devices or systems appropriate for each type of communications penetration and base each selection on criteria specified herein.
B. Selected systems shall not be less than the hourly time delay ratings indicated in the Contract Documents for each respective fire-rated floor, wall, or other partition of building construction. Firestop for each type of communications penetration shall conform to requirements of an independent testing laboratory design drawing or manufacturer's approved modification when used in conjunction with details shown on the Drawings.
C. Perform all necessary coordination with trades constructing floors, walls, or other partitions of building construction with respect to size and shape of each opening to be constructed and device or system approved for use in each instance.
D. Coordinate each firestop selection with adjacent Work for dimensional or other interference and for feasibility. In areas accessible to public, and other finished areas, firestop systems Work shall be selected, installed, and finished to the quality of adjacent surfaces of building construction being penetrated.
E. Use materials that have no irritating or objectionable odors when firestopping is required in existing buildings and areas that are occupied.

F. Provide damming materials, plates, wires, restricting collars, and devices necessary for proper installation of firestopping. Remove combustible installation aids after firestopping material has cured.

G. All firestops shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in order to maintain the specific rating assigned by the independent testing laboratory.

H. Existing raceways, cable trays, and cabling that penetrate existing building construction shall be firestopped to the extent necessary to fill cavities that may exist between existing building construction and existing communications penetrations or existing conduit sleeve, and between existing conduits and existing conduit sleeve.

I. If required by inspecting authorities:

1. Expose and remove firestopping to the extent directed by inspecting authority to permit his or her inspection.
2. Reinstall new firestopping and restore Work where removed for inspection.

3.7 TESTS

A. On completion of Work, installation shall be entirely free of damaged conductors, software errors, incomplete jack termination including labeling and faceplates and dust. Perform a thorough operation test in the presence of the Owner or their representative. Provide documentation of all test results as outlined in each system's specifications. Include labor, materials, and instruments for above tests.

B. Furnish to Owner, as a part of closing documents, a copy of such tests including identification of each cable. Provide the dedicated communication service ground test as required by each system's individual manufacturer, indicating compliance with their requirements.

C. Prior to final observation and acceptance, test and leave in satisfactory operating condition, all systems and equipment including but not limited to the following:

1. Grounding.
2. Firestopping of all sleeves and conduits.
3. Telephone and LAN systems.
4. Turn in test results on cabling.

3.8 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, dust, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions. This includes touching up paint removed for grounding.

B. Contractor shall provide a clean work environment, free from trash/rubbish accumulated during and after cabling installation.

C. Maintain construction materials and refuse within the area of work. Clean the work area at the end of each day.

D. Contractor shall keep all liquids (drinks, Sodas, etc.) off finished floors, carpets, tiles, racks, and equipment. If any liquid damage to above finishes or equipment occurs, Contractor shall provide professional services to clean or repair scratched/soiled finishes or damaged equipment at own expense.

3.9 INSPECTION FEES AND PERMITS

A. Obtain and pay for all necessary permits and inspection fees required for communication systems installation. Work shall not start until all permit applications are approved.

3.10 OBSERVATIONS

A. When field observation services are a part of the project scope, the Designer's office will provide periodic observation of the progress of Work specified herein. The purpose of the observation service is to ensure compliance of Contractor's Work with specifications and drawings. The Designer's office may also observe tests required of this Contractor as called for in other sections of the specifications.

B. Specifications and drawings represent Work to be done in view of total project requirements. To eliminate possible conflict with other trades, final location of conduits, jacks, outlets, components, etc., is the responsibility of this Contractor. Contractor to provide all supervision required for his personnel to ensure that installation is made in accordance with specifications and drawings and all safety rules and regulations are observed. In event of conflicts of Work on project with other trades, Contractor is to make every reasonable effort to resolve conflict through meetings and discussions with other parties involved, by preparation of drawings, or other appropriate action. Only after this has been done shall the Designer's assistance be requested through the RFI process.

C. When the Designer is requested to visit the project to aid in resolution of conflicts, or for witnessing tests, they shall be given a minimum of fourteen (14 days' notice prior to time their presence is requested at job site.

3.11 WARRANTY-GUARANTEE

A. The Designer reserves the right to accept or reject any part of the installation which does not successfully meet requirements as set out in these specifications.

B. Contractor shall, and hereby does, guarantee all Work installed under this division shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials for a period of one year

from date of final acceptance. This Contractor further agrees to repair or replace any defective material or workmanship which is or becomes defective within the terms of this warranty-guarantee.

C. All surplus parts and pieces to the installation shall be maintained as a spare parts inventory at the building site. Parts replaced during the warranty period shall have a warranty matching that of the original part from the date of replacement.

D. Contractor shall provide a warranty of their work for a period of 1-year from the date of Final Acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 27 05 00

SECTION 27 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.
4. Grounding rods.
5. Grounding labeling.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. EMT: Electrical metallic tubing.

B. ITS: Information Technology System.

C. MGB: Main grounding busbar.

D. NRTL: Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

E. PBB: Primary bonding busbar.

F. RBB: Rack bonding busbar (ground bus in a rack or cabinet tied to the SBB or PBB).

G. SBB: Secondary bonding busbar.

H. TBB: Telecommunication bonding backbone (connects PBB to SBBs).

I. TBC: Telecommunication bonding conductor (connects PBB to MGB).

J. TEBC: Telecommunication equipment bonding conductor (connects RBB to SBB or PBB).

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. As-Built Data: Plans showing as-built locations of grounding and bonding infrastructure, including the following (where applicable):

1. Ground rods.
2. Ground and roof rings.
3. TBC, PBB, SBBs, and routing of their bonding conductors.

B. Qualification Data: For installation supervisor and field inspector.

C. Qualification Data: For testing agency and testing agency's field supervisor.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit Closeout Submittals within 30 days of substantial completion.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For grounding to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. In addition to items specified in Section 01 78 23 "Operation and Maintenance Data," include the following:

a. Result of the ground-resistance test, measured at the point of TBC connection.
b. Result of the bonding-resistance test at each TGB and its nearest grounding electrode.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of ITS Installer 2, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as ITS Installer to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
2. Panduit Corp.
3. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.
2. Cable Tray Equipment Grounding Wire: Minimum No. 8 AWG.

D. Cable Tray Grounding Jumper:

1. Not smaller than No. 6 AWG and no longer than 12 inches (300 mm). If jumper is a wire, it shall have a crimped grounding lug with two holes and long barrel for two crimps. If jumper is a flexible braid, it shall have a one-hole ferrule. Attach with grounding screw or connector provided by cable tray manufacturer.

E. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Irreversible connectors listed for the purpose. Listed by an NRTL as complying with NFPA 70 for specific types, sizes, and combinations of conductors and other items connected. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Burndy; Part of Hubbell Electrical Systems.
2. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
3. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
4. Panduit Corp.
5. Tyco Electronics Corp.

C. Compression Wire Connectors: Crimp-and-compress connectors that bond to the conductor when the connector is compressed around the conductor. Comply with UL 467.

1. Electroplated tinned copper, C and H shaped.

D. Signal Reference Grid Connectors: Combination of compression wire connectors, access floor grounding clamps, bronze U-bolt grounding clamps, and copper split-bolt connectors, designed for the purpose.

E. Busbar Connectors: Cast silicon bronze, solderless compression or exothermic-type, mechanical connector; with a long barrel and two holes spaced on 5/8- or 1-inch (15.8- or 25.4-mm) centers for a two-bolt connection to the busbar.

F. Welded Connectors: Exothermic-welding kits of types recommended by kit manufacturer for materials being joined and installation conditions.

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
3. Panduit Corp.

B. PBB: Predrilled, wall-mounted, rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 4 inches (6.3 by 100 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be NRTL listed for use as PBB and shall comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide a 4-inch (100-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. SBB: Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600-V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

D. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with ANSI/TIA-607-E. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. RBB: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Horizontal RBB: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Vertical RBB: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 LABELING

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Brother International Corporation.
2. HellermannTyton.
3. Panduit Corp.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-D and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

C. Adhesive Film Label with Clear Protective Overlay: Machine printed, in black, by thermal transfer or equivalent process. Minimum letter height shall be 3/8 inch (10 mm). Overlay shall provide a weatherproof and UV-resistant seal for label.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine the ac grounding electrode system and equipment grounding for compliance with requirements for maximum ground-resistance level and other conditions affecting performance of grounding and bonding of the electrical system.

B. Inspect the test results of the ac grounding system measured at the point of TBC connection.

C. Prepare written report, endorsed by Installer, listing conditions detrimental to performance of the Work.

D. Proceed with connection of the TBC only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Bonding shall include the ac utility power service entrance, the communications cable entrance, and the grounding electrode system. The bonding of these elements shall form a loop so that each element is connected to at least two others.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

3.3 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

1. The bonding conductors between the SBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.
2. The bonding conductors between the PBB and structural steel of steel-frame buildings shall not be smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Conductor Terminations and Connections:

1. Pipe and Equipment Grounding Conductor Terminations: Bolted connectors.
2. Underground Connections: Welded connectors except at test wells and as otherwise indicated.
3. Connections to Ground Rods at Test Wells: Bolted connectors.
4. Connections to Structural Steel: Welded connectors.

C. Conductor Support:

1. Secure grounding and bonding conductors at intervals of not less than 36 inches (900 mm).

D. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90-degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.
4. Install grounding and bonding conductors in 3/4-inch (21-mm) PVC conduit until conduit enters a telecommunications room. The grounding and bonding conductor pathway through a plenum shall be in EMT. Conductors shall not be installed in EMT unless otherwise indicated.

    a. If a grounding and bonding conductor is installed in ferrous metallic conduit, bond the conductor to the conduit using a grounding bushing that complies with requirements in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems," and bond both ends of the conduit to a TGB.

3.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Indicate locations of grounding busbars on Drawings. Install busbars horizontally, on insulated spacers 2 inches (50 mm) minimum from wall, 12 inches (300 mm) above finished floor unless otherwise indicated.

B. Where indicated on both sides of doorways, route bus up to top of door frame, across top of doorway, and down; connect to horizontal bus.

3.5 CONNECTIONS

A. Bond metallic equipment in a telecommunications equipment room to the grounding busbar in that room, using equipment grounding conductors not smaller than No. 6 AWG.

B. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

C. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pre-twist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all compression connections.

D. Interconnections: Interconnect all SBBs with the PBB using the TBB. If more than one PB is installed, interconnect PBBs using the grounding equalizer conductor. The TBC and grounding equalizer conductor size shall not be less than 2 kcmils/linear foot (1 sq. mm/linear meter) of conductor length, up to a maximum size of No. 3/0 AWG unless otherwise indicated.

E. Telecommunications Enclosures and Equipment Racks: Bond metallic components of enclosures to the RBB. Install RBB unless the enclosure and rack are manufactured with the busbar. Bond the equipment grounding busbar to the SBB No. 2 AWG TEBC.

F. Structural Steel: Where the structural steel of a steel frame building is readily accessible within the room or space, bond each SBB and PBB to the vertical steel of the building frame.

G. Electrical Power Panelboards: Where an electrical panelboard for telecommunications equipment is located in the same room or space, bond each SBB to the ground bar of the panelboard.

H. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the SBB in communications rooms and spaces in accordance with ANSI/TIA-607-E. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.

I. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the RBB. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the TEBC in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

J. Towers and Antennas (where applicable):

1. Coaxial Cable:

a. Bond cable shields at the point of entry into the building to the SBB and to the cable entrance plate, using No. 2 AWG bonding conductors.
b. Bond coaxial cable surge arrester to the ground using bonding conductor size recommended by surge-arrester manufacturer.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type.

1. Label SBB(s) with "fs-SBB," where "fs" is the telecommunications space identifier for the space containing the SBB.
2. Label the TBC and each TBB at its attachment point: "WARNING! TELECOMMUNICATIONS BONDING CONDUCTOR. DO NOT REMOVE OR DISCONNECT!"

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Comply with Section 01 40 00 “Quality Requirements."

B. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Test the bonding connections of the system using an ac earth ground-resistance tester, taking two-point bonding measurements in each telecommunications equipment room containing a PBB and a SBB and using the process recommended by BICSI TDMM. Conduct tests with the facility in operation.

    a. Measure the resistance between the busbar and the nearest available grounding electrode. The maximum acceptable value of this bonding resistance is 100 milliohms.

3. Test for ground loop currents using a digital clamp-on ammeter, with a full-scale of not more than 10 A, displaying current in increments of 0.01 A at an accuracy of plus/minus 2.0 percent.

    a. With the grounding infrastructure completed and the communications system electronics operating, measure the current in every conductor connected to the PBB and in each SBB. Maximum acceptable ac current level is 1-amp.

D. Reports: Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

E. Excessive Ground Resistance: If resistance to ground at the TBC exceeds 5-ohms, notify the Owner promptly and include recommendations to reduce ground resistance.

F. Retest: Grounding system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Contractor to submit corrective action for approval.

END OF SECTION 27 05 26

SECTION 27 05 28 - PATHWAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface pathways.
6. Hooks
7. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
8. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."
2. Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. Section 28 05 28 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security" for conduits, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, and faceplate adapters serving electronic safety and security.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ARC: Aluminum rigid conduit.

B. GRC: Galvanized rigid steel conduit.

C. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface pathways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with Section 01 40 00 “Quality Requirements.”

B. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

C. Source quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Allied Tube & Conduit.
3. Alpha Wire Company.
4. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
5. Electri-Flex Company.
6. O-Z/Gedney.
7. Picoma Industries.
8. Republic Conduit.
9. Robroy Industries.
10. Southwire Company.
11. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
12. Western Tube and Conduit Corporation.
13. Wheatland Tube Company.

B. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E
3. Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

C. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

D. ARC: Comply with ANSI C80.5 and UL 6A.

E. IMC: Comply with ANSI C80.6 and UL 1242.

F. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated rigid steel conduit or IMC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

G. EMT: Comply with ANSI C80.3 and UL 797.

H. Fittings for Metal Conduit: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 514B.

1. Conduit Fittings for Hazardous (Classified) Locations: Comply with UL 886 and NFPA 70.
2. Fittings for EMT:

a. Material: Steel or die cast.
b. Type: Setscrew or compression.

3. Expansion Fittings: PVC or steel to match conduit type, complying with UL-467, rated for environmental conditions where installed, and including flexible external bonding jumper.
4. Coating for Fittings for PVC-Coated Conduit: Minimum thickness of 0.040 inch (1 mm), with overlapping sleeves protecting threaded joints.

I. Joint Compound for IMC, GRC, or ARC: Approved, as defined in NFPA 70, by authorities having jurisdiction for use in conduit assemblies, and compounded for use to lubricate and protect threaded conduit joints from corrosion and to enhance their conductivity.

2.3 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. AFC Cable Systems, Inc.
2. Allied Tube & Conduit.

3. Anamet Electrical, Inc.
4. Arnco Corporation.
5. CANTEX Inc.
6. CertainTeed Corporation.
7. Condux International, Inc.
8. Electri-Flex Company.
9. Kraloy.
10. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
11. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
12. RACO; Hubbell.
13. Thomas & Betts Corporation.

B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

C. RNC: Type EPC-40-PVC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651 unless otherwise indicated.

D. Rigid HDPE: Comply with UL 651A.

E. Continuous HDPE: Comply with UL 651B.

F. RTRC: Comply with UL 2420, UL 2515 and NEMA TC 14.

G. Fittings for RNC: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

H. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall have a VOC content of 510 and 550 g/L or less, respectively, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Mono-Systems, Inc.
4. Square D.

B. Description: Sheet metal, complying with UL 870 and NEMA 250, Type 1 unless otherwise indicated, and sized according to NFPA 70.

1. Metal wireways installed outdoors shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

C. Fittings and Accessories: Include covers, couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings to match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

D. Wireway Covers: Hinged type, screw-cover type and flanged-and-gasketed type as shown, unless otherwise indicated.

E. Finish: Manufacturer's standard enamel finish.

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Allied Moulded Products, Inc.
2. Hoffman.
3. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
4. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.

B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Wireways and Auxiliary Gutters:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

C. Description: PVC, extruded and fabricated to required size and shape, and having snap-on cover, mechanically coupled connections, and plastic fasteners.

D. Fittings and Accessories: Couplings, offsets, elbows, expansion joints, adapters, hold-down straps, end caps, and other fittings shall match and mate with wireways as required for complete system.

E. Solvent cements and adhesive primers shall have a VOC content of 510 and 550 g/L or less, respectively, when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

2.6 SURFACE PATHWAYS

A. General Requirements for Surface Pathways:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

B. Surface Metal Pathways: Galvanized steel with snap-on cover complying with UL 5. Manufacturer's standard enamel finish in color selected by the Owner.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

a. Mono-Systems, Inc.
b. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
c. Panduit Corp.
d. Wiremold / Legrand.

C. Surface Nonmetallic Pathways: Two- or three-piece construction, complying with UL 5A, and manufactured of rigid PVC with texture and color selected by the Owner from manufacturer's standard colors. Product shall comply with UL-94 V-0 requirements for self-extinguishing characteristics.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

a. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
b. Mono-Systems, Inc.
c. Panduit Corp.
d. Quazite:Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
e. Wiremold / Legrand.

D. Tele-Power Poles:

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, available manufacturers offering products that may be incorporated into the Work include, but are not limited to, the following:

a. Mono-Systems, Inc.
b. Panduit Corp.
c. Wiremold / Legrand.

2. Material: Galvanized steel with ivory baked-enamel finish.
3. Fittings and Accessories: Dividers, end caps, covers, cutouts, wiring harnesses, devices, mounting materials, and other fittings shall match and mate with tele-power pole as required for complete system.

2.7 HOOKS

A. Description: Prefabricated sheet metal cable supports for telecommunications cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

    a. Mono-Systems, Inc.
    b. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
    c. Panduit Corp.
    d. Wiremold / Legrand.
2. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by an NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.
3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.
4. Galvanized steel.

B. J shape.

2.8 BOXES, ENCLOSURES AND CABINETS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Adalet.
2. Cooper Technologies Company; Cooper Crouse-Hinds.
3. EGS/Appleton Electric.
4. Erickson Electrical Equipment Company.
5. Hoffman.
6. Lamson & Sessions; Carlon Electrical Products.
7. Milbank Manufacturing Co.
8. Molex; Woodhead Brand.
9. Mono-Systems, Inc.
10. O-Z/Gedney.
11. Quazite:Hubbell Power Systems, Inc.
12. RACO; Hubbell.
13. Robroy Industries.
14. Spring City Electrical Manufacturing Company.
15. Stahlin Non-Metallic Enclosures.
16. Thomas & Betts Corporation.
17. Wiremold / Legrand.

B. General Requirements for Boxes, Enclosures and Cabinets:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

2. Boxes, enclosures and cabinets installed in wet locations shall be listed for use in wet locations.

C. Sheet-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 1 and UL 514A.

D. Cast-Metal Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1, ferrous alloy or aluminum (Type FD for extra depth as needed), with gasketed cover.

E. Box extensions used to accommodate new building finishes shall be of same material as recessed box.

F. Metal Floor Boxes:

1. Material: Cast metal or sheet metal.
2. Type: Fully adjustable.
3. Shape: Rectangular.
4. Listing and Labeling: Metal floor boxes shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

G. Small Sheet Metal Pull and Junction Boxes: NEMA OS 1.

H. Cast-Metal Access, Pull and Junction Boxes: Comply with NEMA FB 1 and UL 1773, cast aluminum with gasketed cover.

I. Device Box Dimensions: 4 inches square by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm square by 60 mm deep) or 4 inches by 2-1/8 inches by 2-1/8 inches deep (100 mm by 60 mm by 60 mm deep) as required.

J. Gangable boxes are allowed.

K. Nonmetallic Outlet and Device Boxes: Comply with NEMA OS 2 and UL 514C.

L. Hinged-Cover Enclosures: Comply with UL 50 and NEMA 250, of type dictated by environmental conditions (such as Type 1, Type 3R or Type 12) with continuous-hinge cover with flush latch, unless otherwise indicated.

1. Metal Enclosures: Steel, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Nonmetallic Enclosures:

   a. Material: Plastic or fiberglass.
   b. Finished inside with radio-frequency-resistant paint.

3. Interior Panels: Steel; all sides finished with manufacturer's standard enamel.

M. Cabinets:

1. NEMA 250, galvanized-steel box with removable interior panel and removable front, finished inside and out with manufacturer's standard enamel.
2. Hinged door in front cover with flush latch and concealed hinge.
3. Key latch to match panelboards.
4. Metal barriers to separate wiring of different systems and voltage.
5. Accessory feet where required for freestanding equipment.
6. Nonmetallic cabinets shall be listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Outdoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed Conduit: GRC.
2. Concealed Conduit, Aboveground: GRC.
3. Underground Conduit: RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC.
4. Boxes and Enclosures, Aboveground: NEMA 250, Type 4X.

B. Indoors: Apply pathway products as specified below unless otherwise indicated:

1. Exposed, Not Subject to Physical Damage: EMT or RNC.
2. Exposed, Not Subject to Severe Physical Damage: EMT or RNC identified for such use.
3. Concealed in Ceilings and Interior Walls and Partitions: EMT.
4. Damp or Wet Locations: GRC.
5. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable in Spaces Used for Environmental Air: Plenum-type, optical-fiber-cable pathway.
6. Pathways for Optical-Fiber or Communications-Cable Risers in Vertical Shafts: Riser-type.
7. Pathways for Concealed General-Purpose Distribution of Optical-Fiber or Communications Cable: EMT.
8. Boxes and Enclosures: NEMA 250 Type 1, except use NEMA 250 Type 4 stainless steel in institutional and commercial kitchens and NEMA 250 Type 3R in damp or wet locations.

C. Minimum Pathway Size: 3/4-inch (21-mm) trade size.

D. Pathway Fittings: Compatible with pathways and suitable for use and location.

1. Rigid and Intermediate Steel Conduit: Use threaded rigid steel conduit fittings unless otherwise indicated. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.
2. PVC Externally Coated, Rigid Steel Conduits: Use only fittings listed for use with this type of conduit. Patch and seal all joints, nicks, and scrapes in PVC coating after installing conduits and fittings. Use sealant recommended by fitting manufacturer and apply in thickness and number of coats recommended by manufacturer.
3. EMT: Use setscrew or compression, steel fittings. Comply with NEMA FB 2.10.

E. Do not install aluminum conduits, boxes, or fittings in contact with concrete or earth.

F. Install surface pathways only where indicated on Drawings.

G. Do not install nonmetallic conduit where ambient temperature exceeds 120-degrees F (49-degrees C).

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1, NECA 101, and ANSI/TIA-569-E for installation requirements except where requirements on Drawings or in this article are stricter. Comply with NECA 102 for aluminum pathways. Comply with NFPA 70 limitations for types of pathways allowed in specific occupancies and number of floors.

B. Keep pathways at least 6 inches (150 mm) away from parallel runs of flues and steam or hot-water pipes. Install horizontal pathway runs above water and steam piping.

C. Complete pathway installation before starting conductor installation.

D. Arrange stub-ups so curved portions of bends are not visible above finished slab.

E. No section of conduit shall be longer than 100 feet between pull points. Pull boxes shall be placed in conduit runs of over 100 feet. No section of conduit shall have more than the equivalent of three 90-degree bends in any pathway run. Support within 12 inches (300 mm) of changes in direction.

F. Conceal conduit and EMT within finished walls, ceilings, and floors unless otherwise indicated. Install conduits parallel or perpendicular to building lines.

G. Support conduit within 12 inches (300 mm) of enclosures to which conduit is attached.

H. Pathways Embedded in Slabs:

1. Run conduit larger than 1-inch (27-mm) trade size, parallel or at right angles to main reinforcement. Where at right angles to reinforcement, place conduit close to slab support. Secure pathways to reinforcement at maximum 10-foot (3-m) intervals.

2. Arrange pathways to cross building expansion joints at right angles with expansion fittings.
3. Arrange pathways to keep a minimum of 1 inch (25 mm) of concrete cover in all directions.
4. Do not embed threadless fittings in concrete unless specifically approved for each specific location.
5. Change from ENT to RNC, Type EPC-40-PVC, GRC or IMC before rising above floor.

I. Stub-ups to Above Recessed Ceilings:

1. Use EMT, IMC, or RMC for pathways.
2. Use a conduit bushing or insulated fitting to terminate stub-ups not terminated in hubs or in an enclosure.

J. Threaded Conduit Joints, Exposed to Wet, Damp, Corrosive, or Outdoor Conditions: Apply listed compound to threads of pathway and fittings before making up joints. Follow compound manufacturer's written instructions.

K. Coat field-cut threads on PVC-coated pathway with a corrosion-preventing conductive compound prior to assembly.

L. Terminate threaded conduits into threaded hubs or with locknuts on inside and outside of boxes or cabinets. Install insulated bushings on conduits terminated with locknuts.

M. Install pathways square to the enclosure and terminate at enclosures with locknuts. Install locknuts hand tight plus 1/4 turn more.

N. Do not rely on locknuts to penetrate nonconductive coatings on enclosures. Remove coatings in the locknut area prior to assembling conduit to enclosure to assure a continuous ground path.

O. Cut conduit perpendicular to the length. For conduits of 2-inch (53-mm) trade size and larger, use roll cutter or a guide to ensure cut is straight and perpendicular to the length.

P. Install pull wires in empty pathways. Use polypropylene or monofilament plastic line with not less than 200-lb (90-kg) tensile strength. Leave at least 12 inches (300 mm) of slack at each end of pull wire. Cap underground pathways designated as spare above grade alongside pathways in use.

Q. Surface Pathways:

1. Install surface pathway for surface telecommunications outlet boxes only where indicated on Drawings.
2. Install surface pathway with a minimum 2-inch (50-mm) radius control at bend points.

3. Secure surface pathway with screws or other anchor-type devices at intervals not exceeding 48 inches (1200 mm) and with no less than two supports per straight pathway section. Support surface pathway according to manufacturer's written instructions. Tape and glue are not acceptable support methods.

R. Pathways for Communications Cable: Install pathways, metal and nonmetallic, rigid and flexible, as follows:

1. 3/4-Inch (21-mm) Trade Size and Smaller: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 50 feet (15 m).
2. 1-Inch (27-mm) Trade Size and Larger: Install pathways in maximum lengths of 75 feet (23 m).
3. Install with a maximum of three 90-degree bends or equivalent for each length of pathway unless Drawings show stricter requirements. Separate lengths with pull or junction boxes or terminations at distribution frames or cabinets where necessary to comply with these requirements.

S. Install pathway sealing fittings at accessible locations according to NFPA 70 and fill them with listed sealing compound. For concealed pathways, install each fitting in a flush steel box with a blank cover plate having a finish similar to that of adjacent plates or surfaces. Install pathway sealing fittings according to NFPA 70.

T. Install devices to seal pathway interiors at accessible locations. Locate seals so no fittings or boxes are between the seal and the following changes of environments. Seal the interior of all pathways at the following points:

1. Where conduits pass from warm to cold locations, such as boundaries of refrigerated spaces.
2. Where an underground service pathway enters a building or structure.
3. Where otherwise required by NFPA 70.

U. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions for solvent welding PVC conduit and fittings.

V. Expansion-Joint Fittings:

1. Install in each run of aboveground RNC that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 30-degrees F (17-degrees C), and that has straight-run length that exceeds 25 feet (7.6 m). Install in each run of aboveground RMC and EMT conduit that is located where environmental temperature change may exceed 100-degrees F (55-degrees C) and that has straight-run length that exceeds 100 feet (30 m).
2. Install type and quantity of fittings that accommodate temperature change listed for each of the following locations:

a. Outdoor Locations Not Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 125-degrees F (70-degrees C) temperature change.
b. Outdoor Locations Exposed to Direct Sunlight: 155-degrees F (86-degrees C) temperature change.
c. Indoor Spaces Connected with Outdoors without Physical Separation: 125-degrees F (70-degrees C) temperature change.
d. Attics: 135-degrees F (75-degrees C) temperature change.

3. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.00041 inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F (0.06 mm per meter of length of straight run per degree C) of temperature change for PVC conduits. Install fitting(s) that provide expansion and contraction for at least 0.000078 inch per foot of length of straight run per degree F (0.0115 mm per meter of length of straight run per degree C) of temperature change for metal conduits.
4. Install expansion fittings at all locations where conduits cross building or structure expansion joints.
5. Install each expansion-joint fitting with position, mounting, and piston setting selected according to manufacturer's written instructions for conditions at specific location at time of installation. Install conduit supports to allow for expansion movement.

W. Hooks:

1. Size to allow a minimum of 25 percent future capacity without exceeding design capacity limits.
2. Shall be supported by dedicated support wires. Do not use ceiling grid support wire or support rods.
3. Hook spacing shall allow no more than 6 inches (150 mm) of slack. The lowest point of the cables shall be no less than 6 inches (150 mm) adjacent to ceilings, mechanical ductwork and fittings, luminaires, power conduits, power and telecommunications outlets, and other electrical and communications equipment.
4. Space hooks no more than 5 feet (1.5 m) o.c.
5. Provide a hook at each change in direction.

X. Mount boxes at heights indicated on Drawings. If mounting heights of boxes are not individually indicated, give priority to ADA requirements. Install boxes with height measured to center of box unless otherwise indicated.

Y. Recessed Boxes in Masonry Walls: Saw-cut opening for box in center of cell of masonry block, and install box flush with surface of wall. Prepare block surface to provide a flat surface for a raintight connection between box and cover plate or supported equipment and box.

Z. Horizontally separate boxes mounted on opposite sides of walls so they are not in the same vertical channel.

AA. Support boxes of three gangs or more from more than one side by spanning two framing members or mounting on brackets specifically designed for the purpose.

BB. Fasten junction and pull boxes to or support from building structure. Do not support boxes by conduits.

CC. Set metal floor boxes level and flush with finished floor surface.

DD. Set nonmetallic floor boxes level. Trim after installation to fit flush with finished floor surface.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes and cabinets from damage or deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 27 05 28

SECTION 27 05 29 - HANGERS AND SUPPORTS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Steel slotted support systems for communication raceways.
2. Aluminum slotted support systems for communication raceways.
3. Nonmetallic slotted support systems for communication raceways.
4. Conduit and cable support devices.
5. Support for conductors in vertical conduit.
6. Structural steel for fabricated supports and restraints.
7. Mounting, anchoring, and attachment components, including powder-actuated fasteners, mechanical expansion anchors, concrete inserts, clamps, through bolts, toggle bolts, and hanger rods.
8. Fabricated metal equipment support assemblies.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for the following:

a. Slotted support systems, hardware, and accessories.
b. Clamps.
c. Hangers.
d. Sockets.
e. Eye nuts.
f. Fasteners.
g. Anchors.
h. Saddles.
i. Brackets.

2. Include rated capacities and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: Signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer. For fabrication and installation details for communications hangers and support systems.

1. Trapeze hangers. Include product data for components.
2. Steel slotted-channel systems.
3. Equipment supports.

C. Delegated-Design Submittal: For hangers and supports for communications systems.

1. Include design calculations and details of trapeze hangers.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plan(s) and other details, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Suspended ceiling components.
2. Ductwork, piping, fittings, and supports.
3. Structural members to which hangers and supports will be attached.
4. Size and location of initial access modules for acoustical tile.
5. Items penetrating finished ceiling, including the following:

    a. Luminaires.
    b. Air outlets and inlets.
    c. Speakers.
    d. Sprinklers.
    e. Access panels.
    f. Projectors.
    g. Security devices
    h. Fire alarm devices.

B. Welding certificates.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M.
2. AWS D1.2/D1.2M.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design hanger and support system.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame Rating: Class 1.
2. Self-extinguishing according to ASTM D635.

2.2 SUPPORT, ANCHORAGE, AND ATTACHMENT COMPONENTS

A. Steel Slotted Support Systems: Preformed steel channels and angles with minimum 13/32-inch- (10-mm-) diameter holes at a maximum of 8 inches (200 mm) o.c. in at least one surface.

1. Standard: Comply with MFMA-4 factory-fabricated components for field assembly.
2. Material for Channel, Fittings, and Accessories: Galvanized steel.
3. Channel Width: Selected for applicable load criteria 1-5/8 inches (41.25 mm).
4. Metallic Coatings: Hot-dip galvanized after fabrication and applied according to MFMA-4.
5. Nonmetallic Coatings: Manufacturer's standard PVC, polyurethane, or polyester coating applied according to MFMA-4.
6. Painted Coatings: Manufacturer's standard painted coating applied according to MFMA-4.
7. Protect finishes on exposed surfaces from damage by applying a strippable, temporary protective covering before shipping.
8. Channel Dimensions: Selected for applicable load criteria.

2.3 FABRICATED METAL EQUIPMENT SUPPORT ASSEMBLIES

A. Description: Welded or bolted structural-steel shapes, shop or field fabricated to fit dimensions of supported equipment.

B. Materials: Comply with requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for steel shapes and plates.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 APPLICATION

A. Comply with the following standards for application and installation requirements of hangers and supports, except where requirements on Drawings or in this Section are stricter:

1. NECA 1.
2. NECA/BICSI 568.
3. ANSI/TIA-569-E.
4. NECA 101.
5. NECA 105.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 00 “Common Work Results for Communications” for firestopping materials and installation for penetrations through fire-rated walls, ceilings, and assemblies.

C. Comply with requirements for pathways specified in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

D. Maximum Support Spacing and Minimum Hanger Rod Size for Raceway: Space supports for EMTs, IMCs, and RMCs as scheduled in NECA 1, where its Table 1 lists maximum spacings that are less than those stated in NFPA 70. Minimum rod size shall be 1/4 inch (6 mm) in diameter.

E. Multiple Raceways or Cables: Install trapeze-type supports fabricated with steel slotted or other support system, sized so capacity can be increased by at least 25 percent in future without exceeding specified design load limits.

1. Secure raceways and cables to these supports with single-bolt conduit clamps.

3.2 SUPPORT INSTALLATION

A. Raceway Support Methods: In addition to methods described in NECA 1, EMT and RMC may be supported by openings through structure members, according to NFPA 70.

B. Strength of Support Assemblies: Where not indicated, select sizes of components, so strength will be adequate to carry present and future static loads within specified loading limits. Minimum static design load used for strength determination shall be weight of supported components plus 200 lb (90 kg).

C. Mounting and Anchorage of Surface-Mounted Equipment and Components: Anchor and fasten communications items and their supports to building structural elements by the following methods unless otherwise indicated by code:

1. To Wood: Fasten with lag screws or through bolts.
2. To New Concrete: Bolt to concrete inserts.
3. To Masonry: Use approved toggle-type bolts on hollow masonry units and expansion anchor fasteners on solid masonry units.
4. To Existing Concrete: Use expansion anchor fasteners.
5. Instead of expansion anchors, powder-actuated-driven threaded studs, provided with lock washers and nuts, may be used in existing standard-weight concrete 4 inches (100 mm) thick or greater. Do not use for anchorage to lightweight-aggregate concrete or for slabs less than 4 inches (100 mm) thick.
6. To Steel: Welded threaded studs complying with AWS D1.1/D1.1M, with lock washers and nuts or Beam clamps (MSS SP-58, Type 19, 21, 23, 25, or 27), complying with MSS SP-69.
7. To Light Steel: Sheet metal screws.
8. Items Mounted on Hollow Walls and Nonstructural Building Surfaces: Mount cabinets, panelboards, disconnect switches, control enclosures, pull and junction boxes, transformers, and other devices on slotted-channel racks attached to substrate.

D. Drill holes for expansion anchors in concrete at locations and to depths that avoid the need for reinforcing bars.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF FABRICATED METAL SUPPORTS

A. Comply with installation requirements in Section 05 50 00 "Metal Fabrications" for site-fabricated metal supports.
B. Cut, fit, and place miscellaneous metal supports accurately in location, alignment, and elevation to support and anchor communications materials and equipment.

C. Field Welding: Comply with AWS D1.1/D1.1M.

3.4 PAINTING

A. Touchup: Clean field welds and abraded areas of shop paint. Paint exposed areas immediately after erecting hangers and supports. Use same materials as used for shop painting. Comply with SSPC-PA 1 requirements for touching up field-painted surfaces.

1. Apply paint by brush or spray to provide minimum dry film thickness of 2.0 mils (0.05 mm).

B. Touchup: Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" and Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for cleaning and touchup painting of field welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas of shop paint on miscellaneous metal.

C. Galvanized Surfaces: Clean welds, bolted connections, and abraded areas, and apply galvanizing-repair paint to comply with ASTM A780.

END OF SECTION 27 05 29

SECTION 27 05 36 - CABLE TRAYS FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Ladder cable trays.
2. Wire-basket cable trays.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 05 00 “Common Work Results for Communications.”

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of cable tray.

1. Include data indicating dimensions and finishes for each type of cable tray indicated.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Floor plans and sections, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved:

1. Include scaled cable tray layout identifying all sizes and types and showing relationships between components and adjacent structural, electrical, and mechanical elements.
2. Vertical and horizontal offsets and transitions.
3. Clearances for access above and to side of cable trays.
4. Vertical elevation of cable trays above the floor or below bottom of ceiling structure.

B. Field quality-control reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR CABLE TRAYS

A. Compliance: Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements." Cable trays identified for use via listing may require that all interconnected cable trays be from a single manufacturer. Some tray types may not be capable of being interconnected.

B. Cable Trays and Accessories: Identified as defined in NFPA 70 and marked for intended location, application, and grounding.

1. Source Limitations: Obtain cable trays and components from single manufacturer.

C. Structural Performance: See articles for individual cable tray types for specific values for the following parameters:

1. Uniform Load Distribution: Capable of supporting a uniformly distributed load on the indicated support span when supported as a simple span and tested according to NEMA VE 1.
2. Concentrated Load: A load applied at midpoint of span and centerline of tray.
3. Load and Safety Factors: Applicable to both side rails and rung capacities.

2.2 LADDER CABLE TRAYS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
2. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
3. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
4. Mono-Systems, Inc.
5. MP Husky.
6. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.

B. Description:

1. Configuration: Two I-beam side rails with transverse rungs welded to side rails.
2. Rung Spacing: 9 inches (225 mm) o.c.
3. Radius-Fitting Rung Spacing: 6 inches (152 mm) at center of tray's width.
4. Minimum Cable-Bearing Surface for Rungs: 7/8-inch (22-mm) width with radius edges.
5. No portion of the rungs shall protrude below the bottom plane of side rails.
6. Structural Performance of Each Rung: Capable of supporting a maximum cable load, with a safety factor of 1.5, plus a 200-lb (90-kg) concentrated load, when tested according to NEMA VE 1.

7. Minimum Usable Load Depth: 5 inches (125 mm).
8. Straight Section Lengths: 10 feet (3 m) except where shorter lengths are required to facilitate tray assembly.
9. Width: 12 inches (300 mm) unless otherwise indicated on Drawings.
10. Fitting Minimum Radius: 12 inches (300 mm).
11. Class Designation: Comply with NEMA VE 1, Class 12B for maximum uniform load and support span distances.
12. Splicing Assemblies: Bolted type using serrated flange locknuts.
13. Hardware and Fasteners: ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594 stainless steel, Type 316.
14. Splice Plate Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.

2.3 WIRE-BASKET CABLE TRAYS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Allied Tube & Conduit; a Tyco International Ltd. Co.
2. Cablofil/Legrand.
3. Chalfant Manufacturing Company.
4. Cooper B-Line, Inc.
5. Enduro Systems, Inc.
6. Mono-Systems, Inc.
7. MP Husky.
8. Niedax-Kleinhuis USA, Inc.
9. Snaketray.
10. Wiremaid Products Division; Vutec Corporation.

B. Description:

1. Configuration: Wires are formed into a standard 2-by-4-inch (50-by-100-mm) wire mesh pattern with intersecting wires welded together. Mesh sections must have at least one bottom longitudinal wire along entire length of section.
2. Materials: High-strength-steel longitudinal wires with no bends.
3. Safety Provisions: Wire ends along wire-basket sides (flanges) rounded during manufacturing to maintain integrity of cables and installer safety.
4. Sizes:

    a. Straight sections shall be furnished in standard 118-inch (3000-mm) lengths.
    b. Wire-Basket Depth: As indicated on the Drawings.

5. Connector Assemblies: Bolt welded to plate shaped to fit around adjoining tray wires and mating plate. Mechanically joins adjacent tray wires to splice sections together or to create horizontal fittings.

6. Connector Assembly Capacity: Splices located within support span shall not diminish rated loading capacity of cable tray.
7. Hardware and Fasteners: ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594 stainless steel, Type 316.

2.4 MATERIALS AND FINISHES

A. Steel:

1. Straight Section and Fitting Side Rails and Rungs: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, structural-steel (SS), Grade 33.
2. Steel Tray Splice Plates: ASTM A 1011/A 1011M, low-alloy steel (HSLAS), Grade 50, Class 1.
3. Fasteners: Steel complies with the minimum mechanical properties of ASTM A 510/A 510M, Grade 1008.

4. Finish: Powder-coat enamel paint.

    a. Powder-Coat Enamel: Cable tray manufacturer's recommended primer and corrosion-inhibiting treatment, with factory-applied powder-coat paint.
    b. Hardware: Stainless steel, Type 316, ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594.

B. Aluminum:

1. Materials: Alloy 6063-T6 according to ANSI H 35.1/H 35.1M for extruded components and Alloy 5052-H32 or Alloy 6061-T6 according to ANSI H 35.1/H 35.1M for fabricated parts.
2. Hardware: Stainless steel, Type 316, ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594.
3. Hardware for Aluminum Cable Tray Used Outdoors: Stainless steel, Type 316, ASTM F 593 and ASTM F 594.

2.5 CABLE TRAY ACCESSORIES

A. Fittings: Tees, crosses, risers, elbows, and other fittings as indicated, of same materials and finishes as cable tray.

B. Barrier Strips: Same materials and finishes as for cable tray.

C. Supports and Connectors: Cable tray supports and connectors, including bonding jumpers, as recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

D. Cable Tray Waterfall: Black powder coated.

2.6 WARNING SIGNS

A. Lettering: 1-1/2-inch- (40-mm-) high, black letters on yellow background with legend "Warning! Not To Be Used as Walkway, Ladder, or Support for Ladders or Personnel."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 CABLE TRAY INSTALLATION

A. Install cable trays according to NEMA VE 2 (NEMA FG 1 for fiberglass cable trays).

B. Install cable trays as a complete system, including fasteners, hold-down clips, support systems, barrier strips, adjustable horizontal and vertical splice plates, elbows, reducers, tees, crosses, cable dropouts, adapters, covers, and bonding.

C. Install cable trays so that the tray is accessible for cable installation and all splices are accessible for inspection and adjustment.

D. Remove burrs and sharp edges from cable trays.

E. Join aluminum cable tray with splice plates; use four square neck-carriage bolts and locknuts.

F. Fasten cable tray supports to building structure and install seismic restraints.

G. Design fasteners and supports to carry cable tray, the cables, and a concentrated load of 200 lbs (90 kg).

H. Place supports so that spans do not exceed maximum spans defined herein and shown on the Drawings and provide clearances shown on Drawings. Install intermediate supports when cable weight exceeds the load-carrying capacity of the tray rungs.

I. Construct supports from channel members, threaded rods, and other appurtenances furnished by cable tray manufacturer. Arrange supports in trapeze or wall-bracket form as required by application.

J. Support bus assembly to prevent twisting from eccentric loading.

K. Install center-hung supports for single-rail trays designed for 60 versus 40 percent eccentric loading condition, with a safety factor of 3.

L. Locate and install supports according to NEMA VE 2. Do not install more than one cable tray splice between supports.

M. Support wire-basket cable trays with center support hangers.

N. Support center support hangers for wire-basket trays with 1/4-inch- (6-mm-) diameter rods.

O. Make connections to equipment with flanged fittings fastened to cable trays and to equipment. Support cable trays independent of fittings. Do not carry weight of cable trays on equipment enclosure.

P. Install expansion connectors where cable trays cross building expansion joints and in cable tray runs that exceed dimensions recommended in NEMA VE 2. Space connectors and set gaps according to applicable standard.

Q. Make changes in direction and elevation using manufacturer's recommended fittings.

R. Make cable tray connections using manufacturer's recommended fittings.

S. Seal penetrations through fire and smoke barriers.

T. Install capped metal sleeves for future cables through firestop-sealed cable tray penetrations of fire and smoke barriers (if applicable).

U. Install cable trays with enough workspace to permit access for installing cables.

V. Do not install cables of different systems other than communications and data processing.

W. Install warning signs in visible locations on or near cable trays after cable tray installation.

X. At each rack or cabinet that has a runway cable tray system running on top of it, a cable dropout shall be installed to protect the bend radii of the cable. This dropout shall have a bend radii of no less than 4-inches.

Y. All end sections of runway cable tray sections shall be protected with plastic protective end caps.

3.2 CABLE TRAY GROUNDING

A. Ground cable trays according to NFPA 70 unless additional grounding is specified. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems."

B. Cable trays shall be bonded together with splice plates listed for grounding purposes or with listed bonding jumpers.

C. When using epoxy- or powder-coat painted cable trays as a grounding conductor, completely remove coating at all splice contact points or ground connector attachment. After completing splice-to-grounding bolt attachment, repair the coated surfaces with coating materials recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

D. Bond cable trays to power source with bonding conductors sized according to NFPA 70, Article 250.122, "Size of Equipment Grounding Conductors."

3.3 CABLE INSTALLATION

A. Install cables only when each cable tray run has been completed and inspected.

B. Fasten cables on horizontal runs with cable clamps or cable ties according to NEMA VE 2. Tighten clamps only enough to secure the cable, without indenting the cable jacket. Install cable ties with a tool that includes an automatic pressure-limiting device.

C. Fasten cables on vertical runs to cable trays every 18 inches (450 mm).

D. Fasten and support cables that pass from one cable tray to another or drop from cable trays to equipment enclosures. Fasten cables to the cable tray at the point of exit and support cables independent of the enclosure. The cable length between cable trays or between cable tray and enclosure shall be no more than 72 inches (1800 mm).

E. Tie MI cables down every 36 inches (900 mm) where required to provide a 2-hour fire rating and every 72 inches (1800 mm) elsewhere.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Remove paint from all connection points before making connections. Repair paint after the connections are completed.

B. Connect pathways to cable trays according to requirements in NEMA VE 2 and NEMA FG 1.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. After installing cable trays and after electrical circuitry has been energized, survey for compliance with requirements.
2. Visually inspect cable insulation for damage. Correct sharp corners, protuberances in cable trays, vibrations, and thermal expansion and contraction conditions, which may cause or have caused damage.
3. Verify that the number, size, and voltage of cables in cable trays do not exceed that permitted by NFPA 70. Verify that communications or data-processing circuits are separated from power circuits by barriers and/or are installed in separate cable trays.
4. Verify that there are no intruding items such as pipes, hangers, or other equipment in the cable tray.
5. Remove dust deposits, industrial process materials, trash of any description, and any blockage of tray ventilation.

6. Visually inspect each cable tray joint and each ground connection for mechanical continuity. Check bolted connections between sections for corrosion. Clean and re-torque in suspect areas.
7. Check for improperly sized or installed bonding jumpers.
8. Check for missing, incorrect or damaged bolts, bolt heads or nuts. When found, replace with specified hardware.
9. Perform visual and mechanical checks for adequacy of cable tray grounding; verify that all takeoff raceways are bonded to cable trays. Test entire cable tray system for continuity. Maximum allowable resistance is 1-ohm.

B. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

3.6 PROTECTION

A. Protect installed cable trays and cables.

1. Install temporary protection for cables in open trays to safeguard exposed cables against falling objects or debris during construction. Temporary protection for cables and cable tray can be constructed of wood or metal materials and shall remain in place until the risk of damage is over.
2. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by cable tray manufacturer.
3. Repair damage to paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by cable tray manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 27 05 36

SECTION 27 05 43 - UNDERGROUND PATHWAYS AND STRUCTURES FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduit and fittings, including GRC and PVC-coated GRC.
2. Rigid nonmetallic duct.
3. Duct accessories, including rigid innerduct and fabric innerduct.
4. Polymer concrete handholes and boxes with polymer concrete cover.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Direct-Buried: Duct or a duct bank that is buried in the ground, without any additional casing materials, such as concrete.

B. Duct: A single duct or multiple ducts. Duct may be either installed singly or as component of a duct bank.

C. Duct Bank:

1. Two or more ducts installed in parallel, with or without additional casing materials.
2. Multiple duct banks.

D. GRC: Galvanized rigid conduit.

E. IMC: Intermediate metal conduit.

F. RNC: Rigid nonmetallic conduit.

G. Trafficways: Locations where vehicular or pedestrian traffic is a normal course of events.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include duct-bank materials, including spacers and miscellaneous components.
2. Include duct and conduits and their accessories, including elbows, end bells, bends, fittings, duct spacers and solvent cement.
3. Include accessories for handholes.
4. Include underground-line warning tape.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Factory-Fabricated Handholes and Boxes Other Than Precast Concrete:

a. Include dimensioned plans, sections, and elevations, and fabrication and installation details.
b. Include duct entry provisions, including location and duct size.
c. Include cover design.
d. Include grounding details.
e. Include dimensioned locations of cable rack inserts, and pulling-in and lifting irons.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Duct and Duct-Bank Coordination Drawings: Show duct profiles and coordination with other utilities and underground structures.

1. Include plans and sections, drawn to scale, and show bends and locations of expansion fittings.
2. Drawings shall be signed and sealed by a qualified professional engineer.

B. Qualification Data: For professional engineer and testing agency responsible for testing nonconcrete handholes and boxes.

C. Source quality-control reports.

D. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 MAINTENANCE MATERIALS SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Interruption of Existing Communications Service: Do not interrupt communications service to facilities occupied by Owner or others unless permitted under the following conditions, and then only after arranging to provide temporary communications service according to requirements indicated:

1. Notify Construction Manager and Owner no fewer than seven (7) days in advance of proposed interruption of communications service.
2. Do not proceed with interruption of communications service without Owner's written permission.

B. Ground Water: Assume ground-water level is 36 inches (900 mm) below ground surface unless a higher water table is noted on Drawings.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 METAL CONDUITS AND FITTINGS

A. GRC: Comply with ANSI C80.1 and UL 6.

B. PVC-Coated Steel Conduit: PVC-coated GRC.

1. Comply with NEMA RN 1.
2. Coating Thickness: 0.040 inch (1 mm), minimum.

C. General Requirements for Metal Conduits and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E and ANSI/TIA-758-B.

2.2 RIGID NONMETALLIC DUCTS

A. Underground Plastic Utilities Duct: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, complying with NEMA TC 2 and UL 651, with matching fittings complying with NEMA TC 3 by same manufacturer as duct.

B. General Requirements for Nonmetallic Ducts and Fittings:

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a nationally recognized testing laboratory, and marked for intended location and application.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E and ANSI/TIA-758-B.

C. Solvents and Adhesives: As recommended by duct manufacturer.

2.3 DUCT ACCESSORIES

A. Fabric Innerduct: Continuous, polyester, multi-pocket fabric innerduct, with internal pull tape and tracer wire.

B. Duct Spacers: Factory-fabricated rigid PVC interlocking spacers, sized for type and size of duct with which used, and selected to provide minimum duct spacing indicated while supporting duct during concreting or backfilling.

C. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Underground-line warning tape specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communications Systems."

2.4 POLYMER CONCRETE HANDHOLES AND BOXES WITH POLYMER CONCRETE COVER

A. Description: Molded of sand and aggregate, bound together with a polymer resin, and reinforced with steel or fiberglass or a combination of the two.

B. Standard: Comply with SCTE 77. Comply with tier requirements in "Underground Enclosure Application" Article.

C. Color: Gray.

D. Configuration: Units shall be designed for flush burial and have open bottom unless otherwise indicated.

E. Cover: Weatherproof, secured by tamper-resistant locking devices and having structural load rating consistent with enclosure.

F. Cover Finish: Nonskid finish shall have a minimum coefficient of friction of 0.50.

G. Cover Legend: Molded lettering, "COMMUNICATIONS".

H. Handholes 12 inches wide by 24 inches long and larger shall have factory-installed inserts for cable racks and pulling-in irons.

2.5 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Nonconcrete Handhole and Pull-Box Prototype Test: Test prototypes of manholes and boxes for compliance with SCTE 77. Strength tests shall be for specified tier ratings of products supplied.

1. Tests of materials shall be performed by an independent testing agency.
2. Strength tests of complete boxes and covers shall be by either an independent testing agency or manufacturer. A qualified registered professional engineer shall certify tests by manufacturer.
3. Testing machine pressure gages shall have current calibration certification, complying with ISO 9000 and ISO 10012, and traceable to NIST standards.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of duct, duct bank, manholes, handholes, and boxes with final arrangement of other utilities, site grading, and surface features as determined in the field. Notify Architect if there is a conflict between areas of excavation and existing structures or archaeological sites to remain.

B. Coordinate elevations of duct and duct-bank entrances into manholes, handholes, and boxes with final locations and profiles of duct and duct banks, as determined by coordination with other utilities, underground obstructions, and surface features. Revise locations and elevations as required to suit field conditions and to ensure that duct runs drain to manholes and handholes, and as approved by Architect.

C. Clear and grub vegetation to be removed, and protect vegetation to remain according to 2024 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures Division 200, or latest version. Remove and stockpile topsoil for reapplication according to 2024 NCDOT Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures Division 200, or latest version.

3.2 UNDERGROUND DUCT APPLICATION

A. Duct for Communications: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, in concrete-encased duct bank unless otherwise indicated.

B. Underground Duct Crossing Driveways and Roadways: Type EPC-80-PVC RNC, encased in reinforced concrete.

C. Stub-Ups for Communications: Concrete-encased GRC.

3.3 EARTHWORK

A. Excavation and Backfill: Comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving," but do not use heavy-duty, hydraulic-operated, compaction equipment.

3.4 DUCT AND DUCT-BANK INSTALLATION

A. Where indicated on Drawings, install duct, spacers, and accessories into the duct configuration shown. Duct installation requirements in this Section also apply to duct bank.

B. Install duct and duct bank according to NEMA TCB 2 and ANSI/TIA-758-B.

C. Slope: Pitch duct and duct bank a minimum slope of 1:100 down toward manholes and handholes and away from buildings and equipment. Slope duct and duct bank from a high point in runs between two manholes, to drain in both directions.

D. Curves and Bends: Use 5-degree angle couplings for small changes in direction. Use manufactured long sweep bends with a minimum radius of 48 inches (1200 mm), both horizontally and vertically, at other locations unless otherwise indicated.

1. Duct and duct banks shall have maximum of two 90-degree bends, or the total of all bends shall be no more 180 degrees between pull points.

E. Joints: Use solvent-cemented joints in duct and fittings, and make watertight according to manufacturer's written instructions. Stagger couplings, so those of adjacent ducts do not lie in same plane.

F. Installation Adjacent to High-Temperature Steam Lines: Where duct or duct banks are installed parallel to underground steam lines, perform calculations showing the duct or duct bank will not be subject to environmental temperatures above 40 deg C. Where environmental temperatures are calculated to rise above 40 deg C, and anywhere the duct or duct bank crosses above an underground steam line, install insulation blankets listed for direct burial to isolate the duct bank from the steam line.

G. Building Wall Penetrations: Make a transition from underground duct to GRC at least 10 feet (3 m) outside the building wall, without reducing duct slope away from the building or forming a trap in the duct. Use fittings manufactured for RNC duct-to-GRC conduit transition. Install GRC penetrations of building walls as specified in Section 270544 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

H. Sealing: Provide temporary closure at terminations of duct that has cables pulled. Seal spare ducts at terminations. Use sealing compound and plugs to withstand at least 15-psig (1.03-MPa) hydrostatic pressure.

I. Innerduct: Install immediately after mandreling duct. Size and type as indicated on Drawings. Provide a minimum of three (3) innerducts per duct.

J. Pulling Cord: Install 200-lbf- (1000-N-m) test nylon cord in empty duct and innerduct.

K. Concrete-Encased Duct and Duct Bank:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct or duct bank. Prepare trench bottoms as specified in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for pipes less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
3. Depth: Install top of duct and duct bank at least 24 inches (600 mm) below finished grade in areas not subject to deliberate traffic, and at least 30 inches (750 mm) below finished grade in deliberate traffic paths for vehicles unless otherwise indicated.
4. Support duct and duct bank on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
5. Minimum Space Between Duct: 3 inches (75 mm) between edge of duct and exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts for like services, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications ducts.
6. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than five spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around duct or duct bank.
7. Elbows: Use manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances, and at changes of direction in duct run unless otherwise indicated. Extend concrete encasement throughout length of elbow.

    a. Couple GRC to duct with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
    b. Stub-Ups to Outdoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of base. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

        1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and minimum 3 inches (75 mm)from conduit side to edge of slab.

    c. Stub-Ups to Indoor Equipment: Extend concrete-encased GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of wall. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

1) Stub-ups shall be minimum 4 inches (100 mm) above finished floor and no less than 3 inches (75 mm) from conduit side to edge of wall.

8. Reinforcement: Reinforce concrete-encased duct and duct bank where they cross disturbed earth and where indicated. Arrange reinforcing rods and ties without forming conductive or magnetic loops around ducts or duct groups.
9. Forms: Use trench walls to form side walls of duct and duct bank where soil is self-supporting and concrete envelope can be poured without soil inclusions; otherwise, use forms.
10. Concrete Cover: Install a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete cover between edge of duct to exterior envelope wall, 2 inches (50 mm) between ducts, and 4 inches (100 mm) between power and communications duct.
11. Concreting Sequence: Pour each run of envelope between manholes or other terminations in one continuous operation.

    a. Start at one end and finish at the other, allowing for expansion and contraction of duct as its temperature changes during and after the pour. Use expansion fittings installed according to manufacturer's written recommendations, or use other specific measures to prevent expansion-contraction damage.
    b. If more than one pour is necessary, terminate each pour in a vertical plane and install 3/4-inch (19-mm) reinforcing-rod dowels extending a minimum of 18 inches (450 mm) into concrete on both sides of joint near corners of envelope.

12. Pouring Concrete: Comply with requirements in "Concrete Placement" Article in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete." Place concrete carefully during pours to prevent voids under and between ducts and at exterior surface of envelope. Do not allow a heavy mass of concrete to fall directly onto duct. Allow concrete to flow to center of bank and rise up in middle, uniformly filling all open spaces. Do not use power-driven agitating equipment unless specifically designed for duct-bank application.

L. Direct-Buried Duct and Duct Banks:

1. Excavate trench bottom to provide firm and uniform support for duct and duct bank. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for preparation of trench bottoms for duct less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter.
2. Install duct with a minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) between duct for like services and 6 inches (150 mm) between power and signal duct.
3. Width: Excavate trench 3 inches (75 mm) wider than duct or duct bank on each side.
4. Depth: Install top of duct or duct bank at least 36 inches (900 mm) below finished grade unless otherwise indicated.

5. Set elevation of bottom of duct or duct bank below frost line.
6. Support duct on duct spacers coordinated with duct size, duct spacing, and outdoor temperature.
7. Spacer Installation: Place spacers close enough to prevent sagging and deforming of duct, with not less than five spacers per 20 feet (6 m) of duct. Place spacers within 24 inches (600 mm) of duct ends. Stagger spacers approximately 6 inches (150 mm) between tiers. Secure spacers to earth and duct to prevent floating during concreting. Tie entire assembly together using fabric straps; do not use tie wires or reinforcing steel that may form conductive or magnetic loops around duct or duct bank.
8. Elbows: Install manufactured duct elbows for stub-ups, at building entrances through floor, and at changes of direction in duct unless otherwise indicated. Encase elbows for stub-ups throughout length of elbow.

    a. Couple GRC to duct with adapters designed for this purpose, and encase coupling with 3 inches (75 mm) of concrete.
    b. For equipment mounted on outdoor bases, extend GRC horizontally a minimum of 60 inches (1500 mm) from edge of equipment pad or foundation. Install insulated grounding bushings on terminations at equipment.

9. After installing first tier of duct, backfill and compact. Start at tie-in point and work toward end of duct run, leaving duct at end of run free to move with expansion and contraction, as temperature changes during this process. Repeat procedure after placing each tier. After placing last tier, hand place backfill to 4 inches (100 mm) over duct and hand tamp. Firmly tamp backfill around duct to provide maximum supporting strength. Use hand tamper only. After placing controlled backfill over final tier, make final duct connections at end of run and complete backfilling with normal compaction. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for installation of backfill materials.

    a. Place minimum of 3 inches (75 mm) of sand as a bed for duct and duct bank. Place sand to a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) above top level of duct and duct bank.

M. Underground-Line Warning Tape: Bury conducting underground-line warning tape specified in Section 270553 "Identification for Communication Systems" no less than 12 inches (300 mm) above all concrete-encased duct and duct bank and approximately 12 inches (300 mm) below grade. Align tape parallel to and within 3 inches (75 mm) of centerline of duct bank. Provide an additional warning tape for each 12-inch (300-mm) increment of duct-bank width over a nominal 18 inches (450 mm). Space additional tapes 12 inches (300 mm) apart, horizontally.

3.5 INSTALLATION OF HANDHOLES AND BOXES OTHER THAN PRECAST CONCRETE

A. Install handholes and boxes level and plumb and with orientation and depth coordinated with connecting duct, to minimize bends and deflections required for proper entrances. Use box extension if required to match depths of duct and duct bank, and seal joint between box and extension as recommended by manufacturer.

B. Unless otherwise indicated, support units on a level bed of crushed stone or gravel, graded from 1/2-inch (12.5-mm) sieve to No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve and compacted to same density as adjacent undisturbed earth.

C. Elevation: In paved areas and trafficways, set cover flush with finished grade. Set covers of other handholes 1 inch (25 mm) above finished grade.

D. Install handholes and boxes with bottom below frost line, 12 inch (300 mm) below grade.

E. Install removable hardware, including pulling eyes, cable stanchions, cable arms, and insulators, as required for installation and support of cables and conductors and as indicated. Select arm lengths to be long enough to provide spare space for future cables, but short enough to preserve adequate working clearances in enclosure.

F. Field cut openings for duct according to enclosure manufacturer's written instructions. Cut wall of enclosure with a tool designed for material to be cut. Size holes for terminating fittings to be used, and seal around penetrations after fittings are installed.

G. For enclosures installed in asphalt paving and concrete or paver stone sidewalks and subject to occasional, nondeliberate, heavy-vehicle loading, form and pour a concrete ring, encircling, and in contact with, enclosure, and with top surface screeded to top of box cover frame. Bottom of ring shall rest on compacted gravel.

   1. Concrete: 3000 psi (20 kPa), 28-day strength, complying with Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete," with a troweled finish.
   2. Dimensions: 10 inches wide by 12 inches deep.

3.6 GROUNDING

A. Ground underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures according to Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform the following tests and inspections and prepare test reports:

1. Demonstrate capability and compliance with requirements on completion of installation of underground duct, duct bank, and utility structures.
2. Pull solid aluminum or wood test mandrel through duct to prove joint integrity and adequate bend radii, and test for out-of-round duct. Provide a minimum 12-inch- (300-mm-) long mandrel equal to duct size minus 1/4 inch (6 mm). If obstructions are indicated, remove obstructions and retest.
3. Test manhole and handhole grounding to ensure electrical continuity of grounding and bonding connections. Measure and report ground resistance as specified in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Correct deficiencies and retest as specified above to demonstrate compliance.

3.8 CLEANING

A. Pull leather-washer-type duct cleaner, with graduated washer sizes, through full length of duct until duct cleaner indicates that duct is clear of dirt and debris.

B. Clean internal surfaces of manholes, including sump.

1. Sweep floor, removing dirt and debris.
2. Remove foreign material.

END OF SECTION 27 05 43

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 27 05 44 - SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR COMMUNICATIONS PATHWAYS AND CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 05 00 “Common Work Results for Communications.”

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

B. For small penetrations, firestop system shall be UL-listed for the condition on which it is installed, including wall/slab type (drywall, masonry, etc.), hour rating, and accessibility type. Putties, caulks, cementitious materials, or firestop grommets are acceptable for small penetrations.

2.2 SLEEVES

A. Wall Sleeves:

1. Steel Pipe Sleeves: ASTM A 53/A 53M, Type E, Grade B, Schedule 40, zinc coated, plain ends.
2. Cast-Iron Pipe Sleeves: Cast or fabricated "wall pipe," equivalent to ductile-iron pressure pipe, with plain ends and integral waterstop unless otherwise indicated.

B. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies: Galvanized-steel sheet; 0.0239-inch (0.6-mm) minimum thickness; round tube closed with welded longitudinal joint, with tabs for screw-fastening the sleeve to the board.

C. PVC-Pipe Sleeves: ASTM D 1785, Schedule 40 (if allowed by authority having jurisdiction).

D. Molded-PVC Sleeves: With nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms (if allowed by authority having jurisdiction).

E. Molded-PE or -PP Sleeves: Removable, tapered-cup shaped, and smooth outer surface with nailing flange for attaching to wooden forms.

F. Sleeves for Rectangular Openings:

1. Material: Galvanized-steel sheet.
2. Minimum Metal Thickness:

a. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter less than 50 inches (1270 mm) and with no side larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.052 inch (1.3 mm).
b. For sleeve cross-section rectangle perimeter 50 inches (1270 mm) or more and one or more sides larger than 16 inches (400 mm), thickness shall be 0.138 inch (3.5 mm).

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Description: Modular sealing device used for conduit penetrations in slabs-on-grade and below grade in exterior walls, designed for field assembly, to fill annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

a. Advance Products & Systems, Inc.
b. CALPICO, Inc.

c. Metraflex Company (The).
d. Pipeline Seal and Insulator, Inc.
e. Proco Products, Inc.

2. Sealing Elements: EPDM (or Nitrile [Buna N] if hydrocarbons are present in the soil) rubber interlocking links shaped to fit surface of pipe. Include type and number required for pipe material and size of pipe.
3. Pressure Plates: Stainless steel.
4. Connecting Bolts and Nuts: Stainless steel of length required to secure pressure plates to sealing elements.

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Description: Manufactured plastic, sleeve-type, waterstop assembly made for embedding in concrete slab or exterior wall. Unit shall have plastic or rubber waterstop collar with center opening to match penetrating piping OD.

1. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by Presealed Systems, or the equivalent product of another manufacturer.

2.5 GROUT

A. Description: Non-shrink; recommended for interior and exterior sealing openings in non-fire-rated walls or floors.

B. Standard: ASTM C 1107/C 1107M, Grade B, post-hardening and volume-adjusting, dry, hydraulic-cement grout.

C. Design Mix: 5000-psi (34.5-MPa), 28-day compressive strength.

D. Packaging: Premixed and factory packaged.

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. General: Where use of silicone sealants and silicone foams is permitted as an alternative to grout in sealing of conduit or cable penetrations in gypsum wallboard walls, conform to the following.

B. Silicone Sealants: Single-component, silicone-based, neutral-curing elastomeric sealants of grade indicated below.

1. Grade: Pourable (self-leveling) formulation for openings in floors and other horizontal surfaces that are not fire rated.

2. Sealant shall have VOC content of 250 g/L or less when calculated according to 40 CFR 59, Subpart D (EPA Method 24).

C. Silicone Foams: Multicomponent, silicone-based liquid elastomers that, when mixed, expand and cure in place to produce a flexible, non-shrinking foam.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with NEMA VE 2 for cable tray and cable penetrations.

C. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Above-Grade Non-Fire-Rated Concrete and Masonry-Unit Floors and Walls:

1. Interior Penetrations of Non-Fire-Rated Walls and Floors:

a. Seal annular space between sleeve and pathway or cable, using joint sealant appropriate for size, depth, and location of joint. Comply with requirements in Section 07 92 00 "Joint Sealants."
b. Seal space outside of sleeves with mortar or grout. Pack sealing material solidly between sleeve and wall so no voids remain. Tool exposed surfaces smooth; protect material while curing.

2. Use pipe sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
3. Size pipe sleeves to provide 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) annular clear space between sleeve and pathway or cable unless sleeve seal is to be installed.
4. Install sleeves for wall penetrations unless core-drilled holes or formed openings are used. Install sleeves during erection of walls. Cut sleeves to length for mounting flush with both surfaces of walls. Deburr after cutting.
5. Install sleeves for floor penetrations. Extend sleeves installed in floors 2 inches (50 mm) above finished floor level. Install sleeves during erection of floors.

D. Sleeves for Conduits Penetrating Non-Fire-Rated Gypsum Board Assemblies:

1. Use circular metal sleeves unless penetration arrangement requires rectangular sleeved opening.
2. Seal space outside of sleeves with approved joint compound for gypsum board assemblies.

E. Roof-Penetration Sleeves: Seal penetration of individual pathways and cables with flexible boot-type flashing units applied in coordination with roofing work.

F. Aboveground, Exterior-Wall Penetrations: Seal penetrations using steel pipe sleeves and mechanical sleeve seals. Select sleeve size to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pipe and sleeve for installing mechanical sleeve seals.

G. Underground, Exterior-Wall and Floor Penetrations: Install cast-iron pipe sleeves. Size sleeves to allow for 1-inch (25-mm) annular clear space between pathway or cable and sleeve for installing sleeve-seal system.

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal systems in sleeves in exterior concrete walls and slabs-on-grade at pathway entries into building (if any).

B. Install type and number of sealing elements recommended by manufacturer for pathway or cable material and size. Position pathway or cable in center of sleeve. Assemble mechanical sleeve seals and install in annular space between pathway or cable and sleeve. Tighten bolts against pressure plates that cause sealing elements to expand and make watertight seal.

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Install sleeve-seal fittings in new walls and slabs as they are constructed. Using grout, seal the space around outside of sleeve-seal fittings.

B. Assemble fitting components of length to be flush with both surfaces of concrete slabs and walls. Position waterstop flange to be centered in concrete slab or wall. Secure nailing flanges to concrete forms.

END OF SECTION 27 05 44

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 27 05 53 - IDENTIFICATION FOR COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Underground-line warning tape.
2. Signs.
3. Bands and tubes.
4. Cable ties.
5. Miscellaneous identification products.
6. Labels.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for communications identification products.

B. Samples: For each type of label and sign to illustrate composition, size, colors, lettering style, mounting provisions, and graphic features of identification products.

C. Identification Schedule:

1. Outlets: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
2. Backbone Cabling: Riser diagram showing each communications room, backbone cable, and proposed backbone cable designation.
3. Racks: Scaled drawings indicating location and proposed designation.
4. Patch Panels: Enlarged scaled drawings showing rack row, number, and proposed designations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Comply with NFPA 70 and ANSI/TIA 606-D.

B. Comply with ANSI Z535.4 for safety signs and labels.

C. Adhesive-attached labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers, shall comply with UL 969.

D. Thermal Movements: Allow for thermal movements from ambient and surface temperature changes.

1. Temperature Change: 120 deg F (67 deg C), ambient; 180 deg F (100 deg C), material surfaces.

2.2 COLOR AND LEGEND REQUIREMENTS

A. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Black letters on a white field.

2.3 LABELS

A. Vinyl Wraparound Labels: Preprinted, flexible labels laminated with a clear, weather- and chemical-resistant coating and matching wraparound clear adhesive tape for securing label ends.

B. Self-Adhesive Labels: Vinyl, thermal, transfer-printed, 3-mil- (0.08-mm-) thick, multicolor, weather- and UV-resistant, pressure-sensitive adhesive labels, configured for intended use and location.

1. Minimum Nominal Size:

a. 1-1/2 by 6 inches (37 by 150 mm) for raceway and conductors.
b. 3-1/2 by 5 inches (76 by 127 mm) for equipment.
c. As required by authorities having jurisdiction.

2.4 BANDS AND TUBES

A. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Slit, pretensioned, flexible, solid-colored acrylic sleeves, 2 inches (50 mm) long, with diameters sized to suit diameters of raceway or cable they identify, that stay in place by gripping action.

2.5 UNDERGROUND-LINE WARNING TAPE

A. Tape:

1. Recommended by manufacturer for the method of installation and suitable to identify and locate underground communications utility lines.
2. Printing on tape shall be permanent and shall not be damaged by burial operations.
3. Tape material and ink shall be chemically inert and not subject to degradation when exposed to acids, alkalis, and other destructive substances commonly found in soils.

B. Color and Printing:

1. Comply with ANSI Z535.1, ANSI Z535.2, ANSI Z535.3, and ANSI Z535.4.
2. Inscriptions for Orange-Colored Tapes: "TELEPHONE CABLE, CATV CABLE, COMMUNICATIONS CABLE, OPTICAL-FIBER CABLE".

C. Tag, Nonconducting Polyolefin: Type I:

1. Pigmented polyolefin, bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 4 mils (0.1 mm).
4. Weight: 18.5 lb/1000 sq. ft. (9.0 kg/100 sq. m).
5. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 30 lbf (133.4 N) and 2500 psi (17.2 MPa).

D. Tag, Nonconducting Multilayer Laminate: Type II:

1. Multilayer laminate, consisting of high-density polyethylene scrim coated with pigmented polyolefin; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility,]compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Thickness: 12 mils (0.3 mm).
4. Weight: 36.1 lb/1000 sq. ft. (17.6 kg/100 sq. m).
5. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 400 lbf (1780 N) and 11,500 psi (79.2 MPa).

E. Tag, Detectable: Type ID:

1. Detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented polyolefin film, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Overall Thickness: 5 mils (0.125 mm).
4. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).

5. Weight: 28 lb/1000 sq. ft. (13.7 kg/100 sq. m).
6. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 70 lbf (311.3 N) and 4600 psi (31.7 MPa).

F. Tag, Detectable, Reinforced: Type IID:

1. Reinforced, detectable three-layer laminate, consisting of a printed pigmented woven scrim, a solid aluminum-foil core, and a clear protective film that allows inspection of the continuity of the conductive core; bright-colored, continuous-printed on one side with the inscription of the utility, compounded for direct-burial service.
2. Width: 3 inches (75 mm).
3. Overall Thickness: 8 mils (0.2 mm).
4. Foil Core Thickness: 0.35 mil (0.00889 mm).
5. Weight: 34 lb/1000 sq. ft. (16.6 kg/100 sq. m).
6. Tensile according to ASTM D882: 300 lbf (1334 N) and 12,500 psi (86.1 MPa).

2.6 SIGNS

A. Baked-Enamel Signs:

1. Preprinted aluminum signs, high-intensity reflective, punched or drilled for fasteners, with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 7 by 10 inches (180 by 250 mm).

B. Metal-Backed Butyrate Signs:

1. Weather-resistant, nonfading, preprinted, cellulose-acetate butyrate signs, with 0.0396-inch (1-mm) galvanized-steel backing, punched and drilled for fasteners, and with colors, legend, and size required for application.
2. 1/4-inch (6.4-mm) grommets in corners for mounting.
3. Nominal Size: 10 by 14 inches (250 by 360 mm).

C. Laminated-Acrylic or Melamine-Plastic Signs:

1. Engraved legend.
2. Thickness:

    a. For signs up to 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), minimum 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.
    b. For signs larger than 20 sq. in. (129 sq. cm), 1/8 inch (3.2 mm) thick.

2.7 CABLE TIES

A. UV-Stabilized Cable Ties: Fungus inert, designed for continuous exposure to exterior sunlight, self-extinguishing, one piece, self-locking, and Type 6/6 nylon.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 12,000 psi (82.7 MPa).
3. Temperature Range: Minus 40 to plus 185 deg F (Minus 40 to plus 85 deg C).
4. Color: Black.

B. Plenum-Rated Cable Ties: Self-extinguishing, UV stabilized, one piece, and self-locking.

1. Minimum Width: 3/16 inch (5 mm).
2. Tensile Strength at 73 deg F (23 deg C) according to ASTM D638: 7000 psi (48.2 MPa).
3. UL 94 Flame Rating: 94V-0.
4. Temperature Range: Minus 50 to plus 284 deg F (Minus 46 to plus 140 deg C).
5. Color: Black.

2.8 MISCELLANEOUS IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Paint: Comply with requirements in painting Sections for paint materials and application requirements. Retain paint system applicable for surface material and location (exterior or interior).

B. Fasteners for Labels and Signs: Self-tapping, stainless-steel screws or stainless-steel machine screws with nuts and flat and lock washers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Self-Adhesive Identification Products: Before applying communications identification products, clean substrates of substances that could impair bond, using materials and methods recommended by manufacturer of identification product.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Verify and coordinate identification names, abbreviations, colors, and other features with requirements in other Sections requiring identification applications, Drawings, Shop Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual. Use consistent designations throughout Project.

B. Install identifying devices before installing acoustical ceilings and similar concealment.

C. Verify identity of each item before installing identification products.

D. Coordinate identification with Project Drawings, manufacturer's wiring diagrams, and operation and maintenance manual.

E. Apply identification devices to surfaces that require finish after completing finish work.

F. Install signs with approved legend to facilitate proper identification, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and connected items.

G. Elevated Components: Increase sizes of labels, signs, and letters to those appropriate for viewing from the floor.

H. Vinyl Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface of raceway or cable at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Attach labels that are not self-adhesive type with clear vinyl tape, with adhesive appropriate to the location and substrate.
3. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

I. Snap-Around Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

J. Self-Adhesive Wraparound Labels:

1. Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.
2. Provide label 6 inches (150 mm) from cable end.

K. Self-Adhesive Labels:

1. On each item, install unique designation label that is consistent with wiring diagrams, schedules, and operation and maintenance manual.
2. Unless otherwise indicated, provide a single line of text with 1/2-inch- (13-mm-) high letters on 1-1/2-inch- (38-mm-) high label; where two lines of text are required, use labels 2 inches (50 mm) high.

L. Snap-Around, Color-Coding Bands: Secure tight to surface at a location with high visibility and accessibility.

M. Underground-Line Warning Tape:

1. During backfilling of trenches, install continuous underground-line warning tape directly above cable or raceway at 6 to 8 inches (150 to 200 mm) below finished grade. Use multiple tapes where width of multiple lines installed in a common trench or concrete envelope exceeds 16 inches (400 mm) overall.
2. Limit use of underground-line warning tape to direct-buried cables.

3. Install underground-line warning tape for direct-buried cables and cables in raceways.

N. Cable Ties: General purpose, except as listed below:

1. Outdoors: UV-stabilized nylon.
2. In Spaces Handling Environmental Air: Plenum rated.

3.3 IDENTIFICATION SCHEDULE

A. Install identification materials and devices at locations for most convenient viewing without interference with operation and maintenance of equipment. Install access doors or panels to provide view of identifying devices.

B. Identify conductors, cables, and terminals in enclosures and at junctions, terminals, pull points, and locations with high visibility. Identify by system and circuit designation.

C. Accessible Fittings for Raceways and Cables within Buildings: Identify covers of each junction and pull box with self-adhesive labels containing wiring system legend.

1. System legends shall be as follows:

a. Telecommunications.

D. Faceplates: Label individual faceplates with self-adhesive labels. Place label at top of faceplate. Each faceplate shall be labeled with its individual, sequential designation, numbered clockwise when entering room from primary egress, composed of the following, in the order listed:

1. Wiring closet designation.
2. Colon.
3. Faceplate number.

E. Equipment Room Labeling:

1. Racks, Frames, and Enclosures: Identify front and rear of each with self-adhesive labels containing equipment designation.
2. Patch Panels: Label individual rows in each rack, starting at top and working down, with self-adhesive labels. Label individual rows and outlets, starting at to left and working down, with self-adhesive labels.
3. Data Outlets: Label each outlet with a self-adhesive label indicating the following, in the order listed:

a. Room number being served.
b. Colon.
c. Faceplate number.

F. Backbone Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label indicating the location of the far or other end of the backbone cable. Patch panel or punch down block where cable is terminated should be labeled identically.

G. Horizontal Cables: Label each cable with a vinyl-wraparound label indicating the following, in the order listed:

1. Room number.
2. Colon.
3. Faceplate number.

H. Locations of Underground Lines: Underground-line warning tape for copper, coaxial, hybrid copper/fiber, and optical-fiber cable.

I. Instructional Signs: Self-adhesive labels.

J. Warning Labels for Indoor Cabinets, Boxes, and Enclosures: Self-adhesive labels.

1. Apply to exterior of door, cover, or other access.

K. Equipment Identification Labels:

1. Indoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign.
2. Outdoor Equipment: Laminated-acrylic or melamine-plastic sign Stenciled legend 4 inches (100 mm) high.
3. Equipment to Be Labeled:

a. Communications cabinets.
b. Uninterruptible power supplies.
c. Computer room air conditioners.
d. Fire-alarm and suppression equipment.
e. Egress points.
f. Power distribution components.

END OF SECTION 27 05 53

SECTION 27 11 00 - COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT ROOM FITTINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Telecommunications mounting elements.
2. Backboards.
3. Telecommunications equipment racks and cabinets.
4. Power strips.
5. Network switch.
6. Wireless Fidelity (Wi-Fi)
7. Surge Protection.
8. Telephone System
9. Uninterruptible Power Supply.
10. Wall-mounted Video Displays.
11. Grounding.
12. Labeling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 05 00 "Common Work Results for Communications".
2. Section 27 05 36 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems" for cable trays and accessories.
3. Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.
4. Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Communications Equipment Room: Is synonymous with Telecom or IDF Room.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

D. IDF: Intermediate distribution frame.

E. LAN: Local area network.

F. LCD: Liquid-crystal display.

G. LED: Light-emitting diode.

H. TDMM: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1. Include construction details, material descriptions, dimensions of individual components and profiles, and finishes for equipment racks and cabinets.
2. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, electrical characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories.

B. Shop Drawings: For communications equipment room fittings. Include plans, elevations, sections, details, and attachments to other work.

1. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, loads, required clearances, method of field assembly, components, and location and size of each field connection.
2. Equipment Racks and Cabinets: Include workspace requirements and access for cable connections.
3. Grounding: Indicate location of grounding bus bar and its mounting detail showing standoff insulators and wall mounting brackets.
4. UPS:

    a. Detail equipment assemblies and indicate dimensions, weights, components, and location and identification of each field connection.
    b. Show access, workspace, and clearance requirements; details of control panels; and battery arrangement.
    c. Include wiring diagrams for power, signal, and control wiring.
    d. Provide documentation of correct UPS size selection in the form of spreadsheet analysis listing all equipment loads (including in-rush currents) on each UPS unit according to manufacturers' data sheets for each device. Load calculations shall clearly demonstrate that the proposed UPS sizes will be adequate to support all critical devices at full load plus 50% spare capacity.
    e. Provide recharge time for each set of batteries.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector. Refer to Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit project closeout submittals within 30 days of Substantial Completion.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For UPS units to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.
2. Field Inspector: Currently registered by BICSI as Commercial Installer, Level 2 to perform the on-site inspection.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 BACKBOARDS

A. Backboards: Plywood, fire-retardant treated, all imperfections and voids shall be filled, sealed and sanded prior to being painted with two coats of white fire-retardant paint, ¾-inch thick by 48-inch high and shall cover walls as shown on the drawings. Fire retardant coating shall be tested to UL 723. Install horizontally 6 inches above floor with smooth side facing outward using hardware and anchors with a combined pullout force of at least 500 lbs. Butt adjacent sheets tightly, and form smooth gap-free corners and joints. Backboards shall be clearly labeled with the name of the Backboard Manufacturer, UL Classification of the Fire Retardant Coating, NFPA 255 Coating Flame Spread Index Class and the APA grade of plywood. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 00 "Common Work Results for Communications" for plywood backing panels.

2.3 19-INCH EQUIPMENT RACKS

E. Description: Two-post racks with threaded rails designed for mounting telecommunications equipment. Width is compatible with ECIA 310-E, 19-inch (482.6-mm) equipment mounting with an opening of 17.72-inches (450-mm) between rails.

F. General Requirements:

1. Frames: Modular units designed for telecommunications terminal support and coordinated with dimensions of units to be supported.
2. Material: Sheet steel.
3. Finish: Manufacturer's standard, baked-polyester powder coat.
4. Color: Black.

G. Floor-Mounted Racks:

1. Overall Height: 84 inches (2133.6 mm).
2. Overall Depth: 23 inches (584.2 mm).
3. Upright Depth: 6 inches (152.4 mm).
4. Two-Post Load Rating: 400 lb (181 kg).
5. Number of Rack Units per Rack: 45.
    a. Numbering: Every five rack units, on interior of rack.
6. Threads: 10-32.
7. Vertical and horizontal cable management channels, top and bottom cable troughs, grounding lug, and a power strip.
8. Base shall have a minimum of four mounting holes for permanent attachment to floor.
9. Top shall have provisions for attaching to cable tray or ceiling.
10. Self-leveling.

H. Wall-Mounted Racks:

1. Height: As indicated on Drawings.
2. Depth: 29 inches (736.6 mm).
3. Load Rating: 200 lb (91 kg).
4. Number of Rack Units per Rack: As indicated on Drawings.
5. Threads: 10-32.
6. Wall Attachment: Four mounting holes.
7. Equipment Access: Integral swing.

I. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.

3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front and rear channels, with covers.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

2.4 EQUIPMENT FRAMES

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Chatsworth Products (CPI)
2. Middle Atlantic Products, Inc.

B. Modular Wall Swing Rack:

1. Wall mounting.
2. Steel or aluminum construction.
3. Treated to resist corrosion.
4. Power strip.

C. Cable Management:

1. Metal, with integral wire retaining fingers.
2. Baked-polyester powder coat finish.
3. Vertical cable management panels shall have front channel, with cover.
4. Provide horizontal crossover cable manager at the top of each relay rack, with a minimum height of two rack units each.

D. Rack Mounted Shelf:

1. Metal, with baked-polyester powder coat finish.

2.5 POWER STRIPS

A. Power Strips: Comply with UL 1363.

1. Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.
2. All-metal construction with detachable mounting flanges for rackmount in one rack space (1U) in standard 19-inch rack
3. Twelve NEMA5-20R output receptacles (6 front/6 rear)
4. 15-ft. (4.57 m) AC cord NEMA5-20P plug connection.
5. Illuminated power switch confirms power on/off status with Snap-in switch guard to prevent accidental turn off.
6. 120V AC, 50/60Hz - 20 amp electrical capacity with circuit breaker

2.6 NETWORK SWITCH

A. Network Switch: The Owner shall furnish and configure all network switches for the project. Contractor shall install all switches as coordinated with the Owner's IT representative. Contractor shall closely coordinate all work and system configuration requirements with the Owner's IT Representatives for a fully functional system.

2.7 WIRELESS FIDELITY

E. General: The Contractor shall furnish and install wireless access points models as indicated below to match existing equipment and as coordinated with the Owner's IT representative. Contractor shall provide the latest generation of the model indicated. Configuration of all equipment shall be completed by the Owner's IT representative and turned over to the Contractor for installation.

F. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following to match existing:

1. Ubiquiti Networks.

G. Interior Ceiling Mounted Access Point: Ubiquiti model U6-MESH, 802.11ac Wave Access Point U6 Mesh. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3at+. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including ceiling mount bracket.

H. Exterior Pole Mounted Access Point: Ubiquiti model UAP-AC-HD, 802.11ac Wi-Fi Access Point. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3at+. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings. WAP shall be installed within modular section of pole, coordinate with security pole provider. Provide all hardware and connections required.

2.8 SURGE PROTECTION

E. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Rack Mounted: Surge protectors with interchangeable modules (DTK-NETMS or DTK EXTMS), meeting UL497B to protect power, video, and data circuits that use PoE connections.
2. Equipment: Installed at the end device or ahead of midspan devices, Model DTK-MRJPOE, as manufactured by Ditek (or approved equal), meeting UL497B to protect power, video, and data circuits that use PoE connections.

2.9 TELEPHONE SYSTEM

A. System Description: The telephone system shall be an extension of the Owner's voice-over IP (VoIP) system. The system hardware, handsets, software, and service shall be provided by Owner as coordinated with the Contractor. The Contractor shall provide all cabling, patch cords, connections, and terminations.

2.10 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:

1. Tripp Lite (Eaton).

B. Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS): Smart-UPS following features:

1. Power conditioning.
2. Automatic self-test.
3. Rectifier-charger.
4. Inverter.
5. Bypass mode.
6. Battery and battery disconnect.
7. Remote UPS monitoring via Network Card.

C. Automatic Operation:

1. Normal Conditions: Load is supplied with power flowing from the normal power input terminals, through the rectifier-charger and inverter, with the battery connected in parallel with the rectifier-charger output.
2. Abnormal Supply Conditions: If normal supply deviates from specified and adjustable voltage, voltage waveform, or frequency limits, the battery supplies energy to maintain constant, regulated inverter power output to the load without switching or disturbance.
3. If normal power fails, energy supplied by the battery through the inverter continues supply-regulated power to the load without switching or disturbance.
4. When power is restored at the normal supply terminals of the system, controls automatically synchronize the inverter with the external source before transferring the load. The rectifier-charger then supplies power to the load through the inverter and simultaneously recharges the battery.
5. If the battery becomes discharged and normal supply is available, the rectifier-charger charges the battery. On reaching full charge, the rectifier-charger automatically shifts to float-charge mode.

6. If any element of the UPS system fails and power is available at the normal supply terminals of the system, the static bypass transfer switch switches the load to the normal ac supply circuit without disturbance or interruption.
7. If a fault occurs in the system supplied by the UPS, and current flows in excess of the overload rating of the UPS system, the static bypass transfer switch operates to bypass the fault current to the normal ac supply circuit for fault clearing.
8. When the fault has cleared, the static bypass transfer switch returns the load to the UPS system.
9. If the battery is disconnected, the UPS continues to supply power to the load with no degradation of its regulation of voltage and frequency of the output bus.

D. Environmental Conditions: The UPS shall be capable of operating continuously in the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability, except battery performance.

1. Ambient Temperature for Electronic Components: 32 to 104 deg F (0 to 40 deg C).
2. Ambient Temperature for Battery: 41 to 95 deg F (5 to 35 deg C).
3. Relative Humidity: 0 to 95 percent, noncondensing.
4. Altitude: Sea level to 10000 feet (3048 m).

E. Performance Requirements: The UPS shall perform as specified in this article while supplying rated full-load current, composed of any combination of linear and nonlinear load, up to 100 percent nonlinear load with a load crest factor of 3.0, under the following conditions or combinations of the following conditions:

1. Inverter is switched to battery source.
2. Steady-state ac input voltage deviates up to plus or minus 10 percent from nominal voltage.
3. Steady-state input frequency deviates up to plus or minus 5 percent from nominal frequency.
4. THD of input voltage is 15 percent or more with a minimum crest factor of 3.0, and the largest single harmonic component is a minimum of 5 percent of the fundamental value.
5. Load is 30 percent unbalanced continuously.

F. Minimum Duration of Supply: If battery is sole energy source supplying rated full UPS load current at 80 percent power factor, duration of supply is 20 minutes.

G. Input Voltage Tolerance: System steady-state and transient output performance remains within specified tolerances when steady-state ac input voltage varies plus 10, minus 20 percent from nominal voltage.

H. Overall UPS Efficiency: Equal to or greater than 94 percent at 100 percent load, 93 percent at 75 percent load, and 92 percent at 50 percent load.

I. EMI Emissions: Comply with FCC Rules and Regulations and with 47 CFR 15 for Class A equipment.

J. Battery: Lithium-Ion (Li-Ion) battery units; factory assembled in a separate matching rack mount cabinet, complete with battery disconnect switch.

K. Controls and Indications: Group displays, indications, and basic system controls on a common control panel on front of UPS enclosure with plain-language messages on a digital LCD or LED. Alarms include audible signals and visual displays.

1. Indications shall include the following:
   a. On line.
   b. On battery
   c. Load Graph
   d. Battery charge graph
   e. Audible Alarm
   f. Input & output voltage.
   g. Load (watts, VA, and percentage).
   h. Estimated battery runtime.

L. Remote Monitoring: Connectors and network interface units for data transmission via SmartSlot or other communications link for the remote indication of the following conditions:

1. UPS on battery.
2. UPS on-line.
3. UPS load-on bypass.
4. UPS in alarm condition.
5. UPS off (maintenance bypass closed).

M. Emergency Power Off Switch: Capable of local operation and operation by means of activation by external dry contacts

2.11 WALL-MOUNTED VIDEO DISPLAYS

A. The following wall-mounted video display types planned for this project shall be provisioned with LED Flat Screen units:

1. Wall-mounted exterior rated information displays in Bus Shelters.
2. Wall-Mounted interior Fight Information Display System (FIDS)/Advertising monitors.

B. Wall-mounted exterior-rated information displays in Bus Shelters shall be 40 inch **commercial displays**, LED backlit LCD video screens meeting the following minimum

specifications:

1. Viewable image size: 40 inches minimum.
2. Native Resolution: 3840 x 2160.
3. Brightness: 500 cd/m2 Minimum
4. Contrast Ratio: ≥4000:1.
5. Viewing angle: 178° vertical and horizontal.
6. Aspect Ratio: 16:9.
7. Response Time: 8ms.
8. Operation Hour: **24/7.**
9. Refresh Rate: 60Hz.
10. Four (4) HDMI 2.1 Inputs.
11. Three (3) USB 2.0 Inputs.
12. One (1) Ethernet Port.
13. Built-in speakers.
14. Audio output (Stereo mini Jack).
15. Warranty: 2-years
16. Environmentally rated for outdoor use.

C. Wall-mounted interior-rated information displays for FIDS/Advertising shall be 40 to 48 inch **commercial displays**, LED backlit LCD video screens meeting the following minimum specifications:

17. Viewable image size: 40 inches minimum.
18. Native Resolution: 3840 x 2160.
19. Brightness: 500 cd/m2 Minimum
20. Contrast Ratio: ≥4000:1.
21. Viewing angle: 178° vertical and horizontal.
22. Aspect Ratio: 16:9.
23. Response Time: 8ms.
24. Operation Hour: **24/7.**
25. Refresh Rate: 60Hz.
26. Four (4) HDMI 2.1 Inputs.
27. Three (3) USB 2.0 Inputs.
28. One (1) Ethernet Port.
29. Built-in speakers.
30. Audio output (Stereo mini Jack).
31. Warranty: 2-years
32. Environmentally rated for indoor use.

F. The Contractor shall coordinate with millwork, power, and communication trades to assure proper fit and functionality of the display equipment, which includes, but is not limited to:

1. Proper structural mounting of video display.
2. Proper power interface.
3. Proper communication interface.

G. Video displays shall be provided with the following accessories:

1. VESA compliant flat screen display tilt mounting brackets, Single screen mount attachments as indicated in the Project Drawings.
2. Wall-mount and structural support as indicated on the drawings.
3. CAT 6 Patch cables.
4. Power cords.

2.12 MOUNTS AND ACCESSORIES

1. Provide adjustable VESA 200 x 400mm pattern compliant mounts for all displays that meet the following criteria:
   a. Orientation: Portrait.
   b. Extension: Up to 10.7”.
   c. Stud Pattern: 16”.
   d. Max Weight: 150 LBS.
   e. Plumb Adjustment: to 2.5 Deg.
   f. Design Selection: Chief Manufacturing LSMVPU, or approved equal as required for the field conditions.

2.13 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Telecommunications Main Bus Bar:

1. Connectors: Mechanical type, cast silicon bronze, solderless compression-type wire terminals, and long-barrel, two-bolt connection to ground bus bar.
2. Ground Bus Bar: Copper, minimum 1/4 inch thick by 4 inches wide (6 mm thick by 100 mm wide) with 9/32-inch (7.14-mm) holes spaced 1-1/8 inches (28 mm) apart.
3. Stand-Off Insulators: Comply with UL 891 for use in switchboards, 600 V. Lexan or PVC, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.14 LABELING

A. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-D and UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Contact telecommunications service provider(s) and arrange for installation of demarcation point, protected entrance terminals, and housing when so directed by service provider.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for materials and installation requirements for underground, buried or aerial pathways.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM for layout and installation of communications equipment rooms.

C. Bundle, lace, and train conductors and cables to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Coordinate layout and installation of communications equipment with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers. Coordinate service entrance arrangement with local exchange carrier.

1. Meet jointly with telecommunications and LAN equipment suppliers, local exchange carrier representatives, and Owner to exchange information and agree on details of equipment arrangements and installation interfaces.
2. Record agreements reached in meetings and distribute them to other participants.
3. Adjust arrangements and locations of distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels in equipment rooms to accommodate and optimize arrangement and space requirements of telephone switch and LAN equipment.
4. Adjust arrangements and locations of equipment with distribution frames, cross-connects, and patch panels of cabling systems of other communications, electronic safety and security, and related systems that share space in the IDF room.
5. All racks shall be installed and leveled and plumbed. Four post racks and two post racks shall be anchored to the floor and shall be installed with isolation pads.

Equipment cabinets shall be leveled using the leveling feet unless design drawings specifically indicate to leave them on casters.

6. A minimum of 3 ft. of clearance in front of racks shall be provided but a 4 ft. clearance is preferred. A minimum of 2 ft. of rear clearance shall be provided but a clearance of 3 ft. is preferred.
7. Racks and cabinets should preferably be no taller than 7ft. for easier access to the equipment or connecting hardware installed at the top. Where floor is limited, taller racks and cabinets may be used if allowed by Authority having jurisdiction.

E. Coordinate location of power raceways and receptacles with locations of communications equipment requiring electrical power to operate.

3.3 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

C. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

1. Bond the shield of shielded cable to the grounding bus bar in communications rooms and spaces.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with ANSI/TIA-606-D.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting backboards. For fire-resistant plywood, do not paint over manufacturer's label.

C. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type (See Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for additional identification requirements).

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL FOR UPS

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Comply with manufacturer's written instructions.
2. Inspect interiors of enclosures, including the following:

    a. Integrity of mechanical and electrical connections.
    b. Component type and labeling verification.
    c. Ratings of installed components.

3. Test manual and automatic operational features and system protective and alarm functions.
4. Test communication of status and alarms to remote monitoring equipment.
5. The UPS system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. See Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements and Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for directions for correcting the Work.

B. Record of Tests and Inspections: Maintain and submit documentation of tests and inspections, including references to manufacturers' written instructions and other test and inspection criteria. Include results of tests, inspections, and retests.

C. Reports: Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval

D. Contractor shall provide a warranty of their work for a period of 1-year from the date of Final Acceptance by the Owner..

END OF SECTION 27 11 00

SECTION 27 13 00 - COMMUNICATIONS BACKBONE CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Pathways.
2. UTP cabling.
3. Optical fiber cabling.
4. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
5. Identification products.

B. Related Sections:

1. Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”
2. Section 27 05 36 “Cable Trays for Communications Systems.”
3. Section 27 11 00 “Communications Equipment Room Fittings.”
4. Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling.”
5. Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security.”
6. Section 28 05 28 “Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security.”

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

C. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

D. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

E. LAN: Local area network.

F. NRTL: Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

G. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

H. TDMM: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.

I. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit closeout submittals within 30 days of substantial completion.

B. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

C. Surface-Burning Characteristics: As determined by testing identical products according to ASTM E 84 by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable NRTL.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

D. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

E. Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces: Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E.

F. Grounding: Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test optical fiber cable while on reels. Use an optical time domain reflectometer to verify the cable length and locate cable defects, splices, and connector, including the loss value of each. Retain test data and include the record in maintenance data.
2. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 “Product Requirements."

2.2 BACKBONE CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. Backbone cabling system shall provide interconnections between communications equipment rooms, main terminal space, and entrance facilities in the telecommunications cabling system structure. Cabling system consists of backbone cables, intermediate and main cross-connects, mechanical terminations, and patch cords or jumpers used for backbone-to-backbone cross-connection.

B. Backbone cabling cross-connects may be located in communications equipment rooms or at entrance facilities. Bridged taps and splitters shall not be used as part of backbone cabling.

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Backbone cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in ANSI/TIA-568.1-E, when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

2.4 PATHWAYS

A. General Requirements: Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E and Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

B. Cable Support: NRTL labeled for support of Category 3 cabling, designed to prevent degradation of cable performance and pinch points that could damage cable.

1. Support brackets with cable tie slots for fastening cable ties to brackets.
2. Lacing bars, spools, J-hooks, and D-rings.
3. Straps and other devices.

C. Cable Trays: Refer to Section 27 05 36 “Cable Trays for Communications Systems” for cable tray requirements.

D. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems." Flexible metal conduit shall not be used.

1. Outlet boxes shall be no smaller than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

2.5 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. Draka Cableteq USA.
6. General Cable.
7. Mohawk, a division of Belden CDT.
8. Panduit.
9. Siemon.
10. Superior Essex Inc.

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, Category 3 formed into 25-pair, binder groups covered with a black thermoplastic jacket.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E and ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
3. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.

2.6 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Dynacom Inc.
5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
6. Leviton Commercial Networks Division.
7. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
8. Panduit Corp.
9. Siemon Co. (The).

B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 3. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

D. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

E. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each assigned pair UTP cable indicated.

F. Patch Cords: Provide one (1) factory-made, 4-pair cable in 48-inch (1200-mm) or 144-inch (3650-mm) lengths as necessary; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end, for each termination in the communications rooms.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

2.7 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by one of the following:
   1. Belden CDT Network Division.
   2. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
   3. CommScope, Inc.
   4. Corning Cable Systems.
   5. Panduit.
   6. Siemon.
   7. Superior Essex Inc.

B. Type OFNR, Designation OS2, Inside-Outside Plant, Single-Mode Optical Fiber Cable.
   1. Source Limitations: Obtain products from single manufacturer.
   2. Additional Characteristics:
      a. Construction: ANSI/TIA-492CAAB; 9 µm core diameter, 125 µm cladding diameter, with low water peak.
      b. Minimum Overfilled Modal Bandwidth-Length Product: 500 MHz-km at 850 nm wavelength; 500 MHz-km at 1300 nm wavelength.
   3. Options:
      a. Maximum Attenuation: 0.5 dB/km at 1310 nm wavelength; 0.5 dB/km 1550 nm wavelength.
      b. Jacket Color: Black or Yellow.

C. Jacket:
   1. Regulatory Requirements: Listed and labeled in accordance with NFPA 70, by qualified electrical testing laboratory recognized by authorities having jurisdiction, and marked for intended location and application.
   2. Listing Criteria: UL CCN QAYK; including UL 1651.
   3. General Characteristics:
      a. Performance: ANSI/TIA-568.3-E.
      b. Inside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-83-596.
      c. Inside-Outside Plant Mechanical Properties: ICEA S-104-696.
      d. Jacket:
         1) Cable cordage jacket, fiber, unit, and group color in accordance with ANSI/TIA-598-D.
         2) Imprinted with fiber count, fiber type, and aggregate length at regular intervals not to exceed 40 inch (1 m).
   4. Low smoke zero halogen (LSZH).

2.8 OPTICAL FIBER CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
4. Corning Cable Systems.
5. Dynacom Corporation.
6. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
7. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
8. Nordex/CDT; a subsidiary of Cable Design Technologies.
9. Optical Connectivity Solutions Division; Emerson Network Power.
10. Siemon Co. (The).

B. Cross-Connects and Patch Panels: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered, duplex cable connectors.

1. Number of Connectors per Field: One for each fiber of cable or cables assigned to field, plus spares and blank positions adequate to suit specified expansion criteria.

C. Patch Cords: Factory-made, dual-fiber cables in 36-inch (900-mm) lengths.

D. Jumpers: For every paired fiber termination point, provide one (1) 23-feet (7-meter) SC/LC jumper.

E. Cable Connecting Hardware:

1. Comply with Optical Fiber Connector Intermateability Standards (FOCIS) specifications of ANSI/TIA-604-10-C. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-E.
2. Quick-connect, duplex, Type LC. Insertion loss not more than 0.75 dB.

2.9 GROUNDING

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test cables on reels according to ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.

D. Factory test multimode optical fiber cables according to ANSI/TIA-526-14-D and single mode according to ANSI/TIA-526-7-A and all fiber cable according to ANSI/TIA-568.3-E. See Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work

E. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Install cables in raceways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements for raceways and boxes specified in Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
3. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures:
1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Cable Trays: Comply with NEMA VE 2 and ANSI/TIA-569-E. Refer to Section 27 05 36 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."

B. Comply with requirements for demarcation point, pathways, cabinets, and racks specified in Section 27 11 00 "Communications Equipment Room Fittings." Drawings indicate general arrangement of pathways and fittings.

C. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E for pull-box sizing and length of conduit and number of bends between pull points.

D. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems" for installation of conduits and wireways.

E. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

F. Install indoor fiber optic cabling within corrugated innerduct. Refer to Section 28 05 28 “Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security” for innerduct specifications.

G. Pathway Installation in Communications Equipment Rooms:

1. Position conduit ends adjacent to a corner on backboard where a single piece of plywood is installed, or in the corner of room where multiple sheets of plywood are installed around perimeter walls of room.
2. Install cable trays to route cables if conduits cannot be located in these positions.
3. Secure conduits to backboard when entering room from overhead.
4. Extend conduits 3 inches (76 mm) above finished floor.
5. Install metal conduits with grounding bushings and connect with grounding conductor to grounding system.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated
4. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
5. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
6. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
7. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in

BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Use lacing bars and distribution spools.

8. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
9. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before de-reeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
10. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot (3-m) -long service loop on each end of cable.
11. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Optical Fiber Cable Installation:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.3-E.
2. Cable may be terminated on connecting hardware that is rack or cabinet mounted.
3. Fusion splices are not allowed.
4. Comply with Section 28 05 28 “Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security.”

E. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.
3. Group connecting hardware for cables into separate logical fields.

F. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and ANSI/TIA-569-E for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

3.4 FIRESTOPPING

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-569-E, Annex A "Firestopping."

C. Comply with BICSI TDMM "Firestopping Systems" Article.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with the requirements of Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

B. Comply with BICSI TDMM "Grounding, Bonding and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

C. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

D. Locate grounding bus bar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch clearance behind the grounding bus bar. Connect grounding bus bar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding bus bar to suitable electrical building ground.

E. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding bus bar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with requirements in Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling."

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP and optical fiber jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.2-D. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

4. Optical Fiber Cable Tests:

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.3-E. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

b. Link End-to-End Attenuation Tests:

1) Horizontal multimode/single mode backbone link measurements: Test at 850/1310 or 1300/1550 nm in one direction according to ANSI/TIA-526-14-D/7-A, Method B, One Reference Jumper.
2) Attenuation test results for backbone links shall be less than 2.0 dB. Attenuation test results shall be less than that calculated according to equation in ANSI/TIA-568.3-E.

C. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

D. Remove and replace cabling where test results indicate that they do not comply with specified requirements. See Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and reinspecting requirements and Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for requirements for correcting the Work.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

3.8 WARRANTY

A. A twenty (25) year warranty available for the structured cabling system (Fiber Optics and Copper infrastructure) shall be provided for an end to end channel installation which covers application assurance, cable, connecting hardware and the labor cost for the repair or replacement thereof.

B. Provide Warranty Certificate issued by the manufacturer of the backbone infrastructure.

C. Contractor shall provide a warranty of their work for a period of 1-year from the date of Final Acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 27 13 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 27 15 00 - COMMUNICATIONS HORIZONTAL CABLING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. GAMECHANGER UTP cabling
3. Cable connecting hardware, patch panels, and cross-connects.
4. Telecommunications outlet/connectors.
5. Grounding.
6. Identification products.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”
2. Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for voice and data cabling associated with system panels and devices.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. Consolidation Point: A location for interconnection between horizontal cables extending from building pathways and horizontal cables extending into furniture pathways.

C. Cross-Connect: A facility enabling the termination of cable elements and their interconnection or cross-connection.

D. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

E. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

F. LAN: Local area network.

G. MUTOA: Multiuser telecommunications outlet assembly, a grouping in one location of several telecommunications outlet/connectors.

H. NRTL: Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

I. Outlet/Connectors: A connecting device in the work area on which horizontal cable or outlet cable terminates.

J. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

K. TDMM: Telecommunications Distribution Methods Manual.

L. UTP: Unshielded twisted pair.

1.4 ADMINISTRATIVE REQUIREMENTS

A. Coordinate layout and installation of telecommunications cabling with Owner's telecommunications and LAN equipment and service suppliers.

B. Coordinate telecommunications outlet/connector locations with location of power receptacles at each work area.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit Closeout Submittals within 30 days of substantial completion.

B. Maintenance Data: For splices and connectors to include in maintenance manuals.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Cabling Installer must have personnel certified by BICSI on staff.

1. Installation Supervision: Installation shall be under the direct supervision of Level 2 Installer, who shall be present at all times when Work of this Section is performed at Project site.

B. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

1.9 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site in accordance with BICSI ITSIM.

1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 HORIZONTAL CABLING DESCRIPTION

A. General: Horizontal cable and its connecting hardware provide the means of transporting signals between the telecommunications outlet/connector and the horizontal cross-connect located in the communications equipment room. This cabling and its connecting hardware are called a "permanent link," a term that is used in the testing protocols.

1. ANSI/TIA-568.1-E requires that a minimum of two telecommunications outlet/connectors be installed for each work area.
2. Horizontal cabling shall contain no more than one transition point or consolidation point between the horizontal cross-connect and the telecommunications outlet/connector.
3. Bridged taps and splices shall not be installed in the horizontal cabling.
4. Splitters shall not be installed as part of the optical fiber cabling.

B. Work Area: A work area is approximately 100 sq. ft. (9.3 sq. m), and includes the components that extend from the telecommunications outlet/connectors to the station equipment.

C. Distance Limitations: The maximum allowable horizontal cable length is 295 feet (90 m). This maximum allowable length does not include an allowance for the length of 16 feet (4.9 m) to the workstation equipment or in the horizontal cross-connect.

D. Station Cabling: Station cabling between communications rooms and outlets shall be 4-pair, plenum rated and conform to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D Category 6 requirements. For each data drop terminated, provide one (1) 6-feet and one (1) 15-feet long Category 6 connector cables. Outer jackets shall be:

1. Data - Blue
2. WIFI - Yellow
3. UPS – Orange

2.3 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. General Performance: Horizontal cabling system shall comply with transmission standards in ANSI/TIA-568.1-E when tested according to test procedures of this standard.

B. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified testing agency. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable testing agency.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Grounding: Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.4 UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. Belden Inc.
3. Berk-Tek; a Nexans company.
4. CommScope, Inc.
5. Draka Cableteq USA.
6. Panduit.
7. Siemon.
8. Superior Essex Inc.

B. Description: 100-ohm, four-pair UTP, Category 6, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket for data and voice.

1. Comply with ICEA S-90-661 for mechanical properties.
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E for performance specifications.
3. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D for Category 6.
4. Listed and labeled by an NRTL acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction as complying with UL 444 and NFPA 70 for the following types:

a. Communications, Plenum Rated: Type CMP, complying with NFPA 262.

2.5 GAMECHANGER UTP CABLE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal) where specifically indicated on Drawings:

1. Paige Datacom Solutions.

B. Description: four-pair UTP, indoor/outdoor plenum-rated Category 6, covered with a blue thermoplastic jacket for video.

1. Cable shall deliver 2.5Gbps and 100W PoE at up to 656 feet (200m) or 10Mbps and 100W PoE at up to 850 feet (259m).
2. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D for Category 6.
3. Cables shall have 22 AWG solid bare copper conductors. Follow manufacturer's guidelines for terminating cable, provide all jacks or patch panels required for Cat6 connectivity. **If using a RJ45 connector, refer to manufacturer's termination guide**.

2.6 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. Belden Inc.
4. Dynacom Inc.
5. Hubbell Premise Wiring.
6. Leviton Commercial Networks Division.
7. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
8. Panduit Corp.
9. Siemon Co. (The).

B. General Requirements for Cable Connecting Hardware: Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D, IDC type, with modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style IDC for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

D. Cross-Connect: Modular array of connecting blocks arranged to terminate building cables and permit interconnection between cables.

1. Number of Terminals per Field: One for each conductor in assigned cables.

E. Patch Panel: Modular panels housing multiple-numbered jack units with IDC-type connectors at each jack for permanent termination of pair groups of installed cables.

1. Number of Jacks per Field: One for each four-pair UTP cable indicated.

F. Jacks and Jack Assemblies: Modular, color-coded (blue for data and voice), eight-position modular receptacle units with integral IDC-type terminals with ANSI/TIA-T568B wiring.

G. Patch Cords: Provide one (1) factory-made, 4-pair cable in 48-inch (1200-mm) or 144-inch (3650-mm) lengths as necessary; terminated with eight-position modular plug at each end, for each termination in the communications rooms.

1. Patch cords shall have bend-relief-compliant boots and color-coded icons to ensure Category 6 performance. Patch cords shall have latch guards to protect against snagging.

2.7 TELECOMMUNICATIONS OUTLET/CONNECTORS

A. Jacks: 100-ohm, balanced, twisted-pair connector comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.

B. Workstation Outlets: Quantity of port-connector assemblies mounted in single or multigang faceplate as shown on the Drawings.

1. Plastic Faceplate: High-impact plastic. Coordinate color with Section 26 27 26 "Wiring Devices."
2. For use with snap-in jacks accommodating any combination of UTP, optical fiber, and work area cords.

a. Flush mounting jacks.

3. Legend: Snap-in, clear-label covers and machine-printed paper inserts.

2.8 GROUNDING

A. Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electrical Systems" for grounding conductors and connectors.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.9 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Brady Worldwide, Inc.
2. HellermannTyton North America.
3. Kroy LLC.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-606-D and UL 969 for labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.10 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP cables according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.

C. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 ENTRANCE FACILITIES

A. Coordinate cabling with the protectors and demarcation point provided by communications service provider.

3.2 WIRING METHODS

A. Install cables in pathways and cable trays except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal pathways and cables except in unfinished spaces.

1. Install plenum cable in environmental air spaces, including plenum ceilings.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems."
3. Comply with requirements in Section 27 05 36 "Cable Trays for Communications Systems."

B. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

C. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Install 110-style IDC termination hardware unless otherwise indicated.
4. Consolidation points may be used only for making a direct connection to telecommunications outlet/connectors:

    a. Do not use consolidation point as a cross-connect point, as a patch connection, or for direct connection to workstation equipment.
    b. Locate consolidation points for UTP at least 49 feet (15 m) from communications equipment room.

5. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, cross-connects, and patch panels.
6. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
7. Install lacing bars to restrain cables, to prevent straining connections, and to prevent bending cables to smaller radii than minimums recommended by manufacturer.
8. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.

9. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
10. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before de-reeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
11. In the communications equipment room, install a 10-foot (3-m) long service loop on each end of horizontal cable.
12. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

C. UTP Cable Installation:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.
2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

D. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend UTP cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceilings by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm) apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

E. Separation from EMI Sources:

1. Comply with BICSI TDMM and ANSI/TIA-569-E for separating unshielded copper voice and data communication cable from potential EMI sources, including electrical power lines and equipment.
2. Separation between open communications cables or cables in nonmetallic raceways and unshielded power conductors and electrical equipment shall be as follows:

    a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).
    b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).
    c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 24 inches (610 mm).

3. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and unshielded power lines or electrical equipment shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: A minimum of 2-1/2 inches (64 mm).
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 12 inches (300 mm).

4. Separation between communications cables in grounded metallic raceways and power lines and electrical equipment located in grounded metallic conduits or enclosures shall be as follows:

a. Electrical Equipment Rating Less Than 2 kVA: No requirement.
b. Electrical Equipment Rating between 2 and 5 kVA: A minimum of 3 inches (76 mm).
c. Electrical Equipment Rating More Than 5 kVA: A minimum of 6 inches (150 mm).

5. Separation between Communications Cables and Electrical Motors and Transformers, 5 kVA or HP and Larger: A minimum of 48 inches (1200 mm).
6. Separation between Communications Cables and Fluorescent Fixtures: A minimum of 5 inches (127 mm).

3.4 GROUNDING

A. Install grounding according to BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

C. Locate grounding busbar to minimize the length of bonding conductors. Fasten to wall allowing at least 2-inch (50-mm) clearance behind the grounding busbar. Connect grounding busbar with a minimum No. 4 AWG grounding electrode conductor from grounding busbar to suitable electrical building ground.

D. Bond metallic equipment to the grounding busbar, using not smaller than No. 6 AWG equipment grounding conductor.

3.5 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with ANSI/TIA-606-D.

1. Administration Class: 3.
2. Color-code cross-connect fields. Apply colors to voice and data service backboards, connections, covers, and labels.

B. Paint and label colors for equipment identification shall comply with ANSI/TIA-606-D for Class 3 level of administration.

C. Cable Schedule: Post in prominent location in each equipment room and wiring closet. List incoming and outgoing cables and their designations, origins, and destinations. Protect with rigid frame and clear plastic cover. Furnish an electronic copy of final comprehensive schedules for Project.

D. Cabling Administration Drawings: Show building floor plans with cabling administration-point labeling. Identify labeling convention and show labels for telecommunications closets, backbone pathways and cables, entrance pathways and cables, terminal hardware and positions, horizontal cables, work areas and workstation terminal positions, grounding buses and pathways, and equipment grounding conductors. Follow convention of ANSI/TIA-606-D. Furnish electronic record of all drawings, in software and format selected by Owner.

E. Cable and Wire Identification:

1. Label each cable within 4 inches (100 mm) of each termination and tap, where it is accessible in a cabinet or junction or outlet box, and elsewhere as indicated.
2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at device if color of wire is consistent with associated wire connected and numbered within panel or cabinet.
3. Exposed Cables and Cables in Cable Trays and Wire Troughs: Label each cable at intervals not exceeding 15 feet (4.5 m).
4. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

    a. Individually number wiring conductors connected to terminal strips, and identify each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with name and number of particular device as shown.
    b. Label each unit and field within distribution racks and frames.

5. Identification within Connector Fields in Equipment Rooms and Wiring Closets: Label each connector and each discrete unit of cable-terminating and connecting hardware. Where similar jacks and plugs are used for both voice and data communication cabling, use a different color for jacks and plugs of each service as identified herein.

F. Labels shall be preprinted or computer-printed type with printing area and font color that contrasts with cable jacket color but still complies with requirements in ANSI/TIA-606-D.

1. Cables use flexible vinyl or polyester that flex as cables are bent.

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations in communications equipment rooms for compliance with color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections for compliance with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Visually confirm Category 6 marking of outlets, cover plates, outlet/connectors, and patch panels.
3. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
4. Test UTP copper cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross-connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.2-D. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

5. UTP Performance Tests: Test for each outlet. Perform the following tests according to ANSI/TIA-568.1-E and ANSI/TIA-568.2-D:

    a. Wire map.
    b. Length (physical vs. electrical, and length requirements).
    c. Insertion loss.
    d. Near-end crosstalk (NEXT) loss.
    e. Power sum near-end crosstalk (PSNEXT) loss.
    f. Equal-level far-end crosstalk (ELFEXT).
    g. Power sum equal-level far-end crosstalk (PSELFEXT).
    h. Alien crosstalk.
    i. Return loss.
    j. Propagation delay.
    k. Delay skew.

6. Final Verification Tests: Perform verification tests for UTP cable systems after the complete communications cabling and workstation outlet/connectors are installed.

    a. Voice Tests: These tests assume that dial tone service has been installed. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Go off-hook and listen and receive a dial tone. If a test number is available, make and receive a local, long distance, and digital subscription line telephone call.
    b. Data Tests: These tests assume the Information Technology Staff has a network installed and is available to assist with testing. Connect to the network interface device at the demarcation point. Log onto the network to ensure proper connection to the network.

D. Document data for each measurement. Data for submittals shall be printed in a summary report that is formatted similar to Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM, or transferred from the instrument to the computer, saved as text files, and printed and submitted.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Refer to Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

END OF SECTION 27 15 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 27 51 16 - PUBLIC ADDRESS SYSTEMS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Preamplifiers.
2. Amplifiers mixers.
3. Volume controllers.
4. Speakers
5. Power amplifiers
6. Equipment rack.
7. Monitor panel.
8. Uninterruptible power supply.
9. Conductors and cables.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Channels: Separate parallel signal paths, from sources to loudspeakers or loudspeaker zones, with separate amplification and switching that permit selection between paths for speaker alternative program signals.

B. Zone: Separate group of loudspeakers and associated supply wiring that may be arranged for selective switching between different channels.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings: Power, signal, and control wiring.

1. Include rack arrangements.
2. Calculations: For sizing backup battery.
3. Wiring Diagrams: For power, signal, and control wiring.

a. Identify terminals to facilitate installation, operation, and maintenance.
b. Single-line diagram showing interconnection of components.
c. Cabling diagram showing cable routing.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Reflected ceiling plans, drawn to scale, on which ceiling-mounted items including lighting fixtures, diffusers, grilles, speakers, sprinklers, access panels, and special moldings are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of the items involved.

B. Qualification Data: For Installer.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit Closeout Submittals within 30 days of substantial completion.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For public address systems to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. List of tools and replacement items recommended to be stored at Project for ready access. Include part and drawing numbers, current unit prices, and source of supply.
2. Operating instructions laminated and mounted adjacent to operating console location.
3. Training plan.

1.7 MAINTENANCE MATERIAL SUBMITTALS

A. Furnish extra materials that match products installed and that are packaged with protective covering for storage and identified with labels describing contents.

1. Indoor speaker: One.
2. Outdoor speaker: Two.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: Manufacturer's authorized representative who is trained and approved for installation of units required for this Project.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Source Limitations: Obtain public address system from single source from single manufacturer.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

2.2 SYSTEM DESCRIPTION

A. Compatibility of Components: Coordinate component features to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

B. The system shall be configured to provide audibility and intelligibility messaging throughout the Terminal curbside spaces, entry vestibule, and tunnel walk walkway to a level acceptable to the Owner. The existing paging system headend, manufactured by is located in Building Management room A11 on the first (ramp) level. New amplifiers located in room A11 and the Garage IDF room shall distribute signal to speakers along the curbside and walkway corridor.

C. All new equipment and devices shall be compatible with the existing system.

D. Compatibility of Components: Coordinate component features to form an integrated system. Match components and interconnections for optimum performance of specified functions.

E. Equipment: Comply with UL 813. Equipment shall be modular, using solid-state components, and fully rated for continuous duty unless otherwise indicated. Select equipment for normal operation on input power usually supplied at 110 to 130 V, 60 Hz.

F. Equipment Mounting: Where rack, cabinet, or console mounting is indicated, equipment shall be designed to mount in a 19-inch (483-mm) housing complying with ECIA-310-E.

2.3 FUNCTIONAL DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM

A. System Functions:
   1. Selectively connect any zone to any available signal channel.
   2. Selectively control sound from microphone outlets and other inputs.
   3. "All-call" feature shall connect the all-call sound signal simultaneously to all zones regardless of zone or channel switch settings.
   4. Telephone paging adapter shall allow paging by dialing an extension from any local telephone instrument and speaking into the telephone.
   5. Produce a program-signal tone that is amplified and sounded over all speakers, overriding signals currently being distributed.
   6. Reproduce high-quality sound that is free of noise and distortion at all loudspeakers at all times during equipment operation including standby mode with inputs off; output free of nonuniform coverage of amplified sound.

2.4 PREAMPLIFIERS

A. Preamplifier: Separately mounted.

B. Preamplifier: Integral to power amplifier.

C. Output Power: Plus 4 dB above 1 mW at matched power-amplifier load.

D. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 1 percent.

E. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 2 dB from 20 to 20,000 Hz.

F. Input Jacks: Minimum of three. One matched for low-impedance microphone; one USB port; and the other matchable to DVD or CD player, or radio tuner signals without external adapters.

G. Minimum Noise Level: Minus 55 dB below rated output.

H. Controls: On-off, input levels, and master gain.

2.5 AMPLIFIERS / MIXERS

A. Mixer / Amplifier: Design Basis: TOA BG-2120.

B. Zone Amplifier: Design Basis: Bose ZA250-LZ.

2.6 VOLUME CONTROLLERS

A. Design Basis: Lowell Custom 100LVC.

B. Surface mounted.

C. Wall plate: Stainless steel.

2.7 SPEAKERS

A. Flush mounted, single coil, single transformer.
   1. Design Basis: MOOD XDA521T / DMX CM1525R.
   2. Flush mounted.
   3. White (Color to be confirmed by Owner).

B. Surface-mount, loudspeakers, pair.
   1. Design Basis: Bose FS2SE Series.
   2. Surface-mount.
   3. White (Color to be confirmed by Owner).

2.8 POWER AMPLIFIERS

A. Mounting: Rack.

B. Output Power: 80 percent of the sum of wattage settings of connected > for each station and speaker connected in all-call mode of operation, plus a 10 percent allowance for future stations.

C. Total Harmonic Distortion: Less than 3 percent at rated power output from 50 to 12,000 Hz.

D. Minimum Signal-to-Noise Ratio: 80 dB, at rated output.

E. Frequency Response: Within plus or minus 3 dB from 20 to 12,000 Hz.

F. Output Regulation: Less than 2 dB from full to no load.

G. Controls: On-off, input levels, and low-cut filter.

H. Input Sensitivity: Matched to preamplifier and to provide full-rated output with sound-pressure level of less than 10 dynes/sq. cm impinging on speaker microphone or handset transmitter.

2.9 EQUIPMENT RACK

A. Racks: 19 inches (483 mm) standard, complying with ECIA-310-E.

B. Power-Supply Connections: Compatible plugs and receptacles.

C. Enclosure Panels: Ventilated rear and sides and solid top. Use louvers in panels to ensure adequate ventilation.

D. Finish: Uniform, baked-enamel factory finish over rust-inhibiting primer.

E. Power-Control Panel: On front of equipment housing, with master power on-off switch and pilot light; and with cartridge fuse protection for rack equipment power.

F. Service Light: At top rear of rack with an adjacent control switch.

G. Vertical Plug Strip: Grounded receptacles, 12 inches (300 mm) o.c.; the full height of rack for public address system equipment use only.

H. Maintenance Receptacles: Duplex convenience outlets supplied independent of vertical plug strip and located in front and bottom rear of rack.

I. Spare Capacity: 20 percent in rack for future equipment.

2.10 MONITOR PANEL

A. Monitor power amplifiers.

B. Components: VU or dB meter, speaker with volume control, and multiple-position rotary selector switch.

C. Selector Switch and Volume Control: Selective monitoring of output of each separate power amplifier via VU or dB meter and speaker.

D. Mounting: Rack.

2.11 UNINTERRUPTIBLE POWER SUPPLY

A. Equipment shall be powered via rack mounted UPS units, Comply with Section 271100 – "Communications Equipment Room Fittings."

2.12 CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Jacketed, twisted pair and twisted multipair, untinned solid copper.

1. Insulation for Wire in Conduit: Thermoplastic, not less than 1/32 inch (0.8 mm) thick.

2.13 PATHWAYS

A. Conduit and Boxes: Comply with Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

B. Outlet boxes shall be not less than 2 inches (50 mm) wide, 3 inches (75 mm) high, and 2-1/2 inches (64 mm) deep.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Wiring Method:

1. Install cables in conduit except within consoles, cabinets, and where unenclosed wiring method may be used. Conceal pathway and cables except in unfinished spaces.
   a. Comply with requirements for pathways and boxes specified in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems."

2. Conceal conductors and cables in accessible ceilings, walls, and floors where possible.

B. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train cables to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF PATHWAYS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 270528 "Pathways for Communications Systems." for installation of conduits and wireways.

B. Install manufactured conduit sweeps and long-radius elbows whenever possible.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. General Cable Installation Requirements:

1. Terminate conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at outlets and terminals.

2. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: Arrange on numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Cables may not be spliced.
3. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
4. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
5. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
6. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before dereeling. Heat lamps shall not be used.

C. Open-Cable Installation:

1. Install cabling with horizontal and vertical cable guides in telecommunications spaces with terminating hardware and interconnection equipment.
2. Suspend speaker cable not in a wireway or pathway a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) above ceiling by cable supports not more than 60 inches (1524 mm apart.
3. Cable shall not be run through structural members or be in contact with pipes, ducts, or other potentially damaging items.

D. Separation of Wires: Separate speaker-microphone, line-level, speaker-level, and power wiring runs. Install in separate pathways or, where exposed or in same enclosure, separate conductors at least 12 inches (300 mm) apart for speaker microphones and adjacent parallel power and telephone wiring. Separate other communication equipment conductors as recommended by equipment manufacturer.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Coordinate layout and installation of system components and suspension system with other construction that penetrates ceilings or is supported by them, including light fixtures, HVAC equipment, fire-suppression system, and partition assemblies.

B. Match input and output impedances and signal levels at signal interfaces. Provide matching networks where required.

C. Identification of Conductors and Cables: Color-code conductors and apply wire and cable marking tape to designate wires and cables so they identify media in coordination with system wiring diagrams.

D. Equipment Cabinets and Racks:

1. Group items of same function together, either vertically or side by side, and arrange controls symmetrically. Mount monitor panel above the amplifiers.
2. Arrange all inputs, outputs, interconnections, and test points so they are accessible at rear of rack for maintenance and testing, with each item removable from rack without disturbing other items or connections.
3. Blank Panels: Cover empty space in equipment racks so entire front of rack is occupied by panels.

E. Volume Limiter/Compressor: Equip each zone with a volume limiter/compressor. Install in central equipment cabinet. Arrange to provide a constant input to power amplifiers.

F. Wall-Mounted Outlets: Flush mounted.

G. Floor-Mounted Outlets: Conceal in floor and install cable nozzles through outlet covers. Secure outlet covers in place. Trim with carpet in carpeted areas.

H. Conductor Sizing: Unless otherwise indicated, size speaker circuit conductors from racks to loudspeaker outlets not smaller than No. 18 AWG and conductors from microphone receptacles to amplifiers not smaller than No. 22 AWG.

I. Weatherproof Equipment: For units that are mounted outdoors, in damp locations, or where exposed to weather, install consistent with requirements of weatherproof rating.

J. Speaker-Line Matching Transformer Connections: Make initial connections using tap settings indicated on Drawings.

K. Connect wiring according to Section 271500 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" and Section 280513 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Ground cable shields and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

B. Signal Ground Terminal: Locate at main equipment cabinet. Isolate from power system and equipment grounding.

C. Install grounding electrodes as specified in Section 270526 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

3.6 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect, test, and adjust components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

B. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. Schedule tests with at least seven days' advance notice of test performance.
2. After installing public address system and after electrical circuitry has been energized, test for compliance with requirements.
3. Operational Test: Perform tests that include originating program and page messages at microphone outlets, preamplifier program inputs, and other inputs. Verify proper routing and volume levels and that system is free of noise and distortion.
4. Signal-to-Noise Ratio Test: Measure signal-to-noise ratio of complete system at normal gain settings as follows:

    a. Disconnect microphone at connector or jack closest to it and replace it in the circuit with a signal generator using a 1000-Hz signal. Replace all other microphones at corresponding connectors with dummy loads, each equal in impedance to microphone it replaces. Measure signal-to-noise ratio.
    b. Repeat test for each separately controlled zone of loudspeakers.
    c. Minimum acceptance ratio is 50 dB.

5. Distortion Test: Measure distortion at normal gain settings and rated power. Feed signals at frequencies of 50, 200, 400, 1000, 3000, 8000, and 12,000 Hz into each preamplifier channel. For each frequency, measure distortion in the paging and all-call amplifier outputs. Maximum acceptable distortion at any frequency is 3 percent total harmonics.
6. Acoustic Coverage Test: Feed pink noise into system using octaves centered at 500 and 4000 Hz. Use sound-level meter with octave-band filters to measure level at five locations in each zone. For spaces with seated audiences, maximum permissible variation in level is plus or minus 2 dB. In addition, the levels between locations in same zone and between locations in adjacent zones must not vary more than plus or minus 3 dB.
7. Power Output Test: Measure electrical power output of each power amplifier at normal gain settings of 50, 1000, and 12,000 Hz. Maximum variation in power output at these frequencies must not exceed plus or minus 1 dB.

8. Signal Ground Test: Measure and report ground resistance at public address equipment signal ground. Comply with testing requirements specified in Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

D. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly labeled and interconnecting wires and terminals are identified. Prepare a list of final tap settings of paging speaker-line matching transformers.

E. Public address system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports.

1. Include a record of final speaker-line matching transformer-tap settings and signal ground-resistance measurement certified by Installer.

3.7 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to perform startup service.

1. Verify that electrical wiring installation complies with manufacturer's submittal and installation requirements.
2. Complete installation and startup checks according to manufacturer's written instructions.

3.8 ADJUSTING

A. On-Site Assistance: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to provide on-site assistance in adjusting sound levels, resetting transformer taps, and adjusting controls to meet occupancy conditions.

B. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two visits to Project during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose.

END OF SECTION 27 51 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 28 05 00 - COMMON WORK RESULTS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section includes:

1. Access Control Systems
2. Video Surveillance Systems
3. Grounding and bonding
4. Cable pathways
5. Cable management

1.2 RELATED WORK SPECIFIED UNDER OTHER DIVISIONS

A. Foundations and pads required for equipment furnished under this Division.
B. Field painting, except such painting as is required to maintain shop coat painting and factory finish painting.
C. Flashing of conduits into roofing and outside walls.
D. Heating, ventilating and air conditioning equipment.
E. Electrical service to equipment rooms.
F. Cutting and patching for security systems work, except for errors and omissions under this Division.

1.3 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Comply with applicable local, state and federal codes.
B. Comply with applicable requirements of recognized industry associations which produce standards for the various trades.
C. Warrant Work under this specification against faulty material or Workmanship in accordance with Division 01. If the project is occupied or the systems placed in operation in several phases at the request of the Owner, then the warranty of each system or piece of equipment used shall begin on the date of substantial completion for each phase. The use of building equipment for temporary service and testing does not constitute the beginning of the warranty.
D. Equipment and material provided under this Division shall be periodically inspected and serviced by competent installers. This function becomes the responsibility of the Owner once the system is accepted by the Owner. The one-year material and workmanship warranty is not intended to supersede normal inspection or service and shall not be construed to mean the Contractor shall provide free service for normal maintenance items such as periodic cleaning and

adjustment due to normal use, nor to correct without charge, breakage, maladjustment and other trouble caused by improper maintenance.

E. Upon completion of contract and progressively as work proceeds, clean-up and remove dirt, debris and scrap materials. Maintain the premises in a neat and clean condition at all times during construction. Protect and preserve access to head-end equipment at all times. Clean items with factory finishes. Touch-up minor damage to surfaces; refinish entire piece of equipment when sustained major damage. All electronics must be protected from dust and other airborne debris. Contractor shall identify all types of quality control mechanisms they employ. List all types.

1.4 STANDARDS

A. The Contractor's performance of the Work shall comply with applicable federal, state and local laws, rules and regulations. The Contractor shall give required notices, shall procure necessary governmental licenses, permits, and inspections and shall pay without burden to The Owner, all fees and charges in connection therewith unless specifically provided otherwise. In the event of violation, the Contractor shall pay all fines and penalties, including attorney's fees and other defense costs and expenses in connection therewith.

B. Federal Communications Commission

1. Equipment requiring FCC registration or approval shall have received such approval and shall be appropriately identified.

C. Codes, Standards and Ordinances

1. Design, manufacture, test and install security and communications cabling per manufacturer's requirements and in accordance with state codes, local codes, requirements of authorities having jurisdiction and particularly the following standards:

a. NECA 1 – Standard for Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction, 2015
b. ANSI/TIA-568.0-E –Generic Telecommunications Cabling for Customer Premises , Updated References, Accommodation of New Media Types, 2017
c. ANSI/TIA-606-D – Administration Standard for Telecommunications Infrastructure, 2021
d. ANSI/TIA-607-E – Generic Telecommunications Bonding and Grounding Earthing) for Customer Premises, 2024
e. NFPA 70 – National Electrical Code

f. NFPA 72 – National Fire Alarm Code
g. FCC 47 Part 68 Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, Telecommunications
h. IEEE National Electrical Safety Code (NESC)
i. American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM): ASTM E. 814 – Standard Test Method for Fire Tests of Penetration Firestop Systems
j. Underwriters Laboratories, Inc. (UL): UL 1479 – Tests of Through-Penetration Firestop Systems
k. Americans with Disabilities Accessibility Guidelines, 2010.
l. Code of Federal Regulations, Title 29, Chapter XVII, Part 1910 (OSHA).
m. International Building Code (IBC).
n. Applicable codes and directives of authorities having jurisdiction

2. BOD Basis of Design document

3. References to codes and standards called for in the Specifications refer to the latest edition, amendments, and revisions to the codes and standards in effect on the date of these Specifications.

D. Federal, state, and local codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances governing the Work, are as fully part of the specifications as if herein repeated or hereto attached. If the Contractor should note items in the drawings or the specifications, construction of which would be code violations, promptly call them to the attention of the Owner's Representative in writing. Where the requirements of other sections of the specifications are more stringent than applicable codes, rules, regulations, and ordinances, the specifications shall apply.

1.5 COMPLETENESS OF WORK

A. The Contract Documents depict security systems which are intended to be complete and functioning systems. All products, materials, labor, and programming necessary to render a fully functional system to fulfill the design intent shown on the documents shall be provided by the Contractor.
B. Catalog numbers referenced throughout this Division’s drawings and specifications are intended to convey a general understanding of the type of quality of the product required. Where written descriptions differ from information conveyed by a catalog number, the written description shall govern. No extra charge shall be allowed because a catalog number is found to be incomplete or obsolete.

1.6 PRE-INSTALLATION CONFERENCE

A. Arrange and schedule pre-installation conference prior to beginning any work of this section.
B. Agenda: Clarify questions in writing related to work to be performed, scheduling, coordination, etc. with Consultant and/or Project Manager/Owner Representative.
C. All individuals, who will be in an on-site supervisory capacity, shall be required to attend the pre-installation conference. This includes project managers, site supervisor and lead installers. Individuals who do not attend the conference will not be permitted to supervise the personnel that install, terminate or test communications cables on the project. The Contractor's project manager that will oversee the installation is required to attend the pre-installation conference.
D. The manufacturer that will be providing the extended warranty is required to have a representative attend the pre-installation conference.

1.7 SEQUENCE AND SCHEDULING

A. The Contractor shall comply with all scheduling requests established by Owner, both prior to commencing Work and during construction. The Contractor shall provide a detailed schedule of work to be performed. This schedule shall be submitted with the bid and if accepted will be used to track work status.
B. Work should be scheduled not to interfere with day-to-day operations within the facility. Operations vary by area and should be given careful consideration in relation to the schedule.
C. The successful Contractor for all or any portion of the work will be responsible for achieving a complete and fully functional installation on or before the contract scheduled completion date.
D. Submit schedule for installation of equipment and cabling. Indicate delivery, installation and testing for conformance to specific job completion dates. As a minimum, dates are to be provided for bid award, installation start date, completion of cable pathway, cabling, equipment installation, system testing and labeling, cutover, completion of the final punch list, start of demolition, Owner acceptance and demolition completion.

1.8 SUBMITTALS

A. Comply with provisions of Division 01.
B. Provide all submittal requirements under this section as a single package.

1.9 ALTERNATES, SUBSTITUTIONS AND CHANGE ORDERS

A. If a proposed alternate material is equal to or exceeds specified requirements, Contractor shall provide manufacturer's specifications in writing for written

approval prior to purchase and installation of proposed materials. The proposed material substitution shall not void or change manufacturer's warranty.

B. Contractor shall provide a complete security system according to these written specifications and drawings. If the Owner changes the scope of work to be performed by the Contractor, it shall be in writing. Contractor shall respond to these changes with a complete material list, labor, and taxes in writing presented to the Owner for approval. Contractor shall not proceed with additional scope of work without a signed approval by the Owner.

C. Additional work performed by the Contractor will not be paid by Owner without signed approval of these changes prior to implementing changes. Submit a copy of signed change order upon billing.

1.10 USE OF THE SITE

A. Use of the site shall be at the Owner's direction in matters in which the Owner deems it necessary to place restriction.

B. Access to the building wherein the Work is performed shall be as directed by the Owner.

C. The Owner will occupy the premises during the entire period of construction for conducting his or her normal business operations. Cooperate with the Owner to minimize conflict and to facilitate the Owner's operations.

D. Schedule necessary shutdowns of plant services with the Owner and obtain written permission from the Owner. Refer to article - CONTINUITY OF SERVICES herein.

E. Proceed with the Work without interfering with ordinary use of streets, aisles, passages, exits and operations of the Owner.

F. All Contractor personnel must check in with the facilities engineering department and/or the General Contractor upon arrival and upon departure.

1.11 DELIVERY AND STORAGE

A. Insofar as possible, deliver items in manufacturers' original unopened packaging. Where this is not practical, cover items with protective materials, to keep them from being damaged. Use care in loading, transporting, unloading and storage to keep items from being damaged.

B. Store items in a clean dry place and protect from damage.

C. Storage space on project site may be limited. The Contractor shall coordinate delivery and arrange storage of materials and equipment with the Owner.

D. Components sensitive to damage in a harsh environment shall be stored off-site and delivered as needed.

E. Provide protective covering during construction to prevent damage or entrance of foreign matter.

F. Contractor is responsible for on-site security of tools, test equipment and materials.
G. Replace at no expense to the Owner, product damaged during transporting, storage, handling or the course of construction.

1.12 CONTRACTOR CLOSE OUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit Closeout Submittals within 30 days of substantial completion.
B. Submit Closeout documentation in accordance with Division 1 of the Project Manual and any applicable supplements. The number of submittal sets required is the greater of either the requirements of Division 1 of the Project Manual, or a minimum of four (4) sets.

1. Segregate documents into separate binders containing data relevant to operational, maintenance, and warranty issues
2. Test reports on all systems (electronic file format and hard copy)
3. As-built door and device schedules
4. As built documentation of all systems installed under this project
5. As built documentation of TR modifications and associated cabinet and wall elevations.

C. Warranty and Maintenance:

1. Test Report Binder(s)
2. Record Drawings

1.13 RECORD DRAWINGS

A. Keep a hard copy set of project drawings at the job site exclusively for recording deviations from the Construction Drawings.
B. Record locations and depths of buried and concealed conduits from fixed, easily identifiable objects, such as building walls. Where conduits are concealed in walls, indicate distances off of building corners or other building features not likely to be disturbed by future alterations.
C. Mark deviations in a different color so that work of various systems can be easily identified.
D. At completion of as-built drawings, submit Project Record Documents to Design Consultant for the Owner's records.

1. Upon completion of the as built drawings, the Design Consultant will review the as built work with the Contractor.
2. If the as built work is not complete, the Contractor will be so advised and shall complete the work as required

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MATERIALS AND EQUIPMENT

A. All materials and equipment used in carrying out these specifications are to be new and have UL listing, or listing by other recognized testing laboratory when such listings are available.

B. Model numbers and manufacturers included in this specification are listed to establish as standard of product quality.

C. Other qualified manufacturers may be substituted only with the Owner's written consent. To request a substitution, the Contractor shall submit complete technical data, samples, and if requested, results of independent testing laboratory tests of proposed equipment.

1. If the proposed System includes equipment other than specified model numbers, submit a list of major items and their quantities, with a one-line schematic diagram for review.
2. Material not specifically identified within this document but which is required for the successful implementation of the intended system(s), shall be of the same class and quality as the specified material and equipment.
3. Include a list of previously installed projects using proposed equipment that are similar in nature to specified system.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 COORDINATION

A. Insofar as it is possible to determine in advance, advise the General Contractor to leave proper chases and openings. Place all outlets, anchors, sleeves, and supports prior to pouring concrete or installation of masonry work. Should the Contractor neglect doing this, any cutting and/or patching required is to be done at this Contractor's expense.

B. Visit site and be informed of conditions under which work must be performed. No subsequent allowance will be made because of error or failure to obtain necessary information to completely estimate and perform work involved.

C. Carefully coordinate with other divisions to ensure proper power requirements, grounding, fireproofing and interlocking controls between the fire alarm system, security system, and other Owner-furnished systems.

D. Notify other tradesmen of any deviations or special conditions necessary for the installation of work. Interferences between the work of various Contractors to be resolved prior to installation. Work installed not in compliance with specifications

and drawings and without properly checking and coordinating as specified above shall, if necessary, be removed and properly reinstalled without additional cost to the Owner.

E. The Owner or the Owner's Representative shall be the mediating authority in all deviation and disputes arising on project.

F. Intent:

1. These sections of specifications and drawings form a complete set of documents for communications systems for this project. Neither is complete without the other. Any item mentioned in one shall be as binding as though mentioned in both.
2. The intent of these specifications and drawings is to form a guide for a complete systems installation. Where an item is reasonably necessary for a complete system but not specifically mentioned, such as pull boxes, fittings, expansion fittings, support hangers, etc. provide same without additional cost to Owner.
3. Communication equipment room layouts indicated on drawings are diagrammatical only. The exact location of outlets and equipment to be coordinated and governed by project conditions. The Designer reserves the right to make any reasonable changes (approximately 6 feet) in location of junction boxes or equipment prior to roughing in of such without additional cost to Owner.

G. Deviations:

1. No deviations from specifications and drawings to be made without full knowledge and consent of the Designer. Should the Contractor find during progress of work that existing conditions make desirable a modification of the requirements of any particular item, report such item promptly to the Designer for their decision and instructions.

H. Main Horizontal Pathway/Raceway:

1. Unless otherwise noted on the drawings, all security systems cabling shall be routed above accessible corridor ceilings parallel to room walls and corridors via dedicated conduit. Cabling shall be segregated by function as follows:

    a. Access control
    b. Video surveillance

3.2 CONTINUITY OF SERVICES

A. The Contractor shall not take any action that will interfere with, or interrupt, existing building services unless previous arrangements have been made with the Owner's Representative. Arrange the Work to minimize shutdown time.
B. Owner's personnel will perform shutdown of operating systems. The Contractor shall give three (3) days' advance notice for systems shutdown.
C. Should services be inadvertently interrupted, immediately furnish labor, including overtime, material, and equipment necessary for prompt restoration of interrupted service.

3.3 TRENCHING, EXCAVATION, BACKFILLING AND REPAIRS

A. Trenching, excavation and backfilling is the responsibility of the General Contractor. This Contractor is to coordinate all requirements with the GC. Failure to properly coordinate this effort resulting in additional trenching, excavation, backfilling or repairs shall be performed without additional cost to Owner.

3.4 PLYWOOD BACKBOARD AND WALL BACKING

A. Contractor shall provide 4-foot wide, by 8-foot high, by 3/4-inch thick fire-retardant plywood backboard as indicated in all TRs. Plywood is to be painted with two coats of flat white fire-retardant paint on all six sides and installed as indicated on the drawings. The fire rating on the plywood shall be masked prior to painting and the mask removed after installation such that the fire rating is always visible for inspection.
B. General Contractor is to provide appropriate backing in walls as required for mounting brackets and other wall mounted equipment per manufacturer requirements.

3.5 FIRESTOPPING

A. Select appropriate type or types of through penetration firestop devices or systems appropriate for each type of communications penetration and base each selection on criteria specified herein.
B. Selected systems shall not be less than the hourly time delay ratings indicated in the Contract Documents for each respective fire-rated floor, wall or other partition of building construction. Firestop for each type of communications penetration shall conform to requirements of an independent testing laboratory design drawing or manufacturer's approved modification when used in conjunction with details shown on the Drawings.
C. Perform all necessary coordination with trades constructing floors, walls or other partitions of building construction with respect to size and shape of each

opening to be constructed and device or system approved for use in each instance.

D. Coordinate each firestop selection with adjacent Work for dimensional or other interference and for feasibility. In areas, accessible to public and other finished areas, firestop systems Work shall be selected, installed and finished to the quality of adjacent surfaces of building construction being penetrated.

E. Use materials that have no irritating or objectionable odors when firestopping is required in existing buildings and areas that are occupied.

F. Provide damming materials, plates, wires, restricting collars and devices necessary for proper installation of firestopping. Remove combustible installation aids after firestopping material has cured.

G. All firestops shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions in order to maintain the specific rating assigned by the independent testing laboratory.

H. Existing raceways, cable trays and cabling that penetrate existing building construction shall be firestopped to the extent necessary to fill cavities that may exist between existing building construction and existing communications penetrations or existing conduit sleeve, and between existing conduits and existing conduit sleeve.

I. If required by inspecting authorities:

1. Expose and remove firestopping to the extent directed by inspecting authority to permit his or her inspection
2. Reinstall new firestopping and restore Work where removed for inspection.

3.6 TESTS

A. On completion of Work, installation shall be entirely free of damaged conductors, software errors, incomplete jack termination including labeling and faceplates and dust. Perform a thorough operation test in the presence of the Owner or their representative. Provide documentation of all test results as outlined in each system's specifications. Include labor, materials, and instruments for above tests.

B. Furnish to the Owner, as a part of closing documents, a copy of such tests including identification of each cable.

C. Prior to final observation and acceptance, test and leave in satisfactory operating condition, all systems and equipment including but not limited to the following:

1. Grounding.
2. Firestopping of all sleeves and conduits.
3. Security systems.
4. Turn in test results on cabling.

3.7 CLEANING

A. After completing system installation, including outlet fittings and devices, inspect exposed finish. Remove burrs, dirt, dust, and construction debris and repair damaged finish, including chips, scratches, and abrasions. This includes touching up paint removed for grounding.

B. Contractor shall provide a clean work environment, free from trash/rubbish accumulated during and after cabling installation.

C. Maintain construction materials and refuse within the area of work. Clean the work area at the end of each day.

D. Contractor shall keep all liquids (drinks, sodas, etc.) off finished floors, carpets, tiles, racks and equipment. If any liquid damage to above finishes or equipment occurs, Contractor shall provide professional services to clean or repair scratched/soiled finishes or damaged equipment at own expense.

3.8 INSPECTION FEES AND PERMITS

A. Obtain and pay for all necessary permits and inspection fees required for communication systems installation. Work shall not start until all permit applications are approved.

3.9 OBSERVATIONS

A. When field observation services are a part of the project scope, the Designer’s office will provide periodic observation of the progress of Work specified herein. The purpose of the observation service is to ensure compliance of Contractor's Work with specifications and drawings. The Designer’s office may also observe tests required of this Contractor as called for in other sections of the specifications.

B. Specifications and drawings represent Work to be done in view of total project requirements. To eliminate possible conflict with other trades, final location of conduits, jacks, outlets, components, etc., is the responsibility of this Contractor. Contractor to provide all supervision required for his personnel to ensure that installation is made in accordance with specifications and drawings and all safety rules and regulations are observed. In the event of conflicts of Work on project with other trades, Contractor is to make every reasonable effort to resolve conflict through meetings and discussions with other parties involved, by preparation of drawings or other appropriate action. Only after this has been done shall the Designer's assistance be requested through the RFI process.

C. When the Designer is requested to visit the project to aid in resolution of conflicts, or for witnessing tests, he shall be given a minimum of 48 hours’ notice prior to time their presence is requested at job site.

3.10 WARRANTY-GUARANTEE

A. The Designer reserves the right to accept or reject any part of the installation which does not successfully meet requirements as set out in these specifications.

B. Contractor shall, and hereby does, guarantee all Work installed under this division shall be free from defects in workmanship and materials for a period of one year from date of final acceptance. This Contractor further agrees to repair or replace any defective material or workmanship which is or becomes defective within the terms of this warranty-guarantee.

C. All surplus parts and pieces to the installation shall be maintained as a spare parts inventory at the building site. Parts replaced during the warranty period shall have a warranty matching that of the original part from date of replacement.

D. Unless specified elsewhere, Contractor shall provide a warranty of their work for a period of 1-year from the date of Final Acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 28 05 00

SECTION 28 05 13 - CONDUCTORS AND CABLES FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. UTP cabling.
2. RS-232 cabling.
3. RS-485 cabling.
4. Low-voltage control cabling.
5. Control-circuit conductors.
6. Identification products.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 05 00 “Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security.”
2. Section 28 05 26 “Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security.”
3. Section 28 05 28 “Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security.”
4. Section 28 05 44 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security.”
5. Section 28 13 00 “Access Control System - SSI.”
6. Section 28 23 00 “Video Surveillance - SSI.”

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. BICSI: Building Industry Consulting Service International.

B. EMI: Electromagnetic interference.

C. IDC: Insulation displacement connector.

D. Low Voltage: As defined in NFPA 70 for circuits and equipment operating at less than 50 V or for remote-control and signaling power-limited circuits.

E. NRTL: Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory.

F. Open Cabling: Passing telecommunications cabling through open space (e.g., between the studs of a wall cavity).

G. RCDD: Registered Communications Distribution Designer.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified layout technician, installation supervisor, and field inspector. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

B. Source quality-control reports.

C. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications:

1. Testing Agency's Field Supervisor: Currently certified by BICSI as an RCDD to supervise on-site testing. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements."

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Test cables upon receipt at Project site.

1. Test each pair of UTP cable for open and short circuits.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Do not install conductors and cables that are wet, moisture damaged, or mold damaged.

1. Indications that wire and cables are wet or moisture damaged include, but are not limited to, discoloration and sagging of factory packing materials.

B. Environmental Limitations: Do not deliver or install UTP cables and connecting materials until wet work in spaces is complete and dry, and temporary HVAC system is operating and maintaining ambient temperature and humidity conditions at occupancy levels during the remainder of the construction period.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Surface-Burning Characteristics: Comply with ASTM E 84; testing by a qualified NRTL. Identify products with appropriate markings of applicable NRTL.

1. Flame-Spread Index: 25 or less.
2. Smoke-Developed Index: 50 or less.

B. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified NRTL, and marked for intended location and application.

2.3 BACKBOARDS

A. Refer to Section 27 11 00 “Communications Equipment Room Fittings” for backboard requirements.

2.4 UTP CABLE

A. Description: Refer to Section 27 13 00 “Communications Backbone Cabling” for requirements.

2.5 UTP CABLE HARDWARE

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. ADC.
2. American Technology Systems Industries, Inc.
3. AMP Netconnect; a brand of Tyco Electronics Corporation.
4. Belden Inc.
5. Dynacom Inc.
6. Hubbell Incorporated; Hubbell Premise Wiring.
7. Leviton Commercial Networks Division.
8. Molex Premise Networks; a division of Molex, Inc.
9. Panduit Corp.
10. Siemon.

B. UTP Cable Connecting Hardware: IDC type, using modules designed for punch-down caps or tools. Cables shall be terminated with connecting hardware of the same category or higher.

C. Connecting Blocks: 110-style for Category 6. Provide blocks for the number of cables terminated on the block, plus 25 percent spare. Integral with connector bodies, including plugs and jacks where indicated.

2.6 RS-232 CABLE

A. General: If required, RS-232 (ANSI/TIA-232-F) communications require three conductors with an overall shield. Circuit is limited to a distance of not more than 50 feet (15 m).

B. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM.

1. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Polypropylene insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Plastic insulation.
3. Individual aluminum foil-polyester tape shielded pairs with 100 percent shield coverage.
4. Plastic jacket.
5. Pairs are cabled on common axis with No. 24 AWG, stranded (7x32) tinned copper drain wire.
6. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.7 RS-485 CABLE

A. General: Where required, RS-485 communications require two twisted pairs. Circuit is limited to a distance of not more than 4000 feet (1220 m).

B. Standard Cable: NFPA 70, Type CM or CMG.

1. Paired, 2 pairs, twisted, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.

2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

C. Plenum-Rated Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. Paired, 2 pairs, No. 22 AWG, stranded (7x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. Fluorinated ethylene propylene insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. Fluorinated ethylene propylene jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: NFPA 262, Flame Test.

2.8 LOW-VOLTAGE CONTROL CABLE

A. Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMG.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with UL 1581.

B. Plenum-Rated, Paired Cable: NFPA 70, Type CMP.

1. One pair, twisted, No. 16 AWG, stranded (19x29) and No. 18 AWG, stranded (19x30) tinned copper conductors.
2. PVC insulation.
3. Unshielded.
4. PVC jacket.
5. Flame Resistance: Comply with NFPA 262.

2.9 CONTROL-CIRCUIT CONDUCTORS

A. Class 1 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway and Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway.

B. Class 2 Control Circuits: Stranded copper, Type THHN-THWN, complying with UL 83, in raceway, power-limited cable, complying with UL 83, concealed in building finishes, power-limited tray cable, complying with UL 83, in cable tray and Type XHHN, complying with UL 44, in raceway as indicated.

C. Class 3 Remote-Control and Signal Circuits: Stranded copper, Type TW or TF, complying with UL 83.

2.10 IDENTIFICATION PRODUCTS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Brady Worldwide, Inc.
2. HellermannTyton North America.
3. Kroy LLC.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. Comply with UL 969 for a system of labeling materials, including label stocks, laminating adhesives, and inks used by label printers.

2.11 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to evaluate cables.

B. Factory test UTP cables on reels according to ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.

C. Factory test UTP cables according to ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.

D. Cable will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Comply with Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements.

E. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 WIRING METHODS

A. Install wiring in metal pathways and wireways.

1. Minimum conduit size shall be 3/4 inch (21 mm), with the exception of “drop conduits for door devices, which may be ½ inch (12 mm). Control and data transmission wiring shall not share conduit with other building wiring systems.
2. Comply with requirements in Section 28 05 28 "Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security."

B. Wiring within Enclosures:

1. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii.
2. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
3. Separate power-limited and non-power-limited conductors as recommended in writing by manufacturer.
4. Install conductors parallel with or at right angles to sides and back of enclosure.
5. Mark each terminal according to system's wiring diagrams.
6. Make all connections with approved crimp-on terminal spade lugs, pressure-type terminal blocks, or plug connectors.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF CONDUCTORS AND CABLES

A. Comply with NECA 1.

B. Conductors: Size according to system manufacturer's written instructions unless otherwise indicated.

C. General Requirements for Cabling:

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 6, "Cable Termination Practices."
3. Terminate all conductors; no cable shall contain unterminated elements. Make terminations only at indicated outlets, terminals, and cross-connect and patch panels.
4. Cables may not be spliced. Secure and support cables at intervals not exceeding 30 inches (760 mm) and not more than 6 inches (150 mm) from cabinets, boxes, fittings, outlets, racks, frames, and terminals.
5. Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii, but not less than radii specified in BICSI ITSIM, "Cabling Termination Practices" Chapter. Install lacing bars and distribution spools.
6. Do not install bruised, kinked, scored, deformed, or abraded cable. Do not splice cable between termination, tap, or junction points. Remove and discard cable if damaged during installation and replace it with new cable.
7. Cold-Weather Installation: Bring cable to room temperature before de-reeling. Heat lamps shall not be used for heating.
8. Pulling Cable: Comply with BICSI ITSIM, Ch. 4, "Pulling Cable." Monitor cable pull tensions.

D. UTP Cable Installation: Install using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 6 rating of components and that ensure Category 6 performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

1. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.2-D.

2. Do not untwist UTP cables more than 1/2 inch (12 mm) from the point of termination to maintain cable geometry.

E. Separation from EMI Sources: Refer to Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling.

3.3 POWER CONDUCTORS

A. 120-V Power Wiring: Install according to Division 26 specifications unless otherwise indicated.

B. Minimum Conductor Sizes:

1. Class 1 remote-control and signal circuits, No. 14 AWG.
2. Class 2 low-energy, remote-control and signal circuits, No. 16 AWG.
3. Class 3 low-energy, remote-control, alarm and signal circuits, No. 12 AWG.

3.4 CONNECTIONS

A. Comply with requirements in Section 28 13 00 "Access Control" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 28 23 00 "Video Surveillance" for connecting, terminating, and identifying wires and cables.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. For communications wiring, comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E and with BICSI TDMM, "Grounding, Bonding, and Electrical Protection" Chapter.

B. For low-voltage wiring and cabling, comply with requirements in Section 28 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Electronic Safety and Security."

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Identify system components, wiring, and cabling complying with ANSI/TIA-606-D.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to test and inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections.

C. Perform the following tests and inspections:

1. Visually inspect UTP cable jacket materials for NRTL certification markings. Inspect cabling terminations to confirm color-coding for pin assignments, and inspect cabling connections to confirm compliance with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E.
2. Visually inspect cable placement, cable termination, grounding and bonding, equipment and patch cords, and labeling of all components.
3. Test UTP cabling for DC loop resistance, shorts, opens, intermittent faults, and polarity between conductors. Test operation of shorting bars in connection blocks. Test cables after termination but not cross connection.

    a. Test instruments shall meet or exceed applicable requirements in ANSI/TIA-568.2--D. Perform tests with a tester that complies with performance requirements in "Test Instruments (Normative)" Annex, complying with measurement accuracy specified in "Measurement Accuracy (Informative)" Annex. Use only test cords and adapters that are qualified by test equipment manufacturer for channel or link test configuration.

D. Document data for each measurement. Print data for submittals in a summary report that is formatted using Table 10.1 in BICSI TDMM as a guide, or transfer the data from the instrument to the computer, save as text files, print, and submit.

E. End-to-end cabling will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Refer to Section 01 40 00 "Quality Requirements" for retesting and re-inspecting requirements.

F. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

END OF SECTION 28 05 13

SECTION 28 05 26 - GROUNDING AND BONDING FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Grounding conductors.
2. Grounding connectors.
3. Grounding busbars.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 05 00 “Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security.”
2. Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" for monitoring and control cabling associated with system panels and devices.
3. Section 28 05 28 “Pathways for Electronic Safety and Security.”
4. Section 28 05 44 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security.”
5. Section 28 13 00 “Access Control System - SSI.”
6. Section 28 23 00 “Video Surveillance - SSI”

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Signal Ground: The ground reference point designated by manufacturer of the system that is considered to have zero voltage.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

2.2 CONDUCTORS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
2. Panduit Corp.
3. TE Connectivity Ltd.

B. Comply with UL 486A-486B.

C. Insulated Conductors: Stranded copper wire, green or green with yellow stripe insulation, insulated for 600 V, and complying with UL 83.

1. Ground wire for custom-length equipment ground jumpers shall be No. 6 AWG, 19-strand, UL-listed, Type THHN wire.

D. Bare Copper Conductors:

1. Solid Conductors: ASTM B 3.
2. Stranded Conductors: ASTM B 8.
3. Tinned Conductors: ASTM B 33.
4. Bonding Cable: 28 kcmils (14.2 sq. mm), 14 strands of No. 17 AWG conductor, and 1/4 inch (6.3 mm) in diameter.
5. Bonding Conductor: No. 4 or No. 6 AWG, stranded conductor.
6. Bonding Jumper: Tinned-copper tape, braided conductors terminated with two-hole copper ferrules; 1-5/8 inches (41 mm) wide and 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) thick.

2.3 CONNECTORS

A. Comply with Section 27 05 26 “Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems.”

2.4 GROUNDING BUSBARS

A. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following (or approved equal):

1. Chatsworth Products, Inc.
2. Erico.
3. Harger Lightning and Grounding.
4. Panduit Corp.

B. Grounding Busbars: Connect to existing building primary bonding busbar (PBB). Predrilled rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, 1/4 by 2 inches (6.3 by 50 mm) in cross section, length as indicated on Drawings. The busbar shall be for wall mounting, shall be Nationally Recognized Testing Laboratory (NRTL) listed as complying with UL 467, and shall comply with ANSI/TIA-607-E.

1. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.
2. Mounting Hardware: Stand-off brackets that provide at least a 2-inch (50-mm) clearance to access the rear of the busbar. Brackets and bolts shall be stainless steel.
3. Stand-off insulators for mounting shall be Lexan or PVC. Comply with UL 891 for use in 600 V switchboards, impulse tested at 5000 V.

C. Rack and Cabinet Grounding Busbars: Rectangular bars of hard-drawn solid copper, accepting conductors ranging from No. 14 to No. 2/0 AWG, NRTL listed as complying with UL 467, and complying with ANSI/TIA-607-E. Predrilling shall be with holes for use with lugs specified in this Section.

1. Cabinet-Mounted Busbar: Terminal block, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the cabinet.
2. Rack-Mounted Horizontal Busbar: Designed for mounting in 19- or 23-inch (483- or 584-mm) equipment racks. Include a copper splice bar for transitioning to an adjoining rack, and stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.
3. Rack-Mounted Vertical Busbar: 72 or 36 inches (1827 or 914 mm) long, with stainless-steel or copper-plated hardware for attachment to the rack.

2.5 LABELING

A. Comply with Section 27 05 26 “Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

1. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.
2. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

B. Signal Ground:

1. For each system, establish the signal ground and label that location as such.
2. Bond the signal ground to the alternating-current (ac) power system service by connecting to one of the following listed locations, using insulated No. 6 AWG, stranded, Type THHN wire:

a. Grounding bar in an electrical power panelboard if located in the same room or space as the signal ground.
b. Telecommunications grounding busbar.

C. Comply with NECA 1.

3.2 APPLICATION

A. Conductors: Install solid conductor for No. 8 AWG and smaller and stranded conductors for No. 6 AWG and larger unless otherwise indicated.

B. Grounding and Bonding Conductors:

1. Install in the straightest and shortest route between the origination and termination point, and no longer than required. The bend radius shall not be smaller than eight times the diameter of the conductor. No one bend may exceed 90 degrees.
2. Install without splices.
3. Support at not more than 36-inch (900-mm) intervals.

3.3 CONNECTIONS

A. Stacking of conductors under a single bolt is not permitted when connecting to busbars.

B. Assemble the wire connector to the conductor, complying with manufacturer's written instructions and as follows:

1. Use crimping tool and the die specific to the connector.
2. Pre-twist the conductor.
3. Apply an antioxidant compound to all compression connections.

C. Shielded Cable: Bond the shield of shielded cable to the signal ground. Comply with ANSI/TIA-568.1-E and ANSI/TIA-568.2-D when grounding screened, balanced, twisted-pair cables.

D. Rack- and Cabinet-Mounted Equipment: Bond powered equipment chassis to the cabinet or rack grounding bar. Power connection shall comply with NFPA 70; the equipment grounding conductor in the power cord of cord- and plug-connected equipment shall be considered as a supplement to bonding requirements in this Section.

3.4 IDENTIFICATION

A. Comply with Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding for Communications Systems."

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspect physical and mechanical condition. Verify tightness of accessible, bolted, electrical connections with a calibrated torque wrench according to manufacturer's written instructions.

END OF SECTION 28 05 26

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 28 05 28 - PATHWAYS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Metal conduits, tubing, and fittings.
2. Nonmetallic conduits, tubing, and fittings.
3. Metal wireways and auxiliary gutters.
4. Nonmetallic wireways and auxiliary gutters.
5. Surface pathways.
6. Boxes, enclosures, and cabinets.
7. Handholes and boxes for exterior underground cabling.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 26 05 33 "Raceway and Boxes for Electrical Systems."
2. Section 27 05 28 "Pathways for Communications Systems" for conduits, surface pathways, innerduct, boxes, and faceplate adapters serving communications systems.
3. Section 28 05 00 "Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For surface pathways, wireways and fittings, floor boxes, hinged-cover enclosures, and cabinets.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Coordination Drawings: Pathway routing plans, drawn to scale, on which the following items are shown and coordinated with each other, using input from installers of items involved:

1. Structural members in paths of pathway groups with common supports.
2. HVAC and plumbing items and architectural features in paths of conduit groups with common supports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 METAL CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. General: Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

B. FMC: Comply with UL 1; aluminum.

C. LFMC: Flexible steel conduit with PVC jacket and complying with UL 360.

2.3 NONMETALLIC CONDUITS, TUBING, AND FITTINGS

A. General: Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

B. ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 13 and UL 1653.

C. LFNC: Comply with UL 1660.

D. Fittings for ENT: Comply with NEMA TC 3; match to conduit or tubing type and material.

E. Fittings for LFNC: Comply with UL 514B.

2.4 METAL WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

2.5 NONMETALLIC WIREWAYS AND AUXILIARY GUTTERS

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

2.6 SURFACE PATHWAYS

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

2.7 BOXES, ENCLOSURES, AND CABINETS

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PATHWAY APPLICATION

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems” unless otherwise indicated below.

B. Fittings: All conduit fittings shall be threadless for conduits containing security conductors.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems” unless otherwise indicated below.

B. Fittings: All conduit fittings shall be threadless for conduits containing security conductors.

C. Surface Pathways: Surface pathway for surface electrical outlet boxes are prohibited unless specifically indicated on Drawings.

3.3 INSTALLATION OF UNDERGROUND CONDUIT

A. Comply with Section 27 05 28 “Pathways for Communications Systems.”

3.4 SLEEVE AND SLEEVE-SEAL INSTALLATION FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY PENETRATIONS

A. Install sleeves and sleeve seals at penetrations of exterior floor and wall assemblies. Comply with requirements in Section 28 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Electronic Safety and Security."

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect coatings, finishes, and cabinets from damage and deterioration.

1. Repair damage to galvanized finishes with zinc-rich paint recommended by manufacturer.
2. Repair damage to PVC coatings or paint finishes with matching touchup coating recommended by manufacturer.

END OF SECTION 28 05 28

SECTION 28 05 44 – SLEEVES AND SLEEVE SEALS FOR ELECTRONIC SAFETY AND SECURITY

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Sleeves for pathway and cable penetration of non-fire-rated construction walls and floors.
2. Sleeve-seal systems.
3. Sleeve-seal fittings.
4. Grout.
5. Silicone sealants.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 05 00 “Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security.”

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling.”

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements."

2.2 SLEEVES

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 “Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling.”

2.3 SLEEVE-SEAL SYSTEMS

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

2.4 SLEEVE-SEAL FITTINGS

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

2.5 GROUT

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

2.6 SILICONE SEALANTS

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 SLEEVE INSTALLATION FOR NON-FIRE-RATED ELECTRICAL PENETRATIONS

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.2 SLEEVE-SEAL-SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

3.3 SLEEVE-SEAL-FITTING INSTALLATION

A. Refer to the requirements of Section 27 05 44 "Sleeves and Sleeve Seals for Communications Pathways and Cabling."

END OF SECTION 28 05 44

SECTION 28 13 00 – ACCESS CONTROL SYSTEM - SSI

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. The scope of the work for the access control system (ACS) under this project is to expand the existing C-Cure system as manufactured by Tyco/Software House. The scope includes installation of new controllers, new card readers and other components as indicated on the Drawings and specified herein to provide a complete and operational system. The work in this section shall be performed by the existing ACS maintenance contractor currently under contract with the Owner to provide maintenance for the ACS.

B. Section Includes but not limited to:

1. Controllers.
2. Card readers.
3. Door position switches.
4. Surge and tamper protection.
5. Power Transfer.
6. Lock Power supplies.
7. Key cards.
8. Interfaces.
9. Cables.
10. Transformers.
11. Software requirements.
12. Graphic Maps.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 28 05 00 “Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security.”

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a “need to know.” As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ACM: Access Control Module

B. ACS: Access control system.

C. GCM: General Control Module

D. I/O: Input/Output.

E. LAN: Local area network.

F. ILM: Wilmington International Airport-The Owner.

G. PTC: Positive Temperature Coefficient.

H. UPS: Uninterruptible power supply.

I. VMS: Video management system.

J. Wiegand: Patented magnetic principle that uses specially treated wires embedded in the credential card.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, and furnished specialties and accessories. Reference each product to a location on Drawings. Test and evaluation data presented in Product Data shall comply with SIA BIO-01.

1. Shop Drawings - Provide complete shop drawings which include the following.
    a. Indicate all system device locations on 1/8" scale architectural floor plans. No other system(s) shall be included on these plans.
    b. Include full schematic wiring information on these drawings for all devices. Wiring information shall include cable type, conductor routings, quantities, and connection details at device.
    c. Include a complete ACS one-line, block diagram indicating the scope of the work.
    d. Include a statement of the system sequence of operation of each access control portal and overall system performance.
    e. Include a statement indicating seamless integration of various systems.
2. Product Data - Provide complete product data that includes the following.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

a. Manufacturer's technical data for all material and equipment at the system and subsystem level to be provided as part of the contract.
b. A system description including analysis and calculations used in sizing equipment required by the ACS. The description shall indicate how the equipment will operate as a system to meet the performance requirements of the ACS. The following information shall be supplied as a minimum.
    1) ACS(s) processor(s), disk space and memory size
    2) Description of site equipment and its configuration
    3) Network bandwidth, latency and reliability requirements
    4) Back-up/archive system size and configuration
    5) Start-up operations
    6) System expansion capability and method of implementation
    7) System power requirements and UPS sizing
    8) Device/component environmental requirements (cooling and/or heating parameters)
    9) A description of the operating system and application software

3. Contract Close-Out Submittals - Provide three sets of hard copy manuals and three sets electronic format manuals including operating instructions, maintenance recommendations and parts list including wiring and connection diagrams modified to reflect as-built conditions.

4. Manuals - Final copies of the manuals shall be delivered within 30 days after completing the installation test. Each manual's contents shall be identified on the cover. The manual shall include names, addresses, and telephone numbers of the contractor responsible for the installation and maintenance of the system and the factory representatives for each item of equipment for each system. The manuals shall have a table of contents and labeled sections. The final copies delivered after completion of the installation test shall include all modifications made during installation, checkout, and acceptance testing. The manuals shall consist of the following.

    a. Functional Design Manual - The functional design manual shall identify the operational requirements for the system and explain the theory of operation, design philosophy, and specific functions. A description of hardware and software functions, interfaces, and requirements shall be included.
    b. Hardware Manual - The manual shall describe all equipment furnished including:
        1) General description and specifications
        2) Installation and check out procedures.
        3) Equipment layout and electrical schematics to the component level

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

4) System layout drawings and schematics
5) Alignment and calibration procedures
6) Manufacturers repair parts list indicating sources of supply

c. Software Manual - The software manual shall describe the functions of all software and shall include all other information necessary to enable proper loading, testing, and operation. The manual shall include:
1) Definition of terms and functions
2) System use and application software
3) Initialization, start up, and shut down
4) Reports generation
5) Details on forms customization and field parameters

d. Operators Manual - The operators manual shall fully explain all procedures and instructions for the operation of the system including:
1) Computers and peripherals
2) System start up and shut down procedures
3) Use of system, command, and applications software
4) Recovery and restart procedures
5) Graphic alarm presentation
6) Use of report generator and generation of reports
7) Data entry
8) Operator commands
9) Alarm messages and reprinting formats
10) System permissions functions and requirements

e. Maintenance Manual - The maintenance manual shall include descriptions of maintenance for all equipment including inspection, periodic preventive maintenance, fault diagnosis, and repair or replacement of defective components.

5. As-Built Drawings - Record Drawings: Provide, and keep up-to-date, a complete record set of drawings which shall be corrected and shall show every change from the original Contract Drawings and shop drawings through final acceptance. The record set of drawings shall be protected against soiling, tears and similar damage and defacement. This set of prints shall be kept on the job site and shall be used only as a record set. This shall not be construed as authorization for the Contractor to make changes in the Work without proper approvals. Upon completion of the Work and before final payment, the Contractor shall submit the complete record set to the Owner/Owner's Representative for review. Upon acceptance, the record set shall be converted to computer generated as-built drawings to be retained by the Owner, or by their representative. Hand-drawn sketches or red-lined markups will not be accepted.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

B. Other Action Submittals:

1. Project planning documents as specified in Part 3.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit closeout Submittals with in 30 days of substantial completion.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: An employer of workers trained and approved by manufacturer.

1. Cable installer must have on staff a registered communication distribution designer (RCDD) certified by Building Industry Consulting Service International (BICSI).

B. Source Limitations: Obtain controllers, Identifier readers, and all software through one source from single manufacturer.

C. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

D. Comply with NFPA 70, "National Electrical Code."

E. Comply with SIA CP-01 and SIA DC-03 and SIA DC-07.

1.8 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Controllers:

1. Store in temperature- and humidity-controlled environment in original manufacturer's sealed containers. Maintain ambient temperature between 50 and 85 deg F, and not more than 80 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

2. Open each container; verify contents against packing list; and file copy of packing list, complete with container identification, for inclusion in operation and maintenance data.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

3. Save original manufacturer's containers and packing materials and deliver as directed under provisions covering extra materials.

1.9 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: System shall be capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Control Station: Rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 60 to 85 deg F and a relative humidity of 20 to 80 percent, noncondensing.

2. Indoor, Controlled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosure. System components, except the central-station control unit, installed in [air-conditioned] [temperature-controlled] indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 36 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

3. Indoor, Uncontrolled Environment: NEMA 250, Type 3R, Type 4, Type 12 or Type 12K enclosures. System components installed in non-air-conditioned, non-temperature-controlled indoor environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of 0 to 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing.

4. Outdoor Environment: NEMA 250, NEMA 250, Type 3, Type 3R, Type 3S, Type 4 or Type 4X enclosures. System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient conditions of minus 30 to plus 122 deg F dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation where exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 145 mph.

5. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.

6. Corrosive Environment: For system components subjected to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones, provide NEMA 250, Type 4X or Type 6P enclosures.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1.10 QUALIFICATIONS

A. The system contractor/integrator shall have enterprise level certification from the approved manufacturer.

B. The system contractor/integrator responsible for providing the ACS shall have at least 10 years' experience in furnishing and installation of such systems.

C. The system contractor/integrator shall have previous experience in installation of airport security systems in US for at least 2 projects in the past 5 years. Contractor shall provide names of the project, year completed and references to the A/E for review and approval.

D. The system contractor's project manager and on-site superintendent shall have a minimum of 15 years of experience.

E. Manufacturer Qualifications:

1. Manufacturer of the ACS shall be an established organization with referenced and documented experience delivering and maintaining Security Systems of equal or higher sophistication and complexity as compared to the system detailed in this specification.

2. ACS Manufacturer's manufacturing facilities shall be certified ISO-9000:2000 operations, utilize ISO-9000:2000 manufacturing procedures and maintain their ISO certifications.

3. ACS Manufacturer shall employ at a minimum the following methods for Quality Assurance of component and assembly devices.

   a. Visual inspection of devices shall be performed to verify assembly according to defined procedures. End-of-line operational tests shall be performed to ensure product functionality has been correctly configured. A system burn-in period shall be utilized to screen for early life failures of electronic components.

4. Individual functionality and system level regression testing shall be performed to ensure compliance with product specifications. Single and multiple unit system tests shall be performed to mimic end-user installation configurations. Automated hardware and software testing shall be utilized to evaluate system performance under published operational loads and shall be compared to published system capabilities.

F. Access controls software experience: The ACS and video management system (VMS) contractor/integrator shall have factory trained personnel from the approved

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

manufacturer with a minimum of 5 years of experience in system integration and a minimum of 2 years of experience in the proposed ACS for this project. Submit name of the qualified personnel.

1.11 MAINTENANCE SERVICES - WARRANTY

A. General Requirements: The Contractor shall provide all services required and equipment necessary to maintain the entire ACS in an operational state as specified for a period of 1 year after formal written acceptance of the system and shall provide all necessary material required for performing scheduled service or other unscheduled work.

B. Description of Work: The service and repair of the ACS including all equipment provided under this specification supplied by the successful contractor. The Contractor shall provide the manufacturer's required scheduled and unscheduled maintenance and all other work necessary to keep the ACS at its maximum performance.

C. Personnel: Service personnel shall be factory certified in the maintenance and repair of the equipment installed under this section of the Specification. The Owner shall be advised in writing of the name and phone number of the designated 24/7 service representative, and of any change in personnel.

D. Schedule of Work: This work shall be performed during regular working hours, Monday through Friday, excluding holidays at ILM.

1. Inspections: The Contractor shall perform two minor inspections at 6-month intervals (or more often if recommended by the manufacturer), and two major inspections offset equally between the minor inspections to effect quarterly inspection of alternating magnitude.

2. Minor Inspections: These inspections shall include:

   a. Visual checks and operational tests of all console equipment, peripheral equipment, field hardware, sensors, and electrical and mechanical controls.
   b. Mechanical adjustments if required on any mechanical or electromechanical devices.

3. Major Inspections: These inspections shall include all work described under paragraph “Minor Inspections” and the following work:

   a. Clean all ACS equipment, including interior and exterior surfaces.
   b. Perform diagnostics on all equipment.
   c. Check, walk test, and if recommended by the manufacturer’s maintenance procedures, calibrate each sensor.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a “need to know.” As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

d. Run all system software diagnostics and correct all diagnosed problems.

E. Operation: Performance of scheduled adjustments and repair shall verify operation of the ACS as demonstrated by the applicable tests of the performance verification test.

F. Emergency Service: The Owner will initiate service calls when the ACS is not functioning properly. Qualified personnel shall be available to provide service to the complete ACS. The Owner shall be furnished with a telephone number where the service supervisor can be reached at all times. Service personnel shall be at site within 4 hours after receiving a request for service.

G. Records and Logs: The Contractor shall keep records and logs of each task, and shall organize cumulative records for each component, and for the complete system chronologically. A continuous log shall be maintained for all devices. The log shall contain all initial settings. Complete logs shall be kept and shall be available for inspection on site, demonstrating that planned and systematic adjustments and repairs have been accomplished for the ACS.

H. Work Requests: The Contractor shall separately record each service call request on a service request form. The form shall include the model and serial number identifying the component involved, its location, date and time the call was received, specific nature of trouble, names of service personnel assigned to the task, instructions describing what has to be done, the amount and nature of the materials used, the time and date work started, and the time and date of completion. The Contractor shall deliver a record of the work performed within 5 days after work is accomplished.

I. System Modifications: The Contractor shall make any recommendations for system modification in writing to the Owner. No system modifications shall be made without prior approval of the Owner. Any modifications made to the system shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and other documentation affected.

J. Software: The Contractor shall provide all software updates during the period of the warranty and verify operation of the system. These updates shall be accomplished in a timely manner, fully coordinated with ACS operators, shall include training for the new changes/features enabled, and shall be incorporated into the operations and maintenance manuals, and software documentation.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. ACS Software and Hardware – The existing integrated ACS and Avigilon VMS software and hardware is as manufactured by the following approved manufacturers.

1. Software House – C-Cure 9000 integrated with Avigilon VMS.

2.2 VIDEO INTEGRATION

A. The Airport has integrated ACS and VMS. The ACS shall provide the ability to identify and automatically configure all cameras on a controller. The ACS shall provide the ability to interface with IP cameras and bring in pop up videos associated with alarms in ACS.

2.3 ACCESS CONTROL FIELD HARDWARE DEVICES

A. General - The system shall be equipped with the access control field hardware required to receive alarms and administer all access granted/denied decisions. All field hardware must be designed to meet UL 294 and ULC requirements. Depending upon the configuration, the system field hardware must be able to include any or all of the following components:

1. Intelligent Field Panels (IFP)
2. Access Control Module (ACM)
3. General Control Module (GCM)
4. Proximity Card Readers
5. Panel Power Supplies

B. Intelligent Field Panel (IFP): Controllers shall be iSTAR Ultra as manufactured by Software House.

1. Processor and Memory
   a. The Network Door Controller's microprocessor shall be of sufficient speed and power to provide on-board AES 256-bit encryption without use of an external encryption device, while providing access decisions within 500 ms on a fully loaded system. The controller shall have at least 2GB of on-board memory for cardholder and event storage. There shall be at least 16GB of on-board FLASH memory that shall be used for boot code and operating system code, and for memory backup.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

b. The controller shall be able to locally store at least 500,000 card holders, using five cards/person and with 10 clearances/person, while also providing room for a transaction buffer of 10,000 alarms and events (minimum) in case communications to the host is lost.

2. Memory Retention and Real Time Clock Backup
   a. The Network Door Controller must include automatic means to back up the system memory, including card-holder records, configuration information, and alarm/event information, to onboard non-volatile flash memory in the event of AC power loss or Battery Low alarm. During the power interruption, the system's real time clock shall be backed up using a lithium coin cell battery such that the time is current when power is restored.
3. Dual Ethernet Network Ports
   a. The Network Door Controller shall have two on-board 10/100/1Gb Ethernet ports, using standard RJ-45 connectors. The network ports must support full duplex communications. The controller must provide visual LED indication of transmit and receive activity for the Ethernet communications port. Controllers that do not offer full duplex 1Gb connectivity will not be accepted.
4. Secondary Communications
   a. Using the dual network ports, the controller must support a primary network communications path and secondary communications path to the system server. Failover operation is described later in this document.
5. Field I/O Wiring Modules (ACMs)
   a. The Network Door Controller shall provide terminations for field wiring through the use of modular ACM boards (Access Control Modules). Each module shall support up to 8 readers and 8 doors, and a Network Door Controller may utilize either one or two ACMs, for a total of 16 readers.
      1) An eight-reader Network Door Controller shall be able to be easily upgraded in the field to a 16-reader controller, through the addition of a second ACM board.
6. USB Communications
   a. Communications from each ACM to the Network Door Controller's GCM (General Control Module) shall be made using a standard USB connection.
7. Ethernet Door Modules (IP-ACMs)
   a. Ethernet Door Modules shall be located near the doors they control to reduce the wiring needs of the ACS. Each Ethernet Door module shall provide terminations for the field wiring needs of one or two access-controlled doors.
8. Network Connectivity
   a. The Ethernet Door Module shall have one Ethernet port, for TCP/IP communications to the Network Door Controller. The Ethernet port shall

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

support GigE Ethernet compatibility, as well as 10/100bT Ethernet. Door modules that do not support GigE connectivity shall not be considered. Communications to the Network Door Controller shall be encrypted with AES 256-bit encryption.

9. Power Requirements
   a. The Network Door Controller shall be powered from a low voltage 12VDC power source. Within a range of +/- 15%. 12VDC, power is used to power the controller electronics, plus, reader power and RS485 bus power.
10. Lock Power Management
   a. In addition to system power, each ACM I/O module shall be capable of managing and controlling lock power, such that separate individual fused relay boards or lock isolation relays shall not be required. Each ACM shall provide two lock power inputs in addition to system power; each output relay on the ACM shall be configurable via jumper to use lock power feed 1, lock power feed 2, or dry contact. Lock power feeds may be either 12VDC or 24VDC. All power feeds to outputs shall be power limited via resettable PTC devices.
11. Power Requirements Design
   a. The system designer shall be responsible for calculating the overall power requirements for the Network Door Controller, including locking devices, readers, annunciators, and exit devices. A power calculation spreadsheet shall be used to verify system power requirements, and a safety factor of 50% shall be used when sizing power supplies.
12. Wall Mount System Enclosure
   a. The Network Door Controller shall be housed in a locking 18-gauge steel enclosure, suitable for wall mounting in accordance with UL 294. All cabinet locks shall be keyed alike. The cabinet shall be suitably sized to allow installation of the controller and associated field wiring. The cabinet shall measure 25" in height by 22" in width and 5" in depth. There shall be a power indicator on the door which shall be visible when power is applied to the controller.
13. Expansion
   a. The wall mount enclosure shall be sized to accommodate up to two ACM I/O boards.
14. Tamper Switches
   a. A single, normally closed (NC) tamper switch shall be incorporated into the door. There shall be at least 12 knockouts on the enclosure of various sizes to facilitate conduit and wire routing.
15. Environmental Requirements

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

a. The Network Door Controller shall be capable of operation in temperatures between 0º and 50º C (32º - 122º F), and within humidity levels between 5% and 95%, non-condensing.

16. Reader Inputs
    a. The controller shall provide for direct connection of up to 16 Wiegand read heads. The read heads connected to these ports shall conform to the industry standard Wiegand output format and shall support multiple card technologies including contactless smart card, Wiegand, proximity, barium ferrite, bar code and biometrics. Wiegand readers directly connected to the controller may reside up to 500 ft. from the controller with the proper 18 AWG wiring. Any direct Wiegand reader port may be disabled and an RM series reader shall be connected in its place, through the reader bus, to extend the distance from the controller to the read head. Wiegand reader inputs must be capable of receiving and decoding a bit stream of at least 256 bits.
17. LED Control
    a. In addition to accepting card data from the read heads, the controller shall control the LEDs at the reader, supporting industry standard 2-wire or 1-wire control. The controller shall also provide a signal line to control an external beeper at the reader with an active low going signal. The LED control shall support three LEDs - red, amber and green. The System Server shall support the configuration of these LEDs such that certain LEDs shall illuminate or not illuminate or pulse to indicate various System status conditions. These LEDs shall indicate the following status conditions as a default:
        1) On-line Indication — Amber LED on steady.
        2) Off-line Indication — Red LED on steady.
        3) Card Accepted — Green LED pulses for door open time.
        4) Card/PIN — Amber LED pulses to enter PIN. Subsequent red/green LEDs mimic card input.
        5) Alarm Condition — All LEDs pulse in alternating pattern.
18. Wiegand Keypad Support
    a. The direct Wiegand reader ports shall support Wiegand readers with integrated Wiegand output keypads. The supported data format shall conform to industry standard 4-bit or 8-bit (4 bits plus 4 bits complemented) Wiegand keypad data.
19. Power for Readers
    a. The controller shall provide +12VDC power for each reader, up to 1.5A each, on separate wiring terminals.
20. Support for RS485 Readers, with Display/Keypad

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

a. The controller shall support RS485 readers, to accommodate door control at distances greater than the 500 foot Wiegand distance limit, and to provide support for Software House RM series readers with a custom user display. The controller shall support up to 16 RM-series card readers, and can also be configured to use a mix of Wiegand and RM-readers, such that the overall reader count from Wiegand and RS485 readers does not exceed 16.

21. Support for RS485 OSDP Secure Channel Readers
    a. The controller shall support OSDP (Open Supervised Device Protocol) RS485 readers, to provide support for open standard readers that conform to the OSDP 2.1.6 standard, as published by the SIA (Security Industry Association). The unit must support OSDP secure channel, utilizing AES 128-bit encryption and supporting automatic custom key management.
22. Supervised Inputs
    a. Twenty-four (24) Class A supervised inputs shall be provided on each ACM module, providing three inputs per reader. All supervised inputs in the system shall be field-configurable to accept either 1K, 5K or 10K ohm terminating resistor networks which may be configured to accept Normally Open (NO) or Normally Closed (NC) switches or contacts. Each end-of-line (EOL) resistor network shall be configured such that the circuit reports unique messages for a secure circuit, alarm condition, and an open or shorted input (supervision alarm). Each input must also be capable of reading a non-supervised circuit.
    b. Each two-wire input must be able to be configured individually for its supervisory circuit type.
    c. Each two-wire input must be terminated on its own connector and must not share a connector with another input.
    d. The Monitoring Application Interface shall provide the status of the inputs and shall log changes in input status. Supervised inputs shall be able to be taken offline for diagnostic purposes and each input shall support being linked directly to an output or to a system event. All input activations shall be reported to the Monitoring Application and stored in the Historical Journal on the System Server.
23. General Inputs
    a. The Network Door Controller shall provide dedicated, normally closed inputs for:
24. 2.11.1 Enclosure Tamper
    a. In a wall-mount cabinet, the tamper input on the GCM shall be pre-wired to the enclosure door to report opening of the door as a tamper event. In a rack-mount enclosure system, each enclosure's tamper switch shall be pre-wired to either the GCM or ACM tamper input.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

25. Power Fail
    a. A dedicated input shall be provided for a power failure alarm. When using an external DC power supply to power the unit, this input shall be wired to the power supply's alarm output
26. Low Battery
    a. A dedicated input shall be provided for a low battery alarm. When using external DC power supply to power the unit, this input shall be wired power supply's low battery alarm output
27. Outputs
    a. The Network Door Controller shall provide 16 separate outputs on each ACM module, configurable through on-board jumpers as either "wet-lock1" (power sourcing), "wet-lock2" (power sourcing) or as dry contact form C relays. The outputs shall be used to control door locks, local annunciators, and other output devices as required.
28. Output Protection and Power Ratings
    a. Each output shall be individually protected with a PTC resettable fuse, transzorbs and snubbers so that power can be directly provided to locking devices without damage to the controller.
    b. When sourcing power to the outputs, one or both lock power inputs may be used. Outputs shall be able to provide at least 0.75A at 12VDC or 24VDC.
    c. Eight of the output relays shall be socketed, designed to control lock circuits, and shall be rated for 5.0A, 30VAC/DC when used as a dry contact control relay.
    d. The other eight (8) relays shall be non-socketed, designed to control local door annunciator devices, and shall be rated for at least 1.0A at 30 VAC/30 VDC when used as a dry contact control relay.
    e. The controller shall provide a LED for visual indication of each output's status.
    f. Each output must be terminated on its own connector and must not share a connector with another output.
    g. The Monitoring Application Interface shall provide the current status of each output and shall allow the manual activation of each output individually or in user-defined groups for diagnostic purposes. All output activations shall be reported to the Monitoring Application and stored in the Historical Journal on the System Server.
29. Fire Alarm Interlock
    a. Each lock output shall be capable of being controlled directly from a fire alarm input on the ACM board, based on a local dip switch setting for each output. When the fire alarm input is activated, the lock output shall be controlled to the door open state if its fire alarm dip switch was enabled for

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

that lock. Fire alarm control shall be hard-wired and not dependent on any software or firmware function to operate. Fire alarm functionality shall be tested and listed per UL.

b. A separate fire alarm key switch latch input shall be provided. This input shall be used if manual intervention is required after a fire alarm before the locks are able to return to their normal (locked) condition. The ACM module shall have a key switch enable switch to enable this feature.

30. Local Display

a. The controller shall include a local, on-board two-line LCD for status and field diagnostic messages. Provide local switches on the controller to set the LCD messaging and diagnostic modes.

b. For normal operations, the LCD shall be configured to display status messages. For troubleshooting operations, the LCD shall be configured to display diagnostic messages for readers and card data, inputs, outputs, network ports and other connected devices.

c. As a minimum, status messages shall include:

1) iSTAR boot information
2) Date and time
3) Firmware version
4) Controller status information.
5) Configured power and measured power
6) IP address and MAC address of controller
7) Host connectivity status
8) The LCD shall also provide diagnostic information for:
9) Cards/Readers – display raw card data, number of bits, reader number
10) Inputs – display changes in input state
11) Outputs – test each output in sequence
12) Ethernet ports – test operation of the port

C. I/O Expansion

D. The Network Door Controller shall support input and output expansion, through the use of RS485-based input/output modules. Each ACM module shall support up to 16 I/) modules, each providing eight supervised inputs, and up to 16 R8 eight-output form C relay modules. Form C relays shall be rated at 2A resistive and 1A inductive at 30VAC/DC.

E. The controller's wall mount enclosure shall be able to accommodate up to four modules mounted internally, without need for an external enclosure of any kind.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

F. The controller must provide, at least, eight RS-485 expansion ports. Each port must have LED indication of transmit and receive communications activity. End-of-line (EOL) termination resistors shall be provided for each port to satisfy RS-485 multi-drop requirements. The termination resistors must be selectable, by switch, to provide the possibility of a "Y" wiring arrangement.

G. Each RM reader expansion bus must provide +12VDC power to its associated devices, through on-board power terminals. Each RM device may be powered from the controller, or through a local +12VDC source.

H. Wiring Connectors

I. All connectors shall be screw down type and pluggable, to facilitate field replacements and simplify testing. Connector spacing shall be such that connectors cannot be placed on the wrong wiring terminals.

2.4 Card Readers

A. Manufacturer: Provide products by the following:

1. HID Global Corporation

B. Card Reader: Card readers shall match existing Signo model 40K readers (part number 40KNKs-00-000000 with the exception of mullion mounted readers, refer to mounting paragraph below) as currently installed and meet the following requirements:
   1. The system shall utilize contactless smart card readers with integrated keypads at all card reader locations shown on the Drawings, unless otherwise indicated.
   2. The reader shall transmit encrypted data at a frequency of 13.56 MHz using 64-bit authentication. Contractor shall confirm requirements for Wiegand or OSDP with the Owner prior to the start of work.
   3. The reader shall meet the following standards:
      a. UL/C 294 listed;
      b. FCC certified;
      c. CE certified;
      d. ISO 14443A compliant (card serial number read-only);
   4. Units shall be mounted to back plates using tamper resistant screws and shall be installed as recommended by the manufacturer. Back plates shall be mounted to single-gang back boxes (with the exception of mullion mounted readers mounted directly to doorframes). Readers shall be sufficiently insulated so as not to allow false positive reads by an adjacent reader or cause the signal to be attenuated.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

5. Readers shall be NEMA 4X rated with UL94 polycarbonate housing and listed under UL 294 as an access control system accessory. Readers shall be flush wall mounted wherever possible (exceptions must be reviewed and approved by the Owner/Owner's Representative prior to installation).
6. The reader shall be capable of reading key cards when the cards are presented to the reader at a distance of up to approximately 2.4", depending on the type of key card used (2kbit, 16kbit or 32kbit card).
7. Entry/exit shall be allowed by the system under one of the following conditions, as defined by the Owner on a per door basis:
   a. Valid card is presented to the reader.
   b. Valid personal identification number (PIN) is entered into the keypad.
   c. Valid generic code is entered into the keypad.
   d. Valid card is presented to the reader and a valid PIN is entered into the keypad.
   e. Valid card is presented to the reader and a valid generic code is entered into the keypad.
8. Attempting to enter with a card containing an invalid code or PIN will cause entry to be denied. If PIN entry is invalid after three (3) attempts, the system shall report an alarm condition; however, the door shall remain fully functional for other valid attempts. If entry is forced, the system will alarm.
9. The reader shall require that a card, once read, must be removed from the RF field for approximately one second before reading again to prevent multiple reads from the same card and anti-passback errors.
10. The reader shall have a high-intensity red/green/blue (RGB) light bar integrated into the device to provide clear visual status. The light bar shall provide uniform distribution of light eliminating individual bright spots. The light bar shall illuminate steady red in normal state. Valid reads shall cause the light bar to illuminate steady green during the unlock period. Invalid reads shall cause the light bar to flash red five (5) times. Light bar illumination operation shall be programmable.
11. The reader shall have an audio transducer capable of providing unique tone sequences for various status conditions, including access granted, access denied, power up, and diagnostics. Presenting the card to the reader shall cause a beep to sound once received. Beeper operation shall be programmable.
12. Finish color shall be black.
13. The reader shall be connected via minimum 6-conductor, stranded, 24AWG with overall shield, unless the option to use OSDP protocol is selected. Contractor shall provide quantity of conductors necessary for the functionality described above.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

a. OSDP Communication: When option to use OSDP protocol is selected Contractor shall provide appropriate 4-conductor twisted pair cable with overall shield between the reader and the controller.

14. The reader shall allow the reader firmware to be upgraded in the field without the need to remove the reader from the wall through the use of factory-provided Programming Cards

15. Response Time: Card reader shall respond to passage requests by generating a signal that is sent to the controller. Response time shall be 800 ms or less, from the time the card reader finishes reading the credential card until a response signal is generated.

C. Mounting: Back plates shall be mounted to flush wall single-gang back boxes (with the exception of mullion mounted readers Signo model 20K readers (part number 20KNKs-00-000000 mounted directly to doorframes if required). Readers shall be sufficiently insulated so as not to allow false positive reads by an adjacent reader or cause the signal to be attenuated.

2.5 DOOR POSITION SWITCHES

A. Description: Hermetically sealed magnetic contact switch sets shall be provided where indicated on the Drawings and shall be model MSS-19CL or MSS-20CL as manufactured by Magnasphere, or the equivalent product of another manufacturer. Mounting compound shall be used for flush mount contacts recessed into the door/frame. For access-controlled doors, built-in door position and lock status switches integral to the locking hardware may be substituted for separate reed-type magnetic contacts.

2.6 SURGE AND TAMPER PROTECTION

A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor-entry connection to components.

B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, control units, pull boxes, junction boxes, cabinets, and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Control-station control-unit alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

2.7 POWER TRANSFER

A. Refer to section 087100 Door Hardware. Power transfer devices shall be provided by the Divion 08 Contractor and shall be model EPT-10 as manufactured by Von Dupron, or the equivalent product of another manufacturer.

2.8 LOCK POWER SUPPLIES

A. Provide 24VDC lock power supplies as required in types, sizes and quantities as recommended by the approved manufacturer of each type of electric/electronic locking device. Provide all necessary wiring as recommended by the manufacturer as required to meet intended operation required by the design. Power supplies shall be installed where indicated on the Drawings and connected to UPS units fed from emergency circuits. Provide all necessary relays and connections to the fire alarm system for release of electromagnetic locks to meet NFPA 101 life safety requirements. Refer to Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" for electric/electronic locking specifications.

2.9 KEYCARDS

A. Access control key cards shall be provided and programmed by the Owner.

2.10 KEYING

A. For all doors in the Work, new key cylinders for mechanical and electronic locking must be reviewed and approved by the Security Office, as coordinated with the Owner/Owner's Representative. Quantities and types of key cylinders must be approved by the Owner/Owner's Representative. Refer to Section 08 71 00 "Door Hardware" for locking specifications.

2.11 INTERFACES

A. Interface between ACS and VMS shall be provided for display and control. Integrate and configure video surveillance cameras for automatic cue-up of cameras. Cameras shall be linked to certain security system events as described in the Camera Schedule shown on the Drawings and approved by the Owner. Refer to Section 28 23 00 "Video Surveillance - SSI" for additional requirements.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

2.12 CABLES

A. General Cable Requirements: Comply with requirements in Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security" and as recommended by system manufacturer for integration requirement. All wire types and gauges to be confirmed according to field conditions and distances to mitigate electromotive interference, communications protocol distance limitations, voltage drop, etc.

2.13 TRANSFORMERS

A. General: NFPA 70, Class II control transformers, NRTL listed. Transformers for ACS shall not be shared with any other system.

B. UPS: Connect all critical ACS equipment to circuits connected to UPS with battery backup, including intelligent field panels and transformers.

2.14 SOFTWARE REQUIREMENTS

A. General: The Contractor shall be responsible for all required software licenses and firmware.

2.15 GRAPHIC MAPS

A. General: The ACS Maintenance Contractor shall update existing graphic maps and icons to be displayed on the operator workstation monitor as part of the Project.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerances, hazards to cable installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Examine roughing-in for LAN and control cable conduit systems to PCs, controllers, card readers, and other cable-connected devices to verify actual locations of conduit and back boxes before device installation.

C. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

3.2 PREPARATION

A. Comply with recommendations in SIA CP-01.

B. Comply with ANSI/TIA 606-D, "Administration Standard for Commercial Telecommunications Infrastructure."

C. Obtain detailed Project planning forms from manufacturer of ACS; develop custom forms to suit Project. Fill in all data available from Project plans and specifications and publish as Project planning documents for review and approval.

1. Record setup data for control station and workstations.
2. For each Location, record setup of controller features and access requirements.
3. Propose start and stop times for time zones and holidays, and match up access levels for doors.
4. Set up groups, facility codes, linking, and list inputs and outputs for each controller.
5. Assign action message names and compose messages.
6. Set up alarms. Establish interlocks between alarms, intruder detection, and video surveillance features.
7. Prepare and install alarm graphic maps.
8. Develop user-defined fields.
9. Develop screen layout formats.
10. Complete system diagnostics and operation verification.
11. Prepare a specific plan for system testing, startup, and demonstration.
12. Develop acceptance test concept and, on approval, develop specifics of the test.
13. Develop cable and asset-management system details and input data from construction documents. Include system schematics and Visio Technical Drawings in electronic format.

D. In meetings with Architect and Owner, present Project planning documents and review, adjust, and prepare final setup documents. Use final documents to set up system software.

3.3 CABLING

A. Comply with NECA 1, "Good Workmanship in Electrical Construction."

B. Install cables and wiring according to requirements in Section 28 05 13 "Conductors and Cables for Electronic Safety and Security."

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

C. Wiring Method: Install wiring in raceway except within consoles, cabinets, desks, and counters. Conceal raceway and wiring except in unfinished spaces.

D. Install LAN cables using techniques, practices, and methods that are consistent with Category 6 rating of components and fiber-optic rating of components, and that ensure Category 6 and fiber-optic performance of completed and linked signal paths, end to end.

E. Boxes and enclosures containing security-system components or cabling, and which are easily accessible to employees or to the public, shall be provided with a lock. Boxes above ceiling level in occupied areas of the building shall not be considered accessible. Junction boxes and small device enclosures below ceiling level and easily accessible to employees or the public shall be covered with a suitable cover plate and secured with tamperproof screws.

F. Install end-of-line resistors at the field device location and not at the controller or panel location.

3.4 CABLE APPLICATION

A. Comply with ANSI/TIA 569-E, "Commercial Building Standard for Telecommunications Pathways and Spaces."

B. Cable application requirements are minimum requirements and shall be exceeded if recommended or required by manufacturer of system hardware.

C. ANSI/TIA 232-F Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 50 ft.

D. ANSI/TIA 485-A Cabling: Install at a maximum distance of 2000 ft.

E. Card Readers and Keypads:

1. Install number of conductor pairs recommended by manufacturer for the functions specified by the Owner.
2. Unless manufacturer recommends larger conductors, install No. 22 AWG wire if maximum distance from controller to the reader is 250 ft., and install No. 20 AWG wire if maximum distance is 500 ft.
3. For greater distances, install "extender" or "repeater" modules recommended by manufacturer of the controller.
4. Install minimum No. 18 AWG shielded cable to readers and keypads that draw 50 mA or more.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

F. Install minimum No. 16 AWG cable from controller to electrically powered locks. Do not exceed 250 ft.

G. Install minimum No. 18 AWG ac power wire from transformer to controller, with a maximum distance of 25 ft.

3.5 GROUNDING

A. Comply with Section 27 05 26 "Grounding and Bonding of Communication System."

B. Comply with IEEE 1100, "Recommended Practice for Power and Grounding Electronic Equipment."

C. Ground cable shields, drain conductors, and equipment to eliminate shock hazard and to minimize ground loops, common-mode returns, noise pickup, cross talk, and other impairments.

D. Bond shields and drain conductors to ground at only one point in each circuit.

E. Signal Ground:

1. Terminal: Locate in each equipment room and wiring closet; isolate from power system and equipment grounding.
2. Bus: Mount on wall of main equipment room with standoff insulators.
3. Backbone Cable: Extend from signal ground bus to signal ground terminal in each equipment room and wiring closet.

3.6 IDENTIFICATION

A. Provide identification as required by the Owner. The Owner will provide preferred method of identifying various components.

B. In addition to requirements in this article, comply with applicable requirements of ANSI/TIA 606-D.

C. Label each terminal strip and screw terminal in each cabinet, rack, or panel.

1. All wiring conductors connected to terminal strips shall be individually numbered, and each cable or wiring group being extended from a panel or cabinet to a building-mounted device shall be identified with the name and number of the particular device as shown.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

2. Each wire connected to building-mounted devices is not required to be numbered at the device if the color of the wire is consistent with the associated wire connected and numbered within the panel or cabinet.

3.7 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Perform tests and inspections.

1. Manufacturer's Field Service: Engage a factory-authorized service representative to inspect components, assemblies, and equipment installations, including connections, and to assist in testing.

2. Refer to the drawings for additional requirements for Software House professional services staff.

B. Tests and Inspections:

1. LAN Cable Procedures: Inspect for physical damage and test each conductor signal path for continuity and shorts. Use Class 2, bidirectional, Category 5 tester. Test for faulty connectors, splices, and terminations. Test according to ANSI/TIA 568.1-E, "Commercial Building Telecommunications Cabling Standards - Part 1: General Requirements." Link performance for unshielded twisted pair (UTP) cables must comply with minimum criteria in ANSI/TIA 568.1-E.

2. Test each circuit and component of each system. Tests shall include, but are not limited to, measurements of power-supply output under maximum load, signal loop resistance, and leakage to ground where applicable. System components with battery backup shall be operated on battery power for a period of not less than 10 percent of the calculated battery operating time. Provide special equipment and software if testing requires special or dedicated equipment.

3. Operational Test: After installation of cables and connectors, demonstrate product capability and compliance with requirements. Test each signal path for end-to-end performance from each end of all pairs installed. Remove temporary connections when tests have been satisfactorily completed.

C. Devices and circuits will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

3.8 STARTUP SERVICE

A. Engage a factory-authorized service representative to supervise and assist with startup service.

1. Complete installation and startup checks according to approved procedures that were developed in "Preparation" Article and with manufacturer's written instructions.

3.9 INSPECTIONS AND TESTS

A. Inspections:

1. The prime responsibility for inspection of all materials and work furnished by the Contractor pursuant to the Contract rests with the Contractor. The inspection or waiving of inspections by the Owner shall not relieve the Contractor of any obligations or responsibilities to perform in accordance with the Contract.

2. The Contractor shall assure that components procured from Subcontractors comply with the requirements of the Contract. Suggested methods of providing this assurance are audits of the Subcontractor and its Quality Control Program or receipt inspections and tests designed to demonstrate that the device(s) functions property and complies with the specified requirements. Owner "release" of any materials being furnished by the Contractor's Subcontractors shall not be construed to imply acceptance of same in the end product and shall not in any way relieve the Contractor of its responsibility of inspection.

3. The Contractor shall cooperate fully with the Owner/Owner's representatives and shall grant the Owner free access to all documents and work areas which the Owner/Owner's representative deems necessary to perform thorough and meaningful tests and observations. The Owner representatives shall have the right to inspect the equipment, workmanship, labor, testing procedures, and any other item or task performed, furnished or used by the Contractor under the Contract, and the Owner may reject, without cost or liability, any which are defective or unsuitable for the use and purposes intended or which are not in accordance with the intent of the Specification. The Contractor, upon demand by the Owner, shall remedy or replace, at the Contractor's expense, such defective or unsuitable equipment or performance item.

B. Field Verification Tests

1. Field tests to verify that the system hardware and software, as approved for shipment, function in the same demonstrated manner after installation of the

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

ACS will be performed by the Owner/Owner's representative at the site. The Contractor shall provide any technical assistance required during the tests. A test procedure will be developed by Contractor and reviewed by the Owner prior to performance. These tests shall be performed on the entire system.

2. Where possible, malfunctioning components shall be corrected at the site; otherwise, the Contractor shall remove and replace. Upon correction/replacement, the component shall be retested.

3. System hardware acceptance will be provided by the Owner upon satisfactory completion of the approved system hardware verification tests at the site.

4. System software acceptance will be provided by the Owner upon satisfactory completion of the approved system software operational and verification tests at the site.

5. Reset factory setting passwords as coordinated with the Owner.

END OF SECTION 28 13 00

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

SECTION 28 23 00 - VIDEO SURVEILLANCE - SSI

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. The scope of the work for the video management system (VMS) under this project is to expand the existing Airport VMS made by Avigilon. The scope includes the installation of new networked video cameras (models as indicated on the Drawings) and configuring network video recording to provide a complete and operational system. All cameras shall be configured for dual streaming where one stream is used for video recording and another stream is used for viewing live video at the existing Comm Center workstations. The work in this section shall be performed by the existing VMS maintenance contractor currently under contract with the Owner to provide maintenance for the VMS.

B. Section includes:

1. Video surveillance system requirements.
2. Network video recording.
3. Standard cameras.
4. IP Video intercom system.
5. Signal transmission components.

C. Related Requirements:

1. Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cabling" for data cabling associated with devices.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. ACS: Secured Area Access control system.

B. PTZ: Pan-tilt-zoom.

C. VMS: Video management system.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. General: Comply with Section 28 05 00 "Common Work Results for Electronic Safety and Security."

B. Coordination: Submittals of each type listed below.

C. Materials and Equipment List: Complete list of all materials, equipment and accessories proposed for the Work in accordance with these Specifications and Contract Drawings, including manufacturers, complete catalog identification numbers and model or system designator, quantities, and software packages (where applicable), shall be submitted with the Product Data defined below. The submittal shall be in sufficient detail whereby the equipment and materials proposed can be readily identified. No consideration will be given to partial lists or lists submitted from time-to-time. Approval of materials and equipment will be tentative to the submission of complete shop drawings. The Owner shall not be obligated in any manner for any materials, equipment or accessories that have not been accepted.

D. Product Data: For each type of product indicated. Include rated capacities, operating characteristics, standard wiring diagrams, dimensions, standard colors and finishes, furnished specialties and accessories, and compliances. Clearly indicate all models, features, options and accessories to be provided. Include system block diagrams showing interconnectivity of equipment. Reference each product to a location on Drawings.

E. Shop Drawings: Indicate exact camera positions on shop drawings and in coordination with other trades and with no obstructions. Graphic maps shall include dynamic icons for each camera to allow cue-up of the camera from the graphic map onto the alarm monitor without use of a camera controller. Camera icons shall be either fixed, multi-lens or PTZ in appearance and include camera designation established prior to shop drawing submission as reviewed and approved by the Owner.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1.5 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field quality-control reports.

B. Test Plan and Schedule: Test plan defining all tests required to ensure that system meets technical, operational, and performance specifications within 60 days of date of Contract award.

1.6 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. General: Submit project closeout submittals within 30 days of Substantial Completion.

B. Operation and Maintenance Data: For security system to include in emergency, operation, and maintenance manuals.

1. For each type of product, hard copies of manufacturer's specification sheets, operating specifications, design guides, user's guides for software and hardware, and features and operating sequences (both automatic and manual).
2. PDF files on thumbdrive of the hard-copy submittal.
3. System installation and setup guides with data forms to plan and record options and setup decisions.
4. Lists of spare parts and replacement components recommended to be stored at the site for ready access.

C. Record Drawings: Provide, and keep up to date, a complete record set of drawings which shall be corrected and shall show every change from the original Contract Drawings and shop drawings through final acceptance. The record set of drawings shall be protected against soiling, tears and similar damage and defacement. This set of prints shall be kept on the job site and shall be used only as a record set. This shall not be construed as authorization for the Contractor to make changes in the Work without proper approvals. Upon completion of the Work and before final payment, the Contractor shall submit the complete record set to the Owner/Owner's Representative for review. Upon acceptance, the record set shall be converted to computer generated as-built drawings to be retained by the Owner, or by their representative. Hand-drawn sketches or red-lined markups will not be accepted.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Electrical Components, Devices, and Accessories: Listed and labeled as defined in NFPA 70, by a qualified testing agency, and marked for intended location and application.

B. Comply with NECA 1.

C. Comply with NFPA 70.

D. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system and an access control system shall comply with SIA TVAC.

1.8 PROJECT CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Conditions: Capable of withstanding the following environmental conditions without mechanical or electrical damage or degradation of operating capability:

1. Interior, Controlled Environment: System components installed in air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 36 to 122 degrees F (2 to 50 degrees C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 1 enclosures.
2. Interior, Uncontrolled Environment: System components installed in non-air-conditioned interior environments shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of 0 to 122 degrees F (-18 to +50 degrees C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, noncondensing. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
3. Exterior Environment: System components installed in locations exposed to weather shall be rated for continuous operation in ambient temperatures of -30 to +122 degrees F (-34 to +50 degrees C) dry bulb and 20 to 90 percent relative humidity, condensing. Rate for continuous operation when exposed to rain as specified in NEMA 250, winds up to 85 mph (137 km/h). Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.
4. Hazardous Environment: System components located in areas where fire or explosion hazards may exist because of flammable gases or vapors, flammable liquids, combustible dust, or ignitable fibers shall be rated, listed, and installed according to NFPA 70.
5. Corrosive Environment: System components subject to corrosive fumes, vapors, and wind-driven salt spray in coastal zones. Use NEMA 250, Type 4X enclosures.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

6. Security Environment: Camera housing for use in high-risk detention areas where surveillance equipment may be subject to physical violence.

1.9 WARRANTY

A. Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form in which manufacturer agrees to repair or replace components of video surveillance devices and equipment that fail in materials or workmanship within specified warranty period.

1. Warranty Period: One year from date of Final Acceptance by the Owner.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SYSTEM COMPONENTS

A. Comply with Section 01 60 00 "Product Requirements." Certain equipment shall match or be compatible with existing as defined herein.

B. The Contractor shall furnish and install the latest model of the equipment specified at the time of ordering.

2.2 DESCRIPTION

A. Video Management System: The VMS shall be an extension of the existing airport video surveillance system including compatible cameras and additional video recording. The Contractor shall program new cameras to record and automatically queue up as part of the existing access control integration. Dispatch Operators shall have primary control of moveable cameras that are shared. Electronic data exchange between video surveillance system and an access-control system shall comply with SIA TVAC. Field-installed IP-addressable cameras shall be connected by a high-speed electronic-data transmission network back to the headend.

2.3 SYSTEM REQUIREMENTS

A. Surge Protection: Protect components from voltage surges originating external to equipment housing and entering through power, communication, signal, control, or

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

sensing leads. Include surge protection for external wiring of each conductor's entry connection to components.

1. Minimum Protection for Power Connections 120 V and More: Auxiliary panel suppressors complying with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Transient-Voltage Suppression for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits."
2. Minimum Protection for Communication, Signal, Control, and Low-Voltage Power Connections: Comply with requirements in Section 26 43 13 "Transient-Voltage Suppression for Low-Voltage Electrical Power Circuits" as recommended by manufacturer for type of line being protected.

B. Tamper Protection: Tamper switches on enclosures, cabinets and other system components shall initiate a tamper-alarm signal when unit is opened or partially disassembled. Central-station and operator workstation alarm display shall identify tamper alarms and indicate locations.

2.4 NETWORK VIDEO RECORDING

A. Video Storage: Existing network video recording shall be used to record cameras installed by the project. Contractor shall configure the existing system to record new cameras being added.

B. Video Recording Parameters: All imagers shall be recorded at up to 30 images per at maximum resolution for a period of 30 days minimum.

2.5 STANDARD CAMERAS

A. General: The Contractor shall furnish and install all video surveillance camera models as indicated below as coordinated with the Owner's IT representative and Airport Security. Contractor shall provide the latest generation of the camera model indicated. Configuration of all cameras shall be completed by the Owner's IT representative and turned over to the Contractor for installation. The final field of view for each camera and preset positions for PTZ cameras shall be reviewed and approved by Airport Security.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following to match existing:

1. Avigilon (Motorola Solutions).

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

2. Axis Communications.

C. Interior/Exterior Fixed Color Dome Cameras: Axis model P3268-LV/P3268-LVE, 8 Mpixel day/night minidome IP-addressable camera assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, vari-focal lens, and receiver. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3af and using H.264 video signal compression. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including ceiling mount bracket and smoke dome cover.

D. Exterior Multi-Sensor Cameras: Axis model Q3819-PVE, 4x5 Mpixel, day/night minidome IP-addressable multi-sensor 180-degree panoramic camera assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color cameras, fixed lens, and receiver. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3af and using H.264 video signal compression. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including base bracket.

E. Exterior Multi-Sensor Cameras: Axis model P3737-PLE, 4x5 Mpixel, day/night minidome IP-addressable multi-sensor 360-degree panoramic camera assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color cameras, vari-focal lens, and receiver. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3af and using H.264 video signal compression. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including base bracket. Provide camera mounted in modular unit meeting requirements for integration with security pole mounting bracket as indicated on the Drawings, including all hardware, cables, connectors, power supplies, and adapters.

F. Interior Fixed Color Dome Cameras: Axis model M3086-V, 4 Mpixel day/night minidome IP-addressable camera assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera, fixed lens, and receiver. Powered by PoE IEEE 802.3af and using H.264 video signal compression. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including ceiling mount bracket and smoke dome cover. Coordinate mounting with the elevator installer.

1. Ethernet Over Coax Kit: Units shall be IP-based and comply with established network and video standards. Coax Adapter Kit shall be AXIS model T8640 or approved equal and meet or exceed the following design specifications:
   a. The unit shall be able to provide PoE and PoE+ over 75ohm coaxial cabling and support auto-detection and auto-cutout of connected device units.
   b. The unit shall provide full functionality, including 100/100Mbps symmetrical data for up to 500 m / 1600 ft.
   c. The unit shall support Plug-and-Play installation and shall automatically detect PoE and High PoE-enabled devices and supplies in-line power.

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

d. The unit shall be designed for wall and rack mounting as well as DIN Rail mounting.
e. The base shall be equipped with LED's indicating network link & activity, coax link, PoE over coax, PoE to camera, and available power.
f. The unit shall be equipped with BNC 75 Ohm coaxial cable and with shielded RJ45, TIA 568A and 568B connectors.
g. The unit shall have PoE (IEEE 802.3at Class 4 powered device) or DC (44–57 V) Class 2 isolated power supply (max. 0.7 amps)
h. The base shall have PoE over Coax with safe auto-detection and auto-cutout.
i. The device shall be PoE+ (IEEE 802.3at Type 2 Class 4) enabled to detected devices up to 25.5 W
j. The unit shall operate in temperature range of -10 C° to 50° C (14° F to 122° F) and humidity range of max 95% RH (non-condensing).

G. Exterior Fixed Cameras: Axis model F4105-SLRE dome sensor, 2 Mpixel, day/night minidome camera assembled and tested as a manufactured unit, containing dome assembly, color camera. Powered by F91 main unit with cable up to 30 m (98 ft) and using H.264 video signal compression. Provide mounting hardware meeting requirements on the Drawings, including base bracket. Default 111º field of view, unit supports a wide range of exchangeable M12 lens options. Provide camera mounted to modular unit meeting requirements for integration with security pole mounting hardware as indicated on the Drawings, including all hardware, cables, connectors, power supplies, brackets, and adapters.

2.6 VIDEO INTERCOM STATIONS

A. General: The Contractor shall furnish and install all video intercom stations as indicated below and as coordinated with the Owner's IT representative to expand the Airport Security. Intercom System. Security Intercoms shall be capable of both streaming and locally storing synchronized video and audio data in tamper and weather resistant housing suitable for both indoor and outdoor applications. Contractor shall provide the latest generation of the video intercom door station and camera models indicated. Configuration of all door stations, handsets and existing workstations receiving new software shall be completed by the Owner's IT representative and turned over to the Contractor for installation. The final field of view for each door station and the recording configuration shall be reviewed and approved by Airport Security.

B. Manufacturers: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide products by the following or an Owner approved equal:

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1. Zenitel (or approved equal).

C. System Description: Provide IP Video Door Stations where indicated on the Drawings. Contractor shall provide all hardware, power supplies, software, programming, and configuration required to provide a complete and working system. System shall be IC-EDGE Turbine Compact Video Intercom (IP and SIP audio/video intercom) as manufactured by Zenitel (or approved equal) with the following features:

1. Master-to-master selective calling.
2. SIP, IC-EDGE, and ICX-AlphaCom modes
3. HD video up to 1080p resolution (future)
4. Access control system integration (future).
5. Selective remote control (e.g. door/gate release) (future).
6. Calls queued in order of priority and call-in time.

D. Operation: System shall allow communication between master stations and remote door stations and permit the remote opening of designated doors. Contractor shall provide relay modules for connection to the access control panel located in the LAN room via a dry contact relay as an input to the panel. Relay shall be rated for 24V/0.5A and the cable between relay and panel shall be 16-gauge.

1. Audio and video from each emergency station shall be recorded by the VMS.

E. Audio Video Stations: Provide Emergency Communications Wall Unit with blue light model 1603 with 2-button Audio Door Stations where shown on the drawings, model TCISC1 (Wall mount weather and vandal-resistant). Integrate Axis mode F4105-SLRE dome camera to provide continuous video of the scene.

1. Video and Audio Recording Parameters: All cameras designated for viewing emergency intercoms shall record at 7.5 images per second continuously and 30 images per second with audio during an emergency or information call. Video and audio shall be stored for a minimum of 30 days.

F. Contractor shall provide all necessary connections, interfaces, and software for integration of new intercoms into the VMS.

2.7 SIGNAL TRANSMISSION COMPONENTS

A. Cable: Comply with requirements in Section 27 15 00 "Communications Horizontal Cables" for video and control signals transmitted over category 6A cabling.

B. Ethernet Extenders: Where shown on the drawings, provide “Outreach Max” PoE extenders, as manufactured by Veracity (or approved equal), at IP cameras indicated on

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a “need to know.” As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

the Drawings or cameras with signals transmitted over 295 feet from camera to Comm Room. Where conditions require, provide outdoor rated models.

C. Transient Voltage Surge Suppression: For cameras using PoE.

1. Equipment: Installed at the end device or ahead of midspan devices, Model DTK-MRJPOE, as manufactured by Ditek (or approved equal), meeting UL497B to protect power, video and data circuits that use PoE connections.
2. PoE Extender: Installed on the outputs of Poe extender device, Model DTK-MRJEXTS, as manufactured by Ditek (or approved equal), meeting UL497B to protect power, video and data circuits that use PoE connections.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. General: Examine pathway elements intended for cables. Check raceways and other elements for compliance with space allocations, installation tolerance, hazards to camera installation, and other conditions affecting installation.

B. Unfit Material: Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 WIRING

A. Reference: Comply with requirements in Section 26 05 33 "Raceways and Boxes for Electrical Systems."

B. Wiring Method: Install cables in raceways unless otherwise indicated.

C. Wiring within Enclosures: Bundle, lace, and train conductors to terminal points with no excess and without exceeding manufacturer's limitations on bending radii. Provide and use lacing bars and distribution spools.

D. Splices, Taps, and Terminations: For power and control wiring, use numbered terminal strips in junction, pull, and outlet boxes; terminal cabinets; and equipment enclosures. Tighten electrical connectors and terminals according to manufacturer's published

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

torque-tightening values. If manufacturer's torque values are not indicated, use those specified in UL 486A-486B.

E. Grounding: Provide independent-signal circuit grounding recommended in writing by manufacturer.

3.3 VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SYSTEM INSTALLATION

A. Install cameras level and plumb.

B. Adjust final camera position to obtain the field of view required for camera. Connect all controls and alarms, and adjust.

C. Install power supplies and other auxiliary components at control stations unless otherwise indicated.

D. Install tamper switches on components indicated to receive tamper switches, arranged to detect unauthorized entry into system-component enclosures and mounted in self-protected, inconspicuous positions.

E. Avoid ground loops by making ground connections only at the control station.

F. Identify system components, wiring, cabling, and terminals.

3.4 SYSTEM SOFTWARE AND HARDWARE

A. Test software and hardware, and perform tests for the complete and proper operation of new systems involved. Assign any additional software license to Owner.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Tests and Inspections:

1. Inspection: Verify that units and controls are properly installed, connected, and labeled, and that interconnecting wires and terminals are identified.
2. Pretesting: Align and adjust system and pretest components, wiring, and functions to verify that they comply with specified requirements. Conduct tests at varying lighting levels, including day and night scenes as applicable. Prepare video-surveillance equipment for acceptance and operational testing as follows:

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

a. Prepare Test Plan and Schedule described in "Informational Submittals" Article and submit for approval.
b. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses.
c. Set back-focus of fixed focal length lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Adjust until image is in focus with and without the filter.
d. Set back-focus of zoom lenses. At focus set to infinity, simulate nighttime lighting conditions by using a dark glass filter of a density that produces a clear image. Additionally, set zoom to full wide angle and aim camera at an object 50 to 75 feet (17 to 23 m) away. Adjust until image is in focus from full wide angle to full telephoto, with the filter in place.
e. Set and name all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
f. Set sensitivity of motion detection.
g. Connect and verify responses to alarms.
h. Verify operation of control-station equipment.
i. Verify video recording functionality.
j. Adjust sound levels of microphones.

3. Test Schedule: Schedule tests after pretesting has been successfully completed and system has been in normal functional operation for at least 14 days. Provide a minimum of 10 days' notice of test schedule.
4. Operational Tests: Perform operational system tests to verify that system complies with Specifications. Test equipment for proper operation in all functional modes.

B. Video surveillance system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections. Refer to the requirements of Section 01 73 00 "Execution" for correcting the Work.

C. Prepare test and inspection reports and submit for approval.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Occupancy Adjustments: When requested within 12 months of date of Substantial Completion, provide on-site assistance in adjusting system to suit actual occupied conditions. Provide up to two (2) visits to Project site during other-than-normal occupancy hours for this purpose, as coordinated with the Owner and Tenant. Tasks shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

1. Check cable connections.
2. Check proper operation of cameras and lenses. Verify operation of auto-iris lenses and adjust back-focus as needed.
3. Adjust all preset positions; consult Owner's personnel.
4. Recommend changes to cameras, lenses, and associated equipment to improve Owner's use of video surveillance system.
5. Provide a written report of adjustments and recommendations.

3.7 CLEANING

A. Clean installed items using methods and materials recommended in writing by manufacturer.

B. Clean video-surveillance-system components, including camera-housing windows, lenses, and monitor screens.

3.8 DEMONSTRATION

A. Train Owner's maintenance personnel to adjust, operate, and maintain video-surveillance equipment.

B. Reset factory setting passwords as coordinated with the Owner.

3.9 WARRANTY

A. Unless specified elsewhere, Contractor shall provide a warranty of their work for a period of 1-year from the date of Final Acceptance by the Owner.

END OF SECTION 28 23 00

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SENSITIVE SECURITY INFORMATION

WARNING: This record contains Sensitive Security Information that is controlled under 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542. No part of this record may be disclosed to persons without a "need to know." As defined in 49 CFR parts 15 and 1520, except with the written permission of the Administrator of the Transportation Security Administration. Unauthorized release may result in civil penalty or other action. For U.S. government agencies, public disclosure is governed by 5 and 49 CFR parts 15, 1520 and 1542.

SECTION 31 20 00 - EARTH MOVING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Excavating and filling for rough grading the Site.
2. Preparing subgrades for slabs-on-grade.
3. Excavating and backfilling for buildings and structures.
4. Drainage course for concrete slabs-on-grade.
5. Subsurface drainage backfill for walls and trenches.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 31 63 16 "Auger Cast Piles" for excavation of shafts and disposal of surplus excavated material.

1.2 UNIT PRICES

A. Work of this Section is affected by unit prices for earth moving specified in Section 01 22 00 "Unit Prices."

B. Quantity allowances for earth moving are included in Section 01 21 00 "Allowances."

1.3 DEFINITIONS

A. Backfill: Soil material or controlled low-strength material used to fill an excavation.

1. Initial Backfill: Backfill placed beside and over pipe in a trench, including haunches to support sides of pipe.
2. Final Backfill: Backfill placed over initial backfill to fill a trench.

B. Base Course: Aggregate layer placed between the subbase course and hot-mix asphalt paving.

C. Bedding Course: Aggregate layer placed over the excavated subgrade in a trench before laying pipe.

D. Borrow Soil: Satisfactory soil imported from off-site for use as fill or backfill.

E. Drainage Course: Aggregate layer supporting the slab-on-grade that also minimizes upward capillary flow of pore water.

F. Excavation: Removal of material encountered above subgrade elevations and to lines and dimensions indicated.

1. Authorized Additional Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions as directed by Architect. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.
2. Bulk Excavation: Excavation more than 10 feet (3 m) in width and more than 30 feet (9 m) in length.
3. Unauthorized Excavation: Excavation below subgrade elevations or beyond indicated lines and dimensions without direction by Architect. Unauthorized excavation, as well as remedial work directed by Architect, will be without additional compensation.

G. Fill: Soil materials used to raise existing grades.

H. Structures: Buildings, footings, foundations, retaining walls, slabs, tanks, curbs, mechanical and electrical appurtenances, or other fabricated stationary features constructed above or below the ground surface.

I. Subgrade: Uppermost surface of an excavation or the top surface of a fill or backfill immediately below subbase, drainage fill, drainage course, or topsoil materials.

J. Utilities: On-site underground pipes, conduits, ducts, and cables as well as underground services within buildings.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct preexcavation conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to earthmoving, including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Personnel and equipment needed to make progress and avoid delays.
b. Coordination of Work with utility locator service.
c. Coordination of Work and equipment movement with the locations of tree- and plant-protection zones.
d. Extent of trenching by hand or with air spade.
e. Field quality control.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of the following manufactured products required:

1. Geotextiles.
2. Controlled low-strength material, including design mixture.
3. Geofoam.
4. Warning tapes.

B. Samples for Verification: For the following products, in sizes indicated below:

1. Geotextile: 12 by 12 inches (300 by 300 mm).
2. Warning Tape: 12 inches (300 mm) long; of each color.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For qualified testing agency.

B. Material Test Reports: For each on-site and borrow soil material proposed for fill and backfill as follows:

1. Classification according to ASTM D2487.
2. Laboratory compaction curve according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557 according to geotechnical engineer's written recommendations.

C. Preexcavation Photographs or Videotape: Show existing conditions of adjoining construction and site improvements, including finish surfaces that might be misconstrued as damage caused by earth-moving operations. Submit before earth moving begins.

1.7 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Geotechnical Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM E329 and ASTM D3740 for testing indicated.

1.8 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Traffic: Minimize interference with adjoining roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied or used facilities during earth-moving operations.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction.
2. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by Owner or authorities having jurisdiction.

B. Improvements on Adjoining Property: Authority for performing earth moving indicated on property adjoining Owner's property will be obtained by Owner before award of Contract.

1. Do not proceed with work on adjoining property until directed by Architect.

C. Utility Locator Service: Notify utility locator **service** for area where Project is located before beginning earth-moving operations.

D. Do not commence earth-moving operations until temporary site fencing and erosion- and sedimentation-control measures are in place.

E. The following practices are prohibited within protection zones:

1. Storage of construction materials, debris, or excavated material.
2. Parking vehicles or equipment.
3. Foot traffic.
4. Erection of sheds or structures.
5. Impoundment of water.
6. Excavation or other digging unless otherwise indicated.
7. Attachment of signs to or wrapping materials around trees or plants unless otherwise indicated.

F. Do not direct vehicle or equipment exhaust towards protection zones.

G. Prohibit heat sources, flames, ignition sources, and smoking within or near protection zones.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL MATERIALS

A. General: Provide borrow soil materials when sufficient satisfactory soil materials are not available from excavations.

B. Satisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups SW, SP, and SM according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups; free of rock or gravel larger than 2 inches in any dimension, debris, waste, frozen materials, vegetation, and other deleterious matter.

1. Plasticity Index: Less than 6 percent.

C. Unsatisfactory Soils: Soil Classification Groups GC, SC, CL, ML, OL, CH, MH, OH, and PT according to ASTM D2487, or a combination of these groups.

1. Unsatisfactory soils also include satisfactory soils not maintained within 2 percent of optimum moisture content at time of compaction.

D. Base Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 95 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

E. Engineered Fill: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; with at least 90 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and not more than 12 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

F. Bedding Course: Naturally or artificially graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, crushed stone, and natural or crushed sand; ASTM D2940/D2940M; except with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and not more than 8 percent passing a No. 200 (0.075-mm) sieve.

G. Drainage Course: Narrowly graded mixture of washed crushed stone, or crushed or uncrushed gravel; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 57; with 100 percent passing a 1-1/2-inch (37.5-mm) sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 8 (2.36-mm) sieve.

H. Filter Material: Narrowly graded mixture of natural or crushed gravel, or crushed stone and natural sand; ASTM D448; coarse-aggregate grading Size 67; with 100 percent passing a 1-inch (25-mm) sieve and zero to 5 percent passing a No. 4 (4.75-mm) sieve.

I. Sand: ASTM C33/C33M; fine aggregate.

J. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

2.2 GEOTEXTILES

A. Subsurface Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation greater than 50 percent; complying with AASHTO M 288 and the following, measured per test methods referenced:

1. Survivability:

a. Class 2; AASHTO M 288.

b. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 (0.212-mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D4751.

c. Permittivity: 1.5 sec^{-1}, minimum; ASTM D4491.

d. UV Stability: 80 percent after 500 hours' exposure; ASTM D4355.

2.3 CONTROLLED LOW-STRENGTH MATERIAL

A. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Self-compacting, flowable concrete material produced from the following:

1. Portland Cement: ASTM C150/C150M, Type I or Type II.
2. Fly Ash: ASTM C618, Class C or F.
3. Normal-Weight Aggregate: ASTM C33/C33M, 3/8-inch nominal maximum aggregate size.
4. Foaming Agent: ASTM C869/C869M.
5. Water: ASTM C94/C94M.
6. Air-Entraining Admixture: ASTM C260/C260M.

B. Produce conventional-weight, controlled low-strength material with 140-psi (965-kPa) compressive strength when tested according to ASTM C495/C495M.

2.4 ACCESSORIES

A. Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

B. Detectable Warning Tape: Acid- and alkali-resistant, polyethylene film warning tape manufactured for marking and identifying underground utilities, a minimum of 6 inches (150 mm) wide and 4 mils (0.1 mm) thick, continuously inscribed with a description of the utility, with metallic core encased in a protective jacket for corrosion protection, detectable by metal detector when tape is buried up to 30 inches (750 mm) deep; colored as follows:

1. Red: Electric.
2. Yellow: Gas, oil, steam, and dangerous materials.
3. Orange: Telephone and other communications.
4. Blue: Water systems.
5. Green: Sewer systems.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by earth-moving operations.

B. Protect and maintain erosion and sedimentation controls during earth-moving operations.

C. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from freezing temperatures and frost. Remove temporary protection before placing subsequent materials.

3.2 DEWATERING

A. Provide dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of ground water and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.

B. Prevent surface water and ground water from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, and from flooding Project site and surrounding area.

C. Protect subgrades from softening, undermining, washout, and damage by rain or water accumulation.

1. Reroute surface water runoff away from excavated areas. Do not allow water to accumulate in excavations. Do not use excavated trenches as temporary drainage ditches.

D. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

3.3 EXPLOSIVES

A. Explosives:

1. Do not use explosives.

3.4 EXCAVATION, GENERAL

A. Unclassified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations regardless of the character of surface and subsurface conditions encountered. Unclassified excavated materials may include rock, soil materials, and obstructions. No changes in the Contract Sum or the Contract Time will be authorized for rock excavation or removal of obstructions.

1. If excavated materials intended for fill and backfill include unsatisfactory soil materials and rock, replace with satisfactory soil materials.

B. Classified Excavation: Excavate to subgrade elevations. Material to be excavated will be classified as earth and rock. Do not excavate rock until it has been classified and cross sectioned by Architect. The Contract Sum will be adjusted for rock excavation according to unit prices included in the Contract Documents. Changes in the Contract Time may be authorized for rock excavation.

1. Earth excavation includes excavating pavements and obstructions visible on surface; underground structures, utilities, and other items indicated to be removed; and soil, boulders, and other materials not classified as rock or unauthorized excavation.

3.5 EXCAVATION FOR STRUCTURES

A. Excavate to indicated elevations and dimensions within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). If applicable, extend excavations a sufficient distance from structures for placing and removing concrete formwork, for installing services and other construction, and for inspections.

1. Excavations for Footings and Foundations: Do not disturb bottom of excavation. Excavate by hand to final grade just before placing concrete reinforcement. Trim bottoms to required lines and grades to leave solid base to receive other work.
2. Pile Foundations: Stop excavations 6 to 12 inches (150 to 300 mm) above bottom of pile cap before piles are placed. After piles have been driven, remove loose and displaced material. Excavate to final grade, leaving solid base to receive concrete pile caps.
3. Excavation for Underground Tanks, Basins, and Mechanical or Electrical Utility Structures: Excavate to elevations and dimensions indicated within a tolerance of plus or minus 1 inch (25 mm). Do not disturb bottom of excavations intended as bearing surfaces.

B. Excavations at Edges of Tree- and Plant-Protection Zones:

1. Excavate by hand or with an air spade to indicated lines, cross sections, elevations, and subgrades. If excavating by hand, use narrow-tine spading forks to comb soil

and expose roots. Do not break, tear, or chop exposed roots. Do not use mechanical equipment that rips, tears, or pulls roots.

2. Cut and protect roots according to requirements in Section 01 56 39 "Temporary Tree and Plant Protection."

3.6 EXCAVATION FOR UTILITY TRENCHES

A. Excavate trenches to indicated gradients, lines, depths, and elevations.

1. Beyond building perimeter, excavate trenches to allow installation of top of pipe below frost line.

B. Excavate trenches to uniform widths to provide the following clearance on each side of pipe or conduit. Excavate trench walls vertically from trench bottom to 12 inches (300 mm) higher than top of pipe or conduit unless otherwise indicated.

1. Clearance: **12 inches (300 mm) each side of pipe or conduit** or **As indicated**.

C. Trench Bottoms:

1. Excavate and shape trench bottoms to provide uniform bearing and support of pipes and conduit. Shape subgrade to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits. Remove projecting stones and sharp objects along trench subgrade.

a. For pipes and conduit less than 6 inches (150 mm) in nominal diameter, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support pipe and conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
b. For pipes and conduit 6 inches (150 mm) or larger in nominal diameter, shape bottom of trench to support bottom 90 degrees of pipe or conduit circumference. Fill depressions with tamped sand backfill.
c. For flat-bottomed, multiple-duct conduit units, hand-excavate trench bottoms and support conduit on an undisturbed subgrade.
d. Excavate trenches 6 inches (150 mm) deeper than elevation required in rock or other unyielding bearing material to allow for bedding course.

3.7 SUBGRADE INSPECTION

A. Notify Architect when excavations have reached required subgrade.

B. If Architect determines that unsatisfactory soil is present, continue excavation and replace with compacted backfill or fill material as directed.

C. Proof-roll subgrade below the building slabs with equipment per the geotechnical engineer's written recommendations to identify soft pockets and areas of excess yielding. Do not proof-roll wet or saturated subgrades.

1. Completely proof-roll subgrade in one direction, repeating proof-rolling in direction perpendicular to first direction. Limit vehicle speed to 3 mph (5 km/h).
2. Excavate soft spots, unsatisfactory soils, and areas of excessive pumping or rutting, as determined by Architect, and replace with compacted backfill or fill as directed.

D. Authorized additional excavation and replacement material will be paid for according to Contract provisions for changes in the Work.

E. Reconstruct subgrades damaged by freezing temperatures, frost, rain, accumulated water, or construction activities, as directed by Architect, without additional compensation.

3.8 UNAUTHORIZED EXCAVATION

A. Fill unauthorized excavation under foundations or wall footings by extending bottom elevation of concrete foundation or footing to excavation bottom, without altering top elevation. Lean concrete fill, with 28-day compressive strength of 2500 psi (17.2 MPa), may be used when approved by Architect.

1. Fill unauthorized excavations under other construction, pipe, or conduit as directed by Architect.

3.9 STORAGE OF SOIL MATERIALS

A. Stockpile borrow soil materials and excavated satisfactory soil materials without intermixing. Place, grade, and shape stockpiles to drain surface water. Cover to prevent windblown dust.

1. Stockpile soil materials away from edge of excavations. Do not store within drip line of remaining trees.

3.10 BACKFILL

A. Place and compact backfill in excavations promptly, but not before completing the following:

1. Construction below finish grade including, where applicable, subdrainage, dampproofing, waterproofing, and perimeter insulation.
2. Surveying locations of underground utilities for Record Documents.

3. Testing and inspecting underground utilities.
4. Removing concrete formwork.
5. Removing trash and debris.
6. Removing temporary shoring, bracing, and sheeting.
7. Installing permanent or temporary horizontal bracing on horizontally supported walls.

B. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.11 UTILITY TRENCH BACKFILL

A. Place backfill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. Place and compact bedding course on trench bottoms and where indicated. Shape bedding course to provide continuous support for bells, joints, and barrels of pipes and for joints, fittings, and bodies of conduits.

C. Trenches under Footings: Backfill trenches excavated under footings and within 18 inches (450 mm) of bottom of footings with satisfactory soil; fill with concrete to elevation of bottom of footings. Concrete is specified in Section 033000 "Cast-in-Place Concrete."

D. Backfill voids with satisfactory soil while removing shoring and bracing.

E. Initial Backfill:

1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact initial backfill of subbase material, free of particles larger than 1 inch (25 mm) in any dimension, to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit.

    a. Carefully compact initial backfill under pipe haunches and compact evenly up on both sides and along the full length of piping or conduit to avoid damage or displacement of piping or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place initial backfill of controlled low-strength material to a height of 12 inches (300 mm) over the pipe or conduit. Coordinate backfilling with utilities testing.

F. Final Backfill:

1. Soil Backfill: Place and compact final backfill of satisfactory soil to final subgrade elevation.
2. Controlled Low-Strength Material: Place final backfill of controlled low-strength material to final subgrade elevation.

G. Warning Tape: Install warning tape directly above utilities, 12 inches (300 mm) below finished grade, except 6 inches (150 mm) below subgrade under pavements and slabs.

3.12 SOIL FILL

A. Plow, scarify, bench, or break up sloped surfaces steeper than 1 vertical to 4 horizontal so fill material will bond with existing material.

B. Place and compact fill material in layers to required elevations as follows:

1. Under grass and planted areas, use satisfactory soil material.
2. Under walks and pavements, use satisfactory soil material.
3. Under steps and ramps, use engineered fill.
4. Under building slabs, use engineered fill.
5. Under footings and foundations, use engineered fill.

C. Place soil fill on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

3.13 SOIL MOISTURE CONTROL

A. Uniformly moisten or aerate subgrade and each subsequent fill or backfill soil layer before compaction to within 3 percent of optimum moisture content.

1. Do not place backfill or fill soil material on surfaces that are muddy, frozen, or contain frost or ice.
2. Remove and replace, or scarify and air dry, otherwise satisfactory soil material that exceeds optimum moisture content by 3 percent and is too wet to compact to specified dry unit weight.

3.14 COMPACTION OF SOIL BACKFILLS AND FILLS

A. Place backfill and fill soil materials in layers not more than 8 inches (200 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by heavy compaction equipment and not more than 4 inches (100 mm) in loose depth for material compacted by hand-operated tampers.

B. Place backfill and fill soil materials evenly on all sides of structures to required elevations and uniformly along the full length of each structure.

C. Compact soil materials to not less than the following percentages of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698 or ASTM D1557:

1. Under structures, building slabs, and steps, scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 95 percent.

2. Under shallow foundations scarify and recompact top 12 inches (300 mm) of existing subgrade and each layer of backfill or fill soil material at 98 percent.

3.15 GRADING

A. General: Uniformly grade areas to a smooth surface, free of irregular surface changes. Comply with compaction requirements and grade to cross sections, lines, and elevations indicated.

1. Provide a smooth transition between adjacent existing grades and new grades.
2. Cut out soft spots, fill low spots, and trim high spots to comply with required surface tolerances.

B. Site Rough Grading: Slope grades to direct water away from buildings and to prevent ponding. Finish subgrades to elevations required to achieve indicated finish elevations, within the following subgrade tolerances:

C. Grading inside Building Lines: Finish subgrade to a tolerance of 1/2 inch (13 mm) when tested with a 10-foot (3-m) straightedge.

3.16 DRAINAGE COURSE UNDER CONCRETE SLABS-ON-GRADE

A. Place drainage course on subgrades free of mud, frost, snow, or ice.

B. On prepared subgrade, place and compact drainage course under cast-in-place concrete slabs-on-grade as follows:
1. Place drainage course 6 inches (150 mm) or less in compacted thickness in a single layer.
2. Place drainage course that exceeds 6 inches (150 mm) in compacted thickness in layers of equal thickness, with no compacted layer more than 6 inches (150 mm) thick or less than 3 inches (75 mm) thick.
3. Compact each layer of drainage course to required cross sections and thicknesses to not less than 95 percent of maximum dry unit weight according to ASTM D698.

3.17 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the following special inspections:

1. Determine prior to placement of fill that site has been prepared in compliance with requirements.
2. Determine that fill material classification and maximum lift thickness comply with requirements.

3. Determine, during placement and compaction, that in-place density of compacted fill complies with requirements.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified geotechnical engineering testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Allow testing agency to inspect and test subgrades and each fill or backfill layer. Proceed with subsequent earth moving only after test results for previously completed work comply with requirements.

D. Footing Subgrade: At footing subgrades, at least one test of each soil stratum will be performed to verify design bearing capacities. Subsequent verification and approval of other footing subgrades may be based on a visual comparison of subgrade with tested subgrade when approved by Architect.

E. Testing agency will test compaction of soils in place according to ASTM D1556, ASTM D2167, ASTM D2937, and ASTM D6938, as applicable. Tests will be performed at the following locations and frequencies:

1. Paved and Building Slab Areas: At subgrade and at each compacted fill and backfill layer, at least one test for every 5000 sq. ft. or less of building slab but in no case fewer than three tests.
2. Foundation Wall Backfill: At each compacted backfill layer, at least one test for every 250 cubic feet or less of wall length but no fewer than two tests.
3. Trench Backfill: At each compacted initial and final backfill layer, at least one test for **every 150 feet (46 m)** or less of trench length but no fewer than two tests.

F. When testing agency reports that subgrades, fills, or backfills have not achieved degree of compaction specified, scarify and moisten or aerate, or remove and replace soil materials to depth required; recompact and retest until specified compaction is obtained.

3.18 PROTECTION

A. Protecting Graded Areas: Protect newly graded areas from traffic, freezing, and erosion. Keep free of trash and debris.

B. Repair and reestablish grades to specified tolerances where completed or partially completed surfaces become eroded, rutted, settled, or where they lose compaction due to subsequent construction operations or weather conditions.

1. Scarify or remove and replace soil material to depth as directed by Architect; reshape and recompact.

C. Where settling occurs before Project correction period elapses, remove finished surfacing, backfill with additional soil material, compact, and reconstruct surfacing.

1. Restore appearance, quality, and condition of finished surfacing to match adjacent work, and eliminate evidence of restoration to greatest extent possible.

3.19 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste materials, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of them off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 20 00

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 31 23 19 - DEWATERING

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Construction dewatering.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for excavating, backfilling, site grading, and controlling surface-water runoff and ponding.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Verify availability of Installer's personnel, equipment, and facilities needed to make progress and avoid delays.
2. Review condition of site to be dewatered, including coordination with temporary erosion-control measures and temporary controls and protections.
3. Review geotechnical report.
4. Review proposed site clearing and excavations.
5. Review existing utilities and subsurface conditions.
6. Review observation and monitoring of dewatering system.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Shop Drawings: For dewatering system, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.

1. Include plans, elevations, sections, and details.
2. Show arrangement, locations, and details of wells and well points; locations of risers, headers, filters, pumps, power units, and discharge lines; and means of discharge, control of sediment, and disposal of water.
3. Include layouts of piezometers and flow-measuring devices for monitoring performance of dewatering system.
4. Include written plan for dewatering operations, including sequence of well and well-point placement coordinated with excavation shoring and bracings and control procedures to be adopted if dewatering problems arise.

B. Delegated Design Submittals: For dewatering system, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

B. Qualification Statements: For Installer and land surveyor.

C. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

D. Existing Conditions: Using photographs or video recordings, show existing conditions of adjacent construction and site improvements that might be misconstrued as damage caused by dewatering operations. Submit before Work begins.

E. Record Drawings: Identify locations and depths of capped wells and well points and other abandoned-in-place dewatering equipment.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installer: An experienced installer that has specialized in design of dewatering systems and dewatering work.
2. Delegated Design Engineer: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in the state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
3. Land Surveyor: A professional land surveyor who is legally qualified to practice in the state where Project is located.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Project-Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is available for information only. The opinions expressed in this report are those of a geotechnical engineer and represent interpretations of subsoil conditions, tests, and results of analyses conducted by a geotechnical engineer. Owner is not responsible for interpretations or conclusions drawn from this data.

1. Make additional test borings and conduct other exploratory operations necessary for dewatering in accordance with the performance requirements.
2. The geotechnical report is included elsewhere in Project Manual.

B. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to survey adjacent existing buildings, structures, and site improvements; establish exact elevations at fixed points to act as benchmarks. Clearly identify benchmarks and record existing elevations.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design dewatering system.

B. Dewatering Performance: Design, furnish, install, test, operate, monitor, and maintain dewatering system of sufficient scope, size, and capacity to control hydrostatic pressures and to lower, control, remove, and dispose of groundwater and permit excavation and construction to proceed on dry, stable subgrades.

1. Design dewatering system, including comprehensive engineering analysis by a qualified professional engineer.
2. Continuously monitor and maintain dewatering operations to ensure erosion control, stability of excavations and constructed slopes, prevention of flooding in excavation, and prevention of damage to subgrades and permanent structures.
3. Prevent surface water from entering excavations by grading, dikes, or other means.
4. Accomplish dewatering without damaging existing buildings, structures, and site improvements adjacent to excavation.
5. Remove dewatering system when no longer required for construction.

C. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with governing EPA notification regulations before beginning dewatering. Comply with water- and debris-disposal regulations of authorities having jurisdiction.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, undermining, washout, and other hazards created by dewatering operations.

1. Prevent surface water and subsurface or groundwater from entering excavations, from ponding on prepared subgrades, elevator/escalator pits, and from flooding site or surrounding area.
2. Protect subgrades and foundation soils from softening and damage by rain or water accumulation.

B. Install dewatering system to ensure minimum interference with roads, streets, walks, and other adjacent occupied and used facilities.

1. Do not close or obstruct streets, walks, or other adjacent occupied or used facilities without permission from Owner and authorities having jurisdiction. Provide alternate routes around closed or obstructed traffic ways if required by authorities having jurisdiction.

C. Provide temporary grading to facilitate dewatering and control of surface water.

D. Protect and maintain temporary erosion and sedimentation controls during dewatering operations.

3.2 INSTALLATION

A. Install dewatering system utilizing wells, well points, or similar methods complete with pump equipment, standby power and pumps, filter material gradation, valves, appurtenances, water disposal, and surface-water controls.

1. Space well points or wells at intervals required to provide sufficient dewatering.
2. Use filters or other means to prevent pumping of fine sands or silts from the subsurface.

B. Place dewatering system into operation to lower water to specified levels before excavating below groundwater level.

C. Provide sumps, sedimentation tanks, and other flow-control devices as required by authorities having jurisdiction.

D. Provide standby equipment on-site, installed and available for immediate operation, to maintain dewatering on continuous basis if any part of system becomes inadequate or fails.

3.3 OPERATION

A. Operate system continuously until drains, sewers, and structures have been constructed and fill materials have been placed or until dewatering is no longer required.

B. Operate system to lower and control groundwater to permit excavation, construction of structures, and placement of fill materials on dry subgrades. Drain water-bearing strata above and below bottom of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.

1. Do not permit open-sump pumping that leads to loss of fines, soil piping, subgrade softening, and slope instability.
2. Reduce hydrostatic head in water-bearing strata below subgrade elevations of foundations, drains, sewers, and other excavations.
3. Maintain piezometric water level a minimum of 24 inches or as indicated by Geotechnical engineer, below bottom of excavation.

C. Dispose of water removed by dewatering in a manner that avoids endangering public health, property, and portions of work under construction or completed. Dispose of water and sediment in a manner that avoids inconvenience to others.

D. Remove dewatering system from Project site on completion of dewatering. Plug or fill well holes with sand or cut off and cap wells a minimum of 36 inches below overlying construction.

3.4 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Observation Wells: Provide observation wells or piezometers, take measurements, and maintain at least the minimum number indicated; additional observation wells may be required by authorities having jurisdiction.

1. Observe and record daily elevation of groundwater and piezometric water levels in observation wells.
2. Repair or replace, within 24 hours, observation wells that become inactive, damaged, or destroyed. In areas where observation wells are not functioning properly, suspend construction activities until reliable observations can be made. Add or remove water from observation-well risers to demonstrate that observation wells are functioning properly.
3. Fill observation wells, remove piezometers, and fill holes when dewatering is completed.

B. Survey-Work Benchmarks: Resurvey benchmarks as required during dewatering and maintain an accurate log of surveyed elevations for comparison with original elevations. Promptly notify Architect if changes in elevations occur or if cracks, sags, or other damage is evident in adjacent construction.

C. Provide continual observation to ensure that subsurface soils are not being removed by the dewatering operation.

D. Prepare reports of observations.

3.5 PROTECTION

A. Protect and maintain dewatering system during dewatering operations.

B. Promptly repair damages to adjacent facilities caused by dewatering.

END OF SECTION 31 23 19

SECTION 31 31 16 - TERMITE CONTROL

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Soil treatment.

1.2 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product. Include the EPA-Registered Label for termiticide products.

1.3 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Product certificates.

B. Soil Treatment Application Report: Include the following:

1. Date and time of application.
2. Moisture content of soil before application.
3. Termiticide brand name and manufacturer.
4. Quantity of undiluted termiticide used.
5. Dilutions, methods, volumes used, and rates of application.
6. Areas of application.
7. Water source for application.

C. Sample Warranties: For special warranties.

1.4 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Installer Qualifications: A specialist who is licensed according to regulations of authorities having jurisdiction to apply termite control treatment and products in jurisdiction where Project is located and who employs workers trained and approved by manufacturer to install manufacturer's products.

1.5 WARRANTY

A. Soil Treatment Special Warranty: Manufacturer's standard form, signed by Applicator and Contractor, certifying that termite control work consisting of applied soil termiticide treatment will prevent infestation of subterranean termites. If subterranean termite activity or damage is discovered during warranty period, re-treat soil and repair or replace damage caused by termite infestation.

1. Warranty Period: Five years from date of Substantial Completion.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 SOIL TREATMENT

A. Termiticide: EPA-Registered termiticide acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction, in an aqueous solution formulated to prevent termite infestation.

1. Products: Subject to compliance with requirements, provide one of the following:

a. BASF Corporation, Agricultural Products; Termidor.
b. Bayer Environmental Sciences; Premise 75 WP.
c. FMC Global Specialty Solutions; Dragnet SFR.

2. Service Life of Treatment: Soil treatment termiticide that is effective for not less than five years against infestation of subterranean termites.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Remove extraneous sources of wood cellulose and other edible materials, such as wood debris, tree stumps and roots, stakes, formwork, and construction waste wood from soil within and around foundations.

B. Soil Treatment Preparation: Remove foreign matter and impermeable soil materials that could decrease treatment effectiveness on areas to be treated.

3.2 APPLYING SOIL TREATMENT

A. Application: Mix soil treatment termiticide solution to a uniform consistency. Distribute treatment uniformly. Apply treatment at the product's EPA-Registered Label volume and rate for maximum specified concentration of termiticide to the following so that a

continuous horizontal and vertical termiticidal barrier or treated zone is established around and under building construction.

1. Slabs-on-Grade: Under building slabs and attached slabs as an overall treatment. Treat soil materials before concrete is placed.
2. Foundations: Soil adjacent to and along the entire inside perimeter of foundation walls; along both sides of interior partition walls; around plumbing pipes and electric conduit penetrating the slab; around interior column footers, piers, and chimney bases; and along the entire outside perimeter, from grade to bottom of footing.
3. Masonry: Treat voids.
4. Penetrations: At expansion joints, control joints, and areas where slabs and below-grade walls will be penetrated.

B. Post warning signs in areas of application.

C. Reapply soil treatment solution to areas disturbed by subsequent excavation, grading, landscaping, or other construction activities following application.

END OF SECTION 31 31 16

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 31 63 16 - AUGER CAST PILES

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section includes auger cast piles.

1.3 UNIT PRICES

A. Contract Sum: Base Contract Sum on number and dimensions of piles from tip to pile top.

B. Work of this Section is affected as follows:

1. Pile Length: Additional payment for pile lengths in excess of that indicated, and credit for pile lengths less than that indicated, is calculated at unit prices stated in the Contract, based on net addition or deduction to total pile length as determined by Engineer and measured to nearest 12 inches.
2. Number of Piles: Additional payment for number of piles in excess of that indicated, and credit for number of piles less than that indicated, is calculated at unit prices stated in the Contract.
3. Unit prices include labor, materials, tools, equipment, and incidentals for excavation, concrete, reinforcement, testing and inspection, and other items for complete pile installation.
4. Test piles that become part of permanent foundation system are considered as an integral part of the Work.
5. No payment is made for rejected piles, including piles out of specified tolerance or defective piles.

C. Test Piles: Same unit price as indicated for production piles.

1.4 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.5 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Design Mixtures: For each concrete mixture. Submit alternative design mixtures when characteristics of materials, Project conditions, weather, test results, or other circumstances warrant adjustments.

1. Indicate amounts of mixing water to be withheld for later addition at Project site.

C. Shop Drawings: For auger cast piles, prepared by or under the supervision of a qualified professional engineer.

1. Identify each pile and indicate pile dimensions, cross sections, locations, and sizes.
2. Indicate types and configurations of reinforcement and detail fabricating.
3. Detail connections to pile caps.
4. Include method of centralizing reinforcement, type and size of centralizing devices, and locations on reinforcing bars.
5. Static Pile Tests: Include arrangement of static test pile reaction frame, test and anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation. Submit structural analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.6 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Welding certificates.

C. Material Certificates: For the following:

1. Cementitious materials.
2. Concrete admixtures.
3. Steel reinforcing.

D. Equipment Data: Description of drilling and concrete-pumping equipment including the following:

1. Type and make of drilling rig, rated capacity, and boom lengths.
2. Torque of drilling machine and horsepower of hydraulic power unit.
3. Pressure and discharge capacity of concrete pump.
4. Automated monitoring equipment to be used.

E. Static Pile Test Reports: Submit within three days of completing each test.

F. Pile Inspection Reports: Submit not later than the morning of the next working day after placing each pile.

G. Certified Piles Survey: Submit within seven days of completion.

H. Field quality-control reports.

1.7 CLOSEOUT SUBMITTALS

A. Record Drawings.

B. Certified Pile Survey: Submit within seven days of pile installation completion.

1.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Testing Agency Qualifications: Qualified according to ASTM C 1077, ASTM D 3740, and ASTM E 329 for testing indicated.

B. Mix Designs: For each type of concrete. Include description of type and proportions of ingredients.

C. Welding Qualifications: Qualify procedures and personnel according to the following:

1. AWS D1.1/D1.1M, "Structural Welding Code - Steel."
2. AWS D1.4/D1.4M, "Structural Welding Code - Reinforcing Steel."

1.9 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Test Piles: Construct of diameter, depth, and between or near borings PD-3 and PD-6, to confirm allowable load of piles and demonstrate Installer's construction methods, equipment, standards of workmanship, and tolerances. Refer to Figure 2 in Appendix I of the Geotechnical Report for the boring locations.

1. If Engineer determines that test pile does not comply with requirements, excavate for and cast another until it is accepted.
2. Tests: Arrange and perform the following pile tests:

a. Axial Compressive Static Load Test: ASTM D 1143/D 1143M, Procedure A, Quick Test.
b. Axial Tension Static Load Test: ASTM D 3689.
c. Lateral Load Test: ASTM D 3966.

3. Equip each test pile with two telltale rods, according to ASTM D 1143/D 1143M, for measuring deformation during load test.

4. Provide pile reaction frame, anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation with enough reaction capacity to perform tests. Notify Engineer at least 48 hours in advance of performing tests. On completion of testing, remove testing structure, anchor piles, equipment, and instrumentation.

    a. Allow a minimum of seven days to elapse after installing test piles before starting pile testing.
    b. Number of Test Piles: Three piles.
    c. Location of test piles shall submitted to the Structural Engineer and Geotechnical Engineer for review.
5. Approval Criteria: Allowable load shall be the load acting on the test pile divided by a factor of safety of 2.
6. Test Pile Records: Prepare records for each test pile, compiled and attested to by a qualified professional engineer. Include same data as required for permanent piles.
7. Test piles that comply with requirements, including location tolerances, may be used on Project.

1.10 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Protect structures, underground utilities, and other construction from damage caused by pile excavation.

B. Site Information: A geotechnical report has been prepared for this Project and is referenced elsewhere in the Project Manual.

C. Survey Work: Engage a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer to perform surveys, layouts, and measurements for auger cast piles. Before excavating, lay out each pile to lines and levels required. Record actual measurements of each pile's location, shaft diameter, bottom and top elevations, deviations from specified tolerances, and other specified data.

    1. Record and maintain information pertinent to each pile and indicate on record Drawings. Cooperate with Owner's testing and inspecting agency to provide data for required reports.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 STEEL REINFORCEMENT

A. Reinforcing Bars: ASTM A 615/A 615M, Grade 60, deformed.

B. Centralizers: Devices to center steel reinforcement in excavation; spaced not less than 20 feet o.c. for vertical piles.

2.2 CONCRETE MATERIALS

A. Portland Cement: ASTM C 150/C 150M, Type I/II. Supplement with the following:

1. Fly Ash: ASTM C 618, Class F.

B. Fine Aggregate: ASTM C 33/C 33M with 100 percent passing a No. 8 sieve, free of materials with deleterious reactivity to alkali in cement. Provide aggregate from single source.

C. Water: ASTM C 94/C 94M and potable.

D. Chemical Admixtures: Provide admixtures certified by manufacturer to be compatible with other admixtures. Do not use calcium chloride or admixtures containing calcium chloride.

1. Water-Reducing Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type A.
2. Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type D.
3. High-Range, Water-Reducing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 494/C 494M, Type G.
4. Plasticizing and Retarding Admixture: ASTM C 1017/C 1017M, Type II.

E. Fluidifier: ASTM C 937, with expansion of less than 4 percent.

2.3 RELATED MATERIALS

A. Pile-Top Forms: Metal, glass-fiber-reinforced plastic, paper, or fiber tubes. Provide units with enough wall thickness to resist plastic concrete loads without detrimental deformation. Diameter same as pile diameter.

2.4 CONCRETE MIXTURES

A. Prepare design mixtures for each type and strength of concrete, proportioned on the basis of laboratory trial mixture, field test data, or both.

1. Use a qualified independent testing agency for preparing and reporting proposed mixture designs based on laboratory trial mixtures.

B. Proportion concrete mixture as follows:

1. Minimum Compressive Strength: 5000 psi at 28 days; ASTM C 39/C 39M.

2. Maximum Water-Cementitious Materials Ratio: 0.43.
3. Concrete Flow: 10 to 25 seconds; ASTM C 939 and ASTM C 109/C 109M using a flow cone with 0.75-inch opening.

2.5 FABRICATING REINFORCEMENT

A. Fabricate steel reinforcement according to CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

2.6 CONCRETE MIXING

A. Ready-Mixed Concrete: Measure, batch, mix, and deliver according to ASTM C 94/C 94M, and furnish batch ticket information.

1. Temperature Limits: Comply with ACI 305.1 for hot weather and ACI 306.1 for cold weather.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 PREPARATION

A. Protect structures, utilities, sidewalks, pavements, and other facilities from damage caused by settlement, lateral movement, and other hazards created by drilling operations.

B. Rough grade ground elevation at pile locations to a minimum of 12 inches above required cutoff elevation.

3.2 DRILLING AND PUMPING EQUIPMENT

A. Drilling Rig: Capable of advancing hollow-stem, continuous-flight augers of design diameters to depths 20 percent greater than design depths; with stabilizing arm at bottom of leads to prevent rotation, and middle guide for augers greater than 40 feet in length.

1. Mark leads at maximum 60-inch intervals to facilitate measurement of penetration.

B. Hollow-Stem Auger: Continuous auger flighting without gaps or breaks, of diameter no more than 3 percent less than pile diameter; with concrete pumping hole at bottom of auger head below cutting teeth. Seal concrete-pumping hole with temporary tip plug to be fully opened by concrete pressure or reinforcing bar during concrete installation.

1. Hollow Shaft Diameter: Minimum 1-1/4-inch clear ID.

C. Concrete Pump: Positive-displacement pump with a known volume per stroke. Minimum displacement pressure at pump of 350 lbf/sq. in.

D. Automated Monitoring Equipment: Capable of measuring auger depth, penetration rate, and concrete volume pumped per unit depth increment and of printing results.

3.3 EXCAVATION

A. Prevent surface water from entering excavated shafts. Conduct water to site drainage facilities.

B. Advance auger at a continuous rate during insertion that prevents removal of excess soil.

C. Excavate piles to elevations indicated. Establish and maintain axial alignment of leads and shaft before and during driving.

D. Drilling Tolerances:

1. Location: Pile centers maximum 3 inches from locations indicated.
2. Plumb: Within 2 percent from vertical.

3.4 INSTALLATION

A. Maintain positive (clockwise) rotation of auger during withdrawal. Promptly remove excavated spoils to prevent accumulation.

B. Concrete Placement: Place concrete in continuous operation.

1. Lift auger 6 to 12 inches at start of concrete pumping to facilitate tip plug removal, then return to previously established tip elevation.
2. Develop an initial concrete head of 60 inches before start of auger withdrawal and maintain during extraction.
3. Monitor pumped concrete volumes using automated monitoring equipment.
4. Volume of placed concrete is at least 115 percent of theoretical volume. If less than required volume is placed for any given 60-inch segment, lower auger a minimum of 60 inches, or to bottom of pile if less than 60 inches available, and restart withdrawal.
5. If concrete pumping is interrupted during placement, lower auger a minimum of 60 inches, or to bottom of pile if less than 60 inches available, and restart withdrawal.

C. Steel Reinforcement Installation, General: Comply with recommendations in CRSI's "Manual of Standard Practice."

1. Clean reinforcement of loose rust and mill scale, earth, and other materials that reduce or destroy bond with concrete.
2. Screen pile top to remove spoils immediately after auger withdrawal and before placing reinforcement.

D. Single Bar Reinforcing: Install through center of hollow-stem auger before concrete placement.

E. Reinforcing Cages: Install immediately after concrete placement and support at ground surface until initial set. Allow cages to fall into shaft freely under their own weight; do not force by vibrating or pushing with mechanical equipment.

F. Adjacent Piles: Do not install piles within 6 pile diameters of piles filled with concrete within the previous 12 hours.

G. Pile Completion:

1. Where cutoff elevation is above the ground elevation, form top section above grade and extend shaft to required elevation with pile-top form.
2. Where cutoff elevation is below the ground elevation, cut off top of piles at elevations indicated by removing fresh concrete from the top of pile.

H. If location or out-of-plumb tolerances are exceeded, provide corrective construction. Submit corrective construction proposals to Engineer for review before proceeding.

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Special Inspections: Owner will engage a qualified special inspector to perform the inspections as outlined in the Threshold Inspection Plan.

B. Testing Agency: Owner will engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

C. Concrete Tests: Testing of samples of fresh concrete obtained according to ASTM C 172/C 172M shall be performed according to the following requirements:

1. Testing Frequency: Obtain one composite sample for each day's pour of each concrete mixture exceeding 5 cu. yd., but less than 25 cu. yd., plus one set for each additional 50 cu. yd. or fraction thereof.
2. Testing Frequency: Obtain at least one composite sample for each 100 cu. yd. or fraction thereof of each concrete mixture placed each day.

a. When frequency of testing provides fewer than five compressive-strength tests for each concrete mixture, testing shall be conducted from at least five randomly selected batches or from each batch if fewer than five are used.

3. Concrete Temperature: ASTM C 1064/C 1064M; one test hourly when air temperature is 40 deg F and below or 80 deg F and above, and one test for each composite sample.

4. Flow Rate: ASTM C 939 and ASTM C 109/C 109M using a flow cone with 0.75-inch opening.
5. Compression Test Specimens: ASTM C 31/C 31M.

a. Cast and laboratory cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.
b. Cast and field cure two sets of two standard cylinder specimens for each composite sample.

6. Compressive Strength: ASTM C 39/C 39M.

a. Test one set of two field-cured specimens at 7 days and one set of two specimens at 28 days.
b. A compressive-strength test shall be the average compressive strength from a set of two specimens obtained from same composite sample and tested at age indicated.

7. When strength of field-cured cylinders is less than 85 percent of companion laboratory-cured cylinders, Contractor shall evaluate operations and provide corrective procedures for protecting and curing in-place concrete.
8. Strength of each concrete mixture is satisfactory if every average of any three consecutive compressive-strength tests equals or exceeds specified compressive strength and no compressive-strength test value falls below specified compressive strength by more than 500 psi.
9. Report test results in writing to Engineer, concrete manufacturer, and Contractor within 48 hours of testing. List Project identification name and number, date of placement, name of testing and inspecting agency, location of concrete batch in Work, design compressive strength at 28 days, concrete mixture proportions and materials, compressive breaking strength, and type of break for both 7- and 28-day tests in reports of compressive-strength tests.
10. Additional Tests: Testing and inspecting agency to make additional tests of concrete if test results indicate that compressive strengths or other requirements have not been met, as directed by Engineer.
11. Perform additional testing and inspecting, at Contractor's expense, to determine compliance of replaced or additional work with specified requirements.

12. Correct deficiencies in the Work that test reports and inspections indicate do not comply with the Contract Documents.

D. Low-Strain Integrity Testing: Performed and reported according to ASTM D 5882 on 3 percent of piles and reported for each pile.

E. Pile Inspection Reports: Prepare inspection reports for each auger cast concrete pile as follows:

1. Pile location.
2. Pile diameter.
3. Actual top and bottom elevations.
4. Final top centerline location and deviations from requirements.
5. Variation from plumb.
6. Date and time of starting and completing.
7. Position and condition of reinforcing steel and splices or mechanical couplings.
8. Automatic monitoring equipment record including concrete volume actually pumped.
9. Concrete testing results.
10. Remarks, unusual conditions encountered, and deviations from requirements.

F. Certified Piles Survey: Prepared by a qualified land surveyor or professional engineer showing final location of piles in relation to the property survey and existing benchmarks.

1. Notify Engineer when deviations from locations exceed allowable tolerances.

G. Auger cast piles will be considered defective if they do not pass tests and inspections.

H. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 DISPOSAL OF SURPLUS AND WASTE MATERIALS

A. Disposal: Remove surplus satisfactory soil and waste material, including unsatisfactory soil, trash, and debris, and legally dispose of it off Owner's property.

END OF SECTION 31 63 16

SECTION 32 17 23 - PAVEMENT MARKINGS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 RELATED DOCUMENTS

A. Drawings and general provisions of the Contract, including General and Supplementary Conditions and Division 01 Specification Sections, apply to this Section.

1.2 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Painted markings applied to asphalt paving.
2. Painted markings applied to concrete surfaces.

B. Related Requirements:

1. Section 07 18 00 "Traffic Coatings" for painting whole areas of building floors and pavements with coatings having an integral wearing surface.
2. Section 09 91 13 "Exterior Painting" for painting exterior concrete surfaces other than pavement markings.
3. Section 09 91 23 "Interior Painting" for painting interior concrete surfaces other than pavement markings.

1.3 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1. Review methods and procedures related to marking asphalt paving or concrete surfaces including, but not limited to, the following:

a. Asphalt-paving or concrete-surface aging period before application of pavement markings.
b. Review requirements for protecting pavement markings, including restriction of traffic during installation period.

1.4 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: Include technical data and tested physical and performance properties.

1. Pavement-marking paint, alkyd.

2. Pavement-marking paint, acrylic.
3. Pavement-marking paint, latex.
4. Glass beads.
5. Parking Bumpers

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Indicate pavement markings, colors, lane separations, defined parking spaces, and dimensions to adjacent work.
2. Indicate, with international symbol of accessibility, spaces allocated for people with disabilities.

C. Samples: For each exposed product and for each color and texture specified; on rigid backing, 8 inches square.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Regulatory Requirements: Comply with materials, workmanship, and other applicable requirements of North Carolina Department of Transportation for pavement-marking work.

1.6 FIELD CONDITIONS

A. Environmental Limitations: Proceed with pavement marking only on clean, dry surfaces and at a minimum ambient or surface temperature of 40 deg F for alkyd materials 55 deg F for water-based materials , and not exceeding 95 deg F .

B. Do not apply materials if surface and ambient temperatures are outside temperature ranges required by paint product manufacturer.

C. Do not apply exterior coatings during rain or snow if relative humidity is outside range required by paint manufacturer, or if moisture content of surfaces exceeds that required by paint manufacturer.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 MANUFACTURERS

A. Provide water-based or low V.O.C., acrylics or alkyd resin type traffic, semi-gloss paints in to compliance with requirements and provide products from among following manufacturers:

1. Dunn-Edwards Stripe, W-801 Vinyl-Stripe.

2. Frazee, 506 Traffic Line Paint
3. Sherwin-Williams, TM Series Setfast Traffic Marking Paint
4. Vista Paint 6700 or 6900 (for parking stall striping, etc.) and 6800 (for curbs and traffic bearing pavement markings)
5. Ennis Waterborne or Low VOC Traffic Paint
6. Pervo 3080 Series
7. Approved equal from a manufacturer not listed above and complies with Section 012500 “Substitution Procedures”.

B. Parking Bumpers: Units are to be not less than 7-1/2" wide, 5-1/4" high (max.), 6'-0" long, with chamfered corners and drainage slots on underside. Fabricate using manufacturer’s standard reinforcing design. Bumper surfaces shall be smooth and free of pits or voids from fabrication / extrusion.
1. GNR Technologies 6’ PARK-IT
2. Pawling Corporation Pro-Tek Style PB-1
3. Xpotential Products Impact Curb

C. Source Limitations: Obtain pavement-marking paints and bumpers from single manufacturer.

2.2 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Accessibility Standard: Comply with applicable provisions in the USDOJ's "2010 ADA Standards for Accessible Design" and ICC A117.1 .

B. Product Criteria
1. Traffic Paint not intended for use as floor paints. Do not use on pedestrian walkways or large surfaces such as ramps, floors and stairs which may become slippery when wet
2. Fast drying when applied at ambient conditions requirement.
3. Low VOC.

C. Colors

1. General: Traffic Paint will be furnished in white and any Federal Standard 595 color in accordance to FED-STD-595C:
   a. Yellow: 33538.
   b. Blue: 35180.
   c. Red: 31136.

2. White: Lane lines, edge lines, transverse lines, arrows, words, symbol markings, speed bump markings, parking space markings. c.

3. Yellow: Cross-hatching in medians, cross hatching in safety zones separating opposing traffic flows, crosswalk stripes, safety markings, centerlines, edge lines along left edge of one way roadway or one-way ramp.

4. Blue and White: In parking spaces specifically designated as reserved for disabled. Color shall match No. 15090 in Federal Standard 595A.

5. Red: Fire lanes, no parking zones, special raised pavement markers that are placed to be visible to "wrong-way" drivers.

2.3 PAVEMENT-MARKING PAINT

A. Pavement-Marking Paint, Alkyd: Alkyd-resin type, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with AASHTO M 248, Type S; colors complying with FS TT-P-1952F.

B. Pavement-Marking Paint, Acrylic: Acrylic, waterborne emulsion, lead and chromate free, ready mixed, complying with FS TT-P-1952F, Type II, with drying time of less than 45 minutes.

C. Pavement-Marking Paint, Latex: MPI #97, latex traffic-marking paint.

D. Glass Beads: AASHTO M 247, Type 1 or FS TT-B-1325D, Type 1 , made of 100 percent recycled glass .

1. Roundness: Minimum 75 percent true spheres by weight.

E. Parking Bumpers (Recycled Materials): Parking bumpers shall be fabricated from recycled materials,

1. 100% rubber from recycled automobile tires
2. Reclaimed polymers
3. 100% recycled, auto shredder residue, non-organic materials and a plastic binder, as manufactured.

F. Epoxy Adhesive: Provide a two-component 100% solids, moisture tolerant, high modulus, high strength, structural, smooth paste epoxy adhesive, conforming to ASTM C881 and AASHTO M235 F.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Verify that pavement-marking substrate is dry and in suitable condition to begin pavement marking in accordance with manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Proceed with pavement marking only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 PAVEMENT MARKING

A. Do not apply pavement-marking paint until layout, colors, and placement have been verified with Architect.

B. Allow asphalt paving or concrete surfaces to age for a minimum of **30** days before starting pavement marking.

C. Sweep and clean surface to eliminate loose material and dust.

D. Apply paint with mechanical equipment to produce pavement markings, of dimensions indicated, with uniform, straight edges. Apply at manufacturer's recommended rates to provide a minimum wet film thickness of 15 mils .

1. Apply graphic symbols and lettering with paint-resistant, die-cut stencils, firmly secured to asphalt paving or concrete surface. Mask an extended area beyond edges of each stencil to prevent paint application beyond stencil. Apply paint so that it cannot run beneath stencil.
2. Broadcast glass beads uniformly into wet markings at a rate of 6 lb/gal.

3.3 PARKING BUMPERS

A. Install precast parking bumpers at each parking space in accordance with layout as indicated.

B. Bumpers shall be applied to concrete surfaces by two-component epoxy anchoring adhesive covering the entire bottom of the parking bumper full length and width then pressing down to join the two surfaces.

C. Leave wheel stops securely anchored and in proper alignment.

3.4 PROTECTING AND CLEANING

A. Protect pavement markings from damage and wear during remainder of construction period.

B. Clean spillage and soiling from adjacent construction using cleaning agents and procedures recommended by manufacturer of affected construction.

END OF SECTION 32 17 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

32 31 13 ITEM F-162 CHAIN-LINK FENCE

1.1 DESCRIPTION

A. This item shall consist of furnishing and erecting a chain-link pedestrian gate in accordance with these specifications, the details shown on the plans, and in conformity with the lines and grades shown on the plans or established by the RPR.

1.2 MATERIALS

A. Fabric. The fabric shall be woven with a 9-gauge galvanized steel wire in a 2-inch (50 mm) mesh and shall meet the requirements of ASTM A392, Class 2.

B. Barbed wire. Barbed wire shall be 3-strand 12-1/2 gauge zinc-coated wire with 4-point barbs and shall conform to the requirements of ASTM A121, Class II.

C. Posts, rails, and braces. Line posts, rails, and braces shall conform to the requirements of ASTM F1043 or ASTM F1083 as follows:

1. Galvanized tubular steel pipe shall conform to the requirements of Group IA, (Schedule 40) coatings conforming to Type A, or Group IC (High Strength Pipe), External coating Type B, and internal coating Type B or D.

2. The dimensions of the posts, rails, and braces shall be in accordance with Tables I through VI of Federal Specification RR-F-191/3.

D. Gates. Gate frames shall consist of galvanized steel pipe and shall conform to the specifications for the same material under paragraph 162-2.3. The fabric shall be of the same type material as used in the fence.

E. Wire ties and tension wires. Wire ties for use in conjunction with a given type of fabric shall be of the same material and coating weight identified with the fabric type. Tension wire shall be 7-gauge marcelled steel wire with the same coating as the fabric type and shall conform to ASTM A824.

1. All material shall conform to Federal Specification RR-F-191/4.

F. Miscellaneous fittings and hardware. Miscellaneous steel fittings and hardware for use with zinc-coated steel fabric shall be of commercial grade steel or better quality, wrought or cast as appropriate to the article, and sufficient in strength to provide a balanced design when used in conjunction with fabric posts, and wires of the quality specified herein. All steel fittings and hardware shall be protected with a zinc coating applied in conformance with ASTM A153. Barbed wire support arms shall withstand a load of 250 pounds (113 kg) applied vertically to the outermost end of the arm.

G. Concrete. Concrete shall have a minimum 28-day compressive strength of 3000 psi (2670 kPa).

H. Marking. Each roll of fabric shall carry a tag showing the kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), kind of coating, the gauge of the wire, the length of fencing in the roll, and the name of the manufacturer. Posts, wire, and other fittings shall be identified as to manufacturer, kind of base metal (steel, aluminum, or aluminum alloy number), and kind of coating.

1.3 CONSTRUCTION METHODS

A. General. The fence shall be constructed in accordance with the details on the plans and as specified here using new materials. All work shall be performed in a workmanlike manner satisfactory to the RPR. The RPR shall establish and mark the property line or fence line for the work. The Contractor shall span the opening below the fence with barbed wire at all locations where it is not practical to conform the fence to the general contour of the ground surface because of natural or manmade features such as drainage ditches. The new fence shall be permanently tied to the terminals of existing fences as shown on the plans. The Contractor shall stake down the woven wire fence at several points between posts as shown on the plans.

1. The Contractor shall arrange the work so that construction of the new fence will immediately follow the removal of existing fences. The length of unfenced section at any time shall not exceed 300 feet (90 m). The work shall progress in this manner and at the close of the working day the newly constructed fence shall be tied to the existing fence.

B. Clearing fence line. Clearing shall consist of the removal of all stumps, brush, rocks, trees, or other obstructions that will interfere with proper construction of the fence. Stumps within the cleared area of the fence shall be grubbed or excavated. The bottom of the fence shall be placed a uniform distance above ground, as specified in the plans. When shown on the plans or as directed by the RPR, the existing fences which interfere with the new fence location shall be removed by the Contractor as a part of the construction work unless such removal is listed as a separate item in the bid schedule. All holes remaining after post and stump removal shall be refilled with suitable soil, gravel, or other suitable material and compacted with tampers.

1. The cost of removing and disposing of the material shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction.

C. Installing posts. All posts shall be set in concrete at the required dimension and depth and at the spacing shown on the plans.

1. The concrete shall be thoroughly compacted around the posts by tamping or vibrating and shall have a smooth finish slightly higher than the ground and sloped to drain away from the posts. All posts shall be set plumb and to the required grade and alignment. No materials shall be installed on the posts, nor shall the posts be disturbed in any manner within seven (7) days after the individual post footing is completed.

2. Should rock be encountered at a depth less than the planned footing depth, a hole 2 inches (50 mm) larger than the greatest dimension of the posts shall be drilled to a depth of 12 inches (300 mm). After the posts are set, the remainder of the drilled hole shall be filled with grout, composed of one part Portland cement and two parts mortar sand. Any remaining space above the rock shall be filled with concrete in the manner described above.

3. In lieu of drilling, the rock may be excavated to the required footing depth. No extra compensation shall be made for rock excavation.

D. Installing top rails. The top rail shall be continuous and shall pass through the post tops. The coupling used to join the top rail lengths shall allow for expansion.

E. Installing braces. Horizontal brace rails, with diagonal truss rods and turnbuckles, shall be installed at all terminal posts.

F. Installing fabric. The wire fabric shall be firmly attached to the posts and braced as shown on the plans. All wire shall be stretched taut and shall be installed to the required elevations. The fence shall generally follow the contour of the ground, with the bottom of the fence fabric no less than one inch (25 mm) or more than 4 inches (100 mm) from the ground surface. Grading shall be performed where necessary to provide a neat appearance.

1. At locations of small natural swales or drainage ditches and where it is not practical to have the fence conform to the general contour of the ground surface, longer posts may be used and multiple strands of barbed wire stretched to span the opening below the fence. The vertical clearance between strands of barbed wire shall be 6 inches (150 mm) or less.

G. Electrical grounds. Electrical grounds shall be constructed where a power line passes over the fence or at 500 feet (150 m) intervals. The ground shall be installed directly below the point of crossing. The ground shall be accomplished with a copper clad rod 8 feet (2.4 m) long and a minimum of 5/8 inches (16 mm) in diameter driven vertically until the top is 6 inches (150 mm) below the ground surface. A No. 6 solid copper conductor shall be clamped to the rod and to the fence in such a manner that each element of the fence is grounded. Installation of ground rods shall not constitute a pay item and shall be considered incidental to fence construction. The Contractor shall comply with FAA-STD-019, Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment, paragraph 4.2.3.8, Lightning Protection for Fences and Gates, when fencing is adjacent to FAA facilities.

H. Cleaning up. The Contractor shall remove from the vicinity of the completed work all tools, buildings, equipment, etc., used during construction.

1.4 REFERENCES

The publications listed below form a part of this specification to the extent referenced. The publications are referred to within the text by the basic designation only.

ASTM International (ASTM)

ASTM A121	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Carbon Steel Barbed Wire
ASTM A153	Standard Specification for Zinc Coating (Hot-Dip) on Iron and Steel Hardware
ASTM A392	Standard Specification for Zinc-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM A491	Standard Specification for Aluminum-Coated Steel Chain-Link Fabric Fence
ASTM A824	Standard Specification for Metallic-Coated Steel Marcelled Tension Wire for Use with Chain Link Fence
ASTM B117	Standard Practice for Operating Salt Spray (Fog) Apparatus
ASTM F668	Standard Specification for Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC), Polyolefin and other Organic Polymer Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM F1043	Standard Specification for Strength and Protective Coatings on Steel Industrial Fence Framework
ASTM F1083	Standard Specification for Pipe, Steel, Hot-Dipped Zinc-Coated (Galvanized) Welded, for Fence Structures
ASTM F1183	Standard Specification for Aluminum Alloy Chain Link Fence
ASTM F1345	Standard Specification for Zinc 5% Aluminum-Mischmetal Alloy Coated Steel Chain-Link Fence Fabric
ASTM G152	Standard Practice for Operating Open Flame Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G153	Standard Practice for Operating Enclosed Carbon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials
ASTM G154	Standard Practice for Operating Fluorescent Ultraviolet (UV) Lamp Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

ASTM G155	Standard Practice for Operating Xenon Arc Light Apparatus for Exposure of Nonmetallic Materials

Federal Specifications (FED SPEC)

FED SPEC RR-F-191/3	Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence Posts, Top Rails and Braces)
FED SPEC RR-F-191/4	Fencing, Wire and Post, Metal (Chain-Link Fence

Accessories) FAA Standard

FAA-STD-019	Lightning and Surge Protection, Grounding, Bonding and Shielding Requirements for Facilities and Electronic Equipment

FAA Orders

5300.38	AIP Handbook

END OF SECTION 32 31 13

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

SECTION 32 32 23 - SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALLS

PART 1 - GENERAL

1.1 SUMMARY

A. Section Includes:

1. Segmental retaining walls.

1.2 PREINSTALLATION MEETINGS

A. Preinstallation Conference: Conduct conference at Project site.

1.3 ACTION SUBMITTALS

A. Product Data: For each type of product.

B. Shop Drawings:

1. Show sizes, profiles, coursing, and locations of retaining wall units; including backfill and leveling base materials.
2. Show types, sizes, locations of soil reinforcing materials.
3. Signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

C. Samples for Initial Selection: Manufacturer's standard color sheets, showing full range of available colors and textures for segmental retaining wall units.

D. Samples for Verification: Actual sample of finished products for each type of exposed finish of segmental retaining wall units.

1. Size: Manufacturers' standard size.

E. Delegated Design Submittals: For segmental retaining walls, including analysis data signed and sealed by the qualified professional engineer responsible for their preparation.

1.4 INFORMATIONAL SUBMITTALS

A. Qualification Data: For testing agency.

B. Product Certificates: For each type of segmental retaining wall unit and soil reinforcement from manufacturer.

1. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units in accordance with ASTM D6916.
2. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement in accordance with ASTM D6638.

C. Test and Evaluation Reports:

1. Product Test Reports: For each type of segmental retaining wall unit and soil reinforcement, for tests performed by manufacturer and witnessed by a qualified testing agency.

a. Include test data for shear strength between segmental retaining wall units in accordance with ASTM D6916.
b. Include test data for connection strength between segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement in accordance with ASTM D6638.

2. Research Reports: For segmental retaining wall system, from an agency acceptable to authorities having jurisdiction or ICC-ES showing compliance with building code requirements.
3. Preconstruction Test Reports: For segmental retaining wall units and soil reinforcement.

D. Source Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Source quality-control reports.

E. Field Quality-Control Submittals:

1. Field quality-control reports.

F. Qualification Statements: For testing agency.

G. Delegated design engineer qualifications.

1.5 QUALITY ASSURANCE

A. Qualifications:

1. Installers: Entity that employs installers certified under the National Concrete Masonry Association (NCMA) Certified Segmental Retaining Wall Installer program at the Advanced Commercial certification level.

2. Delegated Design Engineer: A professional engineer who is legally qualified to practice in state where Project is located and who is experienced in providing engineering services of the type indicated.
3. Testing Agency: Qualified in accordance with ASTM E329 for testing indicated.

1.6 PRECONSTRUCTION TESTING

A. Preconstruction Testing Service: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform the following preconstruction testing:

1. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for pullout resistance in accordance with ASTM D6706.
2. Test soil reinforcement and backfill materials for coefficient of friction in accordance with ASTM D5321/D5321M.

1.7 DELIVERY, STORAGE, AND HANDLING

A. Store and handle concrete units and accessories to prevent deterioration or damage due to contaminants, breaking, chipping, or other causes.

B. Store geosynthetics in manufacturer's original packaging with labels intact. Store and handle geosynthetics to prevent deterioration or damage due to sunlight, chemicals, flames, temperatures above 160 deg F (71 deg C) or below 32 deg F (0 deg C), and other conditions that might damage them. Verify identification of geosynthetics before use, and examine them for defects as material is placed.

PART 2 - PRODUCTS

2.1 PERFORMANCE REQUIREMENTS

A. Delegated Design: Engage a qualified professional engineer, as defined in Section 014000 "Quality Requirements," to design segmental retaining walls.

B. Compliance Review: Qualified professional engineer responsible for segmental retaining wall design shall review and approve submittals and source and field quality-control reports for compliance of materials and construction with design.

C. Structural Performance: Engineering design shall be based on the following loads and be in accordance with NCMA's "Design Manual for Segmental Retaining Walls" and AASHTO's "Standard Specification for Highway Bridges."

1. Gravity loads due to soil pressures resulting from grades and sloped backfill indicated.

2. Superimposed loads (surcharge) indicated on Drawings.

2.2 SEGMENTAL RETAINING WALL UNITS

A. Concrete Units: ASTM C1372, Normal Weight, except that maximum water absorption shall not exceed 7 percent by weight and units shall not differ in height more than plus or minus 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) from specified dimension.
   1. Provide units that comply with requirements in ASTM C1372 for freeze-thaw durability.
   2. Provide units that interlock with courses above and below by means of integral lugs, lips, or tongues and grooves, pins, clips, splines, and hollow cores filled with drainage fill.

B. Color: As selected by Architect from manufacturer's full range.

C. Shape and Texture:

   1. Provide units with machine-split textured and or shaped exposed face with deeply beveled vertical edges.

      a. Face Dimensions:

         1) 8 inches (200 mm) high by 18 inches (460 mm) long.
         2) Mix of sizes providing appearance of random range ashlar stone masonry.
         3) As indicated and approved by Architect.

D. Batter: Provide units that offset from course below to provide a batter as indicated.

E. Cap Units: Provide cap units of shape indicated with smooth, as-cast top surfaces without holes or lugs.

F. Special Units: Provide corner units, end units, and other shapes as needed to produce segmental retaining walls of dimensions and profiles indicated and to provide texture on exposed surfaces matching face.

2.3 INSTALLATION MATERIALS

A. Pins: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

B. Clips: Product supplied by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for use with units provided, made from nondegrading polymer reinforced with glass fibers.

C. Cap Adhesive: Product supplied or recommended by segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer for adhering cap units to units below.

1. Leveling Course: Lean concrete with a compressive strength of not more than 500 psi (3.4 MPa).

D. Drainage Fill: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for drainage course.

E. Reinforced Soil Fill:

1. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for satisfactory soils.

F. Nonreinforced-Soil Fill: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for satisfactory soils.

G. Impervious Fill: Clayey gravel and sand mixture capable of compacting to a dense state.

H. Drainage Geotextile: Nonwoven needle-punched geotextile, manufactured for subsurface drainage applications, made from polyolefins or polyesters; with elongation of greater than 50 percent.

1. Apparent Opening Size: No. 70 to 100 (0.212 to 0.150 mm) sieve, maximum; ASTM D4751.
2. Minimum Grab Tensile Strength: 110 lb (49.9 kg); ASTM D4632/D4632M.
3. Minimum Weight: 4 oz./sq. yd. (132 g/sq. m).

I. Soil Reinforcement: Product specifically manufactured for use as soil reinforcement.

2.4 SOURCE QUALITY CONTROL

A. Factory test and inspect each roll of soil reinforcement for minimum average roll values for geosynthetic index property tests, including the following:

1. Weight.
2. Grab or single-rib strength.
3. Aperture opening.
4. Rib or yarn size.

PART 3 - EXECUTION

3.1 EXAMINATION

A. Examine areas and conditions, with Installer present, for compliance with requirements for excavation tolerances, condition of subgrades, and other conditions affecting performance of the Work.

B. Proceed with installation only after unsatisfactory conditions have been corrected.

3.2 INSTALLATION OF RETAINING WALLS

A. General: Place units in accordance with NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.

1. Lay units in running bond.
2. Form corners and ends by using special units, cutting units with motor-driven saw or splitting units with mason's hammer and chisel.

B. Do not use units with chips, cracks, or other defects that are visible at a distance of 20 feet (6 m) where such defects are exposed in the completed Work.

C. Leveling Base: Place and compact base material to thickness indicated and with not less than 95 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.

1. Leveling Course: Place unreinforced lean concrete over leveling base 1 to 2 inches (25 to 50 mm) thick. Compact and screed concrete to a smooth, level surface.

D. First Course: Place first course of segmental retaining wall units for full length of wall. Place units in firm contact with each other, properly aligned and level.

E. Subsequent Courses: Remove excess fill and debris from tops of units in course below. Place units in firm contact, properly aligned, and directly on course below.

1. For units with lugs designed to fit into holes in adjacent units, lay units so lugs are accurately aligned with holes, and bedding surfaces are firmly seated on beds of units below.
2. For units with lips at front of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact with lips of units below.
3. For units with lips at bottom rear of units, slide units as far forward as possible for firm contact of lips with units below.
4. For units with pins, install pins and align units.
5. For units with clips, install clips and align units.

F. Cap Units: Place cap units and secure with cap adhesive.

3.3 FILL PLACEMENT

A. General: Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving," with NCMA's "Segmental Retaining Wall Installation Guide" and segmental retaining wall unit manufacturer's written instructions.

B. Fill voids between and within units with drainage fill. Place fill as each course of units is laid.

C. Place, spread, and compact drainage fill and soil fill in uniform lifts for full width and length of embankment as wall is laid. Place and compact fills without disturbing alignment of units. Where both sides of wall are indicated to be filled, place fills on both sides at same time. Begin at wall, and place and spread fills toward embankment.

1. Use only hand-operated compaction equipment within 48 inches (1200 mm) of wall or one-half of height above bottom of wall, whichever is greater.
2. Compact reinforced-soil fill to not less than 98 percent maximum dry unit weight in accordance with ASTM D698.

3. Compact nonreinforced-soil fill to comply with Section 312000 "Earth Moving."

D. Place drainage geotextile against back of wall, and place layer of drainage fill at least **12 inches (300 mm)** wide behind drainage geotextile to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade. Place another layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.

E. Place a layer of drainage fill at least 2 inches (300 mm) wide behind wall to within 12 inches (300 mm) of finished grade. Place a layer of drainage geotextile between drainage fill and soil fill.

F. Wrap subdrainage pipe with filter fabric and place in drainage fill as indicated, sloped not less than 0.5 percent to drain.

G. Place impervious fill over top edge of drainage fill layer.

H. Slope grade at top of wall away from wall unless otherwise indicated. Slope grade at wall base away from wall. Provide uniform slopes that prevent ponding.

I. Place soil reinforcement in horizontal joints of retaining wall where indicated and in accordance with soil-reinforcement manufacturer's written instructions. Embed reinforcement a minimum of 8 inches (200 mm) into retaining wall and stretch tight over compacted backfill. Anchor soil reinforcement before placing fill.

1. Place additional soil reinforcement at corners and curved walls to provide continuous reinforcement.
2. Place geosynthetics with seams, if any, oriented perpendicularly to segmental retaining walls.
3. Do not dump fill material directly from trucks onto geosynthetics.
4. Place at least 6 inches (150 mm) of fill over reinforcement before compacting with tracked vehicles or 4 inches (100 mm) before compacting with rubber-tired vehicles.
5. Do not turn vehicles on fill until first layer of fill is compacted and second layer is placed over each soil-reinforcement layer.

3.4 CONSTRUCTION TOLERANCES

A. Variation from Level: For bed-joint lines along walls, do not exceed 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m), 3 inches (75 mm) maximum.

B. Variation from Indicated Batter: For slope of wall face, do not vary from indicated slope by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m).

C. Variation from Indicated Wall Line: For walls indicated as straight, do not vary from straight line by more than 1-1/4 inches in 10 feet (32 mm in 3 m).

D. Maximum Gap between Units: 1/8 inch (3 mm).

3.5 FIELD QUALITY CONTROL

A. Testing Agency: Engage a qualified testing agency to perform tests and inspections.

B. Comply with requirements in Section 312000 "Earth Moving" for field quality control.

C. Tests and Inspections:

1. In each compacted backfill layer, perform at least one field in-place compaction test for each 150 feet (45 m) or less of segmental retaining wall length.
2. Segmental retaining wall system will be considered defective if it does not pass tests and inspections.

D. Prepare test and inspection reports.

3.6 ADJUSTING

A. Remove and replace segmental retaining wall construction of the following descriptions:

1. Broken, chipped, stained, or otherwise damaged units. Units may be repaired if Architect approves methods and results.
2. Segmental retaining walls that do not match approved Samples.
3. Segmental retaining walls that do not comply with other requirements indicated.

B. Replace units so segmental retaining wall matches approved Samples and mockups, complies with other requirements, and shows no evidence of replacement.

END OF SECTION 32 32 23

THIS PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK

APPENDIX A

Geotechnical Report (2023)

Report of Geotechnical Exploration
Proposed ILM
Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

PREPARED FOR:

RS&H
730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 430
Atlanta, Georgia 30308

PREPARED BY:

S&ME, Inc.
3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100
Wilmington, North Carolina 28405

October 19, 2023

October 19, 2023

RS&H
730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 430
Atlanta, Georgia 30308

Attention: Mr. Dale Stubbs, P.E.

Reference: **Report of Geotechnical Exploration**
Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

Dear Mr. Stubbs:

S&ME, Inc. has completed the subsurface exploration for the referenced project. Our exploration was conducted in general accordance with our Proposal No. 23060109-R1, dated August 17, 2023, authorized by your issuance of Work Order No. 1 dated October 11, 2023, referencing our Subcontract for Professional Services dated May 1, 2023.

The purpose of this exploration was to characterize the surface and subsurface soils at the proposed site, and to provide recommendations for site preparation, earthwork, foundation support for the proposed structures, and pavement section construction for the proposed roadway improvements.

This report describes our understanding of the project, presents the results of the field exploration, laboratory testing, and engineering analysis, and discusses our conclusions and recommendations based on these considerations.

S&ME, Inc. appreciates this opportunity to be of service to you. Please contact us if you have questions concerning this report or any of our services.

Respectfully submitted,

S&ME, Inc.

Jonathan M. Prevatte
Associate Project Manager

Ronald P. Forest, Jr., P.E.
Principal Engineer
NC Registration No. 055983

NC PE Firm License No. F-0176

Table of Contents

♦ **Report at a Glance** 1

1.0 Introduction 2

2.0 Site and Project Description 2

2.1 Project Information 2

2.2 Design Data 2

2.2.1 Structural Loading Information 2

2.2.2 Settlement Tolerances 3

2.2.3 Grade Elevation Changes 3

3.0 Exploration Program 3

3.1 Field Exploration 3

3.2 Laboratory Testing 4

4.0 Site and Surface Conditions 5

4.1 Topography 5

4.2 Local Geology 6

5.0 Subsurface Conditions 6

5.1 Interpreted Subsurface Profile 6

5.2 Description of Subsurface Soils 7

5.2.1 Stratum I: Undocumented Fill 7

5.2.2 Stratum II: Upper Coastal Plain Medium Dense to Very Dense Sands 7

5.2.3 Stratum III: Upper Soft to Firm Clays 7

5.2.4 Stratum IV: Intermediate Coastal Plain Medium Dense to Dense Sands 8

5.2.5 Stratum V: Lower Very Soft to Stiff Clays 8

5.2.6 Stratum VI: Lower Medium Dense to Very Dense Sands 8

5.2.7 Stratum VII: Lower Loose to Very Dense Silty Sand Mixtures 8

5.2.8 Groundwater 8

5.2.9 Summary of Laboratory Test Results 9

6.0 Seismic Site Class and Design Parameters 9
6.1.1 Seismic Shear Wave Velocity Testing 10
6.1.2 Liquefaction Analysis 10
6.1.3 Seismic Spectral Design Values for Site Class D 11
6.1.4 Seismic Design Category 11
7.0 Conclusions and Recommendations 11
7.1 Demolition of Existing Structures 12
7.2 Surface Preparation 12
7.3 Fill Placement and Compaction 13
7.4 Grade Slab Support and Construction 14
7.5 Preliminary Foundation Considerations 14
7.5.1 Shallow Foundations – Parking Structure 14
7.5.2 Deep Foundations – Parking Structure 16
7.5.2.1 Augered Cast-in-Place Reinforced Concrete Piles (ACPs) 16
7.5.2.2 Continuous Flight Auger (CFA) Piles 16
7.5.2.3 Augered Pressure Grouted Displacement (APG-D) Piles 17
7.6 Soil Strength Parameters and Wall Design Recommendations 17
7.6.1 Soil Strength Parameters 17
7.6.2 Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients 18
7.6.3 Water Effects on Earth Pressures 19
7.6.4 Roadway Embankment Fill Settlement Monitoring 20
7.7 Pavement Section Design and Construction 20
7.7.1 General Recommendations for Pavement Areas 21
7.7.2 Base Course and Pavement Section Construction 22
7.8 Recommendations for Future Geotechnical Exploration 22
8.0 Limitations of Report 23

List of Tables

Table 3-1: SPT Boring Locations and Designations 4
Table 5-1: Summary of Laboratory Soil Index Testing Results 9

Table 5-2: Summary of Moisture-Density and CBR Test Results 9
Table 6-1: Ground Motion Parameters 11
Table 7-1: Estimated Soil Strength Parameters 18
Table 7-2: Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients 19
Table 7-3: Considered Pavement Sections[a] 21

Appendices

Appendix I – Figures
Appendix II – Exploration Procedures and Data
Appendix III – Laboratory Procedures and Data

♦ Report at a Glance

Key geotechnical findings based on our current understanding of the proposed project are presented below. These findings are presented as an overview and should not be used in place of the more detailed recommendations presented in the remainder of this report.

Category	Key Geotechnical Findings
Site Development Challenges	Site appears generally suitable for the proposed development. Specific geotechnical issues identified on this site that should be considered include: • Removal of up to 4 inches of topsoil. • Densification of loose, previously placed fill soils just beneath the topsoil, to be performed after stripping, but prior to new fill placement. • Installation of settlement monuments in thick new fill embankments, and a waiting period between the time the embankments are constructed and the time the roadways and structures are built, to allow time for settlement. • Although not observed at our test locations, with any previously filled or redevelopment site there remains a risk of encountering unsuitable previously placed fill materials that need to be removed and replaced.
Subsurface Conditions	• Undocumented fill (Stratum I) to depths ranging from 1.5 to 7 feet. • Upper Coastal Plain medium dense to very dense sands (Stratum II) beneath the surface material and Stratum I to depths ranging from 2 to 14 feet. • Soft to firm clays (Stratum III) to depths ranging from 5 to 18 feet. • Medium dense to dense sands (Stratum IV) to depths of 18 to 36 feet. • Very soft to stiff clays (Stratum V) to depths ranging from 27 to 44 feet. • Medium dense to very dense sands (Stratum VI) to depths of 41 to 56 feet. • Loose to very dense silty sands (Stratum VII) to depths of 50 to 66 feet. • Groundwater observed at depths of 1.7 to 16.4 feet.
Seismic Considerations	Liquefaction risk during seismic shaking is low. Site Class D. Seismic Design Category C under ASCE 7-10, or Seismic Design Category B under ASCE 7-16.
Foundation Types	Shallow spread footings with a net allowable bearing pressure of up to 2,500 psf may be feasible with a total estimated static settlement of 1 inch or less and differential settlement of ½ inch if loads are equal to or less than 400-kips/column, 15 kip/ft wall, and 150 psf area load, and new fill is 2 feet thick or less in the parking structure area. Deep foundations may be needed for greater loads or thicker fills.
Slab Support	On-grade (soil supported). Modulus of subgrade reaction of 175 lbs./cu.in. is available for unreinforced cast in place concrete slabs on grade.
Use of Site Soil as Fill	Existing fill soils of Stratum I appear generally suitable for re-use as structural fill. Native sands and sand mixtures of Stratum II also appear generally suitable for use as structural fill. Natural moisture content of the upper 2 feet of soils was about 0.3 percent dry of optimum as sampled, which is within the compactable range. Soils below the water table will likely be significantly wet of optimum. Fill soils should be compacted to at least 98 percent of the standard Proctor (ASTM D 698) maximum dry density within +/-3% of optimum moisture.

Excavation Conditions	Hydraulic excavator should be able to excavate throughout the soil profile. Some very dense sand lenses that slow excavation may be encountered in any excavations that extend below a depth of 12 feet.
Construction Dewatering	Construction dewatering using ditches and/or sumps with pumps may be required to control groundwater in excavations, and to control surface water infiltration.
Pavements	• *Proposed Roads & Parking Lots:* 1.5 in. of Type S 9.5 C surface HMA placed over 2.5 inches Type I 19.0 C over 6 in. of NCDOT ABC. • *Proposed Roads (Heavy Traffic):* 1.5 in. of Type S 9.5 B surface HMA placed over 2.5 inches Type I 19.0 C over 8 in. of NCDOT ABC. • *Emergency Access Road:* 6 in. 4,000 psi PCC over 6 in. of NCDOT ABC • *Parking Lot Entry /Exit Plazas:* 5 in. 4,000 psi PCC over 6 in. of NCDOT ABC

1.0 Introduction

The purpose of this exploration was to obtain subsurface information to allow us to characterize the subsurface conditions at the site and to develop recommendations concerning grading, foundation design, and other related construction issues. This report describes our understanding of the project, presents the results of the field exploration and laboratory testing, and discusses our conclusions and recommendations.

A site plan showing the approximate test locations is included in Appendix I. The boring and sounding logs, a discussion of the field exploration procedures, and a legend to soil classification and symbols is included in Appendix II. The results of the laboratory testing are included in Appendix III.

2.0 Site and Project Description

2.1 Project Information

We understand that several new parking lots, roadways, and structures are planned for the land side at the Wilmington International Airport (ILM). RS&H reviewed previous explorations and provided us with additional locations to explore for additional planned improvements. The improvements for this project include the relocation of existing roadways and new roadway construction, proposed parking areas and aprons, a potential future parking deck, retaining walls associated with the portions of Commercial Road and Airport Boulevard in front of the existing Terminal, and an area along Airport Boulevard where new fill heights of up to 18 feet are planned.

2.2 Design Data

2.2.1 Structural Loading Information

Structural loading information for this construction was not provided to us at the time of this assessment. We understand that planning and design for the future parking deck will begin later this year and no information regarding structural components or loading is available at this time. We understand that the future parking deck

structure may be up to three stories in height. Based on past experience with similar projects, column loads on the order of about 400 kips, and wall loads on the order of of 15 kips per linear foot may be applicable and were used for our preliminary considerations. We have also assumed a uniformly applied area load on the grade slabs of 150 pounds per square foot (psf), including the dead weight of the slab itself. This magnitude of ground pressure assumes that the structural frame is not supported on the slab, but rather is supported on isolated column and/or wall footings that are independent of the grade slab. If the assumed loads differ from the actual loading for this project, please contact us as our recommendations may require revision. It is anticipated that additional geotechnical analyses will be required for the parking structure once more information, such as actual loading parameters, framing type, and building layout are known.

2.2.2 Settlement Tolerances

We have not been provided with information relating to project settlement tolerances; therefore, we have assumed acceptable static settlement tolerances of 1 inch of total post-construction settlement and ½ inch of differential post-construction settlement.

2.2.3 Grade Elevation Changes

We have not been provided with a grading plan prior to preparing this proposal. For purposes of this proposal, we assume that cuts and fills of up to 2 feet may be required to achieve design grade elevations for most of the proposed pavement areas.

The information provided to us identified an area of Airport Boulevard, southwest of the Terminal, that is planned to require fill placement of about 6 to 18 feet, in conjunction with planned retaining walls along the front of the Terminal. However, the amount of cuts and fills outside of the identified area and heights of proposed retaining walls were not provided.

3.0 Exploration Program

3.1 Field Exploration

Between the dates of September 5 and 22, 2023, representatives of S&ME visited the site. Using the information provided, we performed the following tasks.

1. We performed a site walkover, observing general features of topography, existing structures, ground cover, and surface soils at the project site.
2. A total of twelve (12) cone penetration test (CPT) soundings were performed at locations associated with the future parking deck (PD-1 through PD-4), retaining walls (RETW-1 through RETW-5), and Airport Boulevard ramp (FILL-1 through FILL-3), as follows:

    A. One (1) seismic cone penetration test (SCPT) sounding (RETW-5) advanced to the depth of refusal (66.1 feet). In conjunction with this sounding, downhole shear wave velocity tests were performed at approximate 1-meter depth intervals to the sounding termination depth.

B. Eleven (11) CPT soundings were advanced without seismic testing to a target depth of 50 feet each with the exception of soundings FILL-1 and RETW-1, which encountered refusal at depths ranging from 47.6 to 48.1 feet. Within soundings PD-4 and RETW-5, one Pore Pressure Dissipation (PPD) test was performed in soft, cohesive soils encountered within the soil profile.

3. A total of thirty-seven (37) SPT borings were advanced to a depth of 10 feet each at locations associated with the proposed roadways (AAR-1 through AAR-8, AB-1 through AB-6, EAR-1 through EAR-5, and FR-1 through FR-3), parking lots (MA-1 through MA-4, MAPKG-1 through MAPKG-3, ML-1, PKG-1 through PKG-4, and ROAD/PKG-1), and aprons (APRON-1 and APRON-2), as detailed in Table 3-1 below.

Table 3-1: SPT Boring Locations and Designations

Designation	Location	Boring Designations	Depth (feet)
AAR	AARF Access Road	AAR-1 thru 5; AAR-7 and 8	10
AB	Airport Boulevard	AB-1 thru 6	10
EAR	Emergency Access Road	EAR-1 thru 5	10
FR	Future Road	FR-1 thru 3	10
MA	Modern Aviation	MA-1 thru 4	10
MAPKG	Modern Aviation Parking	MAPKG-1 thru 3	10
ML	March Lot	ML-1	10
PKG	Front Terminal Parking	PKG-1 thru 4 and ROAD/PKG-1	10
APRON	Modern Aviation Aprons	APRON-1 and 2	10

4. The soil test borings were advanced with a conventional rotary drilling process using standard drilling techniques. Standard penetration tests and split-spoon sampling were performed in general accordance with ASTM D 1586 procedures. Sampling will be performed at continuous intervals within the borings.
5. Split-spoon samples and two 50-pound bulk samples were collected from the SPT borings of the site for laboratory analysis.
6. Groundwater levels in the CPT soundings were interpreted based on pore pressure measurements and direct measurements at the completion of drilling. Groundwater levels in the SPT borings were measured at the completion of drilling. A brief description of the field exploration procedures performed, as well as a soil classification legend, and the SCPT and CPT sounding logs and SPT boring logs are attached in Appendix II.

3.2 Laboratory Testing

After the recovered soil samples were brought to our laboratory, a geotechnical professional examined and/or tested each sample to estimate its distribution of grain sizes, plasticity, organic content, moisture condition, color, presence of lenses and seams, and apparent geologic origin in general accordance with ASTM D 2488, *"Standard Practice for Description and Identification of Soils (Visual-Manual Procedure)"*. The resulting classifications are

presented on the hand auger boring logs, included in Appendix II. Similar soils were grouped into representative strata on the logs. The strata contact lines represent approximate boundaries between soil types. The actual transitions between soil types in the field are likely more gradual in both the vertical and horizontal directions than those which are indicated on the logs.

We performed the following quantitative ASTM-standardized laboratory tests on recovered samples, to help classify the soils and formulate our conclusions and recommendations:

1. Five grab samples and two bulk samples were tested in general accordance with ASTM D 2216, "*Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass"*, to measure the in-situ moisture content of the soil.
2. Five grab samples and two bulk samples were tested in general accordance with ASTM D 1140, "*Standard Test Methods for Amount of Material in Soils Finer than No. 200 (75-µm) Sieve"*, to measure the percent clay and silt fraction.
3. Five grab samples and two bulk samples were tested in general accordance with ASTM D 4318, "*Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils",* to measure the plasticity of the soil.
4. Two bulk samples were tested for moisture-density relationship ("Proctor") using standard effort ASTM D 698, "Standard Test Methods for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using standard Effort (12,400 ft-lbf/ft^3 (600 kN-m/m^3))" to characterize the compaction characteristics of the soil.
5. Two bulk samples were re-compacted to approximately 98 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density and tested in general accordance with ASTM D 1883, *"Standard Test Method for California Bearing Ratio (CBR) of Laboratory-Compacted Soils"* to evaluate the subgrade support characteristics of the soils.

The laboratory test results and a brief description of the laboratory procedures for the above listed tests are attached to this report in Appendix III.

4.0 Site and Surface Conditions

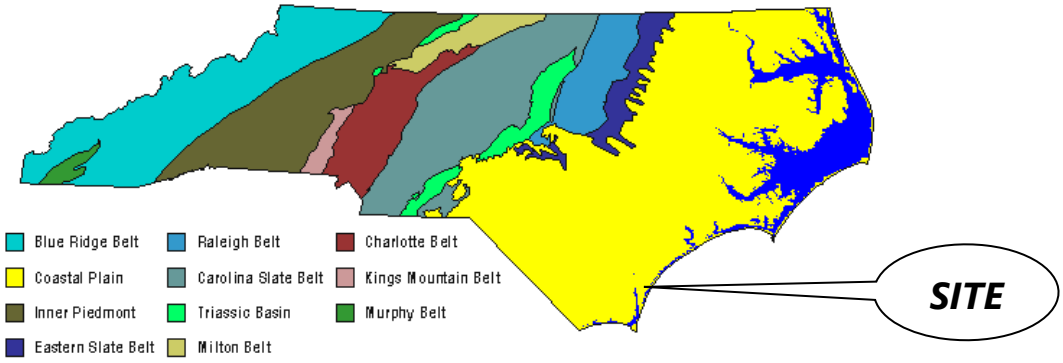
At the time of this assessment a majority of the project site consisted of short length maintained grass and landscaped areas. Asphalt was encountered at test locations APRON-1 and 2, AAR-5, AAR-8, PD-1 through PD-3, and FILL-2. Asphalt ranged from 2 to 4 inches in thickness. Beneath the asphalt at test location AAR-8, PD-1 through PD-3, FILL-2, and at the surface of test locations EAR-1, FR-1 aggregate base course (ABC) was encountered and ranged in thickness from 2 to 12 inches in thickness. Ponded water was not observed on the site surface at the time of this exploration.

4.1 Topography

Based on the Google Earth® imagery, existing grades across the site appear to range from roughly 15 to 40 feet above mean sea level (MSL) across the site. These elevations are approximate and were only used to roughly estimate the ground surface elevation at our test locations to put on our boring logs, but should not be used for design considerations. It was beyond the scope of this exploration to survey ground surface elevations. If you elect to survey the actual ground surface elevations at our test locations, we can add that information to our boring logs, if desired.

4.2 Local Geology

Figure 4-1: Physiography



The site is located within the Coastal Plain Physiographic Province of North Carolina as shown in Figure 4-1 above.

The Coastal Plain Province is typically characterized by marine, alluvial, and aeolian sediments that were deposited during periods of fluctuating sea levels and moving shorelines. The soils and basal formations in the North Carolina Coastal Plain Physiographic Province are typical of those laid down in a shallow sloping sea bottom; interbedded sands and clays with irregular deposits of shells and layers of limestone and cemented sands. Alluvial sands, silts, and clays are typically present near rivers and creeks. Deposits of peat, organic silt, and organic clay are also typically present in or near current or former tidal marsh areas in the outer portion of the Coastal Plain. According to the 1985 Geologic Map of North Carolina, the site is underlain by the Pee Dee Formation of Cretaceous age. This formation consists of glauconitic, fossiliferous, and calcareous sand mixtures and clays.

5.0 Subsurface Conditions

The generalized subsurface conditions at the site are described below. For more detailed descriptions and stratifications at test locations, the respective sounding and boring logs should be reviewed in Appendix II.

5.1 Interpreted Subsurface Profile

One subsurface cross-sectional profile of the site soils is attached as Figure 4 in Appendix I to illustrate a general representation of the subsurface conditions in the proposed construction area. The profile is oriented generally southwest to northeast and shown as looking northwest. The orientation of the profile in plan view is marked as A – A' on Figure 2.

The strata indicated in the profile are characterized in the following section. Note that the profile is not to scale and was prepared for illustrative purposes only. Subsurface stratifications may be more gradual than indicated, and conditions may vary between test locations. The strata encountered are labeled on the soil profile to allow their properties to be systematically described.

5.2 Description of Subsurface Soils

This section describes subsurface soil conditions observed at the site, as illustrated on the profile in Figure 3 of Appendix I. Soils encountered by the test soundings were grouped into general strata based on estimated physical properties derived from subsurface data and the recovered soil samples. The site subsurface soils were separated into seven strata, labeled I through VII.

5.2.1 Stratum I: Undocumented Fill

Beneath the surface materials at test locations PD-1 through PD-4, RETW-2 through RETW-5, APRON-2, EAR-1, EAR-4, and FR-1, a stratum of undocumented fill was encountered to depths ranging from 1.5 to 7 feet. The depth of the undocumented fill was estimated based on interpreted soil types from CPT sounding data and the relative elevation of the test location versus surrounding areas. Therefore, the estimated depths of fill should be considered approximate, and it should be recognized that the fill stratum may be thicker or thinner than estimated.

Based on samples collected from the SPT borings, this stratum generally consists of silty sand (USCS Classification "SM") and poorly graded sand with silt (SP-SM). These soils were observed to be moist with brown, tan, and gray coloration. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 40 to 650 tons per square foot (tsf) with average tip resistances ranging from about 100 to 300 tsf, indicating a generally medium dense to very dense relative density. SPT N-values in this stratum ranged from about 13 blows per foot (bpf) to 24 bpf indicating a generally medium dense relative density.

5.2.2 Stratum II: Upper Coastal Plain Medium Dense to Very Dense Sands

Beneath Stratum I at test locations PD-1 through PD-4, RETW-2 through RETW-5, APRON-2, EAR-1, EAR-4, and FR-1 and underlying the surface materials at the remaining test locations, an upper stratum of Coastal Plain medium dense to very dense sands was encountered to the maximum exploration depth of 10 feet at test locations AAR-1, AAR-4, AAR-5, AAR-8, AB-1, AB-2, AB-5, AB-6, APRON 1, APRON-2, EAR-1 through EAR-3, FR-1, FR-3, PKG-1, and ROAD/PKG-1 and to depths ranging from 2 to 14 feet at the remaining test locations. This stratum generally consists of silty sand (SM), clayey sand (SC), silty-clayey sand (SC-SM), poorly graded sand (SP), and poorly graded sand with silt (SP-SM). These soils were observed to be moist to wet with brown to dark brown, tan, and gray to dark gray coloration. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 100 to 550 tsf and averaged between 200 to 300 tsf, indicating a generally dense to very dense relative density with some medium dense layers. SPT N-values in this stratum ranged from about weight of hammer (WOH) to 64 bpf and averaged 13 bpf indicating a generally medium dense relative density with some very loose to very dense layers.

5.2.3 Stratum III: Upper Soft to Firm Clays

Beneath Stratum II at the remaining test locations, an upper stratum of soft to firm clays was encountered to the maximum exploration depth of 10 feet in at test locations AB-3, AB-4, EAR-4, EAR-5, MA-2, PKG-3, and PKG-4 and to depths ranging from 5 to 18 feet below the ground surface at the remaining test locations. This stratum generally consists of sandy fat clay (CH) to fat clay with sand (CH) or sandy lean clay (CL). These soils were observed to be wet, with tan and gray to dark gray coloration. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 10 to 55 tsf and averaged about 10 tsf, indicating a generally soft to firm consistency with some

very stiff layers. SPT N-values in this stratum ranged from weight of hammer (WOH) to 15 bpf and averaged about 4 bpf indicating a generally soft consistency with some very soft to firm layers.

5.2.4 Stratum IV: Intermediate Coastal Plain Medium Dense to Dense Sands

Beneath Stratum III, an intermediate stratum of Coastal Plain medium dense to dense sands was encountered to the maximum exploration depth of 10 feet at test locations AAR-2, AAR-3, AAR-7, FR-2, MA-1, MA-3, MA-4, MAPKG-1 through MAPKG-3, ML-1, and PKG-2 and to depths ranging from about 18 to 36 feet below the ground surface at the remaining test locations. This stratum generally consists of clayey sand (SC), poorly graded sand (SP), and poorly graded sand with silt (SP-SM). These soils were observed to be wet with tan, orange, and gray coloration. CPT tip resistance values ranged widely from approximately 20 to 300 tsf but typically ranged between 60 to 150 tsf, indicating a generally medium dense to dense relative density with some loose to very dense layers. Some thin soft to firm silt/clay seams were encountered within this stratum between at various depths.

5.2.5 Stratum V: Lower Very Soft to Stiff Clays

Beneath Stratum IV, a lower stratum of very soft to stiff clays was encountered to depths ranging from 27 to 44 feet below the ground surface. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 10 to 60 tsf and averaged about 10 tsf, indicating a generally soft to firm consistency with some very soft to very stiff layers. In particular, very soft zones were observed in soundings PD-3 and PD-4 at depths of about 35 to 40 feet.

5.2.6 Stratum VI: Lower Medium Dense to Very Dense Sands

Beneath Stratum V, a lower stratum of medium dense to very dense sands was encountered to the maximum exploration depth of about 50 feet in soundings PD-1 through PD-4, RETW-3, and RETW-4 and to depths ranging from 41 to 56 feet in the remaining soundings. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 50 to 450 tsf but typically ranged between 150 to 350, indicating a generally dense to very dense relative density with some medium dense layers.

5.2.7 Stratum VII: Lower Loose to Very Dense Silty Sand Mixtures

Beneath Stratum VI, a lower stratum of loose to very dense silty sand mixtures was encountered to the maximum exploration depths of 50 to 66 feet in the remaining soundings. CPT tip resistance values ranged from approximately 10 tsf to greater than 800 tsf but typically ranged between 40 to 80 tsf, indicating a generally medium dense relative density with some very loose to very dense layers.

5.2.8 Groundwater

Interpreted depths to groundwater ranged from about 1.7 to 16.4 feet in the CPT soundings at the time of our exploration. Groundwater was encountered at depths ranging from 4.5 to 8.5 feet in the SPT borings at the completion of drilling with the exception of borings AB-1, AB-6, and FR-1 which did not encounter groundwater at the time of drilling. The SPT borings were backfilled after the measurement of groundwater levels due to the risk of foot traffic in the vicinity of the borings; therefore, 24 hour water levels were not collected. Groundwater levels may fluctuate seasonally at the site, being influenced by rainfall variation and other factors. Site construction activities can also influence groundwater elevations.

5.2.9 Summary of Laboratory Test Results

We performed laboratory testing on five split-spoon sample and two bulk samples to further assess the engineering index properties of the subsurface soils. The laboratory soil index test results are presented in Appendix III and are summarized in the following tables.

Table 5-1: Summary of Laboratory Soil Index Testing Results

Boring/ (Sample No.)	Sample Depth	Natural Moisture Content (%)	Silt/Clay Fines Content (%)	Atterberg Plasticity Limits			USCS Classification
				LL	PL	PI	
EAR-2/(BULK-1)	0.5' – 2'	15.8	13.9	---	NP*	---	SM
AAR-1/(BULK-2)	0.5' – 2'	12.1	21.3	---	NP*	---	SM
AAR-8/(S-4)	6' – 8'	31.8	22.4	---	NP*	---	SM
APRON-2/(S-2)	2' – 4'	26.9	13.7	---	NP*	---	SM
AB-6/(S-5)	8' – 10'	19.9	3.7	---	NP*	---	SP
EAR-5/(S-3)	4' – 6'	22.0	19.6	---	NP*	---	SM
ML-1/(S-4)	6' – 8'	30.7	29.0	---	NP*	---	SM

*NP = Non-Plastic

Table 5-2: Summary of Moisture-Density and CBR Test Results

Boring /(Sample No.)	Standard Proctor (ASTM D698)		CBR at 0.1 in. Penetration at 98% Compaction (%)
	Maximum Dry Density (pcf)	Optimum Moisture Content (%)	
EAR-2/(BULK-1)	114.0	12.0	13.9
AAR-1/(BULK-2)	114.5	13.5	12.6

6.0 Seismic Site Class and Design Parameters

There are no known, mapped faults in the vicinity of the site. The historic earthquake event which influences the design seismicity of the site the most is the 1886 Charleston, South Carolina earthquake with a magnitude of approximately 7.3.

We analyzed the liquefaction potential of the site in general accordance with the 2018 North Carolina Building Code. The initial step in site class definition is to check for the four conditions described for Site Class F, which would require a site-specific evaluation to determine site coefficients F_A and F_V. Soils vulnerable to potential failure include the following: 1) quick and highly sensitive clays or collapsible weakly cemented soils, 2) peats and

highly organic clays, 3) very high plasticity clays, and 4) very thick soft/medium stiff clays. These soils were not evident in the borings or soundings.

One other determining characteristic, liquefaction potential under seismic conditions, was assessed. Soils were assessed qualitatively for liquefaction susceptibility based on their age, stratum, mode of deposition, degree of cementation, and size composition. This assessment considered observed liquefaction behavior in various soils in areas of previous seismic activity.

Our analysis, which is more fully described below, indicates that liquefaction of subsoils appears unlikely to occur on a widespread basis at this site in the event of the design magnitude earthquake.

6.1.1 Seismic Shear Wave Velocity Testing

Shear wave velocity testing was performed in sounding RETW-5 using down-hole seismic sounding methods to help estimate the seismic site class. Based on shear wave velocities measured during our exploration of this site, we determined that site response factors F_A and F_V corresponding to Site Class D would be applicable to determine spectral values for design. This recommendation is provided based on the average weighted shear wave velocity of 794 per second measured to a depth of 66 feet, and then extrapolated to a depth of 100 feet. The average extrapolated shear wave velocity was estimated to be 641 feet per second, which is greater than the minimum of 600 feet per second that is required for consideration of Site Class D design parameters. See Figure 5 in Appendix I for the shear wave velocity profile.

6.1.2 Liquefaction Analysis

An age correction factor, which increases the liquefaction resistance of older sand deposits of the type that were encountered at this site, was applied. To help evaluate the consequences of liquefaction, we have computed the Liquefaction Potential Index (LPI), which is an empirical tool used to evaluate the potential for liquefaction to cause damage. The LPI considers the factor of safety against liquefaction, the depth to the liquefiable soils, and the thickness of the liquefiable soils to compute an index that ranges from 0 to 100. An LPI of 0 means there is no risk of liquefaction; an LPI of 100 means the entire profile is expected to liquefy. The level of risk is generally defined as:

- **LPI < 5** – surface manifestation and liquefaction-induced damage not expected.
- **5 ≤ LPI ≤ 15** – moderate liquefaction with some surface manifestation possible.
- **LPI > 15** – severe liquefaction and foundation damage is likely.

The average LPI for this site was less than 5 using the ASCE 7-10 site modified peak ground acceleration, which indicates that the risk of surface damage due to liquefaction is low, and liquefaction-related surface damage is not expected to occur during seismic shaking. Significant ground settlements during an earthquake caused by the volumetric compression of the saturated sands are not expected. Therefore, Site Class F does not reasonably apply to this site.

6.1.3 Seismic Spectral Design Values for Site Class D

The current North Carolina Building Code (NCBC) references the 2015 International Building Code and ASCE 7-10 for determining the design spectral accelerations and liquefaction potential; however, Seismic Ground Motion Maps were updated in 2014 and are incorporated into ASCE 7-16, which is referenced by the 2018 version of the International Building Code (IBC). The updated seismic maps, which result in lower spectral accelerations, represent the latest understanding of the seismic hazards and will presumably eventually be incorporated into the next edition of the NCBC, which is based on the IBC. Listed in the table below are the ground motion parameters from both resources, ASCE 7-10 and ASCE 7-16. Use of the newer, more up to date seismic parameters may require the authorization of the local Building Official until the updated code version is officially adopted.

Table 6-1: Ground Motion Parameters

Method	Site Class	S_S	S_1	S_{DS}	S_{D1}	PGA_M
2018 North Carolina Building Code (ASCE 7-10)	D	0.214g	0.091g	0.228g	0.145g	0.173g
2018 International Building Code (ASCE 7-16)	D	0.153g	0.067g	0.163g	0.108g	0.122g

6.1.4 Seismic Design Category

For a structure having a Risk Category classification of I, II, or III, the S_{DS} and S_{D1} values obtained are consistent with "Seismic Design Category C" as defined by the 2018 North Carolina Building Code and ASCE 7-10.

For a structure having a Risk Category classification of I, II, or III, the S_{DS} and S_{D1} values obtained are consistent with "Seismic Design Category B" as defined by the 2018 International Building Code and ASCE 7-16.

7.0 Conclusions and Recommendations

The conclusions and recommendations included in this section are based on the project information outlined previously and the data obtained during our exploration. If the construction scope is altered, the locations of the structures changed, or if conditions are encountered during construction that differ from those encountered in the borings, then S&ME, Inc. should be retained to review the following recommendations based upon the new information and make any necessary changes.

Based upon the results of our exploration and our experience with similar soils in the site vicinity, the site appears generally adaptable for the proposed development. Based on the assumed loading and settlement tolerances, it appears feasible that the proposed parking deck structures could possibly be supported on a shallow foundation system. Preliminary recommendations for deep foundations types are also provided for consideration in the event that the use of deep foundation support is preferred, or if the structural loads are greater than those described in section 2.2.1 of this report.

7.1 Demolition of Existing Structures

The following general recommendations are provided for the demolition of existing structures including underground utilities or old foundations in areas where they occur within the footprint of the proposed new structures:

1. Demolish existing asphalt or concrete pavements and footings where encountered within the footprint of any proposed new structure foundations.
2. Following demolition of the existing structures, remove or plug existing utilities that are to be permanently abandoned. If not removed or plugged, pipes may serve as conduits for subsurface erosion resulting in formation of voids below foundations or grade slabs.
3. Reroute existing utilities that will remain in use around the proposed new structures and their foundations.
4. Areas excavated to remove any buried structures should be backfilled in accordance with Section 7.3 of this report.

As with any demolition project, there may be unexpected or unforeseen conditions encountered in the subsurface. In such cases, the Geotechnical Engineer shall be consulted.

7.2 Surface Preparation

The following recommendations are provided regarding site preparation and earthwork:

1. Where encountered within the proposed development areas, strip the site surface of topsoil, and vegetation, and dispose of outside of the proposed parking deck and pavement footprints.

    - Do not locate debris piles within the construction areas.

2. Surface and subsurface water conditions at the time of construction, largely influenced by prevailing weather patterns, will determine the need for and extent of drainage measures. Water conditions can change with construction activities and precipitation effects. Site drainage should be established prior to construction activities and maintained during construction activities.
3. After the stripping operation is complete and temporary site drainage has been installed, the exposed soil surface should be thoroughly densified in place by making several passes with a heavy vibratory roller prior to placement of new fill or beginning the next stage of construction.

    A. Moisture conditioning of the subgrade by the addition of water or drying of soils may be required prior to densification, depending upon conditions at the time of construction.
    B. Soils may need to be plowed or disced and dried (or in some cases wetted) in order to adjust the moisture content to suitable levels for compaction.
    C. Do not operate heavy vibratory rollers within 10 feet laterally of existing structures, due to the vibration hazard. Use smaller equipment in these areas, or operate the rollers on static (non-vibratory) mode.

4. Following densification but prior to new fill placement, the densified subgrade surface should be proofrolled by the contractor under the observation of a representative of the Geotechnical Engineer (S&ME) by making repeated passes with a fully-loaded dump truck or equipment with similar weight and tire pressures. The proofrolling should be conducted only during dry weather. Areas of rutting or pumping soils indicated by the proofroll may require selective undercutting or further stabilization prior to any new fill placement or slab construction, as determined by the Geotechnical Engineer.

7.3 Fill Placement and Compaction

Where new fill soils are to be placed, the following recommendations apply:

1. Fill should be comprised of soils free of excessive organic matter or other deleterious materials. Before beginning to place fill, each proposed fill material should be sampled and tested to measure its maximum dry density, optimum moisture content, natural moisture content, and suitability for use as a structural fill material. Fill soils used should meet the following minimum requirements:

    A. Plasticity index of 6 percent or less (ASTM D 4318).
    B. Silt/Clay fines content not greater than 25 percent by weight (ASTM D 1140).
    C. Moisture content within 3 percent, plus or minus, of the standard Proctor (ASTM D 698) optimum moisture content for compaction (ASTM D2216).
    D. **For pavement areas:** Soaked CBR value (ASTM D1883) of at least 10 percent when recompacted to 98 percent of the standard Proctor (ASTM D 698) maximum dry density.

2. Where fill soil is required, structural fill should be compacted throughout to at least 98 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 698).

    A. Compacted soils should not exhibit pumping or rutting under equipment traffic.
    B. Loose lifts of fill should be no more than 12 inches thick prior to compaction, limited to 4 to 6 inches thick if using small, walk-behind compaction equipment.
    C. Structural fill should extend at least 5 feet from the edge of structures or pavements before either sloping or being allowed to exhibit a lower degree of compaction.
    D. In non-structural fill areas only, such as in landscaped areas that are located at least 5 feet outside the footprint of pavements and buildings, fill should be compacted to at least 90 percent of the maximum dry density by the Standard Proctor method (ASTM D 698).
    E. The moisture content of the fill materials should be controlled to within 3 percent below to 3 percent above the optimum moisture content. In addition to meeting the compaction requirement, fill material should be stable under movement of the construction equipment and should not exhibit rutting or pumping under traffic.

3. Where present, the groundwater level should be maintained at least 2 to 3 feet below any surface to be densified prior to beginning compaction. This is to prevent the compaction operation from drawing water up to the surface and degrading it.
4. Fill placement should be observed by an experienced S&ME soils testing technician working under the guidance of the Geotechnical Engineer.

A. At least one field density test should be performed per each 5,000 square feet for each lift of soil in large area fills in structural areas, with a minimum of 2 tests per lift.
B. At least one field density test should be conducted per each 250 cubic feet of fill placed in confined areas such as isolated undercuts and in trenches or behind walls, with a minimum of 1 test per lift.
C. At least one field density test should be conducted for each 250 linear feet of road alignment backfill, with a minimum of 1 test per lift per section.
D. One-point Proctor verification tests (ASTM D 698) should be performed on the fill material at a frequency determined by the Geotechnical Engineer as necessary to verify the laboratory Proctor data.

7.4 Grade Slab Support and Construction

The following recommendations are given for the support and construction of soil-supported grade slabs:

1. Soils similar to those recommended as fill material or the native near surface materials should provide adequate support to proposed soil-supported grade slabs, assuming preparation and compaction of the subgrade as recommended above. A modulus of subgrade reaction (k) of 175 lbs/in^3 may be used for reinforcing design considering reworked and stable native soils.
2. Structural design should incorporate installation of a vapor barrier prior to placing concrete for grade slab systems, to limit moisture-infiltration into finished spaces, where appropriate.
3. Below the floor slab, place a layer of at least 4 inches of compacted clean granular materials to provide a capillary break between the native soils and the floor slab in finished spaces.

    A. Granular materials used may consist of a clean sand, classifying as USCS type SP or SW and having less than 5 percent silt/clay fines by weight passing the No. 200 sieve when tested by ASTM D1140, or may consist of a crushed, well-graded gravel blend meeting the requirements of NCDOT Aggregate Base Course (ABC), or an open-graded, manufactured washed gravel such as NCDOT No. 57 or No. 67 stone.
    B. If ABC or sand is used, this underslab layer should be compacted to at least 95 percent of the modified Proctor maximum dry density (ASTM D 1557).

4. Have the Geotechnical Engineer observe a proofroll of all slab subgrades prior to concrete placement. Softened soils may need to be undercut or stabilized before concrete placement.

7.5 Preliminary Foundation Considerations

The following information shall be considered preliminary and **not for use in final design procedures**. Before the foundation support recommendations can be confirmed for design purposes, the actual structural loading parameters, building layout, and framing type must be determined, as well as actual fill heights.

7.5.1 Shallow Foundations – Parking Structure

The soil profile encountered may be suitable to support the proposed parking structure with shallow foundations considering static loading conditions and the assumed maximum column, wall, and area loads described in section 2.2.1. The design engineer needs to confirm that the assumed maximum loads and fill height assumptions are correct; if actual loads are higher than assumed or if more than 2 feet of new fill is added to the site to raise

grades, we should be notified and given a reasonable opportunity to reconsider these recommendations, because it could result in changes to the estimated available bearing capacity and/or static settlement magnitudes.

The following recommendations are provided for preliminary consideration during the design and construction of shallow foundations at this site considering the assumed parameters:

1. Provided that the recommendations in Sections 7.2 through 7.3 of this report are implemented, the proposed structures may be supported on shallow foundations using isolated spread footings and slab-on-grade construction as planned. A net available bearing pressure of up to **2,500 psf** may be used for design of individual spread footings and wall footings that are extended to bear within residual coastal plain deposits or within structural fill compacted as recommended in Section 7.3 of this report.
2. Lateral capacity of foundations includes a soil lateral pressure and coefficient of friction as described in IBC Section 1806. Assuming that the footings will bear within the compacted fill or compacted similar native surface sands, the foundations will be embedded in material similar to those described as Class 4 in Table 1806.2. Where footings are cast neat against the sides of excavations in natural soils, an allowable bearing pressure of 150 psf per foot depth below natural grade may be used in computations. An allowable coefficient of friction of 0.45, multiplied by the dead load, may be used for computation of sliding resistance. An increase of one-third in the allowable lateral capacity may be considered for load combinations, including wind and earthquake, as permitted by IBC Section 1605.3.2, unless otherwise restricted by design code provisions.
3. Even if smaller dimensions are theoretically allowable from a bearing pressure consideration, the minimum column footing width should be 30 inches and the minimum wall footing width should be 18 inches, to avoid punching shear. Spread footings should be embedded to a minimum depth of 12 inches or to the depth indicated on the drawings, whichever is greater.
4. Dynamic Cone Penetrometer (DCP) testing should be performed by a representative of the Geotechnical Engineer at representative locations within the open foundation excavations in order to evaluate the insitu available bearing capacity of the soils.

    A. In cases where the DCP testing indicates insufficient bearing capacity for the applied bearing pressure, the foundation bearing soils may need to be over-excavated and replaced with stronger material within the upper few feet beneath the footing bearing grade elevation.
    B. Where soft or loose soils are encountered within the footing excavations and are removed, we recommend that an open-graded, coarse, washed, crushed, manufactured granitic gravel such as NCDOT No. 57 or No. 67 stone be used as the backfill material to replace any over-excavated soils. The depth of the recommended over-excavation will need to be a case-by-case decision made at the time of construction based upon the results of the DCP testing, and should be evaluated by the Geotechnical Engineer.
    C. Also, have the Geotechnical Engineer observe any undercut areas in footings prior to backfilling, in order to confirm that the poor soils have been removed and that the exposed subgrade is suitable for support of footings or backfill.
    D. It should be anticipated that where footings bear directly on fill, the previously placed fill soils exposed in the bottom of the footings may need to be tamped to increase their density prior to the placement of foundation concrete.

5. Footing concrete should be placed the same day that footings are excavated to reduce the potential for exposed bearing soils to be softened due to factors such as weathering or water infiltration.
6. The following discussion is provided regarding the estimated magnitude of post-construction settlements under static loading.

    A. Based on an assumed maximum column load of 400 kips, and considering a uniformly applied area load (slab loading + slab self-weight) of 150 psf, and a 2,500 psf shallow foundation bearing pressure, the estimated total static settlement of an individual spread footing measuring roughly 12 feet by 12 feet in plan area will likely be 1 inch or less.
    B. Based on an assumed wall load of 15 kips per linear foot, and considering a uniformly applied area load of 150 psf, and a 2,500 psf shallow foundation bearing pressure, the estimated static post-construction settlement of an individual wall strip footing 6 feet wide will likely be 1 inch or less.
    C. Differential settlements between adjacent, similarly loaded walls and columns are typically on the order of 50 percent of the total post-construction settlement value under static loading, or in this case, ½ inch, or less.

7.5.2 Deep Foundations – Parking Structure

If loading is greater than the assumed loading described in section 2.2.1 then deep foundations may be required to support the parking deck structure. The following deep foundation types are preliminarily recommended for consideration. In regard to likely bearing depths for deep foundations at this site, the weak clays of Stratum V would need to be completely penetrated, so the piles would most likely bear in the dense sands of Stratum VI, at or below depths of 45 feet.

7.5.2.1 Augered Cast-in-Place Reinforced Concrete Piles (ACPs)

ACP's have the advantage of being relatively economical to install and have a comparatively high axial capacity with regard to the soil conditions observed at this site versus some other types of piles. Due to the likelihood of encountering very dense or cemented layers, driven piles may be difficult to install to the desired penetration depth. In addition, the existing nearby structures and daily processes of the airport may be negatively impacted by the noise and vibrations of a driven pile type. Therefore, ACPs appear to be a feasible deep foundation option to install at this site. There are two main types of ACP to consider, as discussed in the following two sections. The APG-D method may be considered as a value-engineered alternative; this should be done in conjunction with the subcontract bidders that are proposing to install the piles, since different companies may propose slightly different methods.

7.5.2.2 Continuous Flight Auger (CFA) Piles

Continuous Flight Auger (CFA) piles are installed by drilling down to the desired penetration depth in one continuous operation. Once the desired penetration depth is reached, the pile is grouted as the auger is slowly extracted. This pile installation method does not densify the ground as it drills, because the drilled soils are removed from the ground as spoils. This method generates a considerable amount of soil spoils and expelled groundwater which must be dealt with. The rotary turntable that is required to install this type of pile is typically lighter and somewhat weaker (lower torque) than the drills that are required to install the displacement piles discussed in the following section.

7.5.2.3 Augered Pressure Grouted Displacement (APG-D) Piles

APG-D piles are different from traditional CFA piles in the following way: traditional piles are drilled to the specified depth while exporting the spoils up the auger flights to the ground surface, whereas APG-D piles push most of the soils down and to the sides of the shaft during drilling. The traditional drilling method of evacuating the soils from the pile shaft results in significant surface spoils, and for piles advanced below the water table (as would be the case at this site), a significant amount of water is also typically transported to the surface. On an undeveloped site, these issues typically don't present a problem, but on a developed site, the results have the potential to create poor, messy conditions on the ground surface.

Since APG-D piles push the soils to the sides and bottom of the shaft during drilling, they tend to have a densifying effect on the subsurface, which can result in increased frictional capacities for the piles (particularly in sands), which does not occur in traditional CFA piles. Different pile installers will report varying degrees of improvement in the soils, but we have experienced capacity improvements ranging from 10 to 25 percent more than CFA piles depending upon the soil conditions, with the greatest degree of improvements seeming to occur in loose to medium dense sands.

7.6 Soil Strength Parameters and Wall Design Recommendations

The following sections provide our geotechnical recommendations, including soil strength parameters for use during design of earth-retaining systems by others. Based on the subsurface conditions at the site and the anticipated bearing depth, we anticipate that interlocking steel sheet piles, possibly coupled with horizontal anchors or internal bracing may be designed. The following sections provide our geotechnical recommendations for use by others in designing these systems. Note that these soil parameters apply only to the explored soils at the top of the slope; the strength parameters of the soils at the unexplored toe of the slope may differ.

7.6.1 Soil Strength Parameters

The recommended soil strength parameters of the explored soils are presented in Table 7-1 below. The unit weight of the material inside the excavation may vary with fluctuations of the water table. The values presented in Table 7-1 are based on the CPT soundings performed during our geotechnical exploration, and our experience with the soils in this area. These values have been correlated from CPT data and were not directly measured in the laboratory. The soil strata depth ranges for each stratum may also vary throughout the footprint of the proposed walls. Finally, the soil parameters below should be considered an effective stress state, which should consider buoyant unit weights below the water table.

Table 7-1: Estimated Soil Strength Parameters

Soil Stratum	Soil Classification	Depth to Bottom of Layer (ft)**	Moist Unit Weight (lbs/ cu.ft)	Buoyant Unit Weight (lbs/ cu.ft)	Soil Effective Angle of Internal Friction (φ′)	Soil Effective Cohesion (lbs./ sq.ft.)	Concrete Wall Interface Friction (φ′)	Concrete Wall Adhesion (lbs./ sq.ft.)
---	New Fill* (Sand Like)	---	120*	58*	36*	0*	27	---
I	Old Fill (Sand Like)	1.5-7	120	58	36	0	27	---
II	Sand Like	5-14	120	58	38	0	29	---
III	Clay Like	9-18	110	48	0	450	---	300
IV	Sand Like	22-36	120	58	34	0	26	---
V	Clay like	30-41	110	48	0	950	---	600
VI	Sand Like	48-56	120	58	34	0	26	---
VII	Sand Like	56-66	120	58	32	0	24	---

*Assumed properties for soil fill meeting the requirements described in Section 7.3 of this report.
**Please refer to the test sounding log nearest the design location of interest for specific depth ranges at any location, and contact S&ME with any questions about the depth range that applies to any particular stratum at any particular location.

Moist soil unit weight should be used in computations for soils above the water table. Buoyant unit weights should be used in computations for soils below the water level. The designer shall consider all unbalanced water forces along with any surcharge loads behind the wall. We note that the water levels can fluctuate and may vary at the time of construction and may vary with construction in the area.

The values given in the top row of the table above for new fill assume placement and compaction of backfill around and behind these structures in accordance with the compaction recommendations given in Section 7.3 of this report.

7.6.2 Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients

Earth-retaining structures must be capable of resisting any lateral earth pressures that will be imposed on them. If the walls are relatively rigid and structurally braced against rotation, they should be designed for a condition approaching the "at-rest" lateral earth pressure.

In the event that the wall is free to deflect, such as for walls that are not restrained or rigidly braced, the "active" earth pressure conditions would be applicable for design. Cantilevered retaining walls or sheet piles are normally designed to yield (rotate outward) under the influence of this pressure, which is termed the “active” case.

These computations were performed using the soil strength parameters provided in Table 7-1 above and assume fill placement and compaction of backfill around and behind the structures in accordance with Section 7.3 of this

report. Organic silts (OL or OH), inorganic elastic silts (MH), or inorganic plastic clays (CL or CH) soils should not be used as retaining wall backfill.

The lateral earth pressure coefficients in Table 7-2 are recommended for use by others during the design of earth-retaining systems at this site based upon the explored soils.

Table 7-2: Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients

Stratum	Coeff. Of Sliding Friction (degrees)	Static Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients			Seismic Lateral Earth Pressure Coefficients (PGA = 0.173g)		
		At-Rest (K_o)	Active (K_a)	Passive (K_p)	At-Rest (K_o)	Active (K_a)	Passive (K_p)
New Fill	0.45	0.41	0.26	3.85	0.45	0.30	3.71
I	0.45	0.41	0.26	3.85	0.45	0.30	3.71
II	0.47	0.38	0.24	4.20	0.41	0.17	4.06
III	0.21	0.69	0.53	1.89	0.87	0.58	1.79
IV	0.42	0.44	0.28	3.54	0.48	0.32	3.40
V	0.24	0.66	0.49	2.04	0.81	0.54	1.94
VI	0.42	0.44	0.28	3.54	0.48	0.32	3.40
VII	0.39	0.47	0.31	3.25	0.52	0.35	3.13

*Friction against clay surfaces is based on adhesion, not friction angle.

1. The above values represent a fully-drained soil condition at or near the optimum moisture content. Where backfill soils are not fully drained, the lateral soil pressure must consider hydrostatic forces below the water level, and submerged soil unit weight.
2. To obtain the "equivalent fluid pressure" for design, multiply the appropriate earth pressure coefficient by the estimated moist soil unit weight above the water table, and estimated buoyant unit weight below the water table plus hydrostatic pressure.

The given earth pressure coefficients (K_o, K_a, and K_p) in Table 7-2 assume a level backfill and a frictionless wall. In Table 7-1, we provided soil/concrete wall interface friction values which may be used in conjunction with the earth pressure coefficients presented in Table 7-2 to evaluate soil-on-concrete interface friction. We note that at the time of our boring, the water level was measured to range from approximately 1.67 to 9.67 feet below the existing ground surface in the area of the expected walls. However, this water level can fluctuate with construction in the area and drawdown of the water table that is performed during construction.

7.6.3 Water Effects on Earth Pressures

If a drainage system is not installed within the embankment, any sheet pile walls should be designed to withstand hydrostatic pressure inside the wall. Additionally, the walls should be designed to support any applied surcharge

or structural loads. Lateral earth pressures arising from surcharge loading (including construction equipment) and slopes above the walls should be added to the earth pressures given above in Table 7-2 to determine the total lateral pressure.

7.6.4 Roadway Embankment Fill Settlement Monitoring

Settlement of the proposed fill area for the future roadway embankment may significantly exceed 1 inch of total settlement due to the large amount of net new fill that is anticipated to be placed. By allowing the fill to sit for a period of time before constructing the roadway, a significant portion of the predicted settlements can be induced during a planned time frame prior to initiation of final construction, such that remaining post-construction settlements are within the tolerable limits of the roadway.

The rate and magnitude of settlement should be monitored with at least four (4) settlement plates installed within the fill embankment of the future roadway. Plates must be installed prior to placement of the first lift of structural fill and protected from any movement during construction. Fill soils should be methodically hand placed and compacted in areas above and immediately surrounding the settlement plates, and fill soils should not be dumped in the immediate areas of the settlement plates. Settlement plate locations should be barricaded after completion of filling to prevent the plates from being disturbed. A typical detail for settlement plate installation is included as Figure 6 in Appendix I.

Accurate surveying of the elevation of the plates should begin immediately after their installation and continue weekly, with results reported in a timely manner to the Geotechnical Engineer. Once the settlement monuments indicate that movement has largely ceased under the weight of the fill embankment, roadway construction can then continue. Most of the subsurface soil profile is sandy, but there are some notable clay seams in Stratum III and Stratum V, which will consolidate more slowly. Based on the soil profile, we anticipate that the time required for ground beneath the fill embankment to settle may be roughly 30 days, but may vary from this estimate.

- S&ME can provide the service of fabricating, installation, and monitoring/measuring the settlement rods during the observation period; if desired, please contact us for a proposal to provide this service.

7.7 Pavement Section Design and Construction

The following is based upon the assumption that the pavement support soils consist of properly densified sandy fill soils meeting the material requirements described in section 7.3 and considering our laboratory testing results, we estimate that an average combined California Bearing Ratio (CBR) value of at least 10 percent will be available for pavement support. This results in a resilient modulus of at least 11,153 psi available for flexible pavement design. If materials having lesser subgrade support values are to be considered for use, the pavement design should be reevaluated and required pavement thickness may need to be increased as a result.

We assume that new pavement subgrades will be constructed atop compacted structural fill soils compacted to at least 98 percent of the standard Proctor maximum dry density. We have performed our evaluations assuming that a CBR value of at least 10 percent will be available from subgrade soils compacted to 98 percent. If soils exhibiting a CBR value of less than 10 percent at 98 percent compaction are to be used on this project, these recommendations may require revision.

Traffic volumes for the proposed development were not provided to us in preparation for our exploration and pavement section analysis; however, based on email correspondence from by Ms. Jennifer Gora (RS&H) to Mr. Mark Dean (S&ME) on September 6, 2023, new site pavements will consist of flexible pavements using Hot-Mixed Asphalt and rigid pavements consisting of Portland Cement Concrete (PCC). Attached to that email was a drawing titled "Proposed Typical Sections" dates July 7, 2023 and prepared by RS&H which depicted four proposed pavement sections. Based on the provided drawings, Table 7-3 below describes the different pavement sections and the theoretical available traffic capacity. Note that we have increased the minimum thickness of the PCC pavement in the parking lot entry/exit plazas from 4 inches to 5 inches.

Table 7-3: Considered Pavement Sections[(a)]

Pavement Area	HMA Surface Course Type S 9.5C (inches)	HMA Intermediate Course Type I 19.0C (inches)	4,000 psi Portland Cement Concrete (inches)	Compacted Aggregate Base Course [ABC] (inches)	Theoretical Available Traffic Capacity (ESALs)
Proposed Roads & Parking Lots	1.5	2.5	---	6.0	230,000
Proposed Roads (Heavy Traffic)	1.5	2.5	---	8.0	478,000
Emergency Access Road	---	---	6.0	6.0	241,000
Parking Lot Entry/Exit Plazas	---	---	5.0[(b)]	6.0	101,000

(a) Assumes single-stage construction; S&ME must observe subgrade preparation and paving.
(b) Less than 5 inches of concrete pavement is not recommended for any application on this site that will experience vehicular traffic.

7.7.1 General Recommendations for Pavement Areas

1. At least one laboratory California Bearing Ratio (CBR) test should be performed upon a representative soil sample of each soil type which is planned to be used as pavement subgrade material. This is to establish the relationship between relative compaction and CBR for the soil in question, and to confirm that the obtained CBR value at the required level of compaction is equal to or greater than the CBR value utilized during design of the pavement section, which was 10 percent.
2. All fill placed in pavement areas should be compacted as recommended in section 7.3 of this report. Prior to placement of aggregate base course stone, all exposed pavement subgrades should be methodically proofrolled at final soil subgrade (FSG) elevation under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer (S&ME), and any identified unstable areas should be repaired. Pavement subgrades should not exhibit rutting or pumping under the proofroll load. Rutting or pumping areas shall be undercut and replaced and/or stabilized as directed by the engineer.

7.7.2 Base Course and Pavement Section Construction

The following recommendations are provided for base course and pavement section construction.

1. Crushed stone aggregate base material used in pavement section construction should consist of aggregate base course (ABC) as defined by Section 520 of the North Carolina Department of Transportation "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." The base course should be compacted to at least 100 percent of the modified Proctor maximum dry density, AASHTOT-180M as modified by NCDOT. Base courses should not exhibit pumping or rutting under equipment traffic.

    A. The ABC should consist of base course as defined in Section 520 of the above-referenced specification.
    B. It is not recommended to allow the substitution of "commercial base" (e.g. non-NCDOT compliant) base course materials.

2. Heavy compaction equipment is likely to be required in order to achieve the required base course compaction, and the moisture content of the material will likely need to be maintained near optimum moisture content in order to facilitate proper compaction.
3. After placement of base course stone, the surface should be methodically proofrolled at final base grade elevation by the contractor under the observation of the Geotechnical Engineer (S&ME), and any identified unstable areas should be repaired. The base course material should not exhibit pumping or rutting under equipment traffic. Rutting or pumping areas shall be undercut and replaced and/or stabilized as directed by the engineer.
4. Construct the surface and intermediate asphalt in accordance with the specifications of Section 610 in the 2018 edition of the NCDOT "Standard Specifications for Roads and Structures." Sufficient testing should be performed during flexible pavement installation to confirm that the required thickness, density, and quality requirements of the pavement specifications are followed.
5. Sufficient testing should be performed during flexible pavement installation to confirm that the required thickness, density, and quality requirements of the pavement specifications are followed.
6. Experience indicates that a thin surface overlay of asphalt pavement may be required in about 10 years due to normal wear and weathering of the surface. Such wear is typically visible in several forms of pavement distress, such as aggregate exposure and polishing, aggregate stripping, asphalt bleeding, and various types of cracking. There are means to methodically estimate the remaining pavement life based on a systematic statistical evaluation of pavement distress density and mode of failure. We recommend the pavement be evaluated in about 7 years to assess the pavement condition and remaining life.

7.8 Recommendations for Future Geotechnical Exploration

The boring and sounding data gathered for this exploration is intended only to give a general overview of the soil conditions in the proposed parking deck structural areas. Additional exploration will likely be necessary to allow us to provide specific final design recommendations. The future geotechnical exploration should include borings or soundings of sufficient number and depth as well as a comprehensive laboratory testing program, to allow us to finalize foundation and pavement support recommendations once site development and design has advanced beyond a preliminary stage and building locations framing type, approximate structural loads, and approximate finished floor elevations are known.

8.0 Limitations of Report

This report has been prepared in accordance with generally accepted geotechnical engineering practice for specific application to this project. The conclusions and recommendations in this report are based on the applicable standards of our practice in this geographic area at the time this report was prepared. No other warranty, express or implied, is made.

The analyses and recommendations submitted herein are based, in part, upon the data obtained from the subsurface exploration. The nature and extent of variations across the site may not become evident until construction. If variations appear evident, then we should be given a reasonable opportunity to re-evaluate the recommendations of this report. In the event that any changes in the nature, design, or location of the structures are planned, the conclusions and recommendations contained in this report shall not be considered valid unless the changes are reviewed and conclusions modified or verified in writing by the submitting engineers.

Assessment of site environmental conditions; sampling of soils, ground water or other materials for environmental contaminants; identification of jurisdictional wetlands, rare or endangered species, geological hazards or potential air quality and noise impacts were beyond the scope of this geotechnical exploration.

Information regarding auxiliary construction items including but not limited to: retaining walls, loading docks, curbing, street lights, signage, utilities, fountains, flagpoles, crane support pads, etc., was not provided by the client and therefore has not been addressed as part of the scope of this report. If additional foundation design or construction recommendations are needed with regard to any such items, please contact us for more information.

S&ME should be retained to review the plans and specifications to confirm that earthwork, foundation, pavement, and other recommendations are properly interpreted and implemented. The recommendations in this report are contingent on S&ME's review of the design plans and specifications followed by our observation and testing of earthwork, foundation, and pavement construction activities.

Appendices

Appendix I – Figures

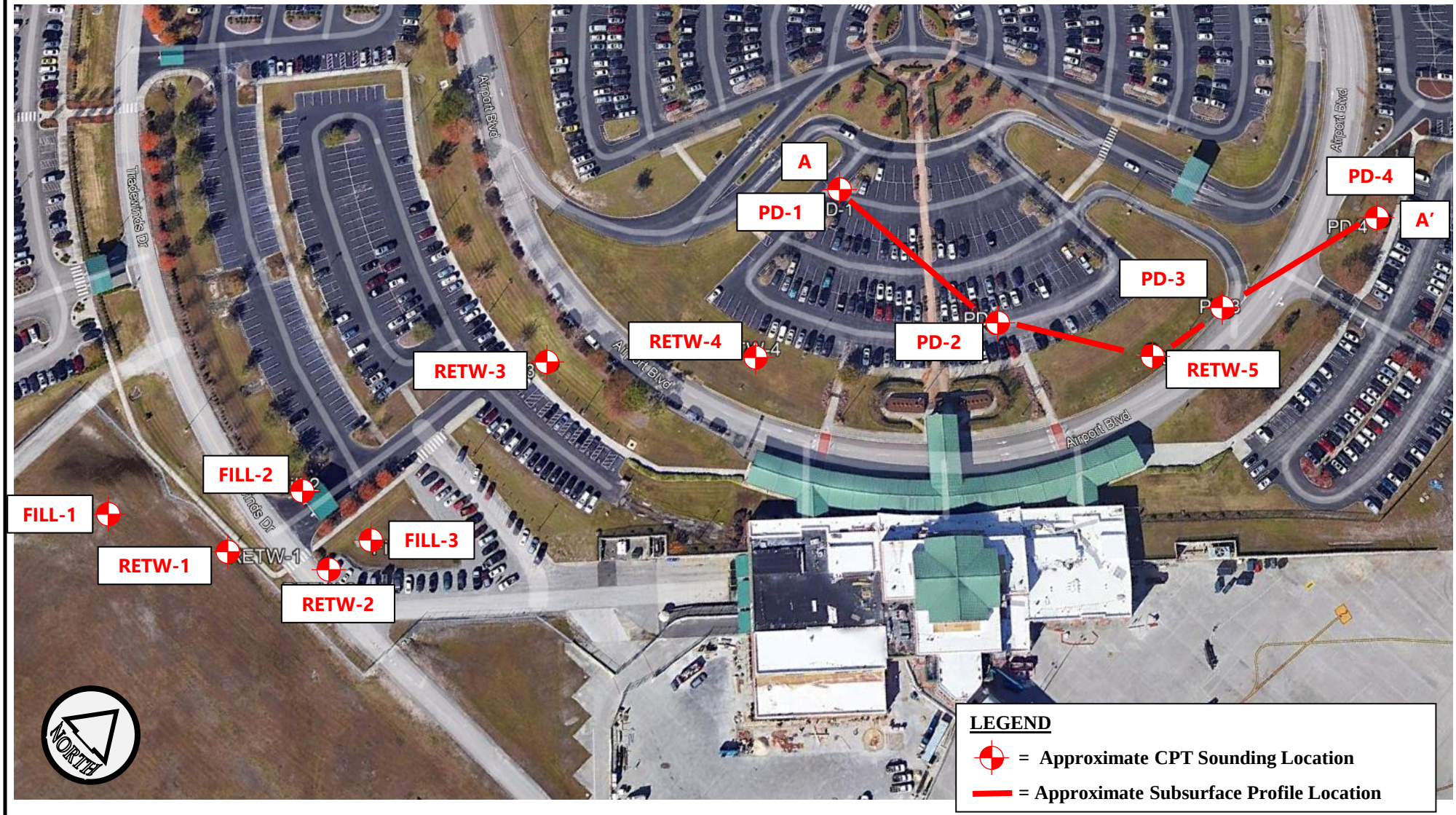
REFERENCE:
Image Courtesy of Google Earth

NORTH

Site Vicinity Map

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina

SCALE:	FIGURE NO.
Not to Scale	1
DATE: 10/10/23	
PROJECT NUMBER 23060109	



Test Location Sketch

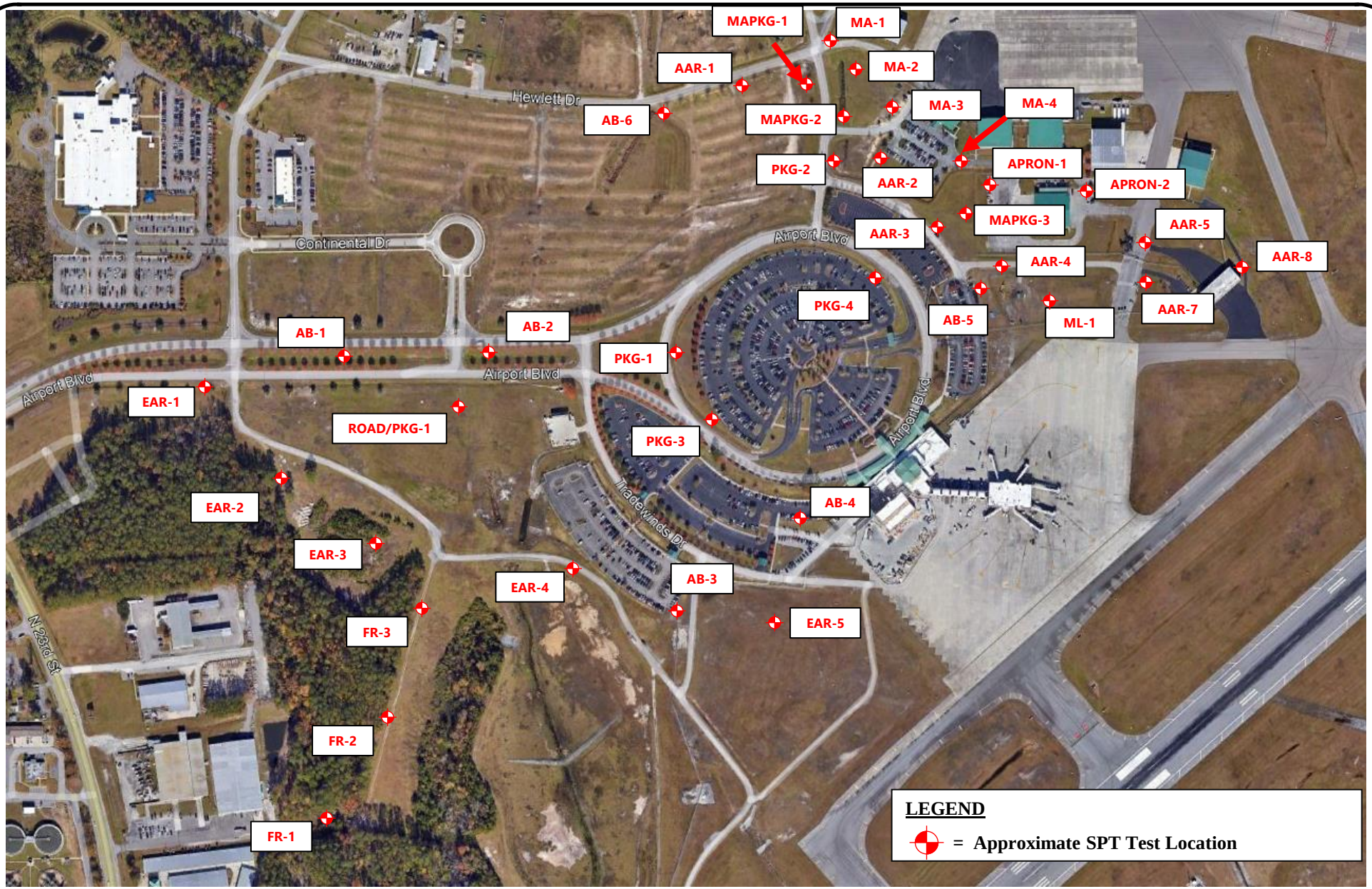
Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina

SCALE: AS SHOWN

DATE: 10/11/2023

PROJECT NUMBER 23060109

FIGURE NO. 2



	Test Location Sketch	SCALE: AS SHOWN	FIGURE NO. 3
	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements Wilmington, North Carolina	DATE: 10/11/2023	
		PROJECT NUMBER 23060109	

A

A'

PD-1
9/19/2023 2:21:57 PM
ELEV.32

PD-2
9/19/2023 1:14:26 PM
ELEV.34

RETW-5
9/19/2023 8:37:31 AM
ELEV.35

PD-3
9/19/2023 10:32:28 AM
ELEV.35

PD-4
9/19/2023 11:56:51 AM
ELEV.34

SLEEVE STRESS (TSF) 10 8 6 4 2 2

TIP RESIST (TSF) 200 400 600 800 1000

PORE PRESSURE (TSF) 0 10 20 30 40

BT @ 49.87

BT @ 50.2

BT @ 66.11

Topsoil

Stratum I: Undocumented Fill

Stratum II: Upper Coastal Plain
Medium Dense to Very Dense Sands

Stratum III: Upper Soft to Firm Clays

Stratum IV: Intermediate Coastal Plain
Medium Dense to Dense Sands

Stratum V: Lower Very Soft to Stiff Clays

---Very Soft

Stratum VI: Lower Medium Dense
to Very Dense Sands

Stratum VII: Lower Loose to
to Very Dense Silty Sand Mixtures

ELEVATION (feet-MSL)

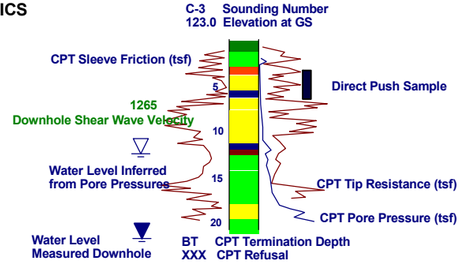
40 35 30 25 20 15 10 5 0 -5 -10 -15 -20 -25 -30 -35

0 20 40 60 80 100 120 140 160 180 200 220

ELECTRONIC CONE PENETROMETER SOUNDINGS

CPT/DMT MATERIAL GRAPHICS

- Sensitive Fine Grained Soils
- Organic Soils, Peats
- Clay to Silty Clay
- Clayey Silt to Silty Clay
- Silty Sand to Sandy Silt
- Clean Sand to Silty Sand
- Gravelly Sand to Sand
- OC Sand to Clayey Sand
- OC Fine Grained Soils



The depicted stratigraphy is shown for illustrative purposes only and is not warranted. Separations between different strata may be gradual and likely vary considerably from those shown. Profiles between nearby borings have been estimated using reasonable engineering care and judgment. The actual subsurface conditions will vary between boring locations.

SUBSURFACE PROFILE

FIGURE: 4

PROJECT: Proposed ILM Landside Improvements

LOCATION: Wilmington, North Carolina

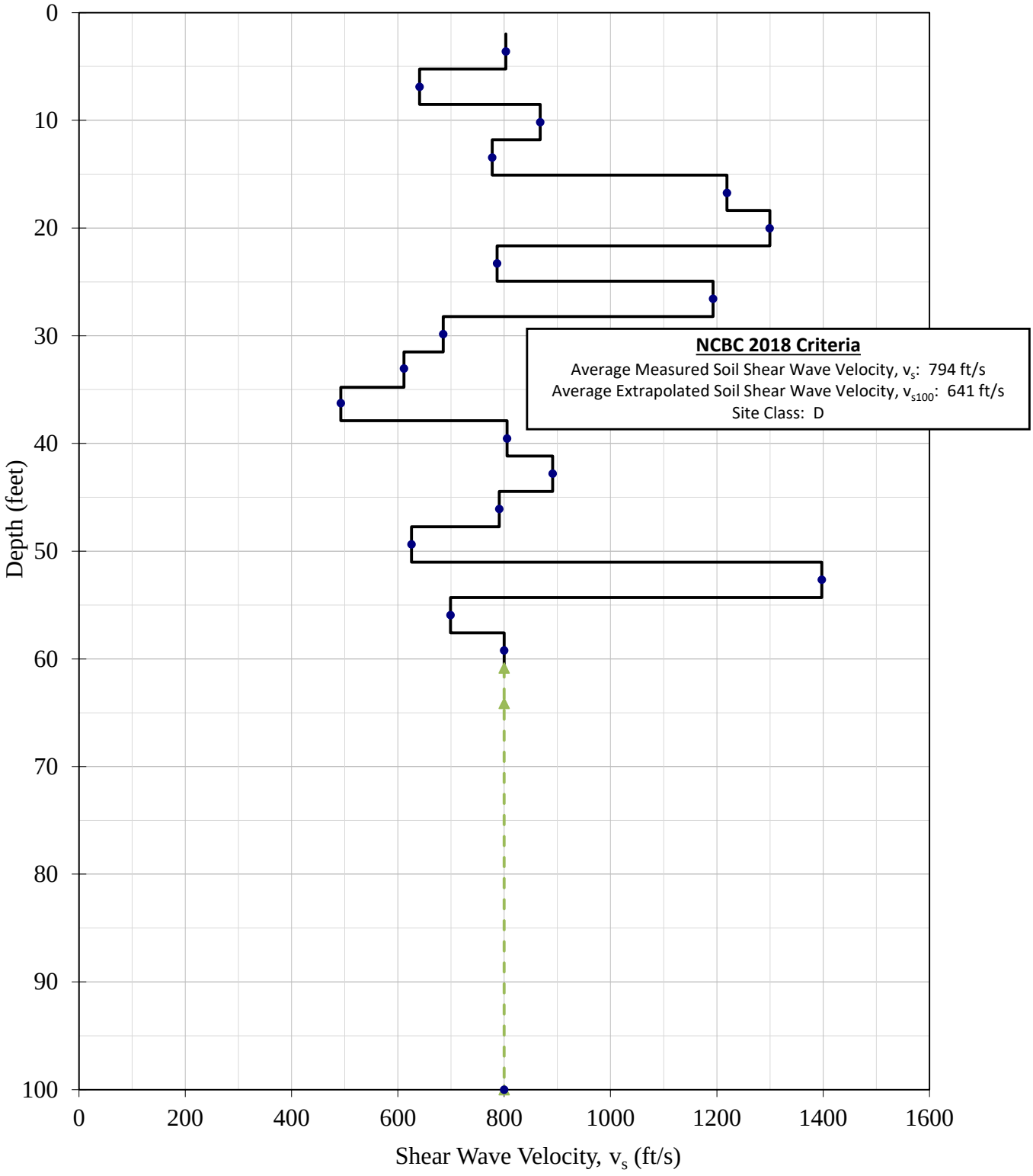
JOB NO: 23060109

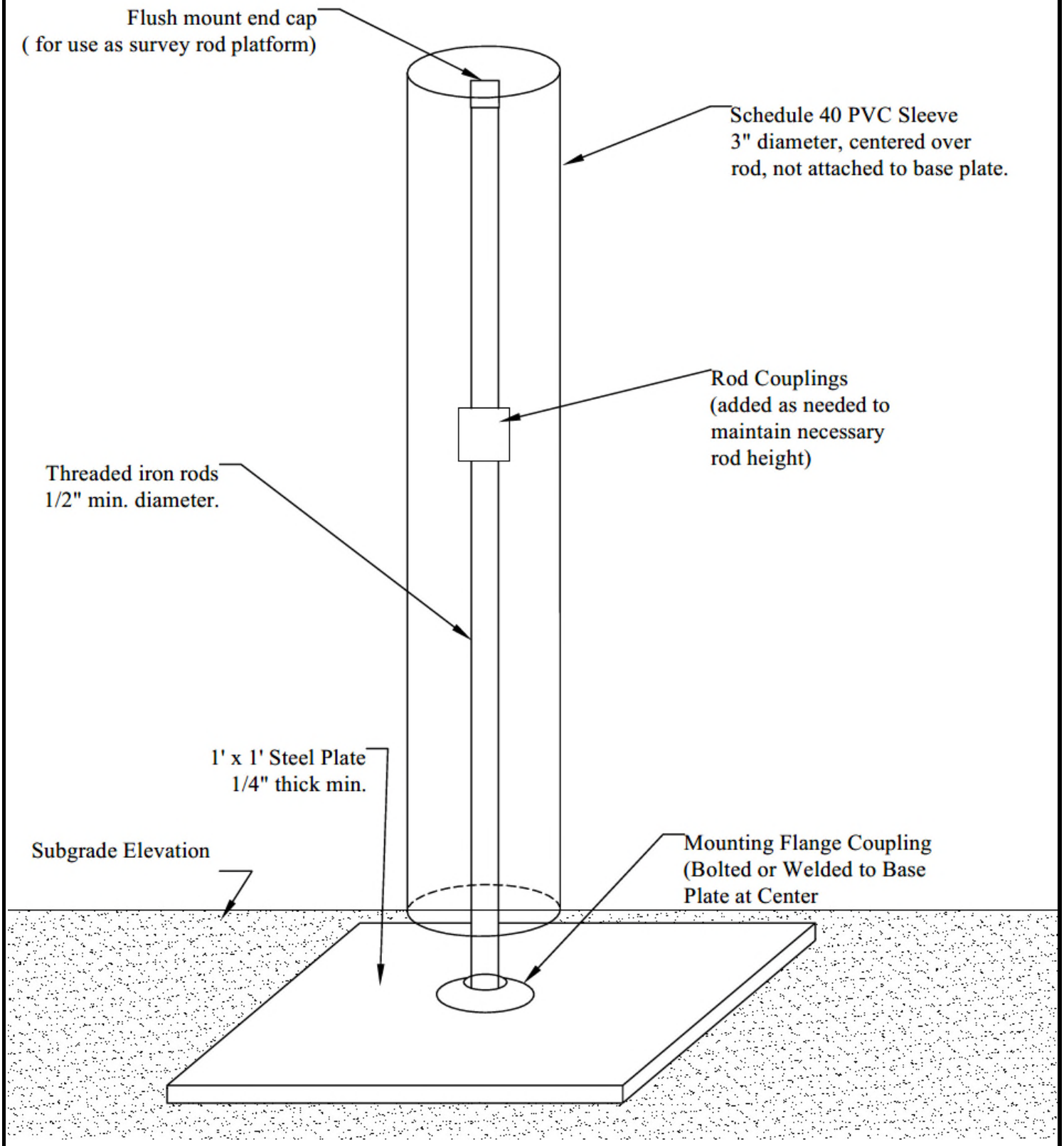
DATE: 10/16/23

Shear Wave Velocity Calculations - Figure 5

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina

Sounding ID: **RETW-5** Project Number: **23060109**
Date: 10/11/23





	Settlement Rod Detail	SCALE: AS SHOWN	FIGURE NO 6
	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements Wilmington, North Carolina	DATE: 10/16/23 PROJECT NUMBER 23060109	

Appendix II – Exploration Procedures and Data

❖ Summary of Exploration Procedures

The American Society for Testing and Materials (ASTM) publishes standard methods to explore soil, rock and ground water conditions in Practice D-420-18, "*Standard Guide for Site Characterization for Engineering Design and Construction Purposes.*" The boring and sampling plan must consider the geologic or topographic setting. It must consider the proposed construction. It must also allow for the background, training, and experience of the geotechnical engineer. While the scope and extent of the exploration may vary with the objectives of the client, each exploration includes the following key tasks:

- Reconnaissance of the Project Area
- Preparation of Exploration Plan
- Layout and Access to Field Sampling Locations
- Field Sampling and Testing of Earth Materials
- Laboratory Evaluation of Recovered Field Samples
- Evaluation of Subsurface Conditions

The standard methods do not apply to all conditions or to every site. Nor do they replace education and experience, which together make up engineering judgment. Finally, ASTM D 420 does not apply to environmental investigations.

❖ Boring and Sampling

Electronic Cone Penetrometer (CPT) Soundings

CPT soundings consist of a conical pointed penetrometer which is hydraulically pushed into the soil at a slow, measured rate. Procedures for measurement of the tip resistance and side friction resistance to push generally follow those described by ASTM D-5778, "*Standard Test Method for Performing Electronic Friction Cone and Piezocone Penetration Testing of Soils*."

A penetrometer with a conical tip having a 60 degree apex angle and a cone base area of 10 cm^2 was advanced into the soil at a constant rate of 20 mm/s. The force on the conical point required to penetrate the soil was measured electronically every 50 mm penetration to obtain the *cone resistance* q_c. A friction sleeve is present on the penetrometer immediately behind the cone tip. The force exerted on the sleeve was measured electronically at a minimum of every 50 mm penetration and divided by the surface area of the sleeve to obtain the *friction sleeve resistance value* f_s A pore pressure element mounted immediately behind the cone tip was used to measure the pore pressure induced during advancement of the cone into the soil.

Refusal to CPT Push

Refusal to the cone penetrometer equipment occurred when the reaction weight of the CPT rig was exceeded by the thrust required to push the conical tip further into the ground. At that point the rig tended to lift off the ground. Refusal may have resulted from encountering hard cemented or indurated soils, soft weathered rock, coarse gravel, cobbles or boulders, thin rock seams, or the upper surface of sound continuous rock. Where fills are present, refusal to the CPT rig may also have resulted from encountering buried debris, building materials, or objects.

CPT Soil Stratification

Using ASTM D-5778 soil samples are not obtained. Soil classification was made on the basis of comparison of the tip resistance, sleeve resistance and pore pressure values to values measured at other locations in known soil types, using experience with similar soils and exercising engineering judgment.

Plots of normalized tip resistance versus friction ratio and normalized tip resistance versus penetration pore pressure were used to determine soil classification (Soil Behavior Type, SBT) as a function of depth using empirical charts developed by P.K. Robertson (1990). The friction ratio soil classification is determined from the chart in the appendix using the normalized corrected tip stress and the normalized corrected tip stress and the normalized friction ratio.

At some depths, the CPT data fell outside of the range of the classification chart. When this occurred, no data was plotted and a break was shown in the classification profile. This occasionally occurred at the top of a penetration as the effective vertical stress is very small and commonly produced normalized tip resistances greater than 1000.

To provide a simplified soil stratigraphy for general interpretation and for comparison to standard boring logs, a statistical layering and classification system was applied the field classification values. Layer thicknesses were determined based on the variability of the soil classification profile, based upon changes in the standard deviation of the SBT classification number with depth. The average SBT number was determined for each successive 6-inch layer, beginning at the surface. Whenever an additional 6-inch increment deviated from the previous increment, a new layer was started, otherwise, this material was added to the layer above and the next 6-inch section evaluated. The soil behavior type for the layer was determined by the mean value for the complete layer.

Soil Test Boring with Hollow Stem Auger Drilling

Soil sampling and penetration testing were performed in general accordance with ASTM D1586, "Standard Test Method for Penetration Test and Split Barrel Sampling of Soils. Hollow stem auger techniques were used to advance the borings. Soil samples were obtained with a standard 1.4 inch I. D., two-inch O. D., split barrel sampler. The sampler was first seated six inches to penetrate any loose cuttings, then driven an additional 18 inches with blows of a 140-pound hammer falling 30 inches. The number of hammer blows required to drive the sampler through the middle two six inch increments was recorded as the penetration resistance (SPT N) value. The N-value, when properly interpreted by qualified professional staff, is an index of the soil strength and foundation support capability.

Water Level Determination

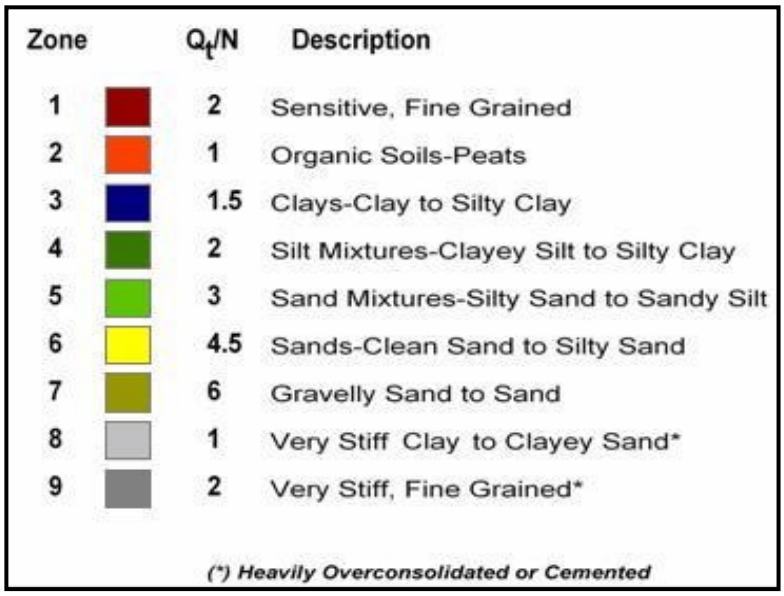
Subsurface water levels in the soundings were interpreted from pore pressure readings obtained during the performance of the CPT soundings. Water levels were also directly measured at the completion of drilling.

The subsurface water level in the SPT borings were measured at the completion of drilling by measuring depths from the existing grade to the current water level using a water sensing measuring tape.

Backfilling of Borings

Boring spoils were backfilled into the open bore holes to the ground surface. Bore holes within the existing pavement area were backfilled to the bottom of the existing asphalt and then topped with cold patch level to the top of the existing asphalt.

CPT Soil Classification Legend



Robertson's Soil Behavior Type (SBT), 1990			
Group #	**Description**	**Ic**	
		Min	**Max**
1	Sensitive, fine grained	N/A	
2	Organic soils - peats	3.60	N/A
3	Clays - silty clay to clay	2.95	3.60
4	Silt mixtures - clayey silt to silty clay	2.60	2.95
5	Sand mixtures - silty sand to sandy silt	2.05	2.60
6	Sands - clean sand to silty sand	1.31	2.05
7	Gravelly sand to dense sand	N/A	1.31
8	Very stiff sand to clayey sand (High OCR or cemented)	N/A	
9	Very stiff, fine grained (High OCR or cemented)	N/A	

Soil behavior type is based on empirical data and may not be representative of soil classification based on plasticity and grain size distribution.

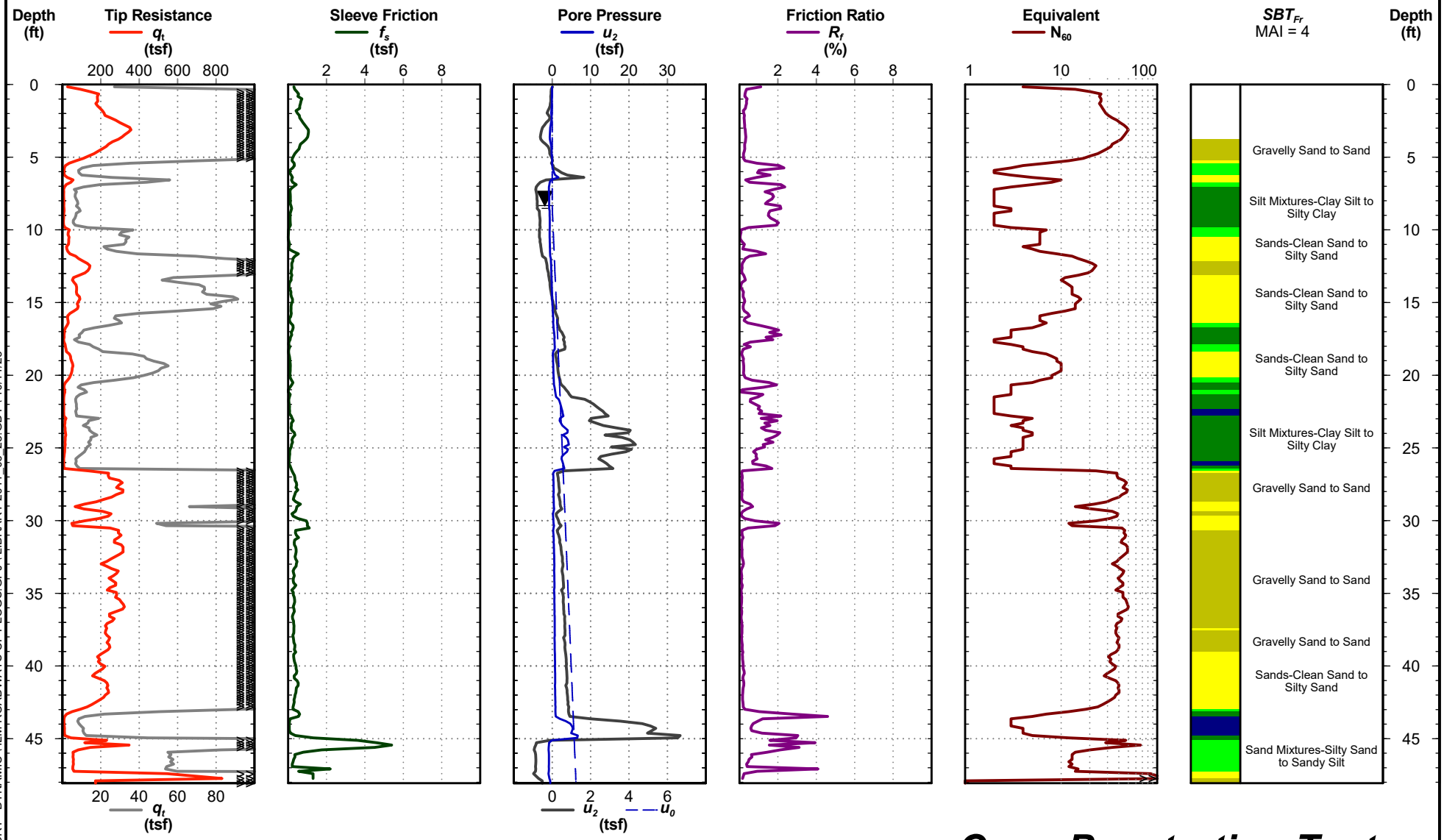
Relative Density and Consistency Table			
SANDS		SILTS and CLAYS	
Cone Tip Stress, qt (tsf)	Relative Density	Cone Tip Stress, qt (tsf)	Consistency
Less than 20	Very Loose	Less than 5	Very Soft
20 - 40	Loose	5 - 15	Soft to Firm
40 - 120	Medium Dense	15 - 30	Stiff
120 - 200	Dense	30 - 60	Very Stiff
Greater than 200	Very Dense	Greater than 60	Hard

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Sounding ID: Fill-1

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 8.33 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 48.1 ft
Termination Criteria: Maximum Reaction Force
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways Fill-1.cpt

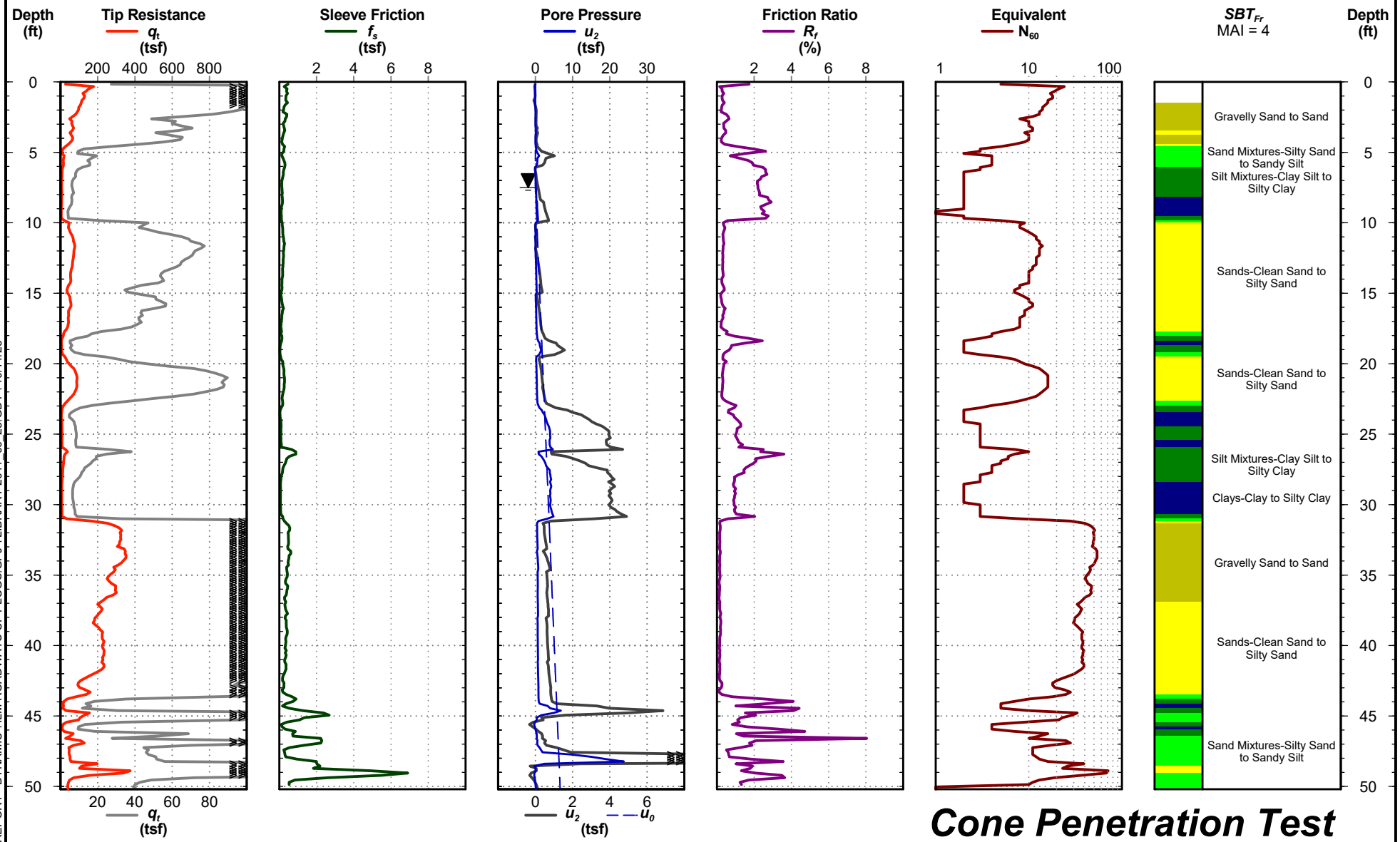
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Sounding ID: Fill-2

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 7.5 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 50.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways Fill-2.cpt

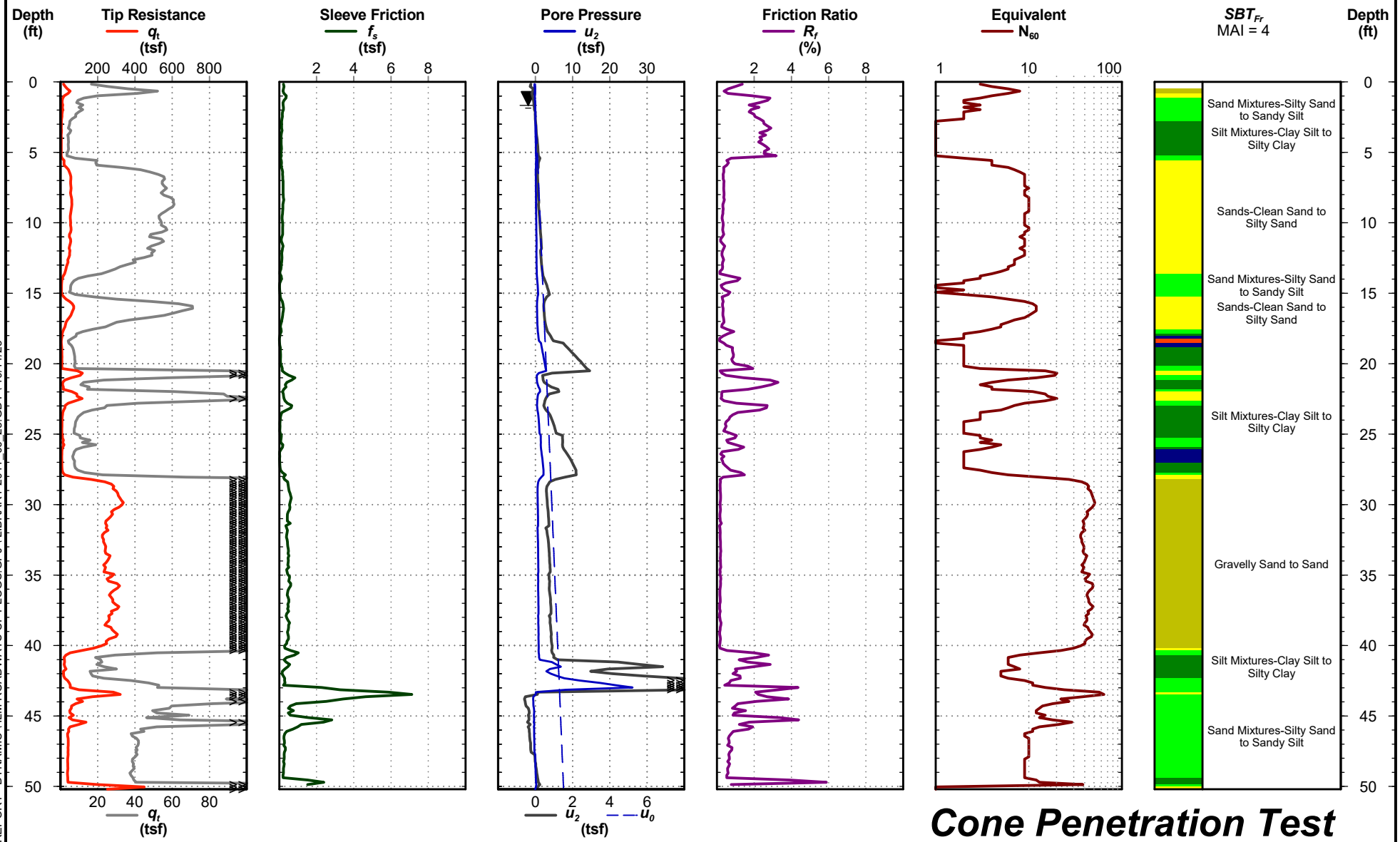
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: Fill-3

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 1.67 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 50.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways Fill-3.cpt

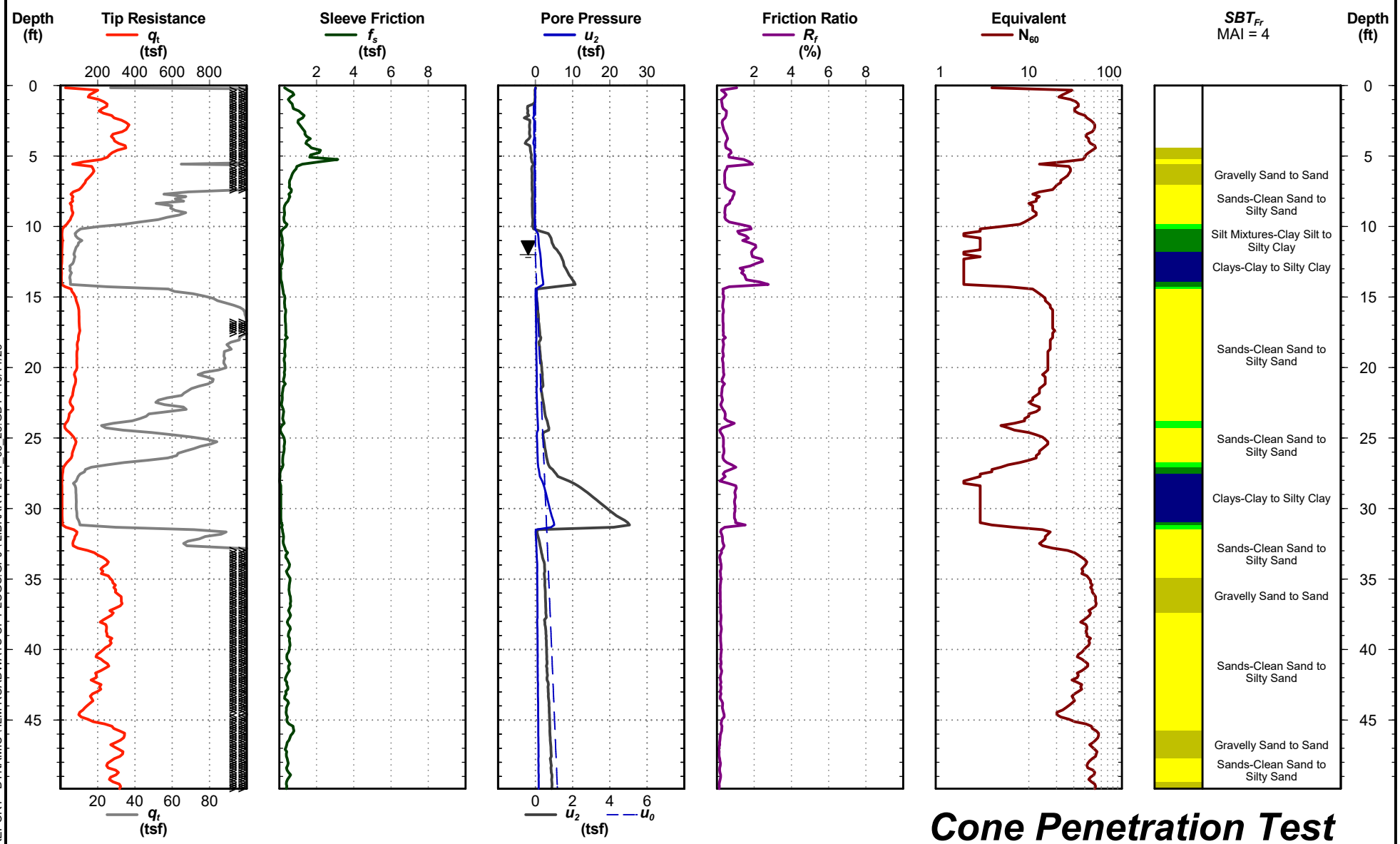
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: PD-1

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 19, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 12 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 49.9 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways PD-1.cpt

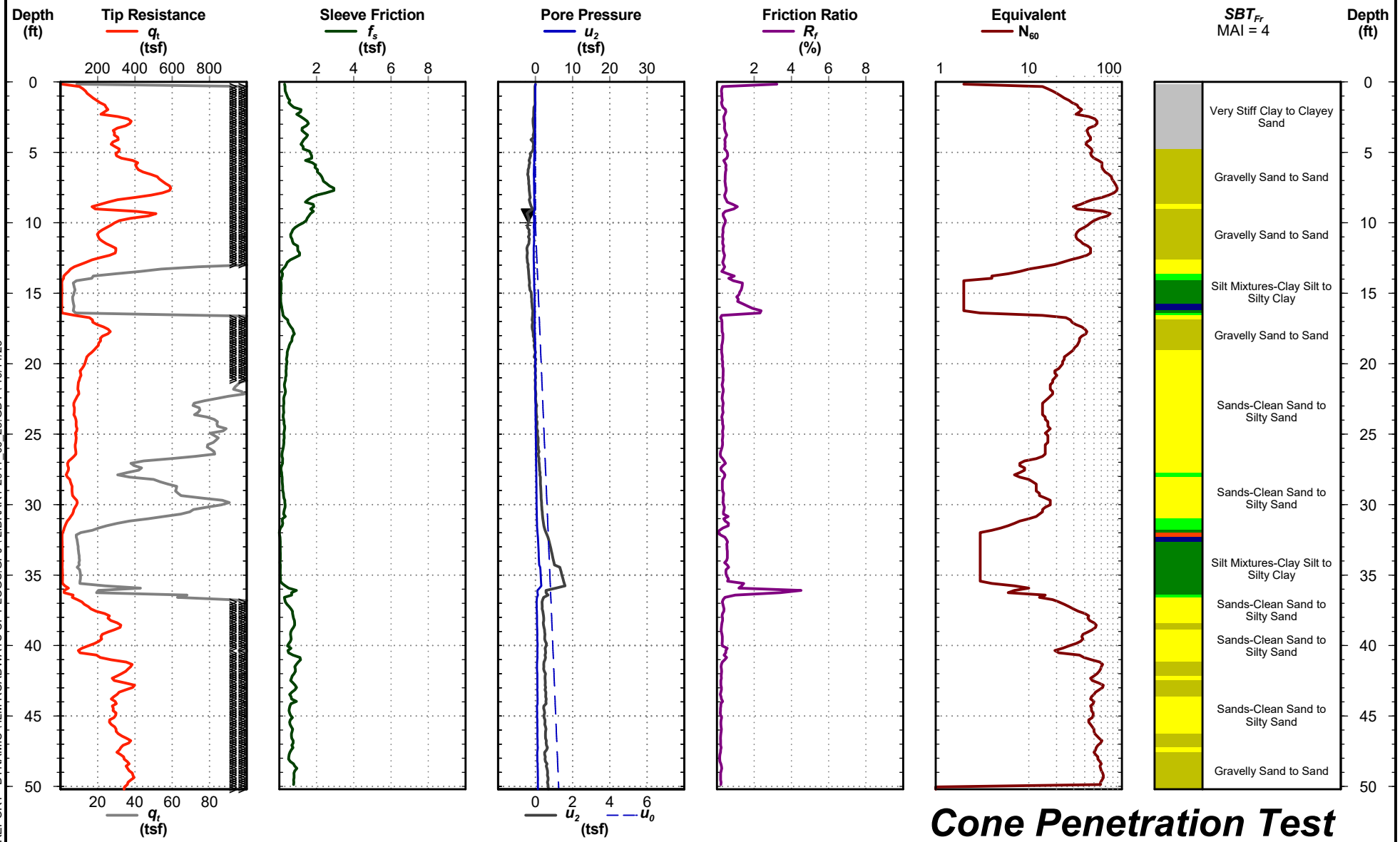
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: PD-2

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 19, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 10 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 50.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways PD-2.cpt

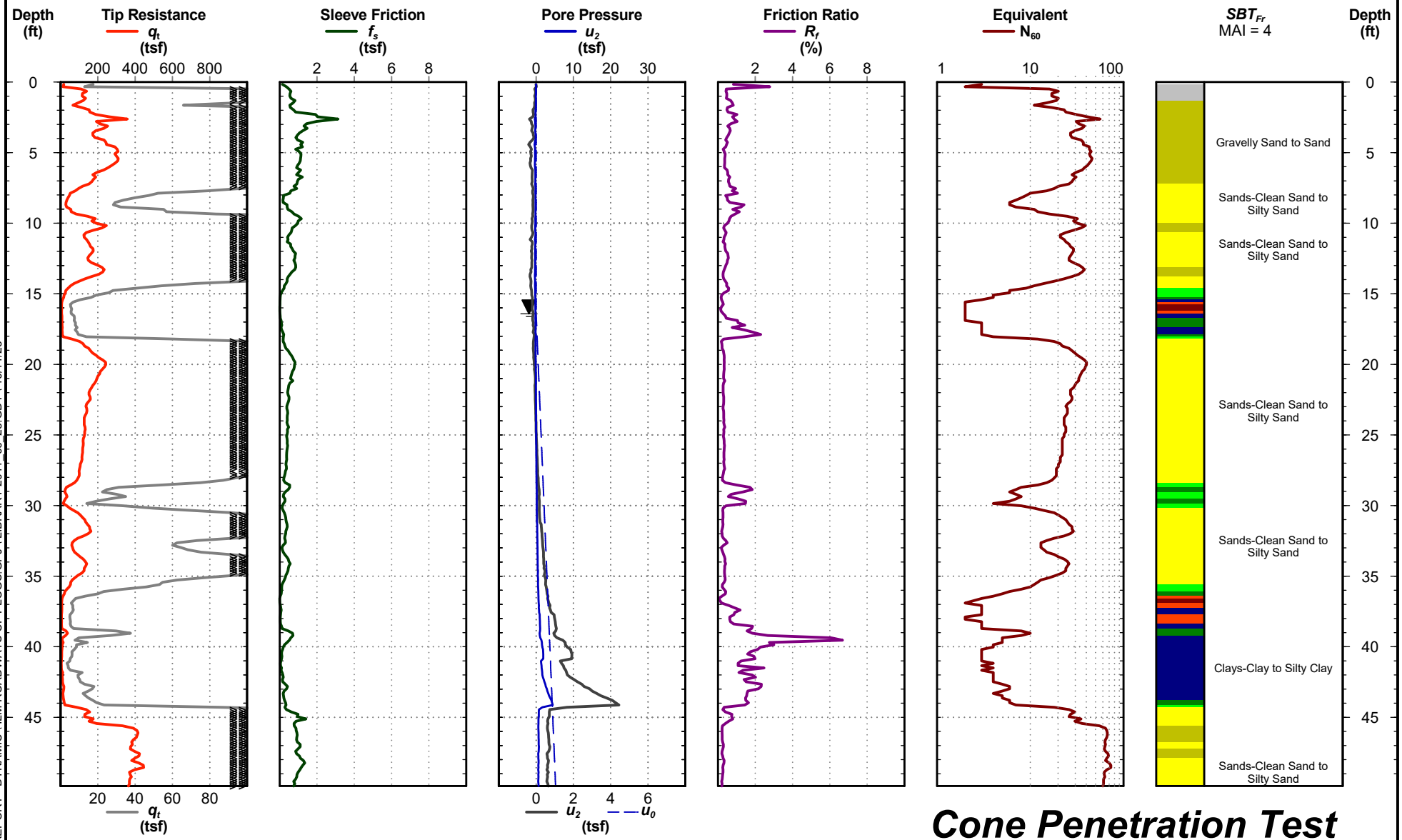
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: PD-3

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 19, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 16.42 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 49.9 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways PD-3.cpt

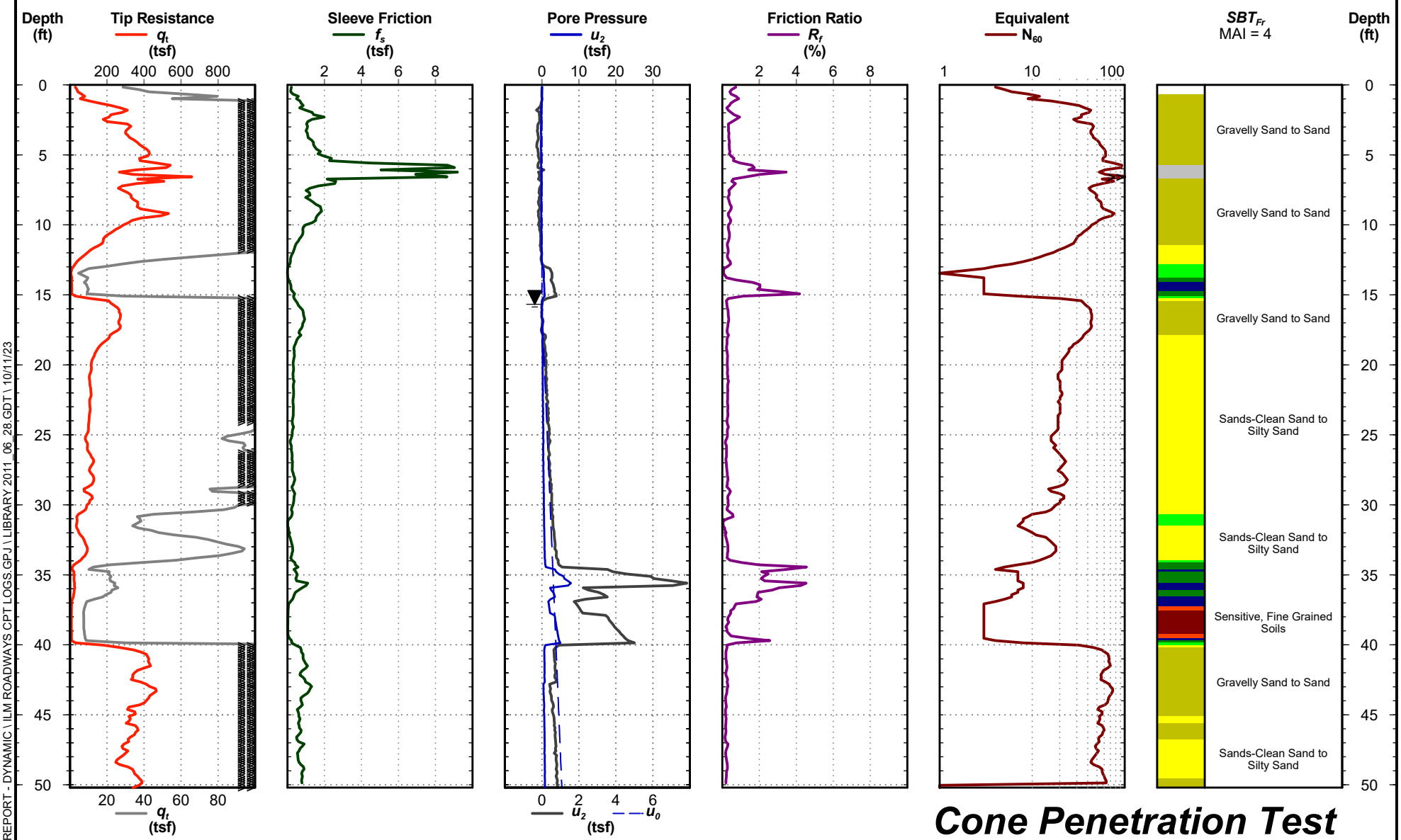
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: PD-4

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 19, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 15.67 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 50.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways PD-4A.cpt

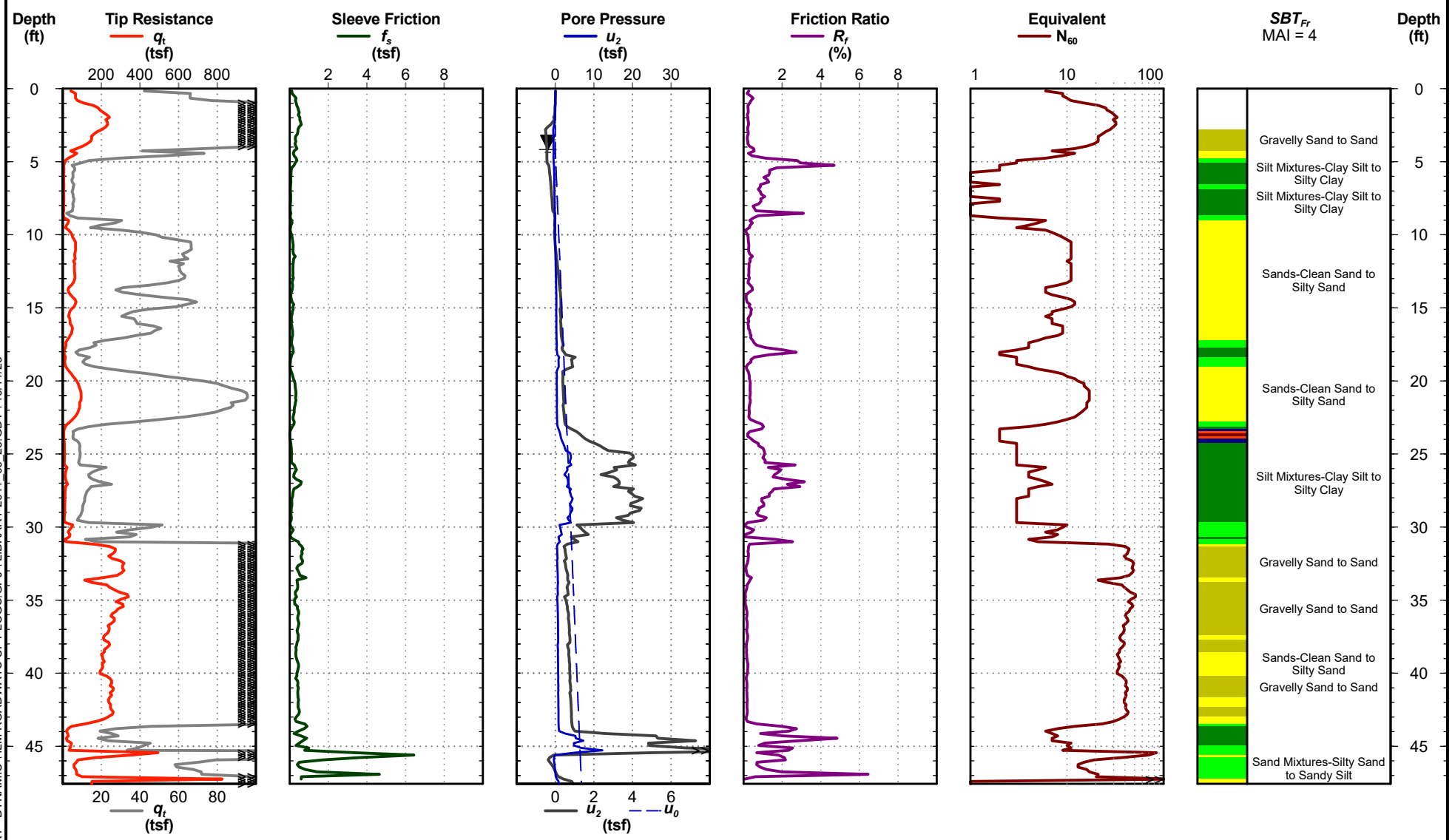
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: RETW-1

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 4.17 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 47.6 ft
Termination Criteria: Maximum Reaction Force
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways RETW-1.cpt

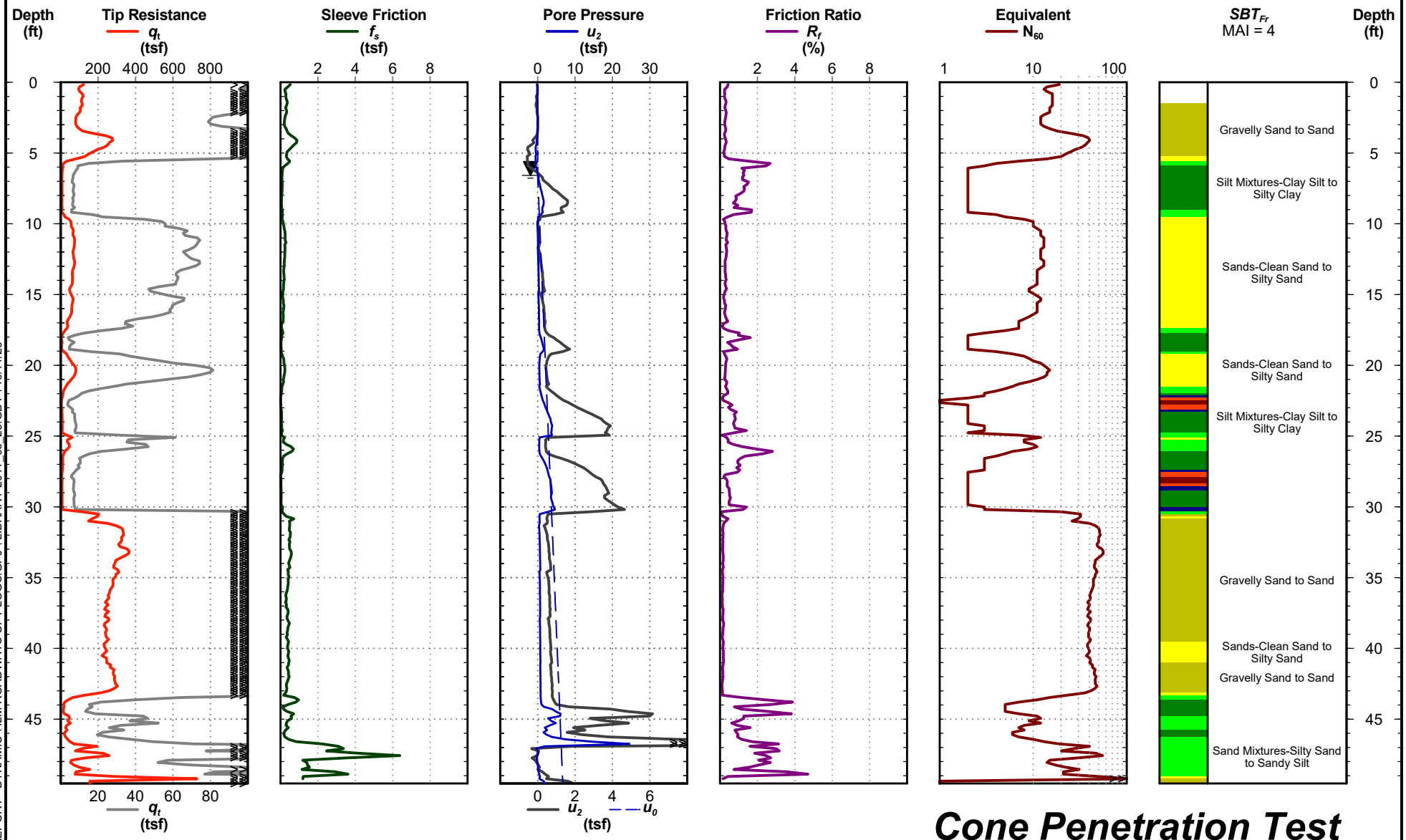
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: RETW-2

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 6.58 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 49.5 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways RETW-2.cpt

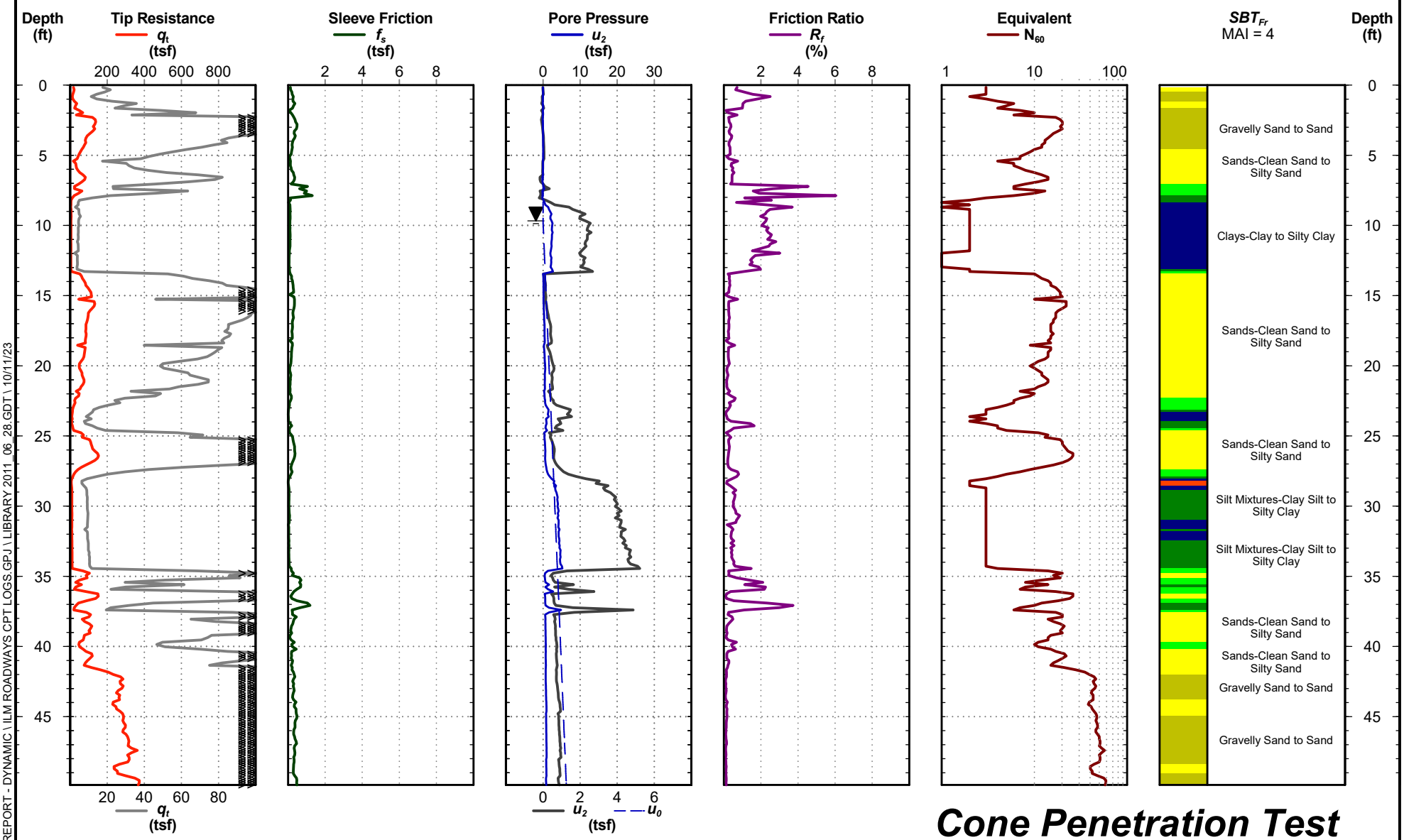
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: RETW-3

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 9.67 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 49.9 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways RETW-3.cpt

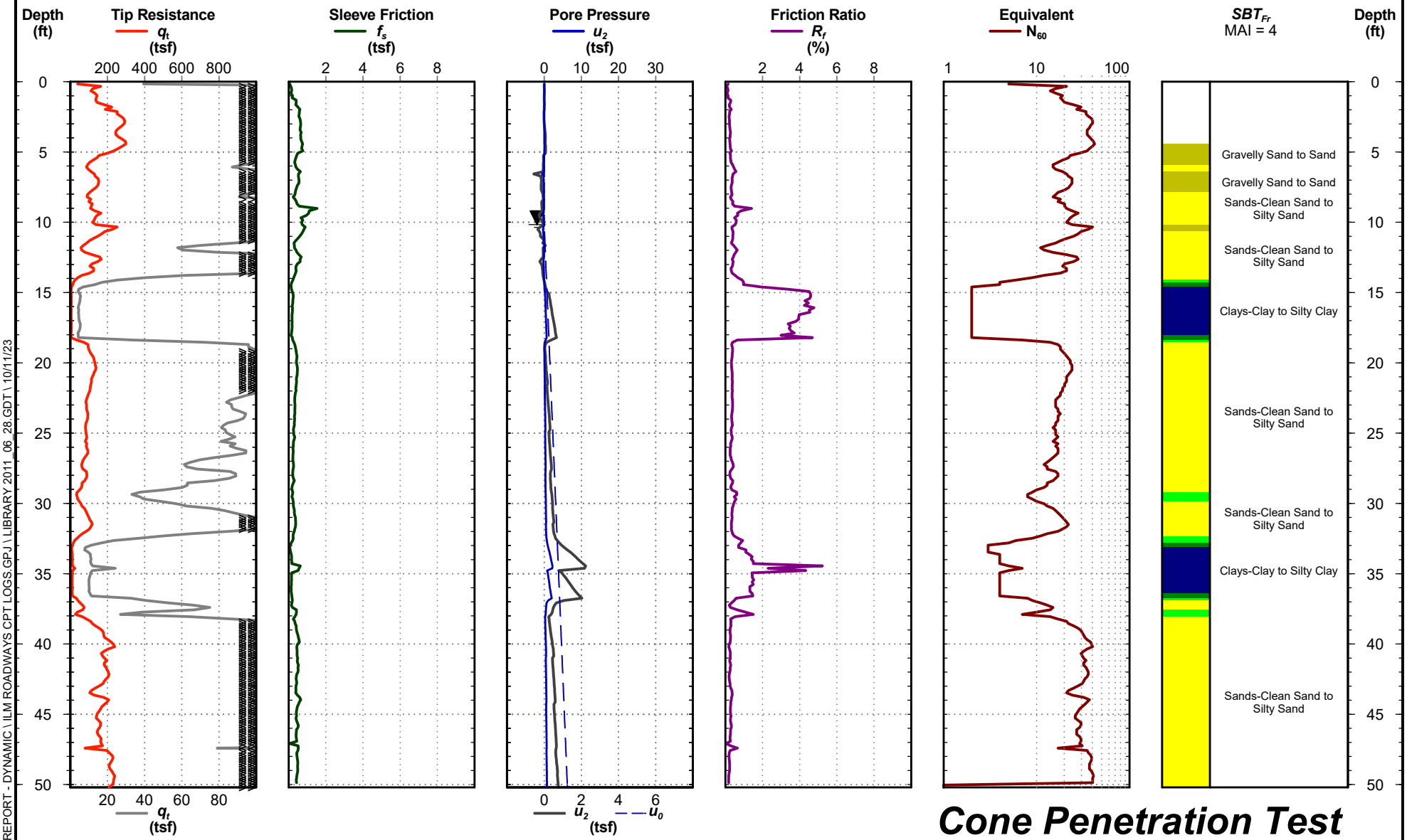
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: RETW-4

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 18, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 10.17 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 50.2 ft
Termination Criteria: Target Depth
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways RETW-4.cpt

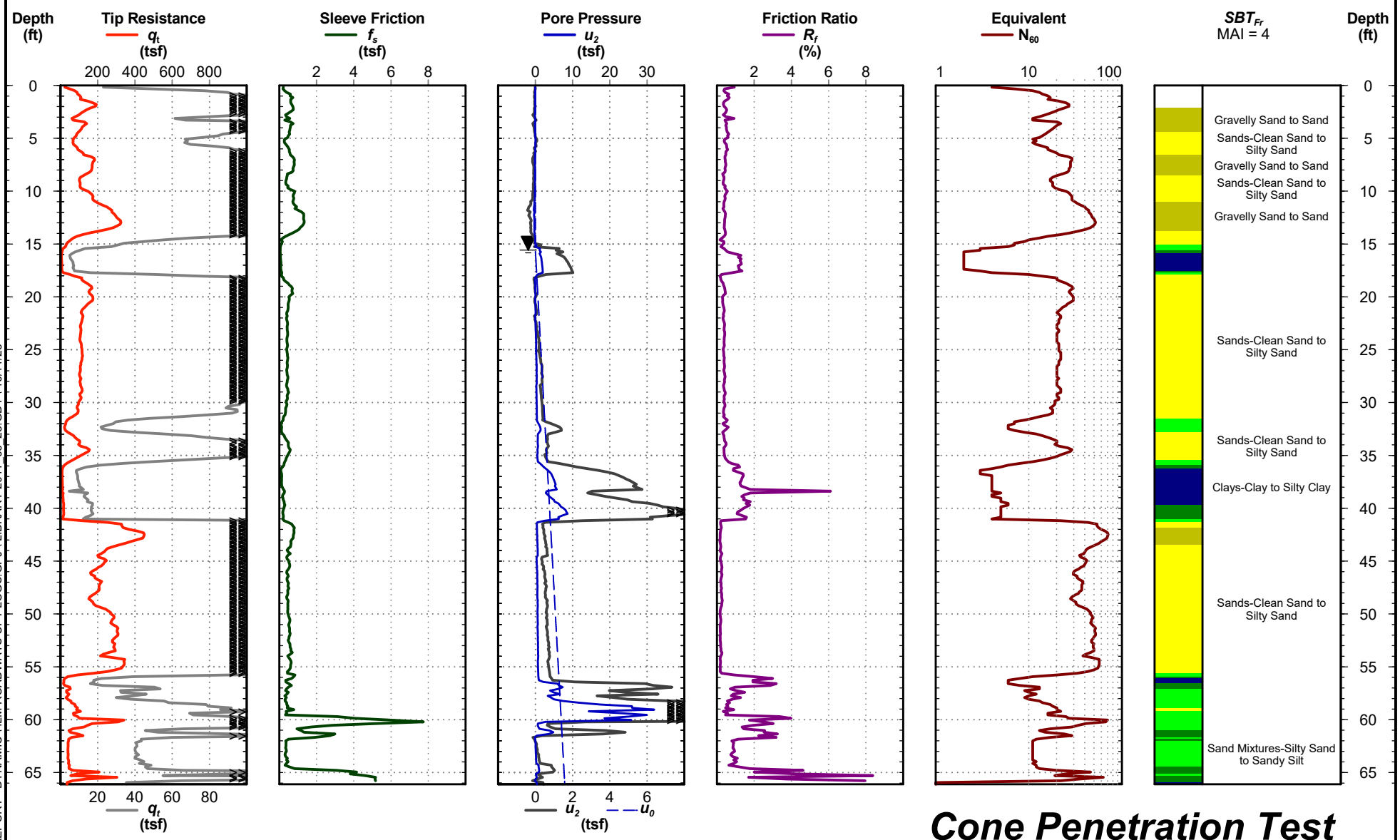
CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

Sounding ID: RETW-5

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No: 23060109

Date: Sep. 19, 2023
Estimated Water Depth: 15.58 ft
Rig/Operator: Jared Duffy

Total Depth: 66.1 ft
Termination Criteria: Maximum Reaction Force
Cone Size: 1.75



Cone Penetration Test

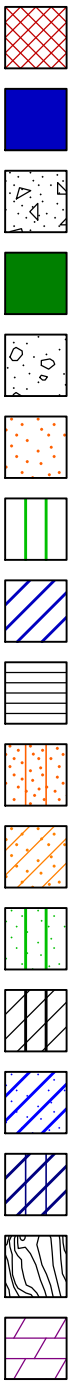
Electronic Filename: ILM Roadways RETW-5.cpt

CPT REPORT - DYNAMIC \ ILM ROADWAYS CPT LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/11/23

LEGEND TO SOIL CLASSIFICATION AND SYMBOLS

SOIL TYPES

(Shown in Graphic Log)



- Fill
- Asphalt
- Concrete
- Topsoil
- Gravel
- Sand
- Silt
- Clay
- Organic
- Silty Sand
- Clayey Sand
- Sandy Silt
- Clayey Silt
- Sandy Clay
- Silty Clay
- Partially Weathered Rock
- Cored Rock

WATER LEVELS

(Shown in Water Level Column)

▽ = Water Level At Termination of Boring
▼ = Water Level Taken After 24 Hours
◄ = Loss of Drilling Water
HC = Hole Cave

CONSISTENCY OF COHESIVE SOILS

CONSISTENCY	STD. PENETRATION RESISTANCE BLOWS/FOOT
Very Soft	0 to 2
Soft	3 to 4
Firm	5 to 8
Stiff	9 to 15
Very Stiff	16 to 30
Hard	31 to 50
Very Hard	Over 50

RELATIVE DENSITY OF COHESIONLESS SOILS

RELATIVE DENSITY	STD. PENETRATION RESISTANCE BLOWS/FOOT
Very Loose	0 to 4
Loose	5 to 10
Medium Dense	11 to 30
Dense	31 to 50
Very Dense	Over 50

SAMPLER TYPES

(Shown in Samples Column)

- Shelby Tube
- Split Spoon
- Rock Core
- No Recovery

TERMS

Standard Penetration Resistance - The Number of Blows of 140 lb. Hammer Falling 30 in. Required to Drive 1.4 in. I.D. Split Spoon Sampler 1 Foot. As Specified in ASTM D-1586.

REC - Total Length of Rock Recovered in the Core Barrel Divided by the Total Length of the Core Run Times 100%.

RQD - Total Length of Sound Rock Segments Recovered that are Longer Than or Equal to 4" (mechanical breaks excluded) Divided by the Total Length of the Core Run Times 100%.

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark gray and brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	4	6	10
	- - - Very loose.	2	2	3	1	4
5	**WOOD**	3	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, brown and tan, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	4	WOH	2	3	5
		5	3	4	5	9
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:	NOTES:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**	
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6.5' ATD**	
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**	
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**		
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**		

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL -4 inches.					
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, orange, tan, and brown, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	5	4	9
	- - - Medium dense, dark brown, some silty sand lenses.	2	6	5	6	11
	- - - Tan, orange, and brown.	3	8	7	5	12
	FAT CLAY WITH SAND (CH) - Very soft, gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, few fine sand, wet.	4	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, brown, tan, and gray, mostly fine to medium sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5	1	3	8	11
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-3

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **5.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 5 inches.						
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1		1	2	4	6
		2		5	4	6	10
5	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)** - Medium dense, tan, brown, and orange, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	3		6	7	5	12
	FAT CLAY WITH SAND (CH) - Very soft, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, few fine sand, wet.	4		WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan, brown, and gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5		1	3	9	12
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth						

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-4

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 2 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	3	4	7
		2	3	3	5	8
	- - - Very loose.					
5		3	2	1	1	2
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Very loose, brown, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	4	WOH	WOH	3	3
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Very loose, tan, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.					
	- - - Medium dense.	5	10	11	10	21
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-5

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	ASPHALT - 3 inches.					
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan, orange, and brown, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	6	11	11	22
	- - - Dense.	2	9	18	20	38
	- - - Medium dense.	3	10	10	10	20
	SILTY-CLAYEY SAND (SC-SM) - Very loose, orange and gray, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	4	2	1	WOH	1
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Medium dense, gray and tan, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	5	2	5	7	12
	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-7

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **7' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	WATER LEVEL	ELEVATION (feet)	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 5 inches.			1		1	3	7		10
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.									
	- - - Medium dense.			2		8	9	12		21
	- - - Loose, gray, wet.			3		7	6	3		9
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Very soft, dark gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	▽		4		WOH	WOH	WOH		WOH
	- - - Stiff.									
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, gray and tan, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.			5		1	5	6		11
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth									

10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

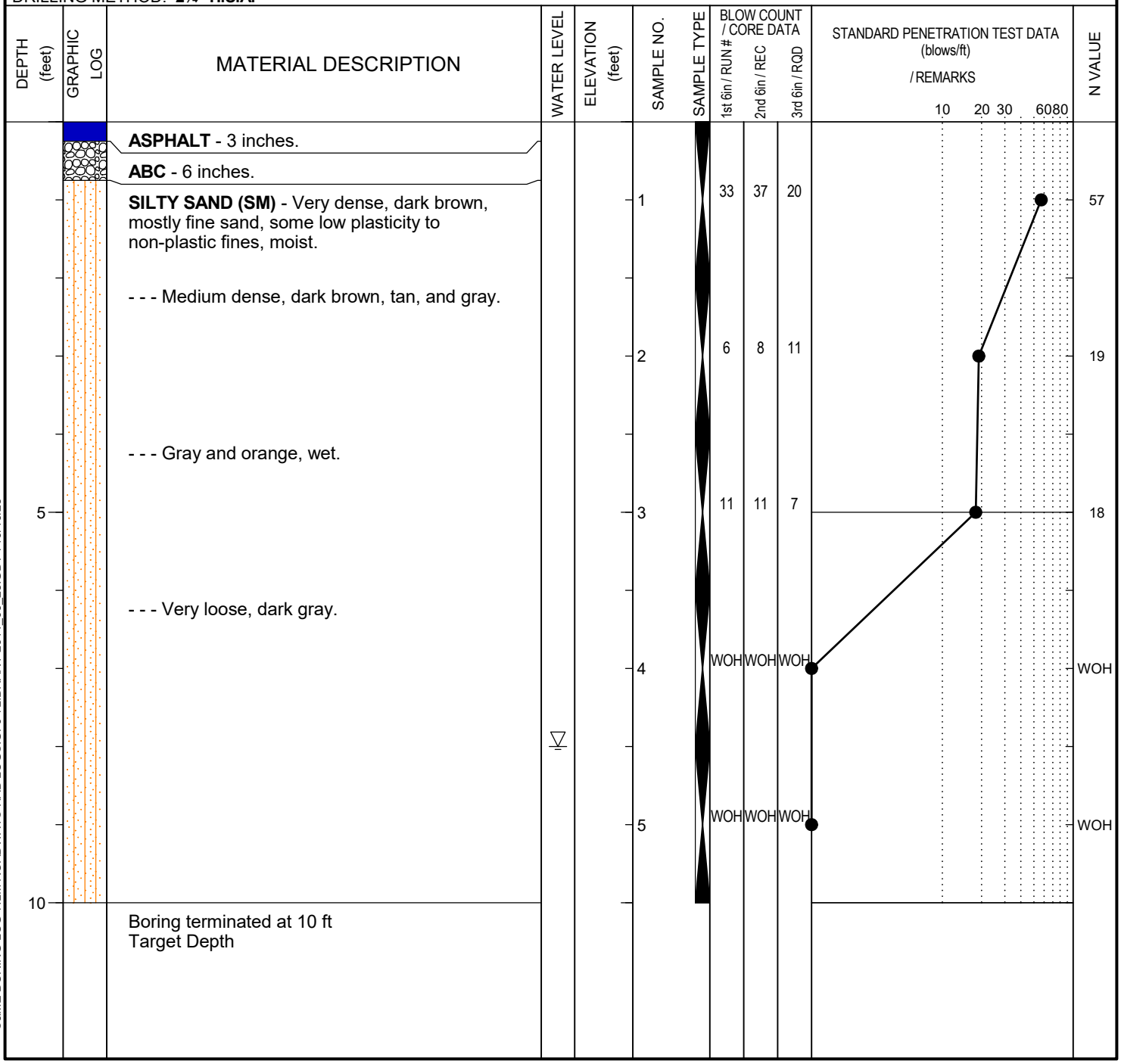
1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AAR-8

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:



S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **Not Encountered.**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	WATER LEVEL	ELEVATION (feet)	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
		TOPSOIL - 4 inches.									
		SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.			1		1	2	3		5
		POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan and orange, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.			2		6	10	14		24
5					3		7	10	11		21
					4		6	8	11		19
					5		5	7	8		15
10		Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth									

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS: 10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	6	7	13
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, brown, tan, and orange, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	2	6	6	7	13
5		3	4	6	6	12
	▽	4	4	6	8	14
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Loose, orange and gray, mostly fine sand, trace fines, wet.	5	1	2	3	5
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS — 10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-3

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 2 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	10	15	28	43
	- - - Very dense, tan, wet.	2	12	28	36	64
5	- - - Medium dense, tan and brown.	3	15	12	9	21
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Firm, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	2	2	3	5
		5	3	2	4	6
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-4

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	3	6	9
	- - - Medium dense, some clayey sand lenses.	2	3	4	7	11
5		3	3	5	10	15
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Firm, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	4	5	2	7
	- - - Very soft.	5	1	1	WOH	1
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-5

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	6	6	12
		2	8	11	11	22
	- - - Dense.	3	13	15	23	38
	- - - Medium dense, brown, gray, and tan, wet	4	20	17	18	35
		5	9	10	8	18
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG AB-6

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:	NOTES:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**	
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **Not Encountered.**	
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**	
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**		
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**		

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.						
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Loose, orange, brown, and gray, mostly fine to medium sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, moist.	1		2	3	4	7
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Loose, tan and gray, mostly fine sand, trace fines, moist.	2		2	2	4	6
	- - - Medium dense.						
5		3		5	7	7	14
		4		6	7	7	14
		5		6	7	7	14
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth						

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/19/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG APRON-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	ASPHALT - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	8	10	11	21
		2	9	9	12	21
5	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)** - Loose, tan to dark brown, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	3	6	5	3	8
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Very loose, dark gray, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	4	WOH	WOH	2	2
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, gray and white, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5	9	13	16	29
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG APRON-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	ASPHALT - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - FILL - Medium dense, brown and tan, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some gravel, moist.	1	15	10	8	18
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark gray and brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	2	3	3	4	7
5	- - - Very loose, gray and tan.	3	4	1	WOH	1
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, gray and tan, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	4	WOH	4	6	10
	- - - Medium dense.	5	4	7	12	19
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **EAR-1**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	ABC - 12 inches.						
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - FILL - Medium dense, gray, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1		4	14	10	24
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, brown and gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	2		7	7	7	14
	- - - Loose.	3		4	5	4	9
	- - - Very loose.	4		1	2	2	4
	- - - Gray and tan, wet.	5		2	2	2	4
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth						

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG EAR-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, brown and gray, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	2	3	5
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan, brown, and gray, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some clayey sand leneses, moist.	2	6	9	9	18
	- - - Wet, no clayey sand lenses.					
5		3	7	8	8	16
	- - - Loose.	4	2	2	5	7
		5	2	3	3	6
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **EAR-3**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	3	5	7	12
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan and orange, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some clayey sand lenses, moist.	2	5	6	10	16
5	- - - Loose, no clayey sand lenses.	3	8	9	11	20
		4	3	5	3	8
		5	3	4	4	8
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS

10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **EAR-4**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, tan, brown, and gray, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some gravel, moist.	1	3	6	12	18
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, brown, tan, and orange, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	2	3	6	10	16
5	**SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** - Soft, orange, tan, and gray, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, moist.	3	3	1	3	4
	- - - Firm.	4	1	2	3	5
	- - - Soft.	5	1	1	2	3
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

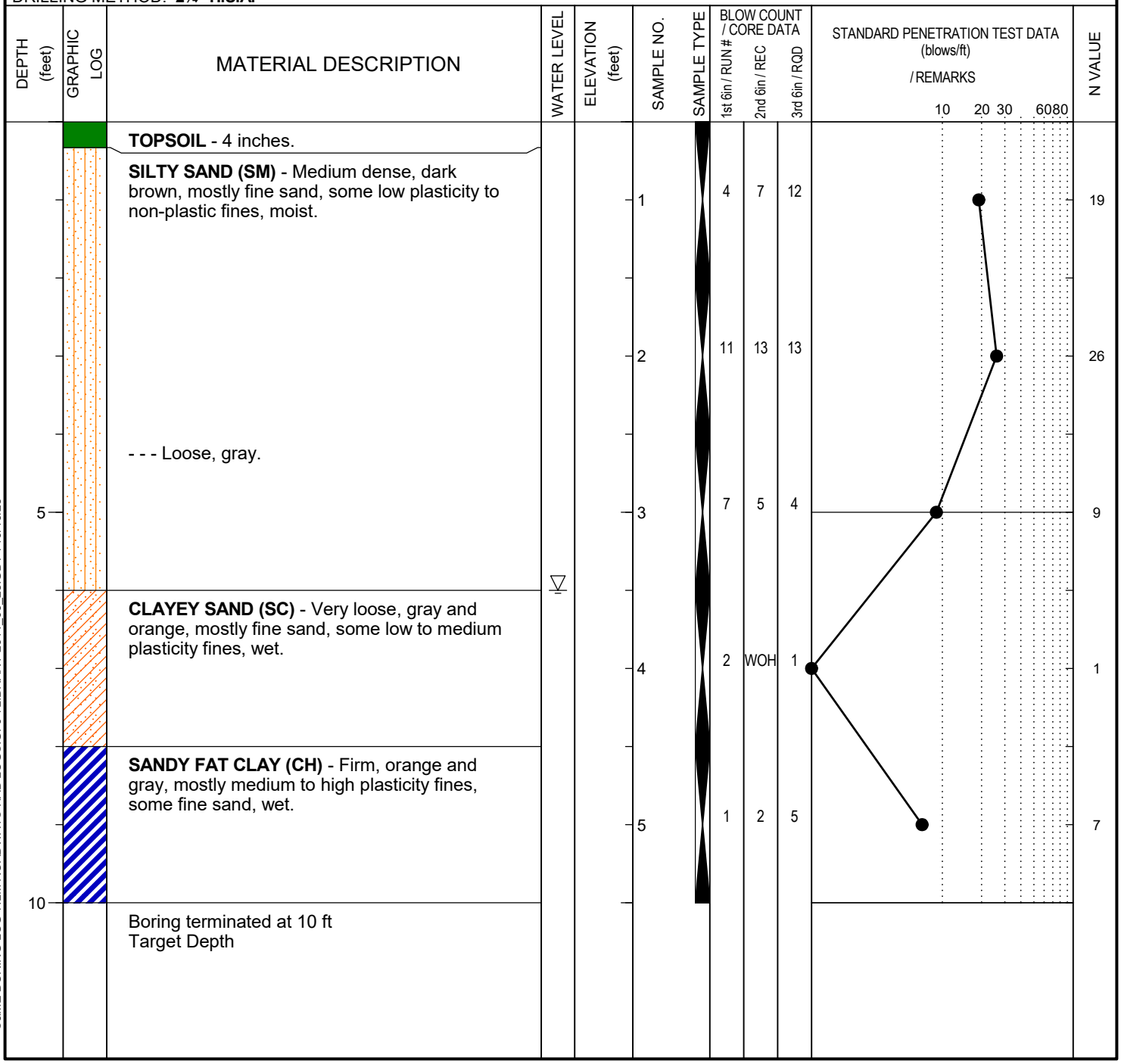
1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **EAR-5**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:



S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **FR-1**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **Not Encountered.**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	GRAPHIC LOG	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	WATER LEVEL	ELEVATION (feet)	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
		ABC - 5 inches.			1		6	7	6		13
		SILTY SAND (SM) - FILL - Medium dense, tan and brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, trace gravel, moist.									
		SILTY SAND (SM) - Very loose, brown to dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.			2		3	2	2		4
		- - - Wet.			3		2	1	1		2
					4		1	1	1		2
					5		WOH	1	1		2
10		Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth									

10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **FR-2**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.							
	SILTY SAND (SM) - POSSIBLE FILL - Loose, orange and tan, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1		2	4	5		9
	- - - Medium dense.	2		4	6	5		11
5	**FAT CLAY WITH SAND (CH)** - Very soft, dark gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, few fine sand, wet.	3		1	1	1		2
	- - - Stiff	4		1	1	1		2
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan, orange, and gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5		3	7	5		12
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth							

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS: 10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **FR-3**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some clayey sand lenses, moist.	1	7	10	11	21
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, tan, orange, and gray, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	2	7	9	9	18
	- - - Loose.	3	4	4	4	8
5	- - - Very loose.	4	2	2	2	4
		5	2	2	1	3
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MA-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	1	2	3	5
	- - - Wet.	2	3	3	2	5
	- - - Very loose.	3	WOH	WOH	2	2
	SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - Very soft, tan and gray, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Medium dense, gray, mostly fine to medium sand, trace fines, wet.	5	5	6	5	11
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MA-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, orange and brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	5	9	5	14
	- - - Loose.	2	4	5	5	10
5		3	3	3	2	5
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Very loose, gray, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	4	3	1	1	2
	SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - Stiff, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	5	3	5	10	15
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **MA-3**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, brown, orange, and gray, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	8	15	11	26
	- - - Brown and tan.	2	10	12	11	23
5		3	8	9	8	17
	SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - Stiff, gray and brown, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	7	7	4	11
	- - - Firm.					
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Loose, gray, mostly fine to medium sand, trace fines, wet.	5	2	2	3	5
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MA-4

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	WATER LEVEL	ELEVATION (feet)	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 5 inches.									
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.			1		1	3	4		7
	- - - Wet.			2		2	3	4		7
5	- - - Tan and brown.			3		4	4	2		6
	SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - Firm, orange and gray, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	▽		4		2	2	3		5
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Medium dense, gray, mostly fine to medium sand, trace fines, wet.			5		3	5	11		16
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth									

10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MAPKG-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	4	5	9
	SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL) - Firm, orange, tan, and gray, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, moist.	2	2	3	4	7
5		3	2	2	3	5
		4	4	4	3	7
	CLAYEY SAND (SC) - Very loose, orange, tan, and gray, mostly fine sand, some low to medium plasticity fines, wet.	5	2	2	2	4
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MAPKG-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **7' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	WATER LEVEL	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 4 inches.								
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.		1		2	3	4		7
	- - - Wet.		2		3	3	4		7
5	**SANDY FAT CLAY (CH)** - Very soft, orange, tan, and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.		3		WOH	WOH	WOH		WOH
	- - - Stiff.	▽	4		2	5	5		10
	POORLY GRADED SAND (SP) - Loose, tan and gray, mostly fine to medium sand, trace fines, wet.		5		3	8	10		18
	- - - Medium dense.								
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth								

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS: 10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG MAPKG-3

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 5 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Very loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	2	2	4
	- - - Loose.	2	2	3	4	7
5	- - - Very loose, wet. ▽	3	3	1	1	2
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Soft, gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	WOH	WOH	3	3
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5	8	10	11	21
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL: ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG **ML-1**

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 2 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	6	10	16
		2	3	4	7	11
	- - - Loose, brown and tan.	3	2	3	4	7
5	- - - Very loose, dark gray.	4	4	1	1	2
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Medium dense, gray, mostly fine to medium sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	5	3	7	11	18
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG PKG-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **4.5' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 5 inches.					
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, brown and gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, some clayey sand lenses,moist.	1	2	3	3	6
	- - - Very loose.	2	2	2	1	3
	- - - Wet. ▽	3	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
	- - - Gray and tan.	4	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
		5	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS — 10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG PKG-2

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, brown and orange, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	2	3	6	9
	- - - Medium dense.	2	7	9	12	21
5	**SANDY LEAN CLAY (CL)** - Firm, gray, mostly low to medium plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	3	3	3	3	6
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	4	2	2	3	5
	- - - Medium dense.	5	7	8	8	16
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG PKG-3

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **7' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	SAMPLE TYPE	BLOW COUNT / CORE DATA 1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.						
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1		2	2	3	5
	- - - Medium dense.	2		5	7	8	15
5	- - - Loose	3		4	5	5	10
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Soft, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4		2	2	1	3
	- - - Very soft.	5		1	1	1	2
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth						

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

WATER LEVEL ▽

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG PKG-4

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **6' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Very loose, dark brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	1	2	2	4
	- - - Medium dense.	2	5	12	15	27
5	**POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM)** - Medium dense, dark brown, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, wet.	3	8	10	10	20
	SANDY FAT CLAY (CH) - Very soft, orange and gray, mostly medium to high plasticity fines, some fine sand, wet.	4	2	1	1	2
		5	WOH	WOH	WOH	WOH
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. ***THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.***
2. ***BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.***
3. ***STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.***
4. ***WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.***

Proposed ILM Landside Improvements
Wilmington, North Carolina
S&ME Project No. 23060109

BORING LOG ROAD/PKG-1

DATE DRILLED: **9/18/23**	ELEVATION:
DRILL RIG: **CME-45**	BORING DEPTH: **10.0 ft**
DRILLER: **Mid. Atlantic/M. Wiggins**	WATER LEVEL: **8' ATD**
HAMMER TYPE: **Auto**	LOGGED BY: **J. Prevatte**
SAMPLING METHOD: **Split-Spoon**	
DRILLING METHOD: **2¼" H.S.A.**	

NOTES:

DEPTH (feet)	MATERIAL DESCRIPTION	SAMPLE NO.	1st 6in / RUN #	2nd 6in / REC	3rd 6in / RQD	N VALUE
	TOPSOIL - 3 inches.					
	SILTY SAND (SM) - Medium dense, orange and brown, mostly fine sand, some low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	1	6	7	5	12
	POORLY GRADED SAND WITH SILT (SP-SM) - Loose, tan and gray, mostly fine sand, few low plasticity to non-plastic fines, moist.	2	4	5	4	9
	- - - Medium dense.	3	3	5	7	12
		4	5	6	7	13
		5	3	5	6	11
10	Boring terminated at 10 ft Target Depth					

WATER LEVEL ▽

STANDARD PENETRATION TEST DATA (blows/ft) / REMARKS
10 20 30 60 80

S&ME BORING LOG \ ILM ROADWAYS HAB LOGS.GPJ \ LIBRARY 2011_06_28.GDT \ 10/16/23

NOTES:

1. *THIS LOG IS ONLY A PORTION OF A REPORT PREPARED FOR THE NAMED PROJECT AND MUST ONLY BE USED TOGETHER WITH THAT REPORT.*
2. *BORING, SAMPLING AND PENETRATION TEST DATA IN GENERAL ACCORDANCE WITH ASTM D-1586.*
3. *STRATIFICATION AND GROUNDWATER DEPTHS ARE NOT EXACT.*
4. *WATER LEVEL IS AT TIME OF EXPLORATION AND WILL VARY.*

Appendix III – Laboratory Procedures and Data

♦ Summary of Laboratory Test Procedures

Moisture Content Testing of Soil Samples by Oven Drying

Moisture content was determined in general conformance with the methods outlined in ASTM D 2216, "*Standard Test Method for Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil or Rock by Mass*." This method is limited in scope to Group B, C, or D samples of earth materials which do not contain appreciable amounts of organic material, soluble solids such as salt or reactive solids such as cement. This method is also limited to samples which do not contain contamination.

A representative portion of the soil was divided from the sample using one of the methods described in Section 9 of ASTM D 2216. The split portion was then placed in a drying oven and heated to approximately 110 degrees C overnight or until a constant mass was achieved after repetitive weighing. The moisture content of the soil was then computed as the mass of water removed from the sample by drying, divided by the mass of the sample dry, times 100 percent. No attempt was made to exclude any particular particle size from the portion split from the sample.

Grain Size Analysis of Samples (with Wash No. 200 Sieve)

The distribution of particle sizes greater than 75 mm was determined in general accordance with the procedures described by ASTM D 421, "*Standard Practice for Dry Preparation of Soil Samples for Particle-Size Analysis and Determination of Soil Constants",* and D 6913, *"Standard Test Method for Particle-Size Distribution (Gradation) of Soils Using Sieve Analysis*,".

A selected specimen of soils was washed over a No. 200 sieve after being thoroughly mixed and dried. This test was conducted in general accordance with ASTM D 1140, "*Standard Test Method for Amount of Material Finer Than the No. 200 Sieve*." Method B, using a hexametaphosphate solution to pre-soak the specimen for at least 2 hours, was used to prepare the sample. The sample is then washed through the No. 200 sieve the percentage by weight of material washed through the sieve was deemed the "percent fines" or percent clay and silt fraction.

The results of the D6913 and D1140 tests are shown on the same form.

Liquid and Plastic Limits Testing

Atterberg limits of the soils was determined generally following the methods described by ASTM D 4318, "*Standard Test Methods for Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, and Plasticity Index of Soils."* Albert Atterberg originally defined "limits of consistency" of fine-grained soils in terms of their relative ease of deformation at various moisture contents. In current engineering usage, the *liquid lim*it of a soil is defined as the moisture content, in percent, marking the upper limit of viscous flow and the boundary with a semi-liquid state. The *plastic limit* defines the lower limit of plastic behavior, above which a soil behaves plastically below which it retains its shape upon drying. The *plasticity index* (PI) is the range of water content over which a soil behaves plastically. Numerically, the PI is the difference between liquid limit and plastic limit values.

Representative portions of fine-grained Group A, B, C, or D samples were prepared using the wet method described in Section 11.1 of ASTM D 4318. Unless otherwise noted on the report form, the liquid limit of each

sample was determined using the multipoint method (Method A) described in Section 12. The liquid limit is, by definition, the moisture content where 25 drops of a hand operated liquid limit device are required to close a standard width groove cut in a soil sample placed in the device. After each test, the moisture content of the sample was adjusted and the sample replaced in the device. The test was repeated to provide a minimum of three widely spaced combinations of N versus moisture content. When plotted on semi-log paper, the liquid limit moisture content was determined by straight line interpolation between the data points at N equals 25 blows.

The plastic limit was determined using the procedure described in Section 17 of ASTM D 4318. A selected portion of the soil used in the liquid limit test was kneaded and rolled by hand until it could no longer be rolled to a 3.2 mm thread on a glass plate. This procedure was repeated until at least 6 grams of material was accumulated, at which point the moisture content was determined using the methods described in ASTM D 2216.

Moisture-Density Relationship of Soils Using Standard Effort

Soil placed as engineering fill is compacted to a dense state to obtain satisfactory engineering properties. Laboratory moisture-density relationship tests provide the basis for determining the percent compaction and water content needed to achieve the required engineering properties, and for controlling construction to assure the required compaction and water contents are achieved. Test procedures generally followed those described by ASTM D 698, "*Standard Test Method for Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort (12,400 lbf/ft^3).*"

The relationship between water content and the dry unit weight is determined for soils compacted in either 4 or 6-inch diameter molds with a 5.5 lbf rammer dropped from a height of 12 inches, producing a compactive effort of 12,400 lbf/ft^3. ASTM D 698 provides three alternative procedures depending on material gradation, designated as Methods A, B, and C. See the upper-center portion of the report form for the method selected for each sample.

Method A

- All material passes No. 4 sieve size
- 4-inch diameter mold
- Shall be used if 25 percent or less by weight is retained on No. 4 sieve
- Soil in 3 layers with 25 blows per layer

Method B

- All material passes 3/8-inch sieve
- 4-inch diameter mold
- Shall be used if 25 percent by weight, or less, is retained on the 3/8 Inch sieve.
- Soil in 3 layers with 25 blows per layer

Method C

- All material passes ¾ inch sieve
- 6-inch diameter mold
- Shall be used if more than 30 percent by weight, or less, is retained on the ¾-inch sieve
- Soil in 3 layers with 56 blows per layer

Soil is compacted in the mold in three layers of approximately equal thickness, each compacted with either 25 or 56 blows of the rammer. After compaction of the sample in the mold, the resulting dry density and moisture content is determined and the procedure repeated. Separate soils are used for each sample point, adjusting the

moisture content of the soil as described in Section 10.2 (Moist Preparation Method). The procedure was repeated for a sufficient number of water content values (or "points") to allow the dry density vs. water content values to be plotted and the *maximum dry density* and *optimum moisture content* to be determined from the resulting curvilinear relationship.

Laboratory California Bearing Ratio (CBR) Tests of Compacted Samples

This method is used to evaluate the potential strength of subgrade, subbase, and base course material, including recycled materials, for use in road and airfield pavements. Laboratory CBR tests were performed in general accordance with the procedures described in ASTM D 1883, "*Standard Test Method for CBR (California Bearing Ratio) of Laboratory Compacted Soils*." Specimens were prepared in standard molds to a target level of compactive effort within plus or minus 0.5 percent of the optimum moisture content value. While embedded in the compaction mold, each sample was inundated for a minimum period of 96 hours to achieve saturation. During inundation the specimen was surcharged by a weight approximating the anticipated weight of the pavement and base course layers; see the report form for the surcharge weight selected for each sample. After removing the sample from the soaking bath, the soil was then sheared by jacking a piston having a cross sectional area of 3 square inches into the end surface of the specimen. The piston was jacked 0.5 inches into the specimen at a constant rate of 0.05 inches per minute.

The CBR is defined as the load required to penetrate a material to a predetermined depth, compared to the load required to penetrate a standard sample of crushed stone to the same depth. The CBR value is usually based on the load ratio for a penetration of 0.10 inches, after correcting the load-deflection curves for surface irregularities or upward concavity. However, where the calculated (corrected) CBR for a penetration of 0.20 inches is greater than the result obtained for a penetration of 0.10 inches, the test is repeated by reversing the specimen and shearing the opposite end surface. Where the second ("flip") test indicates a greater CBR value at 0.20 inches of penetration, the CBR for 0.20 inches penetration is used for design.

Form No: TR-D2216-T265-2
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 08/16/17

LABORATORY DETERMINATION OF WATER CONTENT

ASTM D 2216 ☑ *AASHTO T 265* ☐

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s):	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample by:	J. Prevatte	Sample Dates:	9/29/23
Sampling Method:	Bulk/Grab	Drill Rig :	N/A

Method: **A (1%)** **B (0.1%)** ☑ Balance ID. 14862 Calibration Date: 7/1/23 Oven ID. 14603 Calibration Date: 7/24/23

Boring +A15 No.	Sample No.	Sample Depth	Tare #	Tare Weight	Tare Wt.+ Wet Wt	Tare Wt. + Dry Wt	Water Weight	Percent Moisture
		ft. or m.		grams	grams	grams	grams	%
EAR-2	Bulk-1	0.5'-2.0'	J	0.00	412.11	355.75	56.36	**15.8%**
AAR-1	Bulk-2	0.5'-2.0'	F	0.00	414.52	369.85	44.67	**12.1%**
AAR-8	S-4	6.0'-8.0'	B	0.00	248.85	188.77	60.08	**31.8%**
APRON-2	S-2	2.0'-4.0'	I	0.00	236.44	186.39	50.05	**26.9%**
AB-6	S-5	8.0'-10.0'	G	0.00	253.58	211.56	42.02	**19.9%**
EAR-5	S-3	4.0'-6.0'	J	0.00	242.20	198.52	43.68	**22.0%**
ML-1	S-4	6.0'-8.0'	F	0.00	225.07	172.19	52.88	**30.7%**

Notes / Deviations / References

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE

ASTM D 2216: Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the samples noted above.

Form No: TR-D1140-1
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 8/2/17

MATERIAL FINER THAN THE #200 SIEVE

ASTM D1140

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s):	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample by:	J. Prevatte	Sample Dates:	9/29/23
Sampling Method:	Bulk/Grab	Drill Rig :	N/A
Method;	**A** ☐ **B** ☑	Soaked ☑	Soak Time 23.0 hrs

Boring #	Sample #	Sample Depth	Tare #	Tare Weight	Tare Wt.+ Wet Wt	Tare Wt. + Dry Wt	Tare Wt. + Dry Wt. after Wash	% Passing #200
				grams	grams	grams	grams	%
EAR-2	Bulk-1	0.5'-2.0'	J	0.00	412.11	355.75	306.13	**13.9%**
AAR-1	Bulk-2	0.5'-2.0'	F	0.00	414.52	369.85	290.97	**21.3%**
AAR-8	S-4	6.0'-8.0'	B	0.00	248.85	188.77	146.53	**22.4%**
APRON-2	S-2	2.0'-4.0'	I	0.00	236.44	186.39	160.94	**13.7%**
AB-6	S-5	8.0'-10.0'	G	0.00	253.58	211.56	203.77	**3.7%**
EAR-5	S-3	4.0'-6.0'	J	0.00	242.20	198.52	159.53	**19.6%**
ML-1	S-4	6.0'-8.0'	F	0.00	225.07	172.19	122.28	**29.0%**

Balance ID. *14862* *Calibration Date:* *7/1/23* *#200 Sieve* *17508* *Calibration Date:* *4/18/23*

Notes / Deviations / References: ASTM D1140: Amount of Material in Soil Finer Than the No. 200 (75-um)) Sieve

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the samples noted above.

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

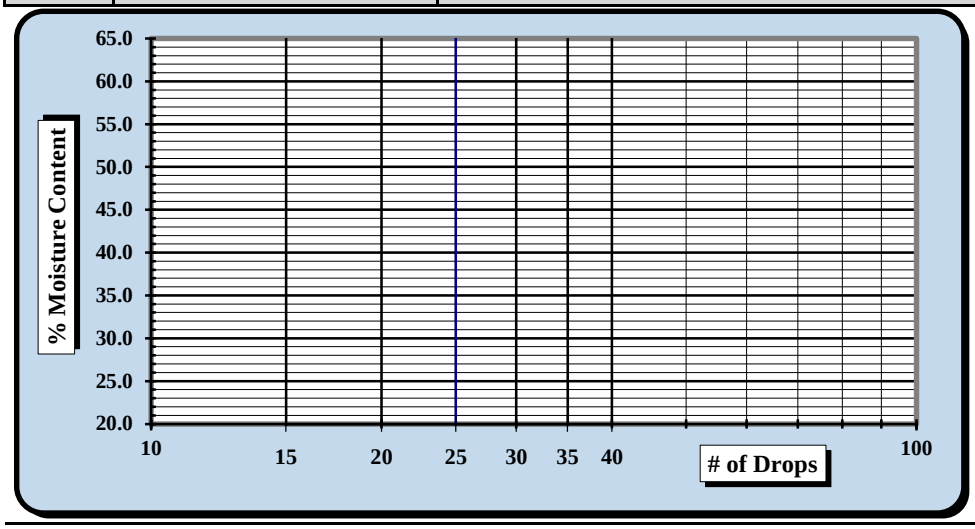
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/8/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6-10/8/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	169	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway	Source Loc.: AAR-8/S-4	Depth(ft): 6.0'-8.0'
Sample Description:	Gray Silty SAND (SM) with Trace Clay		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
	Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight									
B	Wet Soil Weight + A									
C	Dry Soil Weight + A									
D	Water Weight (B-C)									
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)									
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100									
N	# OF DROPS							*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR									
Ave.	*Average*									



One Point Liquid Limit			
N	**Factor**	**N**	**Factor**
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation | Dry Preparation | Air Dried | *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/8/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

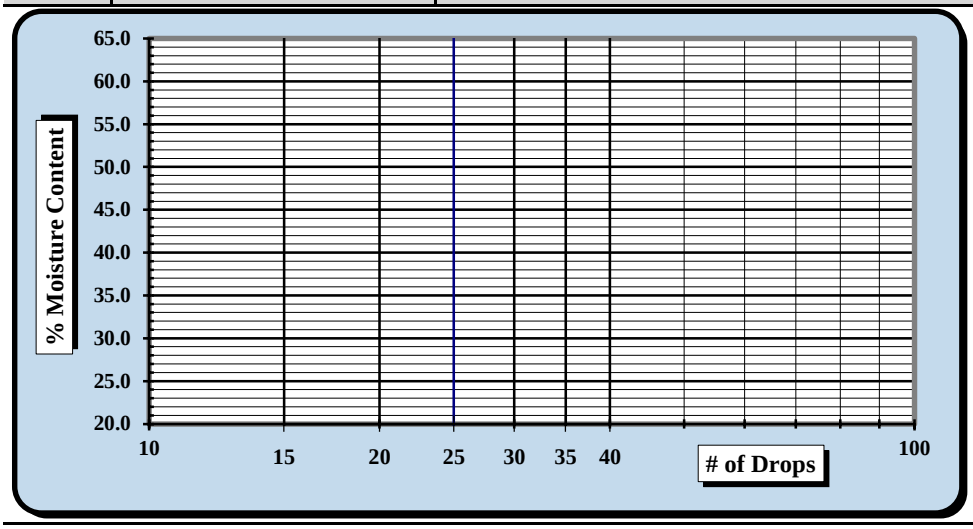
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/8/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6-10/8/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	169	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway	Source Loc.: APRON-2/S-2	Depth(ft): 2.0'-4.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray and Brown Silty SAND (SM)		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
	Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight									
B	Wet Soil Weight + A									
C	Dry Soil Weight + A									
D	Water Weight (B-C)									
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)									
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100									
N	# OF DROPS							*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR									
Ave.	*Average*									



One Point Liquid Limit			
N	**Factor**	**N**	**Factor**
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation | Dry Preparation | Air Dried | *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/8/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

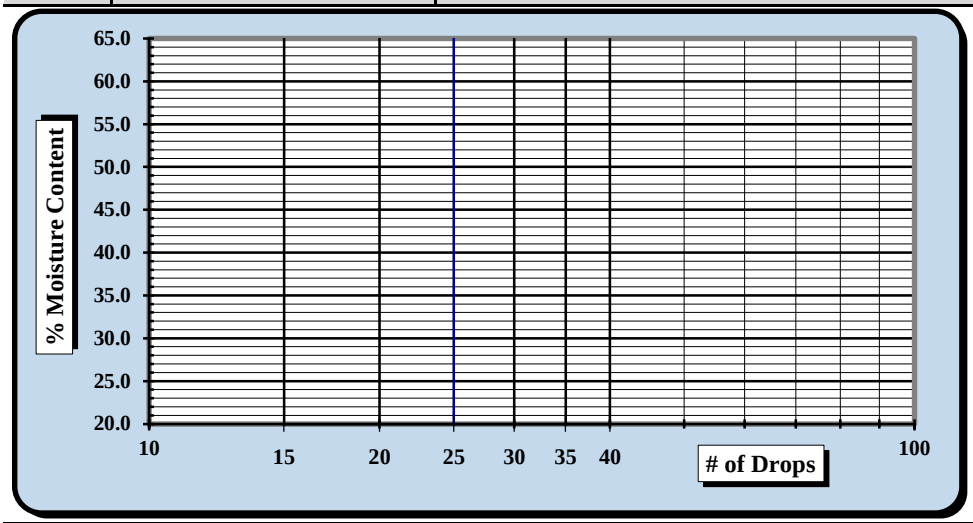
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/8/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6-10/8/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	169	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway	Source Loc.: AB-2/S-5	Depth(ft): 8.0'-10.0'
Sample Description:	Orange and Gray Poorly Graded SAND (SP)		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
	Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight									
B	Wet Soil Weight + A									
C	Dry Soil Weight + A									
D	Water Weight (B-C)									
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)									
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100									
N	# OF DROPS							*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR									
Ave.	*Average*									



One Point Liquid Limit

N	Factor	N	Factor
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SP**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation | Dry Preparation | Air Dried | *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/8/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

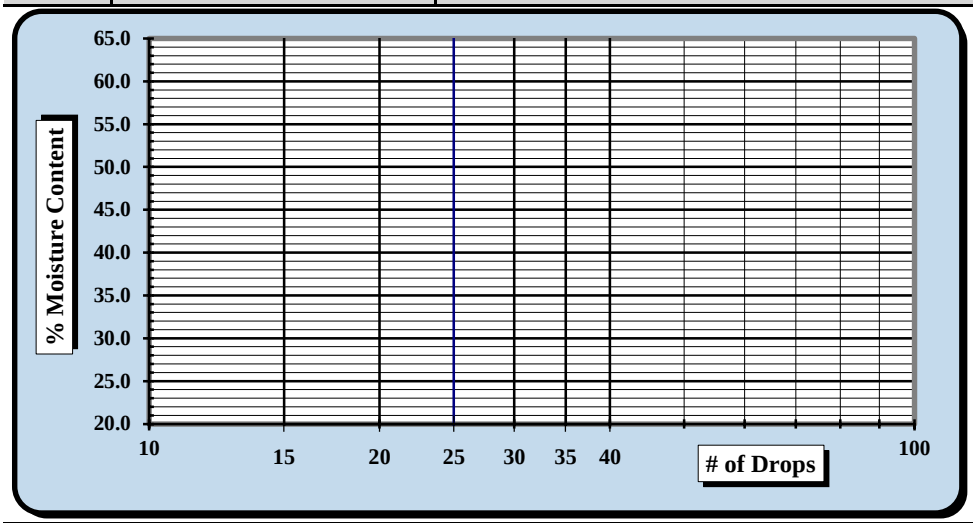
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/8/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6-10/8/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	169	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway	Source Loc.: EAR-5/S-3	Depth(ft): 4.0'-6.0'
Sample Description:	Gray Silty SAND (SM)		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
	Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight									
B	Wet Soil Weight + A									
C	Dry Soil Weight + A									
D	Water Weight (B-C)									
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)									
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100									
N	# OF DROPS							*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR									
Ave.	*Average*									



One Point Liquid Limit

N	Factor	N	Factor
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation | Dry Preparation | Air Dried | *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/8/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

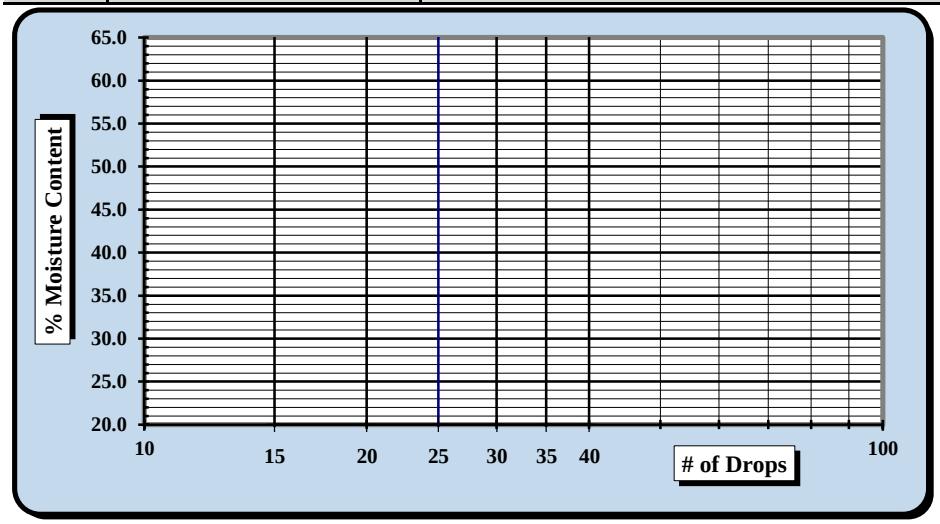
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/8/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6-10/8/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id: 169	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23	
Location: Roadway	Source Loc.: ML-1/S-4	Depth(ft): 6.0'-8.0'	
Sample Description:	Gray Silty SAND (SM) Trace Clay		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
	Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight									
B	Wet Soil Weight + A									
C	Dry Soil Weight + A									
D	Water Weight (B-C)									
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)									
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100									
N	# OF DROPS							*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR									
Ave.	*Average*									



One Point Liquid Limit			
N	**Factor**	**N**	**Factor**
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation | Dry Preparation | Air Dried | *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/8/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

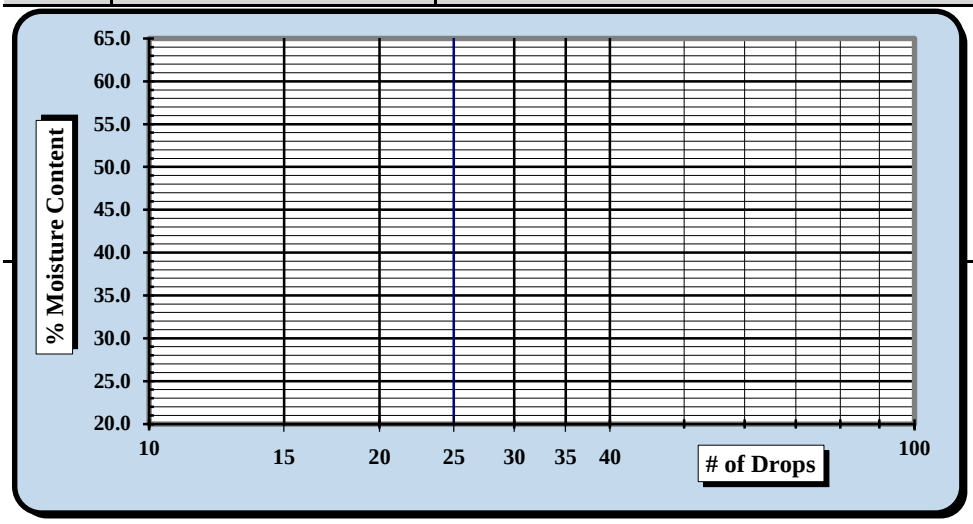
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	165	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway(EAR-2)	Source Loc.: Bulk-1	Depth(ft): 0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

Pan #			Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
		Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight										
B	Wet Soil Weight + A										
C	Dry Soil Weight + A										
D	Water Weight (B-C)										
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)										
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100										
N	# OF DROPS								*Moisture Contents determined by*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR								*AASHTO T 245*		
Ave.	*Average*										



One Point Liquid Limit

N	Factor	N	Factor
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation Dry Preparation Air Dried *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D698-2
Revision No. : 1
Revision Date: 07/25/17

MOISTURE - DENSITY REPORT

Quality Assurance

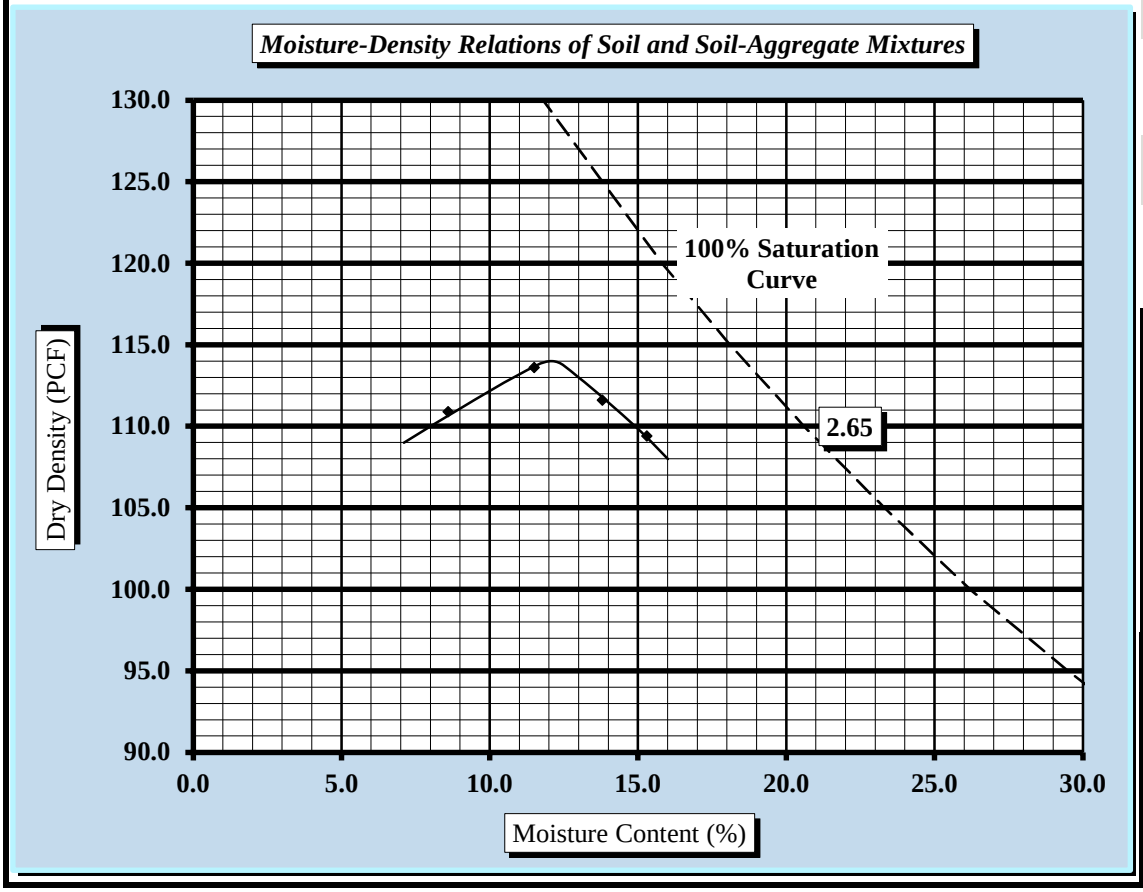
S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

S&ME Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s):	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		

Sample Id:	165(2023)	Type:	Site Material	Sample Date:	9/29/2023
Location:	Roadway(EAR-2)	Source Loc:	Bulk-1(Exc.)	Depth:	0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)				

Maximum Dry Density 114.0 PCF. Optimum Moisture Content 12.0%

ASTM D 698 - - Method A



Soil Properties	
Natural Moisture Content	15.8%
Assumed S.G. of Soil	2.650
Liquid Limit	NP
Plastic Limit	NP
Plastic Index	NP
% Passing	
3/4"	N/A
3/8"	N/A
#4	N/A
#10	N/A
#40	N/A
#60	N/A
#100	N/A
#200	13.9%
Oversize Fraction	
Bulk Gravity	
% Moisture	N/A
% Oversize	
MDD	
Opt. MC	

Moisture-Density Curve Displayed: Fine Fraction ☒ Corrected for Oversize Fraction (ASTM D 4718) ☐

Sieve Size used to separate the Oversize Fraction: #4 Sieve ☒ 3/8 inch Sieve ☐ 3/4 inch Sieve ☐

Mechanical Rammer ☐ Manual Rammer ☒ Moist Preparation ☐ Dry Preparation ☒

References / Comments / Deviations: **Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE**

ASTM D 2216: Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass

ASTM D 698: Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort

Jason Faucette		Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above.

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D1883-T193-3
Revision No. 2
Revision Date: 08/11/17

CBR (CALIFORNIA BEARING RATIO) OF LABORATORY COMPACTED SOIL

ASTM D 1883

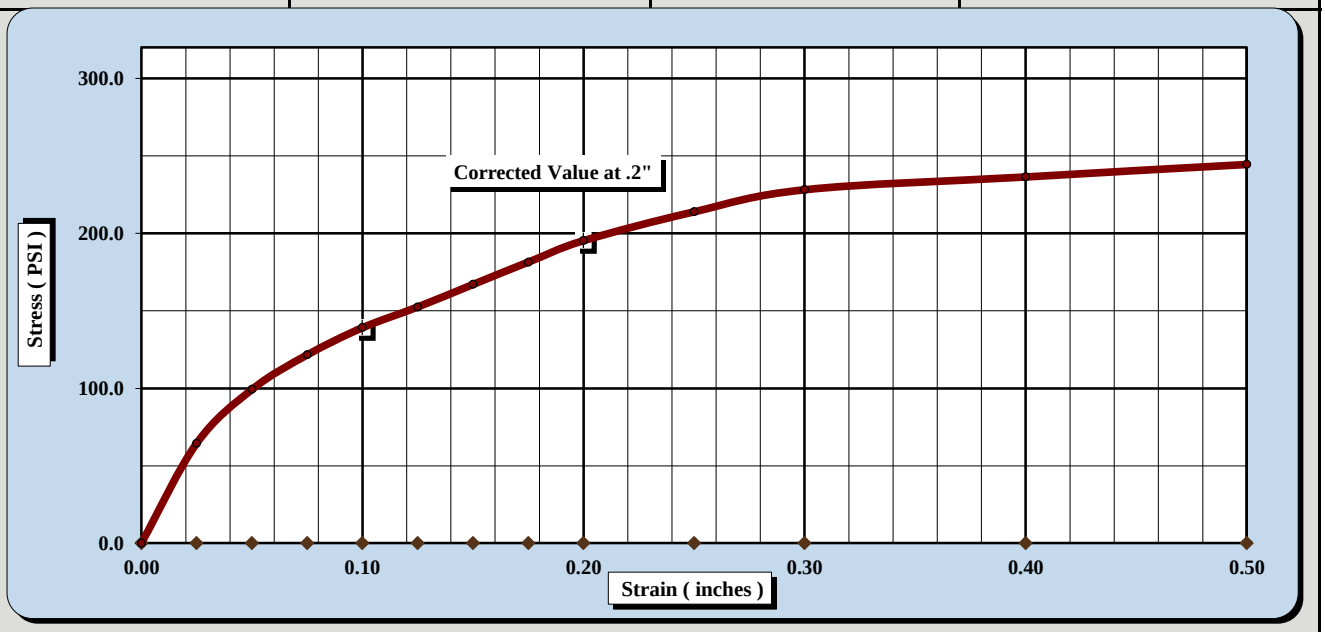
S&ME, Inc. - Myrtle Beach: 1330 Highway 501 Business, Conway, SC 29526

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/10/2023
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6/2023
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	165(2023)	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/2023
Location:	Roadway(EAR-2)	Source Loc: Bulk-1(Exc.)	Depth: 0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)		

ASTM D 698 *Method A* Maximum Dry Density: 114.0 PCF Optimum Moisture Content: 12.0%

Compaction Test performed on grading complying with CBR spec. % Retained on the 3/4" sieve: 1.0%

Uncorrected CBR Values		Corrected CBR Values	
CBR at 0.1 in. 13.9	CBR at 0.2 in. 13.0	CBR at 0.1 in. 13.9	CBR at 0.2 in. 13.0



CBR Sample Preparation:

The entire gradation was used and compacted in a 6" CBR mold in accordance with ASTM D1883, Section 6.1.1

Before Soaking		*After Soaking*	
Compactive Effort (Blows per Layer)	43		
Initial Dry Density (PCF)	111.8	Final Dry Density (PCF)	73.3
Moisture Content of the Compacted Specimen	12.4%	Moisture Content (top 1" after soaking)	12.8%
Percent Compaction	98.1%	Percent Swell	0.0%

Soak Time: 96 hrs. Surcharge Weight 20.0 Surcharge Wt. per sq. Ft. 101.8

Liquid Limit -- Plastic Index NP Apparent Relative Density --

Notes/Deviations/References: Liquid Limit: ASTM D 4318, Specific Gravity: ASTM D 854, Classification: ASTM D 2487

Ron Forest, P.E.	Ron Forest	Principal Engineer	10/10/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D4318-T89-90
Revision No. 1
Revision Date: 7/26/17

LIQUID LIMIT, PLASTIC LIMIT, & PLASTIC INDEX

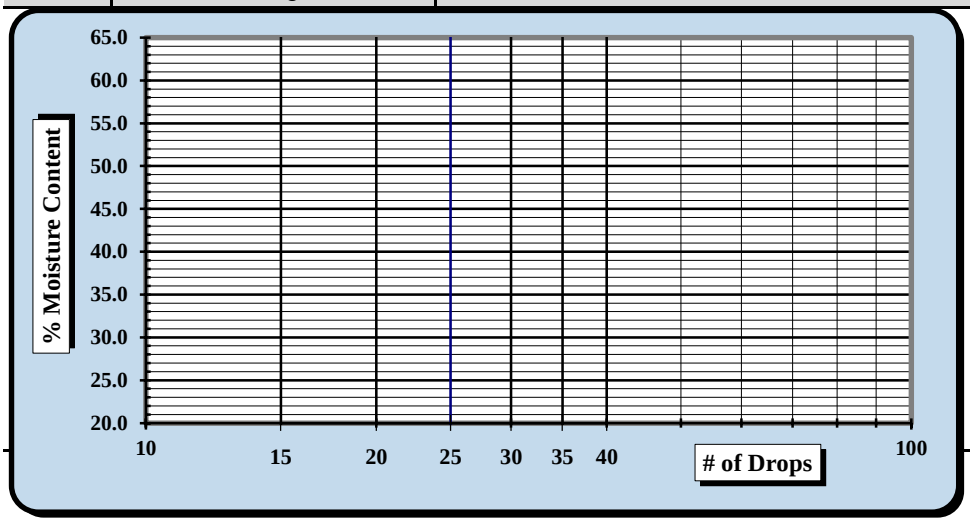
ASTM D 4318 ☐ AASHTO T 89 ☒ AASHTO T 90 ☒

S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		
Sample Id:	166	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/23
Location:	Roadway(AAR-1)	Source Loc.: Bulk-2	Depth(ft): 0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)		

Type and Specification	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*	*Type and Specification*	*S&ME ID #*	*Cal Date:*
Balance (0.01 g)	14862	7/1/2023	Grooving tool	14947(D)	7/12/2023
LL Apparatus	17515	7/12/2023	Grooving tool		
Oven	14993	7/24/2023	Grooving tool		

		Pan #		Liquid Limit						Plastic Limit		
			Tare #:	1	2	3				4	5	
A	Tare Weight											
B	Wet Soil Weight + A											
C	Dry Soil Weight + A											
D	Water Weight (B-C)											
E	Dry Soil Weight (C-A)											
F	% Moisture (D/E)*100											
N	# OF DROPS									*Moisture Contents determined by AASHTO T 245*		
LL	LL = **F** * FACTOR											
Ave.	*Average*											



One Point Liquid Limit

N	Factor	N	Factor
20	0.974	26	1.005
21	0.979	27	1.009
22	0.985	28	1.014
23	0.99	29	1.018
24	0.995	30	1.022
25	1.000		

NP, Non-Plastic ☒

Liquid Limit	
Plastic Limit	**NP**
Plastic Index	
Group Symbol	**SM**

Multipoint Method ☑
One-point Method ☐

Wet Preparation Dry Preparation Air Dried *Estimate the % Retained on the #40 Sieve:* N/A

Notes / Deviations / References: *ASTM D 4318: Liquid Limit, Plastic Limit, & Plastic Index of Soils*

Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE ***No LL or PL could be determined, therfore classified as NP***

Jason Faucette	Jason Faucette	Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D698-2
Revision No. : 1
Revision Date: 07/25/17

MOISTURE - DENSITY REPORT

Quality Assurance

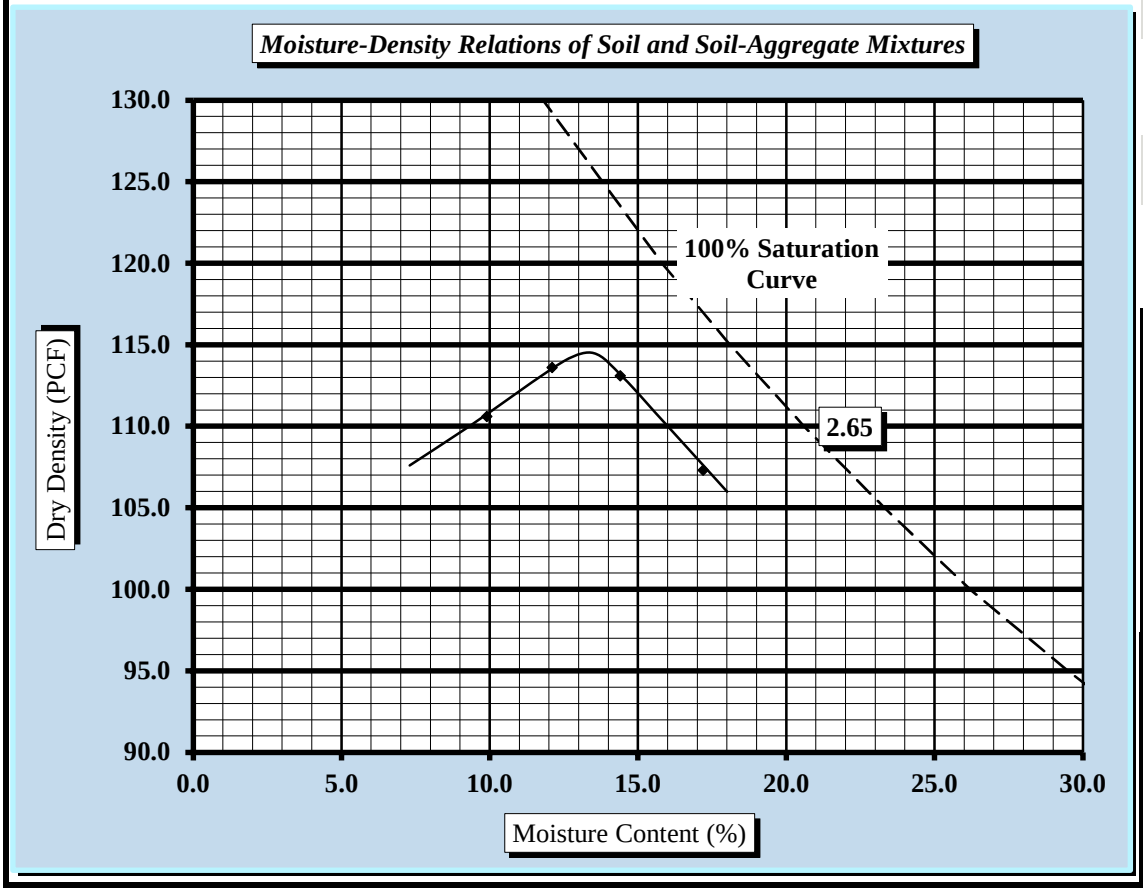
S&ME, Inc. - Wilmington: 3006 Hall Waters Drive, Suite 100, Wilmington, NC 28405

S&ME Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/3/23
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s):	10/1-10/3/23
Client Name:	RS&H		
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308		

Sample Id:	166(2023)	Type:	Site Material	Sample Date:	9/29/2023
Location:	Roadway(AAR-6)	Source Loc:	Bulk-2(Exc.)	Depth:	0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)				

Maximum Dry Density 114.5 PCF. Optimum Moisture Content 13.5%

ASTM D 698 - - Method A



Soil Properties	
Natural Moisture Content	12.1%
Assumed S.G. of Soil	2.650
Liquid Limit	NP
Plastic Limit	NP
Plastic Index	NP
% Passing	
3/4"	N/A
3/8"	N/A
#4	N/A
#10	N/A
#40	N/A
#60	N/A
#100	N/A
#200	21.3%
Oversize Fraction	
Bulk Gravity	
% Moisture	N/A
% Oversize	
MDD	
Opt. MC	

Moisture-Density Curve Displayed: Fine Fraction ☒ Corrected for Oversize Fraction (ASTM D 4718) ☐

Sieve Size used to separate the Oversize Fraction: #4 Sieve ☒ 3/8 inch Sieve ☐ 3/4 inch Sieve ☐

Mechanical Rammer ☐ Manual Rammer ☒ Moist Preparation ☐ Dry Preparation ☒

References / Comments / Deviations: **Tests Performed By: J.FAUCETTE**

ASTM D 2216: Laboratory Determination of Water (Moisture) Content of Soil and Rock by Mass

ASTM D 698: Laboratory Compaction Characteristics of Soil Using Standard Effort

Jason Faucette		Laboratory Supervisor	10/3/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

Results shown in this report, relate only to the sample noted above.

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full, without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

Form No. TR-D1883-T193-3
Revision No. 2
Revision Date: 08/11/17

CBR (CALIFORNIA BEARING RATIO) OF LABORATORY COMPACTED SOIL

ASTM D 1883

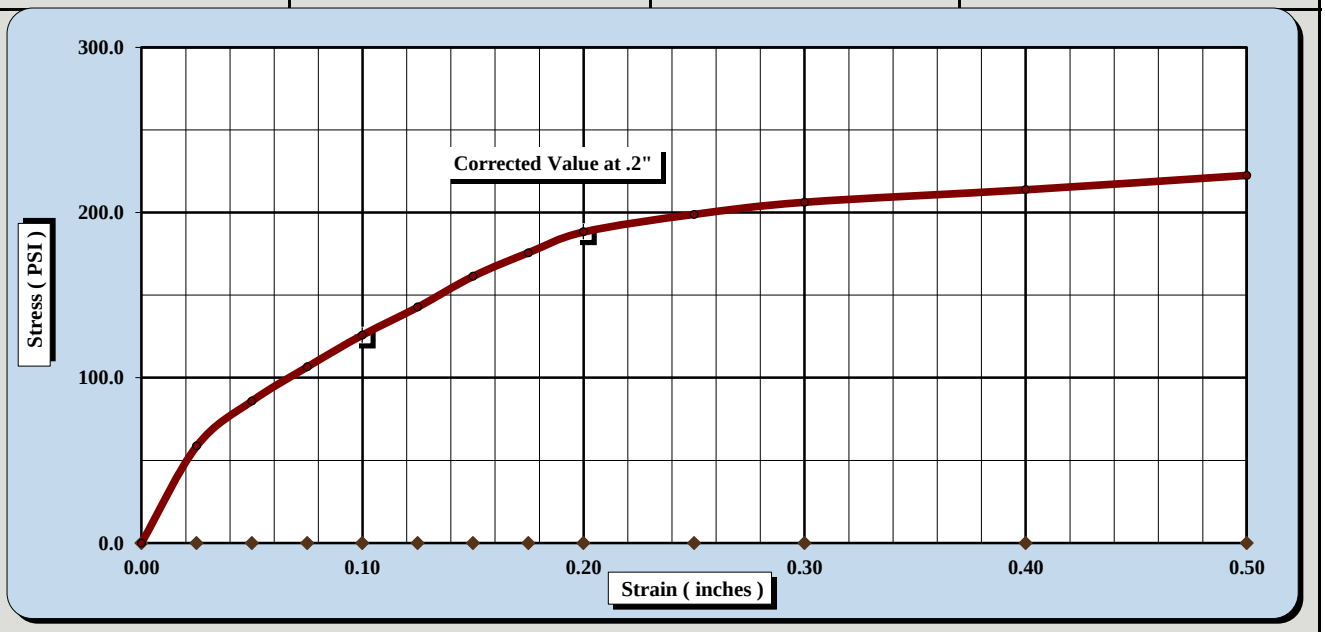
S&ME, Inc. - Myrtle Beach: 1330 Highway 501 Business, Conway, SC 29526

Project #:	23060109	Report Date:	10/10/2023
Project Name:	Proposed ILM Landside Improvements	Test Date(s)	10/6/2023
Client Name:	RS&H	Amended Report	
Client Address:	730 Peachtree St. NE, Suite 420, Atlanta, GA 30308	Original Report 2/31/07	
Sample Id:	166(2023)	Type: Site Material	Sample Date: 9/29/2023
Location:	Roadway(AAR-1)	Source Loc: Bulk-2(Exc.)	Depth: 0.5'-2.0'
Sample Description:	Dark Gray Silty SAND (SM)		

ASTM D 698 *Method A* Maximum Dry Density: 114.5 PCF Optimum Moisture Content: 13.5%

Compaction Test performed on grading complying with CBR spec. % Retained on the 3/4" sieve: 1.0%

Uncorrected CBR Values		Corrected CBR Values	
CBR at 0.1 in. 12.6	CBR at 0.2 in. 12.6	CBR at 0.1 in. 12.6	CBR at 0.2 in. 12.6



CBR Sample Preparation:

The entire gradation was used and compacted in a 6" CBR mold in accordance with ASTM D1883, Section 6.1.1

Before Soaking		*After Soaking*	
Compactive Effort (Blows per Layer)	43		
Initial Dry Density (PCF)	112.4	Final Dry Density (PCF)	112.6
Moisture Content of the Compacted Specimen	13.4%	Moisture Content (top 1" after soaking)	16.8%
Percent Compaction	98.2%	Percent Swell	-0.1%

Soak Time: 96 hrs. Surcharge Weight 20.0 Surcharge Wt. per sq. Ft. 102.0

Liquid Limit -- Plastic Index NP Apparent Relative Density --

Notes/Deviations/References: Liquid Limit: ASTM D 4318, Specific Gravity: ASTM D 854, Classification: ASTM D 2487

Ron Forest, P.E.	Ron Forest	Principal Engineer	10/10/2023
Technical Responsibility	*Signature*	*Position*	*Date*

This report shall not be reproduced, except in full without the written approval of S&ME, Inc.

APPENDIX B

Contract Provision Guidelines for Obligated Sponsors and Airport Improvement Program Projects

A1 ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS

ACCESS TO RECORDS AND REPORTS

The Contractor must maintain an acceptable cost accounting system. The Contractor agrees to provide the Owner, the Federal Aviation Administration and the Comptroller General of the United States or any of their duly authorized representatives access to any books, documents, papers and records of the Contractor which are directly pertinent to the specific contract for the purpose of making audit, examination, excerpts and transcriptions. The Contractor agrees to maintain all books, records and reports required under this contract for a period of not less than three years after final payment is made and all pending matters are closed.

A2 AFFIRMATIVE ACTION REQUIREMENT

NOTICE OF REQUIREMENT FOR AFFIRMATIVE ACTION TO ENSURE EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY

1. The Offeror's or Bidder's attention is called to the "Equal Opportunity Clause" and the "Standard Federal Equal Employment Opportunity Construction Contract Specifications" set forth herein.

2. The goals and timetables for minority and female participation, expressed in percentage terms for the Contractor's aggregate workforce in each trade on all construction work in the covered area, are as follows:

Timetables

Goals for minority participation for each trade:	**20.7%**
Goals for female participation in each trade:	6.9%

These goals are applicable to all of the Contractor's construction work (whether or not it is Federal or federally assisted) performed in the covered area. If the Contractor performs construction work in a geographical area located outside of the covered area, it shall apply the goals established for such geographical area where the work is actually performed. With regard to this second area, the Contractor also is subject to the goals for both its federally involved and nonfederally involved construction.

The Contractor's compliance with the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4 shall be based on its implementation of the Equal Opportunity Clause, specific affirmative action obligations required by the specifications set forth in 41 CFR 60-4.3(a) and its efforts to meet the goals. The hours of minority and female employment and training must be substantially uniform throughout the length of the contract, and in each trade, and the Contractor shall make a good faith effort to employ minorities and women evenly on each of its projects. The transfer of minority or female employees or trainees from Contractor to Contractor or from project to project for the sole purpose of meeting the Contractor's goals shall be a violation of the contract, the Executive Order and the regulations in 41 CFR Part 60-4. Compliance with the goals will be measured against the total work hours performed.

3. The Contractor shall provide written notification to the Director of the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP) within 10 working days of award of any construction subcontract in excess of $10,000 at any tier for construction work under the contract resulting from this solicitation. The notification shall list the name, address, and telephone number of the subcontractor; employer identification number of the subcontractor; estimated dollar amount of the subcontract; estimated starting and completion dates of the subcontract; and the geographical area in which the subcontract is to be performed.

4. As used in this notice and in the contract resulting from this solicitation, the "covered area" is **New Hanover County, North Carolina.**

A3 BREACH OF CONTRACT TERMS

BREACH OF CONTRACT TERMS

Any violation or breach of terms of this contract on the part of the *Contractor* or its subcontractors may result in the suspension or termination of this contract or such other action that may be necessary to enforce the rights of the parties of this agreement.

Owner will provide *Contractor* written notice that describes the nature of the breach and corrective actions the *Contractor* must undertake in order to avoid termination of the contract. Owner reserves the right to withhold payments to Contractor until such time the Contractor corrects the breach or the Owner elects to terminate the contract. The Owner's notice will identify a specific date by which the *Contractor* must correct the breach. Owner may proceed with termination of the contract if the *Contractor* fails to correct the breach by the deadline indicated in the Owner's notice.

The duties and obligations imposed by the Contract Documents and the rights and remedies available thereunder are in addition to, and not a limitation of, any duties, obligations, rights and remedies otherwise imposed or available by law.

A4 BUY AMERICAN PREFERENCE

FAA BUY AMERICAN PREFERENCE

The Contractor certifies that its bid/offer is in compliance with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related Made in America Laws,[1] U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies, which provide that Federal funds may not be obligated unless all iron, steel and manufactured goods used in AIP funded projects are produced in the United States, unless the Federal Aviation Administration has issued a waiver for the product; the product is listed as an Excepted Article, Material Or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation subpart 25.108; or is included in the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued list.

The bidder or offeror must complete and submit the certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference, BABA and Made in America laws included herein with their bid or offer. The Airport Sponsor/Owner will reject as nonresponsive any bid or offer that does not include a completed certification of compliance with FAA's Buy American Preference and BABA.

The bidder or offeror certifies that all constructions materials, defined to mean an article, material, or supply other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of: non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber; or drywall used in the project are manufactured in the U.S.

As a matter of bid responsiveness, the bidder or offeror must complete, sign, date, and submit this certification statement with its proposal. The bidder or offeror must indicate how it intends to comply with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related Made in America Laws, U.S. statutes, guidance, and FAA policies, by selecting one of the following certification statements. These statements are mutually exclusive. Bidder must select one or the other (i.e., not both) by inserting a checkmark (✓) or the letter "X".

☐ Bidder or offeror hereby certifies that it will comply with 49 USC § 50101, BABA and other related U.S. statutes, guidance, and policies of the FAA by:

a) Only installing iron, steel and manufactured products produced in the United States;

b) Only installing construction materials defined as: an article, material, or supply – other than an item of primarily iron or steel; a manufactured product; cement and cementitious materials; aggregates such as stone, sand, or gravel; or aggregate binding agents or additives that are or consist primarily of non-ferrous metals; plastic and polymer-based products (including polyvinylchloride, composite building materials, and polymers used

[1] Per Executive Order 14005 "Made in America Laws" means all statutes, regulations, rules, and Executive Orders relating to federal financial assistance awards or federal procurement, including those that refer to "Buy America" or "Buy American," that require, or provide a preference for, the purchase or acquisition of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States, including iron, steel, and manufactured products offered in the United States.

in fiber optic cables); glass (including optic glass); lumber or drywall that have been manufactured in the United States.

c) Installing manufactured products for which the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) has issued a waiver as indicated by inclusion on the current FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued listing; or
d) Installing products listed as an Excepted Article, Material or Supply in Federal Acquisition Regulation Subpart 25.108.

By selecting this certification statement, the bidder or offeror agrees:

a) To provide to the Airport Sponsor or the FAA evidence that documents the source and origin of the iron, steel, and/or manufactured product.
b) To faithfully comply with providing U.S. domestic products.
c) To refrain from seeking a waiver request after establishment of the contract, unless extenuating circumstances emerge that the FAA determines justified.
d) Certify that all construction materials used in the project are manufactured in the U.S.

☐ The bidder or offeror hereby certifies it cannot comply with the 100 percent Buy American Preferences of 49 USC § 50101(a) but may qualify for a Type 3 or Type 4 waiver under 49 USC § 50101(b). By selecting this certification statement, the apparent bidder or offeror with the apparent low bid agrees:

a) To the submit to the Airport Sponsor or FAA within 15 calendar days of being selected as the responsive bidder, a formal waiver request and required documentation that supports the type of waiver being requested.
b) That failure to submit the required documentation within the specified timeframe is cause for a non-responsive determination that may result in rejection of the proposal.
c) To faithfully comply with providing U.S. domestic products at or above the approved U.S. domestic content percentage as approved by the FAA.
d) To furnish U.S. domestic product for any waiver request that the FAA rejects.
e) To refrain from seeking a waiver request after establishment of the contract, unless extenuating circumstances emerge that the FAA determines justified.

Required Documentation

Type 2 Waiver (Nonavailability) - The iron, steel, manufactured goods or construction materials or manufactured goods are not available in sufficient quantity or quality in the United States. The required documentation for the Nonavailability waiver is

a) Completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire
b) Record of thorough market research, consideration where appropriate of qualifying alternate items, products, or materials including;
c) A description of the market research activities and methods used to identify domestically manufactured items capable of satisfying the requirement, including the timing of the research and conclusions reached on the availability of sources.

Type 3 Waiver – The cost of components and subcomponents produced in the United States is more than 60 percent of the cost of all components and subcomponents of the "facility/project." The required documentation for a Type 3 waiver is:

a) Completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire including;
b) Listing of all manufactured products that are not comprised of 100 percent U.S. domestic content (excludes products listed on the FAA Nationwide Buy American Waivers Issued listing and products excluded by Federal Acquisition Regulation Subpart 25.108; products of unknown origin must be considered as non-domestic products in their entirety).
c) Cost of non-domestic components and subcomponents, excluding labor costs associated with final assembly and installation at project location.
d) Percentage of non-domestic component and subcomponent cost as compared to total "facility" component and subcomponent costs, excluding labor costs associated with final assembly and installation at project location.

Type 4 Waiver (Unreasonable Costs) - Applying this provision for iron, steel, manufactured goods or construction materials would increase the cost of the overall project by more than 25 percent. The required documentation for this waiver is:

a) A completed Content Percentage Worksheet and Final Assembly Questionnaire from
b) At minimum two comparable equal bids and/or offers;
c) Receipt or record that demonstrates that supplier scouting called for in Executive Order 14005, indicates that no domestic source exists for the project and/or component;
d) Completed waiver applications for each comparable bid and/or offer.

False Statements: Per 49 USC § 47126, this certification concerns a matter within the jurisdiction of the Federal Aviation Administration and the making of a false, fictitious, or fraudulent certification may render the maker subject to prosecution under Title 18, United States Code.

Date	Signature
Company Name	Title

A5 CIVIL RIGHTS - GENERAL

GENERAL CIVIL RIGHTS PROVISIONS

In all its activities within the scope of its airport program, the Contractor agrees to comply with pertinent statutes, Executive Orders, and such rules as identified in Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities to ensure that no person shall, on the grounds of race, color, national origin (including limited English proficiency), creed, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), age, or disability be excluded from participating in any activity conducted with or benefiting from Federal assistance.

This provision is in addition to that required by Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964.

The above provision binds the Contractor and subcontractors from the bid solicitation period through the completion of the contract.

A6 CIVIL RIGHTS – TITLE VI ASSURANCE

Title VI Solicitation Notice:

The **New Hanover County Airport Authority**, in accordance with the provisions of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (78 Stat. 252, 42 USC §§ 2000d to 2000d-4) and the Regulations, hereby notifies all bidders or offerors that it will affirmatively ensure that for any contract entered into pursuant to this advertisement, [select businesses, or disadvantaged business enterprises or airport concession disadvantaged business enterprises] will be afforded full and fair opportunity to submit bids in response to this invitation and no businesses will be discriminated against on the grounds of race, color, national origin (including limited English proficiency), creed, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), age, or disability in consideration for an award.

Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "Contractor") agrees to comply with the following non-discrimination statutes and authorities; including but not limited to:

- Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964 (42 USC § 2000d *et seq*., 78 stat. 252) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin);
- 49 CFR part 21 (Non-discrimination in Federally-Assisted programs of the Department of Transportation—Effectuation of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964);
- The Uniform Relocation Assistance and Real Property Acquisition Policies Act of 1970, (42 USC § 4601) (prohibits unfair treatment of persons displaced or whose property has been acquired because of Federal or Federal-aid programs and projects);
- Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973 (29 USC § 794 *et seq*.), as amended (prohibits discrimination on the basis of disability); and 49 CFR part 27 (Nondiscrimination on the Basis of Disability in Programs or Activities Receiving Federal Financial Assistance);
- The Age Discrimination Act of 1975, as amended (42 USC § 6101 *et seq*.) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of age);
- Airport and Airway Improvement Act of 1982 (49 USC § 47123), as amended (prohibits discrimination based on race, creed, color, national origin, or sex);
- The Civil Rights Restoration Act of 1987 (PL 100-259) (broadened the scope, coverage and applicability of Title VI of the Civil Rights Act of 1964, the Age Discrimination Act of 1975 and Section 504 of the Rehabilitation Act of 1973, by expanding the definition of the terms "programs or activities" to include all of the programs or activities of the Federal-aid recipients, sub-recipients and contractors, whether such programs or activities are Federally funded or not);
- Titles II and III of the Americans with Disabilities Act of 1990 (42 USC § 12101, et seq) (prohibit discrimination on the basis of disability in the operation of public entities, public and private transportation systems, places of public accommodation, and certain testing entities) as implemented by U.S. Department of Transportation regulations at 49 CFR parts 37 and 38;
- The Federal Aviation Administration's Nondiscrimination statute (49 USC § 47123) (prohibits discrimination on the basis of race, color, national origin, and sex);
- Executive Order 12898, Federal Actions to Address Environmental Justice in Minority Populations and Low-Income Populations (ensures nondiscrimination against minority populations by discouraging programs, policies, and activities with disproportionately high and adverse human health or environmental effects on minority and low-income populations);

- Executive Order 13166, Improving Access to Services for Persons with Limited English Proficiency, and resulting agency guidance, national origin discrimination includes discrimination because of limited English proficiency (LEP). To ensure compliance with Title VI, you must take reasonable steps to ensure that LEP persons have meaningful access to your programs [70 Fed. Reg. 74087 (2005)];
- Title IX of the Education Amendments of 1972, as amended, which prohibits you from discriminating because of sex in education programs or activities (20 USC § 1681, et seq).

Compliance with Nondiscrimination Requirements:

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor, for itself, its assignees, and successors in interest (hereinafter referred to as the "Contractor"), agrees as follows:

1. **Compliance with Regulations:** The Contractor (hereinafter includes consultants) will comply with the Title VI List of Pertinent Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities, as they may be amended from time to time, which are herein incorporated by reference and made a part of this contract.
2. **Nondiscrimination:** The Contractor, with regard to the work performed by it during the contract, will not discriminate on the grounds of race, color, national origin (including limited English proficiency), creed, sex (including sexual orientation and gender identity), age, or disability in the selection and retention of subcontractors, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment. The Contractor will not participate directly or indirectly in the discrimination prohibited by the Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities, including employment practices when the contract covers any activity, project, or program set forth in Appendix B of 49 CFR part 21.
3. **Solicitations for Subcontracts, including Procurements of Materials and Equipment:** In all solicitations, either by competitive bidding or negotiation made by the Contractor for work to be performed under a subcontract, including procurements of materials, or leases of equipment, each potential subcontractor or supplier will be notified by the Contractor of the contractor's obligations under this contract and the Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities on the grounds of race, color, or national origin.
4. **Information and Reports:** The Contractor will provide all information and reports required by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto and will permit access to its books, records, accounts, other sources of information, and its facilities as may be determined by the Sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration to be pertinent to ascertain compliance with such Nondiscrimination Acts and Authorities and instructions. Where any information required of a contractor is in the exclusive possession of another who fails or refuses to furnish the information, the Contractor will so certify to the Sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration, as appropriate, and will set forth what efforts it has made to obtain the information.
5. **Sanctions for Noncompliance:** In the event of a Contractor's noncompliance with the non-discrimination provisions of this contract, the Sponsor will impose such contract sanctions as it or the Federal Aviation Administration may determine to be appropriate, including, but not limited to:
    a. Withholding payments to the Contractor under the contract until the Contractor complies; and/or
    b. Cancelling, terminating, or suspending a contract, in whole or in part.

6. **Incorporation of Provisions:** The Contractor will include the provisions of paragraphs one through six in every subcontract, including procurements of materials and leases of equipment, unless exempt by the Acts, the Regulations, and directives issued pursuant thereto. The Contractor will take action with respect to any subcontract or procurement as the Sponsor or the Federal Aviation Administration may direct as a means of enforcing such provisions including sanctions for noncompliance. Provided, that if the Contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with litigation by a subcontractor, or supplier because of such direction, the Contractor may request the Sponsor to enter into any litigation to protect the interests of the Sponsor. In addition, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into the litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

A7 CLEAN AIR AND WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

CLEAN AIR AND WATER POLLUTION CONTROL

Contractor agrees to comply with all applicable standards, orders, and regulations issued pursuant to the Clean Air Act (42 USC §§ 7401-7671q) and the Federal Water Pollution Control Act as amended (33 USC §§ 1251-1387). The Contractor agrees to report any violation to the Owner immediately upon discovery. The Owner assumes responsibility for notifying the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) and the Federal Aviation Administration.

Contractor must include this requirement in all subcontracts that exceed $150,000.

A8 CONTRACT WORKHOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT REQUIREMENTS

CONTRACT WORKHOURS AND SAFETY STANDARDS ACT REQUIREMENTS

1. Overtime Requirements.

No contractor or subcontractor contracting for any part of the contract work which may require or involve the employment of laborers or mechanics shall require or permit any such laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, in any workweek in which he or she is employed on such work to work in excess of forty hours in such workweek unless such laborer or mechanic receives compensation at a rate not less than one and one-half times the basic rate of pay for all hours worked in excess of forty hours in such workweek.

2. Violation; Liability for Unpaid Wages; Liquidated Damages.

In the event of any violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this clause, the Contractor and any subcontractor responsible therefor shall be liable for the unpaid wages. In addition, such contractor and subcontractor shall be liable to the United States (in the case of work done under contract for the District of Columbia or a territory, to such District or to such territory), for liquidated damages. Such liquidated damages shall be computed with respect to each individual laborer or mechanic, including watchmen and guards, employed in violation of the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this clause, in the sum of $29 for each calendar day on which such individual was required or permitted to work in excess of the standard workweek of forty hours without payment of the overtime wages required by the clause set forth in paragraph (1) of this clause.

3. Withholding for Unpaid Wages and Liquidated Damages.

The Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) or the Owner shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld, from any moneys payable on account of work performed by the contractor or subcontractor under any such contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to the Contract Work Hours and Safety Standards Act, which is held by the same prime contractor, such sums as may be determined to be necessary to satisfy any liabilities of such contractor or subcontractor for unpaid wages and liquidated damages as provided in the clause set forth in paragraph (2) of this clause.

4. Subcontractors.

The Contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) and also a clause requiring the subcontractor to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with the clauses set forth in paragraphs (1) through (4) of this clause.

A9 COPELAND "ANTI-KICKBACK" ACT

COPELAND "ANTI-KICKBACK" ACT

Contractor must comply with the requirements of the Copeland "Anti-Kickback" Act (18 USC 874 and 40 USC 3145), as supplemented by Department of Labor regulation 29 CFR part 3. Contractor and subcontractors are prohibited from inducing, by any means, any person employed on the project to give up any part of the compensation to which the employee is entitled. The Contractor and each Subcontractor must submit to the Owner, a weekly statement on the wages paid to each employee performing on covered work during the prior week. Owner must report any violations of the Act to the Federal Aviation Administration.

A10 DAVIS-BACON REQUIREMENTS

DAVIS-BACON REQUIREMENTS

1. Minimum Wages.

(i) All laborers and mechanics employed or working upon the site of the work will be paid unconditionally and not less often than once a week, and without subsequent deduction or rebate on any account (except such payroll deductions as are permitted by the Secretary of Labor under the Copeland Act (29 CFR Part 3)), the full amount of wages and bona fide fringe benefits (or cash equivalent thereof) due at time of payment computed at rates not less than those contained in the wage determination of the Secretary of Labor which is attached hereto and made a part hereof, regardless of any contractual relationship which may be alleged to exist between the Contractor and such laborers and mechanics.

Contributions made or costs reasonably anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits under section 1(b)(2) of the Davis-Bacon Act on behalf of laborers or mechanics are considered wages paid to such laborers or mechanics, subject to the provisions of paragraph (1)(iv) of this section; also, regular contributions made or costs incurred for more than a weekly period (but not less often than quarterly) under plans, funds, or programs which cover the particular weekly period, are deemed to be constructively made or incurred during such weekly period. Such laborers and mechanics shall be paid the appropriate wage rate and fringe benefits on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed, without regard to skill, except as provided in 29 CFR § 5.5(a)(4). Laborers or mechanics performing work in more than one classification may be compensated at the rate specified for each classification for the time actually worked therein: *Provided,* that the employer's payroll records accurately set forth the time spent in each classification in which work is performed. The wage determination (including any additional classification and wage rates conformed under (1)(ii) of this section) and the Davis-Bacon poster (WH-1321) shall be posted at all times by the Contractor and its subcontractors at the site of the work in a prominent and accessible place where it can easily be seen by the workers.

(ii)(A) The contracting officer shall require that any class of laborers or mechanics, including helpers, which is not listed in the wage determination and which is to be employed under the contract shall be classified in conformance with the wage determination. The contracting officer shall approve an additional classification and wage rate and fringe benefits therefore only when the following criteria have been met:

(1) The work to be performed by the classification requested is not performed by a classification in the wage determination;

(2) The classification is utilized in the area by the construction industry; and

(3) The proposed wage rate, including any bona fide fringe benefits, bears a reasonable relationship to the wage rates contained in the wage determination.

(B) If the Contractor and the laborers and mechanics to be employed in the classification (if known), or their representatives, and the contracting officer agree on the classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits where appropriate), a report of the action taken shall be sent by the contracting officer to the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division, U.S. Department of Labor,

Washington, DC 20210. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will approve, modify, or disapprove every additional classification action within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(C) In the event the Contractor, the laborers, or mechanics to be employed in the classification, or their representatives, and the contracting officer do not agree on the proposed classification and wage rate (including the amount designated for fringe benefits, where appropriate), the contracting officer shall refer the questions, including the views of all interested parties and the recommendation of the contracting officer, to the Administrator for determination. The Administrator, or an authorized representative, will issue a determination within 30 days of receipt and so advise the contracting officer or will notify the contracting officer within the 30-day period that additional time is necessary.

(D) The wage rate (including fringe benefits where appropriate) determined pursuant to subparagraphs (1)(ii) (B) or (C) of this paragraph, shall be paid to all workers performing work in the classification under this contract from the first day on which work is performed in the classification.

(iii) Whenever the minimum wage rate prescribed in the contract for a class of laborers or mechanics includes a fringe benefit which is not expressed as an hourly rate, the contractor shall either pay the benefit as stated in the wage determination or shall pay another bona fide fringe benefit or an hourly cash equivalent thereof.

(iv) If the Contractor does not make payments to a trustee or other third person, the Contractor may consider as part of the wages of any laborer or mechanic the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing bona fide fringe benefits under a plan or program, *Provided,* that the Secretary of Labor has found, upon the written request of the Contractor, that the applicable standards of the Davis-Bacon Act have been met. The Secretary of Labor may require the Contractor to set aside in a separate account assets for the meeting of obligations under the plan or program.

2. Withholding. The Federal Aviation Administration or the Sponsor shall upon its own action or upon written request of an authorized representative of the Department of Labor withhold or cause to be withheld from the Contractor under this contract or any other Federal contract with the same prime contractor, or any other federally-assisted contract subject to Davis-Bacon prevailing wage requirements, which is held by the same prime contractor, so much of the accrued payments or advances as may be considered necessary to pay laborers and mechanics, including apprentices, trainees, and helpers, employed by the Contractor or any subcontractor the full amount of wages required by the contract. In the event of failure to pay any laborer or mechanic, including any apprentice, trainee, or helper, employed or working on the site of the work, all or part of the wages required by the contract, the Federal Aviation Administration may, after written notice to the Contractor, Sponsor, Applicant, or Owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds until such violations have ceased.

3. Payrolls and Basic Records.

(i) Payrolls and basic records relating thereto shall be maintained by the Contractor during the course of the work and preserved for a period of three years thereafter for all laborers and mechanics working at the site of the work. Such records shall contain the name, address, and social security number of each such worker; his or her correct classification; hourly rates of wages paid (including rates of contributions or costs anticipated for bona fide fringe benefits or cash equivalents thereof of the types

described in 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act); daily and weekly number of hours worked; deductions made; and actual wages paid. Whenever the Secretary of Labor has found under 29 CFR 5.5(a)(1)(iv) that the wages of any laborer or mechanic include the amount of any costs reasonably anticipated in providing benefits under a plan or program described in section 1(b)(2)(B) of the Davis-Bacon Act, the Contractor shall maintain records that show that the commitment to provide such benefits is enforceable, that the plan or program is financially responsible, and that the plan or program has been communicated in writing to the laborers or mechanics affected, and records which show the costs anticipated or the actual costs incurred in providing such benefits. Contractors employing apprentices or trainees under approved programs shall maintain written evidence of the registration of apprenticeship programs and certification of trainee programs, the registration of the apprentices and trainees, and the ratios and wage rates prescribed in the applicable programs.

(ii)(A) The Contractor shall submit weekly for each week in which any contract work is performed a copy of all payrolls to the Federal Aviation Administration if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the Contractor will submit the payrolls to the applicant, Sponsor, or Owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the Federal Aviation Administration. The payrolls submitted shall set out accurately and completely all of the information required to be maintained under 29 CFR § 5.5(a)(3)(i), except that full social security numbers and home addresses shall not be included on weekly transmittals. Instead the payrolls shall only need to include an individually identifying number for each employee (*e.g.,* the last four digits of the employee's social security number). The required weekly payroll information may be submitted in any form desired. Optional Form WH–347 is available for this purpose from the Wage and Hour Division Web site at *https://www.dol.gov/agencies/whd/government-contracts/construction/payroll-certification* or its successor site. The prime contractor is responsible for the submission of copies of payrolls by all subcontractors. Contractors and subcontractors shall maintain the full social security number and current address of each covered worker and shall provide them upon request to the Federal Aviation Administration if the agency is a party to the contract, but if the agency is not such a party, the Contractor will submit them to the applicant, Sponsor, or Owner, as the case may be, for transmission to the Federal Aviation Administration, the Contractor, or the Wage and Hour Division of the Department of Labor for purposes of an investigation or audit of compliance with prevailing wage requirements. It is not a violation of this section for a prime contractor to require a subcontractor to provide addresses and social security numbers to the prime contractor for its own records, without weekly submission to the sponsoring government agency (or the applicant, Sponsor, or Owner).

(B) Each payroll submitted shall be accompanied by a "Statement of Compliance," signed by the Contractor or subcontractor or his or her agent who pays or supervises the payment of the persons employed under the contract and shall certify the following:

(1) That the payroll for the payroll period contains the information required to be provided under 29 CFR § 5.5(a)(3)(ii), the appropriate information is being maintained under 29 CFR § 5.5 (a)(3)(i), and that such information is correct and complete;

(2) That each laborer and mechanic (including each helper, apprentice, and trainee) employed on the contract during the payroll period has been paid the full weekly wages earned, without rebate, either directly or indirectly, and that no deductions have been made either directly or indirectly from the full wages earned, other than permissible deductions as set forth in Regulations, 29 CFR Part 3;

(3) That each laborer or mechanic has been paid not less than the applicable wage rates and fringe benefits or cash equivalents for the classification of work performed, as specified in the applicable wage determination incorporated into the contract.

(C) The weekly submission of a properly executed certification set forth on the reverse side of Optional Form WH-347 shall satisfy the requirement for submission of the "Statement of Compliance" required by paragraph (3)(ii)(B) of this section.

(D) The falsification of any of the above certifications may subject the Contractor or subcontractor to civil or criminal prosecution under Section 1001 of Title 18 and Section 231 of Title 31 of the United States Code.

(iii) The Contractor or subcontractor shall make the records required under paragraph (3)(i) of this section available for inspection, copying, or transcription by authorized representatives of the Sponsor, the Federal Aviation Administration, or the Department of Labor and shall permit such representatives to interview employees during working hours on the job. If the Contractor or subcontractor fails to submit the required records or to make them available, the Federal agency may, after written notice to the Contractor, Sponsor, applicant, or Owner, take such action as may be necessary to cause the suspension of any further payment, advance, or guarantee of funds. Furthermore, failure to submit the required records upon request or to make such records available may be grounds for debarment action pursuant to 29 CFR § 5.12.

4. Apprentices and Trainees.

(i) Apprentices. Apprentices will be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work they performed when they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a bona fide apprenticeship program registered with the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration, Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or with a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, or if a person is employed in his or her first 90 days of probationary employment as an apprentice in such an apprenticeship program, who is not individually registered in the program, but who has been certified by the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services or a State Apprenticeship Agency (where appropriate) to be eligible for probationary employment as an apprentice. The allowable ratio of apprentices to journeymen on the job site in any craft classification shall not be greater than the ratio permitted to the contractor as to the entire work force under the registered program. Any worker listed on a payroll at an apprentice wage rate, who is not registered or otherwise employed as stated above, shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any apprentice performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. Where a contractor is performing construction on a project in a locality other than that in which its program is registered, the ratios and wage rates (expressed in percentages of the journeyman's hourly rate) specified in the Contractor's or subcontractor's registered program shall be observed. Every apprentice must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the registered program for the apprentice's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeymen hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Apprentices shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the apprenticeship program. If the apprenticeship program does not specify fringe benefits,

apprentices must be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination for the applicable classification. If the Administrator determines that a different practice prevails for the applicable apprentice classification, fringes shall be paid in accordance with that determination. In the event the Office of Apprenticeship Training, Employer and Labor Services, or a State Apprenticeship Agency recognized by the Office, withdraws approval of an apprenticeship program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize apprentices at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(ii) Trainees. Except as provided in 29 CFR § 5.16, trainees will not be permitted to work at less than the predetermined rate for the work performed unless they are employed pursuant to and individually registered in a program which has received prior approval, evidenced by formal certification by the U.S. Department of Labor, Employment and Training Administration. The ratio of trainees to journeymen on the job site shall not be greater than permitted under the plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration. Every trainee must be paid at not less than the rate specified in the approved program for the trainee's level of progress, expressed as a percentage of the journeyman hourly rate specified in the applicable wage determination. Trainees shall be paid fringe benefits in accordance with the provisions of the trainee program. If the trainee program does not mention fringe benefits, trainees shall be paid the full amount of fringe benefits listed on the wage determination unless the Administrator of the Wage and Hour Division determines that there is an apprenticeship program associated with the corresponding journeyman wage rate on the wage determination that provides for less than full fringe benefits for apprentices. Any employee listed on the payroll at a trainee rate that is not registered and participating in a training plan approved by the Employment and Training Administration shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the classification of work actually performed. In addition, any trainee performing work on the job site in excess of the ratio permitted under the registered program shall be paid not less than the applicable wage rate on the wage determination for the work actually performed. In the event the Employment and Training Administration withdraws approval of a training program, the Contractor will no longer be permitted to utilize trainees at less than the applicable predetermined rate for the work performed until an acceptable program is approved.

(iii) Equal Employment Opportunity. The utilization of apprentices, trainees, and journeymen under this part shall be in conformity with the equal employment opportunity requirements of Executive Order 11246, as amended, and 29 CFR Part 30.

5. Compliance with Copeland Act Requirements.

The Contractor shall comply with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 3, which are incorporated by reference in this contract.

6. Subcontracts.

The Contractor or subcontractor shall insert in any subcontracts the clauses contained in 29 CFR §§ 5.5(a)(1) through (10) and such other clauses as the Federal Aviation Administration may by appropriate instructions require, and also a clause requiring the subcontractors to include these clauses in any lower tier subcontracts. The prime contractor shall be responsible for the compliance by any subcontractor or lower tier subcontractor with all the contract clauses in 29 CFR § 5.5.

7. Contract Termination: Debarment.

A breach of the contract clauses in paragraph 1 through 10 of this section may be grounds for termination of the contract, and for debarment as a contractor and a subcontractor as provided in 29 CFR § 5.12.

8. Compliance with Davis-Bacon and Related Act Requirements.

All rulings and interpretations of the Davis-Bacon and Related Acts contained in 29 CFR Parts 1, 3, and 5 are herein incorporated by reference in this contract.

9. Disputes Concerning Labor Standards.

Disputes arising out of the labor standards provisions of this contract shall not be subject to the general disputes clause of this contract. Such disputes shall be resolved in accordance with the procedures of the Department of Labor set forth in 29 CFR Parts 5, 6, and 7. Disputes within the meaning of this clause include disputes between the Contractor (or any of its subcontractors) and the contracting agency, the U.S. Department of Labor, or the employees or their representatives.

10. Certification of Eligibility.

(i) By entering into this contract, the Contractor certifies that neither it (nor he or she) nor any person or firm who has an interest in the Contractor's firm is a person or firm ineligible to be awarded Government contracts by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR § 5.12(a)(1).

(ii) No part of this contract shall be subcontracted to any person or firm ineligible for award of a Government contract by virtue of section 3(a) of the Davis-Bacon Act or 29 CFR § 5.12(a)(1).

(iii) The penalty for making false statements is prescribed in the U.S. Criminal Code, 18 USC § 1001.

A11 DEBARMENT AND SUSPENSION

CERTIFICATION OF OFFEROR/BIDDER REGARDING DEBARMENT

By submitting a bid/proposal under this solicitation, the bidder or offeror certifies that neither it nor its principals are presently debarred or suspended by any Federal department or agency from participation in this transaction.

CERTIFICATION OF LOWER TIER CONTRACTORS REGARDING DEBARMENT

The successful bidder, by administering each lower tier subcontract that exceeds $25,000 as a "covered transaction", must confirm each lower tier participant of a "covered transaction" under the project is not presently debarred or otherwise disqualified from participation in this federally-assisted project. The successful bidder will accomplish this by:

1. Checking the System for Award Management at website: http://www.sam.gov.
2. Collecting a certification statement similar to the Certification of Offeror /Bidder Regarding Debarment, above.
3. Inserting a clause or condition in the covered transaction with the lower tier contract.

If the Federal Aviation Administration later determines that a lower tier participant failed to disclose to a higher tier participant that it was excluded or disqualified at the time it entered the covered transaction, the FAA may pursue any available remedies, including suspension and debarment of the non-compliant participant.

A12 DISADVANTAGED BUSINESS ENTERPRISE

Bid Information Submitted as a matter of **responsiveness**:

The Owner's award of this contract is conditioned upon Bidder or Offeror satisfying the good faith effort requirements of 49 CFR § 26.53.

As a condition of responsiveness, the Bidder or Offeror must submit the following information with its proposal on the forms provided herein:

1) The names and addresses of Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) firms that will participate in the contract;
2) A description of the work that each DBE firm will perform;
3) The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm listed under (1);
4) Written statement from Bidder or Offeror that attests their commitment to use the DBE firm(s) listed under (1) to meet the Owner's project goal
5) Written confirmation from each listed DBE firm that it is participating in the contract in the kind and amount of work provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and
6) If Bidder or Offeror cannot meet the advertised project DBE goal, evidence of good faith efforts undertaken by the Bidder or Offeror as described in appendix A to 49 CFR part 26. The documentation of good faith efforts must include copies of each DBE and non-DBE subcontractor quote submitted to the bidder when a non-DBE subcontractor was selected over a DBE for work on the contract.

Bid Information submitted as a matter of **responsibility**:

The Owner's award of this contract is conditioned upon Bidder or Offeror satisfying the good faith effort requirements of 49 CFR § 26.53.

As a condition of responsibility, every Bidder or Offeror must submit the following information on the forms provided herein within five days after bid opening.

1) The names and addresses of Disadvantaged Business Enterprise (DBE) firms that will participate in the contract;
2) A description of the work that each DBE firm will perform;
3) The dollar amount of the participation of each DBE firm listed under (1);
4) Written statement from Bidder or Offeror that attests their commitment to use the DBE firm(s) listed under (1) to meet the Owner's project goal;
5) Written confirmation from each listed DBE firm that it is participating in the contract in the kind and amount of work provided in the prime contractor's commitment; and
6) If Bidder or Offeror cannot meet the advertised project DBE goal, evidence of good faith efforts undertaken by the Bidder or Offeror as described in appendix A to 49 CFR part 26. The documentation of good faith efforts must include copies of each DBE and non-DBE subcontractor quote submitted to the bidder when a non-DBE subcontractor was selected over a DBE for work on the contract.

The requirements of 49 CFR part 26 apply to this contract. It is the policy of the **New Hanover County Airport Authority** to practice nondiscrimination based on race, color, sex, or national origin in the award or performance of this contract. The Owner encourages participation by all firms qualifying under this solicitation regardless of business size or ownership.

Contract Assurance (49 CFR § 26.13; mandatory text provided) –

The Contractor, subrecipient or subcontractor shall not discriminate on the basis of race, color, national origin, or sex in the performance of this contract. The Contractor shall carry out applicable requirements of 49 CFR part 26 in the award and administration of DOT-assisted contracts. Failure by the Contractor to carry out these requirements is a material breach of this contract, which may result in the termination of this contract or such other remedy as the recipient deems appropriate, which may include, but is not limited to:

1) Withholding monthly progress payments;
2) Assessing sanctions;
3) Liquidated damages; and/or
4) Disqualifying the Contractor from future bidding as non-responsible.

Prompt Payment (49 CFR § 26.29; acceptable/sample text provided) –
The prime contractor agrees to pay each subcontractor under this prime contract for satisfactory performance of its contract no later than **30 days** from the receipt of each payment the prime contractor receives from Sponsor. The prime contractor agrees further to return retainage payments to each subcontractor within **30 days** after the subcontractor's work is satisfactorily completed. Any delay or postponement of payment from the above referenced time frame may occur only for good cause following written approval of the Sponsor. This clause applies to both DBE and non-DBE subcontractors.

Termination of DBE Subcontracts (49 CFR § 26.53(f); acceptable/sample text provided) –
The prime contractor must not terminate a DBE subcontractor listed in response to Disadvantaged Business Enterprise Program portion of the Solicitation (or an approved substitute DBE firm) without prior written consent of Sponsor. This includes, but is not limited to, instances in which the prime contractor seeks to perform work originally designated for a DBE subcontractor with its own forces or those of an affiliate, a non-DBE firm, or with another DBE firm.

The prime contractor shall utilize the specific DBEs listed to perform the work and supply the materials for which each is listed unless the contractor obtains written consent Sponsor. Unless Sponsor consent is provided, the prime contractor shall not be entitled to any payment for work or material unless it is performed or supplied by the listed DBE.

The Sponsor may provide such written consent only if Sponsor agrees, for reasons stated in the concurrence document, that the prime contractor has good cause to terminate the DBE firm. For purposes of this paragraph, good cause includes the circumstances listed in 49 CFR §26.53.

Before transmitting to Sponsor its request to terminate and/or substitute a DBE subcontractor, the prime contractor must give notice in writing to the DBE subcontractor, with a copy to Sponsor, of its intent to request to terminate and/or substitute, and the reason for the request.

The prime contractor must give the DBE five days to respond to the prime contractor's notice and advise the Sponsor and the contractor of the reasons, if any, why it objects to the proposed termination of its subcontract and why Sponsor should not approve the prime contractor's action. If required in a particular case as a matter of public necessity (e.g., safety), Sponsor may provide a response period shorter than five days.

In addition to post-award terminations, the provisions of this section apply to preaward deletions of or substitutions for DBE firms put forward by offerors in negotiated procurements.

A13 DISTRACTED DRIVING

TEXTING WHEN DRIVING

In accordance with Executive Order 13513, "Federal Leadership on Reducing Text Messaging While Driving", (10/1/2009) and DOT Order 3902.10, "Text Messaging While Driving", (12/30/2009), the Federal Aviation Administration encourages recipients of Federal grant funds to adopt and enforce safety policies that decrease crashes by distracted drivers, including policies to ban text messaging while driving when performing work related to a grant or subgrant.

In support of this initiative, the Owner encourages the Contractor to promote policies and initiatives for its employees and other work personnel that decrease crashes by distracted drivers, including policies that ban text messaging while driving motor vehicles while performing work activities associated with the project. The Contractor must include the substance of this clause in all sub-tier contracts exceeding $10,000 that involve driving a motor vehicle in performance of work activities associated with the project.

A14 PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SERVICES OR EQUIPMENT

PROHIBITION ON CERTAIN TELECOMMUNICATIONS AND VIDEO SURVEILLANCE SERVICES OR EQUIPMENT

Contractor and Subcontractor agree to comply with mandatory standards and policies relating to use and procurement of certain telecommunications and video surveillance services or equipment in compliance with the National Defense Authorization Act [Public Law 115-232 § 889(f)(1)].

A15 EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY (EEO)

EQUAL OPPORTUNITY CLAUSE

During the performance of this contract, the Contractor agrees as follows:

(1) The Contractor will not discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin. The Contractor will take affirmative action to ensure that applicants are employed, and that employees are treated during employment, without regard to their race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identify, or national origin. Such action shall include, but not be limited to, the following: employment, upgrading, demotion, or transfer; recruitment or recruitment advertising; layoff, or termination; rates of pay or other forms of compensation; and selection for training, including apprenticeship. The Contractor agrees to post in conspicuous places, available to employees and applicants for employment, notices to be provided setting forth the provisions of this nondiscrimination clause.

(2) The Contractor will, in all solicitations or advertisements for employees placed by or on behalf of the Contractor, state that all qualified applicants will receive consideration for employment without regard to race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin.

(3) The contractor will not discharge or in any other manner discriminate against any employee or applicant for employment because such employee or applicant has inquired about, discussed, or disclosed the compensation of the employee or applicant or another employee or applicant. This provision shall not apply to instances in which an employee who has access to the compensation information of other employees or applicants as a part of such employee's essential job functions discloses the compensation of such other employees or applicants to individuals who do not otherwise have access to such information, unless such disclosure is in response to a formal complaint or charge, in furtherance of an investigation, proceeding, hearing, or action, including an investigation conducted by the employer, or is consistent with the contractor's legal duty to furnish information.

(4) The Contractor will send to each labor union or representative of workers with which it has a collective bargaining agreement or other contract or understanding, a notice to be provided by the agency contracting officer, advising the labor union or workers' representative of the Contractor's commitments under this section 202 of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and shall post copies of the notice in conspicuous places available to employees and applicants for employment.

(5) The Contractor will comply with all provisions of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and of the rules, regulations, and relevant orders of the Secretary of Labor.

(6) The Contractor will furnish all information and reports required by Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and by the rules, regulations, and orders of the Secretary of Labor, or pursuant thereto, and will permit access to his books, records, and accounts by the contracting agency and the Secretary of Labor for purposes of investigation to ascertain compliance with such rules, regulations, and orders.

(7) In the event of the Contractor's noncompliance with the nondiscrimination clauses of this contract or with any such rules, regulations, or orders, this contract may be canceled, terminated, or suspended in whole or in part and the Contractor may be declared ineligible for further Government contracts in

accordance with procedures authorized in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, and such other sanctions may be imposed and remedies invoked as provided in Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, or by rule, regulation, or order of the Secretary of Labor, or as otherwise provided by law.

(8) The Contractor will include the provisions of paragraphs (1) through (8) in every subcontract or purchase order unless exempted by rules, regulations, or orders of the Secretary of Labor issued pursuant to section 204 of Executive Order 11246 of September 24, 1965, so that such provisions will be binding upon each subcontractor or vendor. The Contractor will take such action with respect to any subcontract or purchase order as may be directed by the Secretary of Labor as a means of enforcing such provisions, including sanctions for noncompliance*: Provided,* however, that in the event the contractor becomes involved in, or is threatened with, litigation with a subcontractor or vendor as a result of such direction, the Contractor may request the United States to enter into such litigation to protect the interests of the United States.

A15.1.1 EEO Specification

STANDARD FEDERAL EQUAL EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITY
CONSTRUCTION CONTRACT SPECIFICATIONS

1. As used in these specifications:

   a. "Covered area" means the geographical area described in the solicitation from which this contract resulted;

   b. "Director" means Director, Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs (OFCCP), U.S. Department of Labor, or any person to whom the Director delegates authority;

   c. "Employer identification number" means the Federal social security number used on the Employer's Quarterly Federal Tax Return, U.S. Treasury Department Form 941;

   d. "Minority" includes:

      (1) Black (all persons having origins in any of the Black African racial groups not of Hispanic origin);

      (2) Hispanic (all persons of Mexican, Puerto Rican, Cuban, Central or South American, or other Spanish culture or origin, regardless of race);

      (3) Asian and Pacific Islander (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of the Far East, Southeast Asia, the Indian Subcontinent, or the Pacific Islands); and

      (4) American Indian or Alaskan native (all persons having origins in any of the original peoples of North America and maintaining identifiable tribal affiliations through membership and participation or community identification).

2. Whenever the Contractor, or any subcontractor at any tier, subcontracts a portion of the work involving any construction trade, it shall physically include in each subcontract in excess of $10,000 the provisions of these specifications and the Notice which contains the applicable goals for minority and female participation and which is set forth in the solicitations from which this contract resulted.

3. If the Contractor is participating (pursuant to 41 CFR part 60-4.5) in a Hometown Plan approved by the U.S. Department of Labor in the covered area either individually or through an association, its affirmative action obligations on all work in the Plan area (including goals and timetables) shall be in accordance with that Plan for those trades which have unions participating in the Plan. Contractors must be able to demonstrate their participation in and compliance with the provisions of any such Hometown Plan. Each contractor or subcontractor participating in an approved plan is individually required to comply with its obligations under the EEO clause and to make a good faith effort to achieve each goal under the Plan in each trade in which it has employees. The overall good faith performance by other contractors or subcontractors toward a goal in an approved Plan does not excuse any covered contractor's or subcontractor's failure to take good faith efforts to achieve the Plan goals and timetables.

4. The Contractor shall implement the specific affirmative action standards provided in paragraphs 7a through 7p of these specifications. The goals set forth in the solicitation from which this contract resulted are expressed as percentages of the total hours of employment and training of minority and female utilization the Contractor should reasonably be able to achieve in each construction trade in which it has employees in the covered area. Covered construction contractors performing construction work in a geographical areas where they do not have a Federal or federally assisted construction contract shall apply the minority and female goals established for the geographical area where the work is being performed. Goals are published periodically in the Federal Register in notice form, and such notices may be obtained from any Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs office or from Federal procurement contracting officers. The Contractor is expected to make substantially uniform progress in meeting its goals in each craft during the period specified.

5. Neither the provisions of any collective bargaining agreement, nor the failure by a union with whom the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement, to refer either minorities or women shall excuse the Contractor's obligations under these specifications, Executive Order 11246, or the regulations promulgated pursuant thereto.

6. In order for the nonworking training hours of apprentices and trainees to be counted in meeting the goals, such apprentices and trainees must be employed by the Contractor during the training period, and the Contractor must have made a commitment to employ the apprentices and trainees at the completion of their training, subject to the availability of employment opportunities. Trainees must be trained pursuant to training programs approved by the U.S. Department of Labor.

7. The Contractor shall take specific affirmative actions to ensure equal employment opportunity. The evaluation of the Contractor's compliance with these specifications shall be based upon its effort to achieve maximum results from its actions. The Contractor shall document these efforts fully, and shall implement affirmative action steps at least as extensive as the following:

a. Ensure and maintain a working environment free of harassment, intimidation, and coercion at all sites, and in all facilities at which the Contractor's employees are assigned to work. The Contractor, where possible, will assign two or more women to each construction project. The Contractor shall specifically ensure that all foremen, superintendents, and other onsite supervisory personnel are aware of and carry out the Contractor's obligation to maintain such a working environment, with specific attention to minority or female individuals working at such sites or in such facilities.

b. Establish and maintain a current list of minority and female recruitment sources, provide written notification to minority and female recruitment sources and to community organizations when the Contractor or its unions have employment opportunities available, and maintain a record of the organizations' responses.

c. Maintain a current file of the names, addresses, and telephone numbers of each minority and female off-the-street applicant and minority or female referral from a union, a recruitment source, or community organization and of what action was taken with respect to each such individual. If such individual was sent to the union hiring hall for referral and was not referred back to the Contractor by the union or, if referred, not employed by the Contractor, this shall be documented in the file with the reason therefor, along with whatever additional actions the Contractor may have taken.

d. Provide immediate written notification to the Director when the union or unions with which the Contractor has a collective bargaining agreement has not referred to the Contractor a minority person or woman sent by the Contractor, or when the Contractor has other information that the union referral process has impeded the Contractor's efforts to meet its obligations.

e. Develop on-the-job training opportunities and/or participate in training programs for the area which expressly include minorities and women, including upgrading programs and apprenticeship and trainee programs relevant to the Contractor's employment needs, especially those programs funded or approved by the Department of Labor. The Contractor shall provide notice of these programs to the sources compiled under 7b above.

f. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy by providing notice of the policy to unions and training programs and requesting their cooperation in assisting the Contractor in meeting its EEO obligations; by including it in any policy manual and collective bargaining agreement; by publicizing it in the company newspaper, annual report, etc.; by specific review of the policy with all management personnel and with all minority and female employees at least once a year; and by posting the company EEO policy on bulletin boards accessible to all employees at each location where construction work is performed.

g. Review, at least annually, the company's EEO policy and affirmative action obligations under these specifications with all employees having any responsibility for hiring, assignment, layoff, termination, or other employment decisions including specific review of these items with onsite supervisory personnel such superintendents, general foremen, etc., prior to the initiation of construction work at any job site. A written record shall be made and maintained identifying the time and place of these meetings, persons attending, subject matter discussed, and disposition of the subject matter.

h. Disseminate the Contractor's EEO policy externally by including it in any advertising in the news media, specifically including minority and female news media, and providing written notification to and discussing the Contractor's EEO policy with other contractors and subcontractors with whom the Contractor does or anticipates doing business.

i. Direct its recruitment efforts, both oral and written, to minority, female, and community organizations, to schools with minority and female students and to minority and female recruitment and training organizations serving the Contractor's recruitment area and employment needs. Not later than one month prior to the date for the acceptance of applications for apprenticeship or other

training by any recruitment source, the Contractor shall send written notification to organizations such as the above, describing the openings, screening procedures, and tests to be used in the selection process.

j. Encourage present minority and female employees to recruit other minority persons and women and, where reasonable, provide after school, summer, and vacation employment to minority and female youth both on the site and in other areas of a contractor's work force.

k. Validate all tests and other selection requirements where there is an obligation to do so under 41 CFR part 60-3.

l. Conduct, at least annually, an inventory and evaluation at least of all minority and female personnel, for promotional opportunities and encourage these employees to seek or to prepare for, through appropriate training, etc., such opportunities.

m. Ensure that seniority practices, job classifications, work assignments, and other personnel practices do not have a discriminatory effect by continually monitoring all personnel and employment related activities to ensure that the EEO policy and the Contractor's obligations under these specifications are being carried out.

n. Ensure that all facilities and company activities are nonsegregated except that separate or single-user toilet and necessary changing facilities shall be provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

o. Document and maintain a record of all solicitations of offers for subcontracts from minority and female construction contractors and suppliers, including circulation of solicitations to minority and female contractor associations and other business associations.

p. Conduct a review, at least annually, of all supervisor's adherence to and performance under the Contractor's EEO policies and affirmative action obligations.

8. Contractors are encouraged to participate in voluntary associations, which assist in fulfilling one or more of their affirmative action obligations (7a through 7p). The efforts of a contractor association, joint contractor-union, contractor-community, or other similar group of which the Contractor is a member and participant may be asserted as fulfilling any one or more of its obligations under 7a through 7p of these specifications provided that the Contractor actively participates in the group, makes every effort to assure that the group has a positive impact on the employment of minorities and women in the industry, ensures that the concrete benefits of the program are reflected in the Contractor's minority and female workforce participation, makes a good faith effort to meet its individual goals and timetables, and can provide access to documentation which demonstrates the effectiveness of actions taken on behalf of the Contractor. The obligation to comply, however, is the Contractor's and failure of such a group to fulfill an obligation shall not be a defense for the Contractor's noncompliance.

9. A single goal for minorities and a separate single goal for women have been established. The Contractor, however, is required to provide equal employment opportunity and to take affirmative action for all minority groups, both male and female, and all women, both minority and non-minority. Consequently, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a particular group is employed in a substantially disparate manner (for example, even though the Contractor has achieved its goals for women generally, the Contractor may be in violation of the Executive Order if a specific minority group of women is underutilized).

10. The Contractor shall not use the goals and timetables or affirmative action standards to discriminate against any person because of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin.

11. The Contractor shall not enter into any subcontract with any person or firm debarred from Government contracts pursuant to Executive Order 11246.

12. The Contractor shall carry out such sanctions and penalties for violation of these specifications and of the Equal Opportunity Clause, including suspension, termination, and cancellation of existing subcontracts as may be imposed or ordered pursuant to Executive Order 11246, as amended, and its implementing regulations, by the Office of Federal Contract Compliance Programs. Any contractor who fails to carry out such sanctions and penalties shall be in violation of these specifications and Executive Order 11246, as amended.

13. The Contractor, in fulfilling its obligations under these specifications, shall implement specific affirmative action steps, at least as extensive as those standards prescribed in paragraph 7 of these specifications, so as to achieve maximum results from its efforts to ensure equal employment opportunity. If the Contractor fails to comply with the requirements of the Executive Order, the implementing regulations, or these specifications, the Director shall proceed in accordance with 41 CFR part 60-4.8.

14. The Contractor shall designate a responsible official to monitor all employment related activity to ensure that the company EEO policy is being carried out, to submit reports relating to the provisions hereof as may be required by the Government, and to keep records. Records shall at least include for each employee, the name, address, telephone numbers, construction trade, union affiliation if any, employee identification number when assigned, social security number, race, sex, status (e.g., mechanic, apprentice, trainee, helper, or laborer), dates of changes in status, hours worked per week in the indicated trade, rate of pay, and locations at which the work was performed. Records shall be maintained in an easily understandable and retrievable form; however, to the degree that existing records satisfy this requirement, contractors shall not be required to maintain separate records.

15. Nothing herein provided shall be construed as a limitation upon the application of other laws which establish different standards of compliance or upon the application of requirements for the hiring of local or other area residents (e.g. those under the Public Works Employment Act of 1977 and the Community Development Block Grant Program).

A16 FEDERAL FAIR LABOR STANDARDS ACT (FEDERAL MINIMUM WAGE)

All contracts and subcontracts that result from this solicitation incorporate by reference the provisions of 29 CFR part 201, et seq, the Federal Fair Labor Standards Act (FLSA), with the same force and effect as if given in full text. The FLSA sets minimum wage, overtime pay, recordkeeping, and child labor standards for full and part-time workers.

The Contractor has full responsibility to monitor compliance to the referenced statute or regulation. The Contractor must address any claims or disputes that arise from this requirement directly with the U.S. Department of Labor – Wage and Hour Division.

A17 LOBBYING AND INFLUENCING FEDERAL EMPLOYEES

CERTIFICATION REGARDING LOBBYING

The Bidder or Offeror certifies by signing and submitting this bid or proposal, to the best of his or her knowledge and belief, that:

(1) No Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid, by or on behalf of the Bidder or Offeror, to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of an agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with the awarding of any Federal contract, the making of any Federal grant, the making of any Federal loan, the entering into of any cooperative agreement, and the extension, continuation, renewal, amendment, or modification of any Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement.

(2) If any funds other than Federal appropriated funds have been paid or will be paid to any person for influencing or attempting to influence an officer or employee of any agency, a Member of Congress, an officer or employee of Congress, or an employee of a Member of Congress in connection with this Federal contract, grant, loan, or cooperative agreement, the undersigned shall complete and submit Standard Form-LLL, "Disclosure Form to Report Lobbying," in accordance with its instructions.

(3) The undersigned shall require that the language of this certification be included in the award documents for all sub-awards at all tiers (including subcontracts, subgrants, and contracts under grants, loans, and cooperative agreements) and that all sub-recipients shall certify and disclose accordingly.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when this transaction was made or entered into. Submission of this certification is a prerequisite for making or entering into this transaction imposed by section 1352, title 31, U.S. Code. Any person who fails to file the required certification shall be subject to a civil penalty of not less than $10,000 and not more than $100,000 for each such failure.

A18 PROHIBITION OF SEGREGATED FACILITIES

PROHIBITION OF SEGREGATED FACILITIES

(a) The Contractor agrees that it does not and will not maintain or provide for its employees any segregated facilities at any of its establishments, and that it does not and will not permit its employees to perform their services at any location under its control where segregated facilities are maintained. The Contractor agrees that a breach of this clause is a violation of the Equal Employment Opportunity clause in this contract.

(b) "Segregated facilities," as used in this clause, means any waiting rooms, work areas, rest rooms and wash rooms, restaurants and other eating areas, time clocks, locker rooms and other storage or dressing areas, parking lots, drinking fountains, recreation or entertainment areas, transportation, and housing facilities provided for employees that are segregated by explicit directive or are in fact segregated on the basis of race, color, religion, sex, sexual orientation, gender identity, or national origin because of written or oral policies or employee custom. The term does not include separate or single-user rest rooms or necessary dressing or sleeping areas provided to assure privacy between the sexes.

(c) The Contractor shall include this clause in every subcontract and purchase order that is subject to the Equal Employment Opportunity clause of this contract.

A19 OCCUPATIONAL SAFETY AND HEALTH ACT OF 1970

All contracts and subcontracts that result from this solicitation incorporate by reference the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910 with the same force and effect as if given in full text. The employer must provide a work environment that is free from recognized hazards that may cause death or serious physical harm to the employee. The employer retains full responsibility to monitor its compliance and their subcontractor's compliance with the applicable requirements of the Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1970 (29 CFR Part 1910). The employer must address any claims or disputes that pertain to a referenced requirement directly with the U.S. Department of Labor – Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

A20 PROCUREMENT OF RECOVERED MATERIALS

PROCUREMENT OF RECOVERED MATERIALS

Contractor and subcontractor agree to comply with Section 6002 of the Solid Waste Disposal Act, as amended by the Resource Conservation and Recovery Act, and the regulatory provisions of 40 CFR Part 247. In the performance of this contract and to the extent practicable, the Contractor and subcontractors are to use products containing the highest percentage of recovered materials for items designated by the Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) under 40 CFR Part 247 whenever:

1) The contract requires procurement of $10,000 or more of a designated item during the fiscal year; or
2) The contractor has procured $10,000 or more of a designated item using Federal funding during the previous fiscal year.

The list of EPA-designated items is available at www.epa.gov/smm/comprehensive-procurement-guidelines-construction-products.

Section 6002(c) establishes exceptions to the preference for recovery of EPA-designated products if the contractor can demonstrate the item is:

a) Not reasonably available within a timeframe providing for compliance with the contract performance schedule;
b) Fails to meet reasonable contract performance requirements; or
c) Is only available at an unreasonable price.

A21 RIGHT TO INVENTIONS

Not Applicable.

A22 SEISMIC SAFETY

SEISMIC SAFETY

The Contractor agrees to ensure that all work performed under this contract, including work performed by subcontractors, conforms to a building code standard that provides a level of seismic safety substantially equivalent to standards established by the National Earthquake Hazards Reduction Program (NEHRP). Local building codes that model their code after the current version of the International Building Code (IBC) meet the NEHRP equivalency level for seismic safety.

A23 TAX DELINQUENCY AND FELONY CONVICTIONS

CERTIFICATION OF OFFEROR/BIDDER REGARDING TAX DELINQUENCY AND FELONY CONVICTIONS

The applicant must complete the following two certification statements. The applicant must indicate its current status as it relates to tax delinquency and felony conviction by inserting a checkmark (✓) in the space following the applicable response. The applicant agrees that, if awarded a contract resulting from this solicitation, it will incorporate this provision for certification in all lower tier subcontracts.

Certifications

1) The applicant represents that it is ( ) is not ( ) a corporation that has any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability.

2) The applicant represents that it is ( ) is not ( ) a corporation that was convicted of a criminal violation under any Federal law within the preceding 24 months.

Note

If an applicant responds in the affirmative to either of the above representations, the applicant is ineligible to receive an award unless the Sponsor has received notification from the agency suspension and debarment official (SDO) that the SDO has considered suspension or debarment and determined that further action is not required to protect the Government's interests. The applicant therefore must provide information to the owner about its tax liability or conviction to the Owner, who will then notify the FAA Airports District Office, which will then notify the agency's SDO to facilitate completion of the required considerations before award decisions are made.

Term Definitions

> **Felony conviction:** Felony conviction means a conviction within the preceding twenty four (24) months of a felony criminal violation under any Federal law and includes conviction of an offense defined in a section of the U.S. Code that specifically classifies the offense as a felony and conviction of an offense that is classified as a felony under 18 USC § 3559.
>
> **Tax Delinquency**: A tax delinquency is any unpaid Federal tax liability that has been assessed, for which all judicial and administrative remedies have been exhausted, or have lapsed, and that is not being paid in a timely manner pursuant to an agreement with the authority responsible for collecting the tax liability.

A24 TERMINATION OF CONTRACT

TERMINATION FOR CONVENIENCE (CONSTRUCTION & EQUIPMENT CONTRACTS)

The Owner may terminate this contract in whole or in part at any time by providing written notice to the Contractor. Such action may be without cause and without prejudice to any other right or remedy of Owner. Upon receipt of a written notice of termination, except as explicitly directed by the Owner, the Contractor shall immediately proceed with the following obligations regardless of any delay in determining or adjusting amounts due under this clause:

1. Contractor must immediately discontinue work as specified in the written notice.
2. Terminate all subcontracts to the extent they relate to the work terminated under the notice.
3. Discontinue orders for materials and services except as directed by the written notice.
4. Deliver to the Owner all fabricated and partially fabricated parts, completed and partially completed work, supplies, equipment and materials acquired prior to termination of the work, and as directed in the written notice.
5. Complete performance of the work not terminated by the notice.
6. Take action as directed by the Owner to protect and preserve property and work related to this contract that Owner will take possession.

Owner agrees to pay Contractor for:

1. Completed and acceptable work executed in accordance with the contract documents prior to the effective date of termination;
2. Documented expenses sustained prior to the effective date of termination in performing work and furnishing labor, materials, or equipment as required by the contract documents in connection with uncompleted work;
3. Reasonable and substantiated claims, costs, and damages incurred in settlement of terminated contracts with Subcontractors and Suppliers; and
4. Reasonable and substantiated expenses to the Contractor directly attributable to Owner's termination action.

Owner will not pay Contractor for loss of anticipated profits or revenue or other economic loss arising out of or resulting from the Owner's termination action.

The rights and remedies this clause provides are in addition to any other rights and remedies provided by law or under this contract.

TERMINATION FOR CAUSE (CONSTRUCTION)

Section 80-09 of FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-10 establishes standard language for conditions, rights, and remedies associated with Owner termination of this contract for cause due to default of the Contractor.

A25 TRADE RESTRICTION CERTIFICATION

TRADE RESTRICTION CERTIFICATION

By submission of an offer, the Offeror certifies that with respect to this solicitation and any resultant contract, the Offeror –

1) is not owned or controlled by one or more citizens of a foreign country included in the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by the Office of the United States Trade Representative (USTR);

2) has not knowingly entered into any contract or subcontract for this project with a person that is a citizen or national of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by the USTR; and

3) has not entered into any subcontract for any product to be used on the Federal project that is produced in a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR.

This certification concerns a matter within the jurisdiction of an agency of the United States of America and the making of a false, fictitious, or fraudulent certification may render the maker subject to prosecution under Title 18 USC § 1001.

The Offeror/Contractor must provide immediate written notice to the Owner if the Offeror/Contractor learns that its certification or that of a subcontractor was erroneous when submitted or has become erroneous by reason of changed circumstances. The Contractor must require subcontractors provide immediate written notice to the Contractor if at any time it learns that its certification was erroneous by reason of changed circumstances.

Unless the restrictions of this clause are waived by the Secretary of Transportation in accordance with 49 CFR § 30.17, no contract shall be awarded to an Offeror or subcontractor:

1) who is owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms published by the USTR; or
2) whose subcontractors are owned or controlled by one or more citizens or nationals of a foreign country on such USTR list; or
3) who incorporates in the public works project any product of a foreign country on such USTR list.

Nothing contained in the foregoing shall be construed to require establishment of a system of records in order to render, in good faith, the certification required by this provision. The knowledge and information of a contractor is not required to exceed that which is normally possessed by a prudent person in the ordinary course of business dealings.

The Offeror agrees that, if awarded a contract resulting from this solicitation, it will incorporate this provision for certification without modification in all lower tier subcontracts. The Contractor may rely on the certification of a prospective subcontractor that it is not a firm from a foreign country included on the list of countries that discriminate against U.S. firms as published by USTR, unless the Offeror has knowledge that the certification is erroneous.

This certification is a material representation of fact upon which reliance was placed when making an award. If it is later determined that the Contractor or subcontractor knowingly rendered an erroneous

certification, the Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) may direct through the Owner cancellation of the contract or subcontract for default at no cost to the Owner or the FAA.

A26 VETERAN'S PREFERENCE

VETERAN'S PREFERENCE

In the employment of labor (excluding executive, administrative, and supervisory positions), the Contractor and all sub-tier contractors must give preference to covered veterans as defined within Title 49 United States Code Section 47112. Covered veterans include Vietnam-era veterans, Persian Gulf veterans, Afghanistan-Iraq war veterans, disabled veterans, and small business concerns (as defined by 15 USC § 632) owned and controlled by disabled veterans. This preference only applies when there are covered veterans readily available and qualified to perform the work to which the employment relates.

A27 DOMESTIC PREFERENCES FOR PROCUREMENTS

CERTIFICATION REGARDING DOMESTIC PREFERENCES FOR PROCUREMENTS

The Bidder or Offeror certifies by signing and submitting this bid or proposal that, to the greatest extent practicable, the Bidder or Offeror has provided a preference for the purchase, acquisition, or use of goods, products, or materials produced in the United States (including, but not limited to, iron, aluminum, steel, cement, and other manufactured products) in compliance with 2 CFR § 200.322.

APPENDIX E

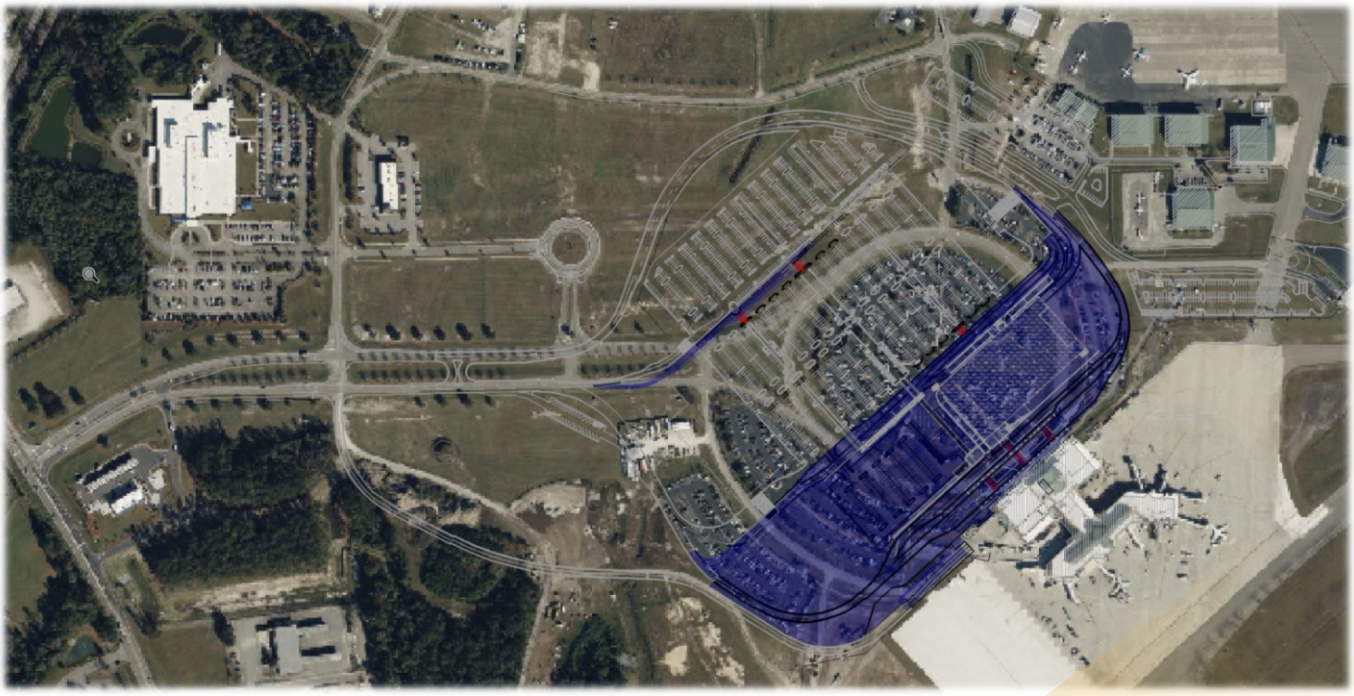
Construction Safety and Phasing Plan

February 2025

WILMINGTON INTERNATIONAL AIRPORT

AIRPORT BOULEVARD – PARKING IMPROVEMENTS
BID PACKAGE 3 – PHASE 2

CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN (CSPP)



AIRPORT BOULEVARD – PARKING IMPROVEMENTS
BID PACKAGE 3 – PHASE 2

CONSTRUCTION SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN (CSPP)

Volume No. 1
February 2025
Wilmington/New Hanover County, North Carolina
RS&H No.: 2003-0070-006

Prepared by RS&H, Inc. at the direction of
the New Hanover County Airport Authority

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Section 1 Purpose 1
Section 2 Scope of Work 2
Section 3 Plan Requirements 4

3.1 Project Coordination 4
3.2 Phasing 6
3.3 Areas and Operations Affected by Construction 11
3.4 NAVAID Protection 12
3.5 Contractor Access 12
3.6 Wildlife Management 15
3.7 Foreign Object Debris (FOD) Management 15
3.8 Hazardous Materials (HAZMAT) Management 16
3.9 Notification of Construction Activities 16
3.10 Inspection Requirements 17
3.11 Underground Utilities 18
3.12 Penalties 18
3.13 Special Conditions 18
3.14 Runway and Taxiway Visual Aids 18
3.15 Marking and Signs for Access Routes 19
3.16 Hazard Marking and Lighting 19
3.17 Protection of Runway and Taxiway Safety Areas 19
3.18 Other Limitations on Construction 21

Appendix A Project Plans ..... A
Appendix B Safety and Phasing Plan Checklist ..... B
Appendix C Construction Daily Safety Inspection Checklist C

SECTION 1

PURPOSE

Aviation safety is the primary consideration at airports, especially during construction. The airport operator's Construction Safety and Phasing Plan (CSPP) and the Contractor's Safety Plan Compliance Document (SPCD) are the primary tools to ensure safety compliance when coordinating construction activities with airport operations. These documents identify all aspects of the construction project that pose a potential safety hazard to airport operations and outline respective mitigation procedures for each hazard.

The CSPP sets forth benchmarks and requirements for the project to help ensure the highest levels of safety, security, and efficiency at the airport during construction. Guideline requirements for the CSPP are developed from FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-2G *Operational Safety on Airports during Construction*.

The CSPP is a standalone document, written to correspond with the safety and security requirements set forth in AC 150/5370-2G, the airport safety and security requirements, and local codes and requirements. The CSPP is to be used by all personnel involved in the project. The CSPP covers the actions of not only the construction personnel and equipment, but also the actions of inspection personnel, airport staff, aircraft, and aeronautical users. This document is developed to maximize the performance and safety of construction activity and minimize interruptions to airport operations.

The Contractor shall be required to submit a SPCD to the Airport describing how the Contractor will comply with the requirements set forth in this CSPP. The SPCD shall be drafted as required in AC 150/5370-2G. The SPCD must be submitted to the Airport for approval prior to issuance of the Notice to Proceed. The SPCD must also include a certification statement by the Contractor stating that it understands the operational safety requirements detailed in this CSPP and SPCD. The contractor's certification statement will also assert that there will be no deviation from the approved construction practices contained within either of these documents.

In the event the Contractor's activities are found in non-compliance with the provisions of the CSPP or the SPCD, the Airport will direct the Contractor, in writing, to immediately cease those operations in violation. In addition, a safety meeting will be conducted for the purpose of reviewing those provisions in the CSPP and/or SPCD which were violated. The Contractor will not be allowed to resume any construction operations until conclusion of the safety meeting and all corrective actions required by the Contractor have been implemented.

This CSPP is to serve as a companion document to the project plans and specifications for the Bid Package 3 – Phase 2 Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements project at the Wilmington International Airport (ILM) and this document has been written in compliance with the FAA AC 150/5370-2G.

SECTION 2

SCOPE OF WORK

The Bid Package 3 – Phase 2 Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements project includes the following landside work elements:

- Construction of the terminal curbfront and commercial roadways for passenger pick-up/drop-off,
- Parking garage construction for rental cars and passenger parking,
- Construction of pedestrian walkways to/from the parking lots/garage and the terminal,
- Shuttle pick-up/drop-off roadway and plaza for pedestrians including canopies to protect passengers from the weather,
- Surface lot parking (premium) for passengers, and
- Terminal atrium improvements to accommodate the roadways, pedestrian connector/tunnel, passenger walkways/canopies and other elements.

This project is the third phase of the Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements program that will facilitate the future reconfiguration of the airport entrance/exit roadway system, improve terminal curbfront passenger access, increase parking capacity, and other improvements to accommodate enplanement demands.

Additional work aspects include:

- Removal and demolition of existing pavements, utilities, and other items.
- Grading.
- Pavement (bituminous and concrete).
- Pavement marking.
- Drainage improvements include new storm sewer systems, including structures and other appurtenances, that will connect to the existing drainage system.
- Electrical improvements include new roadway and parking light poles, parking equipment, and other appurtenances.
- Wayfinding and roadway signage.
- Utility adjustments to existing systems and proposed split duct for protection and future utility use.
- Landscaping improvements.

Figure 1 shows the project related areas.

As part of design, the necessary construction locations, activities, and associated costs have been identified and their impact on airport operations has been assessed.

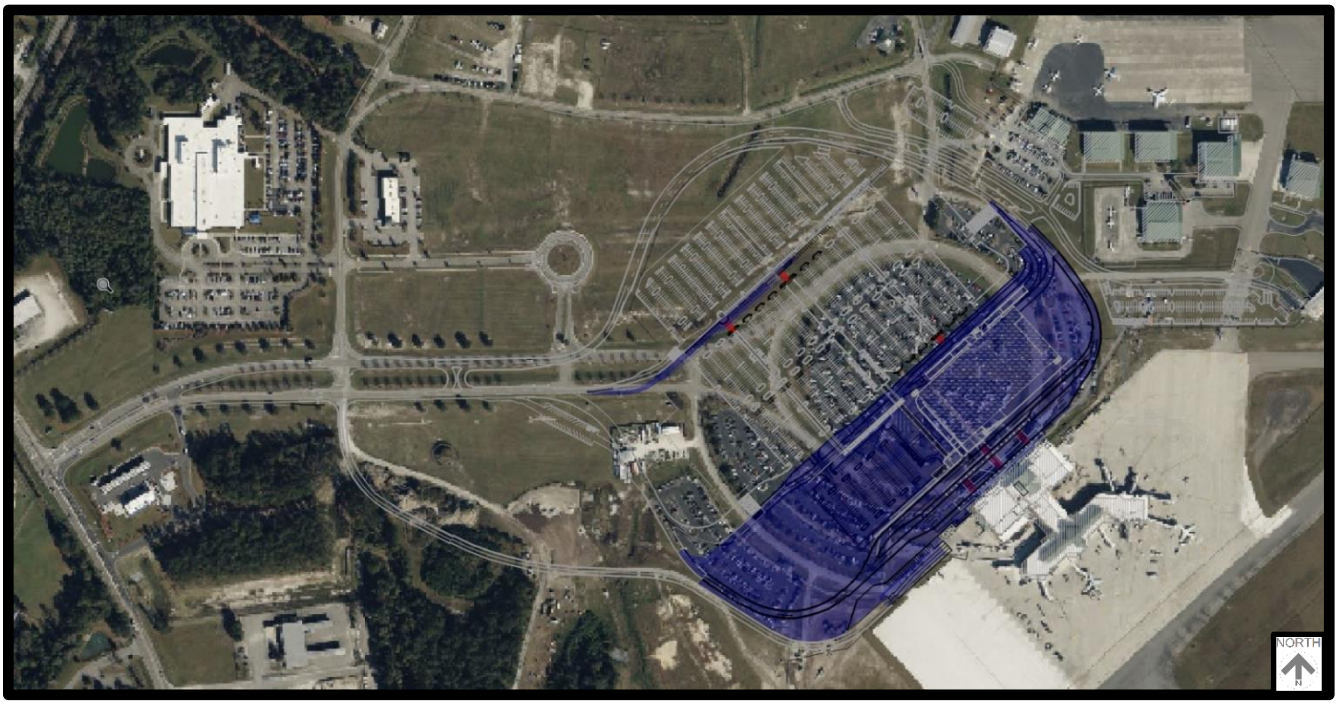


Figure 1 – Bid Package 3 – Phase 2, Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements

SECTION 3

PLAN REQUIREMENTS

3.1 PROJECT COORDINATION

Airport or tenants conducting construction on their properties will use pre-design, pre-bid, and pre-construction conferences to introduce the subject of airport operational safety during construction. In addition, construction progress meetings, scope of schedule changes, and meetings with the FAA Air Traffic Organization (ATO) will be coordinated as required through the performance of the contract.

Project Contacts

Below is a list of parties involved during design and construction of the project.

TABLE 1 – PROJECT CONTACTS

Organization	Role	Point of Contact	Contact Information
ILM	Sponsor	Granseur Dick	910-341-4333
RS&H	Consultant	Dale Stubbs Andy Samberg	678-528-7240 904-256-2141
Monteith Construction	Construction Manager at Risk (CMR)	Mike Travaglia	910-409-7948

Pre-bid Meeting

The Construction Manager at Risk (CMR) will hold project related pre-bid meetings for various project related trades that are prequalified on the project. The meetings provided a project overview, proposal requirements, project related safety and phasing requirements, and other items.

Pre-construction Meeting

A pre-construction conference is to be held to discuss project related details such as safety, security, and contacts.

Contractor Progress Meetings

Weekly construction meetings shall be held to discuss work progress and to address current or potential security and safety concerns. These meeting durations may be adjusted, as necessary, for specific work items that need coordination more often than weekly. Operational safety and security shall be a standing agenda item for discussion during these weekly progress meetings.

Should there be a need for airfield related construction work, operational safety and security related to open/closed pavement areas, issuing Notice to Air Missions (NOTAMs), and other items will be addressed during the weekly progress meetings.

TABLE 2 – CONSTRUCTION, EMERGENCY AND OTHER CONTACTS

Organization	Role	Point of Contact	Contact Information
CONSTRUCTION			
ILM	Sponsor	Granseur Dick	910-341-4333
RS&H	Consultant	Dale Stubbs Andy Samberg	678-528-7240 904-256-2141
Monteith Construction Corporation	Construction Manager at Risk (CMR)	Mike Travaglia	910-409-7948
Civil Contractor	TBD	TBD	TBD
Electrical Contractor	TBD	TBD	TBD
EMERGENCY			
Fire Department	Fire Fighting	911	911
New Hanover County	Sheriff Deputies	911	911
OTHER			
North Carolina 811	Utility Locates	N/A	811
FAA	FAA Facilities – Utilities	TBD	TBD
Piedmont Natural Gas	Utility – Gas	TBD	TBD
Cape Fear Public Utilities Authority	Utility – Water and Sewer	TBD	TBD
Duke Energy	Utility – Electrical	Donald Pridgen	910-617-2733
Time Warner Cable	Utility – Service Lines	TBD	TBD
CenturyLink	Utility – Copper and Fiber Optic Service Lines	TBD	TBD
Non-Emergency 24/7 Contact		ILM Dispatch	910-341-4336

Project Scope and/or Schedule Changes

Changes in the scope and/or duration of the project may necessitate revisions to the CSPP. The FAA Airports Regional or District office shall be promptly notified of any proposed changes to this CSPP. Changes to this document require review and approval by the Airport and the FAA prior to implementation. In addition, coordinate proposed changes with all appropriate local or federal government agencies (i.e. NCDEQ, TSA, etc.).

FAA ATO Coordination

Advance coordination with FAA ATO is required to schedule airway facility shutdowns and restarts. Coordination with FAA ATO will also be required to facilitate runway and taxiway closures as well as communicating open aircraft routes during construction.

It will remain the Contractor's responsibility to be aware and cognizant of all activities on/off the airfield that impact airport operations.

At this time, there is no anticipated airfield work and/or closures on the project.

Project Construction Management Plan

A Construction Management Plan (CMP) is required for projects that have a total pavement construction contract value over $500,000 based on FAA AC 150/5370-12B. The project includes landside (roadways and parking lots – NCDOT requirements) paving costs such that FAA funding is below the $500,000 threshold and a CMP is not required.

3.2 PHASING

The project is divided into five (5) work areas as follows:

Work Areas 1 through 5 – Landside

This includes realignment of Airport Boulevard at the terminal curbfront, Commercial Roadway, parking garage access roadway, parking garage, vertical circulation plaza, terminal atrium expansion, pedestrian connector/tunnel, parking lot, and temporary connections between the proposed and existing roadway, parking lots, and terminal. Specific construction related items for each work area are as follows:

- Work Area 1, refer to Figure 2:
  - Airport Boulevard roadway connection to previous phases of this program, Phase 1A (two lanes) and Phase 1B (two lanes), completing the pedestrian curbfront (four lanes) with access to the terminal. The portion of Airport Boulevard where the existing Phase 1B Temporary Walkway is located is excluded.
  - Commercial Road (two lanes).
  - Parking Garage Access Road (one lane)
  - Parking Garage, three levels, with a height of approximately 49 feet at the light tower associated with the vertical circulation.
  - Pedestrian vertical circulation plaza that includes shuttle drop to/from the parking lots with access to/from the terminal through the parking garage and/or pedestrian connector/tunnel.
  - Terminal atrium expansion to accommodate pedestrian access to/from the parking garage and/or pedestrian connector/tunnel.
  - Terminal cupola roof replacement.
  - Roadway and pedestrian sidewalk canopies, approximately 20 feet in height.
  - Pedestrian walkways, medians, and other access between the terminal, roadways, parking lots, and parking garage.
  - Parking lot including entry and exit plaza lanes. The portion of the parking lot where the existing Phase 1B Temporary Walkway is located is excluded.

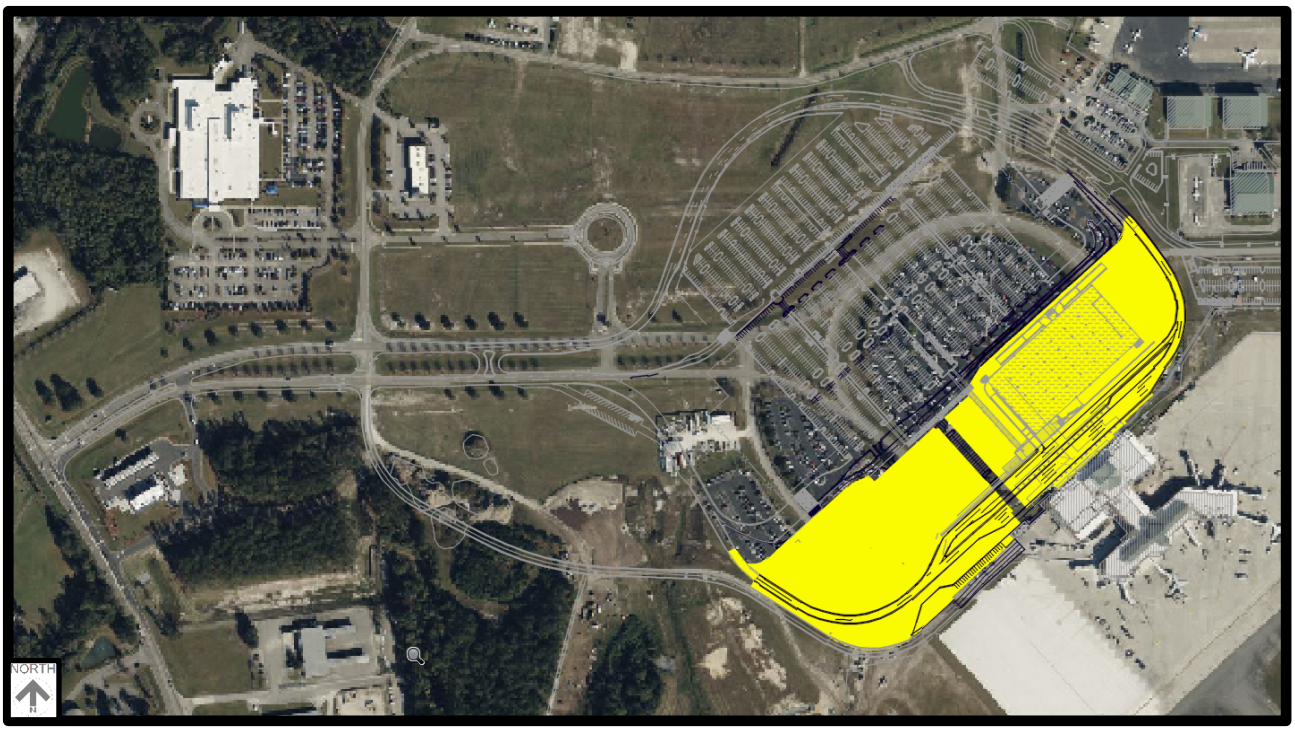


Figure 2 – Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements Work Area 1

Work Area 2, refer to Figure 3:

- Removal and/or reconstruction of the Phase 1B Temporary Walkway.
- Airport Boulevard roadway and the parking lot within the Phase 1B Temporary Walkway footprint.
- This work area is contingent upon pedestrian connector/tunnel, Vertical Circulation Plaza and Atrium expansion to accommodate pedestrian traffic.

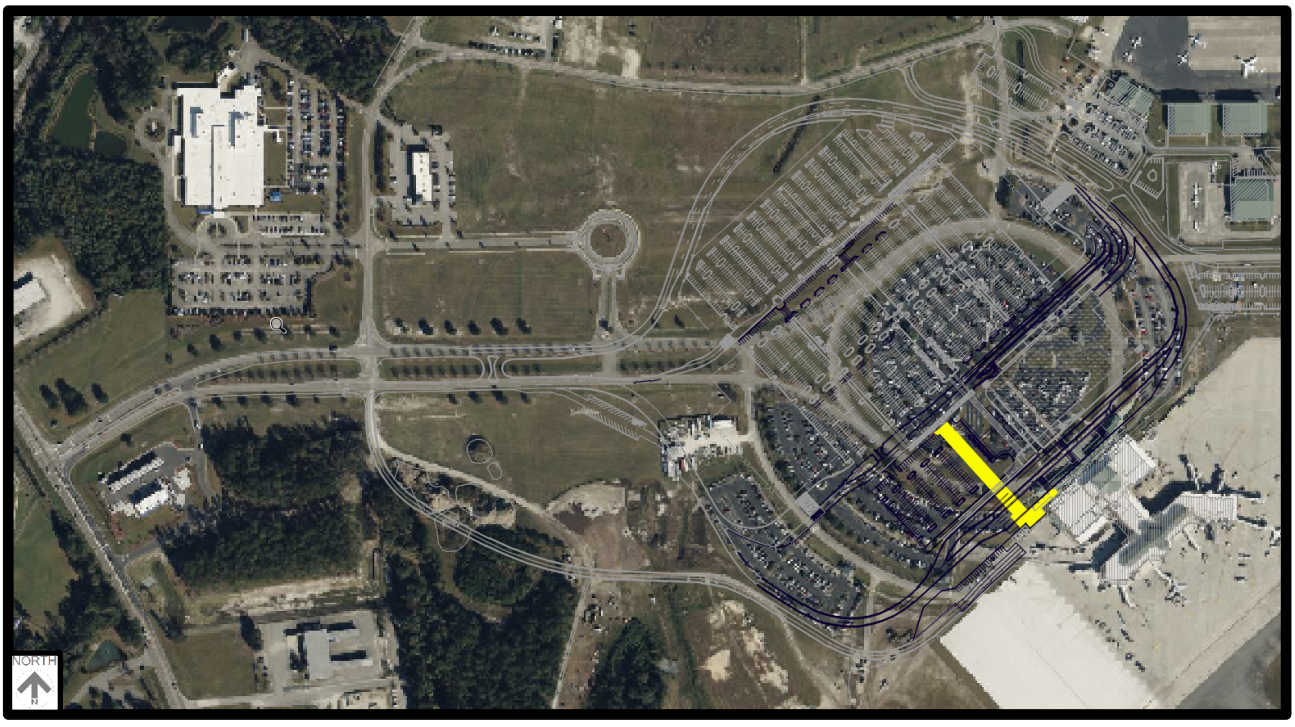


Figure 3 – Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements Work Area 2

- Work Area 3, refer to Figure 4:
  - Reconstruction of the Phase 1B Temporary Curbfront Roadway.
  - Parking lot entry/exit plazas, shuttle drives, and parking garage entrance.

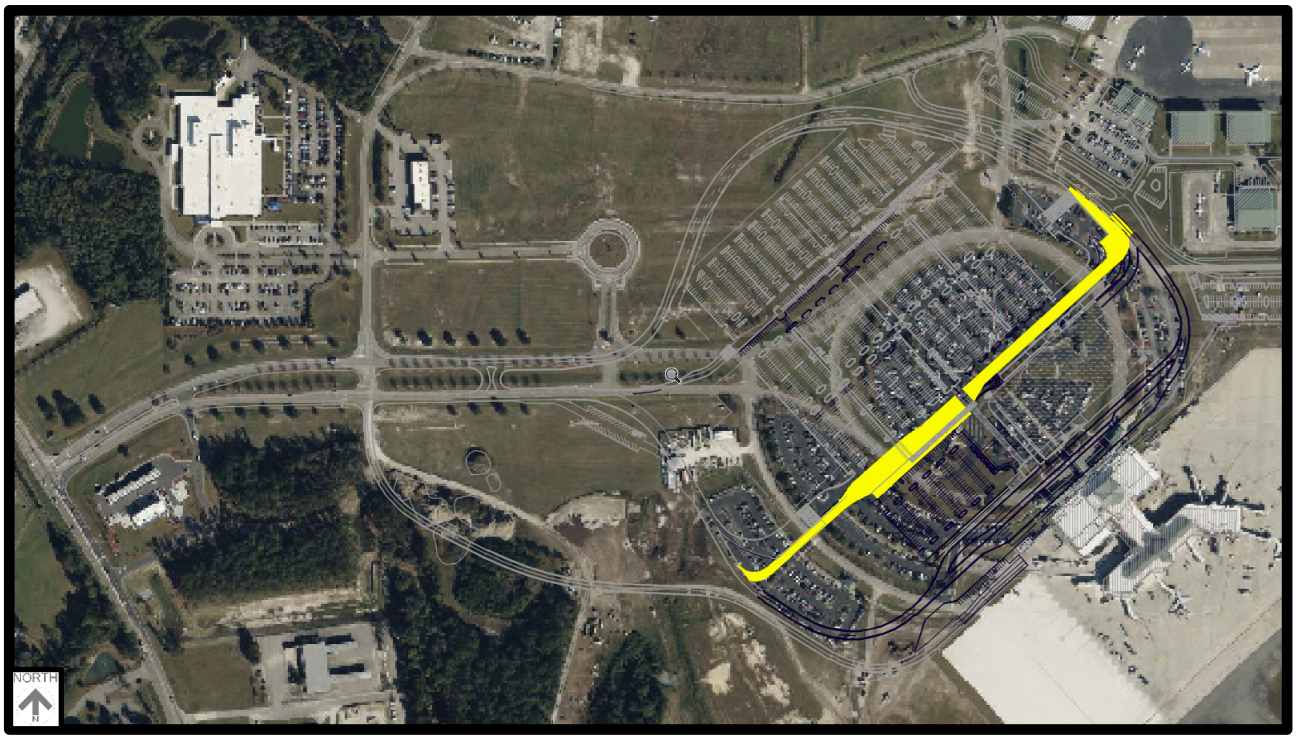


Figure 4 – Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements Work Area 3

- Work Area 4, refer to Figure 5:
  - Reconstruction of the Temporary Curbfront Roadway and sidewalk.

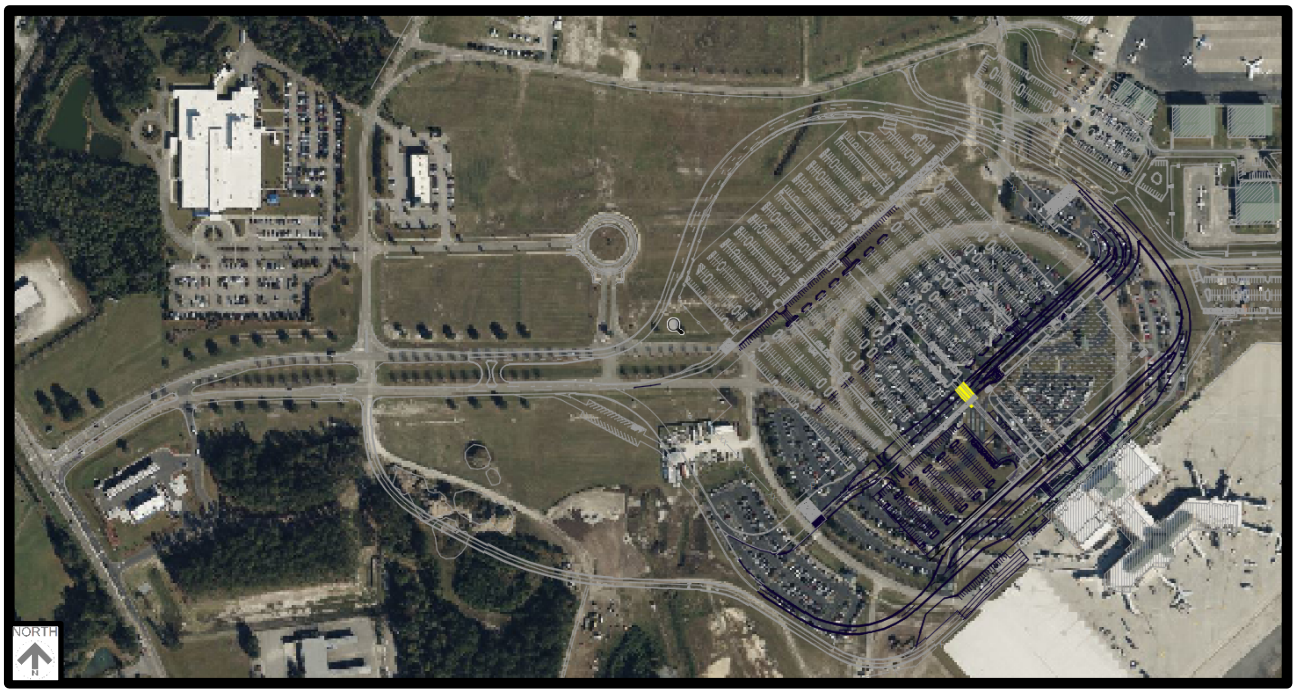


Figure 5 – Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements Work Area 4

- Work Area 5, refer to Figure 6:
  - Construction of bus shelters.
  - Emergency Roadway staging area construction.
  - Remove Phase 1B Temporary parking lot entry plaza.

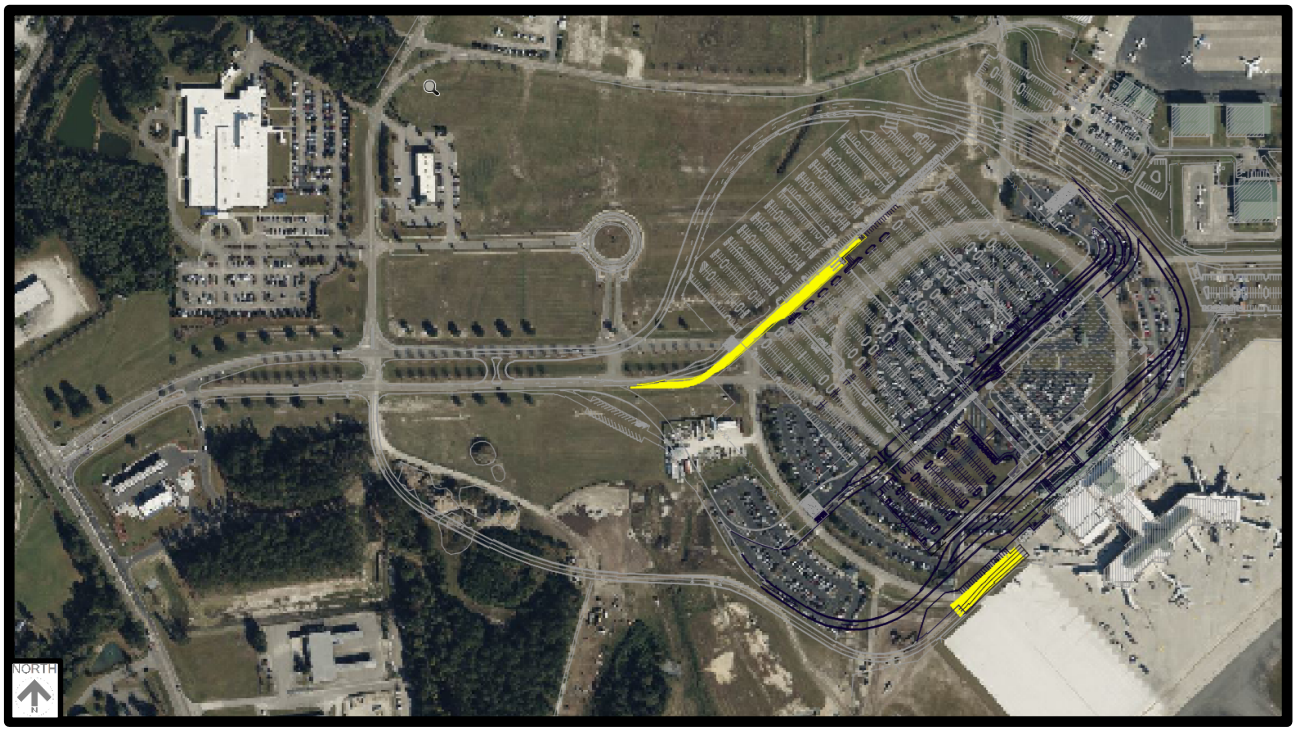


Figure 6 – Airport Boulevard – Parking Improvements Work Area 5

- Additional work in each of these work areas includes:
  - Erosion control measures.
  - Demolition of existing pavements, utilities, and other appurtenances.
  - Utility installation (storm sewer, light poles, split duct, watermain, sanitary sewer, etc).
  - Grading.
  - Paving including curb/gutter installation segments.
  - Pavement marking.
  - Signage.
  - Landscaping.

The use of a large crane is to be coordinated with the Airport and FAA ATO such that ILM will be coordinating with Tech Ops.

Safety, security, and ARFF/emergency routes are to be maintained at all times.

Areas To Be Closed

There are no anticipated closures to runways and/or taxiways due to the project.

Contractor Staging Area

The staging area is located landside at a location approved by the Airport.

Contractor Access and Haul Routes

The Contractor access shall be from Blue Clay Road to Hall Drive, with exceptions for over-sized vehicles allowed through Airport Boulevard with Airport Operations approval for landside work.

The sequence of construction for this project has been phased to maximize the performance and safety of construction activity and to maintain vehicle and aircraft operations at an acceptable level of efficiency at the airport for the duration of this contract. General elements of this sequencing and phasing are as follows:

- Construction access and haul routes – Applicable control along contractor haul routes for both safety and security must always be maintained.

Summary of Phasing Impacts

Phase specific elements addressed and taken into consideration during the development of the construction phasing for this project are as follows:

TABLE 3 – SUMMARY OF PHASING IMPACTS *

Item	Work Areas 1-5 Landside Roadway – Parking Lots	Work Area 1 Landside Parking Garage/ Terminal Atrium Large Crane usage
Anticipated duration	June 2025 to February 2027**	June 2025 to November 2026**
Areas closed to aircraft operations *	None	None
Airside work	N/A	N/A
Anticipated duration of restriction/closure	N/A	N/A
Taxi route impacts	N/A	N/A
Runway impacts		
Runway 6-24	Open	Open
Runway 17-35	Open	Open
Impacts to NAVAIDs	N/A	N/A
Marking changes	N/A	N/A
Night Work	May be required to minimize disruption to existing roadway and terminal operations.	May be required to minimize disruption to existing roadway and terminal operations.
Temporary construction equipment height	50 feet above ground level (AGL)	150 feet above ground level (AGL)
Other	See Appendix A for temporary control of vehicle traffic and airfield operations	

* *See Appendix A for temporary control of vehicle traffic*

** *Early completion dates for portions of the Airport Boulevard exit roadway and Airport Parking Lot.*

Construction Safety Drawings

Graphical exhibits specifically indicating operational safety procedures and methods in areas affected by construction activities associated with this project have been provided with this CSPP and incorporated into the project plans, refer to Appendix A.

3.3 AREAS AND OPERATIONS AFFECTED BY CONSTRUCTION

The runways, taxiways, and other airfield surfaces at Wilmington International Airport are to remain open and available for use during the project duration.

Identification of Affected Areas

Aircraft Rescue and Fire Fighting (ARFF) Access Routes

Access into, through and/or around the project work area by ARFF vehicles shall be maintained throughout this project. ARFF vehicles will always have right of way in an emergency.

Routes used by Airport and Airline Support Vehicles

The landside construction activities are not expected to negatively impact airport and airline support vehicle access to aircraft parked at various gates around the terminal complex.

Interruption of Utilities

Several utilities have been identified within the project limits. These include, but may not be limited to, communication lines, electrical lines, and storm sewer systems. Interruption of utilities shall be coordinated in advance with the appropriate agency having jurisdiction. Special attention shall be given to preventing unscheduled interruption of utility services and facilities.

Where required due to construction purposes, the FAA shall locate all their underground utilities. The Contractor shall locate and/or arrange for the location of all the underground utilities. The Contractor should account for lead times for all utility locate requests. When an underground cable or utility is damaged due to the Contractor's negligence, the Contractor shall immediately repair the affected cable or utility at his expense. Full coordination between airport staff, field inspectors, and construction personnel will be exercised to ensure that all airport power and control cables are fully protected prior to any excavation. Locations of cabling and other underground utilities will be marked prior to beginning excavation.

Approach/Departure Surfaces Affected by Heights of Objects

Contractor equipment conflicts or staging area heights of objects are not anticipated to impact approach and/or departure surfaces for open runways.

Construction equipment heights use for the landside parking garage and terminal atrium construction are noted below:

- Temporary Construction heights, Landside construction = 50 feet AGL
- Temporary Construction heights, Landside large crane construction = 150 feet AGL

The crane will be a boom type crane which shall be lowered to 100 feet AGL when not in use. At the direction of the Owner, Airport Operations and/or FAA, due to inclement weather, low visibility, or other safety related concerns, the large crane shall be lowered until further direction is provided for use.

Construction Areas

The project work areas, staging areas and stockpile locations are not within active airfield surfaces. Crossing of active airfield surfaces will not be required.

Mitigation Effects

This CSPP has established specific requirements and operational procedures necessary to maintain the safety and efficiency of airport operations during the construction of this project.

All coordination pertaining to airport operations during construction will go through the Airport and the Operations Manager. Any required NOTAM's to be issued will be sent through the Airport.

Temporary Changes to Runway and/or Taxiway Operations

No changes to runway or taxiway operations are anticipated.

Detours for ARFF and other Airport Vehicles

The project work site shall remain open to all ARFF and Airport vehicles in emergency situations. The contractor is required to maintain access in and around the project work area for all ARFF and Airport vehicles. Proper routing of this traffic will be effectively communicated to all supervisory personnel involved in the construction project.

Maintenance of Essential Utilities

Special attention shall be given to preventing unscheduled interruption of utility services and facilities. Where required due to construction purposes, the FAA shall locate all their underground utilities. The Contractor shall locate and/or arrange for the location of all the underground utilities. The Contractor should account for lead times for all utility locate requests. When an underground cable or utility is damaged due to the Contractor's negligence the Contractor shall immediately repair the affected cable or utility at his expense. Full coordination between airport staff, field inspectors, and construction personnel will be exercised to ensure that all airport power and control cables are fully protected prior to any excavation. Locations of cabling and other underground utilities will be marked prior to beginning excavation.

Temporary Changes to Air Traffic Control Procedures

No changes to air traffic control procedures are anticipated.

3.4 NAVAID PROTECTION

No impacts to NAVAIDs are anticipated during the project duration at Wilmington International Airport.

3.5 CONTRACTOR ACCESS

This CSPP details those areas to which the Contractor must have access, and how Contractor personnel will access those project work areas.

Location of Stockpiled Construction Materials

Stockpiled materials and equipment storage are not permitted within the RSA/TSA, OFZ or OFA of an operational runway or taxiway.

Stockpiled material shall be constrained in a manner to prevent movement resulting from either aircraft jet blast or wind conditions more than ten miles per hour. Stockpile material heights **shall not exceed 10 feet** and shall not penetrate protected airspace (transitional surface or primary surface). Stockpiled material shall be located within project limits or as approved by Airport and Engineer.

Open trenches exceeding 3 inches in depth and 5 inches in width or stockpiled material are not permitted within the limits of safety areas of operational runways or taxiways. Stockpiled material shall not be permitted within the protected areas of the runways or allowed to penetrate any of the protected airspace.

Any stockpiles and/or trenches are anticipated landside near the roadway improvement areas.

Vehicle and Pedestrian Operations

Vehicle and pedestrian access routes for airport construction projects must be controlled to prevent inadvertent or unauthorized entry of persons, vehicles, or animals onto the AOA. The Airport will coordinate requirements for vehicle operations with the affected airport tenants, Contractors and the FAA air traffic manager. Specific vehicle and pedestrian requirements for this project are as follows:

- All construction vehicles and personnel shall be restricted to the immediate work areas specified by the contract for this project. These areas include the haul routes into the work area, the designated Contractor staging area and the areas under construction. Use of alternate haul routes or staging areas by the Contractor shall not be permitted without prior notification and approval by the Airport.
- Access or haul routes used by Contractor vehicles must be clearly marked to prevent inadvertent entry to areas open to airport operations. Construction traffic must remain on the haul road, never straying from the approved paths. Maintenance and upkeep of the haul roads are the responsibility of the Contractor. Dust must be removed from the haul roads by mechanical sweeping.
- Haul roads in any airport traffic areas must be especially monitored for dust and debris to prevent any potential Foreign Object Debris (FOD) situations. Application of water on haul routes must be provided as often as necessary.
- The Contractor is responsible for any damage caused by construction traffic on the haul roads, regardless of whether such traffic is in an approved or un-approved traffic area. Following construction completion, the Contractor shall grade, reseed, clean or otherwise restore the haul route areas to their original conditions prior to construction activities. Special attention must be given to ensure that if construction traffic is to share or cross any ARFF routes that ARFF right of way is not impeded at any time, and that construction traffic on haul roads do not interfere with NAVAIDs or approach surfaces of operational runways. Work necessary in maintaining the haul roads and compliance with safety and security requirements is considered incidental to the project, and therefore, shall not be directly paid for.
- Contractor parking and equipment staging areas are to be approved by the Airport.
- The Contractor must service all construction vehicles within the limits of the project construction limits or the contractor staging area. Parked construction vehicles must be outside the OFZ and never in the safety area of an active runway or object free area of an active taxiway. Parking areas must not obstruct the clear line of sight by the ATCT to any taxiways or runways under air traffic control nor obstruct any runway visual aids, signs, or navigation aids. The FAA must also study those areas to determine effects on airport design criteria, surfaces established by 14 CFR Part 77, Safe, Efficient Use, and Preservation of the Navigable Airspace (Part 77), and on NAVAIDs and Instrument Approach Procedures (IAP).
- The project area within the AOA shall be bounded by the low-profile barricades identifying contractor personnel and vehicle area operation limits, refer to Appendix A.

- At no time will vehicles or personnel enter portions of the secure AOA beyond the project construction limits unless permitted and accompanied by an airport approved escort.
- All vehicles operating on the airport must be marked with flashing yellow/amber beacons or orange and white flags. Use of flags is limited to daylight hours. During hours of darkness or low visibility, vehicles shall be equipped with flashing yellow/amber beacons. In addition, all vehicles and equipment will have identifying company logos that are easily legible. Vehicle drivers operating within the movement area must be properly badged and must have completed ILM's airport movement area driver's training course. Refer to FAA AC 150/5210-5 *Painting, Marking and Lighting of Vehicles Used on an Airport* for additional details/requirements.
- Beacons and flags must be maintained in good working and operational condition. Beacons must be located on the uppermost part of the vehicle structure, visible from any direction, and flash 75 +/- 15 flashes per minute. Flags shall be 3' by 3' with alternating 1' by 1' international orange and white squares and shall be replaced by the Contractor if they become faded, discolored, or ragged as determined by Airport.
- At no time shall active taxiways or runways be crossed by construction vehicles or equipment without notification and proper approval/clearance from airport operations and air traffic control.
- Aircraft traffic will continue to use existing runways, aprons, and taxiways of the Airport during the time that work under the project contract is being performed. The Contractor shall, always, conduct the work as to create no hindrance, hazard, or obstacle to aircraft using the Airport.

Two-Way Radio Communications

All construction-related activity taking place within any active area of the AOA requires the presence of an ILM approved and badged escort having radio communication with the FAA control tower unless prior approval is obtained from the Airport Operations Manager. Spotters and/or flaggers shall, at a minimum, be properly badged for access on the airfield. The Contractor's flaggers and/or spotters shall always be required to monitor transceiver radios tuned to the ATCT Ground Control frequency at ILM. Adequate quantity of radios shall be supplied by the Contractor. Such radios shall be used to obtain proper clearance for movement of equipment, personnel etc. on or across active AOA areas. In the rare occasion that emergency operations must occur due to an aircraft in distress or any other incident, the flagman monitoring the radio shall have the means to communicate with the superintendent or foreman of the project to stop truck traffic and perform the requests of the ATCT regarding routing traffic or vacating the site. Any command or instruction given by the control tower, ILM personnel, flaggers, or spotters shall be immediately obeyed by the equipment operator.

The contractor shall maintain radio communication with air traffic control and shall always monitor air traffic control frequencies. Air traffic control frequencies are as follows:

- ATIS: 124.975 MHz
- UNICOM: 122.95 MHz
- WILMINGTON GROUND: 121.9 MHz / 348.6 MHz
- WILMINGTON TOWER: 119.9 MHz / 239.3 MHz

Airport Security

Airport operations and the Contractor must maintain a high level of security during construction when access points are created in the security fencing to permit access by construction vehicles to the project work site. Contractor access gates shall be equipped and/or manned by ILM Badged contractor to prevent unauthorized access by vehicles, animals, or people. Procedures conforming to ILM security protocols will be in place to ensure that only authorized persons and vehicles have access to the AOA and to prohibit "piggybacking" behind another person or vehicle. Access shall always be made available to all airport emergency vehicles traveling to operations areas within the proximity of the construction work zone

3.6 WILDLIFE MANAGEMENT

Construction contractors must carefully control and continuously remove waste or loose materials that might attract wildlife. Contractor personnel must be aware of and avoid construction activities that can create wildlife hazards on airports.

Trash

Debris, food scraps or other trash from construction personnel activity must be collected.

Standing Water

Water shall not be allowed to collect and pool for more than any single 24-hour period.

Tall Grass and Seeds

The use of millet seed in seeding operations shall not be permitted.

Poorly Maintained Fencing and Gates

Access gates must be maintained at all times while in use by the Contractor. If a fence or gate is damaged due to the Contractor's negligence, the Contractor shall immediately repair the affected fence or gate at his expense. Existing fencing shown to be demolished on the plans shall not be removed until the proposed fencing is installed and is secure. It is not anticipated that the AOA fence will be impacted during this project.

3.7 FOREIGN OBJECT DEBRIS (FOD) MANAGEMENT

Special care and measures shall be taken to prevent Foreign Object Debris/Damage (FOD) when working in an airport environment. The Contractor shall be held responsible for implementing an approved FOD Management Plan as a part of the SPCD. The FOD Management Plan will have procedures for prevention, regular cleanup, and containment of construction material and debris. The Contractor will ensure all vehicles related to the construction project using paved surfaces in the AOA shall be free of any debris that could create a FOD hazard. Special attention will be given to the cleaning of cracks and pavement joints. All taxiways, aprons, and runways must remain clean. Waste containers with attached lids shall be required on construction sites.

Special attention will be given to securing lightweight construction material. Specific securing procedures and/or chain-link enclosures may be required.

The Contractor will provide water truck or other means for duct management from project related construction activities.

Contractors will provide their own equipment for vehicle and equipment washing and clean up.

Immediate access to a vacuum truck or power sweeper is required when construction occurs on any pavement area inside the AOA unless an appropriate alternative has been approved by the Airport. Haul roads in any airport traffic areas must be especially monitored for dust and debris to prevent any potential Foreign Object Debris (FOD) situations.

3.8 HAZARDOUS MATERIALS (HAZMAT) MANAGEMENT

Contractors operating construction vehicles and equipment on the airport must be prepared to expeditiously contain and clean-up spills resulting from fuel, hydraulic fluid, or other chemical fluid leaks. Transport and handling of other hazardous materials on an airport also requires special procedures. To that end, the Contractor is required to develop and implement spill prevention and response procedures for vehicle operations. The Contractor shall incorporate these procedures into the SPCD. This includes material handling in accordance with appropriate Safety Data Sheets (SDS), formerly referred to as Material Data Sheets (MSD).

3.9 NOTIFICATION OF CONSTRUCTION ACTIVITIES

The following is information and procedures for immediate notification of airport users and the FAA of any conditions adversely affecting the operational safety of the airport.

Notice to Air Missions (NOTAM) (formerly Notice to Airmen)

Only ILM airport operations may initiate or cancel NOTAMs on airport conditions and is the only entity that can close or open a runway or taxiway. The Airport must coordinate the issuance, maintenance, and cancellation of NOTAMs about airport conditions resulting from construction activities with tenants and the local air traffic facility (control tower, approach control, or air traffic control center), and must provide information on closed or hazardous conditions on airport movement areas to the FAA Flight Service Station (FSS) so it can issue a NOTAM. The Airport must file and maintain a list of authorized representatives with the FSS. Only the FAA may issue or cancel NOTAMs on shutdown or irregular operation of FAA owned facilities. Any person having reason to believe that a NOTAM is missing, incomplete, or inaccurate must notify Airport Operations.

Any NOTAMs for planned airfield closures for this project must be coordinated through the airport operations manager and the airports duly appointed construction management representative.

Emergency Notification Procedures

In the event of an emergency, the contractor shall be required to contact the Police by dialing 911.

In the event of an aircraft emergency, severe weather conditions, or any issue that may affect aircraft operations as determined by ILM, the Contractor's personnel and/or equipment may be required to immediately vacate the areas affected. Specific emergency notification procedures shall be incorporated into the Contractor's SPCD.

Coordination with ARFF Personnel

The Contractor shall coordinate, through the duly appointed airport representative, with ARFF personnel, mutual aid providers, and other emergency services if construction requires the following:

- The deactivation and subsequent reactivation of water lines or fire hydrants, or

- The re-routing, blocking and restoration of emergency access routes, or
- The use of hazardous materials on the airfield.

Procedures and methods for addressing any planned or emergency response actions on the airfield concerning this project shall be established and implemented prior to the start of construction. ARFF personnel and vehicles always have priority within the movement areas during an emergency.

Notification to FAA

Part 77

Any person proposing construction or alteration of objects that affect navigable airspace, as defined in Part 77, must notify the FAA. This includes construction equipment and proposed parking areas for this equipment on airports. FAA Form 7460-1, Notice of Proposed Construction or Alteration, can be used for this purpose and submitted to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office. This form will be completed by the Airport and submitted for FAA review. The Contractor is required to comply with any stipulations set forth in the approved 7460-1.

Part 157

With some exceptions, Title 14CFR Part 157, Notice of Construction, Alteration, Activation, and Deactivation of Airports, requires that the Airport notify the FAA in writing whenever a non-Federally funded project involves the construction of a new airport; the construction, realigning, altering, activating, or abandoning of a runway, landing strip, or associated taxiway; or the deactivation or abandoning of an entire airport. Notification involves submitting FAA Form 7480-1, Notice of Landing Area Proposal, to the nearest FAA Airports Regional or District Office.

It is not anticipated that Part 157 notifications will be required for this project.

NAVAIDs

For emergency (short-notice) notification about impacts to both airport owned and FAA owned NAVAIDs, contact Airport Sponsor per Table 2.

3.10 INSPECTION REQUIREMENTS

Daily Inspections

Inspections shall be conducted by the Contractor at least daily to ensure conformance with the CSPP. In addition to the Contractor's required inspections, airport operations will inspect the construction site to ensure compliance with the CSPP and the SPCD with notification to the Airport and/or Resident Project Representative (RPR) of any deficiencies or violations.

For all airside construction work, upon arrival each day, the Contractor shall notify ILM Dispatch (910-341-4336) prior to beginning work. The Contractor shall notify ILM Dispatch at the end of each working day and request a daily ILM inspection for airside construction work. The Contractor may not leave the site until ILM inspection has been completed and any issues have been rectified.

Final Inspections

A final inspection will occur for this project prior to opening newly constructed airside areas, prior to opening any closed/restricted airfield pavement areas to aircraft operations and other project work areas as necessary.

3.11 UNDERGROUND UTILITIES

Special attention shall be given to preventing unscheduled interruption of utility services and facilities. Where required due to construction purposes, the FAA shall locate all their underground cables. The Contractor shall locate and/or arrange for the location of all the underground cables. When an underground cable is damaged due to the Contractor's negligence the Contractor shall immediately repair the cable affected at his expense. Full coordination between airport staff, field inspectors, and construction personnel will be exercised to ensure that all airport power and control cables are fully protected prior to any excavation. Locations of cabling will be marked prior to beginning excavation.

3.12 PENALTIES

Failure on the part of the Contractor to adhere to prescribed requirements may have consequences that jeopardize the health, safety, or lives of the public, passengers, and employees at the airport. The Airport may issue warnings on the first offense based upon the circumstances of the incident. Individuals involved in non-compliance violations may be required to surrender their Airport ID badges and/or be prohibited from working at the airport, pending an investigation of the matter.

3.13 SPECIAL CONDITIONS

In the event of an aircraft emergency, the Contractor's personnel and/or equipment may be required to immediately vacate the area. The Contractor will receive notification from airport operations when special conditions require the construction site to be vacated. In any event, extreme care shall be exercised should construction personnel identify any ARFF (Airport Rescue and Fire Fighting) vehicle with emergency lights displayed. This will generally mean that an emergency is imminent.

3.14 RUNWAY AND TAXIWAY VISUAL AIDS

Runway and taxiway visual aids include marking, lighting, signs, and other visual NAVAIDs on the airfield. Those areas where aircraft will be operating shall be clearly and visibly separated from construction areas, including closed runways.

General

Airport markings, lighting, signs, and visual NAVAIDs must be clearly visible to pilots, not misleading, confusing, or deceptive. All must be secured in place to prevent movement by prop wash, jet blast, wing vortices, or other wind currents and constructed of materials that would minimize damage to an aircraft in the event of inadvertent contact.

Markings

It is not anticipated that any changes to airfield markings will be required for this project.

Lighting and Visual NAVAIDs

It is not anticipated that any changes to lighting and visual NAVAIDs will be required for this project.

Signs

It is not anticipated that any changes to airfield signs will be required for this project.

3.15 MARKING AND SIGNS FOR ACCESS ROUTES

Location of haul routes on the airport site shall be as specified in the project plans and as provided graphically in the plans, reference Appendix A. It shall be the Contractor's responsibility to coordinate off-site haul routes with the appropriate owner who has jurisdiction over the affected route. The haul routes, to the extent possible, shall be marked and signed in accordance with FAA airfield signage requirements, the Federal Highway Administration Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and/or state highway specifications. Signs adjacent to areas used by aircraft must meet the airfield general frangibility requirements as required by the airport and subsequent approval by the Owner. Meeting airfield frangibility requirements may require modification to size and height guidance in the MUTCD.

3.16 HAZARD MARKING AND LIGHTING

Purpose

Hazard marking and lighting prevents pilots from entering areas closed to aircraft and prevents construction personnel from entering areas open to aircraft traffic.

Traffic control for landside work shall delineate the construction areas and prevent the public from entering the construction site.

To that end, comprehensible warning indicators for any area affected by construction that is normally accessible to aircraft, personnel, or vehicles shall be installed and maintained by the Contractor for the duration of construction operations. Hazard marking and lighting shall identify any open manholes, small areas under repair, stockpiled material, waste areas, open trenches and excavations. Hazard markings shall also identify sensitive areas that should be avoided, such as power lines and safety or object free areas.

Equipment

Type 1 - Low Profile Barricades of the type detailed in the project plans shall be placed at the edge of the closed airfield surfaces and the project work limits. The spacing of barricades must be such that a breach is physically prevented barring a deliberate act. The Contractor shall have a person on call 24 hours a day for emergency maintenance of airport hazard lighting and barricades. The Contractor must file the contact person's information with the Airport. Lighting shall be checked for proper operation at least once per day, preferably at dusk.

Traffic control for landside work shall be in accordance with Federal Highway Administration Manual on Uniform Traffic Control Devices (MUTCD) and/or state highway requirements.

3.17 PROTECTION OF RUNWAY AND TAXIWAY SAFETY AREAS

Safety area encroachments, improper ground vehicle operations and unmarked or uncovered holes and trenches near aircraft operation surfaces and construction areas are the three most recurring threats to safety during construction. Protection of runway and taxiway safety areas, object free areas, obstacle free zones, and approach/departure surfaces shall be a standing requirement for the duration of the project.

Runway Safety Area (RSA)

A runway safety area is the defined surface surrounding the runway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to airplanes in the event of an excursion from the runway by aircraft.

It is not anticipated that this project will require work within the RSA of Runway 6-24 or Runway 17-35.

Runway Object Free Area (ROFA)

Construction, including excavations, may be permitted in the ROFA. However, equipment must be removed from the ROFA when not in use, and material shall not be stockpiled in the ROFA if not necessary. Stockpiling material in the OFA requires submittal of a 7460-1 form and justification provided to the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office for approval.

It is not anticipated that this project will require work within the ROFA of Runway 6-24 or Runway 17-35.

Taxiway Safety Area (RSA)

The taxiway safety area is a defined surface alongside the taxiway prepared or suitable for reducing the risk of damage to an airplane unintentionally departing the taxiway. No construction may occur within a taxiway safety area while the taxiway is open for aircraft operations.

It is not anticipated that this project will require work within the TSA of any taxiway.

Taxiway Object Free Area (ROFA)

Unlike the Runway Object Free Area, aircraft wings regularly penetrate the taxiway object free area during normal operations. Thus, the restrictions are more stringent. No construction may occur within the TOFA while the taxiway is open for aircraft operations.

It is not anticipated that this project will require work within the TOFA of any taxiway.

Obstacle Free Zone (OFZ)

Construction personnel, material, and/or equipment may not penetrate the OFZ while the runway is open for aircraft operations. The OFZ is a defined volume of airspace centered about and above the runway centerline.

It is not anticipated that any element of this project will require work that may penetrate the OFZ of either runway.

Runway Approach/Departure Surfaces

All personnel, materials, and/or equipment must remain clear of the applicable threshold siting surfaces. Objects that do not penetrate these surfaces may still be obstructions to air navigation and may affect standard instrument approach procedures. Coordinate with the FAA through the appropriate FAA Airports Regional or District Office.

Construction activity in a runway approach/departure area may result in the need to partially close a runway or temporarily relocate the existing runway threshold. Partial runway closure, the temporary relocation of the runway threshold, or the closure of the runway and other portions of the movement area also require coordination through the Airport with the appropriate FAA air traffic manager (FSS if non-towered) and ATO/Technical Operations (for affected NAVAIDS) and airport users.

It is not anticipated that this project will impact runway approach and/or departure surfaces.

3.18 OTHER LIMITATIONS ON CONSTRUCTION

The following prohibitions are in effect for the duration of this project:

1. No use of open flame welding or torches unless fire safety precautions are provided, and the Airport has approved their use. No use of electrical blasting caps or explosives of any kind on or within 1,000 ft. of the airport property.
2. No use of flare pots within the AOA.
3. If nighttime work is required, lighting units shall be aimed toward the work area and away from all active runways and taxiways and the ATCT.

APPENDIX A

PROJECT PLANS

(refer to plans provided as part of February 14, 2025 submittal for CMR use)

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX B

SAFETY AND PHASING PLAN CHECKLIST

FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-2G Appendix C

This page intentionally left blank.

APPENDIX C

CONSTRUCTION DAILY SAFETY INSPECTION CHECKLIST

FAA Advisory Circular 150/5370-2G Appendix D

This page intentionally left blank.